



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

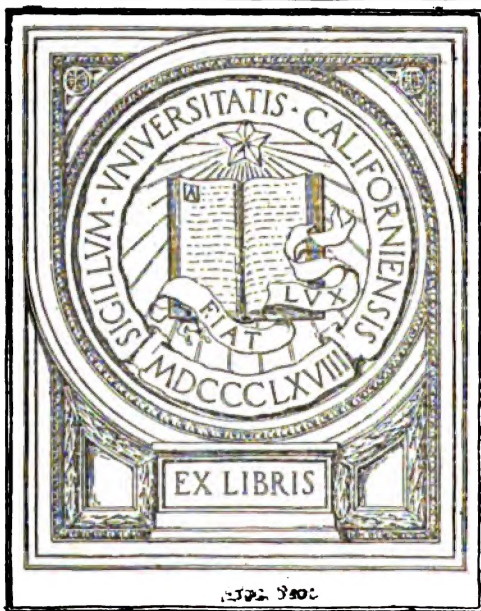
CAESAR'S  
COMMENTARIES  
—  
KELSEY





GIFT OF

*Publishers*



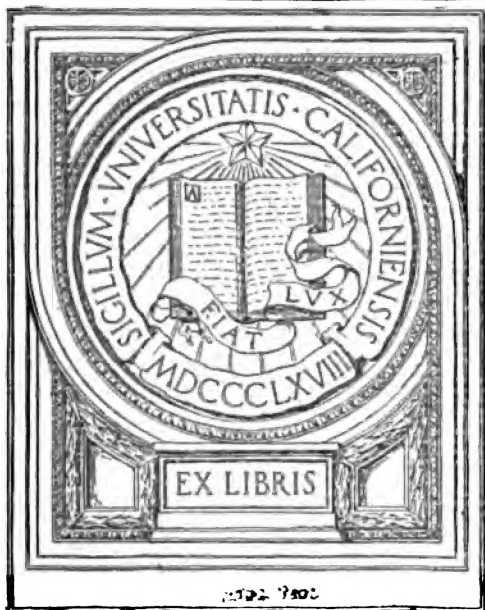
EX LIBRIS

1922 9802



GIFT OF

*Publishers*

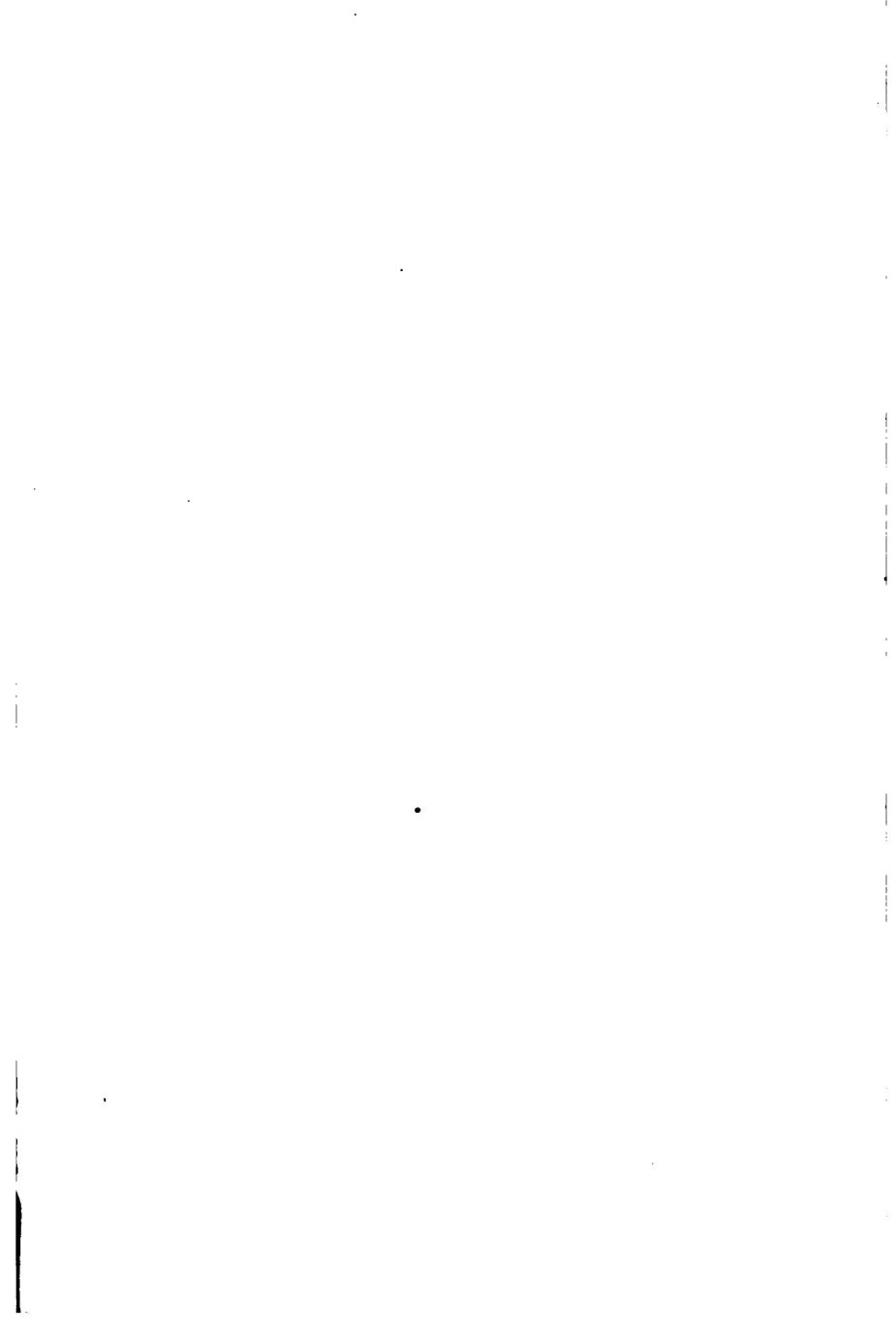


1272-7800

EX LIBRIS













That Julius Caesar was a famous man;  
 With what his valour did enrich his wit,  
 His wit set down to make his valour live:  
 Death makes no conquest of this conqueror;  
 For now he lives in fame, though not in life. — RICHARD III.

C. IULII CAESARIS  
*COMMENTARII RERUM GESTARUM*

---

# CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

THE GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I-IV, WITH  
SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V-VII  
AND FROM THE CIVIL WAR

*WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, A COMPANION TO CAESAR  
AND A VOCABULARY*

BY  
FRANCIS W. KELSEY  
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

---

ALLYN AND BACON  
Boston New York Chicago

PA6235

K3

1918

Encl. dept.

COPYRIGHT, 1918, BY

FRANCIS W. KELSEY

NO. 1011  
ALBION, ILL.

PAN



## PREFACE

THIS edition aims to interest the High School pupil in Caesar, to assist him by notes adapted to his stage of progress, and to facilitate his accomplishment of the second year of Latin work with appreciation of and respect for the subject, and with a firm foundation for further study.

America's entrance into the world conflict has aroused universal interest in warfare. Viewed in the light of the great struggle, Caesar's Commentaries take on a new interest. Modern armies have clashed on the battlefields of the Gallic War; modern camps are laid out in a way to suggest the manner of the Romans. The strategy of Joffre and of Hindenburg finds its prototype in that of Caesar, and modern armor, especially in types of helmet and breastplate, strikingly resembles that of ancient times. In countless ways—even to Caesar's statement, "Of all these the bravest are the Belgians"—the World War reproduces on a larger scale the campaigns of Caesar.

Such points as these it has seemed worth while to attempt to bring out in the Introduction, the Notes, and the Companion to Caesar. In the Syntax a statement of a rule is accompanied by specific illustrations from Caesar; the exercises in Latin Composition are designed to strengthen the pupil's grasp of the Grammar. The Maps and Plans cannot fail to add definiteness to the study, and the pictures will aid the student to visualize the scenes and objects described or referred to in the text.

In preparing the book my obligations have been greatest to the well-known works of Dr. H. Meusel and Mr. T. Rice Holmes; on the side of the illustrations, to the *Manuel* of Joseph Déchelette. Mr. George R. Swain allowed the use of his unique

series of photographs, and Mr. G. F. Hill, of the British Museum, furnished a number of casts of Roman coins.

Many teachers have helped me with suggestions, of which I wish here to make acknowledgment; I am especially indebted to Miss Frances E. Sabin of the University of Wisconsin. Messrs. Allen and Phillips, of the Phillips Academy in Andover, have kindly permitted the use of their *Latin Composition*, and Dr. Gilbert H. Taylor rendered assistance in reading a part of the proof.

FRANCIS W. KELSEY.

ANN ARBOR, MICHIGAN.

January 15, 1918.

# CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION—

	PAGE
I. WARFARE, ANCIENT AND MODERN . . . . .	ix
II. CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES AND THE GREAT WAR . . . . .	xx
III. THE CIVILIZATION OF THE GAULS . . . . .	xxvii
IV. CAESAR AND THE HISTORICAL WRITERS . . . . .	xxxiii
V. CAESAR IN LITERATURE AND MYTH . . . . .	xxxvii

## THE GALLIC WAR, TEXT AND NOTES—

BOOK I . . . . .	1
BOOK II . . . . .	129
BOOK III . . . . .	190
BOOK IV . . . . .	232
BOOK V . . . . .	287

### BOOK VI, SELECTIONS:

The Second Expedition into Germany . . . . .	338
The Customs of the Gauls and Germans Contrasted . . . . .	340
The Hercynian Forest and the Wonderful Animals Found in It . . . . .	358

### BOOK VII, SELECTIONS:

Beginning of a General Uprising . . . . .	364
The Siege and Destruction of Avaricum . . . . .	374
The Siege of Gergovia . . . . .	381
The Leadership of Vercingetorix and First Defeat . . . . .	390
The Siege and Fall of Alesia . . . . .	396

## THE CIVIL WAR, SELECTIONS, TEXT AND NOTES—

BOOK II. The Second Sea-fight off Massilia . . . . .	425
BOOK III. Heroic Endurance of Caesar's Soldiers . . . . .	431
Caesar's Treatment of Two "Grafters" . . . . .	435
Last Operations about Dyrrachium . . . . .	438
The Battle of Pharsalus . . . . .	440



	PAGE
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING—	
1. THE PIG'S LAST WILL AND TESTAMENT . . . . .	463
(Petronii Satirae . . . Tertium edidit F. Buecheler, pp. 241-242)	
2. WITTICISMS ATTRIBUTED TO CICERO . . . . .	467
(M. Tulli Ciceronis Scripta . . . Recognovit C. F. W. Mueller, IV, 3, 1910, pp. 343-347)	
3. LEGAL MAXIMS . . . . .	471
4. FABLES . . . . .	472
5. THE FIRST PSALM . . . . .	474
(Biblorum Sacrorum iuxta Vulgatam Clementinam Nova Editio, 1914, p. 470)	
6. THE TWENTY-THIRD PSALM . . . . .	475
(Biblorum Sacrorum . . . Nova Editio, p. 481)	
A COMPANION TO CAESAR—	
ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR FOR THE STUDY OF CAESAR:	
Inflections . . . . .	479
Word Formation . . . . .	525
The Derivation of English Words from the Latin . . . . .	528
Syntax . . . . .	531
Figures of Speech . . . . .	582
Expressions Relating to Time and Distance . . . . .	584
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR:	
Life of Caesar . . . . .	587
The Name Caesar . . . . .	601
The Portraits of Caesar . . . . .	602
Caesar's Commentaries . . . . .	603
Caesar as an Orator . . . . .	606
THE GEOGRAPHY OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES . . . . .	607
THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME . . . . .	615
EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION—	
Reprinted, by permission, from <i>Latin Composition</i> , by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips:	
POINTS TO BE NOTED IN WRITING LATIN . . . . .	641
EXERCISES . . . . .	644
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS, WITH REFERENCES . . . . .	665
VOCABULARIES	

## PLATES<sup>1</sup>

The colored plates, and the plates illustrating the bridge across the Rhine, are from the designs of H. Rheinhard.

### PLATE

I. Statue of Caesar in Rome, in the Palazzo del Conservatori (From a photograph) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	FACING PAGE
II. Roman Officers, Standard-bearers, and Musicians (Colored) . . . . .	70
III. Roman Soldiers, Infantry and Cavalry (Colored) . . . . .	128
IV. Weapons, Standards, and Roman Camp (Colored) . . . . .	216
V. Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine, Sections . . . . .	256
VI. Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine, View . . . . .	257
VII. Military Devices (Colored) . . . . .	286
VIII. Chalk Cliffs near Dover (Photograph by George R. Swain) . . . . .	294
IX. Appliances for Siege and Defense (Colored) . . . . .	364
X. Bust of Caesar in the Museum of Naples (From a photograph) . . . . .	424
XI. An Ancient Sea-fight between Galleys ( <i>The English Illustrated Magazine</i> , 1899, p. 449) . . . . .	430
XII. Storming of a Besieged City (Colored) . . . . .	636

## MAPS

The maps are based upon those in the Atlases accompanying the works of Napoleon III and Stoffel (p. xxxvii), with modifications from many sources, particularly, G. Velth's *Geschichte der Feldzüge Caesars* and, for Pharsalus, J. Kromayer's *Antike Schlachtfelder in Griechenland*.

GALLIA, General Reference Map, inside back cover.

MAP	FACING PAGE
1. Campaigns of 58 and 57 B.C. . . . .	1
2. Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone . . . . .	20

<sup>1</sup> A full List of the Illustrations, with references, will be found on pages 665-674.

MAP	FACING PAGE
3. The Battle with the Helvetians . . . . .	60
4. The Battle with Ariovistus . . . . .	120
5. The Battle at the Aisne (Axona) . . . . .	144
6. The Battle at the Sambre (Sabis), First Phase . . . . .	164
7. The Battle at the Sambre (Sabis), Second Phase . . . . .	172
8. Operations against the Stronghold of the Atuatucl . . . . .	180
9. Operations of the Year 56 B.C. . . . .	198
10. Sea-fight with the Venetans . . . . .	208
11. Operations of 55 and 54 B.C. . . . .	232
12. Map of Britain as conceived by Caesar . . . . .	300
13. Operations of 53 and 52 B.C. . . . .	338
14. The Siege of Avaricum . . . . .	374
15. The Siege of Gergovia . . . . .	384
16. Victory of Caesar over Vercingetorix . . . . .	392
17. The Siege of Alesia . . . . .	400
18. Second Sea-fight off Massilia . . . . .	426
19. Operations of the Year 48 B.C. . . . .	438
20. The Battle of Pharsalus . . . . .	448

# INTRODUCTION

## i. WARFARE ANCIENT AND MODERN

SINCE the Roman period the art of war has undergone great changes. These have resulted from the invention of gunpowder and other explosives, from the use of field glasses, from the utilization of electricity, steam, and gasoline to provide means of communication and transportation, and finally, from

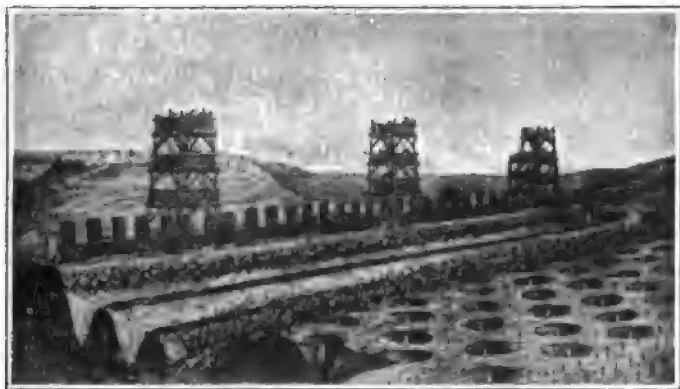


Figure 1.—Wolf-holes before Alesia.

Constructed by Caesar in 52 B.C., and discovered by excavation.

At the left of the wolf-holes are rows of hedge entanglements.

In front of the rampart are double trenches, and above we see the palisade and towers.

the mechanical perfecting of every kind of weapon. Nevertheless the most recent military operations have exemplified the use of means and methods of warfare devised by the ancients and skillfully employed by Caesar in the campaigns of which he has left a record in the Commentaries.

As a part of his defensive works when he was besieging Alesia Caesar made many wolf-holes. These are round holes with sloping sides, in the center of which a strong pointed

stake is firmly implanted. A glance at the illustration (Fig. 1) will show how slow and difficult an advance would be, particularly at night, over ground thus prepared; for the soldier picking his way, no matter how carefully, would run the risk of slipping and impaling himself upon the projecting point.



Figure 2. — Wolf-holes near Ypres, in Belgium.

These wolf-holes were constructed by the German army in 1914.

On the further side, near the left, the posts carrying the barb-wire entanglement are visible. (Courtesy of the Press Illustrating Company.)

Precisely such wolf-holes have been used in the Great War, as, for example, along the German line near Ypres, in Belgium (Fig. 2). In front the line is protected by barb-wire entanglements. Corresponding with these are the hedge entanglements used by Caesar (shown in Figure 1, behind the wolf-holes), which were made by firmly planting in rows, and closely interlocking, branches of trees with the projecting ends stripped of bark and sharpened to a point.

The Romans were the first nation to

make trench-digging an essential part of warfare, but they limited it to the fortification of camps and to siege operations. Since the Roman trenches were not used as passageways, they were generally left V-shaped, as those seen in Figure 1; but occasionally trenches were made with perpendicular sides, as the long trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, before Alesia (Map 17). In modern warfare trenching has become still more important,

and now under many conditions soldiers are taught to "dig themselves in." But the process of digging is still the same, as may be seen from the comparison of a Roman trenching tool (Fig. 3) with the type of spade supplied as a part of the equipment of a soldier in the United States Army (Fig. 4).

When digging within range of the enemy's missiles the Roman soldiers protected themselves by movable shields, *plutei* (Plate IX, 4-5), and sappers' huts, *vineae* (Plate IX, 9). In trenching close to the Russian lines near Warsaw in 1914 the Germans used standing steel shields which were moved forward for the protection of the trenchers. A curious parallel to the ancient sapper's hut is the armored "one-man tank," designed for exceptionally hazardous service in front of the lines (Fig. 5).

The packs, *sarcinae*, of Caesar's legionaries were fully as heavy as those of modern infantry, perhaps heavier. They were carried on a forked stick over the left shoulder (Fig. 6), while the soldier of to-day has his pack strapped on his back (Fig. 7). The day's march of a small body of United States Infantry over fair roads will average approximately the same as that of Caesar's legionaries, about fifteen Roman miles. On forced marches recently European armies, moving on excellent roads and utilizing medical science to conserve the soldier's strength, have equaled, if they have not surpassed, Caesar's forced marches in the Gallic War.

In fighting there has been a surprising return to the methods of Caesar's time.

Caesar's legionaries held their weapons until they were within close range of the enemy, twelve to twenty yards; then they hurled their pikes. To-day in trench fighting the place of the pike is taken by the hand grenade, thrown often at even closer range; and soldiers are trained in the throwing of gre-



Figure 3.—Roman trenching tool.

Discovered in the remains of the Roman Camp at Saalburg, near Homburg, Germany.

The wooden handle has rotted away.

nades just as the legionary was in hurling the pike (Fig. 8). "Rifle fire in this warfare plays small part," wrote Owen Johnson from the front in 1915; "cartridges are all very well for machine guns, but for men, hand grenades and the cold steel." Soon after the first soldiers from the United States arrived in



Figure 4. — Modern trenching tool.

This is the trenching tool supplied to soldiers of the United States army.

France, in 1917, it was found that by reason of skill acquired in playing baseball, they surpassed the European soldiers in throwing grenades, in point of range as well as accuracy.

The "iron" of the Roman pike (Fig. 49, p. 61) finds a parallel in a late type of French bayonet (Fig. 9). The length is nearly the same. The pike iron has a four-grooved point, barbed; the bayonet is grooved on the four sides, so that it makes a wound very similar in character. But even the spear has not gone out of use; in the Great War long lances have been used by divisions of cavalry on both sides.

More remarkable still is the return of recent warfare to the use of the helmet as a protection for the head, and of a metallic shield to protect the grenadier when exposing himself by throwing grenades (Fig. 8). In shape, however, the French helmet (Fig. 10) has as much in common with a certain type of ancient Gallic helmet (Fig. 11) as it has with the helmet of the Roman legionary (Fig. 12).

Modern armor seems to have reached its fullest development in the equipment of the Italian barb-wire cutter. His helmet (Fig. 13) is supplemented by a metallic veil, and his body is protected by a cuirass, his legs by greaves. This specialized armor, well designed for the purpose, is less flexible than the defensive equipment of the Roman legionary (Fig. 33, p. 19).

The modern helmet has been found serviceable in protecting

the head against shrapnel; hence we may well believe that the ancient helmet greatly reduced the casualties from the leaden bullets thrown by means of slings (Fig. 14), as well as those from blows.

The Gaul, as is noted elsewhere (p. 638), in fighting used a spear or dart, shield and sword, but his spear (Figs. 40 and 43) was not so effective as the Roman pike, and his sword was of an altogether different type (Fig. 39). Oddly enough, recent fighting in France has

revived the use of wickerwork shields somewhat like those of ancient Gaul (Fig. 48, p. 60). As a protection against liquid fire French soldiers before Verdun in 1916

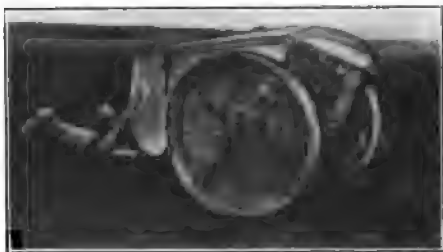


Figure 5. — "One-man tank."

Designed for the protection of wire-cutters under fire.

"carried big oblong shields of interwoven osier, covered with clay, against which the flaming liquid fell harmless," though the men, protected by masks, found "the smell terrible, almost suffocating."

In the night attack of Caesar's men upon the Helvetian corral, in 58 B.C., some of the defenders hurled darts from behind the wheels of the carts (I. 26); in 1916 a provision train of motor trucks, conveying supplies to General Pershing's force in Mexico, was attacked in a ravine, whereupon "the truck men and their soldier guard took a position behind the steel wheels of the cars," and routed the Mexicans by the accuracy of their fire.

Though the contending armies are vastly greater than those of Caesar's time, the Great War affords striking illustrations of the principles of military formation, tactics, and strategy<sup>1</sup> which he knew and applied.

<sup>1</sup> Under "Tactics" military men include the disposing of forces on land or sea in order of battle, and all manœuvres in the presence of the enemy;



In the battle with the Helvetians, and also in that with the Germans described in Book I, the more open formation of



Figure 6. — Roman legionary in marching order.

His pack is suspended on a forked stick over the left shoulder.

the smaller Roman force, whose soldiers were trained to fight with initiative, gave it a distinct advantage over the mass formation, called by Caesar *phalanx*, to which it was opposed. The mass formation of the modern German army is altogether different from that of ancient times; but again and again, in the Great War, German ranks, advancing with men almost touching elbows, have suffered much more heavily than British forces trained to attack in extended order and advancing against equally intensive fire.

When Caesar first came into contact with the Germans, he was so impressed with their arrangement of cavalry that he made special mention of it, and afterwards he employed German horsemen as mercenaries. Each horseman, he tells us (I. 48), was accompanied by a foot-soldier; these foot-soldiers were swift runners, and

---

"Strategy" refers to the larger operations of war; it includes the laying out and conducting of campaigns as well as the execution of single movements designed to outwit and thwart the enemy.

exceedingly brave. In our illustration, which pictures a charge of the Scots Greys in northern France in the autumn of 1914 (Fig. 15), nimble footmen are seen charging with the cavalry.

The transportation of troops by train and auto truck has simplified the concentration of reserves to hold a threatened point; yet no modern general has surpassed Caesar in insight and quickness of decision in moving troops in time of battle in order to forestall or checkmate the movements of the enemy. This was well illustrated in the Battle of Pharsalus, where his quick shift in forming a fourth line to support his greatly outnumbered cavalry (C. III. 89, and Map 20) gained an initial victory and contributed in no slight degree to the sweeping success of the day.

A typical stratagem of Caesar was that by which he accomplished the crossing of the Elaver (now Allier) in 52 B.C. (VII. 35). Vercingetorix, on the opposite side of the river, had broken down all the bridges. Caesar encamped in a wooded spot near a place where the piles of a bridge had escaped destruction. The next morning he concealed two legions in the forest and ordered the rest of his forces to march up the river, spreading them out so that the marching column seemed as long as usual. Thereupon Vercingetorix also marched upstream, on the opposite side. When he was far enough away, Caesar brought the two legions out of concealment, quickly rebuilt the bridge, recalled the troops that had marched up the river, and transferred his entire army across before Vercingetorix could interfere.

A similar stratagem was successfully employed in 1915. The German and Austrian commanders wished to cross the Vistula in Poland at a point northwest of Ivangorod. They moved



Figure 7.—United States sailor standing with heavy marching-order equipment.

The marching-order equipment of the United States soldiers is the same, whether in land or naval service.

their forces upstream in such a way as to lead the Russians to believe that they intended to force a crossing at some distance

northeast of the city. At the point previously determined upon, material for pontoon bridges was brought to the bank of the river loaded on wagons which were covered over with straw, so that they were reported by the Russian aviators merely as loads of straw; since the Russian commander had no information to the contrary, slight attention was paid to them. The ruse made it possible for the pontooners to start building the bridges before their presence or purpose was suspected. When the Russians finally brought their artillery to bear at the threatened point, it was too late to check the work; the Teutonic forces completed four bridges over the river and marched across.



*Copyright by Underwood and Underwood, New York.*

Figure 8.—French soldier hurling a hand grenade.

He is standing in a trench. His head is protected by a steel helmet. With the left forearm he holds a shield.

In the naval battles described in the Commentaries Caesar did not command his fleet in person, though in one instance he and his army witnessed

the engagement from the land (III. 14). The tactics employed have analogies in modern warfare.

On the Mediterranean Sea from a very early period there were two types of ships, those propelled by the wind, that is

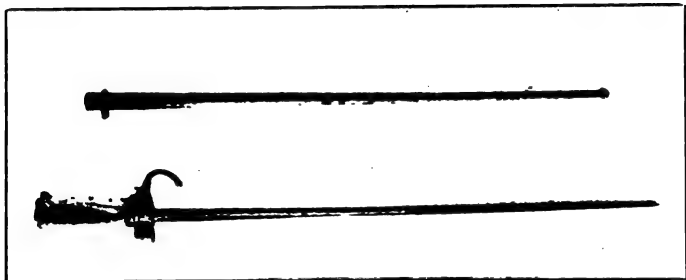


Figure 9. — French bayonet, with scabbard.

The bayonet can either be fastened at the end of a gun and used for thrusting, or detached and handled as a long dagger.

by a force outside the ship, and those propelled by a force inside the ship, by oarsmen. Since the Mediterranean is relatively narrow and almost tideless, since also ships driven by oars could be manœuvred more easily and with much greater steadiness of movement, the oar ship was developed into a war

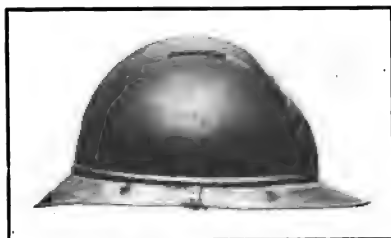


Figure 10. — French helmet, type of 1915, front and side views.

This helmet was worn by Richard N. Hall, a graduate of the Ann Arbor high school and of Dartmouth college, who served in a volunteer ambulance corps in France and was killed by a shell on Christmas eve, 1915, when driving his ambulance in the Vosges mountains.

vessel and was highly specialized to this end (Fig. 146, p. 427), while low-decked sailing vessels were used for freight and ordinary passenger service. It was a freight ship on which St. Paul and his military escort sailed for Italy, suffering shipwreck at Malta; the battleships, or galleys, of Caesar's time (p. 636) had ordinarily three banks of oars.

The boisterous waves and high tides of the North Atlantic made impracticable, except under extremely favorable condi-

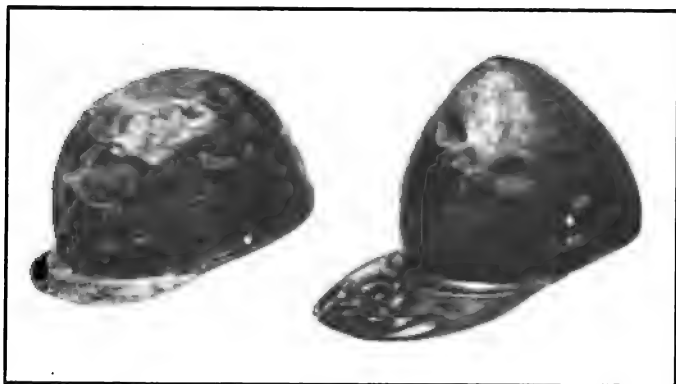


Figure 11.— Early Gallic helmets. of bronze.

Now in the British Museum. The neck-protector of the helmet at the right is ornamented in relief.

tions, the use either of galleys, which had to be built low in order to enable the oarsmen to dip their oars, or of the type of sailing vessel employed on the almost land-locked Mediterranean. Hence before Caesar's time the Venetans in northwestern Gaul (modern Brittany) had developed a strongly built high-decked sailing vessel, which, though small when compared with sea-going ships to-day, was able nevertheless to withstand the buffeting of ocean waves and to outride the gales. From Caesar's description (III. 13) it is evident that the Venetan ship was not like the type of vessel used later by the Vikings, but in essential features resembled the famous *Half-Moon* with which

Henry Hudson in 1609 crossed the Atlantic, discovering the river which bears his name.

Caesar found that he could not complete the conquest of northwestern Gaul without destroying the Venetan fleet. In the naval battle, of which we have a vivid account in Book III of the Gallic War, the two types of vessel were brought into hostile contact; the light and fast Roman galley, adapted for ramming and boarding, and carrying legionaries as its fighting men, was pitted against the Venetan sailer, which was so strong that it could not be rammed and so high that boarding was extremely difficult. Only quick ingenuity (III. 14), and sheer luck in the dying down of the wind at a crucial moment, gave to Caesar's men a complete victory.

Altogether different were the tactics of the sea-fight off Massilia, described in the second book of the Civil War (pp. 425-431). Just as on land at Pharsalus, and on both land and sea in the Great War, we find substantially the same military equipment on both sides, so in the sea-fight between Brutus and the fleets loyal to Pompey the type of battleship on both sides was the same, and victory rested with the side which had superior skill and fighting power.

Long after the nations of western Europe had developed to a high degree of effectiveness the wooden warship propelled by sails and armed with cannon, the galley continued to be used by the pirates of the Barbary States in northern Africa; "the vessels employed by the Barbary Corsairs were essentially rowing-boats,"<sup>1</sup> though after the sixteenth century they increasingly used ships like those of the European powers. Mu-



Figure 12.—Helmet of a Roman legionary.

When not worn the helmet could be suspended by a cord passed through the ring at the top. The crest was fastened in the same ring before the soldier went into action.

<sup>1</sup> *African Shores of the Mediterranean*, by C. F. and L. Grant (New York, 1912), p. 280. This work gives a graphic description of life on the modern galleys, and the lot of the galley-slaves, chained to the rowing-benches. The

tual jealousies of the European states allowed the Barbary corsairs to flourish until the nineteenth century. For a time the United States paid blackmail to the masters of the Tripoli pirates in order to safeguard American sailing vessels from their swift galleys and frigates, and our country did not free itself from the menace until 1815.

Like the galley, the modern battleship, with steam power replacing man power as propelling force, developed the tactic of ramming. This tactic had its best known exemplification in time of peace, in the accidental ramming and sinking of the battleship *Victoria* by her sister ship, the *Camperdown*, at the British manoeuvres in the Mediterranean in 1893, in consequence of a mistake in orders. In recent years there has been a notable increase in the size and range of cannon mounted upon battleships, accompanied by a corresponding increase in the effectiveness of torpedoes; decisive engagements are now ordinarily fought at long range. Nevertheless in 1917 the British torpedo destroyer *Broke* rammed a German destroyer, and the marines, as in the olden time, finally fought hand to hand, the British gaining the victory.

## ii. CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES AND THE GREAT WAR

In September, 1914, the German armies, retiring from the drive toward Paris, established a line of trenches across the northeastern part of France. One portion of this line passed north of the city of Soissons, whose name is derived from that of the Gallic people called Suessiones; thence it ran eastward, not far from the river Aisne, which is so called from the river's ancient name, Axona. East of the village of Berry-au-Bac the German line of works crossed the Aisne to the south and passed east of Reims, which takes its name from the ancient people called Remi, and occupies the site of the Gallic city of Durocortorum, or Bigfort.

---

subject is more fully treated in *The Barbary Corsairs*, by S. Lane-Poole (New York, 1902); and G. W. Allen, *Our Navy and the Barbary Corsairs* (Boston, 1905).

This part of France in antiquity was reckoned as belonging to Belgium; for the southern boundary of Belgium, or Belgic Gaul, was along the rivers called by Caesar *Matrona* and *Sequana*, which have given us the modern names *Marne* and *Seine*. In this region, as also in eastern France and in the countries east of the Adriatic Sea, we find many points of contact not only between ancient and modern names but also between the events recorded in Caesar's Commentaries and those of the most recent history.

The marshes along the Miette brook, near Berry-au-Bac, in 57 B.C., prevented a frontal attack by the Belgians upon Caesar's legions drawn up to receive them (Map 5). Across the same marshes when dry, in September, 1914, the Germans ran intrenchments, which during the winter filled with water; this caused inconvenience, to be sure, but safeguarded that part of the German line from attack by either infantry or cavalry.

When the Belgians tried to ford the Aisne, in the face of Caesar's archers and slingers, the stream was choked with dead (II. 10); dead and wounded again clogged the Aisne in 1914, when French and English troops near Berry-au-Bac built pontoon bridges within range of a murderous artillery fire.



Figure 13. — Italian barb-wire cutter.

His wire-clippers are on the end of a long pole. He stands in front of the entrance of a well-screened refuge. (Medem Photo Service.)



Caesar commends the bravery of the Belgians who attempted to cross the Aisne over the bodies of the fallen (II. 10). Of all the peoples of Gaul, he elsewhere declared (I. 1), "the Belgians are the bravest." In 1914, the bravery of the modern Belgians was lauded by friend and foe alike, when at Liège and other points, against overwhelming odds, they tried to stem the tide of German invasion.

Thessaly, unlike the rest of Greece, has broad and fertile plains, well adapted to the raising of wheat. In 48 B.C., when Caesar was obliged to withdraw from Dyrrachium (now Durazzo), he led his half-starved troops into Thessaly and encamped in the midst of ripening grain-fields (C. III. 81); thither Pompey came to find him (Map 19), and the battle of Pharsalus followed. In June, 1917, one reason assigned for hastening the abdication of Constantine, King of Greece, was that the allied forces wished to make sure that the ripening harvests of Thessaly should be subject to their control; and immediately thereafter French and British troops occupied Pharsala (the ancient Pharsalus), as well as Larissa, on the site of the Larisa to which Pompey fled after the great battle. So it happened that the grain-fields of Thessaly were a factor in determining the site of the decisive battle between Caesar and Pompey, and, almost two thousand years later, in hastening the downfall of a Greek ruler.

The occurrence of similar events of war in the same localities may be ascribed in part to the influence of geographical features upon military operations, in part to continuing antagonism between adjacent populations of different stock. Broadly speaking, the military operations of the Germans in the western campaigns of the Great War have in no small degree been determined by the same physical conditions which first brought Caesar into hostile contact with Helvetians and Germans, and afterwards facilitated his conquest of northern Gaul.

To the Helvetians, bent upon migrating to western Gaul, the Jura mountains (Map GALLIA <sup>1</sup>) presented an almost im-

---

<sup>1</sup> A general map of Gaul has been placed at the end of this volume.

passable barrier, on the west side, while a northerly route would have exposed them to attack by Ariovistus. In consequence they were obliged to follow the exceedingly difficult route through the Mill-race gorge of the Rhone, Pas de l'Écluse (Map 2), and at once aroused Caesar's apprehension; for the Rhone was the boundary of the Roman Province.

Between the Jura mountains and the Vosges (ancient Vosegus) there is a broad opening in the mountain barrier along the east frontier of modern France. Through this gateway Ariovistus and his German hordes were pressing into Gaul,



Figure 14. — Roman slingshot, of lead, shown in two views.

Inscribed FERI POMP[EIVM], 'Strike Pompey,' referring to Pompeius Strabo, against whose army it was hurled when he was besieging Asculum, in the southeastern part of Italy, during the Social War, in 91-90 B.C.

having already seized upon the fertile plain now known as Alsace, between the Rhine and the Vosges mountains. The issue of the Helvetian campaign imposed upon Caesar the obligation to protect his Gallic allies against Ariovistus; and his first step was to seize the natural stronghold of Vesontio, now Besançon (I. 38), which he made a military base. In the last century France, fearing a German invasion by the same route, transformed Besançon into a fortress of the first class.

The victory over Ariovistus enabled Caesar to fix the upper Rhine as the boundary between the German territory and central Gaul. Secure against danger of attack from this side, he was free to carry his conquest northward into Belgium. In contrast with the highlands of central Gaul, and the mountainous country in the south, the greater part of ancient Belgium, corresponding with modern Holland, Belgium, and the northernmost corner of France, was low and fairly level. It

was therefore an easy matter for Caesar, after the battles at the Aisne and the Sambre (Book II), to overrun the country, before western Gaul, or the mountain strongholds of the Arvernians in the south, had been conquered. The accessibility of ancient Belgium hastened its conquest by Caesar.

When Caesar invaded Belgium he had not the excuse of a previous attack by Belgians. He had heard that they were arming, and forthwith marched into Belgic territory. In 1914, German armies marched across Belgian territory, and held it in subjection, not because there was the slightest prospect that Germany would be attacked by Belgians, but in order to secure a quick and easy route through that neutral country into France; for along the line of direct contact between French and German territory the routes were more difficult, and other points of vantage besides Besançon had been strongly fortified on the French side.

To Caesar the Rhine seemed the natural boundary of Gaul on the east. By the defeat of Ariovistus, and later by the destruction of the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV. 1-15), he checked German invasions. All Gaul became Romanized. For a part of its course the Rhine formed the boundary of the Roman Empire; "to maintain the frontiers of the Rhine and the Danube," said the historian Freeman, "was, from the first century to the fifth, the great object of Rome's policy and warfare."

After the fall of the Western Empire Gaul was overrun by the German Franks, the "spearmen," whose name survives in that of the country France.

After the defeat of Napoleon at the battle of Leipzig, in 1813, the Allies offered to leave to him "the natural boundaries of France: the Rhine, Alps, Pyrenees, and Ocean." Bitter indeed since then have been the strifes over the lands lying west of the Rhine, arising from acceptance or rejection of the stream as a political boundary; the "Watch on the Rhine" in preference to all other patriotic songs became the German national hymn. No element in the historical content of

Caesar's Commentaries is more significant than this, that they disclose to us the age-long struggle between peoples of Celtic and Germanic origin aligned along the Rhine, a struggle which has reached its awful culmination in our own time.

Besides issues and events of larger significance, Caesar's Commentaries make mention of military practices, and instances of bravery, to which the Great War has furnished abundant parallels.



Figure 15.— Charge of Scots Greys at St. Quentin, in 1914.

Highlanders, holding to the stirrups, are keeping up with the horsemen. (Courtesy of Collier's Weekly.)

In his conquest of Gaul, Caesar exacted many hostages. Hostages have also been seized by the Germans in conquered cities. On September 12, 1914, at Reims, then in German hands, the names of eighty persons were posted, with the following printed proclamation (translation from the French):

"In order adequately to assure the safety of our troops and quietness on the part of the population of Reims, the persons named have been seized as hostages by the commander of the German army. These hostages will be shot if there is the least disturbance. On the

other hand, if the city remains absolutely quiet and free from disturbance, these hostages and inhabitants will be placed under the protection of the army."

Regarding the fate of the hostages held by Caesar we have no information. Hostages taken by the Germans, as the records show, were in some cases shot, in others carried off to prison camps.

Among the most inspiring passages of the Commentaries are those in which Caesar makes note of the bravery of his men. Thus in describing the first expedition to Britain he tells us how the soldiers of the tenth legion, following their eagle-bearer, plunged into deep water, advanced against a storm of missiles from the shore, and drove the British back, effecting a landing (IV. 25).

Less spectacular, but not less brave, was the advance of the Italian infantry across the Isonzo in the assault upon Goritz in August of 1916. "With water up to their necks," writes Lord Northcliffe, who witnessed the movement, "carrying their rifles high above their heads and ecstatically singing patriotic songs, they forded the broad stream and carried the eastern bank. The enemy's shrapnel, which, falling among them, churned the water into foam, failed utterly to check or even retard their charge. Those who fell wounded in the water insisted upon being helped to gain the eastern bank, saying, 'Then they won't send us back.'"

Few modern officers have shown themselves more courageous and resourceful than the heroic *Baculus*, who was almost done to death in the battle at the Sambre (II. 25), but was restored to health and twice thereafter saved the day by his quick resolve and indomitable will (III. 5; VI. 38). No instance of individual bravery stands out so conspicuously, however, as that of the centurion *Scaeva*, who fought at his post, at the gate of a redoubt, though one eye was put out and he was wounded in shoulder and thigh; in his shield, after the battle, 120 holes were counted where it had been struck by arrows

(pp. 434-435). In June, 1916, E. A. Bigorne, machine gun operator on the front in France, remained in an advanced position after every other man in his trench had been killed, when it was obvious that an assault of the enemy was preparing. He gathered the ammunition of his fallen comrades, and when the assault came he still held his post, using his machine gun so effectively that he repulsed charge after charge against his trench, accounting for 800 Germans in killed, wounded, and fleeing, before he was relieved.

Caesar publicly commended Scaeva, and made him a present of money amounting to more than \$8000; Bigorne received the decoration of the Legion of Honor, said to be the highest award ever given to a private soldier in France.

### iii. THE CIVILIZATION OF THE GAULS

Excavations and discoveries in France in recent decades have thrown new light upon the civilization of the Gauls in Caesar's time. To give an account of these within narrow limits is impossible. It may suffice to say that remains of city walls have been found on the site of Bibracte and other Gallic cities, so constructed as completely to verify Caesar's description of a Gallic wall in Book VII (chap. 23); that burial places and unearthed town sites in France, western Switzerland, Belgium, and England have yielded an incalculable number of objects of common life, now available for study in museums; and that with the help of such objects it is permitted to picture to ourselves the varied and picturesque life of ancient Gaul and Britain in a way unknown to previous centuries.

Disregarding the highest estimates, we may reckon the population of Transalpine Gaul in Caesar's time as twelve or thirteen millions; there were perhaps a fourth as many inhabitants as are found in the same area to-day. There were in Gaul not a few cities, some of which, as Avaricum with its 40,000 souls, would be reckoned as important towns in modern times.

The growth of towns implies advancement in both commerce and industry. In Caesar's time there was already developed

in Gaul a system of roads, with bridges across the rivers; and there is reason to believe that in many cases the line of a Gallic road was followed later by a Roman road, which in turn is now represented by a highway or railway.

Raw materials for industry and commerce were furnished by farming, by stock raising, and by mining (III. 21, and VII. 22). The Gauls were particularly fond of horses (IV. 2), the quality of which improved under their care. It was therefore no accident which led the Romans to import Gallic horses, and which gave to the Gauls such a lead in the invention of vehicles that the Romans borrowed from them the names of two kinds of cart, *carrus* (I. 3) and *carpentum*. From the Celtic, through the Latin and French, come our words "car" and "chariot"; and through the Anglo-Saxon, our word "cart."

The horse is a constantly recurring figure on Gallic coins (Figs. 17, 18, etc.). The fine quality of the horses still raised on Gallic soil is indicated by the fact that in 1910 there were imported into the United States from France and Belgium more than 4500 horses, nearly four times as many as were imported in that year from all other European countries.

The implications of Caesar's language about importations into Gaul, in Book I (chap. 1), Book II (chap. 15), and Book VI (chap. 24) are borne out by other evidence. The most convincing proof of the influence of both Greek and Italian traders, and of the commercial progress of the country, is to be found in the extensive and varied coinage of the Gallic states<sup>1</sup> in Caesar's time. The Gauls minted their own metal, though they had not the skill to produce coins of so fine workmanship as those of the Greeks and Romans. Their coinage was still in the imitative stage, reproducing, often crudely, designs of foreign coins which circulated among them.

Not a few Gallic coins were copied from a variety of widely

---

<sup>1</sup> In the United States the word *civitas* in passages relating to Gaul should not be translated "tribe," for the reason that in this country the word "tribe" is so closely associated with the American aborigines that to many it suggests a condition of savagery.

current Macedonian coins known as *staters*. An example is Figure 16, which is thought to have been struck by the Ambarri (I. 11). The head and the two-horse chariot are unmistakable copies of the obverse and reverse designs of a stater; and the unintelligible letters on the reverse, underneath the chariot, are the work of a Gallic coin-maker who did not know Greek, and imitated, without understanding them, the letters of the Greek name ΦΙΛΙΠΠΟΥ, "of Philip," which is found on the Macedonian coin.



Figure 16. — Gallic coin, perhaps of the Ambarri.

Gold. The Macedonian coins, from which this is copied, are of fine workmanship.

The head is that of a youth. The two-horse chariot on Greek coins was associated with games.

Just as clearly of Roman origin is the type of the two-headed Janus, found on a coin of the Mediomatrici (Fig. 17). On the reverse the Gallic designer has made a fanciful use of the chariot design, which appears on Roman coins as well as Greek; the charioteer has been resolved into the graceful curves which we see above the horse, while the chariot seems to be represented by a rosette underneath the horse, symbolizing a chariot wheel. The Gallic craftsman wished to make the horse prominent.

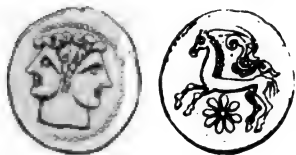


Figure 17. — Coin of the Mediomatrici.

Gold. Obverse, two-headed Janus. Reverse, design derived from a chariot type.

It is not surprising that in Caesar's time the Greek alphabet was in common use in Gaul (VI. 14), employed, for example, in making up the census lists of the Helvetians (I. 29); for Massilia, established originally as a Greek colony and trading post, was already an old city, having commercial relations with many Gallic states (p. 611).



Nevertheless we occasionally find Roman letters on Gallic coins, as in Figure 18, which reproduces a coin struck a short



Figure 18. — Arvernian coin.

Gold, alloyed with silver.

Obverse, head of Vercingetorix, spelled VERCINGETORIXS, with helmet.

Reverse, below the horse, two-handled wine jar; above, scroll-shaped ornament.

time before the downfall of Gallic power, in 52 B.C. The face on the obverse is intended to be a portrait of the Gallic leader Vercingetorix, but is highly conventional. Much more true to life is a later portrait of Vercingetorix on a Roman coin whose designer must have seen him when a captive in Rome (Fig. 145). In military matters Vercingetorix confessedly imitated the Romans (VII. 29).

Various objects of metal, pottery, and other permanent materials, of which a few examples are shown in the illustrations to the notes of this book, strengthen the conviction that while the northern parts of Gaul were more backward, the higher classes in the central and southern portions of the country in Caesar's time had adopted a more refined mode of life (I. 1); thus the terrified women of Gergovia threw down silverware to the Roman soldiers scaling the wall (VII. 47). The common people were housed in round thatched huts, but people of means had houses of stone.

Notwithstanding their use of writing for ordinary purposes, including "documents public and private" (VI. 14), the Gauls did not develop a literature. This may be due in part to the insistence of the Druids that their body of doctrine, poetic and mystical



Figure 19. — Relief, on a marble altar.

Discovered at Nîmes. The war trumpet ends in a fanciful head with wide open mouth, pointed ears, and a crest. The bronze-covered shield is skillfully imitated in the marble.

The altar was a votive offering, erected by a Roman soldier, of Oriental birth, at Nemausus, now Nîmes.

though it was, should be transmitted only by memory (VI. 14). As the Druids were the intellectual leaders of the people, their practice in this respect must have discouraged literary effort.

This all-powerful priesthood, regarding which Caesar in Book VI gives the earliest authentic information, in their teachings united a theory of the universe with the doctrine of transmigration of souls. The power of the Druids in temporal affairs came from this fact, that while acting as arbiters and judges in disputes of every kind, they were enabled to enforce their decisions through the terrible penalty of excommunication (VI. 13).

Outside the limited field of coins and minor objects the Gauls made almost no progress in art before the Roman Conquest. That they were ready for development in the fuller appreciation

of art, if not also in expression, is evident from monuments of Gallic origin dating from the earlier years of the Roman occupation, in which an awakening of the artistic impulse is manifest. An example is the relief in Figure 19, showing a Gallic oval shield with metal covering and a war-trumpet with the head of a monster. Wind instruments with heads of animals or monsters, not of Gallic origin, may be seen in collections of musical instruments today.

Gallic and British coins struck after the Conquest indicate to us the adoption of Roman fashions within a few decades after Caesar's death, not only in Gaul but even in Britain. On



Figure 20.—Coin of the Treverans or Leuci.

Bronze. Obverse, head copied from a coin of Augustus.

Reverse, bull, and inscription GERMAN[VS] INDVILLI L[IBERTVS], 'Germanus, freedman of Indutillus.'



Figure 21.—Coin of Tasciovanus, British ruler.

Gold. Obverse, tablet inscribed TASCIO, for TASCIOVANUS, between ornaments.

Reverse, horseman galloping to the right; on some of the coins he seems to be holding a trumpet. The significance of the letters SEGO is not clear.

the coin reproduced in Figure 20 we find a prominent man of the Treverans (or of the Leuci), designated in the Roman style as "Germanus, freedman of Indutillus."



Figure 22.—Coin of Tasciovanus.

Silver. Obverse, winged horse, Pegasus, walking toward the left; letters TAS, irregularly placed, an abbreviation for TASCIOVANUS.

Reverse, winged Griffin, springing toward the right.



Figure 23.—Coin of Cunobelinus.

Bronze. Inscription, CUNOBELINI, TASCIOVANI F[ILII], 'of Cunobelinus, son of Tasciovanus.'

On the reverse is a centaur with a mantle, blowing a trumpet.

Inscribed with Roman letters also are gold coins of the British Virica (Fig. 140), as well as gold and silver coins of Tasciovanus (Figs. 21, 22). Tasciovanus was a contemporary of the Emperor Augustus. He was the father of Cunobelinus, the hero of Shakespeare's drama *Cymbeline*, as a bronze coin of Cunobelinus shows (Fig. 23).



Figure 24.—Coin of Lugdunum.

Bronze. Reverse: prow of a galley with beak; above, an obelisk, and a globe emitting rays. Inscription, COPIA; the official name of the colony was COLONIA COPIA AUGUSTA LUGDUNUM.

On the obverse of this coin the heads of Julius Caesar and Augustus are shown.

Both the Griffin and the Pegasus of the silver coin (Fig. 22), and the Centaur of the bronze (Fig. 23), were designs taken from the Graeco-Roman mythology, and current in the Classical Art of the period. They may have been brought to Britain by skilled craftsmen directly from southern cities, or have been introduced by way of Gaul; in either case they confirm the inference, suggested by the Roman letters on the coins, that Roman influence was strong in Britain in the interval between Caesar's expeditions and the Roman Conquest of the island (p. 611).

Complete Romanization of at least a part of central Gaul is indicated by a coin struck soon after 31 B.C. at Lugdunum, modern Lyons, which was one of the first Roman colonies established in Gaul outside the Province (Fig. 24).

#### IV. CAESAR AND THE HISTORICAL WRITERS

The historians have written more about Julius Caesar than about any other Roman. There are, nevertheless, wide differences of opinion in regard to his motives and character.

In the eyes of some Caesar was a monster of wickedness, a despot guilty of subverting the liberties of his country. Others have viewed him as a statesman and patriot of exalted aims. To others still his career has seemed to mark the culmination of the inevitable trend of the Roman state toward absolutism, and they have interpreted it as the opportune appearance of a will and personality powerful enough to dominate, and fuse into lasting union, the inharmonious elements of a political life rapidly drifting into anarchy. Men's views of Caesar have generally been colored by their attitude toward the type of government which he established.

The extant Greek and Latin writings in which Caesar has a prominent place are now accessible in excellent translations; nearly all are included in the *Loeb Classical Library*.<sup>1</sup> Accessible in English also, with few exceptions, are the most important modern works in foreign languages dealing with Caesar and his times.

The earliest characterization of Caesar which we have, in Sallust's *Catiline* (chaps. 53, 54), forms part of a comparison between him and Cato. A biography of Caesar in Greek, together with biographies of Pompey, Crassus, Brutus, Cato, and Cicero, was included by Plutarch in his *Lives*, published near the end of the first century A.D. (translation by B. Perrin, 10 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1913-). Plutarch records

---

<sup>1</sup> The volumes of the *Loeb Classical Library*, established by James Loeb of New York, have the original text and the English translation on opposite pages (publishers, G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York).

also a number of Caesar's sayings, with the incidents which called them forth, in his *Moralia* (*Plutarch's Essays and Miscellanies*, translation revised by W. W. Goodwin, 5 vols., Boston, 1906; Vol. 1, pp. 246-248). In 120 A.D. Suetonius published a biography of Julius Caesar as the first of his *Lives of the Caesars* (translation by J. C. Rolfe, 2 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1914).

The closing period of the Roman Republic was treated with much detail by two late Greek historians, whose works in great part still survive. About the middle of the second century A.D. Appian wrote the *Civil Wars* (translation of Appian's works by Horace White, 4 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1912-13); and in the earlier part of the third century Dio Cassius composed his *Roman History* (translation by H. B. Foster, revised by E. Cary, 9 vols., *Loeb Classical Library*, 1914-). The ancient literary sources are well summarized and evaluated in the *Annals of Caesar, A Critical Biography with a Survey of the Sources*, by E. G. Sihler, which follows the life of Caesar year by year (New York, 1911).

To the ancient material relating to Caesar belong the coins struck by his order, and a number of portraits. The most important coins are interpreted by H. A. Grueber in *Coins of the Roman Republic in the British Museum* (with 123 plates; 3 vols., London, 1910). The portraits of Caesar are discussed at length, but without adequate critical preparation, in *Portraits of Julius Caesar*, by F. J. Scott (New York, 1903). The bust of Pompey in Copenhagen, three portraits of Cicero, and three of Caesar, are presented in *Greek and Roman Portraits*, by A. Hekler (New York, 1912; plates 155-161). Several gems with the portrait of Caesar are published by A. Furtwaengler, *Die Antiken Gemmen* (3 vols., Berlin, 1899, plates 45, 46).

Among the modern biographies the first place must be given to *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System*, by W. Warde Fowler (New York, 1892). Less satisfactory is *Caesar, a Sketch*, by J. A. Froude (New York, 1883).

Interesting sidelights on Caesar's career are found in *Cicero and his Friends, A Study of Roman Society in the Time of Caesar*, by G. Boissier, translated from the French (New York, 1898); *The Life of Cicero*, by Anthony Trollope (2 vols., London and New York, 1880); *Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic*, by J. L. Strachan-Davidson (New York, 1896); and *Social Life in Rome in the Age of Cicero*, by W. Warde Fowler (New York, 1909).

Still of interest for the student of Caesar, though in most respects superseded by later works, are *Lectures on the History of Rome*, by B. G. Niebuhr (3 vols., 3d edition, London, 1853); *History of the Later Roman Commonwealth*, by Thomas Arnold (2 vols., London, 1845); and *The Decline of the Roman Republic*, by George Long (5 vols., London, 1874).

Of special importance are the interpretations of Caesar's career in the fifth volume of *The History of Rome*, by Theodor Mommsen (5 vols., New York, 1895); in the first portion of *The Romans under the Empire*, by C. Merivale (reprinted in 8 volumes, New York, 1890); *The Roman Triumvirates*, by C. Merivale, a volume of the series *Epochs of Ancient History*; the third volume of the richly illustrated *History of Rome*, by V. Duruy (6 vols., London, 1883-86); the second volume of G. Ferrero's highly imaginative but suggestive *Greatness and Decline of Rome* (5 vols., New York, 1907-09); and the third volume of *The Roman Republic*, by W. E. Heitland (3 vols., Cambridge, 1909).

It would be interesting if to the diverse modern estimates of Caesar's character and life-work we could add a statement by himself regarding his aims and achievements. In default of the written word, however, we have not a few suggestions in the imagery of the coins issued by his authority, the types of which were suggested, or at least approved, by him. Thus we are warranted in believing that he wished men to recall the story of his lineage (Fig. 153) and the origin of the name Caesar (Fig. 164), as well as his victories in Gaul (Fig. 159), Spain (Fig. 161), the East, and Africa.

A suggestion of Caesar's attitude toward his task, or at least the attitude he assumed, may be conveyed by a gold coin struck in 49 B.C., after Pompey had fled across the Adriatic (Fig. 25). Here we find, on the reverse, a design symbolizing his victories in Gaul; the design of the obverse shows the head of Pietas, the deified personification of loyalty to duty, particularly duty to the gods. Pietas in this connection has no relation to the

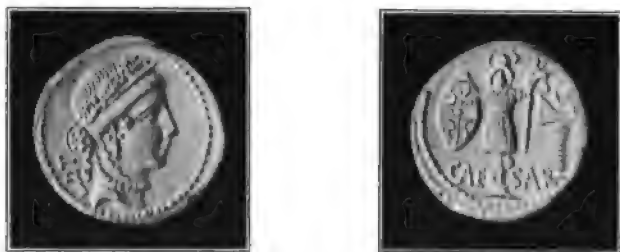


Figure 25. — Coin of Caesar struck in 49 B.C.

Gold, aureus. Obverse, head of Pietas, wearing a wreath of oak-leaves; the hair behind the head is gathered into a knot ornamented with jewels. The goddess is further adorned with an earring in the shape of a cross, and a necklace. The significance of the figure LII (52) is uncertain.

Reverse, symbols of victories in Gaul; cf. Fig. 159, p. 595.

office of Supreme Pontiff (Fig. 157). It suggests that Caesar, like the Trojan Aeneas in the Virgilian epic (Aen. I. 378), was the instrument of heaven in the accomplishment of a mission.

Illuminating studies relative to Caesar and the transformation of the Roman Republic into the Roman Empire, are *Roman Imperialism*, by J. R. Seeley, in his *Roman Imperialism and Other Lectures and Essays* (Boston, 1889); *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic*, by C. Oman, with four studies devoted to Crassus, Cato, Pompey, and Caesar (New York, 1902); *Caesar and Alexander*, in *Lectures on Modern History*, to which are added two essays dealing with ancient history, by Friedrich Schlegel (London, 1849); by suggestion rather than by direct bearing, the essay entitled *The Roman Empire and the British Empire in India*, by James Bryce, in his *Studies in History and Jurisprudence* (Oxford and New York, 1901).

Indispensable for the study of Caesar's Commentaries on the historical side are *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul* by T. Rice Holmes (2d edition, Oxford, 1911), and his *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar* (Oxford, 1907). Very useful are the *History of Julius Caesar*, by Napoleon III, with the Atlas, on which have been founded most of the maps illustrating Caesar's campaigns in Gaul (2 vols., New York, 1866); two works by C. Stoffel, *Guerre de César et d'Arioviste et premières opérations de César en l'an 702* (Paris, 1890), and *Histoire de Jules César, Guerre civile* (2 vols., with Atlas, Paris, 1887); and *Histoire de la Gaule*, by C. Jullian (4 vols., Paris, 1908-13).

Both the historical and the literary significance of Caesar's Commentaries is estimated in *The Commentaries of Caesar* by Anthony Trollope, in *Ancient Classics for English Readers* (Philadelphia, 1871); in the *History of Roman Literature* by C. L. Cruttwell (London, 1878), *History of Latin Literature* by C. A. Simcox (2 vols., New York, 1883), and *Literary History of Rome*<sup>2</sup> by J. W. Duff (London, 1914). The title of the Commentaries is treated by F. W. Kelsey in *The title of Caesar's work on the Gallic and Civil Wars* (*Transactions of the American Philological Association*, vol. 36, 1905, pp. 211-238).

#### V. CAESAR IN LITERATURE AND MYTH

Of deep human interest, and touching Caesar at many points, are the *Letters* of Marcus Cicero; among them are included a few letters written by Caesar and others intimately associated with him (edition, with full notes, by R. Y. Tyrrell and L. C. Purser, 7 vols., in part 3d edit., Dublin and London, 1901—; translation of the *Letters to Atticus* by E. O. Winstedt in the *Loeb Classical Library*, 2 vols., 1913.)

About a century after Caesar's death Lucan, reacting against the absolutism of Nero, composed the *Pharsalia*, an epic poem in ten books having for its subject the struggle between Caesar and Pompey, commencing with the crossing of the Rubicon. The poet's sympathies were with Pompey and Cato; but, even so, from the very force of his personality Caesar is the domi-



nating character. (Text with notes by C. E. Haskins, London, 1887: translation by Edward Ridley, New York, 1896.)

In modern times the singular power of Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar* has apparently deterred other dramatists from attempting the theme. The scene of the tragedy, *The False One*, by Beaumont and Fletcher (first published in 1647), is laid at Alexandria after the battle of Pharsalus; the young King Ptolemy, Achilles, and Septimius (C. III. 104), who is "the False One," all appear, as well as Cleopatra, Labienus, and Caesar, who declaims over the head of Pompey, presented to him by Achilles.

Recently John Masefield, in *The Tragedy of Pompey the Great* (New York, 1911), has skillfully developed an interpretation of Pompey's actions altogether different from the view that will present itself to most readers of Caesar's *Civil War*. Bernard Shaw's *Caesar and Cleopatra* is an amusing caricature.

Fewer historical novels concern themselves with the closing days of the Roman Republic than with the first century of the Empire. The best of them all is *A Friend of Caesar*, by W. S. Davis (New York, 1900). The hero of *The Wonderful Adventures of Phra the Phoenician*, by E. L. Arnold, son of Edwin Arnold (New York, 1890), in the first of his several eventful lives weds the daughter of a British ruler and joins with the natives in trying to prevent the landing of Caesar's forces.

To the domain of the essay, containing much suggestive generalization and psychological analysis, belong the sections and passages relating to Julius Caesar in *The Tragedy of the Caesars*, *A Study of the Characters of the Caesars of the Julian and Claudian Houses*, by S. Baring-Gould (3d edit., London, 1895); *Roman Days*, by V. Rydberg (2d edit., New York, 1887); *Imperial Purple*, by Edgar Saltus (Chicago, 1892); *Ave Roma Immortalis*, by F. M. Crawford, New York, 1902); as well as the older works, *Causes of the Grandeur and Decadence of the Romans*, by Montesquieu (new translation by J. Baker, New York, 1894; chap. 11, with the translator's note); and *The Caesars*, by Thomas de Quincey (in vol. 6 of his *Collected Writings*, edited by D. Masson, Edinburgh, 1890).

Wonderful portents accompanying the death of Caesar are described by Virgil in the first book of the *Georgics*, while the transformation of his soul into a comet is set forth by Ovid at the end of the *Metamorphoses*; thus within approximately a half century after his death the miraculous had gathered about his memory and had found literary expression.

Other marvelous stories about Caesar were current in the Roman Empire, and were reflected in later writings. The *Gesta Romanorum*, a collection of edifying tales made about the end of the thirteenth century, tells us how, as Caesar started to cross the Rubicon, a huge ghost stood in his way, and how Caesar met the challenge (Latin text edited by H. Oesterley, Berlin, 1872; trans. by C. Swan, 2 vols., London, 1824, vol. 1, p. 99).

The most persistent tale related to the safe-guarding of Caesar's ashes. In the earlier part of the first century A.D. a massive granite obelisk was brought to Rome from Egypt and erected in a circus near where St. Peter's church was afterwards built; on the top a large ball, or sphere, of bronze was placed (Fig. 26). The obelisk remained standing to modern times; until 1586, when the ball was taken down and found to be solid, many believed that it contained the ashes of Julius Caesar, placed there in order that, in the quaint language of a medieval guide-book, "as in his lifetime the whole world lay subdued before him, even so in his death the

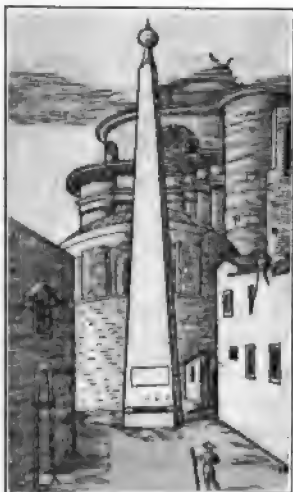


Figure 26. — Bronze ball supposed to contain the ashes of Julius Caesar.

After the murder of Julius Caesar his body was taken to the Forum, and there burned.

In the Middle Ages his ashes were supposed to be preserved in the large round ball on the top of the obelisk which, till 1586, stood at the side of St. Peter's church in Rome, and now stands in the Piazza in front of St. Peter's. (Illustration from an engraving made in 1569.)

same may lie beneath him forever" (*Mirabilia Urbis Romae*. Latin text, H. Jordan, *Topographie der Stadt Rom*, vol. 2, p. 625; translation by F. M. Nichols, London, 1889, pp. 71-72).

One version of the Swan Legend, most commonly associated with Lohengrin, tells us how a sister of Julius Caesar eloped with a Belgian prince, and in her northern home had a beautiful white swan. Her husband joined forces with Ariovistus and fell at the battle of Vesontio. Now in Caesar's army was a hero, Salvius Brabon, who was descended from the Trojan Hector. Hunting near the Rhine he saw a snow-white swan, "playfully pulling at the rope which bound a small skiff to the shore. Salvius leaped into the boat and cast it loose from its mooring. Then the bird swam before him as a guide, and he rowed after it." The swan conducted him to the sister of Caesar, who made herself known to him; he brought Caesar to her castle, and the conqueror embraced his sister with joy. Salvius asked Caesar for the widowed sister's hand; Caesar consented, and Salvius Brabon became the first Duke of Brabant (S. Baring-Gould, *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, second series, Philadelphia, 1868, pp. 332-335).

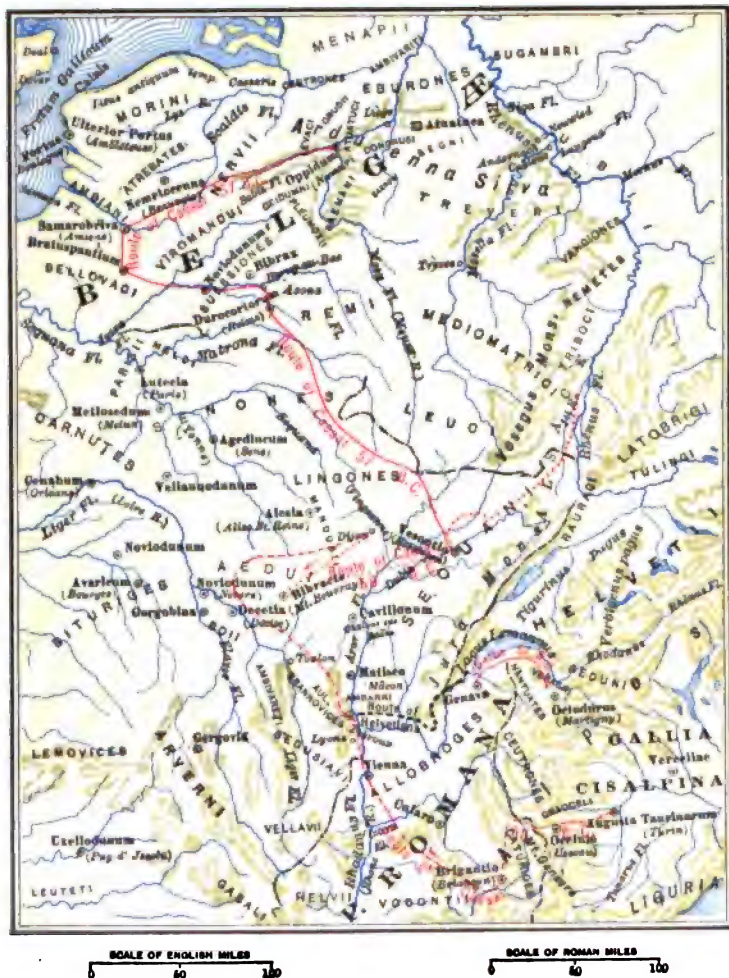
Univ. of  
California

# MAP I

## CAMPAIGNS OF 58 AND 57 B.C.

Book I, 27-54; II, 1-33; III, 1-6

To face page 1



### EXPLANATION

The route of the Helvetians to the Arar is indicated by a broken black line ; thence their line of march and Caesar's coincide, to Toulon.

## COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

### Geography of Gaul

#### *Divisions and peoples.*

**1** GALLIA est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, qui ipsōrum linguā Cetae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,

---

**Commentārius:** 'Commentary.' 273.<sup>1</sup> **primus:** 33, 36.

**1. 1. Gallia:** 2, *a*, and 286. **Gallia omnis:** 'Gaul as a whole,' contrasted with Gaul in the narrower sense, or Celtic Gaul; Celtic Gaul also is often called **Gallia**. 287, *b*. **omnis:** 26, *a*, and 80, *b*. **dīvisa:** 'divided,' the perfect passive participle of **dīvidō** used as a predicate adj. 148, *c*. B. 337, 2; A. 495; H. 640, 3. **in:** 'into.' 124, *a*. **partēs:** 'parts.' 17, *b*. **trēs:** 37, *b*, and 353, *c*. **quārum:** 'of which.' 47. Why genitive? 97, *a*. B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 1; H. 442. **ūnam:** sc. *partem*, 'one (part).' 23, *a*. Look up the three 'parts' of Gaul on the Map at the end of this book.

**2. incolunt:** 'inhabit.' 55. **Belgae:** 19, *e*; 287. **aliam** [*partem*]: 'another (part),' less precise than *alteram* (*partem*), 'a second (part),' which might have been used. 23, *a*. **Aquitāni:** sc. *incolunt*. 89, *a*. **tertiā, qui:** = *tertiā partem et incolunt, qui*, 'a third part is inhabited by those who,' lit. 'those inhabit who.' 164, *a*. **ipsōrum:** 'their own'; lit. 'of themselves.' 46. **ipsōrum linguā:** 'in their own language.' 131, *a*. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.

**3. Cetae:** sc. *appellantur*. 88, and 287, *b*. **nostrā:** *nostrā linguā*, Latin. 157, *c*. **appellantur:** 'are called.' 53. **linguā, institūtis, lēgibus:** 'in respect to language, institutions, and laws.' 142, *a*, and 234, *a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480.

---

<sup>1</sup> References in *Italic type* are to the "Companion to Caesar" and "Points to be Noted in Writing Latin," in this book; B., A., and H. refer to the Latin grammars by Bennett, Allen and Greenough, and Harkness, respectively. For other abbreviations consult the list preceding the Vocabulary.

institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis  
5 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod  
ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,  
minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea,  
quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proxi-  
10 mique sunt Germānis, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibus-  
cum continenter bellum gerunt.

4 **inter sē**: 'from one another.' 159. B. 245; A. 301, *f*; H. 502, 1. **differunt**: 'differ.' 69, *b*.

5 **Garumna**. sc. *dividit*, 'separates.' **flūmen**: 12, *e*, and 91, *a*. Derivation? 74, *d*. **Matrona**: 292. **dividit**: singular number; why? 173, *a*. B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; H. 392, 4.

6 **Hōrum**: 42, *b*, and 97, *a*. B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 2; H. 442. **fortissimi**: 'the bravest.' 27, *a*. **proptereā**: adv. meaning 'on this account'; closely connected with **quod**, the two words together being translated 'because.' Three reasons are given for the bravery of the Belgians; what are they?

7. **cultū**: 'mode of life,' referring to the outward appearances of civilization. 20. **atque**: 233, *a*. **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement' in intellectual interests and in feeling. 10, *f*. **prōvinciae**: 'of the Province.' 94, *a*, and 290. **longissimē absunt**: 'are furthest removed.' 34, *a*, and 66, *a*; also, 183, *a*.

8. **minimē** — **saepe**: 'very rarely'; lit. 'least often.' 35. **eōs**: 44, and 160, *b*. **mercātōrēs**: 'traders' from the Province, especially from Massilia, followed the course of the Rhone, the Saône, and the Loire, so that naturally they did not often go so far north as the Belgian country. **commeant**: 'make their way to'; lit. 'go and come.' 53. **ea**: 'those things,' object of *important*. 160, *c*. Caesar seems to have had in mind particularly the importation of wine (II. 15; IV. 2).

9. **ad effēminandōs animōs**: 'to weaken the courage.' 230, (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503, 506; H. 628. **animōs**: 6, *a*, and 92, *a*. **per-  
tinent**: 'tend.' 54. **important**: 'import.' 53, and 176, *a*.

10. **proximique sunt**: 'and they are nearest.' 33, and 233, *b*. **Germānis**: why dat.? 108, *a*. B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. **trāns**: here 'on the other side of.' 122, *a*. **quibuscum**: 125, *c*.

11. **continenter**: 'continually.' **bellum gerunt**: 'they wage war.' 6, *a*, and 55.

Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

15



Figure 27. — Modern road in the Jura Mountains.

In Caesar's time there were only trails, over which the migrating Helvetians with their carts could not pass; no such barrier protected them from the Germans.

12. **Quā dē causā**: 'For this reason.' 167. B. 251, 6; A. 308, f; H. 510. **quoque**: 'also.' **reliquōs**: 'the rest of the.' 171, a. **Gallōs**: only the inhabitants of Celtic Gaul are meant, as indicated in l. 3; no comparison with the Belgians and the Aquitanians is implied. 118, a. **virtūte**: 'in valor.' 142, a. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480.

13. **praecēdunt**: 'excel.' 113, b. **ferē**: 'almost.' **cotidiānis**: 'every day'; lit. 'daily.' 22, b. **proeliis**: 'in battle'; lit. 'by means of battles.' 131, a. **cum**: the preposition *cum* is distinguished from the conjunction *cum* only by the sense and the connection.

14. **contendunt**: 'contend.' 55. **cum**: 185, a. **aut** . . . **aut**: 'either . . . or.' 235, b. **suis**: 'their own,' referring to the Helvetians. 158, a. **finibus**: 'country'; lit. 'boundaries.' 14, b, and 127, a. B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464, 1. **eōs**: translate as if *Germānōs*, 'the Germans,' in order to avoid using 'them' and 'they' with reference to two different peoples in the same sentence. **prohibent**: 'are keeping (the Germans) out.' **ipsi**: 'themselves,' 162, a. There is no detailed record of these border raids.

15. **eōrum**: translate as if *Germānōrum*. **finibus**: 124, a.



[Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.]

### The Campaign against the Helvetians. 2-29

*Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.*

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgni

16-25. **Eōrum . . . septentriōnēs**: there is reason for believing that this passage was not written by Caesar but was added after his time by some one who thought it worth while to give with greater detail the boundaries of the three divisions of Gaul mentioned by Caesar at the beginning of the chapter; the style is forced and difficult. If it is omitted, the transition from the statement about the Helvetians, in lines 12-15, to the activities of the Helvetian leader, Orgetorix, at the beginning of the second chapter, becomes easy and natural. Translation:

'One part of Gaul taken as a whole' (lit. 'of them'), 'which it has been said the Celts occupy, begins at the river Rhone; it is bounded by the Garonne river, the Ocean, and the country of the Belgians; on the side where the Sequanians and Helvetians are it extends also to the river Rhine; it lies to the north. The country of the Belgians commences at the most distant borders of Celtic Gaul and extends to the lower part of the river Rhine; it faces north and east. Aquitania extends from the Garonne river to the Pyrenees mountains and that part of the Ocean which is off Spain; it faces northwest.'

2. 1. **Apud**: 122, a. **longē**: 153, b. **nōbilissimus**: 'highest in rank.' 27, a, and 353, a. **dītissimus**: 31.

2. **Orgetorix**: 10, c. **M.**: = *Marcō*. 19, a. **M. . . cōn-**  
**sulibus**: = 61 B.C. 144, b, (1), and 240, a. B. 227, 1; A. 419, a;  
H. 489. **rēgni**: 'of kingly power,' objective genitive. 6, a, and 102.

cupiditāte inductus, coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent; *perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.*

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiū continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō

3. **cupiditāte**: 'by a desire.' 10, *f*, and 135, *a*. B. 219; A. 404, *b*; H. 475, 1. **inductus**: 'led on.' 226, *b*, and 148, *b*. **coniūratiōnem**: 'conspiracy.' 12, *c*. **nōbilitātis**: here used as a collective noun, lit. 'of the nobility'; trans. 'among the nobles.' 10, *f*, and 92, *b*. **fēcit**: 57, *b*. **civitātī**: 10, *f*, and 105. B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; H. 426, 2.

4. **persuāsit**: 'persuaded.' 79, *b*. **ut . . . exirent**: 'to go out,' 'to migrate'; kind of clause? 199, *a*. B. 295, 1; A. 563; H. 565. **cum omnibus cōpiis**: 'with all (their) effects,' as we say, "bag and baggage." 137, *a*. **exirent**: plural because *civitātī*, '(his) state,' to which the unexpressed subject refers, is thought of as if it were *civibus*, 'the people of (his) state.' 68, *b*; 173, *b*, and 238, *A*. B. 254, 4, *a*; H. 389, 1.

5. **perfacile . . . potiri**: indirect discourse, dependent on the idea of saying in *persuāsit*. 212, *a*, and *c*, (5); 213, *b*. B. 314, 2; A. 579, 580; H. 641-643. **perfacile esse**: '(saying) that it was exceedingly easy.' The subject of *esse* is *potiri*, 'to obtain possession of.' 222, *b*. Why is *perfacile* neuter? 148, *d*. **virtūte**: 142, *a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **omnibus**: 107, *a*. B. 187, III, 1; A. 370; H. 429. **praestarent**: 'they excelled.' 53, and 184, *a*. B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598. **tōtius**: 23, *a*.

6. **tōtius Galliae**: 'of the whole (of) Gaul.' 102. **imperiō**: 'sovereignty.' Why ablative? 131, *c*. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477. **potiri**: 60, and 61, *a*, (4).

7. **Id**: acc.; 'that (course)'. 117, *a*, and 160, *c*. B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 369; H. 426, 6. **hōc**: 'on this account,' referring to what follows. 135, *a*, and 161, *a*. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475. **facilius**: 'the more easily.' 34, *a*. **eīs**: 44, and 105. **undique**: 'on all sides.' **loco nātūrā**: 'by natural features.' 131, *a*. How lit.?

8. **continentur**: 'are hemmed in'; why indic.? 183, *a*. **ūnā ex parte**: 'on one side,' the north side. 126, *c*. **flūmine**: 131, *a*. **lātissimō**: 'very wide.' 153, *a*.

simō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānis  
 10 dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter  
 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine  
 Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus



Figure 28. — Long summit of the Jura range.

This range formed a natural barrier between the country of the Helvetians and that of the Sequanians, and now carries part of the boundary between France and Switzerland.

9. **altissimō**: here 'very deep,' but in l. 10 'very high.' **qui**: the antecedent is *Rhēnō*. 163, a. **agrum**: here 'territory.' **ā Germānis**: 'from (the territory of) the Germans.' 282, and 127, c.

10. **alterā**: for *secundā*, 'second,' as often. **monte Iūrā**: 'by the Jura range'; *mōns* refers sometimes to a single mountain, sometimes to a group or chain of mountains, or to a moderate elevation.

11. **tertiā**: sc. *ex parte*. **lacū**: 20, b.

12. **Rhodanō**: the part of the Rhone just below Geneva; see Map 1. **prōvinciam**: 290. **nostram**: i.e. *Rōmānam*. 157, c. **Helvētiis**: 282. Caesar does not deem it necessary to give the boundary on the fourth or east side, in the Alps.

13. **His rēbus**: 'Because of these conditions' (lit. 'these things'). 135, a. **fiēbat**: 'it came about.' 70, a. **ut . . . possent**: subject of *fiēbat*. 203, (1). B. 297, 2; A. 569, 1; H. 571, 1. **et . . .**

facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte, hominēs bellandī cupidī, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multi-<sup>15</sup> tūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

et: 233, *a*.    minus lātē vagārentur: 'they were more restricted in their movements,' lit. 'wandered less broadly,' than they wished. 177, *a*.    minus: 36.

14. finitimis: '(their) neighbors.' 107, *b*, and 154, *a*.    B. 187, III, 2; A. 370; H. 429, 1.    Inferre; 'wage.' 69, *b*.    possent: 66, *b*. quā ex parte: 'and on that account.' 167.    hominēs: in apposition to the subject of afficiēbantur, '(being) men.' 12, *b*, and 91, *b*.

15. bellandī: 'of waging war.' 53, and 230, (1).    B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1.    cupidī: 'fond (of).' 22, *b*.    magnō dolōre afficiēbantur: 'they were sorely' (lit. 'with great vexation') 'troubled.' 67, *b*.    dolōre: 11, *a*, and 136, *b*.    Prō: 'Considering.' 126, *a*.    multitūdine hominum: '(their) population'; how lit.? The number was 263,000 (chap. 29). The Helvetian territory now supports a population of about 2,250,000.

16. autem: 236, *b*.    glōriā belli atque fortitudinis: '(their) reputation for war' (lit. 'of war') 'and for bravery.' 102.

17. angustōs finēs: 'too small' (lit. 'narrow') 'territories.' 113, *a*. sē habēre: 'that they had.' 178, and 213, *a*.    arbitrābantur: 'they thought,' lit. 'were thinking.' 176, *a*.    quī: i.e. finēs.    in longitudinem: 'in length.' 76.

18. milia passuum: 'miles.' Length of the Roman 'pace' and Roman 'mile'? 243, *b*.    milia: 38, *a*, and 118, *a*.    B. 181; A. 425; H. 417.    passuum: 20, *b*, and 97, *a*.    CCXL: 36, and 38, *b*. lātitudinem: 'breadth.' 81.    CLXXX: centum octōgintā, sc. milia passuum. 38, *b*. As the actual distance across the Helvetian territory was about 80 Roman miles, it has been suggested that Caesar wrote LXXX, octōgintā, which was changed to CLXXX by an error in copying.    patēbant: 'extended.' 64. The territory occupied by the Helvetians comprised a large portion, or the whole, of the modern Swiss cantons of Vaud, Neuchâtel, Basel, Freiburg, Bern, Solothurn, and Aargau. At an earlier period the Helvetians had lived north of the Rhine, but they had been forced to the south side by the Germans.

*They make preparations; Orgetorix forms a conspiracy.*

3. His rēbus adducti, et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximis civitātibus

3. 1. His rēbus adducti: 'Prompted by these considerations.' adducti: agrees with the unexpressed subject of *cōstituērunt*. auctōritāte: 'by the influence.' 135, a. permōti: 'stirred to action.'

2. cōstituērunt: 'they (i.e. Helvetii) determined'; followed by comparāre, 'to make ready.' 221, a. B. 328, 1; A. 457; H. 607, 1. ea: 'those things'; after *comparāre*. 113, a, and 160, c. ad proficiscendum: 'for emigration'; lit. 'for setting out.' 230, (3). B. 338, 3; A. 506; H. 628. pertinērent: subjunctive as giving the thought of the Helvetians; 'were (as they thought) necessary,' lit. 'pertained (to).' 212, d. B. 323; A. 592; H. 649, 1.

3. iūmentōrum: 'draft-animals'; horses, mules, and oxen. 97, a. carrōrum: two-wheeled 'carts,' drawn largely by oxen. A Helvetian ox yoke, which was strapped to the horns of the oxen, is shown in Fig. 29.



Figure 29. — Helvetian yoke, of wood, found in 1910.

Found near Lake Neuchâtel, with a wooden shield, a spear, the remains of a cart and the skeleton of the driver, preserved by the water into which he had tumbled with his cart, perhaps at night.

From the Helvetian cattle the hardy Alpine cattle of Switzerland are descended. quam maximum: 'the largest possible.' 153, c. B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2. numerum: 'number.' 113, a.

4. coēmere: 'to buy up.' coēmere, facere, cōfirmāre: after *cōstituērunt*. 221, a. sēmentēs quam maximās: 'as large sowings as possible.' 14, b, and 153, c.

5. in itinere: 'on the way.' 18, c. cōpia frūmentī suppeteret: 'there might be an adequate supply of grain,' lit. 'a supply of grain might be at hand.' 90, b. suppeteret: 196, a. B. 282; A. 531; H. 568. proximis: 'neighboring,' lit. 'nearest.' 33.

*pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.* Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet 10 Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civi-

6. *pācem et amicitiam*: '(relations of) peace and friendship.' *cōfirmāre*: '(and) to establish.' 234, a. *Ad . . . cōficiendās*: gerundive construction, 'to complete these preparations,' lit. 'for those things to be completed.' 230, (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503; H. 626, 1.

7. *biennium satis esse*: 'that two years would be sufficient.' 212, d, and 214, a. *biennium*: 79, b. *sibi*: 'for them.' 40, b, and 158, a. *dūxērunt*: here a verb of thought; 'they reckoned.' 213, a. *in*: 'for.' *profectiōnem*: '(their) departure.' 157, a.

8. *cōfirmant*: historical present; trans. by a past tense, 'they fixed.' 175, b. Other historical presents which should be translated by a past tense are *dēligitur*, l. 9; *persuādet*, l. 10 and l. 17; *dat*, l. 18; *probat*, l. 19; *cōfirmat*, l. 23; *dant*, l. 25; *spērant*, l. 26.

9. *Ad . . . cōficiendās*: 'to carry out these arrangements.' *dēligitur*: 'was chosen.' *sibi*—*suscēpit*: 'took upon himself.' 104, a. B. 187, 1; A. 362; H. 424.

10. *lēgatiōnem*, etc.: 'the office of envoy to the states.' 150, d.

11. *Casticō*: 105. *Catamantāloedis*: 99. *filiō*, *Sēquanō*: 91, a. B. 169, 2; A. 282; H. 393. *pater*: 11, b. *rēgnum*: 'the chief authority'; at this time there was no hereditary or absolute monarchy among the Gauls. 1, and 289, a.

12. *annōs*: 118, a. B. 181, 1; A. 423; H. 417. *obtinuerat*: 'had held.' 79, b. *senātū populi Rōmāni*: 'the senate of the Roman people,' instead of *senātū populōque*, 'the senate and the Roman people,' because the Roman senate had the right to confer honorary titles on foreign rulers without a popular vote.

13. *amicus*: 'friend.' 88. B. 168, 2, b; A. 284; H. 393, 8. Such titles were conferred as a recognition of services rendered, or as a means of gaining favor.

tāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque  
 15 Dumnorigi Aeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore princi-  
 pātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbi acceptus erat,  
 ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet, eīque filiam suam in māt-  
 trimōnium dat.

*Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea  
 20 quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn  
 esse dubium, quin tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētiū pos-*

14. suā: 157, b. ut . . . occupāret: 'to seize.' 199, a, and 177, b. quod: not 'because.' item: 'also.'

15. Dumnorigi: 10, c, and 105. frātrī: 11, c. Diviciāci: 19, d. eō tempore: 'at that time.' 147, a. principātum: 'the foremost place'; whether the dominant position of Dumnorix among the Aeduans was due wholly to his influence, or whether in 61 B.C. he had also a magistracy, is not indicated.

16. civitāte: '(his) state,' i.e. the Aeduan state. obtinēbat: force of the imperfect? 175, a. maximē acceptus: 'very acceptable.' 30. plēbi: 108, a. Our English expression corresponding with *plēbi acceptus* is 'popular with the masses.'

17. ut idem cōnārētur: 'to attempt the same thing'; the construction is similar to that of *ut . . . occupāret* above. 61, a, (1). idem: 45, and 117, a. ei: 104, a. in māttrimōnium: 'in marriage.'

18. dat: 67, a, and 175, b.

19. Perfacile . . . possent: indirect discourse depending on *probat*. 213, a. Perfacile: in predicate after *esse*, as in chap. 2, l. 5. 212, c, (5). factū: 'of accomplishment,' lit. 'in respect to the doing.' 232. B. 340, 2; A. 510, N. 2; H. 635, 1. esse: 214, a. illis probat: 'he (Orgetorix) showed them.' 104, a. cōnāta: '(their) undertakings.' 157, a. perficere: 'to carry through'; subject of *esse*. 57, b; 79, b, and 222, b.

20. suae: 'his own,' emphatic. 157, b. imperium: 'the sovereign power.' 74, b. obtentūrus esset: 'he was going to seize.' 63. Why subjunctive? 214, a. nōn esse dubium: 'that there was no doubt.'

21. dubium: in predicate; neuter because the subject of *esse* is a clause. quin . . . possent: 'that the Helvetians were the most powerful (people) in all Gaul,' lit. 'were able the most of the whole (of) Gaul.' 201, b. B. 298; A. 558, a; H. 595, 1. Galliae: 97, b. B.

*sent; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat.*

Hāc ōratiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant; et, rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissi-<sup>25</sup> mōs populōs, tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

*The conspiracy is revealed; Orgetorix dies.*

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur.

201, 1; A. 346, a, 2; H. 442. **plūrimum**: neuter acc. used substantively. 32, and 118, b. B. 176, 3, a; A. 214, d; H. 416, 2.

22. **sē suis cōpiis**: 'that he with his own means.' 167, b, and 131, a. **exercitū**: not 'army' but 'armed retinue,' like that with which Orgetorix afterwards overawed the judges, as related in the next chapter. **illis**: 104, a. **illis rēgna conciliātūrum** [esse]: 'that he would get kingships for them.' 89, c.

23. **cōfirmat**: 'he (Orgetorix) assured (them).'

24. **Hāc ōratiōne adductī**: 'Won over by this presentation.' **inter sē**: 169. **fidem et iūs iūrandum**: trans. 'an oath-bound pledge of good faith,' lit. 'good faith and oath'; hendiadys. 238, d.

25. **rēgnō occupātō**: 'having seized the supreme power.' 144, a. B. 227, 2; A. 420, 1; H. 489. **per**: 'with the help of.' 123, a. **potentissimōs ac firmissimōs**: 'very powerful and very firmly established.' 163, a.

26. **populōs**: the Helvetians, the Sequanians, and the Aeduan. **Galliae**: after *potiri*. 131, d. B. 212, 2; A. 410 a; H. 458, 458, 3. **sēsē posse spērant**: 'they hoped that they would be able.' 213, a. **potiri**: after *posse*. 221, a.

4. 1. **Ea rēs**: 'The matter,' i.e. Orgetorix's scheme; lit. 'that thing.' 160, d. **Helvētiis**: why dat.? **per indicium**: 'through (the agency of) informers'; lit. 'through information.' 92, b, and 123, a. **est ēnūntiāta**: 'was reported.' 172, a. **Mōribus suis**: 'In accordance with their customs,' as distinguished from the Roman procedure. 136, c. B. 220, 3; A. 418, a; H. 475, 3.

2. **ex vinculis**: 'in chains.' 126, c. **causam dicere**: 'to plead his case.' 221, a. **coēgērunt**: 'they compelled.' 79, b.

3. **damnātum**: agrees with *eum* understood as object of *sequi*; 'if



Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum mag-

condemned.' 209. B. 337, 2, *b*; A. 496; H. 638, 2. **poenam**: subject of *sequi*; 'the penalty,' defined by the following *ut*-clause. **oportēbat**: 73, *a*, *b*. **poenam sequi oportēbat**: 'the penalty



Figure 30. — Gallic standard-bearer.

would inevitably follow,' lit. 'it was necessary that the penalty follow.' **igni**: 14, *b*, and 131, *a*. **ut igni cremārētur**: 'of being burned by fire,' lit. 'that he should be burned by fire.' 203, (4). B. 297, 3; A. 561, *a*, and 570; H. 571, 4. The Gauls punished some offenses by burning alive, and sometimes offered human sacrifices (VI. 16, 19; VII. 4).

4. **Diē cōstitutā**: 'On the day appointed.' 21, *a*, and 147, *a*. B. 230; A. 423; H. 486. **dictionis**: dependent on *Diē*; 'for the pleading.' 102. **iudicium**: 'the (place of) judgment,' 'the trial.'

5. **familiam**: 'slaves'; lit. 'body of slaves,' taken collectively. **ad**: adv. modifying *decem*, 'about'; Caesar often gives a round number where it is impossible to be exact. **hominum**: 12, *b*, and 97, *a*. **milia**: appositive of *familiam*. 38, *a*, and 91, *a*.

6. **olientēs**: 'retainers.' 17, *c*. **obaerātōs**: 'debtors.' In Gaul debtors who were unable to pay might be forced into bondage (VI. 13).

num numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum civitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magis-<sup>10</sup> trātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

*The Helvetians complete their preparations to migrate.*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.

7. eōdem: 'to the same place,' the place of judgment. condūxit: 'brought,' lit. 'led together.' per eōs: 'with their help,' lit. 'by means of them.' 123, a.

8. dīceret: 196, a. B. 282; A. 530, 531; H. 568. nē . . . ēripuit: 'he evaded the pleading of his case,' lit. 'he rescued himself that he might not plead his case'; Orgetorix overawed the judges so that they did not dare proceed with the trial.

9. incitāta: 'aroused.' 148, b. iūs suum: 'its right' to call traitors to account. exsequi: 'enforce.' 200, b.

10. cōnārētur, cōgerent: 185, c. B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II, 1. Force of the imperfect tense? hominum: 98, a. agrīs: 'the country.' 7, a, and 130, a. magistrātūs: 'the public officials'; here evidently the local officers are meant. 82, b.

11. mortuus est: 'died.' 57, c, and 176, a. neque abest suspiciō: 'and there is ground for suspecting,' lit. 'nor is there lacking (ground for) suspecting.' 12, c, and 233, a.

12. ut: meanings of *ut*? See Vocab. quīn . . . cōnsciverit: 'that he committed suicide,' lit. 'that he himself inflicted death upon himself.' 201, b. B. 298; A. 558; H. 595, I. mortem: 17, c.

5. 1. Post: 122, a. eius: i.e. *Orgetorigis*. nihilō minus: 'nevertheless'; lit. 'by nothing less.' 140. B. 223; A. 414; H. 479. id quod: 160, c.

2. cōnantur: 175, b. ut . . . exeant: explains *id*. 203, (4). From the fact that, notwithstanding the treason and death of Orgetorix, the Helvetians carried out the plan of migrating, it is evident that behind the movement there was a general cause stronger than the influence of

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrun, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

any individual. It seems probable that this cause was the pressure of the Germans, with whom, as stated in chapter I, the Helvetians were constantly at war.

3. **Ubi iam**: 'As soon as'; lit. 'When now.' **rem**: 'undertaking.' **parātōs**: 'ready.' 148, c. **oppida**: 'fortified towns.' 6, a.

4. **numerō**: 142, a, and 85. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **ad**: adverb, as in chap. 4, l. 5. **vicōs**: 'villages,' unfortified. **quadringentōs**: 'four hundred.' 36.

5. **reliqua**: 171, a. **prīvāta aedificia**: 'buildings belonging to individuals,' not in the walled towns or villages. **incendunt**: 'they set fire to.'

6. **praeter quod**: i.e. *praeter id (frūmentum) quod*. **sēcum**: 'with them.' 125, c. **portātūrī erant**: 'they were going to take.' 63. **combūrun**: 'they burned.' 175, b. **domum**: 'home.' 119, b. B. 182, 1, b; A. 427, 2; H. 419, 1.

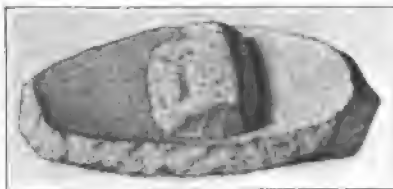


Figure 31. — Ancient Gallic mill.

Of sandstone. The small grinder was worked by hand over the grain in the hollow of the bed-stone, which was about 19 inches long.

7. **reditiōnis**: 'of returning.' 12, c, and 102. **spē**: how declined? 21, b and c. **spē sublātā**: 'as a result of taking away the hope,' lit. 'the hope having been taken away.' 144, b, (3). **pericula**: 'dangers.' 6, a. **subeunda**: 'meet,' lit. 'to be met.' 68, b, and 230, (3). B. 339, 2; A. 503; H. 628.

8. **essent**: 196, a. B. 282; A. 531, 1; H. 568. **trium**: 37, b. **mēnsium**: 14, b. **trium mēnsium**: 'for (lit. 'of') three months.' 100, a. **molita cibāria**: 'ground rations.' The grain was to be

Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, 10  
 uti, eōdem ūsi cōsiliō, oppidīs suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā  
 cum eis proficiscantur; Boiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum in-  
 coluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque  
 oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

---

ground to coarse flour before starting, in contrast with the Roman cus-  
 tom of carrying unground grain on campaigns (317); probably the  
 difficulty of carrying the stone mills, in addition to their other effects,  
 occasioned the order (Fig. 31). **quemque**: 49, *a*, and 170, *b*. **sibi**  
**quemque efferre**: 'that each one for himself should carry away.' 178.

9. **domō**: 20, *c*, and 130, *b*. **B.** 229, 1, *b*; **A.** 427, 1; **H.** 462, 4.  
**efferre**: 69, *b*. **B.** 331, 11; **A.** 563, *a*; **H.** 614. **iubent**: '(and) they  
 gave orders.' 200, *b*, and 234, *a*. On an allowance of three quarters  
 of a pound of coarse flour per day for each person, more than 12,000 tons  
 would be needed to feed 368,000 people (chap. 29) for 90 days. If each  
 cart carried a ton, more than 12,000 carts would have been required to  
 transport the supplies, and perhaps half as many more for other purposes;  
 but it is hardly probable that the Helvetians and their allies took so  
 great a quantity of supplies as the order contemplated. If we reckon  
 20 feet to a cart, 18,000 carts in single file would form a line 68 miles long.

10. **Rauracis**: why dat.? The Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi were  
 apparently north of the Helvetians (Map 1), and particularly exposed to  
 the attacks and inroads of the Germans; hence their readiness to join the  
 Helvetians in migrating. **et . . . et**: 234, *a*. **finitimis**: '(their)  
 neighbors.' 91, *a*, and 157, *a*.

11. **uti . . . proficiscantur**: trans. by an infinitive, as *ut . . . ex-*  
*trent* in chap. 2, l. 4. 199, *a*, and 61, *a*, (3). **ūsi**: 'adopting,' or 'to  
 adopt'; lit. 'having used.' 61, *a*, (3), and 228, *a*. **cōsiliō**: 'plan.'  
 131, *c*. **B.** 218, 1; **A.** 410; **H.** 477. **oppidīs suis vicisque ex-**  
**ūstis**: 'having burned' (or 'to burn') 'their towns and villages,' lit.  
 'their towns and villages having been burned.' 144, *b*, (2). **B.** 227;  
**A.** 419; **H.** 489. **finā**: adv.

12. **eīs**: 'Helvetiis.' 160, *b*, and 137, *a*. **Boiōs**: N. to VI, 24, l. 3.

13. **agrum Nōricum**: 'the territory of the Norici,' corresponding,  
 in general, with the western part of Austria south of the Danube, between  
 Bavaria and Hungary. **trānsierant**: 'had passed over.' 68, *b*.

14. **oppugnārant**: 'had taken' by storming. 340. Full form?  
 64, *a*, (1). **B.** 116, 1; **A.** 181, *a*; **H.** 238. **receptōs sociōs sibi**

*Of two possible routes they choose that through the Province.*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut s facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod

**asciscunt:** 'they received and associated with themselves' (lit. 'to themselves') 'as allies.' 228, a. B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639. **sociōs:** 115, a. Cf. N. to IV, 3, l. 4.

6. 1. **Erant:** 'There were.' 90, a. **omnīnō:** 'only.' duo: 37, b. **itineribus:** omit in translation. 165, a. B. 251, 3; A. 307, a; H. 399, 1. **domō:** as in chap. 5, l. 9.

2. **possent:** subj. of characteristic. 194, a. B. 283; A. 535; H. 591, 5. **ūnum, alterum** (l. 5): sc. *iter*. 91, c. B. 169, 5; A. 282, a; H. 393, 4. **per Sēquanōs:** 282. **difficile:** 'difficult.' 29.

3. **inter . . . Rhodanum:** on the right bank of the Rhone. There was no route across the Jura range practicable for so large a force, (Fig. 27), while the passage down the left bank of the Rhine, and westward between the Jura and the Vosges Mountains (Map 1), was left out of consideration, not only (we may assume) because it was less direct, but also because it was exposed to the attacks of Ariovistus. **vix:** 'hardly.' **quā:** 'where'; translate as if the order were *quā vix*. **singuli:** 'one at a time.'

4. **dūcerentur:** 'could' (lit. 'would') 'be drawn along'; subj. of characteristic, the relative adverb *quā* having the force of a relative pronoun. The narrowest point of the route is at the "Mill-race Gorge," or Pas de l'Écluse (Fig. 32), 19 Roman miles (about 17½ English miles; 243, b), below Geneva. See Map 2. **mōns altissimus:** Mt. Crédo, now pierced by a tunnel, 2½ miles long, through which passes the railroad from Geneva to Lyons. **autem:** 'moreover.' 236, a and b. **impendēbat:** 'overhung.' 54.

5. **perpaucī:** 'very few' men, posted on the heights above the road; see Fig. 32. Force of *per*? 79, b, and Vocab. **prohibēre:** sc. *ed̄s*. **possent:** 197, a. B. 284, 1; A. 537, 1; H. 570. **prōvinciam nostram:** 157, c, and 290.

6. **multō:** 'much,' lit. 'by much.' 140. **facilius:** 29. **expeditius:** 'more convenient.'

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs <sup>10</sup> pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum



Figure 32. — Mill-race Gorge (Pas de l'Écluse), looking down the Rhone.

7. **Allobrogum**: 19, *c*. **nūper**: 'recently,' in 61 B.C., after a revolt; the Allobroges were first conquered by Q. Fabius Maximus, in 121 B.C. (I. 45). **pācātī erant**: 'had been subdued.' 53, and 192.

8. **fluit**: 'flows.' **is**: 'it.' 160, *b*. **nōn nullis**: 'some.' 23, *a*. **locīs**: 6, *c*, and 145, *c*. **vadō trānsitur**: 'is fordable,' lit. 'is crossed by a ford.' 134, *a*, and 68, *c*.

9. **Extrēmum**: 'The most remote,' lit. 'utmost,' from the point of view of Rome. 33.

10. **finibus**: 108, *a*. B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. **pōns**: 17, *c*. **Helvētiōs**: 282.

11. **pertinet**: 'reaches across.' **Allobrogibus**: 105. **vel** . . . **vel**: 235, *b*. **persuāsūrōs**: sc. *esse*. 89, *c*; 213, *a*, and 214, *a*. **nōndum** . . . **vidērentur**: 'did not yet seem' to the Helvetians; Why is *vidērentur* subjunctive? 183, *a*.

bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vi coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, 15 quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

*Caesar hastens to Geneva, and parleys with the Helvetians.*

7. Caesari cum id nūtiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem

12. **bonō animō**: 'kindly disposed,' lit. 'of kindly feeling'; in predicate after *vidērentur*. 143, b. B. 224, 1; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **in**: here 'toward.' **existimābant**: 'they believed.'

13. **vi**: 'by force.' 18, a. **coāctūrōs**: i.e. *sēsē* (the Helvetians) *eōs* (the Allobroges) *coāctūrōs esse*. **ut . . . paterentur**: 'to permit,' substantive clause after *persuāsūrōs* (*esse*), *coāctūrōs* (*esse*). 199, a. **eōs**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs*; N. to chap. 1, l. 14. **ire**: 68, a.

14. **Omnibus . . . comparātis**: 'when all preparations had been completed.' 144, b, (2). How lit.? **dicunt**: 'they appointed.'

15. **quā diē**: 'on which.' 147, a, and 165, a. B. 230; A. 423; H. 486. **ad ripam**: 'on the bank' across from the Province; the north bank of the Rhone. **convenient**: 'they should assemble'; subjunctive of purpose, as if *quā* were *ut eā*, 'that on that day.' 193. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **diēs**: gender? 21, a.

16. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs*, 'the fifth day before the Calends of April,' March 28 by our calendar. 241, a, b. B. 371, 5; A. 631; H. 754, III, 2. **L. . . cōsulibus**: 58 B.C. 240, a, and 144, b, (1).

7. 1. **Caesari**: 19, c, and 353, a. **nūtiātum esset**: 'had been reported.' 185, c. B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II, 1. **eōs . . . cōnārī**: infinitive clause in apposition with *id*; the gist of the report, in the direct form, was *Helvētiis per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnantur*. 214, a.

2. **mātūrat**: 'he hastened.' 255, 256. **urbe**: Rome, which by way of distinction was "the city." 17, b.

3. **quam maximis potest itineribus**: stronger than *quam maximis itineribus*; 'with the utmost possible speed.' 153, c. How lit.?

contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnōs in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgātīōnis Nam-

**Galliā ulteriōrem** : here including the Province, Caesar's immediate destination. 286, and 290.

4. **ad** : 'to the vicinity of.'

120, *a*. **pervenit** : 'came,' lit. 'comes through.' If, as Plutarch says, Caesar arrived at the Rhone on the eighth day after leaving Rome, he must have traveled at the rate of about 100 Roman miles (about 92 English miles; 243, *b*) per day. **Prōvinciae . . . imperat** : 'he levied upon the Province.' 106, *a*. B. 187, 1; A. 369; H. 426, 1.

5. **mīlitum** : 10, *b*. Legionary soldiers are meant. (Fig. 33.)

6. **legiō** : this 'legion' was the tenth, afterwards famous. 307, *c*. **ūna** : 23, *a*. **ad** : 'near.' **pontem . . . rescindi** : 'that the bridge be broken down.' 200, *b*.

8. **adventū** : 'approach.' 20, *b*. **certiōrēs factī sunt** : 'were informed,' lit. 'were made more certain.' 115, *c*. **lēgātōs** : 'as envoys'; predicate accusative. 6, *a*, and 115, *a*.

9. **mittunt** : 'sent.' 175, *b*.



Figure 33. — Roman legionary soldier.

He has a cuirass, a crested helmet, oval shield, and pike. Caesar's legionaries had oblong shields.



10 *meius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent,*

*Sibi esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.*

15 *Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris*

**nōbilissimōs**: 'the most distinguished men.' 154, *a*. **cuius lēgationis**: 'and in this delegation'; lit. 'of which delegation.' 167.

10. **principem**: 'foremost.' 26, *b*, and 10, *a*. **qui dicerent**: 'in order to say.' 193, *a*. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

12. **Sibi . . . liceat**: 212, *a*, *b*, and *c*, (4). **Sibi esse in animō**: 'that it was their intention'; less freely, 'that they had it in mind,' *Sibi* being a dative of possession. 111, and 214, *a*; also, 178. **sine**: 'without.' 125, *a*. **ullō**: 23, *a*. **maleficiō**: 'wrong-doing'; we should say 'without doing any harm.'

13. **facere**: subject of *esse*. 222, *b*. **habērent**: 214, *a*. **nūllum**: emphatic position. 353, *d*. **rogāre**: sc. *sē*, '(and) that they requested.' 215, and 234, *a*.

14. **eius voluntāte**: 'with his consent.' 138. **ut . . . liceat**: 'that permission might be granted'; subjunctive also in direct discourse. How lit.? 73, *b*, and 199, *a*. **facere**: 222, *a*.

15. **memoriā**: 131, *a*. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476. **memoriā tenēbat**: 'he remembered.' 183, *a*. **L.**: *Lūcium*. 19, *a*.

16. **occisum**: sc. *esse*, 'had been killed.' 89, *c*, and 213, *a*. **exercitum**: 'army.' 20, *a*, *b*, and 74, *b*. **pulsum** [*esse*]: 'had been routed.' 178. **sub iugum**: 'under the yoke,' made by setting two spears upright and placing a third on them horizontally, as a cross-piece; under this captured soldiers were made to pass, bending over, as a token of complete submission and humiliation. The defeat of Cassius by the Helvetians took place in 107 B.C. 124, *a*.

17. **concēdendum nōn putābat**: 'did not think that the request ought to be granted'; less freely, 'that the concession ought to be made.' 63, and 73, *e*. **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn*.

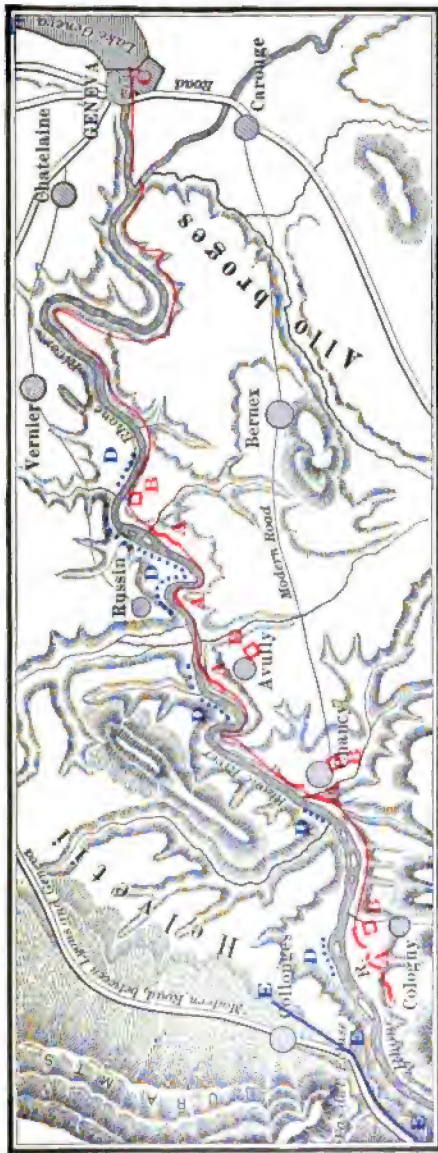
18. **inimicō animō**: 'of hostile temper.' 143, *a*. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **datā facultāte**: = *si facultās data esset*, 'if opportunity

# MAP 2

## CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO MILL-RACE GORGE (PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE)

Book I, 8

To face page 20

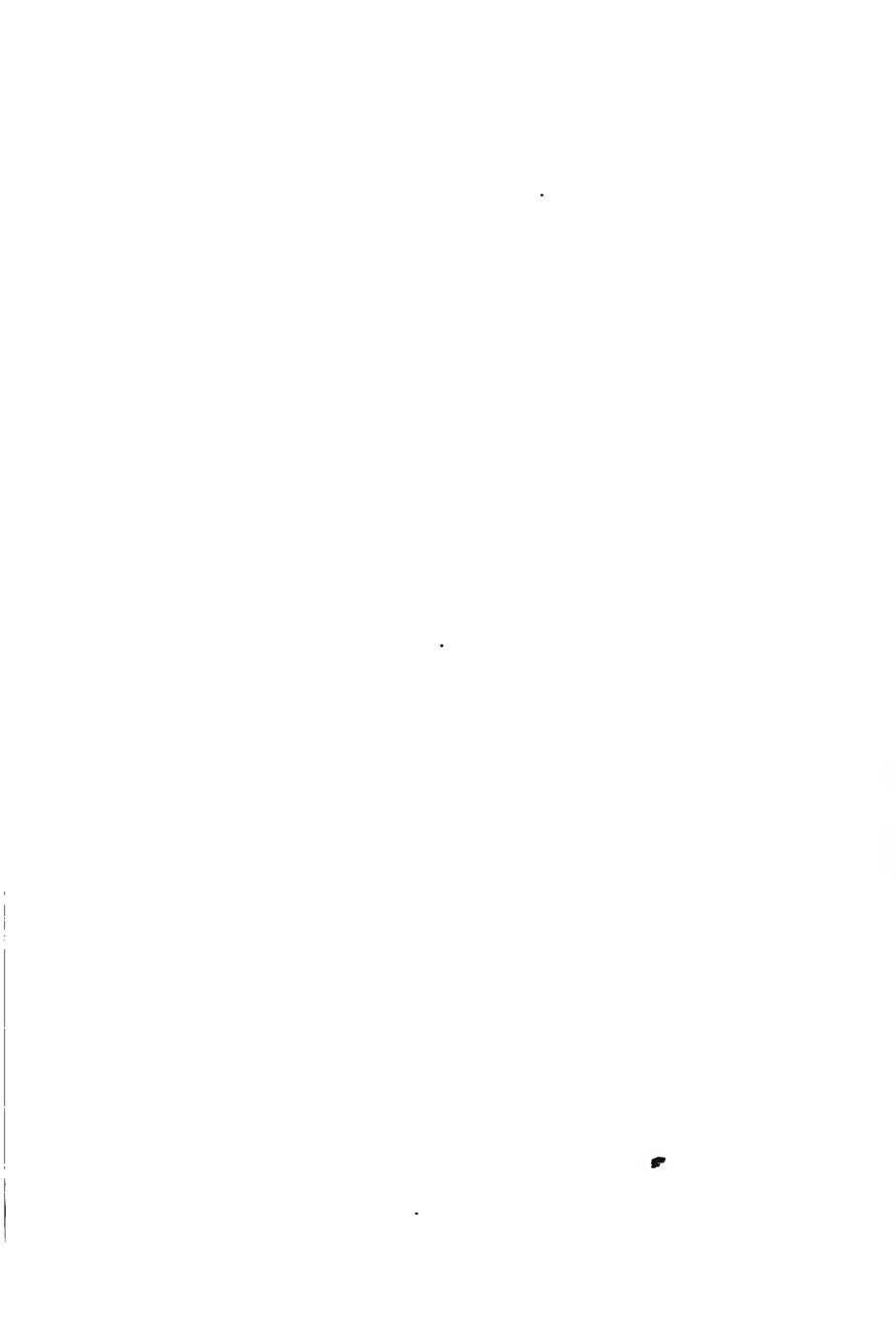


SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

## EXPLANATION

- A, A.** Places where strong fortifications were needed, such as are shown in Figure 34. The lighter red line between these places indicates where less extensive fortifying was required.
- B, B.** Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 8, l. 6).
- C.** Site of ancient Geneva, on the south side of the Rhone. The modern city spreads out on both sides of the river.
- D, D.** Places where the Helvetians probably gathered, in their attempts to force the crossing of the Rhone (chap. 8, ll. 12-16).
- E-E.** Route of the Helvetian host entering Mill-race Gorge.



faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs 20 imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit,

*Diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.*

*Caesar prevents the Helvetians from entering the Province.*

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibus-  
que, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī  
in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs  
Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum XVIII  
mūrum in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. s

should have been granted.' 144, b, (4). *itineris faciundī*: 'of marching.' 64, b, and 230, (1). How lit.?

19. *temperātūrōs* [esse]: 'would refrain.' 63. *iniūriā*: 'violence.'

20. *Tamen*: 'Nevertheless.' 236, a. *spatium*: trans. as if *tempus*, 'time.' *intercēdere*: 'intervene.' 221, a. *dum*: 'until.'

21. *convenirent*: 'should assemble.' 190, b. B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2. *respondit*: 'he made answer.'

22. *Diem*: 'time.' *sē*: 158, a. *dēliberandum*: 'for consideration.' 230, (3). *sūmptūrum* [esse]: 'would take.' 63, and 214, a. *quid*: 'anything.' 168. *vellent, reverterentur*: 'they wanted,' 'they should return'; in the direct form, *sī vultis, revertimini*. 208, (2); 218, (1), a, and 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642.

23. *Id. April.*: *Idūs Aprilēs*, April 13. 241, a, b.

8. 1. *Intereā*: 'Meanwhile,' while the more distant troops levied on the Province were gathering at the Rhone, and the Helvetians were waiting for Caesar's answer. *legiōne, militibus*: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. 131, b. *sēcum*: 125, c.

3. *quī . . . influit*: while Caesar's statement is not incorrect, modern geographers consider Lake Geneva as an enlargement of the Rhone, applying the name "Rhone" also to the principal feeder entering the lake at the upper end.

4. *Helvētiis*: 282. *milia*: 118, a, and 243, b; 38, a. *XVIII.*: *undēviginti*. 36, and 38, b.

5. *mūrum*: 'a rampart.' 1. *in altitudinem pedum sēdecim*:

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si, sē invitō, trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrū ostendit.

'sixteen feet high.' How lit. ? *pedum*: 10, *b*, and 100, *a*. B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; H. 440, 3. *fossam*: 'trench.' *perdūcit*: 'he constructed.' 175, *b*. For much of the distance between Lake Geneva (Fig.

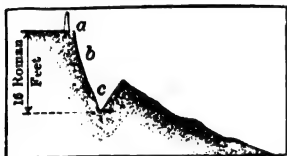


Figure 34. — Section of the Fortifications along the Rhone.

- a*. Top of the bluff, with palisade.
- b*. Face of the bluff, cut down.
- c*. Trench, with dirt thrown out toward the river.

35) and Mill-race Gorge (17½ English miles; N. to chap. 6, l. 4) the left bank of the Rhone is steep enough to make extensive fortifying unnecessary. What Caesar did was, apparently, to make the slopes hard to surmount by cutting the face down from the top for sixteen feet and throwing the dirt out toward the river in such a way as to produce the effect of a rampart and trench (Fig. 34); palisades were probably driven in along the edge of the bluff. See Map 2.

6. *Eō opere perfectō*: 'When this work had been finished.' 13, *e*, and 144, *b*, (2). *praesidia*: 'detachments' of troops. *dispōnit*: 'he stationed at intervals.' 79, *d*. *castella*: 'redoubts'; their probable location is shown on Map 2. *commūnit*: 'he strongly fortified.' *quō*: why used in place of *ut*? 193, *b*. B. 282, 1, *a*; H. 568, 7.

7. *sē invitō*: 'without his permission,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling.' 144, *a*. *cōnārentur*: 177, *b*, and 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652. *prohibēre*: sc. *eōs*.

8. *ea diēs*: April 13; see chap. 7, l. 23.

9. *revertērunt*: 'returned.' 79, *d*. *mōre et exemplō*: 'consistently with the settled usage,' lit. 'custom and precedent.' 196, *c*. B. 220, 3; H. 475, 3.

10. *iter*: 'right of way.' *ūlli*: here used as a noun, 'to any one.' *vim facere*: 'use force.' 18, *a*.

11. *cōnentur*, [*sē eōs*] *prohibītūrū* [*esse*]: in the direct form, *si cōnābimint, prohibēbō*. 215; 218, (1), *a*. B. 314, 1; A. 580; H. 643.

12. *eā spē dēlectī*: 'disappointed in their expectations,' lit. 'cast

Helvētīi, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum<sup>15</sup> concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.



Figure 35. — Lake Geneva, ancient Lacus Lemannus.

down from that hope.' 57, b. **spē**: 127, a. **nāvibus . . . factis**: 'joined boats together,' attempting to make a floating bridge, 'and made a number of rafts,' for poling across. How lit.? 144, b, (2).

13. **alii**: 'others,' relatively few, compared with the number who tried to cross in the ways just mentioned. **vadīs**: 134, a. **minima**: 32.

14. **nōn numquam**: 'sometimes.' **interdiū**: 'by day.' **saepius**: 35. **noctū**: 'at night.'

15. **si perrumpere possent**: '(to see) whether they could break through'; after **cōnātī**. 204, (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, a; H. 649, II, 3. **cōnātī**: participle, but trans. 'tried.' 61, a, (1), and 228, a. **operis mūnitiōne**: 'by the strength of the fortifications,' i.e. *mūrus, fossa, castella*. How lit.?

16. **conoursū**: 'by the rapid massing,' at points attacked. 1, and 20, b. **tēlis**: 'by (their) missiles.' **repulsī**: 'forced back.' **cōnātū**: 'they gave up' (lit. 'desisted from') 'the attempt.' 127, a. B. 214; A. 402; H. 462.

*The Helvetians get leave to go through the country of the  
Sequanians.*

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs invītis, propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. 5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque 10 rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs

9. 1. Relinquēbātur: 'There was left.' 90, a. ūna via: 'only the way,' described in chap. 6, ll. 2-5. quā: 134, a. Sēquanōs: 282. Sēquanīs invītis: 144, b, (4).

2. angustias: 'the narrowness' of the road through the Mill-race Gorge (Fig. 32). His: 105. suā sponte: 'by their own influence.' 17, d, and 157, b.

3. possent: 184, a, and 66, b.

4. eō dēprecātōre: 'through his intercession.' 144, b, (6). impetrārent: 'they might gain their request.' 177, b, and 196, a. B. 268, 3; A. 485, e; H. 546.

5. grātiā et largitiōne: 'on account of his popularity and lavish giving.' 135, a. plūrimum poterat: 'had very great influence,' lit. 'was able to a very great degree.' 118, b. A fuller account of Dumnorix is given in chapter 18, where we learn that he had practical control of the revenues of the Aeduans and was bitterly opposed to Caesar; a coin struck by Dumnorix is shown in Fig. 42.

6. Helvētiis: 108, a. B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434.

7. Orgetorigis . . . dūxerat: see chap. 3, ll. 15-18, and Notes.

8. novīs rēbus studēbat: 'was eager for a revolution.' 105. B. 187, II, a; A. 368, 3; H. 426, 1. quam plūrimās: 'as many . . . as possible.' 163, c.

9. suō beneficiō obstrictās: 'placed under obligation to himself,' lit. 'bound by his own favor.' volēbat: 71. Itaque: 'Accordingly.'

10. rem: 'the negotiation.' impetrat: 'obtained a promise.' How lit.?

Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

*Caesar, learning of their plan, brings five legions from Italy.*

10. Caesarī renūntiātūr, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvincia. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, s

11. **patiantur**: 199, a, (8). **obsidēs . . . perficit**: 'and brought about an exchange of hostages' (lit. 'that they should give') 'between them.' Hostages were exchanged as a pledge of good faith; if the agreement were violated, they were liable to be put to death with tortures. **uti . . . dent**: after *perficit*. 203, (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568; H. 571.

12. **Sēquanī, Helvētiī**: in partitive apposition with the subject of *dent*; freely, 'the Sequanians (giving hostages).' 91, c. **itinere**: 127, a. B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant**: substantive clauses with the subjunctive of purpose, expressing the terms of the agreement for the ratification of which the exchange of hostages was arranged.

10. 1. **renūntiātūr**: 'Word was brought (back) to Caesar,' *re-* implying that men had been sent out by him and now returned with the information. 79, d. **esse**: subject of *renūntiātūr*; cf. chap. 7, ll. 12-14, and Notes.

3. **nōn longē . . . absunt**: the territories of the Santones were on the west coast, more than 100 miles from the nearest point of the Province; see Map. If the Helvetians should reach their destination, they would be further from the Province than when they started; yet even at that distance they might become dangerous neighbors because they would no longer be kept on the defensive by the Germans. **quae civitās**: 'a state which,' the state of the Tolosates. 165, b.

4. **Id**: the migration to the territory of the Santones, *iter . . . facere*. **fieret . . . futūrum** [esse]: in the direct form, *fiet . . . erit*. 70, a, and 218, (1), a.

5. **cum**: 136, a. **prōvinciae**: 'to' (lit. 'of') 'the Province.' 102. **ut . . . habēret**: 'to have'; how lit.? 203, (1). B. 297, 2; A. 569, 2; H. 571, 1. **bellicōsōs**: 'warlike.' 75, f.



populi Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit; et, quā proximum



Figure 36. — A road through the Alps.

6. *inimicōs*: 91, *a*. *locis* . . . *finitimōs*: 108, *a*, and 115, *b*. B. 192, 1; A. 384; H. 434, 2. Caesar had no reason to interfere with the passage of the Helvetians through the country of the Sequanians unless it was clear that Roman interests would be unfavorably affected by it. *patentibus*: 'open' to attack, not being protected by natural barriers. *frūmentāriis*: 'productive' of grain. 30.

8. *mūnitiōnī*: 107, *b*, and 74, *b*. T.: *Titum*. 19, *a*.

9. *lēgātum*: 'lieutenant-general,' or 'lieutenant.' 313, *a*. *prae-*  
*fēcit*: 'placed in charge (of).' 57, *b*. *Italiam*: Cisalpine Gaul is here meant. 283, *b*.

10. *duās legiōnēs*: the 11th and 12th. *cōscribit*: 'raised,' by conscription. *trēs*: sc. *legiōnēs*, the 7th, 8th, and 9th legions. *circum*: 'in the neighborhood of,' lit. 'around'; the winter-quarters were not in the town. 122, *a*.

11. *Aquileiam*: a flourishing Roman colony near the head of the

iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Com-<sup>15</sup> plūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī. <sup>20</sup>

Adriatic Sea. **hiemābant**: 'were wintering.' **hībernīs**: '(their) winter quarters.' 127, c, and 335, a, b.

12. **ulteriorem Galliam**: 286. **Alpēs**: 291. **com**: 137, b.

14. **Ibi**: i.e. in the Alps; Caesar's route lay over the pass of Mt. Genève, which is one of the best in the Alps. The roads over all the Alpine passes are of the same general character. See Map 1, and Figures 36 and 92. **locis superiōribus occupātis**: 'seized commanding heights and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2).

15. **itinere**: 127, a. B. 214, 2; A. 400; H. 464. **Complūribus proeliis**: 'in a number of engagements.' 131, a.

16. **his pulsīs**: 'driving them off.' How lit.? 144, b, (2), and 180, b. **ab**: here 'from.'

17. **citeriōris prōvinciae**: 'nearer' from the viewpoint of Rome. 284. **extrēmum**: i.e. most westerly.

18. **ulteriōris prōvinciae**: 290. **pervenit**: 'passed through.' 175, b. **inde**: trace on Map 1 Caesar's route from Ocelum.

19. **exercitum**: three trained legions from near Aquileia, and two legions of recruits just levied in Cisalpine Gaul (the 11th and 12th), with which was joined the tenth legion, released from guarding the fortification below Geneva; for the campaign against the Helvetians Caesar had thus 6 legions, aggregating about 22,000 men, besides cavalry. Light-armed troops, used in the campaign of 57 and afterwards, are not mentioned in Book I. 307, c.

20. **trāns Rhodanum**: Caesar probably crossed the Rhone by a pontoon bridge, a short distance above the junction with the Arar. The Segusiavi were clients of the Aeduans, hence on good terms with the Romans. Most of their territory was on the west side of the Rhone, but they seem to have occupied also the narrow corner between the Rhone and the Arar.

*The Aeduans, Ambarri and Allobroges entreat Caesar's aid against the Helvetians, who are ravaging their country.*

**11.** *Helvētīi iam per angustīās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium :*

*Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.*

**11. 1. angustīās :** chap. 9, l. 2, and N. : chap. 6, ll. 2-5, and Notes. It must have taken Caesar 7 or 8 weeks to go to Cisalpine Gaul, gather his forces there, and bring them across the Province to the north side of the Rhone. Meanwhile the Helvetians with their throng of women and children and their loaded carts had slowly threaded the narrow Mill-race Gorge, and had advanced, in all, only about 100 miles.

**2. trādūxerant :** 'had led (across).' **Aeduōrum finēs :** on the west side of the Arar, which the van of the Helvetian host already had crossed. See Map 1.

**3. populābantur :** 'were laying waste.' 61, a, (1), and 175, a. **sua :** 'their possessions.' 154, a.

**4. possent :** 184, a. B. 286. 2 ; A. 549 ; H. 598.

**5. rogātum :** 'to ask for.' 231, a. **auxilium :** 'help.' 231, b.

**6-8. Direct form :** *Ita (nōs) omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs tuī, agrī vāstārī, liberī nostrī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.*

**6. Ita sē . . . meritōs esse :** '(saying) that they had so (well) deserved.' 213, b. **omnī tempore :** 'at all times' ; with us "every time" has a different force. More than 40 years before, in 121 B.C., the Aeduans had by treaty been recognized as *socii populi Rōmānt*, 'allies of the Roman people.' The Romans were first led to intervene in the affairs of Transalpine Gaul, however, not in the interest of the Aeduans, but in response to a request of Massilia for protection against the incursions of Ligurian tribes east of the Rhone ; this was in 155 B.C. **dē :** we should say 'of.'

**7. paene :** 'almost.' **nostrī :** 157, c. **vāstārī :** 'to be laid waste.' 221, a. **liberī eōrum :** 'their children.'

Eodem tempore, quō Aeduī, Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, *sēsē, 10 dēpopulātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre*. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōstrant, *sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī*.

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi 15 statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūmptis, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

8. *servitūtem*: 'slavery,' the penalty of capture. 10, f. *abducī*: '(to be) led away.' *expugnārī*: '(to be) taken by assault.' *nōn dēbuerint*: 'ought not.' 197, b. Why *dēbeant* in the direct form? 177, b, and 367, b.

9. *quō*: 147, a. *Aeduī*: sc. *lēgātōs mittunt*. *necessariī*: 'relatives,' including connections by marriage. 154, a, and 91, a.

10. *cōsanguinei*: 'kinsmen,' comprising only blood relations. Notwithstanding their close relationship with the Aeduans, the Ambarri had a separate coinage (Fig. 16).

11. *dēpopulātis agris*: '(their) lands had been ravaged and.' How lit.? 69, b, and 144, b, (2). B. 112, b; A. 190, b; H. 222, 2. *prohibēre*: 214, a, and 213, a.

12. *trāns Rhodanum*: i.e. on the north side of the Rhone, probably west of the Mill-race Gorge.

13. *fugā*: 136, b. *sē recipiunt*: 'made their escape.'

14. *dēmōstrant*: 'stated.' 175, b. *sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī*: 'that they had nothing left.' 213, a. *sibi*: 111. B. 190; A. 373; H. 430. *agrī solum*: 'the bare ground'; how lit.? *reliquī*: used as a noun, dependent on *nihil*. 97, a. B. 201.

15. *Quibus*: 167. *nōn exspectandum* [esse] *sibi*: 'that he ought not to wait.' 73, e, and 89, c. How lit.? *sibi*: 110.

16. *dum . . . cōsūmptis*: 'until everything that the allies had should have been destroyed, and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2).

17. *Santonōs*: 'the (country of) the Santoni'; previously (chap. 10, l. 2), spelled 'Santones.' Caesar was inconsistent in the spelling of this name, which appears in Roman letters on a coin; see Vocab. under *Santones*. The name survives in that of the city Saintes. 19, e, and 282. *pervenirent*: 190, b. B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

*Caesar cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetians at the Arar.*

**12.** Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant.



Figure 37. — The Saône at Trévoux, looking upstream.

**12. 1. Flūmen est Arar:** 'There is a river, the Arar.' 90, a. **Arar:** now Saône (pronounced sōn). 18, a. **quod:** antecedent? **per fines:** for a part of its course the Arar formed the boundary between the Aeduans and the Sequanians, who engaged in violent strifes over the right, claimed by both, to levy tolls on passing vessels. The country along the Arar furnished the best quality of bacon, which was exported to Rome.

**2. incredibilī lēnitāte:** 'of incredible sluggishness.' 143, a. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **incredibilī:** 74, f.

**3. oculis:** 'with the eye.' 92, a, and 131, a. **in utram partem:** 'in' (lit. 'into') 'which direction.' 23, a. **fluat:** 204, (3). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, 11. **iūdicārī:** '(to) be determined.' 221, a. **possit:** the subject is the indirect question *in . . . fluat*, but trans. 'it can not,' etc. Near Trévoux, 14 miles north of Lyons, the

Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiarum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est.

current of the Saône is to-day for a short distance as sluggish as in Caesar's time (Fig. 37); and here the Helvetians probably crossed the river.

4. **intribus funotīs**: 'by (means of) small boats fastened together'; the floats thus constructed, as well as the rafts, could be easily poled across in the still water. 15, a, and 131, a.

5. **explorātōrēs**: 'scouting parties.' 327. **trēs ... trādūxisse**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs iam trēs partēs* ('three quarters') *cōpiarum trāns id flūmen dūxisse*. 114, a. B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413.

7. **citrā**: 'on this side of,' i.e. the east side. 122, a. **Ararim**: 18, e. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: 242, d.

8. **legiōnibus tribus**: about 11,000 men. 137, b. **castris**: probably not far from Sathonay, east of the Saône, above its junction with the Rhone. See Map 1. **profectus**: 61, a, (3).

9. **Eōs**: 160, b.

10. **impeditōs et inopināntēs**: 'hampered and off their guard.' The fighting men, scattered throughout the encampment, were completely surprised and had no chance to form a line of battle; the Roman soldiers plied their savage short swords rapidly and effectively. 322, e. **aggressus**: 'attacking.' 57, c, and 226, c.

11. **concidit**: how different from *concidit*? **reliquī**: 154, a, and 171, a. **mandārunť** = *mandāverunt*; lit. 'committed themselves to flight,' where we should say 'took to flight.' 64, a, (1). **in**: trans. 'in'; lit. 'into,' on account of the idea of motion in *abdidērunt*, as if we should say they (went) 'into the neighboring woods' (and) 'concealed themselves.'

12. **pāgus**: 'canton,' properly a territorial division, here used of the inhabitants. **Tigurinus**: 148, a.

13. **civitās**: 288, a. **dīvisa**: 148, c.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum  
 15 memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exerci-  
 tum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum  
 immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem ca-  
 lamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās  
 persolvit.

20 Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās  
 iniūriās ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L.  
 Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,  
 interfēcerant.

*Caesar, bridging the Arar, crosses. The Helvetians send envoys.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut  
 cōnsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque  
 ita exercitum trādūcit.

14. domō: 180, b. B. 229, 1, b; A. 427, 1; H. 462, 4. exisset: 68, b, and 186, c.

15. memoriā: 'within the memory.' 147, b. B. 231; A. 423; H. 487. L. Cassium . . . miserat: see chap. 7, ll. 15-17, and Notes.

16. sive . . . sive: 236, b. cāsū: 'by chance.' 20, a, and 186, a. deōrum: 8, d.

17. quae pars: trans. as if *ea pars civitātis Helvētiae, quae*. 166, c. insignem: 'notable.' 25, a. calamitatem: 'disaster.'

18. populō: 104, a. princeps persolvit: 'was the first to pay.' 162, b. poenās: 92, a.

20. Quā: 167. nōn solum . . . sed etiam: 236, d.

21. ultus est: 61, a, (3), and 176, a. quod . . . interfēcerant: i.e. *quod Tigurinī, eōdem proeliō quō Cassium (interfēcerant), interfēcerant Lūcium Pisōnem lēgātum, avum Lūciū Pisōnis, eius (Caesar's) socerī*. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul in 58 B.C., was the father of Caesar's fourth wife, Calpurnia, whom he had married in the previous year. 263. socerī: 7, b.

22. proeliō: 147, b. B. 230, 2; A. 424, d; H. 486, 1.

13. 1. Hōc proeliō factō: trans. as if *post hōc proelium*. 144, b, (2).

2. cōnsequi: 'to pursue.' 61, a, (3). posset: 196, a. pontem faciendum cūrat: 'he (Caesar) had a bridge built,' i.e. by the me-

Helvētīi, repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:



Figure 38. — The Rhone below Geneva.

chanics, *fabri*, of whom there were a number enrolled in the legions; it was doubtless a pontoon bridge. 229, *b*, and 310, *b*. B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; H. 622. in: 'over.'

4. **repentinō**: 'unexpected.' **commōtī**: 'alarmed.' **cum**, etc.: trans. as if *cum intellexerent illum* (Caesar) *ūnō diē fēcisse* ('had accomplished') *id quod*, etc.' 178, and 185, *c*.

5. **xx**: *viginti*. 38, *b*. **ut flūmen trānsirent**: a substantive clause explaining *id*; trans. 'the crossing of the river.' 203, (4).

7. **cuius lēgātiōnis**: 'and of this delegation.' 167. **princeps**: 10, *b*. **bellō Cassiānō**: 'in the war with Cassius.' 147, *b*. As the defeat of Cassius took place in 107 B.C., at the time of which Caesar was writing, 58 B.C., Divico must have been between 70 and 80 years old. The Helvetians preferred to avoid a conflict with Caesar, but the tone of Divico's language made a mutual understanding impossible.

8. **cum Caesare ēgit**: 'treated with Caesar.' 137, *c*.



*Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam  
 10 partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar  
 cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perse-  
 vērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī  
 et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.*

*Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, qui  
 15 flūmen trānsissent, suis auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nē ob  
 eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dē-*

9-13. **Direct form:** *Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs (sū) cōstitueris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequī perseverābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.*

9. **faceret, itūrōs** [esse], **futūrōs** [esse]: 89, c, and 218, (1), a. B. 314, 1; A. 589; H. 642, 643.

10. **ubi:** = *in quā.*

11. **cōstituisset, voluisset:** in the direct form, future perfect indicative; the tense is influenced by the tense of *egit*. 177, a. B. 319, B, a; H. 644, 2. **bellō:** 131, a. **persequī:** sc. *eōs*, 'to assail (them).' 81, a, (3), and 221, a. **perseverāret:** '(Caesar) should continue.'

12. **reminiscerētur:** 'he should remember.' 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642. **veteris:** 26, a. **incomodī:** the defeat of Cassius. Why genitive? 103, a. B. 206, 2; A. 350, c; H. 454.

13. **pristinae:** 'old-time.' **virtūtis:** 75, c, and 81.

14-21. **Direct form:** *Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī, qui flūmen trānsierant, suis auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; (nōs) ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur. Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus, ubi cōstitērimus (future perfect), ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.*

14. **Quod:** 198, b. **imprōvisō:** 'suddenly.' **pāgum:** what canton? see chap. 12. **adortus esset, trānsissent:** 214, a.

15. **suis:** 'to their (countrymen).' 154, a. **possent:** subjunctive also in the direct form. 185, c.

16. **rem:** the 'fact' expressed by the clause *Quod . . . adortus esset*. **magnopere:** adv., takes the place of a direct object; 'that he should not presume overmuch.' **virtūtī:** 104, b. **tribueret:** 216. B.

*spiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiis niterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen 20 caeperet aut memoriam prōderet.*

*Caesar lays down conditions; the Helvetians scornfully reject them.*

#### 14. His Caesar ita respondit:

*Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eas rēs, quās lēgātī*

316; A. 588, N. 2; H. 642. aut . . . aut: 235, a, and b. ipsōs: 'them,' i.e. *Helvētiōs*. 182, b.

17. ita . . . ut: 197, b. maiōribus: 'forefathers.' 154, a. didicisse: 'had learned.' 178. ut . . . contenderent: 'to fight.' 197, a. B. 284, 1; A. 537, 1; H. 570.

18. magis: 'rather.' 35. quam [ut] niterentur: 'than to rely upon.' dolō aut insidiis: 'deceit or ambushes.' 131, c. B. 218, 3; A. 431; H. 476, 3.

19. Quārē: 237, a. nē committeret, ut is locus . . . caeperet: 'he should not allow that place to take'; how lit.? committeret: cf. *tribueret*. l. 16. ubi cōstitissent: 'where they should have taken their stand,' in order to fight the Romans.

20. interneciōne: 'annihilation.' exercitūs: 'of an army,' i.e. Caesar's army. nōmen: so the name Bloody Brook, in Massachusetts, commemorates an Indian massacre.

21. caeperet: 56, and 203, (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568, N. 1; H. 571, 3. memoriam prōderet: i.e. *memoriam calamitātis posteris prōderet* ('transmit').

14. 1. His: *lēgātīs Helvētiōrum*. 104, b.

2-7. Direct form: *Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eas rēs, quās commemorāvistis, memoriā teneō, atque cō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī acciderunt; quī si alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavere; sed cō deceptus est, quod neque commissum [esse] ā sē intellegēbat, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum [esse] putābat.*

2. Eō: 'for this reason,' explained by the following *quod*-clause. 135, a, and 160, c. sibi . . . darī: 'that he had less hesitation,' lit. 'that less of hesitation is given to him.' 97, b. B. 201, 2; A. 346, a, 3; H. 442. sibi: 158, a, and 104, a.

*Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.*

3. **commemorāssent**: 64, *a*, (1). **memoriā tenēret**: 'he remembered.' 131, *a*. **eō gravius ferre, quō minus**: sc. *sē*, 'that he felt all the more indignant' (lit. 'that he bears them by that the more heavily'), 'the less.' 140. B. 223; A. 414, *a*; H. 479.

4. **meritō populī Rōmānī**: 'in accordance with what was due to' (lit. 'the desert of') 'the Roman people.' 136, *c*. B. 220, 3. **accidissent**: 'they had happened.' 214, *a*. **quī**: = *populus Rōmānus*, 'it,' or 'they.' 167.



Figure 39. — Rusted Gallic swords and scabbards, found in France.

5. **alicuius**: from *aliqui*. 49, *a*. **iniūriāe**: 102. B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1. **sibi**: 109, *a*. **fuisse**: why *fuit* in the direct form? 208, *b*. B. 304, 3, *a*; A. 437, *a*; H. 583, 3.

6. **cavēre**: 'to take precautions,' lit. 'to be on guard,' against reprisals, which the Roman people would have expected if they had in any way wronged the Helvetians.

**eō**: as in l. 2. **dēceptum**: *eum* (i.e. *populum Rōmānum*) *dēceptum esse*, 'that they had been deceived.' **neque . . . putāret**:

'on the one hand they understood that nothing had been done by them which should cause them to fear, and on the other they thought that they ought not to be afraid without cause.' How lit.? **commissum** [esse]: impersonal, but trans. with *neque* as if *et nihil commissum esse*.

7. **timēret**: subjunctive also in the direct form; trans. *quārē* as if *propter quod*. 194, *a*. B. 283, 1; A. 535, *a*; H. 591, 4. **timendum** [esse]: impersonal, lit. 'it ought not to be feared.' 73, *e*.

*Quod si veteris contumēliae obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod, eō invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?*

*Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniuriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem*

8-11. **Direct form:** Quod si veteris contumēliae obliviscī volō, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod, mē invītō, iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere possum?

8. **Quod:** lit. 'as to which,' referring to the thought of the preceding sentence; trans. 'Even.' 118, d. **veteris:** 28, b. **contumēliae:** 'indignity,' the destruction of Cassius's army, in 107 B.C. 103, a. B. 206, 2; A. 350, b; H. 454. **vellet:** 218, (1), a. **num . . . posse:** 179, b, (1).

9. **recentium iniuriarum:** dependent on *memoriam* in l. 11; 'of fresh outrages,' specified in the following appositional clauses introduced by *quod*, 'that.' 198, b, and 214, a. B. 299, 1, a; A. 572; H. 588, 3. **eō:** = *Caesare*; 'in despite of him,' lit. 'he (being) unwilling.' 144, b, (5). B. 227, 1; A. 419, a; H. 489.

10. **temptāssent:** 64, a, (1). **quod, quod:** sc. *vexāssent*. 239, a, and 89, a.

11. **Allobrogas:** 19, f. **dēpōnere:** 'put aside.' 221, a.

12-17. **Direct form:** Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniuriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. *Cōnsuērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.*

12. **Quod:** 'The fact that'; the two clauses introduced by *quod* stand as subject of *pertinēre*. 198, b, and 214, a. **suā victōriā:** 'of their victory' over the Romans under Cassius, 107 B.C. 136, a, and 81. **Insolenter:** 'arrogantly.' 34, a. **glōriārentur:** 'they were boasting.' 214, a.

13. **tam . . . tulisse:** 'that they so long had kept on perpetrating wrongs without punishment.' How lit.? **admirārentur:** 'they marveled.' 61, a, (1). **eōdem pertinēre:** 'pointed in the same direction,' toward impending retribution for the wrongs committed by the Helvetians.

*pertinere. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortāles, quō gravius  
 15 hominēs ex commūtātiōe rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere  
 eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni-  
 ōrem impunitātem concēdere.*

*Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti  
 ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduīs dē  
 20 iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item si Allo-  
 brogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.*

*Dīvicō respondit :*

*Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs*

14. **Cōsuēsse**: 'are wont.' 64, a, (2), and 176, b; also, 214. a. **deōs**: 8, d. **quō**: 193, b. B. 282, 1, a; A. 531, 2, a; H. 568, 7. **gravius**: 'more bitterly.' 34, a.

15. **ex commūtātiōe rērum**: 'in consequence of reverses.' How lit.? **doleant**: 'may suffer.' **scelere**: 'wickedness.' 18, e.

16. **ulcisci**: 223, b. **hīs**: 'to those,' antecedent of *quōs* in l. 15. **secundiōrēs rēs**: 'a more prosperous estate.' **diūturniōrem**: 'more prolonged.' 76, b.

17. **impunitātem**: 'escape from punishment.' 106, a. **con-  
 cedere**: after *Cōsuēsse* in l. 14. 221, a, and 113, b.

18-21. **Direct form**: *Cum haec ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi  
 dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicēmini, vōs factūrōs [esse] intellegam, et si  
 Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus  
 satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.*

18. **Cum**: 'Although.' 187. B. 309; A. 549; H. 598. **ea**:  
*haec* in the direct form. 160, a. **tamen**: 236, a.

19. **ea**: object of *factūrōs [esse]*, with which supply *eōs* as subject.  
**polliceantur**: 'they promised.' 61, a, (2). **Aeduīs**: dat. after  
*satisfaciant*. 106. **dē**: 'for.'

20. **ipsīs**: the Aeduans. **sociīs**: the Ambarri.

21. **satisfaciant**: 'they should make restitution.' 79, b.

23-25. **Direct form**: *Ita Helvētiī ā maiōribus suis institūtī sunt, uti ob-  
 sidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; huius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.*

23. **Ita institūtōs esse**: 'had inherited such traditions.' How  
 lit.? **uti . . . cōsuērint**: 'that they were accustomed.' 64, a,  
 (2), and 197, b.

*accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.*

25

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

*The Helvetians resume their march, defeating Caesar's cavalry; Caesar follows.*

**15.** Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quīngentis equitibus

25. *esse testem*: 'was a witness'; we should say 'could furnish testimony.'

26. *Hōc respōnsō datō*: 'after making this reply.' 144, b, (2). *discessit*: 'he (Divico) withdrew.'

15. 1. *Posterō*: 'the following.' 33. *movent*: sc. *Helvētīi*. 175, b. *Idem*: neuter accusative. 45.

2. *equitātum*: 'his cavalry.' 157, a, and 309, b.

4. *coāctum habēbat*: 229, a. B. 337, 7; A. 497, b; H. 431, 3. *quī videant*: 'to see'; how lit.? 193, a. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. *videant*: plural because the subject *quī* is plural, on account of the idea of *equites* in the antecedent *equitātum*. 164, d, and 238, h. *quās in partēs*: 'in what direction.' How lit.? 48, a.

5. *faciant*: 204, (2). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II. *Qui*: 167. *cupidius*: 'too eagerly.' 153, a. *novissimum agmen*: the 'rear' of the Helvetians. 27, b, and 12, e.

6. *īsecūtī*: 61, a, (3). *aliēnō locō*: 'on unfavorable ground,' probably too hilly to admit of free movement. 145, c, and 6, c.

7. *dē nostris*: trans. as if *nostrōrum*. 97, d. From *pauci* . . . *cadunt* we infer that the rest made good their escape through flight. The kind of weapons used by the Helvetians may be inferred from the spear heads and dart heads shown in Fig. 40.

8. *sublātī*: 'elated'; see *tollō* in the Vocab. *quīngentis*: 36. *equitibus*: 131, b.

tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre.

Ita diēs circiter quindecim iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissi-

9. **prōpulerant**: 'had routed'; but the 4000 cavalry of Caesar were Gauls, only the officers being Romans. **audācius**: 'with greater boldness.' 34, a. **subsistere**: 'to halt,' as they were marching.

10. **novissimō agmine**: 'with (their) rear,' attacking the Romans who were following them. 131, b, and 152, a. **proeliō**: 131, a. **nostrōs**: 'our men.' 154, a.

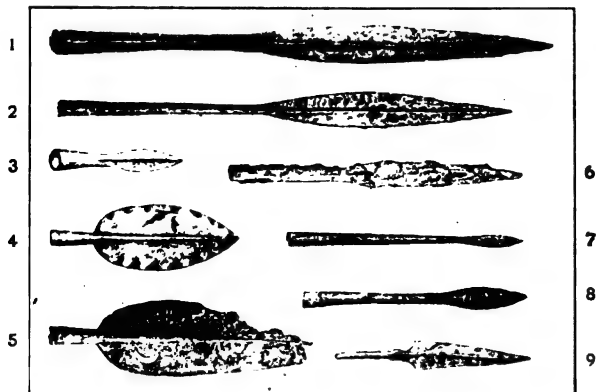


Figure 40. — Gallic spear heads and dart heads.

Of iron, of various types. Nos. 2, 4, 5, 7, and 8 were found in the Helvetian country, near Lake Neuchâtel; no. 6 was found on the site of Bibracte.

11. **lacessere**: 'to harass.' **coepērunt**: 72, b. **suōs**: 'his soldiers.' 154, a.

12. **satis habēbat**: 'considered (it) sufficient'; the object of *habēbat* is *prohibēre*, and *satis* is used as a predicate accusative. 115, a. **in praesentiā**: 'for the present.' **rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque**: 'from pillaging, foraging, and laying waste' the country. 92, a, and 127, a. B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464.

14. **Ita**: 197, b. **diēs**: 118, a. B. 181; A. 423; H. 417.

mum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius 15  
quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

*The Aeduans do not bring grain which they have promised;  
Liscus discloses treachery.*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod  
essent publicē polliciti, flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, nōn  
modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli  
quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō,  
quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā minus  
ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus

15. **primum** [agmen]: 'van.' 328. **amplius**: 'more.' subject of  
*interesset*. 154, a.

16. **quinis, senis**: distributive, 'five or six miles' each day. 36.  
**milibus**: 129, a; 243, b, and 38, a. B. 217; A. 406; H. 471. **inter-**  
**esset**: 'intervened.' 66, a.

16. 1. **Interim**: 'Meanwhile.' **Aeduōs, frūmentum**: 116, a.  
B. 178, 1, a; A. 396; H. 411. **quod essent polliciti**: 'which (he  
said) they had promised'; Caesar the writer presents the statement of  
Caesar the commander as if it were quoted from someone else. 214, b.  
B. 323; A. 592, 3; H. 649, 1.

2. **publicō**: 'in the name of the state.' **flāgitāre**: 'kept demand-  
ing.' 182. B. 335; A. 463; H. 610. **frigora**: 'cold seasons,' the  
spring being later than in Italy. 92, c.

3. **frūmenta**: the plural is used by Caesar of standing grain; 'crops  
of grain.' **mātūra**: 'ripe.' 81. **nō . . . quidem**: 'not even.' 237, c.  
**pābuli**: 'of fodder,' required for the baggage animals as well as the  
horses of the cavalry.

4. **autem**: 236, a. **frūmentō**: after *ut*. 131, c. B. 218, 1; A.  
410; H. 477.

5. **flūmine**: 134, a. B. 218, 9; A. 429, a; H. 476. **Ararī**: 18, e.  
**subvexerat**: 'he had brought up.'

6. **āverterant**: the Helvetians had at first followed the valley of the  
Arar (*Saône*) northward, but now 'had turned away from the Arar'  
and passed westward into the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), avoiding the  
mountainous country opposite the place where they had crossed the  
Arar; see Map 1.



discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē  
 10 frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum  
 prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in  
 hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat,



Figure 41. — Mount Beuvray.

Site of Bibracte, the Aeduan capital, seen from the west. Highest elevation, 2690 feet.

7. **Diem ex diē dūcere**: sc. *eum*, 'were putting him off from day to day.' **Diem**: 118, *a*. **dūcere, dūcere**: historical infinitives. 182. **cōnferri, comportārī, adesse**: sc. *frūmentum*, 'that (the grain) was being collected' from individuals, 'that it was being brought' to Caesar's headquarters, 'that it was just at hand'; climax, with asyndeton. 238, *a*, and 239, *d*.

9. **diūtius**: 'too long.' 153, *a*. **instāre**: 'was near.' 178, and 213, *a*. **diē**: not translated. 165, *a*.

10. **frūmentum**: object of *mētīrī*. **mētīrī**: 'to measure out.' 61, *a*, (4), and 222, *a*. B. 327, 1; A. 454; H. 615. How often did the soldiers receive grain? 317. **oportēret**: 73, *a*, *b*, and 214, *a*. **convocātis**: 'having called together.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2).

12. **Diviciācō et Liscō**: sc. *convocātis*. **summō**: 33. **magistrātui**: 107, *a*, and 82, *b*. **praeerat**: we say 'held.' 66, *a*.

quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī, qui creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, 15 tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum, magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, orātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit:

---

13. **vergobretum**: 'vergobret.' 115, a, and 289, a. Meaning? See Vocab. **quī**: 'who'; the antecedent is *vergobretum*. **oreātur**: 'is elected.' The seat of government was at Bibracte, which was securely situated on the top of a mountain (Fig. 41). **annuus**: 'annually.' 151.

14. **vītae necisque**: 'of life and death.' 102. **in suōs**: 'over his countrymen.' 154, a. **eōs accūsāt**: 'he took them to task.' 175, b.

15. **emī**: 'be purchased.' 55. **neque . . . neque**: 233, a. **posset**: sc. *frūmentum*. 220.

16. **necessariō tempore**: 'at so critical a time.' 147, a. **hostibus**: 144, b, (2).

17. **nōn sublevētur**: with *quod*, 'because (as he said) he received no help from them,' lit. 'was not helped by them.' 214, b; see N. to chap. 16, l. 1, *quod essent polliciti*. **praesertim cum**: 'especially since.' 184, a, b. **magnā ex parte**: 'in great measure.' **eōrum precibus**: 'by their entreaties.' 135, a.

18. **bellum**: 'campaign' against the Helvetians. **multō**: 140. B. 223; A. 414; H. 471, 10.

19. **sit dēstitūtus**: translate as if pluperfect, 'he had been abandoned'; the time is past relatively to that of *queritur*, which is a historical present, 'he complained.' 177, b, and 214, b.

17. 2. **quod**: as antecedent supply *id* with *prōpōnit*. 160, c. **anteā**: 'previously.' **tacuerat**: 'had kept to himself.' How lit.? **prōpōnit**: 'brought forward (saying),' i.e. 'declared.' 213, a.

3-11. **Direct form**: *Nōn nulli sunt*, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valet, quī privātim plūs possunt quam ipsi magistrātūs.

*Hī seditiōsā atque improbā orātiōne multitudinē dēterrent, nē frumentum cōferant, quod (cōferre) dēbent; (dicunt) praestāre . . . sint creptūri.*

*Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magis trātūs.*

*Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbere, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ereptūrī.*

3. **Esse nōn nullōs**: *that there were some men.* 90, a, and 212, b and c; also 23, a, and 154, a. **plūrimū valeat**: 'carried very great weight.' 32, and 118, b.

4. **privātīm**: 'as private individuals.' 77. **plūs possint**: 'had more power.' The state of affairs here depicted arose from the feudal organization of society, which rendered it possible for the great landholders to control multitudes of personal adherents. Cf. chap. 4, ll. 4-8 and Book VI, chap. 15. 288, 289.

6. **sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne**: 'by seditious and shameless propagandism.' Among the Aeduans there was a strong party opposed to the Romans.

7. **dēterrere**: 'were holding back' by inspiring fear. **nē . . . cōferant**: 'from furnishing.' 201, a. B. 295, 3; A. 558, b; H. 566. **cōferant**: plural because of the idea of plurality in *multitudinem*. 173, b. **dēbeant**: 'they were under obligation to furnish'; lit. 'owed.' **praestāre . . . ereptūrī**: parenthetical indirect discourse, summarizing the line of argument (*ōrātiōne*, l. 6) by which the anti-Roman leaders influenced the Aeduan populace; '(saying) that it was better,' etc. 213, a.

8. **sī iam . . . nōn possint**: 'if they (the Aeduans) could no longer.' 218, (1), a. Formerly, for a considerable period, the Aeduans had been the leading people in Gaul (VI. 13). **Gallōrum**: 'of Gauls,' i.e. of Helvetians.

9. **imperia**: plural as referring to the acts of a sovereign power, trans. 'the rule.' **perferre**: 'to endure'; subject of *praestāre*. **neque dubitāre dēbere**: sc. *sē* 'and they ought not to doubt that.'

10. **superāverint**: 'should have vanquished.' 218, (1), b, and 219. **unā**: adverb.

11. **Aeduīs**: dative. 109, b. B. 188, 2, d; A. 381; H. 427.

*Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enūntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quin etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesarī enūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam* <sup>15</sup> *diū potuerit, tacuisse.*

*Privately Caesar learns that Dumnorix is the arch-traitor.*

**18.** Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciaci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmīttit,

**sint ēreptūrī:** 'they were going to take away'; subjunctive also in direct discourse. 201, c, and 63.

**12-16. Direct form:** *Ab eisdem tua cōsilia, quaeque in castris geruntur, hostibus enūntiantur; hī ā mē coercērī nōn possunt.* Quin etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus tibi enūntiāvi, intellegō, quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, et ob eam causam, quam diū potui, taciui.

**12. nostra:** from the Roman point of view. **quaeque . . . gerantur:** 'and whatever is done,' lit. 'and what things are done.'

**13. sēs:** Liscus. **coercērī:** 'be restrained'; Liscus's 'power of life and death,' which he had as vergobret, was here of no avail. **Quin etiam:** 'moreover.'

**14. quod . . . enūntiārīt:** 64, a, (1), and 198, c. **coactus:** 'under compulsion,' by reason of the vehemence of Caesar's complaints (chap. 16, ll. 14-15) and his position as the highest Aeduan official.

**15. id:** refers to the clause *quod . . . enūntiārīt*. 160, c. **periculō:** 'danger.' 137, c, and 84. **fēcerit:** trans. as if pluperfect. 204, (3). **quam diū:** 'as long as.'

**16. tacuisse:** intransitive, sc. *sē* as subject; 'he had kept silent.'

**18. 1. Dumnorigem:** 10, c. **Diviciaci:** 19, d, and 289, c.

**2. dēsīgnārī:** 'was meant.' 213, a. **sentiēbat:** 'perceived.' **plūribus praesentibus:** 'with many persons present.' 144, b, (2).

**3. rēs:** 'matters,' i.e. the real reasons why the state of the Aeduans had not made good its promises. **iactārī:** 'should be discussed.' 223, a. **celeriter:** 'quickly,' so as to shut off discussion. 34, a. **concilium:** 'the assembly' of leading Aeduans (*principibus*, chap. 16, l. 11). **dīmīttit:** 'dismissed.'

Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū s dixerat; dicit liberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit, reperit esse vērā:

*Ipsum esse Dumnorīgē, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod, illō licente, contrā licēri audeat nēmō.*

4. **retinet**: '(but) detained.' 238, a. **Quaerit ex** [eō] **sōlō ea, quae**: '(Caesar) asked him alone about what,' lit. 'those things which.' 116, c. **conventū**: 'the conference.' 1.

5. **dicit**: sc. *Liscus*. **liberius**: 'more freely.' 34, a.

6. **sēcrētō**: 'privately.' 34, b. **reperit**: 'he found.' **esse vērā**: sc. *ea*, 'that they (*Liscus*'s statements) were true.' 148, c.

7-11. **Direct form**: *Ipsē est Dumnorix*, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habet, proptereā quod, illō licente, contrā licēri audet nēmō.

7. **Ipsū**: in predicate, but trans. 'that in fact it was Dumnorix,' as Caesar had surmised (l. 2). How lit.? 162, a. For the indirect discourse see 212, a-c. **summā audāciā**: '(a man) of the utmost audacity.' 143, a. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2.

8. **liberālitātem**: 'lavish giving.'

9. **annōs**: 118, a. **portōria**: 'tolls,' levied chiefly, we may assume, upon goods passing through the country along the roads and rivers. **reliqua**: 171, a.

10. **vectigālīa**: 'revenues' in general; *vectigal* (derived from *vectus*, participle of *vehō*) means that which is 'brought in' to the public treasury. 16, d. **pretiō**: 'price.' 141. **redēpta habēre**: trans. as if *redēmis*se '(he) had farmed.' 229, a. The Aeduan revenues were "farmed out" as among the Romans; that is, the privilege of collecting taxes was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who guaranteed to the state a certain sum, did the collecting through his agents, and kept for himself all that he could make above the amount paid into the public treasury and the costs of collection. The "publicans" of the New Testament were collectors of taxes under this system, which afforded large opportunity for corruption and extortion.

11. **illō licente**: 'when he made a bid.' 61, a. (2), and 144, a.

*His rebus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse.*

**contrā:** here an adverb. **nēmō:** 12, d. Since no one dared to bid against Dumnorix, he could obtain the right to collect the taxes on terms most favorable to himself. (Fig. 42.)

12-19. **Direct form:** *His rebus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit. Magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter potest, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem . . . collocāvit.*

12. **et . . . et:** 233, a. **rem familiārem:** 'private fortune.' **auxisse:** '(he) had increased.'
13. **ad largiendum:** 'for bribery.' 61, a, (4), and 230, (3). **comparāsse:** 64, a, (1).
14. **suō sūmptū:** 'at his own expense.' **alere:** 'maintained.' **neque:** trans. as if *et nōn*. 233, a.
15. **solum:** 'only.' 236, d. **domī:** 20, c, and 146. **largiter posse:** 'had great influence.' How lit.?
16. **huius potentiae causā:** 'to increase this influence.' How lit.?  
136, b. **mātrem:** 11, e. **Biturigibus:** 10, c.
17. **illic:** 'of that country.' How lit.?  
**collocāsse:** '(he) had given in marriage.' **ipsum:** '(he) himself,' Dumnorix.
18. **uxōrem:** 'wife,' a daughter of Orgetorix (chap. 3, l. 17). 13, d. **sorōrem ex mātre:** 'half-sister, on his mother's side.' **propinquās:** 'his female relatives.'
19. **nūptum in . . . collocāsse:** 'had settled in marriage among . . . ' How lit.?  
231, a. B. 340, 1, b; A. 509; H. 633, 1.



Figure 42. — Coin of Dumnorix.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; inscription DUBNOU. Reverse, warrior carrying a Gallic standard with the image of a boar, of which only the lower part is seen; inscription, DUBNOREX.

20 *Favere et cupere Helvëtiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvëtiōs rēgnī ob-*  
 25 *tinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.*

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam

20-26. **Direct form:** *Favet et cupit* Helvëtiis propter eam affinitatem, *odit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod adventū potentia eius *dēminūta* [est] et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris *est* restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvëtiōs rēgnī *obtinendī veniat*: imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam *habet*, grātiā *dēspērat*.

20. **Favere et cupere:** '(he) favored and wished (success).' **affinitatem:** 'relationship.' **Odisse:** '(he) hated.' 72, a, b.

21. **suō nōmine:** 'personally.' How lit.? 135, a.

22. **dēminūta** [sit]: 'had been lessened.' **in antiquum locum:** 'to his former position,' which the rise of Dumnorix had obscured. Diviciacus was a man of some culture. Five years previously, in 63 B.C., he had visited Rome.

23. **sit restitūtus:** 'had been restored.' **SI . . . venīre:** 218, (2). **quid:** 49, a, and 168.

24. **accidat:** here used of something unfavorable; our expression 'if anything should happen to him,' has a similar underlying suggestion. **per:** 'with the help of.' 123, a. **rēgnī obtinendī:** 230, (1).

25. **imperiō:** 'under the supremacy.' 138. **nōn modo . . . sed etiam:** 236, d. **dē rēgnō:** 'of the kingship.'

27. **quaerendō:** 230, (4). **quod,** etc.: 'that (in) the disastrous cavalry engagement which had taken place'; *proelium* is attracted into the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by *fugae*.

28. **diēbus:** 140. **initium:** 'the beginning.'

29. **factum:** sc. *esse*. The implication is that Dumnorix treacherously started with the Aeduan contingent to flee, and that this precipitated a general rout.

equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant, Dumnorix<sup>30</sup> praecerat), eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

*Though convinced of the treachery of Dumnorix, Caesar consults his brother Diviciacus before taking action.*

19. Quibus rēbus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia, nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētūr, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret.

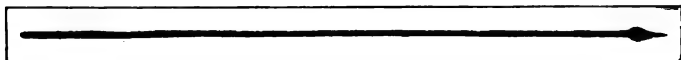


Figure 43. — Helvetian spear.  
Found near the yoke shown in Figure 29.

30. equitātūī: 107, a. auxiliō Caesarī: 'as an aid to Caesar.' 112, b. B. 191, 2, b; A. 382, 1; H. 433, 2.

31. esse perterritum: 'had been thrown into a panic.'

19. 1. Quibus rēbus cognitis: 'Having found out these things.' How lit.? suspiciōnēs: 'grounds for suspicion.'

2. rēs: 'facts,' specified in the following quod-clauses. accēderent: trans. as if adderentur, 'were added.' quod . . . accūsārētūr: 198, b, and 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

3. obsidēs dandōs cūrāset: 'had effected an exchange of hostages.' 229, b. inter eōs: between the two peoples, the Sequanians and the Helvetians.

4. iniussū suō et civitātis: 'without his own (Caesar's) authorization and that of the state' of the Aeduans. 135, b.

5. inscientibus ipsis: 'without their knowledge'; ipsi = Caesare et Aeduīs. 144, b, (2). magistrātū Aeduōrum: Liscus, the vergobret (chap. 16).

6. satis . . . causae: 97, b. B. 201, 2; A. 346, a, 4; H. 443. esse: 'that there was.' 90, a. in eum ipse animadverteret: 'he himself should punish him,' lit. 'should give attention to him.'

7. animadverteret: subjunctive also in direct discourse; quārē = propter quam. 194, a. aut . . . aut: 235, a, b.



His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam  
 10 in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiām, temperantiām  
 cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum  
 offenderet, verēbātur.

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad  
 sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C.  
 15 Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, fami-  
 liārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat,  
 cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae, ipsō prae-

8. rēbus: 105. ūnum: 'one consideration.' 154, a. re-  
 pugnābat: 'weighed against,' lit. 'contended against.'

9. frātris: 11, c. studium: 'devotion.' 81.



Figure 44. — Lance heads found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain.

10. ēgregiam: 'remarkable.'  
 temperantiām: 'self-control.'  
 238, a, and 81.

11. cognōverat: 'was familiar  
 with.' 176, b. eius: trans. as  
 if *Dumnorigis*. suppliciō: 'by  
 the punishment.'

12. offenderet: with *nē*, 'that  
 he might offend.' 202. verē-  
 bātur: 'he was afraid.' 61, a,  
 (2).

13. cōnārētur: 189, b. Di-  
 viciācum vocārī: 'that Diviciacus  
 be summoned.' 223, a.

14. cotidiānis interpretibus:  
 'the ordinary interpreters.' Divi-  
 cius, notwithstanding his visit to  
 Rome, had evidently not learned to  
 speak Latin; and Caesar did not

understand Celtic. 10, c. per: 123, a.

15. Galliae prōvinciae: 290. familiārem: 'intimate friend.'

16. cui . . . habēbat: 'in' (lit. 'to') 'whom he had the utmost  
 confidence in' (lit. 'of') 'all matters.'

17. eō: Diviciacus. colloquitur: 'he conversed.' com-

sente, in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse<sup>20</sup> dē eō, causā cognitā, statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

*Moved by the pleading of Diviciacus, Caesar pardons Dumnorix, but warns him.*

20. Diviciācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret :

*Scīre sē, illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulē-*

**monesfacit** : 'he called to mind.' **quae** : 48, a, and 204, (2). **ipse** : Diviciacus.

19. **sēparātīm** : 'separately.' 77. **quisque** : 49, a. **apud sē** : 'in his (Caesar's) presence.' 158, a.

20. **Petit atque hortātur** : 'He besought and urged (Diviciacus).' 60. **ut . . . statuāt, iubeat** : 199, a. **eius** : dependent on **animī** : trans., with *sine offēnsiōne*, 'without suffering his (Diviciacus's) feelings to be hurt.' How lit.? **vel . . . vel** : 235, a, b. **ipse . . . statuāt** : lit., 'that he (Caesar) himself pass judgment'; the connection with the preceding *hortātur* shows that the underlying thought is : 'to permit him (Caesar), having heard the case, to pronounce judgment on Dumnorix (*dē eō*), or direct the state (of the Aeduans) to pronounce judgment.'

20. 1. **lacrimis** : 136, a. **complexus** : 'embracing.' 61, a, (3), and 226, c.

2. **obsecrāre** : 'to entreat (him).' **nē quid gravius statueret** : 'not to take too harsh measures.' How lit.? **quid** : substantive form. 49, a; 117, a, and 168. **gravius** : 163, a. **statueret** : 199, a.

3. **Scīre sē** : '(saying) that he knew.' 213, b, and 178. **ne quemquam** : 'and that no one.' 49, a, and 168. **ex eō** : 'on account of that fact.' 160, c. **plūs dolōris** : 25, b, and 97, b. B. 201, 1; A. 346, a, 3; H. 442.

4. **ipse** : Diviciacus. **grātiā** : 135, a. **plūrimū** : sc. *posset*. 118, b.

5. **domī** : i.e. *in Aeduīs*. 20, c, and 146. **ille** : Dumnorix.

*scentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur.*

*Sese tamen et amore fraterno et estimazione vulgi com-  
10 moveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem estimaturum, non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.*

*Haec cum pluribus verbis fletus a Caesare peteret,  
15 Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti*

**minimum:** 32, and 118, b. **adulescentiam:** 'his youth.' Dumnorix apparently was considerably younger than Diviciacus.

6. **per se crevisset:** '(Dumnorix) had increased (in resources and strength) through his help.' 123, a. **quibus:** 'and these.' 167. **opibus:** 'resources.' Why ablative? 131, c.

7. **ad minuendam gratiam:** 'to lessen his (Diviciacus's) popularity.' 230, (3). **perniciem:** 'destruction.'

9. **fraterno:** i.e. *fratris*; 'by affection for his brother,' we should say. **estimazione vulgi:** 'by public opinion.' How lit.? 6, b.

10. **Quod:** 118, d. **ei:** = *Dumnorigi*. **a Caesare:** 'at the hands of Caesar.' **accidisset:** 218, (1), b.

11. **cum:** 'while.' **eum . . . eum:** 'such a relation of friendship with Caesar.' How lit.?

12. **non factum [esse]:** 'that it was not done,' after *estimaturum* [esse]. 213, a. **sua voluntate:** 136, c. B. 220, 3; H. 473, 3. **futurum [esse]:** 'it would come about'; the subject is *ut* . . . *avterentur*. 203, (1).

14. **cum . . . peteret:** 185, c. **pluribus verbis:** 'with very many words; so we often say, 'at great length.' 138. **fletus:** 226, a, and 227, b.

15. **dextram:** 'right hand.' **prendit:** 'grasped.' **consolatus rogat:** 'reassuring (Diviciacus) he asked (him).' 61, a, (1), and 226, c.

16. **orandi:** 'of his pleading.' 230, (1). **faciat:** 'to make.' 200, a. B. 295, 8; A. 565, a; H. 565, 4. **tanti . . . esse:** 'that his (Diviciacus's) influence with himself (*se* refers to Caesar) was so great,' lit. 'of so great account.' 101. B. 203, 3; A. 417; H. 448, 1.

et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet.

Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātre[m] adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit.

Dumnorigi cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

25

*Caesar plans to crush the Helvetians by a double surprise.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō,

17. et . . . et: 233, a. rei pūblicae: 102. eius voluntāti: 'in response to his wishes'; dative of indirect object on account of the meaning 'give' or 'present' in *con-dōnet*. 104, a.

18. condōnet: 'he would disregard.' 177, b.

19. frātre[m] adhibet: 'he had the brother (Diviciacus) present.' 238, a. quae: 48, a.

20. reprehendat: 'he objected to.' 204, (2). intellegat: = *sciat*. civitās: i.e. of the Aeduans, whose agreement to furnish grain had been broken.

21. monet: 'he warned (Dumnorix).' in reliquum tempus: 'for the future.'

22. vītet: 'he should avoid.' 199, a. praeterita: neuter plural, 'the past.' 154, a. Diviciācō frātri: dative, but trans., 'for the sake of Diviciacus, his brother.' 104, a.

24. cūstōdēs: 'watches,' corresponding with the detectives of our day; for Dumnorix was not imprisoned. agat: 204, (2). quibuscum: 125, c.

21. 1. Eōdem diē: 'on the same day,' that he had summoned the council of Gallic leaders in camp (chap. 16, ll. 10-11), and had had the interviews with Diviciacus and Dumnorix. explōrātōribus: 327. hostēs. . . octō: 213, a. The Helvetians were now in the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), southeast of Bibracte; see Map 1.

2. sub monte: 'at the foot of an elevation.' 124, a. cōnsēdisse: 'had encamped.' milia passuum: 118, a, and 243, a, b.

quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent, misit. Renūntiātum est, facilem esse.

5 Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus, quī iter cognōverant,



Figure 45. — Typical ridge in France, like that seized by Labienus.

3. **quālis esset**: 204, (3). **in circuitū ascēsus**: 'the ascent from the opposite side,' lit. 'in the going around.' Caesar planned a flank movement, with a surprise attack upon the Helvetians from two sides at once; a Roman force, following a circuitous route, would from the rear secretly ascend the height at the foot of which the Helvetians were encamped, and charge down upon them from above, while Caesar with the rest of the army attacked them in front.

4. **cognōscerent**: 193, a. **misit**: sc. *explōrātōrēs* as antecedent of *quī*. **esse**: sc. *eum* (= *ascēsum*).

5. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: 242, c and d. **prō praetōre**: when a lieutenant was given a special responsibility, to act outside the presence of the commander, he was called 'lieutenant in place of the general,' or as we say 'second in command.' 313.

6. **eis ducibus**: 'with those as guides,' referring to the patrols previously sent out.

summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōsiliū sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

10

P. Cōsidiū, quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbatur, et in exercitū L. Sullae, et postea in M. Crassī, fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

*Through false information the plan miscarries.*

**22.** Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōsidiū equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit *montem, quem ā s* Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Galli-

7. **summum iugum montis**: 'the highest ridge of the elevation,' which was apparently long and uneven (Fig. 45). **ascendere**: 'to ascend.' 81, and 200, b. **quid sui cōsiliū sit**: 'what his plan was,' lit. 'what is of his plan.' 94, d. B. 198, 3; A. 343, b; H. 447.

8. **dē quārtā vigiliā**: 242, c, d. **itinere, quō**: 134, a. B. 218, 9; A. 429, a.

9. **equitātum**: the cavalry were to feel out the enemy. 328.

11. **rei militāris**: 'in the art of war.' 21, b, and 102. B. 204, 1; A. 349, a; H. 451, 1. **peritissimus**: 153, a, and 148, c. This favorable characterization of Considius is presented as a reason for having sent so unreliable an officer on so important a reconnoiter.

12. **L. Sullae, M. Crassī**: both of high repute as generals, Sulla for his services first in the war with Jugurtha in Africa, then in the Social War, and in the East; Crassus, for his decisive defeat of Spartacus (chap. 40, l. 17, and N.). 19, a. **M. Crassī**: sc. *exercitū*.

**22. 1. Primā lūce**: 'At daybreak.' 152, a. B. 241, 1; A. 293; H. 497, 4. As it was now not far from July 1, daybreak was about four o'clock. **summus**: 152, a.

3. **passibus**: 129, a. **abesset, cognitus esset**: 185, c. **neque**: 233, a. **captivis**: 'prisoners.' **comperit**: 'he ascertained.'

5. **equō admissō**: 144, b, (7). **accurrit**: 'hastened.' How lit.?

6. **occupārī**: *occupō*, meaning 'seize,' 'take possession of,' is

*cis armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse.* Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium  
10 committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae  
essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,  
monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.

Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et  
montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-  
15 sidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō visō sibi  
renūntiāvisse.

Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur, et milia  
passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

generally much stronger than its English derivative "occupy." 81.  
voluerit: 214, a. GallicIs armIs: 349.

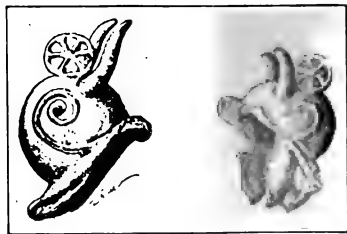


Figure 46. — Gallic helmets.

7. *insignibus*: 'decorations,'  
used especially of the crests of hel-  
mets. Two Gallic helmets are  
shown in Fig. 46.

8. *collem*: 'hill.' 14, b.  
*subdūcit*: 'led up.' *aciem in-*  
*struit*: 'drew up a line of battle.'  
337, a.

9. *erat eī praeceptum*: 'he  
had been ordered'; lit. 'it had been  
ordered to him'; the subject is *nē*

*proelium committeret.* 73, d, and 199, b. B. 295, 1; A. 566; H. 565.

10. *nisi . . . visae essent*: 218, (1), b. *prope*: 'near.' 122, a.

11. *impetus*: 'an attack.' 20, a, b. *fieret*: subjunctive of  
purpose.

12. *nostrōs*: the troops with Caesar. 154, a. *proeliō*: 127, a.  
B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464.

13. *Multō diē*: 'Late in the day'; ablative of time. *per*: 123, a.

15. *timōre*: 'fear,' used especially of a cowardly fear. 11, d.  
*perterritum*: 'thoroughly frightened.' 79, b. *quod*: as antece-  
dent supply *id*, object of *renūntiāvisse*. 160, c. *prō visō*: 'as  
seen.' 154, a.

17. *quō cōnsuērat intervāllō*: = *eō intervāllō, quō sequi cōn-*

*Caesar turns to go to Bibracte for supplies; the Helvetians attack his marching column on the rear.*

- ✓ 23. *Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercitui frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac s Bibracte ire contendit.*

Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētii, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridīē, superiōribus locis occupātis, proelium nōn

---

*suērat (cōsueverat), but trans. 'at the usual interval'; this was five or six miles (chap. 15, ll. 15-16). 138, and 165, c. milia passuum: 118, a, and 243, a.*

23. 1. *Postridiē eius diēi*: 'the next day.' 94, c. *bīduum supererat*: 'two days remained.' 79, b.

2. *cum*: trans. freely, 'before.' 185, c. *mētiri*: 61, a, (4). *oportēret*: 73, a, b.

3. *Bibracte*: 16, c, and Vocab.; also Fig. 41. *oppidō*: 91, a, and 293, b. *longē*: 153, b. *cōpiōsissimō*: 'wealthiest.' 75, f.

4. *milibus*: 129, a, and 243, b. How many English miles? *rei frūmentāriae*: 'the supply of grain,' or 'supplies.' 105.

5. *prōspiciendum [esse]*: 'that he ought to provide for.' How lit.? 73, e.

6. *Bibracte*: here accusative. 119, a. B. 182, 1, a; A. 427, 2; H. 418.

7. *fugitivōs*: 'runaway slaves'; deserters from an army were called *perfugae* (I. 28, l. 4). 74, g. L.: 19, a. Lucius Aemilius was a Roman officer in charge of a squad of Gallic horsemen. *decuriōnis*: 'decurion.' 309, c.

9. *existimārent*: 183, a. B. 286, 1; A. 592, 3; H. 588, π. *eō magis*: 'all the more on this account,' *eō* being explained by the following *quod*-clause. 135, a. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475.

10. *pridīē*: 'on the day before.' *superiōribus locis occupātis*: 'having seized a higher position,' referring to the exploit of Labienus with two legions (chap. 21, ll. 5-8). How lit.? 144, b, (5).



commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frumentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

*Romans and Helvetians prepare for battle, the Romans on sloping ground. The Helvetians advance.*

**24.** Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, misit.

Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit s legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; atque suprā sē in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōn-

**11. rē:** 127, *a.* **interclūdī:** 'be cut off from.' **posse:** *sc. Rōmānōs.*

**12. cōfiderent:** 'were confident.' **commūtātō, conversō:** *trans. 'having changed,' 'having reversed,' or, 'changing,' 'reversing.'* How lit.? 144, *a,* and 239, *c.*

**13. ā:** 126, *c.* **agmine:** derivation? 74, *d,* and Vocab.

**24. 1. Postquam:** 'After.' 188. **id:** why accusative? 113, *c.*

**2. collem:** the hill of Armecy (ar/me-ci), about 16 English miles southeast of Mt. Beuvray, the site of ancient Bibracte, and not far from the village of Montmort. See Map 3, **A.** **sustinēret:** 193, *a,* and 328. *B.* 282, 2; *A.* 531, 2; *H.* 590.

**4. interim:** 'meanwhile,' while the cavalry were holding back the enemy; it must have taken Caesar at least two hours to change over his marching column, which was five or six miles long, into battle lines. **in colle mediō:** 152, *a.* *B.* 241, 1; *A.* 293; *H.* 497, 4. **triplicem aciem:** the four legions stood side by side, with the cohorts of each legion arranged in three lines (337, *a*). The triple line was not straight, but followed the contour of the hillside, and was about an English mile in length; see Map 3, **B-B.**

**5. legiōnum:** 98, *a.* **veterānārum,** 'veteran.' What four legions are meant? 307, *e.* **suprā sē:** Caesar was near the front. **summō:** 152, *a.*

**6. legiōnēs . . . cōnscripterat:** the 11th and 12th legions; see chap. 10, ll. 10-11, and 284. **proximē:** 35.

scripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab eīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant, mūnirī iussit.

10



Figure 47. — Site of the battle with the Helvetians.

View from the hill where Caesar's army was posted, looking toward the right. The hill on which Caesar took up his position, and the height to which the Helvetians retreated, are similar to this hill in formation and appearance.

7. **auxilia**: 308. **ac**: 'and (thus).' **tōtum montem**: 'the entire upper part' of the hill; see N. to chap. 2. l. 10, *monte Iūrā*.

8. **hominibus**: 131, b. **complērī**: 'be completely filled.' By occupying the gently rounding crest of the hill (cf. Fig. 47) Caesar strengthened his position in case his battle lines, posted halfway up the slope, should be forced back. **intereā**: 'in the meantime,' while the troops were taking their positions. **sarcinās**: 'packs.' 330.

9. **eīs**: the two raw legions mentioned in l. 6.

10. **mūnirī**: 'be fortified,' by a trench and a rampart formed from the earth thrown out of the trench. The trench, which for a part of the distance was double, has been traced by excavations; the earthen rampart has disappeared. The line of defense thus hastily made on the highest part of the hill was semicircular in shape (Map 3, A).

Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsi, cōnfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

*The Romans charge, forcing the Helvetians back.*

**25.** Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut, aequātō omnium periculō, spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit.

**11. secūtī:** 228, c. **impedimenta:** 'baggage.' After the Helvetian fighting men turned back in order to attack Caesar, the long line of carts turned and came back also and formed a great corral, or laager, probably at the spot marked "Helvetian Corral" on Map 3. 74, d.

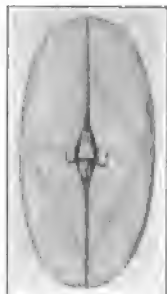


Figure 48. — Gallic shield.

Of wickerwork, with metallic boss; about four and a half English feet in height and twenty-five inches wide. Shown on a life-size statue of a Gallic warrior.

**12. ip̄sī:** the fighting men, as distinguished from the old men, women, and children with the baggage. **cōnfertissimā aciē:** 'by (their) very close formation.' 131, a. **reiectō:** 'hurled back and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2).

**13. phalange factā:** the Gauls, forming in 'a compact mass,' probably fifteen to twenty men deep, moved forward slowly but with almost irresistible momentum; those in the front rank held their large shields (Fig. 48) so that these would overlap, presenting a firm barrier to the enemy. 18, f. **sub:** the Helvetians advanced uphill, and so 'up against' the first line. 124, a.

**14. successērunt:** 'pressed forward'; see Map 3, E-E.

**25. 1. suō:** sc. *equō remōtō*. 144, b, (2). **deinde:** 237, b. **omnium equīs:** 'the horses of all' the mounted officers and Caesar's staff, not of the cavalry. According to Plutarch Caesar said that after he had won the victory he should need the horse for the pursuit of the enemy.

**2. aequātō:** 'bȳ equalizing.' 144, b, (6).

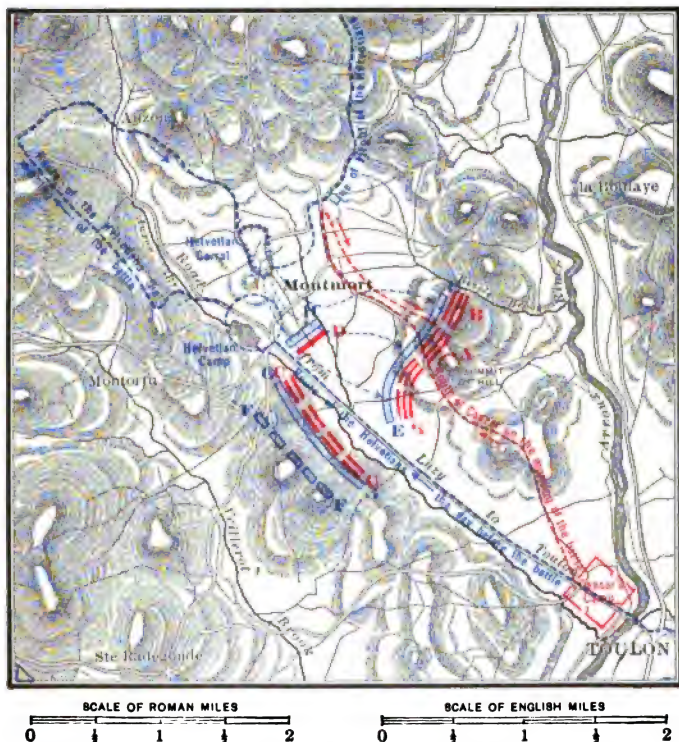
**3. tolleret:** 196, a. **cohortātus:** 'having harangued,' or 'harangued and.' It was customary for Roman commanders to address their soldiers just before going into action. 228, a.

### MAP 3

#### THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

Book I, 24-26

To face page 60



#### EXPLANATION

On the day before the battle the Helvetians probably crossed the Arroux at Toulon and encamped near Montmort; a part of the site of the camp is now covered by a pond. Caesar, following, encamped near the Arroux.

**A.** Semicircular trench hastily dug by the XI<sup>th</sup> and XII<sup>th</sup> legions on the hill (chap. 24, ll. 5-10).

**B-B.** The four veteran legions in battle order, three lines, first position.

**C-C.** First and second Roman lines, second position (chap. 25, ll. 21-23).

**D.** Third Roman line, second position, facing the Boians and Tulingians.

**E-E.** First position of the Helvetians (chap. 24, ll. 12-14).

**F-F.** Second position of the Helvetians, on a height (chap. 25, ll. 12-15).

**G-G.** Third position of the Helvetians, resuming the attack (chap. 25, ll. 18-20).

**H.** Boians and Tulingians (chap. 25, ll. 15-18).

chiō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere, et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi, et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

- 15 Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab

11. **praeoptārent**: 'preferred.' **manū**: 127, *a*. **ēmittere**: 'to drop.' **nūdō**: 'unprotected' by a shield. **corpore**: 13, *f*, and 144, *b*, (7).

12. **vulneribus**: 13, *e*, and 136, *a*. **dēfessi**: 'exhausted.' **pedem referre**: 'to fall back.' 69, *b*, and 79, *d*.

13. **mōns suberat**: 'there was a height near by,' southwest of the hill of Armecy; see Map 3. 66, *a*. **mille**: 38, *a*. **spatiō**: 'at a distance.' 147, *c*. **eō**: adverb. **sē recipere**: 'to retreat.'

15. **Captō**: 'reached,' i.e. by the Helvetians; Map 3, **F-F**. 144, *b*, (2). **Boii et Tulingi**: see chap. 5, ll. 10-14.

16. **hominum**: 97, *a*. **milibus**: 131, *a*. **agmen hostium claudēbant**: 'were at the end of the enemy's marching column.'

17. **novissimis** (= *novissimō agminē*), **praesidiō**: 112, *b*. B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **ex itinere**: 'directly after marching,' changing from marching order to fighting order as they came up. In the morning as the long column of emigrants started out, the 15,000 Boians and Tulingians formed the vanguard. When the order passed along the column to halt and turn back (chap. 23, l. 12), they became the rearguard, and were several miles away when the battle commenced. As the host of non-combatants were forming a corral with the carts, they marched by it and reached the field of battle just as the Romans were following the retreating Helvetians. **ab latere apertō**: 'on the exposed flank.' 126, *c*. Since the shield was carried on the left arm, 'the exposed side' of the soldier was the right side, whence the expression was carried over to a body of soldiers in action. In the present instance, the three Roman lines, still retaining, in the confusion of battle, their distinct formation, were following the stubbornly resisting Helvetians toward the southwest from their original position, when the Boians and Tulingians came against them from the west, thus 'attacking' the Romans on the right flank. See Map 3, **H**.

latere apertō aggressi circumvenire; et, id cōspicātī, Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. 20

Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac summōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

*The Helvetians are totally defeated. Caesar pursues the fleeing.*

**26.** Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācritē pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,

18. **circumvenire**: 'to move around them,' so as to fall upon the Romans in the rear; sc. *coepērunt*. **cōspicātī**: 'perceiving.' 226, c.

19. **rūsus**: 'again.' Derivation? See Vocab.

20. **redintegrāre**: 'to renew,' again assuming the offensive. Map 3, G-G.

21. **conversa . . . intulērunt**: 'changed front and advanced in two divisions,' one division facing straight ahead (*prima et secunda aciēs*), the other (*tertia aciēs*) facing the Boians and Tulingians. Strictly speaking, only the third line changed front (Map 3, D); the first and second lines were already in position to meet the new attack of the Helvetians (Map 3, C-C). 228, a, and 326.

22. **victis ac summōtis**: 'those who had been beaten and driven back.' 154, a, and 227, a, (4). **tertia**: sc. *aciēs*. 91, c.

**26. 1. ancipiti proeliō**: 'in two battles,' we should say. How lit.? 131, a. **ancipiti**: 26, b. **diū**: 35. **ācritē**: 34, a. **pugnātum est**: 73, d.

**2. possent**: sc. *hostis*. 186, c. B. 288, I, B; A. 546; H. 600, II.

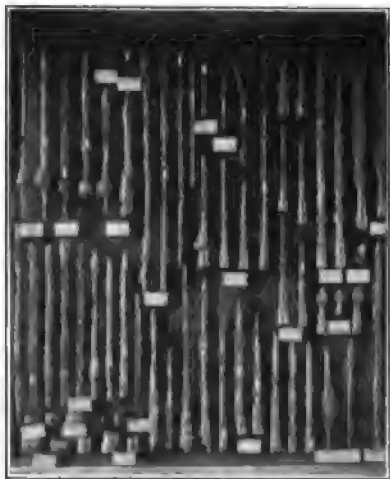


Figure 50. — Roman pike irons, found at Alesia.

alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nulli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, im-

3. **alteri, alteri**: 'the combatants on one side' (i.e. *Helvētiis*), 'those on the other' (*Boii et Tulingi*). How lit.? 91, c, and 154, a.

4. **carrōs**: arranged for defense around the corral (Map 3). Cf. chap. 3, l. 3 and N. **sē contulērunt**: 'retired,' still fighting; there was no disorderly rout. **Nam**: 237, a.

5. **proeliō**: 147, b. **cum**: 'although.' 187. **hōrā**: 242, a. **vesperum**: 'evening.' 7, b.

6. **āversum**: 'turned to flight.' Caesar speaks with evident admiration of the bravery of the enemy. **nēmō**: 12, d.

7. **Ad multam noctem**: 'Until late at night.' 17, b, and 152, a. **ad**: here 'at,' or 'by.'

8. **prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant**: 'had made a rampart of the carts' (Fig. 51). How lit.? **locō superiōre**: the top of the carts.

9. **coniciēbant**: 'kept hurling.' 176, a.

10. **rotās**: 'wheels.' These in many cases were doubtless thin disks of wood, which soldiers' weapons would not pierce. **matarās ac trāgu-**

**subiciēbant**: notice as the Roman soldiers

there must have been moon-

light, or at least clear starlight, else the Gauls could not have aimed

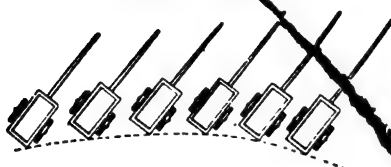


Figure 51. — Carts about a corral.

Arrangement of two-wheeled carts to form a rampart for defense about an encampment.

11. **vulnerābant**: 'were wounding.' The force of *sub*-, 'kept throwing from below' attacked the rampart of carts.

11. **vulnerābant**: 'were wounding.' The force of *sub*-, 'kept throwing from below' attacked the rampart of carts.

pedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filiis captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis 15 itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī, triduum morāti, eōs sequi nōn potuissent.

Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque misit, nē eōs frū- 20

12. **castris**: 'encampment,' i.e. the corral. 131, c. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477. Here were the old men, the women, and the children, of whom a large number were immediately slaughtered.

13. **ē filiis**: trans. as if *filiōrum*. 97, d. **captus est**: 172, b.

14. **cxxx**: *centum trigintā*. 36, and 38, b.

15. **nocte**: 147, c. **iērunt**: 68, a. **partem**: 118, a.

16. **intermissō**: 'breaking.' How lit.? As the survivors seemingly traveled at night only during the first night, the thought in *nūllam* . . . *intermissō* is substantially the same as that in *eā* . . . *iērunt*; such repetitions are characteristic of dictated matter. 275. **finēs Lingonum**: more than fifty miles north of the battlefield.

17. **cum**: 184, a. **vulnera militum**: the victory must have cost the Romans dearly. Roman soldiers caring for wounded companions are shown in Fig. 52. **sepultūram**: 'burial.'

18. **occisōrum**: 'the slain,' chiefly Gauls. 154, a.

The number of Gauls that perished in this battle has been estimated by some as high as 100,000, or even higher. Prompt burial was necessary for the health of the friendly Aeduans, in whose country Caesar was. **triduum**: 'three days.' 118, a.

20. **Lingonas**: 19, f. **litterās**: 'letters.' **nūntiōs**: 'mes-



Figure 52. — Care of the wounded.

At the left a legionary, seriously wounded, sits on a rock and two comrades are helping him to get up. At the right another sits while his companion binds up a wound on his leg. Ancient relief.



*mentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvisent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.* Ipse, triduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

*The Helvetians beg for terms; one division tries to escape.*

**27.** Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adducti, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tūc essent, suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūerunt.

Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē, armis

sages,' to be delivered orally. **nē**: '(saying) that they should not.' 213, b, and 212, a, **eōs**: trans. as if *Helvētiōs*.

21. **iuvārent**: 'supply,' lit. 'aid.' 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642.  
4. **quī**: 167. **iūvisent**: sc. *eōs*, = *Helvētiōs*. 218, (1), b.  
**sē . . . habitūrum**: in full, *sē eōs (= Lingonas) eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs habēret, habitūrum esse*, but trans. 'he would consider them in the same light as the Helvetians.' 145, c.

**27.** 1. **inopiā**: 'lack.' Why ablative? **lēgātōs**: 'envoys.'

2. **dēditiōne**: 'surrender.' **Quī**: 167. **convēnissent**: 113, b.

3. **sē prōiēcissent**: 'had prostrated themselves.' **suppliciter**: 'in suppliant fashion.'

4. **flentēs**: 227, b. **eōs**: = *Helvētiōs*, not *lēgātōs*.

5. **essent**: See N. to *vellent*, chap. 28, l. 2. **iussisset**: 185, c, and 200, b. **pārūerunt**: 'they obeyed.'

6. **postquam**: 188, a. **servōs**: 'slaves.' **quī perfūgissent**: 'who (as he said) had fled.' 214, b.

7. **poposcit**: 'he demanded.' **ea**: comprising *obsidēs, arma, (fugitivōs) servōs* of l. 6; neuter plural under the same rule of agreement as predicate adjectives. 150, b. **conquīruntur**: 'were being sought for.' Why present? 190, a.

8. **cōnferuntur**: 69, b. **vi**: = *sex*. 36.

9. **perterriti**: with *milia*. 150, c, and 238, k. **nē**: 'that.' 202  
**armis traditi**: 'after giving up their arms.' 144, b, (2).

trāditis, suppliciō afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod 10  
in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultāri  
aut omninō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte  
ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque  
Germānōrum contendērunt.

*Caesar deals with the fugitive Verbigens, and sends the rest (excepting the Boians) back to the country whence they migrated.*

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his,  
utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, im-  
perāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs,  
obsidibus, armis, perfugīs trāditis, in dēditīōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant,  
profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissis,

10. salūtis: 'of safety.' 10, f.

11. in tantā multitudīne: i.e. cum ('since') tanta multitudō  
dēditiciōrum esset. dēditiciōrum: 'of those who had surrendered.'  
ocultārī: 'be kept hidden.'

12. ignōrārī: 'remain unnoticed.' How lit.? existimārent:  
183, b. primā: 152, a.

28. 1. Quod . . . rescit: 'Now when Caesar found this out,'  
referring to the flight of the Verbigens. 187. ubi: 188, a. quō-  
rum: precedes its antecedent his, which is in the dative after imperā-  
vit. 105.

2. reducerent: 'bring (them) back.' 189, a. sibi: 'in his  
sight.' 109, a. B. 188, 1, N.; A. 376; H. 425, 4. pūrgātī: 'free  
from guilt.' How lit.? 221, b. B. 328, 2; H. 612, 1. vellent: in  
indirect discourse as a part of the order; in the direct form, si vultis. 71.

3. reductōs: sc. eos, 'after they had been brought back.' How  
lit.? 227, a, (4). in hostium numerō: 'as enemies' The 6000  
Verbigens were probably massacred, as a terrible warning; but they  
may have been sold into slavery. reliquōs: 171, a.

4. perfugis: 'deserters.' accēpit: 57, a.

5. suōs: 157, b. unde: = ē quibus. erant profecti: 61, a,  
(3).

6. frūgibus āmissis: 'since all the produce of the fields was gone';  
no crops had been planted this season. How lit.? 144, b, (3).

domi nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

10 Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit, eum locum, unde Helvētīi discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

15 Boiōs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem, atque ipsi erant, recēpērunt.

7. **domi**: i.e. in their own country. 146. **erat**: sc. *etis*. **famem**: 'hunger.' 15, b. **tolerārent**: 'satisfy.' 194, a.

8. **facerent**: 'furnish.' Why subjunctive? **oppida, vicōs**: how many? See chap. 5, ll. 3-4.

9. **quōs**: 163, c. **incenderant**: when? See chap. 5.

10. **eā maximē ratiōne**: 'especially for this reason.' 161, a. **nōluit**: 71, and 223, a. **unde**: = *ē quō*.

11. **vacāre**: 'remain unoccupied.' **bonitātem**: 'good quality.' 76, a.

13. **trānsirent**: 196, a. As the Helvetians were now reduced to about one third of their former number, much of their land must have been left unoccupied, and was probably soon seized upon by German immigrants. **prōvinciae**: 290. The northernmost part of the Province was held by the Allobroges; see Map 1.

15. **Boiōs**: emphatic position; *Aeduīs* (dative after *concessit*), *petentibus ut Boiōs in finibus suis collocārent, quod (Boiī) ēgregiā virtūte cogniti erant, (Caesar) concessit*. The Aeduans, hard pressed in their strifes with the Sequanians, desired an accession of strength. 353, d. **virtūte**: 143, a.

16. **collocārent**: 199, a. **concessit**: 'he granted' the request. **quibus**: trans. as if *et eis*. 167.

17. **quōsque**: = *et eos*. **postea**: after the great uprising in Gaul, narrated in Book VII. **parem . . . atque**: 'the same' (lit. 'like') 'as.' 233, c. B. 341, I, c; A. 324, c; H. 657, I, N.

*The number of the Helvetians and their allies.*

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litteris Graecis cōfectae, et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milia XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo.

29. 1. **castris**: the corral, indicated on Map 3. **tabulae**: 'tablets,' such as those generally used for business documents (Fig. 53). These were of light-colored wood, and made with a rim like that of a slate. The surface inside the rim was coated with a thin layer of wax, on which writing was done with a pointed stilus. The writing appeared on the wood, which showed through wherever the stilus penetrated the wax. **litteris Graecis cōfectae**: 'written in Greek characters,' which were used also by the Druids (VI. 14). On account of the antiquity of Massilia (293, a), the Greek alphabet must have become familiar to the inhabitants of southern Gaul at an early date.

2. **relātae**: sc. *sunt*. 69, b. **tabulis**: 166, a.

3. **nōminātīm**: 'by name.' 77. **ratiō**: 'statement.' quī: 48, b. **domō**: 130, b. **exisset**: 68, b, and 204, (2).

4. **possent**: 194, a. **puerī**: 'children.' 7, a.

5. **senēs**: 18, b. **mulierēs**: 11, c. **Quārum**: 167. **rērum**: 'items,' here used of persons; Caesar was thinking of the numbers rather than the personality. **summa**: 'the aggregate.'

6. **capitum Helvētiōrum**: trans. as if *Helvētiōrum*; we say "so many head" of stock, not of human beings. CCLXIII: *ducenta sexaginta tria*. 37, b, and d, and 38, b. XXXVI, etc.: read in the Latin. 36, and 37, b.

8. **quī**, etc.: i.e. *et, quī arma ferre possent* (194, a), *erant*, etc. **ad**: adverb, 'approximately.'



Figure 53.—Writing tablets.

The four tablets contain six pages for writing, in addition to the two outside covers.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII.

- 10 Eōrum, qui, domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

### The Campaign against Ariovistus. 30-54

*The Gallic leaders congratulate Caesar, request a conference.*

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt :

*Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōsiliō, flōrentissimis rēbus, domōs*

9. **fuērunt**: plural on account of the influence of the predicate noun *milia*. 173, *b*. **ad**: adverb modifying *ccclxviii* (*trecenta duode-septuagintā*).

10. **domum**: 119, *b*. **rediērunt**: 'returned.' 68, *b*. **cōnsū**: 'a census.' 80, *b*. How many of the Helvetian host failed to return?

30. 1. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. 287, *b*.

2. **principēs**: 10, *b*. **civitātum**: 10, *f*, and 288, *a*, and *b*. **grātulātum**: 231, *a*.

3-11. **Direct form**: *Intellegimus*, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō *repetieris*, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōsiliō, flōrentissimis rēbus, domōs suas Helvētīi *reliquerunt*, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent, etc.

3. **Intellegere sēsē, tametsī**: '(Saying) that they understood that, although.' 212, *a*, *b*, and *c*, (1); also 213, *b*. **iniūriis**: with two genitives, *Helvētiōrum* (95) and *populī* (102); trans. 'wrongs done to the Roman people by the Helvetians.'

4. **poenās**: 'punishment.' 92, *a*. **repetisset**: = *repetivisset*, 'had exacted.' 64, *a*, (3), and 214, *a*. **rem**: 'achievement.'

5. **ex ūsū terrae**: 'to the advantage of the country.' How lit.? **accidisse**: 'had turned out.'

6. **eō cōsiliō**: 'with this design,' explained by the following *ut*-clause. 138. **flōrentissimis rēbus**: 'though their circum-



1. Commander, *imperator*.
2. Lieutenant-general, *legatus*.
3. Centurion, *centurio*.
4. Lictor.
5. Standard-bearers, *signiferi*.
6. Eagle-bearer, *aquilifer*.
7. Trumpeter, *tubicen*.
8. Hornblower, *cornicen*.
9. Eagle, *aquila*.
10. Banner, *vexillum*.



*suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur, locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iudicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās* <sup>10</sup> *habērent.*

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret; *sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōsensū ab eō petere vel-*  
*lent.* Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre <sup>15</sup> iūrandō, nē quis ēnūtiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

stances were exceedingly prosperous' (Fig. 54). 144, b, (5), and 163, a. **domōs**: 20, c.

7. **utī . . . habērent**: 196, a, B. 282, 1; A. 531; H. 568.

8. **imperiō**: 74, b, and 131, c. **domiciliō**: 'for habitation.' 112, a. B. 191, 1; A. 382; H. 425, 3. **cōpiā**: sc. *locorum*.

9. **opportūnissimum**: 'the most suitable.' **fructuōsissimum**: 'the most productive.' 75, f.

10. **iudicāssent**: 64, a, (1). **stipendiāriās**: predicative, 'tributary (to them).' 115, b.

12. **Petiērunt, utī sibi . . . liceret**: 'they asked permission.' How lit.? **sibi**: plural; after *liceret*. 105. **in**: 'for.'

13. **inducere**: 'to appoint.' 222, a. **id**: 160, c. **voluntāte**: 138. **liceret**: 73, b. **sēsē habēre**: 213, b.

14. **ex commūnī cōsensū**: 'in accordance with a general understanding.' **ab eō**: 116, b.

15. **permissā**: 'granted.' **iūre iūrandō**: 13, h.

16. **nē quis**: 'that no one. How lit.? 49, a, and 163. **ēnūtiāret**: 'should make known (its proceedings).' **nisi quibus**: i.e. *nisi ut et ēnūtiārent, quibus . . . mandātum esset* (impersonal), 'except those to whom the task should have been assigned.' 73, d.

17. **inter sē sānxērunt**: 'they mutually bound themselves.' 169.



Figure 54. — Helvetian coin.

Silver. Reverse, boar. Inscription, NINNO, probably a name.



*In secret session they beseech Caesar to defend Gaul against Ariovistus, Diviciacus stating their case.*

**31.** Eō conciliō dīmissō, idem principēs civitātum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, ut sibi sēcrētō, in occultō, dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: *Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dixissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.*

Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Aeduus:

**31. 1. conciliō:** where the council of the leading men of Celtic Gaul was held we are not informed; perhaps at Bibracte. **Idem:** = *etdem.* 45.

**2. fuerant:** i.e. with Caesar. **petiērunt . . . liceret:** as in chap. 30, l. 12.

**3. sēcrētō:** 'privately,' as a protection against betrayal. **in occultō:** 'in a secret place,' as a precaution against spies. **cum eō:** 137, c. **agere:** 'to confer.'

**4. flentēs:** 227, b. **Caesarī:** trans. as if *Caesaris*. 109, a. B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N.

**5-8. Direct form:** Non minus id *contendimus* et *labōrāmus*, nē ea, quae *dixerimus*, *ēnūntientur*, quam utī ea, quae *velimus* (220), *impetrēmus*, propterea quod, si *ēnūntiātum erit*, summum in cruciātum *nōs ventūrōs (esse) vidēmus*.

**5. Nōn . . . vidērent:** 213, b. **sē id contendere et labōrāre:** 'that they strove and toiled (for) this,' explained by the following *nē*-clause. 117, a.

**7. ēnūntiātum esset:** impersonal; 'if disclosure should have been made.'

**8. cruciātum:** 'torture.' **ventūrōs:** 89, c.

**10-18. Direct form:** Galliae tōtius factiōnēs *sunt duae*; hārum alterius principātum *tenent Aedui*, alterius, *Arverni*.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent (185, c), factum *est*, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum *trānsiērunt*; postea quam agrōs et

*Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs.*

*Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē muliōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postēā quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum.*

cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārunt (=adamāvērunt), trāducti sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum.

10. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. 287, *b*. For the indirect discourse see 212, *a* and *c*, (1); also 214, *a*. **factiōnēs**: here 'leagues' rather than 'parties,' because made up of states. **alterius . . . alterius**: 23, *a*, *b*, and 171, *b*. **prīncipātum**: 'headship.' 75, *b*.

11. **Arvernōs**: a powerful state, southwest of the country of the Aeduans. See Map GALLIA.

12. **dē potentātū**: 'for supremacy.' **annōs**: 118, *a*.

13. **factum esse**: the subject is *utī . . . arcesserentur*; trans. 'it had come about.' 203, (1). **Sēquanīs**: these entered into alliance with the Arvernians because of their hatred of the Aeduans. The strife between the Sequanians and the Aeduans arose from the fact that the Arar for a part of its course formed the boundary between the two states, and each claimed the exclusive right to levy tolls on passing vessels. Among the exports was bacon, which was highly esteemed in Rome.

14. **mercēde**: 'for pay.' 141. **arcesserentur**: 'were brought over.'

Finding themselves worsted by the Aeduans, the Sequanians hired Germans to fight for them (Fig. 55).

15. **trānsisse**: 113, *b*. **postēā quam**: 188, *a*, and 214, *a*.

16. **ferī ac barbarī**: 'savage and uncouth.' **adamāssent**: 'had formed an eager desire for.' 64, *a*, (1). How lit.? **trāductōs**: 89, *c*.

17. **plūrēs**: sc. *Germānōs*. **esse**: sc. *Germānōs*.



Figure 55. — Sequanian coin.

Silver. Reverse, fanciful boar; inscription, SEQUANOIOTUOS, meaning, perhaps, 'Iotuos, the Sequanian.'

*Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum  
 20 armī contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse,  
 omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum  
 āmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et  
 suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūri-  
 mum ante in Galliā potuissent, coactōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs  
 25 dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iūre iūrando civitātem obstrin-  
 gere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō*

19-28. **Direct form:** *Cum hīs Aeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisērunt.* Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque *fracti*, quī et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimū ante in Galliā *potuerant*, *coacti sunt* Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iūre iūrando civitātem obstringere, etc.

19. **clientēs:** 'dependents,' here referring to dependent states. **semel atque iterum:** in our idiom, 'time and again.' How lit.?

21. **omnem nōbilitātem,** etc.: the activity of Aeduan men of rank recorded in Book VII shows that this statement, if accurately reported, was greatly exaggerated. **senātum:** 289, b. **equitātum:** collective, 'knights,' mentioned last as the broadest term in the enumeration; apparently the 'nobles' were a subdivision of the 'knights,' preëminent on account of aristocratic birth as well as the possession of large resources. 288, b.

22. **frāctōs:** 'crushed'; in agreement with *ēds* understood as subject of *coactōs esse* and antecedent of *quī*.

23. **hospitiō:** 'relation of hospitality,' less close than the relation implied in *amicitia*. Both relations were established by treaties between states; when *hospitium* was established between two states, each was bound to entertain the other's representatives at public expense. **atque:** force? 233, a. **plūrimū,** etc.: 'had previously possessed the greatest power.' 118, b. See chap. 11, l. 6 and n.

24. **obsidēs:** accusative, 'as hostages.' 115, a.

25. **nōbilissimōs:** as in chap. 7, l. 8. **iūre iūrando:** 13, h.

26. **sēsē neque repetitūrōs** [esse], etc.: 'that they would neither try to get back,' etc., the content of the oath; *sēsē . . . essent* would be in indirect discourse even if the context were in the direct form. 213, b.

*Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent.*

*Ūnum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur.*

*Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs acci-*

27. *implōrātūrōs* [esse]: 'solicit.' *recūsātūrōs* [esse]: 'refuse.' quō minus — *essent*: 'to be'; how lit.? 201, a. *perpetuō*: 'forever.' 34, b.

28. *illōrum*: trans. as if *Sēquanōrum*. *diciōne*: 'sway.'

29-33. *Direct form*: *Ūnus ego sum, ex omnī civitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerim* (194, a), *ut iūrārem* ('to take the oath'; 199, a) *aut liberōs meōs obsidēs* (116, a) *darem*. *Ob eam rem ex civitāte profūgī, et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenēbar*.

29. *Ūnum sē esse*: 'That he (Diviciacus) was the only one.'

31. *profūgisse*: 'had fled.' *Rōmam*: 119, a. At Rome Diviciacus met Cicero, who was much interested in him and in what he had to say about nature; for Diviciacus was a Druid, and the Druids professed knowledge of the Universe (VI. 14).

32. *postulātum*: 'to demand'; a strong word, justified by the urgency of the cause and the friendly relations between the Aeduan state and Rome. 231, a, and b.

34-44. *Direct form*: *Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germanōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit* (183, a), *tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupavit*; *et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, proptereā quod, paucis mēnsibus ante, Harūdum milia hominum XXIII ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellen- tur, atque omnēs Gērmānī Rhēnum trānsibunt*; *neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus (ager) cum Gērmānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuetūdō victīs cum illā comparanda (est).*

34. *peius*: 'a worse fate.' 154, a, and 32. *victōribus*: here an adjective, 'victorious.' *victōribus . . . victīs*: 239, c.

35 *disse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum  
fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī  
esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā  
parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod, paucīs  
mēnsibus ante, Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vē-  
nissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse*



Figure 56. — View across the Rhine valley, in Alsace.

From the site of Ariovistus's camp, Zellenberg (Map 4), looking east toward Ostheim. In the distance the hills east of the Rhine are visible.

35. **rēx**: 91, *a*. **Germānōrum**: apparently Swabians (chap. 37, l. 6). Ariovistus probably crossed the Rhine as early as 72 or 71 B.C.

37. **occupāvisset**: 'had seized,' in the rich level country west of the Rhine, in modern Alsace. **alterā parte tertiā**: 'a second third-part.'

38. **dēcēdere**: 'to withdraw.' 200, *b*.

39. **mēnsibus**: 140. B. 223; H. 488, 1. **Harūdum**: 19, *c*.

40. **locus ac sēdēs**: 'places of habitation.' How lit.? 15, *b*. **parārentur**: 'were to be provided.' 193, *a*. **Futūrum esse**: 'it would come about'; the subject is the following *ut*-clause. 203, (1).

*paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam.*

*Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua*

41. *annis*: 147, *a.* *omnes*: sc. *Galli*.

43. *conferendum esse*: 229, *c.* *Gallicum*: sc. *agrum*. Caesar means that the land in Gaul is incomparably better than that in Germany; we usually state such comparisons in the opposite way.

44. *consuetudinem victus*: 'standard of living.' *illa*: 'that (of the Germans).' The civilization of the Gauls was at this time far superior. *comparandam*: 89, *c.*

45-55. *Direct form*: *Ariovistus* autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum est Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperat, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscit, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edidit, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta est. *Homō est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius*; non possunt eius imperia diutius sustineri. Nisi quid in se populoque Romanō erit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerunt, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quaecumque accadat, experiantur.

45. *Gallorum*: the Aeduans and their allies. *vicerit, imperare*, etc.: representing perfects and presents in the direct form, used for vividness; the pluperfect and perfect or imperfect in the direct form might have been expected, and in translation past tenses should be used.

46. *quod proelium*: 'a battle which.' 165, *a.* *Admagetobrigae*: according to the probable meaning of the Gallic name, 'at the stronghold of Admagetos'; where the place was we do not know. The battle was perhaps fought in 61 or 60 B.C. 146. *superbe et crudeliter*: 'with arrogance and cruelty.'

47. *nobilissimi cuiusque*: 'of every man of rank.' 170, *a.* B. 252, 5, *c.*; A. 313, *b.*; H. 515, 2;

48. *in*: 'upon.' *exempla*: 'kinds of punishment,' as warning examples to others. *cruciatus*: 'tortures,' as indicating one kind of punishment resorted to by Ariovistus. *edere*: 'inflict.' *qua*: 49, *a.*, and 168.

*rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Homi-*  
 50 *nem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius*  
*imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque*  
*Rōmānō sit auxiliū, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum,*  
*quod Helvētīī fecerint, ut domō ēmigrēt, aliud domicilium,*  
*aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant, fortunūque, quae-*  
 55 *cumque accadat, experiantur.*

*Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quā dē*  
*omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum suppli-*  
*cium sūmat. Caesarem, vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs,*  
*vel recentī victoriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī, dētērrēre*  
 60 *posse, nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,*  
*Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.*

49. *ad nūtum*: 'at his beck,' at the slightest intimation of his desires.

50. *irācundum*: 'quick-tempered.' *temerārium*: 'reckless.'

52. *quid — auxiliū*: 'some help.' 97, *b.* *Gallīa*, etc.: 'all the Celts would have to do the same thing.' 110, and 229, *c.* B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431. *idē*: subject of *faciendum esse*, explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . experiantur.* 203, (4).

53. *domō*: 130, *b.* *ēmigrēt*: 'migrate.'

54. *quaeoumque*: indefinite relative; trans. 'endure whatever fortune might befall them.' 50, *a.*

56-61. *Direct form*: *Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō erunt, nōn dubitō, quā dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū, vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs, vel recentī victoriā, vel nōmine populī Rōmānī, dētērrēre potes, nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere.*

56. *Haec*: the utterances at the conference, and appeal to Caesar. *nōn dubitāre*: sc. *sē*, 'he (Diviciacus) had no doubt.' *quā . . . sūmat*: 'that he (Ariovistus) would inflict.' 201, *c.* B. 298; A. 558, *a*; H. 595, 1. *dē*: 'upon.'

58. *exercitūs*: '(that) of his army.' 157, *d.*

59. *dētērrēre nē*, etc.: 'prevent a larger host of Germans from being brought across the Rhine.' How lit.? 201, *a.*

60. *Rhēnum*: why accusative? 114, *b.* B. 179, 3; A. 395, N. 2; H. 413.

61. *Galliam*: as in l. 10. *Ariovistī*: 95.

*The lot of the Sequanians, showing what might happen to all.*

**32.** Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar, ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causa esset, mirātus, ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sēquani respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā taciti permanēre.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret, neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Aeduus respondit:

*Hōc esse miserīorem et graviōrem fortunam Sēquanōrum* 10

**32. 2. flētū:** 'weeping.' Shedding of tears by men was much more common among the Gauls and Romans than among us.

**3. ūnōs:** 'alone.' 23, a. **nihil:** 'none.' How lit.?

**4. cēteri:** 171, a. **facerent:** 214, a, and 213, a. **tristēs:** 'disconsolately.' 151. **capite dēmissō:** 'with bowed heads.' How lit. 144, b, (7).

**5. intuērī:** 'looked upon.' quae: 48, b. **esset:** 204, (2). **mirātus:** 226, c.

**6. quaesiit:** 116, c. **respondēre, permanēre:** 'answered,' 'remained.' 182.

**7. tristitiā:** 'state of dejection.' **taciti:** 'silent.' 148, c.

**8. saepius:** 'again and again.' How lit. 153, a; **quaereret:** 185, c, and 116, c. **neque:** = *et nōn*. 233, a. **vōcem:** 'utterance.' 10, c.

**9. exprimere:** 'to force out.' **Aeduus:** an Aeduan is now speaking for the Sequanians, who were formerly bitter enemies of the Aeduans.

**10-16. Direct form:** *Hōc est miserior et gravior fortuna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestate eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī.*

**10. Hōc:** 'On this account,' explained by the following *quod*-clause. 135, a. **miseriōrem:** 'more wretched.' 22, d.



*quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī*  
 15 *intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.*

*Caesar, for reasons of state, promises his help against Ariovistus.*

**33.** His rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūrā; *magnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum.* Hāc ōrātiōne  
 5 *habitā, concilium dimisit.*

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi

11. **nō . . . quidem:** 237, c. B. 347; H. 656, 2.

12. **audērent:** 62. **absentis:** 'in his absence.' How lit.? **crūdēlītātem:** 'cruelty.'

13. **velut:** 'just as.' **cōram:** 'in person.' **adesset:** subjunctive also in the direct form. 210. B. 307, 1; A. 524; H. 584. **horrērent:** 'they shuddered at.'

14. **reliquīs:** 'to the rest' of the Celts. 171, a. **tamen:** 'at any rate,' as a last resource. **Sēquanīs . . . essent perferendī:** 'the Sequanians . . . had to endure.' How lit.? 229, c, and 110. B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431.

15. **oppida omnia:** exaggeration; for the Sequanians still held Vesontio (*Besançon*), which was their strongest fortified place (chap. 38).

16. **omnēs:** as we say, 'all possible.'

**33. 2. sibi . . . futūrā [esse]:** 'that this matter should have his attention.' How lit.? 112, b.

3. **magnum, etc.:** 213, b. **beneficiō suō:** Caesar's kindness when he was consul (59 B.C.), in helping secure a recognition of Ariovistus by the Roman senate (255); Caesar reminds Ariovistus of this later (chap. 35, ll. 3-8; chap. 43, ll. 9-15).

4. **iniūriīs:** 104, a. **factūrum [esse]:** after *habēre spem*, used in place of *spērāre*. 213, a.

6. **secundum:** preposition; 'besides those considerations.' 122, a, and 180, c. **quārē:** trans. as if *propter quās*. **sibi:** 110.

eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret; in primis, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum 10 ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrabātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac 15 barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in

7. *cōgitandam* [esse]: 'ought to be taken into consideration.' *putāret*: 194, *a*. *in primis*: 'first of all.' How lit.?

8. *quod* . . . *vidēbat*: 198, *b*. *frātrēs*: predicate accusative after *appellātōs*. 88, *b*. *cōsanguineōs*: 'kin,' implying blood-relationship, while *frātrēs*, like our "brethren," might be used as a title implying intimacy of relations without kinship. The use of the title here may imply that the Aeduans claimed descent from the Trojans, as did the Romans, and Caesar himself. 244, and Fig. 153. *numerō*: with *saepe*, 'repeatedly.' 142, *a*, and 85.

11. *quod*: '(a state of affairs) which'; the antecedent of *quod* is the thought expressed by the infinitive clauses depending on *vidēbat* and *intellegēbat*. *in* . . . *Rōmānī*: 'in view of the greatness of the power of the Roman people.' How lit.?

12. *turpissimum*: 'exceedingly disgraceful.' 148, *c*, and 153, *a*. *sibi*: 108, *a*.

13. *Paulātim*, etc.: 'for the Germans gradually to become accustomed'; *Germānōs cōsuēscere* and *multitudinem venire* are the subject of *esse*, 'was,' understood after *vidēbat*. 213, *a*. *autem*: 'more-over.' 238, *a*.

15. *periculōsum*: 'full of danger.' 148, *d*; 75, *f*, and 84. *sibi* . . . *temperātūrōs* [esse]: 'would hold back,' lit. 'restrain themselves.' 105.

16. *quin* . . . *exirent*: 'from passing over.' 201, *a*.

17. *ut*: 'as.' 188, *b*, and 214, *a*. *ut* . . . *fēcissent*: related in thought with *exirent* and *contenderent*. *Cimbrī Teutonīque*: the terrible hordes of the Cimbrians and Teutons in the closing years of the second century B.C. swept over Celtic Gaul and passed into the

prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat.

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmperat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

*Caesar invites Ariovistus to a conference; he is rebuffed.*

**34.** Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum, medium utriusque, colloquiō dēligeret: *Velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum cō agere.*

**5** Ei lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

Province, whence the Cimbrians made their way into Cisalpine Gaul. Finally the Teutons were annihilated in a fierce battle at Aquae Sextiae (now Aix), about 20 miles north of Massilia, by Gaius Marius in 102 B.C.; and a year later the Cimbrians met a similar fate at Vercellae, in Cisalpine Gaul, northeast of Turin. See Map GALLIA.

**18. Italiam:** here including Cisalpine Gaul. **283, b.** **praesertim cum:** 184, b.

**19. Sēquanōs:** 282. **Rhodanus:** '(only) the Rhone,' a slight protection against an invading host.

**20. quibus rēbus:** 'and these conditions.' 107, a. **quam mātūrrimē:** 'at the earliest possible moment.' 34, a, and 153, c. **occurrendum** [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought to meet.' How lit.?

**21. tantōs spīritūs:** 'such insolent airs.' 20, b.

**22. arrogantiam:** 'arrogance.' **ferendus nōn:** 'unbearable.' How lit.?

**34. 1. placuit ei:** 'he (Caesar) resolved.' How lit.? **ut . . . mitteret:** with *placuit*; 'to send.' 199, a, (7).

**2. postulārent:** 193, a. **aliquem:** 49, a. **medium utriusque:** 'midway between them.' How lit.? 51, and 102.

**3. colloquiō:** 'for a conference.' 112, a. **Velle sēsē:** '(stating) that he wished.' 213, b.

**4. summīs utriusque rēbus:** 'affairs of the utmost importance to both.' How lit.?

**6-13. Direct form:** Si quid *mihi* ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum *vēnissem*; si quid ille *mē vult*, illum ad *mē* venire oportet.

*Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre.*

*Praetereā, sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse.*



Figure 57.— Pottery found at Bibracte; Museum of St. Germain.

*Praetereā, neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae, quās Caesar possidet, venīre audēō, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum.*

*Mihi autem mirum vidētur, quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vicī, aut Caesarī aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit.*

6. **SI . . . fuisse:** 208, c.      **quid**, etc.: 'he himself had wanted anything.' How lit.? 132, b.      **ipsī:** 46.

7. **quid sēs:** 'anything of himself.' Ariovistus. 116, d.

8. **Praetereā:** 'furthermore.' Ariovistus was seemingly over near the Rhine, a long distance from Caesar, who was probably in the vicinity of Bibracte.

9. **possidēret:** 'was occupying.'

10. **commeātū:** 'store of supplies.'

**mōlimentō:** 'trouble' in

*Sibi autem mirum vidēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset.*

*Caesar through envoys makes demands of Ariovistus, and threatens.*

**35.** His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit :

*Quoniam, tantō suō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus*

accumulating supplies as well as in mobilizing his forces ; for the army of Ariovistus, so long as it was scattered in small detachments, could live off the country. **contrahere** : 'bring together.'

**12. mirum** : 'a cause for wonder.' **148, d.** **bellō** : **131, a.** **quid . . . esset** : subject of *vidēri*, 'what business either Caesar or,' etc. **204, (2).**

**13. aut . . . aut** : **235, a.** **Caesarī, populō** : **111.** **negōtīi** : **87, b.**

**35. 2. hīs mandātis** : 'this message,' lit. 'these instructions' to the envoys, which were to be presented orally, and are here summarized. **212, c, (4).**

**3-8. Direct form** : *Quoniam, tantō meō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus est, (Ariovistus) hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiā refert, ut, in colloquium venire invitātus, gravētur, neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognoscendum pulet, haec sunt, quae ab eō postulō.*

**3. Quoniam** : 'Since.' **tantō**, etc. : 'although treated with so great kindness by himself and the Roman people.' How lit. ? **157, d.**

**4. cōsulātū suō** : in the previous year ; see N. to chap. 33, l. 3. **rēx . . . senātū** : cf. chap. 3, ll. 12-13, and Notes. The truth seems to be that in the strifes between the Aeduians and Ariovistus the Roman Senate thought it the best policy to stand in well with both sides. The Senate therefore continued to profess friendship for the Aeduians, but after they sustained a crushing defeat at Admagētos's stronghold (chap. 31, ll. 19-28 and 46) it courted Ariovistus. To what extent Caesar was responsible for the conferring of the titles on Ariovistus in 59 B.C., we do not know.

*esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut, in colloquium venīre invitātus, gravārētur, neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret :*

*Primum, nē quam multitudinē hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret ;* 10

*Deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret, ut, quōs illi habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret ; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve his sociis-que eōrum bellum inferret.*

*Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grā-* 15

5. *referret*: 183, *a*, and 214, *a*. *ut . . . gravārētur*: 'that he . . . raised objections'; explaining *grātiā*. 203, (4). *in*: 'to.'

6. *invitātus*: 'when he had been invited.' 227, *a*. *neque . . . putāret*: 'and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss, and take under advisement, a matter of mutual interest.' How lit.?

7. *dīcendum [esse] sibi*: 73, *e*, and 110. *haec*: 181, *a*, and 180, *c*.

9-14. *Direct form*: *Primum*, (*postulō*) *nē (Ariovistus) quam multitudinē hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat*;

*Deinde, obsidēs, quōs habet ab Aeduīs, reddat, Sēquanisque permittat, ut (obsidēs), quōs hī habent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceat*; *nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacessat, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferat*.

9. *Primum*: 237, *b*. *quam*: 49, *a*, and 108. *hominū*: 98, *a*. *amplius*: 'in addition.' How lit.?

10. *trādūceret, lacesseret* (l. 13), *inferret* (l. 14): 199, *a*.

11. *redderet, permitteret*: sc. *ut*. 200, *a*.

12. *ut . . . liceret*: 'to have his (Ariovistus's) approval in returning (to the Aeduans the hostages) which,' etc. How lit.? 199, *a*, and 73, *a*, *b*. *voluntāte*: 138. *reddere*: 67, *c*, and 222, *a*.

15-21. *Direct form*: *Sī id ita fēcisset* (future perfect), *mihi* (111) *populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amicitia cum eō erit*; *sī nōn impetrābō, quoniam, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuit, uti, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei publicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amicōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglegam*.

15. *fēcisset, futūram [esse]*: 218, (1), *b*. *perpetuam*: 'lasting.'

tiam atque amicitiam cum eō futuram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque  
 10 amicōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglēctūrum.

Ariovistus replies, claiming prior rights in Gaul and defying Caesar.

### 36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit:

Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vicissent, eis, quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum

17. **M.** . . . oōnsulibus: 61 B.C. 240, a, and 238, a.

18. oōnsuisset: 'decreed.' 183, a, and 214, a. utī . . . dēfenderet: 199, a, and 177, b. quicumque: 50, a. prōvinciam: 'as a province.' 115, a.



Figure 58.—Aeduan coin.

Gold. Obverse, Apollo. Reverse, Victory driving a chariot. Copied from a Greek coin of Macedonia: the Greek name, 'Of Philip,' is retained on the reverse.

19. quod: 'so far as.' 194, f. B. 283, 5; A. 535, d; H. 591. 3. commodō rei pūblicae: 'consistently with the public interest.' 138, and 102. **Aeduōs:** Fig. 58.

20. sēsē: repeated from sēsē in l. 17.

21. neglēctūrum [esse]: 'he would not leave unnoticed,' a threat sufficiently forceful, although veiled.

36. 2-7. **Direct form:** Iūs est bellī, ut, quī vicerint (220), eis, quōs vicerint (220), quem ad modum velint, imperent (203, 4); item populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre cōsuevit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō, quem ad modum suō iūre utātur (204, 3), nōn oportet (73, a) mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri.

2. quī: the antecedent is the implied subject of imperārent; 'that those who had conquered should rule over,' etc. eis: after imperārent. 105. quem ad modum: 'in whatever way,' lit. 'according to which manner': in full, ad (eum) modum ad quem.

*victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportere sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri.*

*Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiārīōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse; neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotan-*

4. **victis**: 227, a, (4). **ad alterius praescriptum**: 'according to the dictates of another.' How lit.? 23, b. **arbitrium**: 'judgment.'

5. **nōn praescriberet**: 'should not dictate.'

6. **quem ad modum**: 'in what way'; *quem* is here interrogative. 48, b. **suō**: 'its own.' **ūterētur**: 'should exercise.'

7. **suō**: 'his own.'

8-15. **Direct form**: *Aeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stīpendiārīi factī sunt. Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit, quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Aeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam; neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum inferam, sī in eō manēbunt, quod convēnit, stīpendiumque quotannis pendent; sī id nōn fēcerint* (future perfect), longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*.

9. **congressī** [essent]: 'had contended.' 57, c. **stīpendiārīōs**: 'subject to the payment of tribute.' 148, c. **Magnam**: emphatic position. 353, d.

10. **quī**: 'since he.' 194, c. **suō**: refers to Caesar. **vectīgālia**: see N. to chap. 18, l. 10.

11. **sibi**: refers to Ariovistus. **dēteriōra**: 'less profitable'; with Caesar's backing the Aeduans would refuse to pay tribute to Ariovistus.

12. **iniuriā**: 'wrongfully.' 136, b. B. 220, 2; A. 412, b; H. 474, l.

13. **in . . . convēnisset**: 'they should abide by' (lit. 'in') 'that which had been agreed upon.' **stīpendium**: 'tribute.' **quotannis**: 79, b.



*nīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum  
15 nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.*

*Quod sibi Caesar dēnūtiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn  
neglēctūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse.  
Cum vellet, congregērētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Ger-  
mānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIII tēctum  
20 nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.*

*Caesar hears further complaints, marches toward Ariovistus.*

**37.** Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,  
et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Aeduī ques-  
tum, quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportātī

**14. penderent:** 'should pay'; originally 'weigh out,' a meaning appropriate to the early time when payments were made in uncoined metal. There is a similar development of meaning in the English "pound sterling." **longē eis . . . āfutūrum** [esse]: 'would be far from benefiting them.' **eis:** dative. 109, b. **frāternum . . . Rōmānī:** 'the title of "Brethren of the Roman people."'

**16-20. Direct form:** *Quod mihi Caesar dēnūtiat, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congregiātur! Intellet, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, qui inter annōs XIII tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint.*

**16. Quod . . . dēnūtiāret:** 'As for Caesar's warning to him,' i.e. to Ariovistus. How lit.? 198, c. **sē:** Caesar.

**17. suā:** 'his own,' referring to *nēmīnem*.

**18. congregērētur:** 'let him come on!' 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642. **intellēctūrum:** *eum (= Caesarem) intellēctūrum esse*.

**215. quid Germānī—virtūte possent:** 'what valor the Germans had.' How lit.? 118, b. **invictī:** 'unconquered.'

**19. exercitātissimī:** 'most thoroughly trained.' **inter:** 'during'; with *annōs*, stronger than the simple accusative of time. XIII: 36, and 38, b. **tēctum:** 'roof.'

**20. subīssent:** 113, b. **virtūte:** 142, a.

**37. 2. Aeduī:** sc. *veniēbant*. **questum:** 231, a, and 61, a, (3).

**3. Harūdēs:** chap. 31, ll. 39-40. **trānsportātī essent:** 'had been brought over' by Ariovistus.

essent, finēs eōrum populārentur, sēsē, *nē obsidibus quidem datīs, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse*; Trēverī autem, s *pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur*; hīs *praeesse Nasuam et Cimbrium frātrēs*.

Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus 10



Figure 59. — The Doubs (Dubis) below Besançon (Vesontio).

4. *populārentur*: 'were (as they said) laying waste.' 214, b. *sēsē*: '(reporting) that they.' 213, b. *nē obsidibus quidem datīs*: 'not even by the giving of hostages.' 144, b, (6).

5. *Trēverī*: i.e. *Trēverī dicēbant*.

6. *Suēbōrum*: an account of the ancient Swabians is given in Book IV, chap. 1.

7. *hīs*: 107, a. *praeesse*: 66, a. *Nasuam*: 19, d.

9. *vehementer commōtus*: 'greatly disturbed,' a strong expression. Caesar does not often give us an insight into his feelings, but the situation now was critical. Why? *mātūrandum* [esse] *sibi*: 'that he ought to make haste.' 73, e.

10. *nē*, etc.: 'that it might not be more difficult to cope with him.' How lit.? 73, c, and 196, a.

cōpiis Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

*Hearing that Ariovistus has designs on Vesontio, Caesar hastens thither.*

**38.** Cum tridui viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, triduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat.

Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant,

11. **sēsē coniūnxisset**: 'should have united.' 218, (1), b.

12. **quam celerrimē potuit**: 'as quickly as possible.' 153, c. **comparātā**: 144, b, (2).

13. **magnīs itineribus**: 'by forced marches.' 329, and 18, c. Where Caesar was when the negotiations with Ariovistus were begun, and whence he started to meet Ariovistus, cannot be determined. It seems probable that he overtook the survivors of the Helvetians near the site of Dijon (Map 1); that thence he came back to Bibracte for the Gallic Council; and that from some point near Bibracte 'the forced marches' eastward began, as indicated on Map 1.

**38. 1. tridui**: trans. as if *trium diērum*. Cf. 100, a. **viam**: 118, a.

2. **occupandum**: gerundive; the gerund in the accusative would not have a direct object. 230, (3).

3. **quod**: why not *quē*, to agree in gender with *Vesontionem*? 164, c. B. 250, 3; A. 306; H. 396, 2.

4. **suis finibus**: in the country taken from the Sequanians, in Upper Alsace. But the report was unfounded; for if Ariovistus had marched as the report indicated he must have reached Vesontio before Caesar. **Id**: the seizure of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

5. **sibi praecavendum** [esse]: 'that he ought to take every precaution.' 110, and 73, c.

6. **ad**: 'for.' **ūsuī**: 'useful.' How lit.? 112, a.

summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādicēs montis ex

7. **facultās**: 'abundance.' **id**: *oppidum*. **nātūrā locī**: cf. chap. 2, l. 7, and N.

8. **ad dūcendum bellum**: 'for prolonging the war,' at any rate till Ariovistus could bring the new Swabian hordes (chap. 37, ll. 6-8) to his assistance.

9. **ut circinō circumductum**: 'as though drawn around by a pair of compasses.'

10. **paene cingit**: 'almost encircles.' The Dubis (modern *Doubs*, 'Black River') here bends into the form of a loop, leaving only one side of the town (*reliquum spatium*) not surrounded by it; and this space is taken up by a high hill, the top of which forms an irregular plateau (Fig. 60).

11. **pedum sescentōrum**: 'than six hundred feet' in breadth; a genitive of measure is here used instead of a comparative ablative, *quam* being omitted after *amplius*. 100, *a*, and 129, *b*. **sescentōrum**: the distance across the neck of the loop from the river to the river again is about 1600 Roman feet; but the distance which needed to be fortified, measured across the top of the plateau, was only 600 feet. **intermittit**: 'leaves a neck' of land. How lit.?

12. **mōns**: N. to chap. 2, l. 10. **altitūdine**: about 400 feet above the river. 143, *a*. B. 224; A. 415; H. 473, 2. **ita, ut**: 197, *b*. **rādicēs**: object of *contingant*; we should say 'base.'

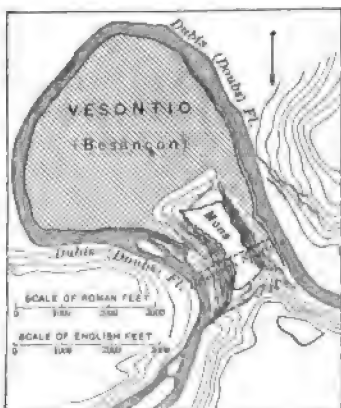


Figure 60.—The loop of the Dubis (Doubs) at Vesontio.

The high hill is at the neck.

utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit.

15 Hūc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

*Panic seizes Caesar's army on account of fear of the Germans.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum

13. **contingant**: 'touch.' **Hunc**: i.e. *hunc montem*; object of *efficit*. **circumdatus**: 'extended around (it),' at the edge of the small plateau. **mūrus**: indicated by a black line in Fig. 60.

14. **arcem efficit**: 'converts (into) a citadel.' 115, a. Vesontio was an important city in Roman times, and afterwards; and Besançon is now a fortress of the first class.

15. **nocturnis diurnisque**: 'by night and by day.' 76, b. Caesar probably arrived at Vesontio soon after the middle of August.

39. 1. **ad**: 120, a. Only a 'garrison' (*praesidium*) was stationed in the citadel; the rest of the army were encamped 'near' the town. **rei . . . causā**: 'in order to secure grain and (other) supplies.' How lit.? 135, b.

2. **morātur**: '(Caesar) was delaying.' 190, a. **ex percontātiōne**: 'in consequence of the questioning.'

3. **vōcibus**: here 'stories.' 10, c. **mercātōrum**: many traders accompanied the army, to trade with friendly natives as well as to purchase loot from the soldiers and supply them with extras not provided in the army rations. **ingenti magnitudine**: 'of huge size.' 143, b. B. 224, 1; A. 415; H. 473, 2.

4. **corporum**: 92, a, and 13, f. Caesar elsewhere (IV, 1) speaks of the 'huge size' of the Germans, who, by contrast in stature, seemed larger to the Romans than they would have seemed to us. **exercitātiōne**: 'practiced skill.'

5. **praedicābant**: 'were declaring.' 84. **numerō**: 142, a. **cum his congressōs**: 'meeting Germans.' 57, c. How lit.?

his congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnis militum, praefectis, 10 reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī, nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret;

6. **vultum**—**ferre**: 'to endure the sight of their faces.' How lit.? Our corresponding phrase is, "to look them in the face." **aciem**: 'fierce look.'

7. **tantus** . . . **ut**: 197, *b*. **subitō**: 'suddenly.' **timor**: 'panic'; used of a groundless, cowardly fear.

8. **nōn mediocriter**: 'in no slight degree'; litotes. 239, *g*. **mentēs animōsque**: as we say, 'minds and hearts.'

9. **perturbāret**: 'disturbed.'

10. **ortus est ā**: 'started with.' 61, *b*. **tribūnis militum**: 'military tribunes.' 314. **praefectis**: not the 'cavalry prefects' (309, *c*), but 'subsidiary officials' in various positions of slight responsibility, chiefly, we may assume, in connection with the light-armed troops. Caesar's financial and political relations (251) made it expedient for him to furnish military appointments for a number of aristocratic young mollicoddles, who had had no military experience, but wanted a taste of it because that was considered the proper thing. These were in a different class from Publius Crassus, for example, and other young Romans of high social position with Caesar, who attacked their work seriously and became excellent officers.

11. **urbe**: Rome. 17, *b*. **amicitiae causā**: 135, *b*. Caesar is politic as well as polite in ascribing to personal attachment to himself the presence of these milksops in his army.

12. **nōn magnum**: 239, *g*. **rē militārī**: 'warfare.' **alius aliā causā illātā**: '(each) one offering a different excuse.' 171, *c*.

13. **causā**: 144, *b*, (2). **quam** . . . **dīceret**: 'which, as he said, made it imperative for him to leave.' How lit.? 214, *b*.

14. **petēbat, ut** . . . **liceret**: 'begged permission.' 199, *a*. **voluntāte**: 138.

15 nōn nūlli pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent,  
 remanēbant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum  
 lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis, aut suum  
 fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne  
 periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta  
 20 obsignābantur.



Figure 61. — The Doubs River above Besançon (Vesontio).

15. **pudōre**: 'by a sense of shame.'

16. **remanēbant**: 'remained' in camp, after the exodus of the others. **vultum fingere**: 'to look unconcerned.' How lit.?

17. **abditī**: 'shutting themselves up.' 174, and 67, c. **tabernāculis**: 'their tents' 355, a.

18. **fātum querēbantur**: 'they were bewailing their fate.' **familiāribus**: 'intimate friends.'

19. **miserābantur**: 'were despairingly discussing.' **Vulgō**: adverb, 'generally.' **tōtis castris**: 'throughout the camp.' 145, c. **testāmenta**: 'wills.'

20. **obsignābantur**: 'were being made,' as we say; lit. 'were being sealed,' referring to the process by which wax tablets (Fig. 53), on which wills were ordinarily written, were sealed up (Fig. 203).

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, milites centuriōnēsque, quique equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant; nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustīas itineris et magnitudinem silvārum, quae inter-<sup>25</sup> cēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant.

Nōn nulli etiam Caesari nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

30

*Caesar deals with the situation in a persuasive address.*

**40.** Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omni-  
umque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus,

**22. in castris:** 'in the army' is our corresponding phrase. **centuriōnēs:** 'the centurions.' 315, a. **quique:** *et (ei) qui*; cavalry prefects and decurions are meant. 309, c.

**23. Qui ex his:** *(ei) ex his, qui.* 97, d. **sē . . . exīstimārī:** 223, a.

**24. timidōs:** 'cowardly.' **nōn sē verērī:** 'that they were not afraid of.'

**25. angustīas:** the gorges in the valley of the Dubis (*Doubs*), through which the most direct route led northeast to the region where Ariovistus was (Fig. 61). **silvārum:** there are still extensive forests on both sides of the upper Doubs.

**26. rem:** object of *timēre*, where a nominative, subject of *posset*, might have been expected; prolepsis. 238, g. B. 374, 5.

**27. ut:** 'that not.' 202. **supportārī:** 'be brought up.'

**29. signa ferrī:** 'go forward.' How lit.? 324, 325. **iussisset:** 'should give the order'; future perfect indicative in the direct form. 214, a. **nōn fore dictō audientēs:** 'would not obey the command'; like the Scriptural, "Ye will not hearken unto me." How lit.? **dictō:** 105.

**40. 2. ōrdinum:** 'companies.' 12, d. How many in the six legions which Caesar now had? 307, c. **centuriōnibus:** ordinarily only the centurions of first rank, the six centurions of the first cohort



vehementer eōs incūsāvit; primum, quod, aut. quam in partem, aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent:

*Ariovistum, sē cōnsule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīci-*

of each legion, were invited to a war-council. On this occasion all the centurions of the six legions (360 in number) were brought together,

doubtless with the lieutenants and other higher officers, not for deliberation, but for an address by the commander in chief (Fig. 62).

3. **vehementer eōs incūsāvit**: 'he severely reprimanded them.' **quod . . . putārent**: 'because (as he told them) they thought.' 214, b. **quam, quō**: 204, (2), and 48, b.

4. **cōnsiliō**: 'plan.' **quaerendum [esse] aut cōgitandum [esse]**: the subject is the preceding indirect question; 'that it was their business to inquire or consider.' How lit.? 73, e.

6-10. **Direct form**: *Ariovistus, mē cōnsule, cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetiit*; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum (esse) iudicet? *Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitis meis postulātis atque aequitāte conditiōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum (esse).*



Figure 62. — Centurion.

With a staff, symbol of authority: unhelmeted, but with ornamented greaves and with military decorations attached to the cuirass.

6. **Ariovistum, etc.**: 280. 255, and 144, b, (2).

**sē cōnsule**: only a year previously.

tiam appetisse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuāderi, cognitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. 10

Quod sī, furōre atque āmentīā impulsus, bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis ā Gaiō Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus, quam 15

7. **appetisse**: 'strove to secure'; a rhetorical exaggeration. See chap. 33, l. 3, and chap. 35, l. 4, and Notes. **temere**: 'recklessly.' **quisquam**: 168, and 49, a. **ab officio**: 'from his obligation' of allegiance.

8. **iudicāret**: 179, b, (2). **Sibi quidem persuāderi**: 'he at least was persuaded.' How lit.? 106, b. **cognitis . . . perspectā**: trans. by a clause commencing with 'after.' 239, c. Why ablative?

9. **postulātis**: 'demands.' **aequitāte**: 'fairness.' **perspectā**: 'should have been clearly understood.' How lit.? **eum**: trans. as if *Ariovistum*.

10. **suam**: 157, d. **repudiātūrum [esse]**: 'would reject.'

11-21. **Direct form**: Quod sī (*Ariovistus*), furōre atque āmentīā impulsus, bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī (179, b, 2)? aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentiā dēspērētis (179, b, 2)? Factum (est) eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis ā Gaiō Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus, quam ipse imperātor, meritis vidēbātur; factum (est periculum) etiam nūper in Italiā, servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nobīs accēperant, sublevābant. Ex quō iudicārī potest, quantum habeat (204, 3) in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuistis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.

11. **Quod**: 'But.' 118, d. **furōre . . . impulsus**: 'carried away by rage and madness.'

12. **quid tandem**: 'what, pray.' **verērentur**: 61, a, (2).

13. **diligentiā**: 'careful leadership.' **Factum [esse] . . . periculum**: 'trial had been made of that enemy,' i.e. of the Germans.

14. **memoriā**: 147, b. **Cimbris, Teutonis**: N. to chap. 33, l. 17.

15. **laudem**: 'praise.' 17, c.

*ipse imperator, meritis vidēbatur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā, servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nobīs accēpissent, ublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea*  
*quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs uperāssent.*

*Dēnique hōs esse eōsdē m Germānōs, quibuscum saepe*

16. **meritis**: for *meritus esse*; with *vidēbatur*, 'clearly earned.' How lit.? 148, *e*. **vidēbatur**: indicative retained from the direct form. 185, *b*. **nūper**: fourteen years previously; among the centuries present there were probably a number who had served as soldiers in the war with Spartacus, the term of military service being twenty years. 307, *a*.

17. **servīlī tumultū**: = *tumultū servōrum*, 'at the time of the uprising of the slaves,' 73-71 B.C.; referring to the insurrection led by Spartacus, the gladiator, who had a succession of victories for two years, but in 71 B.C. was completely crushed. Caesar implies that among the gladiators and other slaves serving under Spartacus there were many of Germanic origin. **tumultū**: used for *bellum* in case of a sudden war in Italy. Why ablative? 147, *b*. **quōs**: 164, *b*. B. 251, 2; A. 306, *b*; H. 399, 4. **quōs tamen**, etc.: 'notwithstanding the fact that the experience and training, which they had gained from us, to some extent aided them,' lit. 'whom nevertheless,' etc. **aliquid**: 118, *b*.

18. **quae**: neuter. 163, *c*. B. 250, 2; A. 305, *a*; H. 398, 1.

19. **quantum**, etc.: 'how great an advantage there is in steadfastness,' lit. 'how much of good steadfastness has in itself.' **bonī**: 97, *b*.

20. **aliquamdiū**: 'for a long time.' **inermōs**: 'without arms,' referring to the slaves in the earlier stages of the insurrection, before they were able to supply themselves with weapons. **hōs**: antecedent of *quōs*.

21. **armātōs**: 'equipped with arms.'

22-25. **Direct form**: *Dēnique hī sunt idēm Germānī, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētīi congressī, nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuērunt.*

22. **Dēnique**: 'Finally,' closing the argument about the Germans, **quibuscum**, etc.: cf. chap. 1, ll. 12-15. 125, *c*.

*numerō Helvētiū congressī, nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plerumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint.*

25

*Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commoveret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperire posse, diuturnitate bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte viciisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērare nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.*

23. **congressī**: 228, a.

24. **illōrum**: trans. as if *Germānōrum*. **plerumque superārint**: *superāverint*; 'generally defeated (them).' **quī tamen**: 'and they (the Helvetians) nevertheless.' 236, a.

26-33. **Direct form**: *Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovel, hī, sī quaerent (206), reperire poterunt, diuturnitate bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs (118, a) castris (131, a) sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, (eōs, = Gallōs) dēspērantes iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum (226, c), magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte viciisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.*

26. **quōs**: 168, and 49, a. **adversum proelium**: 'defeat' at Admagetos's stronghold; see chap. 31, ll. 45-46. **commovēret**: 172, b.

27. **diuturnitate**, etc.: 'when the Gauls had become exhausted by the length of the war.' 144, b, (2).

29. **palūdibus**: 'marshes,' added to explain how the encampments were shut off from approach. 131, a. **sē tenuisset**: 'had kept himself secluded.' **neque suī**, etc.: 'and had given (them) no chance to attack him,' lit. 'no power of himself.' **suī**: 102. **dēspērantes . . . viciisse**: i.e. *Ariovistum . . . subitō adortum (eōs = Gallōs) dēspērantes iam dē pugnā* ('giving up hope of battle') *et dispersōs* ('scattered'), *viciisse (eōs) ratiōne et cōsiliō* ('by cunning and strategy') *magis quam virtūte*.

31. **Cui ratiōnī** — **hāc**: i.e. *hāc ratiōne, cui*, 'by such cunning' — 'for which.' 165, c.

32. **imperitōs**: 'unskilled.' **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

33. **capī**: 'be caught.' 56.

- Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frumentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frumenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.*
- 40 *Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque*

34-39. **Direct form:** *Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferunt, faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere videantur* (184, a). *Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frumentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs sumministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frumenta mātūra; de itinere ipsī brevī tempore iūdicābitis.*



Figure 63. — Coin attributed to the Leuci.

Gold. Reverse, a winged genius riding on an arrow.

34. **Quī:** i.e. *ei, qui*; see chap. 39, ll. 23-27. **suum**, etc.: 'assigned their fear to a pretended anxiety about supplies.' How lit.?

35. **arroganter:** 'presumptuously.'

37. **sibi cūrae:** 112, b. B. 191, 2, a; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **Leucōs:** Fig. 63.

38. **sumministrāre:** 'were supplying.' **frumenta:** how different from *frumentum*? Cf. chap. 16, l. 3 and N.

40-45. **Direct form:** *Quod (militēs) nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil eā rē commoveor; scīō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut, male rē gestā, fortunam dēfuisse, aut, aliquō facinore compertō, avāritiam esse convictam: mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, felicitās Helvētiorū bellō est perspecta.*

40. **Quod . . . dīcantur:** sc. *militēs*; cf. chap. 39, l. 29. 198, c. B. 299, 2. **signa:** 326. **lātūrī [esse] dīcantur:** trans. 'it was said that the soldiers would,' etc. 148, e; 172, d, and 224, a.

41. **nihil:** 'not at all.' 118, c. **scīre:** sc. *sē*. 216. **quibuscumque:** after *dictō audiēns*; these two words express a single concept, 'obedient,' and hence are followed by the dative. 50, a, and 108, a. For an antecedent supply *eis* after *dēfuisse*; trans. 'that in the case of any (commanders) whatever who had found their armies mutinous, either their luck had failed them in consequence of the bad handling of some enterprise, or,' etc. How lit.?

*exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut, male rē gestā, fortunam defuisse, aut, aliquō facinore compertō, avaritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam,*

45

*Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor, plūs valeret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne sitūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibiue eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.*

42. *rē gestā*: 144, *b*, (3). *fortunam*: the Romans were superstitious in avoiding anything that seemed unlucky.

43. *defuisse*: 68, *a*. *aliquō*: from *aliqui*. 49, *a*. *facinore*: 'crime.' 13, *f*, and 144, *b*, (3). *avaritiam*: 'greed,' the underlying cause of the crimes committed by generals, according to Caesar.

44. *esse convictam*: 'had been clearly proved' against them. *suam*: emphatic position. 157, *b*. *innocentiam*: 'integrity,' freedom from the corruption implied in *avaritiam*. *perpetuā vitā*: 'during his entire life.' 147, *c*. B. 231, 1; A. 424, *b*; H. 417, 2. *felicitatem*: 'good fortune.'

45. *Helvētiōrum bellō*: we say 'war with the Helvetians,' or 'Helvetian campaign.' 147, *b*.

46-52. **Direct form**: *Itaque, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fui, repraesentābō; et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam primum intellegere possim* (196, *a*), *utrum apud milites pudor atque officium, an timor, plūs valeat* (204). *Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequētur* (218, 1, *a*), *tamen ego cum solā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiue ea praetōria cohors erit*.

46. *longiōrem*: 'more distant.' *collātūrus fuisset*: 'he had intended to put off.' 63, and 69, *b*.

47. *repraesentātūrum* [*esse*]: sc. *id*, antecedent of *quod*; 'he would at once do (that).' *dē quārtā vigiliā*: 242, *d*.

48. *quam primum*: 153, *c*. *utrum . . . an*: 204, (1). B. 300, 4; A. 335; H. 380.

49. *plūs valeret*: 'should have the stronger influence' with them. 118, *b*. *Quod*: 118, *d*.

51. *nōn dubitāret*: 'he entertained no doubts.' *praetōriam*

Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē.

*Fear and mutiny give place to enthusiasm. Caesar advances.*

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi innāta est; prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnis militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent; *Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse*  
 10 *existimāvisse.*

cohortem: 'bodyguard,' to which a general (originally called *praetor*, see Vocab.) was entitled.

53. legiōnī: 105, and 307. *e.* indulserat: 'had favored.' praecipuē: 'especially'; emphatic position. 352, *a.*

54. cōfidēbat maximē: 'had the fullest confidence.'

41. 1. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā: 'After this address.' How lit.? 144, *b.* (2). mīrum in modum: 'in a wonderful way.'

2. omnium: including not only the officers but also the soldiers, to whom the speech was promptly reported by the centurions. summa alacritās: 'the utmost enthusiasm.'

3. innāta est: 'arose.' prīnceps: adj., 'taking the lead.' How lit.? 152, *b.* per: 123, *a.* tribūnos mīlitum: 314.

4. eī grātiās ēgit: 'conveyed thanks to him.' fēcisset: 'had passed.' Why subjunctive? 183, *a.*

7. primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus: 'the centurions of first rank,' apparently the six centurions of the first cohort in each legion. ēgērunt: 'arranged.' utī — satisfacerent: 'to apologize.' 199, *a.*

8. Sē: '(declaring) that they.' 213, *b.* dubitāsse: 64, *a.* (1).

9. neque: trans. as if *et nōn*. dē summā bellī iūdicium: 'the determination of the general plan of campaign.' How lit.? suum, imperātōris: in predicate after *esse*; 'was not their (business), but the commander's.' 94, *d.* and 157, *d.*

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā, et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus 15



Figure 64. — Modern canal in the plain of Alsace near Strassburg.

11. **satisfactiōne**: 'apology.' **exquisitō**: 'sought out.' **per**: 'with the help of.'

12. **ei**: 'in him.' 109, *a*. **maximam fidem**: 'the fullest confidence.' **ut . . . dūceret**: 'so that he could lead'; explains *itinere*. 203, (4).

13. **milium . . . circuitū**: 'although with a detour of more than fifty miles', in order to avoid the dangerous defiles of the Doubs valley; see chap. 39, ll. 23-26 and *N*. (Fig. 61). **milium quinquāgintā**: sc. *passuum*. Why genitive? 100, *a*, and 129, *b*. **locis apertis**: 'through open country,' marching first north, and then northeast, between the Jura and the Vosegus mountains; see Map 1. 145, *c*.

15. **Septimō diē**: Caesar had probably covered about 120 miles since leaving Vesontio. He was now in the valley of the Rhine, never previously entered by a Roman general with an army. **explorātōribus**: 327.



certior factus est, Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

*Ariovistus suggests a conference, which is arranged.*

**42.** Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: *Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāre.*

- 5 Nōn respuit condiціōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset, ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmāni in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulātis, fore, uti pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs collo-  
10 quō dictus est ex eō diē quintus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad collo-

16. **nostris**: sc. *cōpīs*. **milibus**: 147, c.

17. **xx**: read as *viginti*. 36, and 38, b.

**42. 2. Quod**: the antecedent is *id*. 212, c. **postulāset** (= *postulāvisset*), **accessisset**: in translating supply 'Caesar' in order to avoid using 'he' with reference to two persons. **per sē**: 'so far as he was concerned.'

5. **nōn respuit**: 'did not reject.' **ad sānitātem**: 'to his senses.' 157, a.

6. **petentī**: sc. *sibi*. **dēnegāset**: 'he (Ariovistus) had refused.'

7. **ultrō**: 'of his own initiative.' **magnam . . . veniēbat**: 'he was coming to have great hopes,' we should say.

8. **prō**: 'in return for.' **suis populique**: 157, d. Cf. chap. 35, ll. 3-4, and Notes.

9. **fore**: after *spem*, as if Caesar had written *spērābat*; the subject is *ut* . . . *dēsisteret*. 225, and 203, (1). **pertināciā**: 'obstinate course.' 127, a. **colloquiō**: 112, a.

11. **ultrō citrōque**: 'back and forth' between the headquarters of the two commanders. **mitterentur**: 185, c.

12. **quem peditem**: 'any foot soldier.' 49, a, and 10, d.

quium Caesar addūceret: *Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.* 15

Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus dētrāctis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium 20 quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret.

Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: *Plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum, sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.* 25

13. **Verērī sē**: '(saying) that he was afraid.' 213, b. **nē**: 'that.' 202.

14. **venīret**: 'should come'; *veniat* in the direct form. 216. **aliā ratiōne**: 'on any other condition.' 136, c.

16. **colloquium . . . tolli**: 223, a. **interpositā causā**: 'by putting forward a pretext.' 144, b, (6).

17. **Gallōrum equitātui**: see chap. 15, ll. 1-4.

18. **esse**: the subject is *impōnere*, with *commodissimum*, 'the most expedient (thing),' in predicate. 222, b, and 148, d. **Gallis equitibus**: 'from the Gallic horsemen.' 109, b.

19. **dētrāctis**: 144, b, (2). **eō**: = *in eōs*, 'on them.'

20. **cui**: 'in which.' 106. **quam**: 153, c. **impōnere**: 'to mount.'

21. **si . . . esset**: 'if there should be any need of action.' **quid**: 118, b. **factō**: 132, a. B. 218, 2, c; A. 411, a; H. 477, III.

22. **Quod cum fieret**: 'While this was being done.' 185, c. **nōn irrīdiculē**: 'not without wit.' 239, g. **quidam**: 108.

23. **Plūs**: object of *facere*; 'was doing more' for the legion.

24. **pollicitum**: 'having promised'; sc. *eum*, referring to Caesar, subject of *rescribere*. **in**, etc.: 'that he would consider . . . as a body guard.'

25 **ad equum rescribere**: the phrase has a double meaning, 'enroll as cavalrymen,' "demotion" for a legionary, or 'enroll as knights,' a rank of nobility; in the contrast lies the point of the joke.

*Caesar and Ariovistus meet. Caesar justifies his demands.*

**43.** Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equis dēvexerat, passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovisti parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

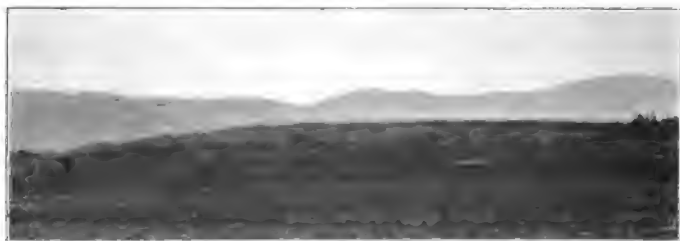


Figure 65. — Hill of Plettig.

Here the conference between Caesar and Ariovistus probably took place. In the distance are the Vosges mountains.

**43. 1. Plānitiēs:** 'plain' of Alsace, between the Vosges (*Vosegus*) mountains and the Rhine (Fig. 64). **21. a. erat:** 90, *a. tumulus terrēnus:* 'an earthy mound,' whose sides, free from rocks and ledges, furnished an easy ascent for horsemen. This is identified by Colonel Stoffel with the hill of Plettig, an elevation of oval shape about 24 miles southwest of Strassburg, between the villages of Epfig and Dambach; it rises in isolation more than 160 feet above the surrounding plain (Fig. 65).

**2. aequō ferē spatiō aberat:** 'was about equally distant.' How lit.? 147, *c.*

**3. ut erat dictum:** 'as agreed.' How lit.?

**4. equis dēvexerat:** 'had brought on horseback,' lit. 'by means of horses.' 131, *a. passibus:* 147, *c.*

**5. ducentis:** 36, and 37, *d.* How many feet in 200 paces? 243, *b.*

**6. intervāllō:** 138. **ex equis:** 'on horseback.' 126, *c.*

**7. dēnōs:** 'ten men each.' 36, and 85. **addūcerent:** 199, *a.*

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūs-  
que in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus<sup>10</sup>  
esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē  
missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnis homi-  
num officiis cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat: *illum, cum neque  
aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō  
ac liberalitātē suā ac senātūs ea praeemia cōsecūtum.*<sup>15</sup>

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae ne-  
cessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs  
cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifca, in eōs facta essent,  
ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Aeduī tenuis-

9. **Ubi eō ventum est**: 'when they (had) come thither.' 73, d.  
**initiō**: 147, b. **sua senātūsque**: 157, d.

10. **beneficia**: explained by the appositional *quod*-clauses follow-  
ing; see chap. 35, ll. 3-5 and Notes. **rēx**: 88, a.

11. **amicus**: 89, a. **mūnera**: what these 'presents' were, we do  
not know. Gifts considered suitable for a 'king' were a golden crown,  
an ivory scepter, a chair of state, and embroidered robes. **am-  
plissimē**: 'in richest measure.' 34, a.

12. **missa** [essent]: 214, b. **quam rem**: 'and that this recog-  
nition.' 167. **et . . . et**: 233, a. **paucīs**: 105, 164, a. **prō  
magnis officiis**: 'in return for great services.'

13. **docēbat**: 'he stated.' **illum . . . cōsecūtum** [esse]:  
213, b.

14. **aditum**: '(way of) approach' to the Senate.

15. **suā**: 157, b. **praeemia**: 'distinctions.' No special reason  
is known why Ariovistus, as implied by Caesar, should have sought the  
recognition of Rome.

16. **veterēs**: 26, a. **necessitudinis**: 'of close relationship.'  
12, d.

17. **ipsīs**: i.e. *Rōmānīs*; we should say 'existed between the  
Romans and the Aeduans.' **intercēderent**: 204, (3). **quae**: 48, b.

18. **cōnsulta**: 'decrees.' **quamque** = *et quam*. **honōrifca**:  
'complimentary.' 31. **in eōs facta essent**: 'had been passed  
in their behalf.' 204, (2).

19. **ut**: 'how.' 204, (3). **omni tempore**: see N. to chap. 11,  
1. 6.

20 sent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent: *Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripi quis patī posset?*

25 Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat: *nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; ob-sidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.*

*The attitude of Ariovistus is uncompromising and defiant.*

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:

20. prius etiam quam: 'even before.' 189, a, and 220. nostram: 167, c.

21. hanc: for *hōc*. 164, c. ut . . . velit: 'to desire;' explaining *hanc*. 203, (4).

22. nōn modo — sed: 236, d. suī nihil dēperdere: 'should lose nothing of what they had,' lit. 'of their own.' 97, a, and 154, a. dignitāte: 'in prestige.' 142, a.

23. auctiōrēs: 'the more abounding.' quod . . . posset: i.e. *quis posset patī id, quod . . . attulissent, eīs ēripi?* The reference is to the power and independence of the Aeduans in former times.

24. attulissent: 'had brought.' 69, b. eīs: dative, 'from them.' 109, b. B. 188, 2, d; A. 381; H. 427. posset: *possit* in the direct form. 179, b, (2).

25. Postulāvit eadem: 'he made the same demands.' 117, a. dederat: 'he had intrusted'; see chap. 35. 67, a.

26. Nē . . . Inferret, redderet, paterētur: explaining *eadem*. 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642.

28. remittere: 'send back.' posset: 218, (1), a. at: 'at any rate.' 236, a. quōs: 168.

44. 1. postulāta: 'demands.' pauca: object of *respondit*. 154, a.

2. suis: emphatic. 157, b. virtūtibus: 'merits.' multa praedicāvit: 'had much to say.' 84. How lit.?

*Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse ; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērint.*

*Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse ; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre ; sī pāce ūti velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit.*

3-8. **Direct form:** *Trānsiī Rhēnum non meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquī; sēdēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capio iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērunt.*

3. **rogātum et arcessitum:** 'because he had been asked,' etc. 227, a, (1). B. 337, 2, f; A. 496; H. 638, 1.

4. **nōn sine:** 239, g.

6. **ipsi:** the Gauls. **concessās:** 'which had been ceded.' 227, a, (4). **obsidēs:** i.e. *sē habēre sēdēs et obsidēs.* 238, a. **voluntāte:** 138.

7. **iūre:** 'in accordance with the rights' (lit. 'right') 'of war.' 13, g, and 138, c. **quod:** the antecedent is *stipendium*. **victīs:** 'the vanquished.' 227, a, (4).

9-14. **Direct form:** *Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē unō proeliō pulsae ac superatae sunt. Sī (Galli) iterum experiri volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti volunt, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte adhūc pependerunt.*

9. **sēsē Gallīs . . . Gallōs sibi:** 239, b.

11. **castra habuisse:** 'had fought.' How lit.? **unō proeliō:** see chap. 31, l. 46, and N.

12. **parātum dēcertāre:** 'ready to fight it out.' 148, c, and 221, c.

13. **ūti:** 'to enjoy'; followed by what case? 131, c. **inīquum:**

- 15 *Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō, esse oportēre, atque sē hūc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetierit.*
- 20 *Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā, facere; eius rei testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit.*

'unfair.' Why neuter? 148, d. **dē stipendiō recūsāre**: 'to refuse to pay the tribute.' How lit.?

14. **suā**: i.e. of the Gauls; they, however, told a different story, as we learn from chap. 31. ll. 34-40.

15-19. **Direct form**: *Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō, esse oportet, atque (eam) hūc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, non minus libenter recūsābō (206) populi Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetiī.*

15. **sibi ōrnāmentō**: 112, b. B. 191, 2, a; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **ōrnāmentō**, etc.: 'ought to be a source of prestige and a protection, not a loss.'

16. **oportēre**: the subject is *amicitiam* . . . *esse*.

17. **per**: 123, a.

18. **subtrahantur**: 'should be taken from under' his control. The *dēditiciī* were 'prisoners of war,' held as hostages to force the payment of tribute.

20-23. **Direct form**: *Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei (207) mūniendī (causā), nōn Galliae impugnandae causā, faciō; eius rei testimōnium est, quod nisi rogātus nōn venī, et quod bellum nōn intuli, sed dēfendi.*

20. **Quod**, etc.: 'In regard to his bringing over,' etc. 198, c. **multitudinem**: 120,000, according to chap. 31, l. 17.

21. **suī mūniendī** [causa]: 'in order to protect himself.' 230, (1).

22. **testimōnium**: 'proof'; in predicate with *esse*, to which the *quod*-clauses stand as subject. **quod**: 'the fact that.' 198, b. **nisi rogātus**: 'without being asked.'

23. **dēfenderit**: 'had acted on the defensive,' lit. 'warded off (what).'

*Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae 25*  
*prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in*  
*suās possēssiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse*  
*Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret,*  
*sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquōs,*  
*quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.*

30

*Quod frātres ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam*  
*barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum, ut nōn scīret,*  
*neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium*  
*tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum*

24-30. **Direct form:** *Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meīs possēssiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea est haec Gallia, sicut illa (Gallia) vestra (prōvincia est). Ut mihi concēdī nōn oporteat, sī in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam (307, 1), sic item vōs estis inīquī, quod mē in meō iūre interpellātis.*

24. **Galliam:** Celtic Gaul (287, b), as in l. 28; the Province, mentioned in l. 26, as stated elsewhere, had been under Roman control since 121 B.C. 290.

26. **finibus:** 127, a. **Quid sibi vellet:** 'what did Caesar mean?' How lit.? 217, a.

27. **hanc Galliam:** 'this (part of) Gaul,' toward the Rhine.

28. **Ut:** 'As.' **ipsī:** Ariovistō. **concēdī nōn oportēret:** 'no concession ought to be made.' How lit.?

30. **sē interpellārēmus:** 'we were interfering with him.'

31-36. **Direct form:** *Quod frātres ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs (esse) dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus rērum sum, ut nōn scīam, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.*

31. **Quod — dīceret:** 'with reference to his saying.' **frātres:** 88, a. Cf. chap. 33, l. 8.

32. **imperitū rērum:** 'unversed in affairs.' 102. B. 204, 1; A. 349, a; H. 451, 1. **ut:** 197, b.

33. **bellō:** only three years before, in 61 B.C. 147, b.

34. **ipsōs, Aeduī:** trans. as if *Aeduōs, ei.* **contentiōnibus:** struggles.'



35 *et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.*

*Dēbēre sē suspicārī, simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat, atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, 40 sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste, habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfecerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs, per eōrum nūntiōs, compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset 45 et liberam possēsiōnem Galliāe sibi trādīdisset, magnō sē*

37-47. **Direct form:** *Dēbēō suspicārī, simulātā tē amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habēs, meī opprimendī habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs, atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hostē, habēbō. Quod sī te interfecerō, multis nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum faciam (id ab ipsīs, per eōrum nūntiōs, compertum habēō), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā tuā morte redimere possum. Quod sī dēcesseris et liberam possēsiōnem Galliāe mihi trādīderis, magnō tē praemiō remunerābor et, quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam.*

37. **Dēbēre sē suspicārī:** 'that he had good reason to suspect.' How lit.? **simulātā amīcitiā:** 'under the guise of friendship.' 144, b, (5).

38. **sui opprimendī causā:** 'in order to crush him.' 230, (1). **habēre:** sc. *eum*, 'was keeping (it there).'

39. **Qui:** Caesar. 167. **dēdūcat:** 'withdraw.' **regiōnibus:** 'regions.' 81.

40. **habitūrum:** sc. *esse*. **Quod:** 'Moreover.' 118, d.

42. **grātum:** 'a kindness.' **id:** 'that fact.' 160, c.

43. **nūntiōs:** 'agents' rather than 'messengers.' **compertum habēre:** trans. as if *comperisse*. 229, a. B. 337, 7; A. 497, b; H. 431, 3. **quōrum omnium:** 'of all of whom.' 97, c.

44. **eius:** Caesar's. It is not impossible that Ariovistus had been in communication with Caesar's enemies; but whether he spoke the truth or not, he was evidently familiar with the party strifes and jealousies at this time in Roman politics. **Quod:** 'On the other hand.' 118, d.

45. **liberam:** i.e. 'without interference.' **Galliāe:** Celtic Gaul, as in l. 24.

*illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.*

*Caesar declines to make any concessions.*

**45.** Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset :



Figure 66. — The conference between Caesar and Ariovistus.

**46.** *illum* : trans. as if *Caesarem*. *remūnerātūrum* [esse] : 'he would compensate.' 61, a, (1). *quaecumque* : 50, a.

**47.** *eius* : 'on the part of Caesar.' How lit.? *cōfectūrum* [esse] : if Caesar will withdraw, Ariovistus will fight his battles for him. The attitude of Ariovistus seems somewhat less defiant than in his former reply, sent by messengers and summarized in chap. 36. The conference between Caesar and Ariovistus, as conceived by a German designer, is shown in Fig. 66.

**45.** 1. *in eam sententiam* : lit. 'to this purport' ; we should say 'to show.'

2. *negōtiō* : 127, a. *posset* : 204 (3). B. 300, 1 ; A. 574 ; H. 649, II.

3-8. **Direct form** : Neque mea neque populi Rōmānī cōsuētūdō patitur, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō, Galliam potius esse tuam

*Neque suam neque populū Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iudicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populū Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Quīntō Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset.*

*Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populū Rōmānī iustissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iudiciū senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam, bellō victam, suis lēgibus utī voluisset.*

quam populū Rōmānī. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ā Quīntō Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit, neque (eōs) in provinciam redēgit, neque (eis) stipendium imposuit.

3. **Neque**, etc.: 213, b. **sua**, **populū**: 157, d.

4. **utī . . . dēsereret**: after *patī*. 199, a, (6). **neque**: 'and not.'

5. **esse Ariovistī**: 'belonged to Ariovistus.' 94, d. B. 198, 3; A. 343, b; H. 447. **Bellō**: 131, a.

6. **Arvernōs, Rutēnōs**: conquered in 121 B.C., but not included in the Province excepting a small division of the Ruteni, called *Rutēni prōvinciālēs* (VII. 7); see Map GALLIA.

7. **quibus**: 105. **ignōvisset**: the Romans with good reason had 'pardoned' them — their country, lying beyond the Cévennes mountains, could have been held only with the greatest difficulty.

**neque . . . redēgisset**: 'and (whom) it had not reduced.'

9-12. **Direct Form**: *Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populū Rōmānī iustissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī iudiciū senātūs observārī oportet, liberā dēbet esse Gallia, quam, bellō victam, suis lēgibus utī voluit.*

9. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**: 'priority of time,' lit. 'each earliest time.' 170, a, and 49, a. B. 252, 5, c; A. 313, b; H. 515, 2.

11. **observārī**: 'to be regarded.' 357, b.

12. **victam**: 'although it had been conquered.' 227, a, (3). **suis**: 'its own,' referring to the subject of *utī*. **voluisset**: i.e. *senātus voluisset*.

*The conference is abruptly ended by an attack of German cavalry.*

**46.** Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovisti propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. <sup>5</sup> Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut, pulsīs hostibus, dici posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs.

Posteā quam in vulgus militum ēlātum est, quā arrogantīā <sup>10</sup> in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercitū iniectum est.

**46. 1. geruntur:** trans. by a past tense. 190, *a*.

**2. tumulum:** referred to in chap. 43, l. 1. 123, *b*. B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; H. 420, 5. The German cavalry were about a thousand Roman feet from the hill (chap. 43, l. 5), the tenth legion at an equal distance.

**3. adequitāre:** 'were riding up (to).'

**5. nē quod omnīnō tēlum:** 'any missile at all.' 168.

**6. legiōnis dēlēctae:** mounted on horseback (chap. 42, ll. 16-25); 'to the legion,' we should say. 102.

**7. oommittendum [esse] . . . eōs:** 'he thought that he ought not to allow it to be said that, if the enemy were routed, they.' How lit.?

**8. hostibus:** 144, *b*, (6). **per fidem:** 'through a pledge of good faith,' used to entrap them.

**10. Posteā quam:** 188, *a*. **vulgus:** 'rank and file.' 6, *b*. **ēlātum est:** 69, *b*. **quā arrogantīā ūsus:** 'with what arrogance.' How lit.? 131, *c*.

**11. Galliā:** 127, *a*. **Rōmānis:** why dative? 109, *c*. **interdixisset,** etc.: 'had denied to the Romans all right to be in Gaul,' lit. 'from all Gaul.' 204, (2).

**12. ut:** 'how.' **fēcissent, dirēmisset:** 204, (3).

**14. pugnandī:** 'for fighting,' we should say. 230, (1). **exercitū:** 107, *a*. **iniectum est:** 'were' (lit 'was') 'infused.' 172, *b*.

*Ariovistus reopens negotiations, but throws Caesar's envoys into chains.*

**47.** Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit:  
*Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, si id minus vellet, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem s ad sē mitteret.*

Colloquendi Caesari causa visa nōn est, et eō magis, quod pridīe eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suis sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est Gāium

**47. 1. Biduō:** 140. **post:** here an adverb.

**2-5. Direct form:** *Volō dē hīs rēbus, quae inter nōs agī coeptae neque perfectae sunt, tēcum agere; (rogō) utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstituās, aut, si id minus velīs, ē tuīs lēgātīs aliquem ad mē mittās.*

**2. Velle, etc.:** 212, c, (4), and 213, b. **coeptae** [essent]: 72, b, c.

**3. utī, etc.:** i.e. *sē rogāre, utī (Caesar) . . . cōstitueret*; the idea of asking is implied in *Velle*, etc. 199, a.

**4. minus:** trans. as if *nōn*. **ē lēgātīs:** 97, d. **suis:** *Caesaris*. **aliquem:** 49, a. Ariovistus wanted Caesar to send not a messenger but one of his highest officers, probably in order to hold him as a hostage.

**6. causa vīsa nōn est:** 'there did not seem (to be any) reason.' 90, b. **et eō magis:** 'especially'; lit. 'and on this account the more,' *eō* being explained by the following *quod*-clause. 135, a.

**7. diēi:** 94, c. B. 201, 3, a; A. 359, b, N. 2; H. 446, 5. **quīn . . . conicerent:** 'from hurling.' 201, a. B. 295, 3; A. 558; H. 595, 2.

**8. Lēgātum ē suis:** 'an envoy from his staff'; one of his officers. **sēsē . . . missūrum** [esse]: 'that it would be exceedingly hazardous for him to send to Ariovistus'; how lit.? **magnō cum periculō:** 136, a.

**10. vīsum est, etc.:** *vīsum est mittere* (l. 16) *Gāium Valerium Procillum*, etc. 222, a.

Valerium Procillum, C. Valerii Cabūri filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī<sup>13</sup> Germānis causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognōscerent et ad sē referrent.

Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: *Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?* Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

11. C. = *Gāl.* 19, a. Valerī: 8, a. virtūte: 148, a.

12. hūmānitāte: 'refinement.' adulēscētem: 'a young man.'

C. Valeriō Flaccō: governor of the Province of Gaul in 83 B.C.

13. civitāte: Roman 'citizenship' was often conferred upon foreigners who had rendered some service. In this case the Gaul *Cabūrus* took the First Name and Clan Name of C. *Valerius Flaccus*, to whom he was indebted for the distinction, and was known as C. *Valerius Caburus*. 19, a, and b. dōnātus erat: 'had been presented.'

14. quā multā Ariovistus ūtēbātur: 'which Ariovistus spoke fluently'; how lit.?

15. cōsuētūdine: 'practice.' 135, a. in eō: 'in his case.' peccandī causa: '(any) reason for offering violence,' lit. 'of doing wrong'; for Procillus was a Gaul.

16. nōn esset: 'because (as he thought) there was not.' 183, a.

17. ūtēbātur: 'enjoyed.' Metius may have been received and entertained by Ariovistus in the course of the negotiations which in 59 B.C. culminated in the recognition of the German ruler by the Roman Senate (chap. 35, ll. 3-4).

20. conclāmāvit: 'he called out loudly.' Quid: 'why.' 118, e. venīrent: 217, a.

21. an speculandī causā: '(was it) in order to act as spies.' 179, a, (2). How lit.? Cōnantēs [eōs], etc.: 'when they tried to speak he stopped them,' preventing explanation because he wished his army to believe that they were spies. 227, a, (5).

22. catēnās: 'chains.'

*Ariovistus moves camp so as to cut off Caesar's supplies.*

**48.** Eodem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, uti frūmentō commeātūque, qui ex Sēquanis et Aeduis supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet.

Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset.  
**10** Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit.

**48. 1. prōmōvit:** '(Ariovistus) moved forward.' **milibus:** 147, c. How far by our measurement? 243, a, b.

**2. Caesaris castra:** Caesar's camp is located by Colonel Stöffel between Gemar and Ostheim, about 35 miles southwest of Strassburg. See Map 4, LARGE CAMP. **diēi.** 94, c.

**3. praeter . . . trādūxit:** Ariovistus's line of march, as suggested on Map 4, probably skirted or traversed the foothills of the Vosges in such a way that Caesar could not attack him while executing this movement.

**4. castra:** the camp of Ariovistus, probably at the place so marked on Map 4, was favorably located for defense. **uti . . . interclūderet:** explains cōnsiliō. 196, a. **frūmentō:** 127, a. B. 214, 2; A. 401; H. 464. Ariovistus thought that by cutting off Caesar's supplies he could force Caesar to retire, or else to fight on ground of his own choosing.

**5. qui:** 163, c. **supportārētur:** subjunctive by attraction. 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

**8. aciem instrūctam:** 'his army drawn up' in triple line, as indicated on Map 4, CAESAR'S FIRST POSITION. 337, a. **ut:** 'so that.' **vellet:** 220.

**9. ei . . . deesset:** 'he did not lack opportunity.' How lit.? 197, a, and 239, g.

**10. diēbus:** 147, c. **exercitum:** the German infantry, as we see from the next line. **castris:** 'within the camp.' 131, a. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.

**11. equestri proeliō:** 'with cavalry skirmishing.' **contendit:** 238, a.

Genus hōc erat pugnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs v̄lōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex om̄nī cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliis versābantur.<sup>15</sup> Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī, graviōre vulnere acceptō, equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubis equōrum sublevātī cursum adaequārent.

20

*Caesar fortifies a camp beyond Ariovistus, reopening the road.*

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō

12. Genus pugnae: 'The method of fighting.' hōc: 161, a.

13. erant: 90, a. numerō: 142, a, and 86. peditēs: sc. erant. 10, d. v̄lōcissimī: 'the fastest.'

14. quōs, etc.: 'whom they' (the horsemen) 'had chosen from the entire force, each one (selecting) a foot-soldier.' How lit.? singulōs: agrees with quōs. 36.

15. versābantur: '(the horsemen) associated themselves.'

16. eōs, hī: the foot-soldiers. si . . . erat, concurrēbant: general condition of fact. 205, (2). quid dūrius: 'unusually serious difficulty.' 153, a. How lit.? concurrēbant: 'they would rush to the rescue.'

17. quī: 'any one.' 49, a and b. vulnere: 13, e. equō: 127, a. dēciderat: 'had fallen.' 205, (4).

18. circumsistēbant: 'they would gather round him.' si quō, etc.: 'if it was necessary to advance in any direction unusually far, or to retreat with special swiftness.' 73, e, and 153, a.

19. celeritās: 'swiftness.'

20. iubis: 'by the manes.' sublevātī: 'supporting themselves.' 174. oursum: 'they kept up with the running' of the horses. Caesar afterwards employed German horsemen as mercenaries, and they rendered him very effective service, as at the siege of Alesia (VII. 80).

49. 1. eum: Ariovistus. sē: object of tenēre. nē . . . prohibērētur: see chap. 48, ll. 4-6, and Notes. 196, a.

2. eum locum: Map 4, CAMP OF ARIOVISTUS. locō: 165, a.



Germāni cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat.

Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omni equitatū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs ter-  
rērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castris, duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum; quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

*The Germans, Caesar hears, dare not fight before the new moon.*

50. Proximō diē, institūtō suō, Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pugnandi potestātem fēcīt.

4. castris: 108, a. idōneum: 'suitable.' aciēs triplici: 337, a.

6. castra: 332. This camp on Map 4 is called the 'Small Camp,' *castra minōra*, in order to distinguish it from the 'Large Camp,' *castra maiōra*. The two camps were not far from two miles apart; both were on somewhat higher ground. Caesar's object in establishing the smaller camp, which was a little more than half a mile from the Germans, was to keep open the road to Vesontio, and so maintain communication with his base of supplies. mūnīre: 'fortify.' 333.

8. hominum . . . expedita: trans. as if *sēdecim mīlia hominum expeditōrum*. expedita: 'light-armed.'

9. quae cōpiae: 'in order that these forces.' 193, a.

10. Nihilō sētius: 'Nevertheless,' lit. 'by nothing the less.' 140.

11. duās: i.e. *prīmam et secundam*. prōpulsāre: 'to ward off.'

13. reliquās: sc. *legiōnēs*. How many men, probably, in the six legions? 307, b and c.

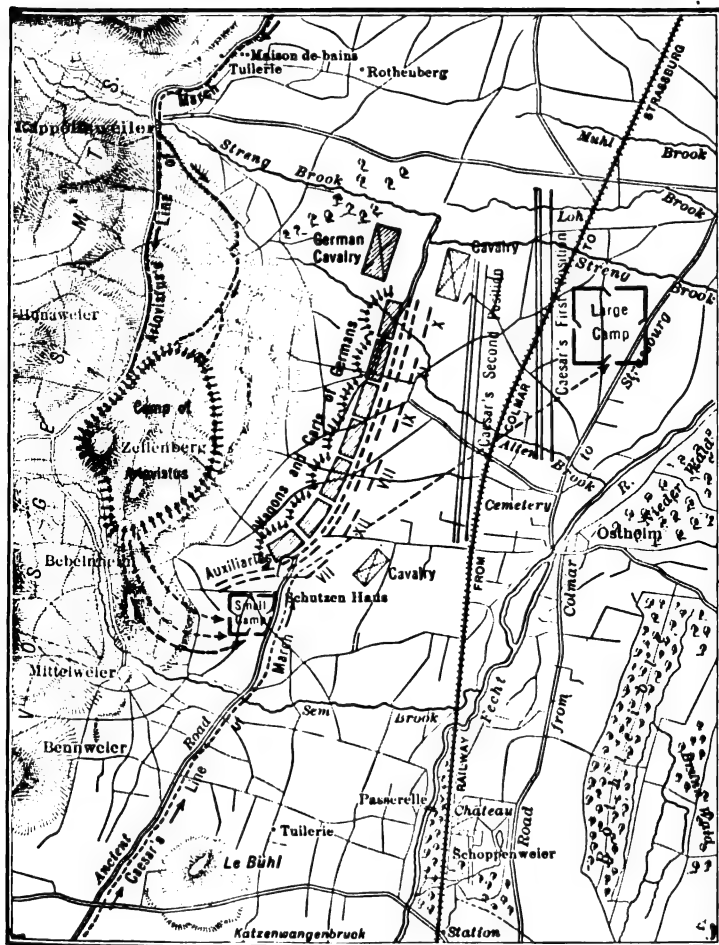
50. 1. institūtō suō: 'in accordance with his usual practice' (chap. 48, ll. 7-8). 136, c. utrisque: 51.

3. aciem: Map 4, CAESAR'S SECOND POSITION. potestātem fēcīt: 'gave an opportunity.'

# MAP 4 THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

Book I, 49-53

To face page 120



SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES  
0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES  
0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1

## EXPLANATION

Caesar, marching from the south, encamped north of Modern Ostheim (chap. 48, 1. 2). Ariovistus, marching from the north, encamped on Zellenberg.

Dei nē

an exe

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

etna s

Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merī-  
diem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēnum Ariovistus  
partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret,  
misit. Acrīter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est.  
Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multis et illātīs et  
acceptis vulneribus, in castra redūxit. 10

Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ario-  
vistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod  
apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātres familiae  
eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proe-  
lium committi ex ūsū esset necne; *eās ita dicere*, 15

*Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam  
proeliō contendissent.*

5. nē . . . quidem: 237, c.      prōdīre: 68, b.      merīdiem:  
'midday.'

7. quae: trans. as if *ut ea*. 193, a.

8. Acrīter — pugnātum est: 'Fiercely the battle raged.' 73, d.  
utrimque: 'on both sides.'

9. Sōlis occāsū: 'At sunset.' 147, a.

11. ex: 116, c.      quam ob rem: 'for what reason.' 204, (2).  
How lit.?

12. proeliō nōn dēcertāret: 'would not fight a decisive battle.'  
131, a. How lit.? Ariovistus had used only a part of his forces (l. 7).  
causam: explained by the following appositional *quod*-clause. 198, b.

13. esset: 214, b. mātres familiae: 'matrons,' married women  
who were believed to have prophetic powers.

14. sortibus: 'by means of lots,' consisting of bits of wood from a  
branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a  
white cloth and then picked up. 17, c. vāticinātiōnibus: 'prophetic  
utterances,' inspired by "eddis of rivers and whirlings and noises of  
currents." dēclārārent: 203, (2). utrum . . . neone: 'whether  
. . . or not.' 204, (1). B. 300, 4, a; A. 335, N; H. 650, 1.

15. ex ūsū: 'expedient.' How lit.? eās, etc.: 213, b.

16. Nōn, etc.: indirect discourse, depending on *dicere*. fās:  
'predestined.' superāre: 'should be victorious.' novam lūnam:  
'the new moon' of September 18, 58 B.C., according to modern compu-  
tations. The ancient German superstition about the influence of the

*Taking advantage of their superstition, Caesar forces an engagement.*

**51.** *Postridiē eius diē Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit; omnēs ālāriōs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriis ūterētur; ipse, triplici īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.*

Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, 10 Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō

moon still lingers in many places, particularly in respect to commencing certain farming operations "in the old of the moon."

**51. 1. diē:** 94, c. The date was about September 14. **praesidiō utrisque castris:** a dative of purpose and a dative of indirect object; 'as a garrison for each camp,' we should say. How lit.? 112, a, and 104, a.

**2. quod:** as antecedent sc. *id*, object of *reliquit*. **ālāriōs:** 'auxiliaries'; the light-armed troops, called *ālārit* because usually stationed on the wings (*alae*) of an army. 308.

**4. minus multitudīne valēbat:** 'was weaker in respect to his force.' How lit.? **prō:** 'in comparison with.'

**5. ad speciem:** 'for show,' in order to hide from the enemy his weakness in heavy infantry; Ariovistus would take the *ālāriōs* for *legiōnāriōs*.

**6. triplici aciē:** the front formed by the legions must have been at least a mile long. The probable arrangement of the legions in order of battle is indicated in Map 4; in the rear line only two cohorts to each legion are shown, for the reason that one cohort was probably drawn off for the guard duty indicated in l. 1, *praesidiō castris*. 337, a.

**7. necessariō:** 'of necessity.' **castris:** 127, a.

**8. generātim:** 'by tribes,' the soldiers of each tribe being formed into a body by themselves. **intervāllis:** 138.

**10. raedīs:** 'with wagons,' probably covered, like gypsy wagons.

**11. circumdederunt:** 'hemmed in,' on the rear and wings, as indi-

mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs passis manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

*Desperate fighting, hand-to-hand; the Roman left, wavering, is reënforced.*

**52.** Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit.

Ita nostrī ācritēr in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectis pilis, comminus gladiis pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum

cated in Map 4. *qua*: 168. *Eō*: 'thereon,' upon the wagons and carts.

12. *mulierēs*: 11, *c*. *proficiscentēs*: sc. *eōs*. 227, *a*, (4).

13. *passis manibus*: 'with outstretched hands.' 144, *b*, (2). *flentēs*: 227, *b*.

**52.** 1. *singulis*, etc.: Caesar had six legions (307, *e*). Over each of five legions he put a lieutenant, and over the sixth he placed the quaestor. What were the quaestor's ordinary duties? 313, *b*, and 251, *b*.

2. *testēs*: 'as witnesses.' 115, *a*. *quisque*: 170, *b*.

3. *ā dextro cornū*: 'on the right wing.' 126, *c*. *eam partem hostium*: the German left wing, opposite the Roman right. *minimē firmam*: 'the weakest.'

5. *Ita*: modifies *ācritēr*. 34, *a*. *signō*: given on the trumpet. 326, *a*, (1).

6. *itaque*: = *et ita*. *repente*: 'suddenly.' *prōcurrērunt*: 'ran forward.' *spatium*: trans. as if *tempus*.

7. *pila*: object of *coniciendī*. 322, *d*, and 230, (1). *Reiectis pilis* — *pugnātum est*: 'they threw aside their pikes and fought.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2) and 73, *d*. *comminus*: 'at close quarters.'

8. *gladiis*: 322, *e*. *ex*: 'in accordance with.'

9. *phalange*: 'a compact mass,' like the formation adopted by the Helvetians; see chap. 24, l. 13, and N.

10 *excēpērunt*. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostrī, qui in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne  
15 suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equitātui praeerat, quod expēdi-

10. *excēpērunt*: the Germans apparently did not hurl their javelins (351) but relied upon their shields and swords; the German sword

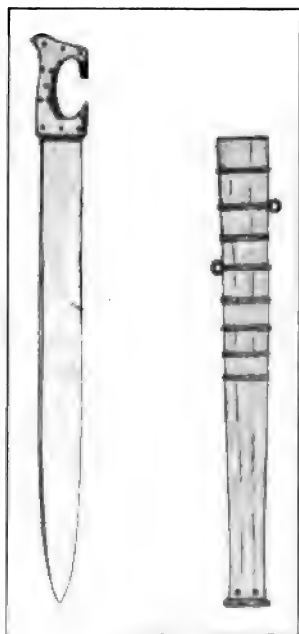


Figure 67.—Ancient German sword with its wooden scabbard.

was longer than the Roman, and single-edged (Fig. 67). *complūrēs nostrī*: 'many men on our side.' How lit.? 97, c. B. 201, 1, b; A. 346, e; H. 442, 2.

11. *phalanga*: 18, f. *insilirent*: 'leaped (upon).' 194, a. *revellerent*: 'pulled back.' *dēsuper*: 'from above.' In hand-to-hand fighting the Roman soldier, parrying blows with his own shield, generally tried to strike with his sword under or around the shield of the enemy. In this case the shields of the Germans were interlocked in the close formation, and Caesar's men in their eagerness, as they rushed on the foe, sprang up, pulled back the enemy's shields from the top, and stabbed with their short swords from above.

13. *ā sinistrō cornū*: 'on their left wing,' facing the Roman right, where Caesar was. 126, c.

14. *conversa esset*: why subjunctive? *ā dextrō cornū*: opposite the Roman left.

16. *P. Crassus*: See Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2). *adulēscēns*: 'young,' so called to distinguish him from his father and from his older brother, who was afterwards with Caesar in Gaul; see Vocab. under

tior erat quam ei, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

*Caesar is victorious. The captive envoys are rescued.*

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum, milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta, pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut, viribus confisi, transire contendērunt aut, lintribus inventis, sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus, ea profugit; reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecerunt.

*Crassus*, (3). *equitatus*: 107. *expeditior*: 'more disengaged,' so that he had an opportunity to look about and see where help was most needed; the cavalry, which Crassus commanded, was not fighting.

17. *ei*, etc.: the officers of the legions. *inter aciem*: 'in action.' How lit.? *tertiam aciem*: the 'third line' was usually kept as a reserve force till needed. 337, b.

18. *laborantibus*: 'who were hard pressed.' 227, a, (4). *nostris*, *subsidio*: 112, b.

53. 1. *restitutum est*: the language implies that the Roman left wing was ceasing to fight when the reserves were sent to its aid.

2. *prius quam*: 189, a. *ad flumen Rhenum*: possibly the fleeing Germans followed the valley of the river Ill and came to the Rhine about '50 miles' northeast of the scene of battle. On the other hand a flight and pursuit of 50 miles seem improbable, and it has been suggested that Caesar wrote *quindecim*, 'fifteen,' instead of *quinquaginta*; for the Rhine is about 15 miles east of the supposed battlefield.

4. *viribus*: 135, a. B. 219, 1; A. 431; H. 476, 3. *confisi*: 62.

5. *transire*: 'to swim across.' *lintribus*: 15, a.

6. *naviculam*: 'a small boat.' *deligatam*: 'tied.'

7. *nactus*: 'coming upon.' 61, a, (3), and 226, c. *ea*: 'in it.' 131, a. Ariovistus seems to have died not long afterwards (V. 29).

8. *equites*: what were the uses of the cavalry? 339. *interfecerunt*: the slain numbered 80,000, according to Plutarch.



Duae fuērunt Arioviſtī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam  
 10 domō ſēcum ēdūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis ſoror,  
 quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre miſſam; utraeque in eā  
 fugā periērunt. Duae filiae; hārum altera occiſa, altera  
 capta eſt.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūſtōdibz in fugā, trīnīs  
 15 catēnīs vinctus, traherētur, in ipſum Caesarem hoſtēs equi-  
 tātū inſequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn  
 minōrem quam ipſa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod homi-  
 nem honeſtiſſimum prōvinciae Galliae, ſuum familiārem  
 et hoſpitem, ēreptum ē manibus hoſtium, ſibi reſtitūtum  
 20 vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātu-  
 lātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is, ſē praesente, dē  
 ſē ter ſortibus cōſultum dicēbat, utrum igni ſtatim necā-

9. **Duae uxōrēs**: the Germans ordinarily had but one wife. **ūna**  
 [uxor], **altera**: 91, c. **nātiōne**: 'by birth.' How lit.? 142, a.

11. **dūxerat**: i.e. *in mātirimōnium dūxerat*, 'had married.' **utrae-  
 que**: 51.

12. **filiae**: sc. *fuērunt*. 89, a. **altera, altera**: 171, b. **oc-  
 ciſa**: sc. *eſt*. 89, b.

14. **Procillus**: ſee chap. 47, ll. 10-22, and Notes. **trīnīs**: dis-  
 tributive; 'with three chains.' 37, e.

15. **vinctus**: 'bound.' Principal parts of *vinciō*, *vincō*, and *vivō*?  
**traherētur**: 'was being dragged along.' in . . . **incidit**: 'fell in  
 the way of.' **hoſtēs**: object of *inſequentem*.

16. **Quae rēs**: 'And this circumstance.' 167.

17. **voluptātem**: 'pleasure.' **attulit**: 89, b.

18. **honeſtiſſimum**: 'very honorable'; *honestus*, from *honor*, is  
 never our "honest."

19. **hoſpitem**: 'guest-friend.' 10, d. **ēreptum** [eſſe], **reſtitū-  
 tum** [eſſe]: 213, a.

20. **neque**: = *et nōn*. **eius calamitāte**: 'by his' (Procillus's)  
 'destruction.' **grātulātiōne**: '(reason for) thankfulness.'

21. **quicquam dēminuerat**: with the negative in *neque*, 'had not  
 detracted,' lit. 'had not lessened anything at all.' 168, and 117, a.  
**ſē praesente**: 'in his presence.' How lit.?

22. **ter**: conſidered among primitive peoples a ſacred number; the

rētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur : *sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem.*

Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

25

*His army in winter quarters, Caesar goes to North Italy.*

**54.** Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs ubi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, inse-cūtī magnum ex his numerum occidērunt.

Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum prae-

notion survives in our "three times and out." **sortibus cōsultum** [esse]: 'the lots were consulted'; see chap. 50, l. 14 and N. How lit.? 73, d, and 131, a. **utrum . . . en:** 20, (1). **Ignī:** 14, b. **statim:** 77. **neocārētur:** 'should be killed.'

23. **reservārētur:** 'should be saved up.' **sē,** etc.: 'that he was unharmed.'

25. **M. Metius:** chap. 47, l. 16. **eum:** *Caesarem.*

**54. 1. Suēbī . . . vēnerant:** see chap. 37, ll. 5-8. .

2. **quōs . . . sēnsērunt:** trans. as if *et ubi ei, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, eōs* (i.e. *Suēbōs*) *perterritōs (esse) sēnsērunt.*

3. **Rhēnum:** 123, b. B. 141, 3; A. 432, a; H. 435, 2.

4. **insecūtī:** 226, c. **ex his:** 97, d.

5. **aestāte:** 'summer.' 147, a. The defeat of the Helvetians took place near the end of June, that of Ariovistus the second week in September. With not more than 35,000 soldiers, including cavalry and light-armed troops, Caesar in two campaigns completed in a single season, had practically annihilated fighting forces several times as large as his own, and had destroyed, or rendered docile, two hostile populations aggregating several hundred thousand persons. History affords no more striking instance of a victory of military organization, discipline, and generalship over numbers, barbaric courage, and brute force.

6. **mātūrius:** 34, a. **hiberna:** 'winter quarters.' 335, a, and b.

7. **Sēquanōs:** 282. The region in which the battle was fought had probably formed a part of the Sequanian territory but had been ceded to Ariovistus. **hibernīs:** probably at Vesontio, which possessed

posuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

---

great advantages as a military base, as explained in chap. 38. **prae-**  
**posuit**: 'put in charge of.' 107, *b*.

8. **citeriorem Galliam**: 284. **ad conventūs agendōs**: 'to hold court.' How lit.? The governor of a province from time to time visited the principal cities in order to preside over provincial courts for the administration of justice. In Cisalpine Gaul, moreover, Caesar would be nearer Rome and so enabled to keep in touch with political conditions there.



1. Slinger, *funditor*. 2-3. Legionaries, with different types of equipment.  
4. Pack, *sarcinae*. 5. Cavalry.

1

den

terit

tert

Ron

C

1.

Gall

the

refer

2.

Que

pro-

with

A. 2

B. 2

3.

dare

city

ing

4.

dix

5.

view

6.

se.

the

6

from

## COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

### Campaign against the Belgians. 1-28

*The Belgians form a league against Caesar.*

1. CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare:

*Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur,*

1. 1. **esset**: 185, c. B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; H. 600, II. **citeriōre Galliā**: 124, a, and 284. **ita utī**: 'just as.' **suprā**: 'above,' in the last chapter of Book I. We use the word "above" similarly in referring to the preceding part of a work.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: 156. B. 242, 3; A. 143, a; H. 500, 2. Caesar the *writer* sometimes speaks in the first person, but always presents Caesar the *doer* in the third. **crēbrī**: 'frequently'; agrees with **rŭmōrēs**, 'reports,' but has the force of an adverb. 151. B. 239; A. 290; H. 497. **afferēbantur**: force of the imperfect? 175, a. B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3. **litteris**: 131, a. B. 218; H. 476.

3. **certior fiēbat**: 'he was informed.' How lit.? **omnēs** . . . **dare**: 213, a, and 214, a. **Belgās**: 19, e, and 287, a. **quam**: subject accusative with *esse*, = *quōs*, 'who'; attracted to the feminine singular to agree with *partem* in the predicate. 164, c, and 282.

4. **Galliae**: here Transalpine Gaul, as in I, 1, l. 1, referred to in *dixerāmus*. **dixerāmus**: 214, c.

5. **coniūrāre**: 'were conspiring,' according to the Roman point of view. **inter sē dare**: 'were exchanging.' 159.

6-8. **Direct form**: *Coniūrandī hae sunt causae*: *primum, quod verentur, nē, omni pācātā Galliā, ad eōs exercitus noster addūcatur*; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitantur.

6. **Coniūrandī**, etc.: summary of a statement made in a dispatch from Labienus (l. 2, *litteris*). 212, c, (3), and 214, a. **hās**: 'as fol-

*nē, omni pācātā Galliā, ad cōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur*, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animi novis imperiis studēbant; ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi poterant.

lows.' 161, a. **Confirmandi causās**: explained by the appositional *quod*-clauses following. 230, (1), and 198, b. **primum, deinde**: 237, b.

7. **nē**: 'that.' 202. **omni pācātā Galliā**: = *si Gallia omnis pācāta esset*. 144, b, (4). **Galliā**: Celtic Gaul, bordering the Belgian country on the south; the Romans remained in possession of a considerable portion of Celtic Gaul after the defeat of the Helvetians and Ariovistus. 287, b. **ad cōs**, etc.: the fear of a Roman invasion was justified, as the event proved. The "conspiracy" of the Belgians was the natural effort of a spirited people to defend their liberties against anticipated encroachment. 158, b. **noster**: 157, c.

8. **sollicitārentur**: 'were being stirred up.' **partim quī**: 'partly (by those) who.' Caesar here passes to the direct form of statement, presenting as facts, on his own authority, details reported by Labienus.

9. **ut**: 'as.' 188, b. **diūtius**: 153, a. **Germānōs versārī**: 223, a.

10. **inveterāscere**: 'should become established.'

11. **molestō ferēbant**: 'were seriously objecting.' **mōbilitāte et levitāte animi**: 'by reason of temperamental instability and fickleness.' How lit.?

12. **novis imperiis**: 'a change of rulers.' 105. How lit.? **nōn nullis**: i.e. powerful nobles; sc. *sollicitābantur*.

13. **ā potentiōribus**: 'by the more powerful.' 154, a. **ad condūcendōs hominēs**: 'for hiring men,' i.e. mercenary soldiers. 230, (3).

14. **rēgna occupābantur**: 'the supreme power was seized.' 92, a, and 289, c. **quī**: 'and they.'

15. **eam rem**: 'that object,' the obtaining of supreme power. **imperiō nostrō**: 'under our sovereignty.' 138. B. 221; A. 412; H. 473, 3. **poterant**: 'would be able.'

*He raises two new legions, marches to their territory.*

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque



Figure 68. — Scene in Belgium: the Meuse, below Namur.

2. 1. **nūntiis litterisque**: cf. I, 26, l. 20, and N. **duās legiōnēs**: the thirteenth and fourteenth. Caesar now had eight legions, numbered VII to XIV. 307, a, e, f.

2. **initā aestāte**: 'at the beginning of the warm season,' probably the latter part of May. How lit.? 68, b, and 144, b, (1).

3. **ulteriōrem Galliam**: 286. **quī [eās] dēdūceret**: 'to lead them,' probably over the Great Saint Bernard pass. 193, a. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **lēgātum**: 313, a. Pedius was a son of Caesar's sister Julia; see Vocab.

4. **pābuli cōpia**: forage was needed for the numerous draft animals used for the transportation of military stores, as well as for the horses of the cavalry and the officers. **inciperet**: 185, c.

5. **exercitum**: probably stationed at or near Vesontio; see Map 1. **Dat negōtium**: 'He directed.' 175, b. **reliquis**: 171, a.



Gallis, quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.

Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn  
 10 existimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi submit, and give information about the other Belgians.*

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum

6. **Belgis**: 108, a. utī . . . faciunt: 199, a.

7. **gerantur**: 220. B. 324; A. 593; H. 652. sē: 158, a.

8. **cōstanter**: 'uniformly,' with perfect agreement between the reports. **manūs**: 'bodies of troops' among the Belgians.

9. **locum**: why not ablative? 124, a. **dubitandum nōn** [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought not to hesitate.' 73, e.

10. **ad**: 'against.' **eōs**: *Belgās*. **proficiscerētur**: 201, c. **Rē frūmentāriā comparātā**: 'Having provided for a supply of grain.' 144, b, (2). How lit.?

11. **castra movet**: 'he broke camp.' 175, b. **diēbus**: 147, a. **circiter**: adverb with *quindecim*. **ad finēs pervenit**: 'he reached the territories.' The probable route is indicated on Map 1.



Figure 69.—Coin of the Remi.

Bronze. The three heads of the obverse perhaps belong to a three-headed divinity; inscription, *REMO*. Reverse, horses and chariot, copied from a Greek coin.

3. 1. **Eō**: = *ad finēs Belgārum*. **imprōvisō**: ablative singular neuter of the adjective used as a noun, forming with *dē* an adverbial phrase like the English colloquial phrase "of a sudden," "all of a sudden," i.e. 'unexpectedly.' **celerius omnī opiniōne**: 'more quickly

than any one had expected,' lit., 'than every expectation.' 129, a. B. 217, 4; A. 406; H. 471.

2. **vēnisset**: 185, c. **Rēmī**: the name survives in Reims, modern name of the city occupying the site of the ancient capital of the Remi, Durocortorum. **Galliae**: Celtic Gaul. 287, b. Why dative? 108, a. **ex Belgis**: trans. as if *inter Belgās*.

*lĕgātōs* Iccium et Andecumborium, *primōs* civitatīs, *mīsērunt*, qui dicerent :

*Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre.*

*Reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs*

3. *lĕgātōs*: 'as envoys.' 116, a. *primōs*: 'the leading men.' 154, a. *olivitātis*: of the Remi.

4. *qui dicerent*: 'to say.' 193, a. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

5-9. *Direct form*: *Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et (ē) oppidīs recipere et (ē) frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre.*

5. *Sē*, etc.: 212, c, (3). *Sē suaque omnia*: 'themselves and all that they had.' How lit.? *in fidem*: 'to the protection.'

6. *permittere*: sc. *sē* as subject. 214, a. *neque*: 'and not.'

7. *coniūrāsse* = *coniūrāvisse*. 64, a, (1). *parātōs*: adjective, in predicate.

8. *et, et*: 234, a. *dare, facere*, [eum] *recipere*, [eum] *iuvāre*: after *parātōs*. 221, c. B. 328, 1; A. 460, b; H. 608, 4. *imperāta facere*: 'to obey (his) orders.' 157, a. *oppidīs*: 'in (their) towns.' How lit.? 131, a. *frūmentō*: 131, a.

10-15. *Direct form*: *Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt; tantusque est eōrum omnium furor, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs consanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lĕgibus utuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōdiscum habent, dētērrere potuerīmus, quīn cum hīs cōsēntirent.*

11. *cis Rhēnum*: on the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the point of view of the Province.

12. *eōrum omnium*: *Belgārum et Germānōrum*. *nē—quidem*: 237, c. *Suessiōnēs*: object of *dētērrere*. The name survives in Soissons.

*cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus  
ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs  
15 habeant, dēterrere potuerint, quā cum hīs cōsentiērent.*

*Report of the Remi on the history and forces of the Belgians.*

4. Cum ab eis quaereret, quae civitatēs quantaque in armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat :

*Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque  
antīquitus trāductōs, propter locī fertilitātem, ibi cōsēdisse,  
5 Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse,  
quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teu-*

13. **suōs** : 'their own,' referring to the Remi. **iūre** : '(body of) rights.' 13, g, and 131, c. **īsdem** : 45.

15. **potuerint** : 197, a, b. B. 268, 6; A. 485, c; H. 550. **quā** — **cōsentiērent** : 'from uniting.' 201, a. B. 295, 3, a; A. 558; H. 595, 2.

4. I. **ab eis** : 116, c. **quaereret** : why subjunctive? **quae** : 48, b.

2. **essent** : 204, (2). B. 300; A. 574; H. 649, II. **quid** — **possent** : 'what strength they had,' lit. 'to what degree they were able.' 118, b. B. 176, 3; A. 390, c; H. 409, I. **sic** : 'as follows.'

3-9. **Direct form** : *Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque anti-  
quitus trāductī, propter locī fertilitātem, hīc cōsēdērunt, Gallōsque, quī haec loca  
incolēbant, expulērunt; sōlique sunt, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni  
Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cīmbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint  
(194, a); quā ex rē fit, utī eārum rērum memoriā magnā sibi auctōritātem  
magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmant.*

3. **Plērōsque Belgās** : 'That most of the Belgians.' 97, c. **ā Germānīs** : 128, b. The Belgians were of Celtic stock, but had formerly lived on the east side of the Rhine; hence probably arose the belief that they were of Germanic origin. **Rhēnum** : accusative after *trā(ns)* in *trāductōs*. 114, a.

4. **antīquitus** : 'in ancient times.' **fertilitātem** : 'productiveness.' **ibi** : in Gaul.

5. **sōlōs** : in predicate; 'were the only (people of Gaul) who.'

6. **memoriā** : 147, b. **omni Galliā vexātā** : 'when Gaul as a

*tonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri, uti eārum rerū memoriā magnā sibi auctōritatem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.*

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicē-<sup>10</sup> bant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint:

*Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia*<sup>15</sup>

whole was ravaged' by the Cimbrians and Teutons; see N. to I, 33, l. 17. 144, b, (2), and 286.

7. *ingredi*: 'from entering'; Caesar uses the infinitive with subject-accusative after *prohibeō*. 223, a, (3). *quā ex rē*: 'and in consequence of this achievement.' 167.

8. *fieri, uti . . . sūmerent*: 203, (1). *memoriā*: 135, a.

9. *in rē militārī*: 'in respect to the art of war.' *sūmerent*: why imperfect? 177, a.

10. *eōrum*: *Belgārum*. *omnia sē habēre explorāta*: 'that they possessed complete information.' How lit.? 229, a. B. 337, 7; A. 497, b; H. 431, 3.

11. *proptereā quod*: N. to I, chap. 1, l. 6. *propinquitātibus affinitātibusque*: 'by blood relationships and intermarriages.' 76, a.

12. *quisque*: 'each' representative, speaking for his state or tribe. *multitudinem*: 'host.'

13. *pollicitus sit*: 204, (3). *cognōverint*: 214, a

14-17. *Direct form*: Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent*; *hī possunt* cōficere armāta mīlia centum; *polliciti (sunt)* ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexagintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant*.

14. *Plūrimum*, etc.: 212, c, (3).

*Plūrimum Bellovacōs valēre*:

'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful' (Fig. 70). 118, b.

15. *cōficere*: 'muster.' 57, b. *armāta mīlia*: trans. as if . *mīlia hominum armātōrum*.



Figure 70. — Coin of the Bellovaci.  
Gold; fanciful designs.

*centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.*

*Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā*  
 20 *etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pol-*

16. *pollicitōs*: 89, *b*. *ēlēcta sexāgintā*: sc. *milia*, 'sixty (thousand) picked men.' *tōtīus*: 23, *a*.

18-31. *Direct form*: *Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt finitimī; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācus, tōtīus Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferretur; oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur milia armāta I; totidem Nervii, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; XV milia Atrebatēs, Ambiani X milia, Morini XXV milia, Menapii VII milia, Calei X milia, Vellocassēs et Viromandui totidem, Atuatucae XVIII milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, qui unō nōmine Germāni appellantur, arbitramur posse armāre ad XI milia.*

18. *suōs finitimōs*: 'their neighbors,' neighbors of the Remi. *ferācissimōs*: 'very productive.' 27, *a*, and 153, *a*.

19. *possidēre*: as subject-accusative supply *eōs*, i.e. *Suessiōnēs*. *fuisse* 'that there had been.' 90, *a*.

20. *Diviciācum*: not to be confused with Diviciācus the Aeduan druid, who is mentioned in the next chapter.

21. *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also,' 186, *b*. *regiōnum*: dependent on *partis*, which limits *imperium*. *Britanniae*: not the whole of Britain—probably only a portion of the island along the southeast coast. 294.

22. *esse*, etc.: trans. as if *Galbam esse rēgem*. 19, *d*. *ad hunc*—*dēferri*: 'that upon him—was conferred.' 69, *b*.

23. *prūdentiam*: 'good judgment.' *summam*: 'the supreme command.'

24. *voluntāte*: 138. *habēre, pollicēri*: sc. *eōs* (*Suessiōnēs*). *numerō*: 142, *a*, and 85. *XII, I*, etc.: 38, *b*, and 36.

*licēri mīlia armāta* L; *totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē feri* 25  
*inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint*; *xv mīlia Atre-*  
*bātēs, Ambianōs x mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii*  
*mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem,*  
*Atuatucōs xviii mīlia*; *Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs,*  
*Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germāni appellantur, arbitrārī* 30  
*sē posse armāre ad xl mīlia.*

Caesar, taking hostages from the Remi, crosses the Aisne, and  
 encamps.

5. Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus liberaliterque ōrātiōne prō-  
 secūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque  
 liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his  
 diligenter ad diem facta sunt.

35

25. *mīlia armāta*: N. to l. 15. *totidem*: sc. *mīlia armāta pol-*  
*licēri*. *Nerviōs*: locate the Nervians, and the other peoples named,  
 upon Map I. *maximē feri*: in predicate. 30.

26. *ipsōs*: the Belgians in general, not the Nervians. *habean-*  
*tur, absint*: vivid use of the present tense where the imperfect, after  
*cognōverint*, in l. 13, might have been  
 expected. *absint*: from the country  
 of the Remi. *Atrebātēs*: sc. *pollicēri*.

27. *Ambianōs*: in the region of  
 modern Amiens (Fig. 71).

29. *XVIII*: *undēviginti*. 36.

30. *quī . . . appellantur*: 214, c.  
*Germāni*: perhaps so called because,  
 although of Celtic stock, they had been  
 the last of the Belgians to remove from  
 the east side of the Rhine to the Belgian country. *ūnō*: 'a common.'

31. *sē*: 168, a. *ad*: adverb, 'about.'

5. 1. *Rēmōs . . . prōsecūtus*: 'encouraging the Remi and ad-  
 dressing (them) in gracious words.' How lit.? 226, c.

2. *senātum*: 289, b, and 75, b. *principum*: 10, b.

3. *obsidēs*: 'as hostages.' 88, a. *iussit*: 'gave orders (that).'

*Quae . . . facta sunt*: 'these instructions . . . were carried out.'

4. *diligenter*: 'carefully.' 34, a. *ad diem*: 'promptly.'



Figure 71. — Coin of the  
 Ambiani.

Bronze. Obverse, figure with  
 uplifted hands, wearing a necklace  
 and bracelets; perhaps a divinity

5 Ipse, Diviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus, docet, quantō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis intersit, manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multītūdine ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit: *Id fieri posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs*  
 10 *populārī coeperint.* His mandātis eum ab sē dimittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eis, quōs miserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum  
 15 trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et

5. **Diviciācum**: N. to chap. 4, l. 20, and Book I, chapters 18, 20, 31, etc.

6. **quantō opere**, etc.: 'how important it was for the State and for their mutual welfare.' How lit.? 103, *e.* B. 211, 1; A. 355; H. 449. **rei pūblīcae**: *Rōmāndrum*. **commūnis**: of Romans and Aeduans. **intersit**: 204, (3).

7. **manūs distinēri**: subject of *intersit*; 'that the enemy's forces be kept apart.' 222, *c.* and 79, *d.* **nē . . . cōnfligendum sit**: 'that it might not be necessary to fight.' 73, *e.*

8. **Id**: refers to *manūs distinēri*, 'that (object).' 213, *b.* and 160, *c.*

9. **in — intrōdūxerint**: 'should have led — into'; future perfect indicative in the direct form. 218, (1), *b.*

11. **coāctās . . . venīre**: 'had been brought together and were coming.' 228, *a.*

12. **vidit**: more vivid than *intellēxit*; so we use the word "see" of things understood but not perceived with the eyes. 188, *a.* **neque**: trans. as if *et nōn*. **abesse**: sc. *eās* (= *cōpiās*); dependent on *cognōvit*. **eīs**: with *explōrātōribus*.

13. **explōrātōribus**: 327. **flūmen**, **exercitum**: 114, *a.* B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413. **Axonam**: now *Aisne*. See Map 1.

14. **quod**: the antecedent is *flūmen*. **extrēmīs finibus**: 'the most remote part of the country.' 152, *a.*

15. **ibi castra posuit**: Caesar 'encamped' on the north side of the Axona, about a mile and a half northeast of the present village of Berry-au-Bac. See Map 5. **Quae rēs**: 'Now this movement.' 167. **et . . . et**: 233, *d.*

latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat.

In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in <sup>20</sup>



Figure 72 — View across the Aisne from the site of Caesar's camp.

The present course of the Aisne is marked by the nearer line of trees.

16. **rīpīs**: 131, *a*. **post . . . reddēbat**: 'made the rear secure against the enemy.' 331, *b*. How lit.?

17. **quae**: i.e. *ea (loca) quae*. **tūta**: 115, *b*. **commeātūs . . . efficiēbat**: 'made it possible for supplies to be brought,' etc. 203, (3). B. 297, 1; A. 568; H. 571, 3. **commeātūs**: plural because the supplies were furnished by more than one state.

20. **In**: 'across.' **pōns**: 17, *c*. **erat**: 90, *a*. **praesidium**: at D on Map 5. **in alterā parte**: on the south side of the Aisne, opposite Berry-au-Bac; see Map 5, C. Caesar now had both ends of the bridge well guarded. In consequence he was able to get provisions from his allies across the river; to set a watch on the Remi, the sincerity of whose professions of loyalty was not beyond question; and, finally, to keep open an avenue of retreat in case of disaster (Fig. 72).



alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūnīre iubet.

*The Belgians attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi.*

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum, nōmine Bibrax, aberat milia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.

5. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt

22. **sex cohortibus**: about how many men? 307, c. **castra**: Map 5, A. **pedum**: 100, a. The measurement of twelve feet included both the height of the bank formed by the earth thrown out of the trench and that of the row of palisades along the outer edge. 333.

23. **vāllō**: why ablative? **duodēviginti pedum**: eighteen Roman feet broad, measured across the top; the trench, with sloping sides, was probably about ten feet deep. Excavations, made in 1862, brought to light traces of this rampart and trench.

6. 1. **nōmine**: 'called.' How lit.? 142, a. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **Bibrax**: the name in Celtic meant 'Beavertown.'

2. **milia passuum VIII**: 118, a; 100, a, and 243, b. **ex itinere**: 'from the line of march,' attacking the town as soon as they reached it; see Vocab. under **iter**.

3. **Aegrē sustentātum est**: 'With difficulty the defense was maintained.'

5. **eadem atque Belgārum**: 'the same as (that) of the Belgians.' 233, c. **oppugnātiō**: 'the (method of) storming (fortified places).' **haec**: 161, a.

6. **Ubi**, etc.: 'When a host of men has been thrown around the entire (circuit of) fortifications and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2). **moenibus**: 104, a.

7. **iaci**: 57, b. **coepti sunt**: 72, c. **dēfēnsōribus**: 'of its defenders.' 127, a, and 74, a.

8. **nūdātus est**: 'has been cleared.' **testūdine factā**: 'having

mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsis-<sup>10</sup> tendi potestās erat nūlli.

Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō prae- fuerat, ūnus ex eis, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, *nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē 15 diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.*

*Caesar relieves the town; the Belgians march toward his camp.*

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et

made a tortoise roof,' in the Roman fashion. 345. testūdine: 12, d, and 144, b, (2). succendunt: 'they,' the attacking host, 'set on fire.' 175, c.

9. subruunt: 'undermine.' Quod tum: 'Now this, in the present instance,' referring to the burning of the gates, and undermining of the walls, of Bibrax.

10. conicerent: 173, b, and 184, a. B. 254, 4; A. 317, d; H. 389, 1. cōnsistendī: 230, (1).

11. nūlli: trans. as if *nēmī* (12, d, and 111), 'no one was able to stand.' How lit.?

12. finem oppugnandī fēcisset: 'had checked the assault.' 185, c. How lit.? Iccius: chap. 3, l. 3.

13. summā nōbilitāte: 143, a. inter suōs: 'among his countrymen.' 154, a. oppidō: 107, a. tum prae fuerat: i.e. *prae-positus erat et tum praecerat.*

14. ex eis: 97, d. lēgātī: in predicate after *vēnerant*; 'as envoys.'

15. nūntium: here 'a message.' nisi: '(saying) that unless,' etc. 213, b. sibi: 'to them,' the beleaguered inhabitants of Bibrax. summittātur: 'should be sent to their relief.' 218, (1), a.

16. sustinēre: intransitive, 'hold out.'

7. 1. Eō: toward Bibrax. dē: 242, d. Isdem: 'the same men.' 45, and 131, c. duobus: 'as guides,' predicative. 131, f. ūsus: 226, c.

2. nūntiī: construed as *lēgātī* in chap. 6, l. 14. Numidās, etc.: 308. Crētas: 19, f. sagittāriōs: 'bowmen.'

funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus, eādē dē causā, spēs potiundi oppidi discessit.

Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quō adire potuerant, incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posu-

3. **funditōrēs**: 'slingers.' 74, *a*. Fig. 73 and Fig. 76. **subsidiō**, **oppidānis**: 112, *b*. B. 191, 2; A. 382, 1; H. 433. **oppidānis**: 'the inhabitants of the town.' **mittit**: 175, *b*.

4. **et . . . et**: 233, *a*. **spē dēfēnsiōnis**: 'hope of repelling the assault.' How lit.? 74, *b*. **studium prōpugnandi**: 'eager desire to take the offensive.' How lit.?

5. **hostibus**: dative, but trans. 'from the enemy.' 109, *b*. **potiundi oppidi**: 64, *b*, and 230, (1).

7. **paulisper**: 'for a short time.' **morāti**, etc.: sc. *hostēs* as subject of *contendērunt*. 61, *a*, (1).

8. **vicis**, **aedificiis**: cf. Book I, 5, ll. 4, 5 and Notes. 144, *b*, (2). **quō**: adverb; trans. as if *ad quae*.

9. **omnibus cōpiis**: 136, *b*. B. 220, 1; A. 412; H. 473, 3.

10. **ā . . . duōbus**: 'less than two miles away,' i.e. 'at'



Figure 73. — Slinger, supplied with pebbles.

(lit. 'from') 'a distance of thousands of paces less than two (thousands).' The Roman point of view differs from ours in such phrases.

ērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum VIII in lātitudinem patēbant.

*Caesar adds to the fortifications of his camp, awaits attack.*

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre stauit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, periclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitie ēditus, tantum aduersus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum

11. quae castra: 'and this camp,' marked CAMP OF THE BELGIANS on Map 5, while Caesar's camp is at A. 167. fūmō: 'by the smoke.' significābātur: 'was indicated.' 73, d.

12. milibus: why ablative? 129, a. B. 217, 1; A. 407, e; H. 471. VIII: 38, b, and 38.

8. 2. eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis: 'their extraordinary reputation for bravery.' 102. proeliō supersedēre: 'to refrain from battle.' 127, a.

3. equestribus proeliis: 'cavalry skirmishes,' as distinguished from a regular engagement, with infantry. quid . . . posset: 'what mettle the enemy had.' How lit.? 118, b. virtūte: 142, a.

4. periclitābātur: 'kept trying to find out.' 175, d. B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3.

5. locō . . . idōneō: trans. as if cum locus ('since the space') . . . opportunus atque idōneus esset. 144, b, (3).

6. ad, etc.: 230, (3). nātūrā: 'naturally.' How lit.? atque: 233, a.

7. quod . . . redibat: explains why the ground in front of the camp was well adapted for forming a line of battle. ubi: 'on which.' castra: Map 5, A. paululum ēditus: 'gradually rising.' How lit.?

8. tantum, etc.: 'on the side toward the enemy extended in width (far enough to provide) just the amount of space that a line of battle would require.' How lit.? tantum: 118, a. aduersus: adjective, agreeing with collis. quantum: correlative with tantum, and object of occupāre, having loci dependent on it.

loci aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque  
 10 parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat, et in frontem lēniter fastigā-  
 tus paulātim ad plānitiem redibat, ab utrōque latere eius  
 collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter pāssuum quad-  
 ringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique  
 tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod  
 15 tantum multitudīne poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes, suōs  
 circumvenire possent.

9. **loci**: trans. as if dependent on *tantum*. 97, a. The long, gently sloping hillside, broad enough to afford room for a Roman triple line, is shown on Map 5, between the Miette brook and the narrowing crest of the hill southwest of Caesar's camp; six legions are there shown in order of battle. **ex utrāque parte**: = 'on either side,' the side of the camp toward the river, and the opposite side.

10. **lateris dēiectūs**: 'steep slopes.' How lit.? 13, c. **in frontem**: 'in' (lit. 'into') 'front' of the camp, on the southwest side. **lēniter fastigātus**: 'with gentle slope.' How lit.?

11. **plānitiem**: the level ground between the hill and the river above and below Berry-aux-Bac. **redibat**: here 'descended.'

12. **trānsversam fossam obdūxit**: 'he extended a trench cross-wise,' that is, at right angles with the length of the hill. Starting from opposite corners of the camp, Caesar prolonged two lines of intrenchments at right angles to the sides, each about a third of a mile in length. One ran down the south slope of the hill, toward the Aisne, the bed of which in Caesar's time is indicated on the plan by the broken line. The other ran down the north slope, toward the Miette brook; both are indicated on Map 5 by red lines (a, b). At the ends of these intrenchments he constructed 'redoubts' (B B), where he stationed troops, with military engines. His purpose was to guard against a flank movement on the part of the enemy, by which they might reach the rear of the camp, and attack from behind while his forces were engaged in front. **pāssuum quadringentōrum**: 'four hundred paces' in length. How lit.? 100, a. How far by our measurement? 243, b.

13. **ad extrēmās fossās**: 'at the ends of the trenches.' 152, a. B. 241, 1; A. 293; H. 497, 4. **castella**: Map 5, B B.

14. **tormenta**: 'torsioners,' such as were used in siege operations. 343. **Instrūxisset**: 220. **quod . . . poterant**: 'because they were so strong in numbers.' Why indicative?

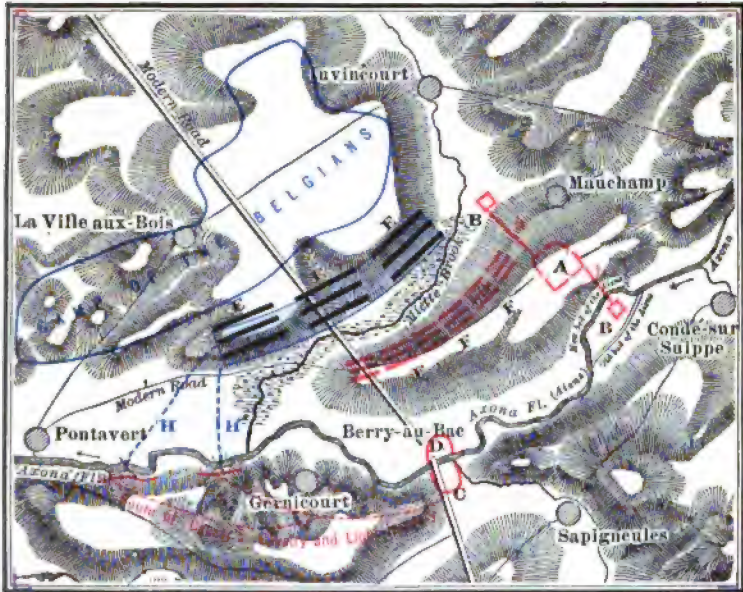
15. **tantum**: 113, b. **ab lateribus**: 'on the flanks.' 126, c.

# MAP 5

## THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE (AXONA)

Book II, 7-10

To face page 144



SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES  
0 1 2

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES  
0 1 2

### EXPLANATION

Caesar, marching from the South, encamped on the north or right bank of the Aisne, on a long hill. As the camp was well protected by the streams and the low ground on the west, in order to secure the east side, he ran intrenchments from the corners to both the Aisne and the Miette. The widely extended Belgian camp was on the opposite side of the Miette (chap. 7, ll. 11-12).

A. Caesar's camp (chap. 5, l. 15; chap. 7, l. 9; chap. 8, l. 7).

a, b. Trenches, *fossae* (chap. 8, ll. 11-13).

B, B. Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 8, l. 13).

C. Redoubt at the south end of the bridge, *castellum*, held by Q. Titurius Sabinus (chap. 5, ll. 20-22; chap. 9, l. 11).

D. Guard at the north end of the bridge, *praesidium* (chap. 5, l. 20).

E-E. The Belgians in battle order (chap. 8, l. 20).

F-F. The six legions in battle order (chap. 8, l. 19).

H-H. Probable routes taken by the Belgians to the fords at the Aisne, where they were met by Caesar's light-armed troops and cavalry (chap. 9, ll. 8-15).



Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās vi legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant. 20



Figure 74. — View toward the Miette from the site of Caesar's camp. The course of the brook is marked by the trees. Notice the flat, marshy land (palus) near the brook.

**pugnantēs**: with *hostēs*. **suos**: 'his men.' 154, *a*. A glance at the Map shows how well designed the trenches were to protect against an attack upon the right end of the battle line, and block access to the rear, which was otherwise protected by the river.

17. **duābus legiōnibus**: the thirteenth and fourteenth, enrolled a few months before; see chap. 2, ll. 1-4. Generally, as in this instance, Caesar exposed his veterans to the brunt of the battle, leaving recruits, whose powers had not been fully tested, as a reserve force. 307, *d*, and *f*.

18. **relictis**: 144, *b*, (2). **quō**: 'at any point.' **esset**: 220. **subsidiō**: 'as a reserve force.' 112, *a*.

19. **aciē**: undoubtedly a triple line. 337.

20. **ēductās instrūxerant**: 'had led forth and drawn up.' 228, *a*



*The Belgians attempt to cross the Aisne and attack Titurius.*

9. *Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō, equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.*

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi, vadis repertis, partem suārum cōpiarum trādūcere cōnāti

B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639. For the relative positions of the two armies, see Map 5.

9. 1. *Palūs*: the marshy ground along the Miette brook, indicated on Map 5. In the dry weather of the autumn of 1914 the German army ran first-line and communicating trenches through this marsh, but later these were flooded by the Miette brook. *erat*: 90, *a. nostrum*, etc.: 'our army and that of the enemy.' 157, *d.*

2. *Hanc paludem. sī*: '(to see) whether.' 204, (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; H. 649, 11, 3.

3. *nostrī . . . erant*: *nostrī autem parātī in armis erant, ut, si ab illis (hostibus) initium trānseundī (paludem) fieret, (eōs, the enemy engaged in crossing over, hence at a disadvantage) impeditōs aggredierentur. fieret*: 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

4. *aggredierentur*: 57, *c.* Why subjunctive? *proeliō*, etc.: 'a cavalry engagement continued.' How lit.? 73, *d.*

5. *neutri*: 'neither side'; each side was waiting for the other to assume the offensive. 23, *a.*

6. *secundiōre proeliō*: 144, *b*, (5). B. 227, 2, *c*; A. 420, 3; H. 489, 1. *nostris*: 108, *a.*

8. *prōtinus*: 'at once.' *eō locō*: on the opposite side of the marsh from the Romans.

9. *dēmōnstrātum est*: 'it has been shown'; see chap. 5, ll. 11-19.

10. *vadis*: shallow places, suitable for fording, are still found in Aisne, between the mouth of the Miette brook and the village of

sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

15



Figure 75. — View across the Aisne toward Pontavert.

The water in the foreground is in a canal. The river lies in the gully beyond; there the fight at the ford took place.

Pontavert; for the route of the attacking forces see Map 5, H H.

11. **eō cōnsiliō**: 'with this design,' explained by the appositive *ut*-clauses following. 135, *a*, and 203, (4). **possent**: 220. **castellum**: on the south bank of the Aisne; Map 5, C, and chap. 5, ll. 20-22. The Belgians planned to storm the redoubt from the rear. The attempt was justified, from the military point of view; for the destruction of the bridge would have made Caesar's position extremely difficult.

13. **minus**: trans. as if *nōn*. **potuissent**: change of tense from *possent*, 'if they could,' to *potuissent* 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unsuccessful.' **populārentur, prohibērent**: sc. *ut*, the clauses being in apposition with *cōnsiliō*.

14. **nōbīs, ūsui**: 112, *b*. **commeātū**: 127, *a*.

*Caesar prevents their crossing; they decide to disperse.*

**10.** Caesar, certior factus ab Titūriō, omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācrit̄er in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressi magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

**10. 1. certior factus:** 'on being informed' of the attempted movement. **equitātum, pontem:** 114, *a.* B. 179, 1; A. 395; H. 413.



Figure 76. — Leaden slingshot.

Hurled by soldiers of Octavianus against L. Antonius at the siege of Perusia, 41–40 B.C. Inscription, CAESAR IMP[ERATOR], referring to Octavianus.

As Caesar's camp was south of the Miette and east of the bridge over the Aisne, he could send his cavalry across the bridge without danger of interference, and from the south side of the Aisne could attack the enemy in the act of crossing.

**2. levis armātūrae:** 'of light equipment'; trans. 'light-armed.' 308, and 100, *a.* **funditōrēs:** probably provided with leaden bullets, though such are not mentioned

by Caesar; slingshots of lead were in use both before and after the Gallic Wars (Fig. 14 and Fig. 76).

**3. eōs: hostēs.** **eō locō:** where the enemy started to cross the river; marked on Map 5 by crossed swords.

**4. pugnātum est:** 73, *d.* **aggressi:** 226, *c.*

**5. per:** 'over.' The bravery of these Belgians, recorded by Caesar with evident admiration, justifies his characterization at the beginning of Book I (chap. 1, l. 6).

**6. cōnantēs:** with *reliquōs*. In 1914 this part of the Aisne again became the scene of terrible slaughter. Near Berry-au-Bac French and British troops constructed pontoon bridges in the face of artillery fire accurately directed from the high ground on the north side of the river; and again the Aisne was choked with corpses.

**7. equitātū:** 131, *b.* **circumventōs interfēcērunt:** 'surrounded & killed.' 228, *a.*

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāns-eundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in<sup>10</sup> locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō cōstituērunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in<sup>15</sup> suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur.

Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus

9. **Hostēs**: the main body of the enemy, which remained inactive while a detachment (*partem suarum copiarum*, chap. 9, l. 10) tried to cross the river. **oppidō**: Bibrax; see chaps. 6 and 7. 230, (4).

10. **spem sē fefellisse**: 'that they had been disappointed in their expectations,' lit. 'that their expectation had cheated them.' **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **nostrōs**: the six legions that had been formed in order of battle and then led back to camp; chap. 8, l. 19, and chap. 9, ll. 5-7.

11. **locum iniquiōrem**: 'a less favorable position.' How lit.? **pugnandī causā**: 230, (1), and 94, b.

12. **ipsōs**: *hostēs*. **dēficere**: 'to fail.' 57, b. As the Gauls for the most part engaged only in short campaigns, their arrangements for supplies were very defective. It is a maxim of modern warfare that "the way to victory lies through the soldier's stomach." Caesar, as all great generals, paid the most careful attention to the provisioning of his army. 317. **cōnsiliō**: 'a conference' of the leaders.

13. **optimum esse**: 'that it was best.' The subject of *esse* is the infinitive clause *quemque revertī*, and *optimum* is in predicate. 148, d. **domum suam**: 'to his own home.' 119, b.

14. **intrōdūxissent**: 220. B. 324; A. 593; H. 652.

15. **eōs**: antecedent of *quōrum*; 'to defend that people.' 230, (3). **convenīrent**: sc. *ut*, 'that they should rally.' 199, a, and 200, a.

16. **aliēnis**: = *aliōrum*, 'of others,' as opposed to **domesticis**, 'their own.' **dēcertārent**: 196, a. **cōpiis**: 'supplies.' 131, c.

19. **ratiō**: 'consideration,' explained by the appositive clause *quod* ('that') . . . *cognōverant*. 198, b. **Diviciācum**, etc.: cf. chap. 5, ll. 5-10. **finibus**: 105.

20 Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādēri, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

*The Belgians retreat in disorder; Caesar pursues them with great slaughter.*

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi, nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce,

20. **appropinquāre**: 'were approaching.' **cognōverant**: 'they knew.' 176, *b*. **His**: the Bellovaci, whose actual fighting force probably did not reach the large estimate of 100,000 given by the Remi (chap. 4, ll. 14-17). 105. **His persuādēri**: 'These could not be persuaded.' How lit.? 106, *b*.

21. **ut morārentur**: 'to stay' with the united Belgian host. Caesar's plan of dividing the forces of the Belgians, suggested in chap. 5, was thus successful. **neque**: 'and not.'

11. 1. **rē**: 'conclusion,' i.e. to disperse. **secundā vigiliā**: 242, *c*, and 147, *a*. **strepitū**: 'uproar.' 136, *a*.

2. **castris**: shown on Map 5. 127, *a*. **nūllō . . . imperiō**: ablative of attendant circumstance, explaining *magnō . . . tumultū*, and in turn explained by the causal clause *cum . . . properāret*; 'without a fixed order and without discipline.' 138.

3. **sibi quisque**: 170, *b*. **primum**: 'the foremost.' **peteret**: 184, *a*. B. 286, 2; A. 549; H. 598.

4. **fēcērunt . . . vidērētur**: 'they made their departure look like a rout.' How lit.? 203, (3). **fugae**: 108, *a*.

6. **per**: 123, *a*. **speculātōrēs**: 'spies.' 327.

7. **veritus**: 226, *c*. **discēderent**: 204, (2).

8. **castris**: 131, *a*. Trans. 'in camp.' **Primā lūce**: 'at day-break.' 162, *a*.

cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium 10 et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.

Hi, novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūti, magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent for- 15 titerque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent.

Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī 20

9. **rē**: 'the fact' that the Belgian host had actually dispersed. **explōrātōribus**: 327.

10. **novissimum agmen**: 'the rear guard' of the retreating Belgians. 27, *b*. **morārētur**: 193, *a*. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590. **His**: plural from the idea of *equitēs* in *equitātum*. 107, *b*. **Pedium**: n. to chap. 2, l. 3.

12. **lēgātum**: 313, *a*. **subsequi**: 'to follow closely.'

13. **Hi**: 'These men,' the legionaries under Labienus; the cavalry had gone ahead to retard the Belgian rear till the Roman infantry could catch up with it. **milia**: 118, *a*.

14. **eōrum fugientium**: 'of them as they fled.' **cum**, etc.: *sc. et*; 'since those (Belgians) at the rear, to whom (the Roman soldiers) had come, were making a stand.' How lit.? **cum**: 184, *a*.

15. **extrēmō**: 152, *a*. **agmine**: here used not of an orderly marching column but of a mass of soldiers in flight. **ventum erat**: 73, *d*.

16. **priōrēs**: 'those in advance,' the bulk of the retreating host. 154, *a*, and 33.

17. **vidērentur**: 220. B. 324; A. 593; H. 652. **neque**: 'and . . . not.' **necessitatē**: 'compulsion.'

18. **exauditō olāmōre**: 'when they heard the shouting' behind them.

19. **ordinibus**: 'ranks.' **sibi**: 109, *a*. **praesidium pōnerent**: 'sought safety.' How lit.? **pōnerent**: with *cum* in l. 14.

interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

*Noviodunum, besieged by Caesar, surrenders.*

**12.** Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximi Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucis dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis, vineās

21. **quantum**, etc.: 'as daylight permitted'; how lit.? **sub**: 'toward.'

22. **ut erat imperātum**: 'in accordance with their orders.' 73, d.

12. 1. **diēi**: 94, c. **sē reciperent**: 'could rally.' Why subjunctive? 189, b.

2. **in finēs Suessiōnum**: see Map 1. Having scattered the great host of united Belgians, Caesar proceeds to the reduction of the different states one by one (Fig. 77).



Figure 77.—Coin of the Suessiones.

Bronze. Obverse: a Gallic neck-ring, torque, is seen on the neck.

3. **Rēmīs**: 108, a. **magnō itinere**: 'by a forced march.' 329.

4. **Noviodūnum**: = "New-town"; thought to have been on the hill of Pommiers, near the modern city of Soissons. **ex itinere**: see Vocab. under *iter*. **oppugnāre**: 340.

5. **vacuum ab**: 'destitute of.' **esse**: i.e. *id (oppidum) esse vacuum*. **lātitudinem fossae**: the wider the 'moat,' the more difficult the filling of it so as to gain access to the wall. **lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem**: 239, c.

6. **paucis dēfendentibus**: 'though there were but few defending it.' 144, b, (5).

7. **Castris**: probably on high ground east of Pommiers, where traces of a Roman camp, thought to date from Caesar's time, have been discovered. **vineās agere**: 'to move forward the arbor sheds.' 342, a.

agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit.

Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum 10 proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeri-



Figure 78. — Hill town in France, having a situation similar to that of Noviodunum.

8. **quae**: as antecedent supply *ea*, object of *comparāre*. **ūsui**: 'of use.' Why dative? 112, *a*.

11. **proximā nocte**: the night following the day on which Caesar reached Noviodunum, encamped, and commenced preparations for besieging the town. **vineis**, etc.: 'arbor sheds,' open at the ends, were rapidly constructed, and placed in parallel rows which began outside the range of the enemy's weapons and were extended to the edge of the moat. 144, *b*, (2).

12. **aggere iactō**: 'filling,' carried under the lines of arbor sheds, was 'cast' into the moat so as to level it up and make it possible to roll the towers close to the city wall. **turribus**: 'towers.' 342, *b*. **magnitūdine, celeritāte**: 135, *a*. **operum**: 'siege-works.'



tāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē  
15 mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

*The Suessiones submit; Caesar marches against the Bellovaci,  
gathered in Bratuspantium.*

**13.** Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

5 Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum v abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū, ex oppidō ēgressī, manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire  
10 neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

**15. petentibus Rēmīs:** 'at the urgent request of the Remi.' How lit.? **ut cōnservārentur:** after *petentibus*, 'that they should be spared.' 199, a.

**13. 1. obsidibus:** 'as hostages'; predicative, after *acceptis*. 88, b. **primis:** 'the foremost men.' 154, a, and 144, b, (2).

**2. Galbae:** chap. 4, ll. 22-24.

**4. Bellovacōs:** trans. as if *in finēs Bellovacōrum*. 282.

**5. Quī cum:** 'when they.' 167. **suaque omnia:** 'with everything they had.' How lit.? 154, a. **oppidum:** 'stronghold'; not a city but a fortified place of refuge, occupied only in time of danger.

**7. maiōrēs nātū:** 'the old men.' How lit.? 142, a. B. 226, 1; A. 418; H. 480.

**8. ēgressī:** 'came out and.' 228, a. **tendere:** 'to stretch out.'

**9. in eius fidem:** 'under his protection.' 124, a. **venire:** 213, b.

**10. neque:** trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **contendere:** 'struggle' any longer.

**11. accessisset:** 185, c. **puerī:** 'children,' not 'boys' merely.

**12. passis manibus:** 'with hands outstretched.' 144, b, (2). Principal parts of *pandō* and *patior*? **mōre:** with *passis*. 136, c.

*Diviciacus presents the case of the Bellovacī.*

**14.** *Prō his Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Aeduōrum cōpiis, ad eum reverterat) facit verba :*

*Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Aeduae fuisse ; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent, Aeduōs, ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs, omnēs indignitatēs et contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliū principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent, quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis.*

*Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō his Aeduōs, 10 ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod sī*

**14. 1. his :** *Bellovacis.*    **discessum :** 'retreat' ; chap. 11, ll. 1-5.

**2. Aeduōrum cōpiis :** chap. 5, ll. 5-10, and chap. 10, ll. 19-20. **eum :** Caesar.    **facit verba :** 'made a plea.' How lit.?

**3-9. Direct form :** *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Aeduae fuerunt ; impulsī ab suis principibus, quī dicebant, Aeduōs, ā 12 in servitūtem redactōs, omnēs indignitatēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfecerunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulerunt. Quī eius cōsiliū principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant, quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent (204, 3), in Britanniam profūgerunt.

**3. Bellovacōs, etc. :** 213, b, and 212, c, (1).    **omnī tempore :** N. to I, 11, l. 6.

**4. dicerent :** 'kept saying.' 175, a.

**5. in :** 'to.'    **servitūtem :** 10, f.    **omnēs, etc. :** 'every kind of ill-treatment and insult.' 92, c.

**6. et . . . et :** 234, a.    **dēfecisse :** 'had revolted.' 57, b.

**7. Quī :** as antecedent supply *eōs* with *profūgis*.    **principēs :** here = *auctōrēs*, 'advisers.'

**10-14. Direct form :** *Petunt* nōn solum *Bellovacī*, sed etiam prō his *Aeduī*, ut *tuā* clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utāris. Quod sī *fēceris* (future perfect), Aeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis* ; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuerunt* (176, b).

**10. petere, utātur :** vivid use of present tenses where past tenses might have been expected.

**11. quā :** 'his well-known.' 157, e.    **clēmētiā :** 'mercifulness,'

*fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.*

*Caesar makes terms with the Bellovaci and Ambiani, learns about the Nervians.*

15. Caesar, honōris Diviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā, sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; et quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudīne praestābat, dc obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

the quality which leads a man to treat with kindness those against whom he has grounds of offense. Near the close of his life a temple was ordered built to 'Caesar's Mercifulness.' 268, and Fig. 163. **mānuētūdīne**: 'compassionateness,' the quality that makes one able to realize the sufferings of others. **in**: 'toward.' **Quod**: 118, *d. sI*, etc.: 218, (1), *b*.

13. **sI** . . . **sustentāre**: 'to carry through any wars that had arisen.' How lit.? 168, and 49, *a*.

15. 1. **honōris**: dependent on *causā*; 'out of regard for Diviciacus,' etc. 94, *b*. **Diviciāci**: dependent on *honōris*. 102.

2. **in fidem**: as in chap. 13, 1, 9.

3. **civitās**: *Bellovacōrum*. **auctōritāte**: 'prestige.' 143, *a*.

4. **multitudīne**: 142, *a*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 480. **dc**: *sescentōs*. 36. The fact that for the sake of his Aeduan supporters Caesar had spared the Bellovaci did not prevent him from exacting a large number of hostages to bind them in their pledge of submission.



Figure 79. — A Nervian coin.

Gold, with crude designs.

5. **collātis**: 69, *b*. **eō locō**: Bratuspantium. For Caesar's route, see Map 1.

7. **morā**: 'delay.' **dēdidērunt**: 'surrendered.'

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat:

*Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil pati vinī<sup>10</sup> reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remitti vir-*



Figure 80.—A characteristic bit of the country through which Caesar made his three-day march.

8. **Eōrum**: the Ambiani. **Nervii attingēbant**: 'the country of the Nervians adjoined' (Fig. 79). 282. **dē nātūrā**: 116, c.

10-17. **Direct form**: *Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiūtur vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remitti virtutem existimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtutem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs [esse] neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis acceptūrōs [esse].*

10. **Nūllum**, etc.: 212, c, (3). **mercātōribus**: 111. **nihil vinī**: 'no wine.' 97, a. The Nervii were ancient prohibitionists. **pati**: sc. *eōs* as subject. 60.

11. **ad lūxuriam pertinentium**: 'which contribute to luxurious living.' How lit.?

12. **rēbus**: 136, a. **relanguēscere**: 'becomes weak.' ani-

*tūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō  
 15 Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōdicissent; cōn-  
 firmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciō-  
 nem pācis acceptūrōs.*

*The Nervians, Atrebatians, and Viromanduan wait Caesar at the Sambre.*

**16.** Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs :

*Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventum-  
 1 que ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viro-  
 manduīs, finitimīs suīs (nam his utrīsque persuāserant,*

**mōs:** 92, *a.* **virtutem:** 'valor,' the manifestation of courage in brave deeds.

**13. existimārent:** 177, *a.* **magnae virtūtis:** genitive of quality taking the place of an adjective, hence connected by *-que* with *ferōs*. 100, *a.*

**14. increpitāre atque incūsāre:** sc. *eōs*, 'that they upbraided and condemned.' **reliquōs:** 171, *a.* **quī:** 'because they.' 194, *c.*

**16. sēsē,** etc.: indirect discourse after *cōnfirmāre*. **sēsē:** refers to *eōs* understood as subject of *cōnfirmāre*.

**16. 1. eōrum:** *Nerviōrum*. **trīduum:** = *trēs diēs*. 118, *a.* **Iter fēcisset:** 'had advanced'; for the route see Map 1, and Fig. 80. **inveniēbat:** = *quaerendō cognoscēbat*.

**3. Sabim,** etc.: 212, *c.* (3). **Sabim:** accusative like *turrim*. 14, *c.* **mīlia:** why not ablative? 129, *b.* and 118, *a.*



Figure 81. — Viromanduan coin.

Bronze, of crude workmanship.  
 Inscription, SOLLOS (SOLOS).

**4. trāns id flūmen:** they crossed over to the south side of the Sambre, which flows in an easterly direction into the Meuse. 292.

**6. his utrīsque:** 'both these peoples.' 51, and 23, *a.* The combined forces of the Nervians, Atrebatians, and Viromanduan (Fig. 81) were estimated at 75,000 (chap. 4, ll. 21-28). **nam,** etc.: 214, *c.*

uti eandem belli fortūnam experirentur); *expectārī etiam ab his Atuaticōrum cōpiās, atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniecisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.* 10

*They plan to surprise him on the march.*

17. His rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit, quī locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditi-cīis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs, Caesarem secūtī, ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuetūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque his dēmōstrārunt, *Inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiū, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque*

8. in itinere: 'on the way.' mulierēs: object of *coniecisse*.

9. quīque: i.e. *et eos, qui*. per aetātem: 'by reason of age.' inūtilēs: predicative, 'useless.' eum locum: 'a place,' perhaps in the vicinity of the modern city of Mons. 160, d.

10. quō: adverb, = *ad quem*. esset: subjunctive also in the direct form. 194, a. B. 283; A. 535; H. 591, 1.

17. 2. quī . . . dēligant: 'in order to choose.' 193, a, and 331, a, and b. ex . . . Gallis: after *complūrēs*. 97, d. B. 201, 1, a; A. 346, c; H. 444. dēditiciis: the Suessionēs (chap. 13, l. 3), the Bellovacī (chap. 15, l. 2), and the Ambiani (chap. 15, ll. 5-7).

4. facerent: 185, c. quīdam: 168. ut: 185, b.

5. eōrum . . . exercitiis: 'the marching order of our army in those days,' the three days when Caesar was advancing into the country of the Nervians (chap. 16, l. 1). How lit.?

7. dēmōstrārunt: 64, a, (1). impedimentōrum, etc.: 311, and 74, d.

8. numerum: 'quantity.' esse: the subject is *adoriri*; 'and that there was no difficulty — in attacking.' How lit.? 222, b. quicquam: 168, and 49, a.

9. negōtiū: 97, b. castra: the place selected for a camp; the camp would not be fortified till the legions arrived. 332, 333. vēnisset, abesset: indicative future perfect, and future, in direct discourse.

10 *legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptīs, futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent.*

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque  
15 enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant, ut

10. *spatium*: 118, *a*. *sarcinīs*: 'packs.' The plan was to attack the first legion to come up, just as it reached the place chosen for encampment, before the soldiers could deposit their packs and get themselves into fighting trim. 330.

11. *quā*: 'when this' legion. *direptīs*: 'had been plundered.' How lit.? *futurum* [esse]: the subject is *ut . . . auderent*; 'it would come about that.' 203, (1).

12. *reliquae*: sc. *legiōnēs*. *contrā*: adverb. *contrā cōsistere*: 'to withstand the attack.'

13. *Adiuvābat*: the subject is *quod . . . effēcerant* (l. 19); 'the plan of those who furnished the information was favored by the fact that the Nervii,' etc. How lit.? 198, *b*.

14. *antiquitus*: 'long ago.' *cum . . . possent*: 'not being strong in cavalry.' How lit.? 184, *a*. *nihil*: 118, *c*. *neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.'

15. *eī rei student*: 'they give attention to that arm' of the service. 105. *quicquid . . . cōpiīs*: 'all the strength they have is in infantry.' How lit.? *quicquid*: 118, *b*.

16. *cōpiīs*: 142, *a*. *quō . . . impedirent*: 193, *b*. B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 531, *a*; H. 568, 7.

17. *praedandī causā*: 'in order to plunder.' 230, (1). *vēnissent*: 220.

18. *teneris . . . inflexīs*: 'cutting into young trees and bending them over.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2). *in lātitudinem*: 'at the sides,' we should say.

19. *rāmīs ēnātīs*: with *crēbris*, 'letting the branches grow thickly.' 151, and 61, *a*, (3). How lit.? *rubīs*, etc.: 'planting briars and thorn-bushes in the intervening spaces.' How lit.? *effēcerant, ut*

instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset.

His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omit-tendum sibi cōnsilium Nervī existimāvērunt.

*The Romans make camp on a height sloping to the river.*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant.



Figure 82. — Hedges, near the river Sambre.

... praebērent: 203, (3). By cutting into young trees near the root they were able to bend these down to a horizontal position without killing them. The stem of the tree would then increase in size very slowly, but along the trunk branches would grow out, above and on the sides (*in latitudinem*). In the spaces along the line of defense not filled by trees thus trained, briars and thorn-bushes were planted. The whole formed a living and impenetrable hedge. Similar hedges are still found in this region (Figures 82, 83, 87).

20. instar mūrī: 'like a wall,' lit. 'the likeness of a wall'; instar, indeclinable, is in apposition to mūnimentum. 94, b. saepēs: 'hedges.' 15, b. mūnimentum: 'line of defense.' 74, d. praebērent: 'made.' quō: adverb = in quod (mūnimentum); but trans. with the impersonal intrārī, etc., 'which could not only not be penetrated but not even seen through.' How lit.? 73, d, and 237, c.

21. perspicī: 79, b. posset: 220.

23. omittendum: 89, c, and 73, e. sibi: 110. cōnsilium: 'the plan' of attack proposed in ll. 9-12.

18. I. haec: 'as follows.' 161, a. locum: 165, a. castrīs:



Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter cc infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset.

Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stātiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitudō pedum circiter trium.

*A furious attack is made on the Romans while fortifying the camp.*

**19.** Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac

112, a. The site has been identified, on the left or north bank of the Sambre (*Sabis*), in France, near the Belgian frontier, opposite the city of Hautmont. Map 6, A.

3. Collis: on which the camp was laid out. ab, etc.: 'sloping evenly from the top, descended.' How lit.?

4. suprā: chap. 16, l. 3. nōmināvimus: 'we have mentioned by name.' 156. Ab eō: 'From the.' 160, d. parī acclivitatē: 'with similar upward slope.' 143, a.

5. nāscēbātur: 'arose.' adversus huic et contrārius: 'facing this (hill) and opposite (to it),' on the south side of the Sambre; the highest part of the second hill is at B on Map 6. huic: 108, a.

6. passūs: 118, a. cc: ducentōs. 36. How far? 243, b. infimus: 'at the lower edge' of the hill, along the river. apertus: free from woods. ab, etc.: 'wooded along the upper portion.' 126, c.

7. ut: 'so that.' intrōrsus: 'within.'

9. apertō locō: indicated on Map 6, between the river and the broken line marking the northern limit of the woods. secundum: preposition, 'along.' stātiōnēs: 'pickets.'

10. vidēbantur: trans. as passive. pedum: 100, b. trium: 37, b.

19. 1. equitātū praemissō: 328. omnibus cōpiis: 137, b.

2. ratiō ōrdōque: 'principle of arrangement,' lit. 'principle and arrangement.' aliter, etc.: 'were different from what the Belgians.' How lit.? habēbat: 173, a. B. 255, 3; A. 317, b; H. 392, 4. ac: 233, c.

Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant.

Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittārisque flūmen trāsgressī, cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs vi, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

4. **cōsuētūdine suā**: 'in accordance with his usual practice,' when in the enemy's country. 136, c. **vi**: 38, b. The legions were those numbered 7-12. **expeditās**: predicative, 'in light order'; without the packs (*sarcinae*), which in such cases were doubtless carried with the heavy baggage. 115, b.

5. **impedimenta**: 311. **collocārat**: full form? 64, a, (1).

6. **duae legiōnēs**: numbered 13 and 14; chap: 2, ll. 1-4. **proximē**: 35.

7. **praesidiō, impedimentis**: 112, b, and 328. B. 191, 2, a; A. 382, 1; H. 433.

9. **trāsgressī**: to the south side of the Sambre. **cum**: 137, c. **equitātū**: the cavalry (chap. 18, l. 9) must have been furnished by the Atrebatians and Viromanduan, not by the Nervians (chap. 17, l. 14).

10. **identidem**: 'repeatedly.' **suōs**: the enemy's infantry, concealed in the woods (chap. 18, l. 8). **reciperent**: 175, d.

11. **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **longius**: 'further.'

12. **quem ad finem**: = *ad eum finem ad quem*, 'to the limit to which.' **porrēcta**, etc.: 'the stretch of open ground extended.' How lit.?

13. **cēdentēs**: sc. *eos* (*hostēs*), object of *Insequi*; 'as they retreated.' **primae vēnerant**: 'had been the first to come up.' 152, b.

14. **opere**: 'the trench-work,' the first work on the fortifications of the camp. 333. **dīmēnsō**: 'having measured off.' How lit. 144, b, (2), and 59, b.

- 15 Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordi- nēsque cōstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili



Figure 83. — View across the fields in the direction from which Caesar's baggage was coming.

15. **prima impedimenta**: 'the first part of the baggage train.' Map 6. 152, a.

16. **vīsa sunt**: passive in meaning. **quod tempus**: i.e. *tempus* (in thought an appositive of the clause *Ubi . . . vīsa sunt*, but attracted into the relative clause) . . . *quod convēnerat*, 'which had been agreed on.' 165, b.

17. **committendī proeliī**: dependent on *tempus*, 'for beginning the battle.' How lit.? 230, (1). **ut**: 'just as.'

18. **ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant**: 'had encouraged one another.'

19. **cōpiis**: 136, b. **prōvolāvērunt**: 'they rushed forward.' **nostrōs equitēs**: who had crossed the river (ll. 8, 9).

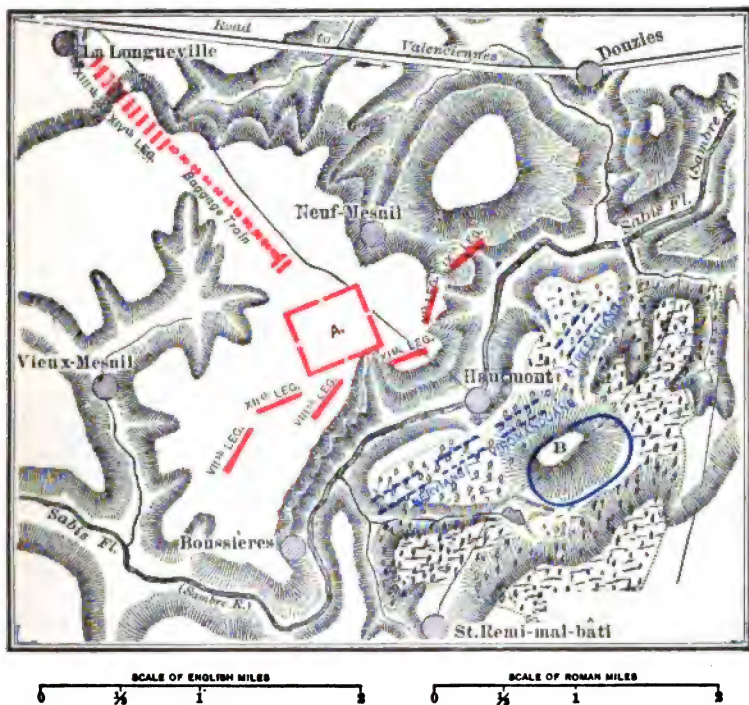
20. **prōturbātis**: 'scattered in a panic.' **incrēdibili**: 74, f.

## MAP 6

### THE BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS): FIRST PHASE

Book II, 18-22

To face page 164



### EXPLANATION

Caesar's army, approaching the Sambre from the north, started to make a camp on a hill overlooking the river. The Belgian forces, comprising Nervians, Viro-manduan, and Atrebatians, were lying in wait on the south side.

Supposing that each legion would be followed by its baggage train, the Belgians had planned to attack the first legion and destroy it before the others could come to the rescue, and in like manner to destroy the others one by one. Caesar, however, had placed six legions in light marching order first, then all the baggage, and two legions last, the XIII<sup>th</sup> and XIV<sup>th</sup>; he sent cavalry, bowmen, and slingers in advance of the main column.

When the baggage train came into view, the Belgians hurled back the cavalry, bowmen, and slingers, rushed across the river and charged up the hill.

**A.** The Roman camp (chap. 18, ll. 1-7), with six legions forming in front.

**B.** The camp of the Belgians (chap. 26, ll. 10-12).



celeritāte ad flūmen dēcurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, qui in opere occupāti erant, contendērunt.

23

*Discipline and training enable the soldiers to meet the emergency*

**20.** Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret; signum tubā dandum; ab opere revocandī milites; qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōces-

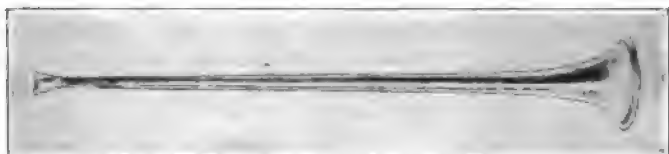


Figure 84. — Roman trumpet, tuba.

**21.** dēcurrērunt: 'they ran down' the sloping ground between the edge of the forest and the river. ut: 'so that.' tempore: 'instant.'

**22.** ad silvās: 'near the woods,' whence they had just emerged in manibus nostris: in our idiom, 'upon us'; how lit.?

**23.** adversō colle . . . contendērunt: 'dashed up the hill' on the north side of the Sambre. The Belgians may have covered the distance between the woods on the south side of the Sambre and the site of the Roman camp in ten minutes; the distance is about two-thirds of an English mile.

**24.** occupāti: 'engaged.' 148, c.

**20.** 1. Caesarī: emphatic, hence placed at the beginning. 110, and 229, c. vēxillum: 'the flag.' 324, b, 3, and Fig. 149.

2. prōpōnendum, dandum, revocandī, etc.: sc. erat, erant. 229, c. ad arma concurrī: 'to arm.' How lit.? 73, d.

3. tubā: 'with the trumpet'; the signal was to "fall in." 326, a, (1). Fig. 84. opere chap. 19, l. 14 and N. revocandī [erant]: 'had to be recalled.'

4. qui: as antecedent sc. ei (milites), subject of arcessendi [erant].

serant, arcessendi; aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.

His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientiā atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fieri oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere, nisi mūnitis castris, vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

paulō longius: 'a little further' than usual. 140. aggeris: 'material' for the rampart, in this case probably wood. 230, (1).

5. arcessendi [erant]: 'had to be sent for.' cohortandi [erant]: N to I, 25, l. 3.

6. signum dandum [erat]: 'the signal' for battle 'had to be given.' 326, c. Quārum: 167.

7. brevitās: 'the shortness.' incursus: 'the onrush.' impediēbat: 173, a.

8. His . . . subsidiō: 'Two things served to offset these disadvantages,' explained by scientia . . . poterant and quod ab opere . . . vetuerat. How lit.? 112, b.

10. oportēret: 204, (2). nōn minus, etc.: 'they were able (themselves) to determine for themselves . . . just as fitly as others could instruct them.' How lit.? ipsi: agrees with the subject of poterant, but need not be translated.

11. quod, etc: 'the fact that Caesar had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their respective legions.' How lit.? 198, b.

12. discēdere: 200, b. nisi mūnitis castris: 'only after the fortifying of the camp had been completed.'

14. nihil: adverbial accusative. 118, c.

15. per sē: 'on their own responsibility.' quae vidēbantur: i.e. quae vidēbantur administranda, 'were taking (the measures) which the situation seemed to require.' How lit.? These veterans knew what to do, when they saw the enemy coming, and did not lose their heads.

*They form hurriedly; under Caesar's encouragement they fight desperately, against great odds.*

**21.** Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causam profectus pugnantibus occurrit.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus <sup>10</sup>

**21. 1. necessariis rebus imperatis:** 'having given (only) the indispensable orders.'

**2. quam in partem** = *in eam partem, in quam*; with *fors obtulit*, 'where chance led,' a statement introduced to explain why Caesar came first to the tenth legion, which, as the most experienced, had least need of the general's presence. 69, b. **decucurrit:** Caesar was perhaps near the northeast corner of the camp (Map 6, A) when he started to rush down the slope to where the troops were forming.

**4. uti . . . sustinerent:** substantive clauses giving the gist of the words of exhortation. 199, a.

**5. neu perturbarentur animo:** we should say 'and keep cool.' How lit.? 142, a, and 199, d.

**6. quod . . . aberant:** gives the reason for *signum dedit*. **quam quod:** 'than (the distance) to which.' 194, b. B. 283, 2, a; A. 571, a; H. 570, 1.

**7. adigi:** 'be thrown.' **signum:** N. to chap. 20, 1. 6.

**8. alteram partem:** 'another part' of the hastily formed line; apparently Caesar went across to the right wing, where the seventh and twelfth legions were. See Map 6. **profectus:** principal parts of *proficiscor* and *proficiscor*?

**9. pugnantibus occurrit:** 'he found (the men already) fighting.' 107, a, and 175, b.

**10. Temporis . . . exiguitas:** 'So short was the time.' How lit.? **hostium:** dependent on *animus*. 233, b, and 353, d.



ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prima signa cōspexit, ad  
15 haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandī tempus dimitteret.

**22.** Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante

**11. ad insignia accomodanda:** 'for fitting on their decorations,' particularly the crests, which were taken off from the helmets on the march. In battle it was important that the crests be in place, for by differences of these in form and color the different legions and cohorts could be distinguished (Fig. 85).



Figure 85. — Roman helmet, with crest.

**12. ad galeās induendās:** 'for putting on their helmets' (Fig. 12). **322, a. scūtis,** etc.: 'for drawing the coverings off the shields,' which were protected by coverings against moisture. **127, a. B. 214; A. 401; H. 462.**

**13. Quam,** etc.: 'Whatever part (of the line) each (soldier) chanced (to reach as) he came down from the trench-work, (in that part he stayed) and.' How lit.?

**14. quaeque = et quae;** trans. as if *ad* ('by') *haec signa, quae prima cōspexit, cōstitit* ('he took his stand'). Under ordinary circumstances it was a serious offense for a soldier to be found in a maniple in which he did not belong. **324, b, (2).**

**15. in quaerendis suis:** sc. *signis*.

**22. 1. ut:** 'as.' **loci:** 'of the ground.'

**2. rei . . . ōrdō:** 'the arrangement approved by military science.' How lit.?

**3. diversae:** 'separated.' **aliae aliā in parte:** fuller expression of the thought in *diversae*; 'one at one point, another at another.' **171, c.**

**4. dēnsissimīs:** 'very thick.' **153, a. ante:** chap. 17, ll. 13-21.

dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque, certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*Two legions drive the Atrebatians across the river, two force back the Viromanduians, but two are outflanked by the Nervians.*

**23.** Legiōnis viiii et x militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēi cōnstitant, pilīs ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et, trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī, gladiis magnam partem eōrum s

5. **prōspectus**: 'the view' over the field of battle (Fig. 82).

6. **certa subsidia collocārī** [poterant]: 'could reserves be posted at fixed points'; the movements of the enemy were so obscured by the thickets that Caesar could not tell where reserve forces could be posted to advantage. **certa**: 151. **B.** 239; **A.** 290; **H.** 497. **quāque**: from *quisque*. **opus esset**: 132, *b*.

7. **prōvidērī**: sc. *poterat*. **ūnō**: 'one person.' **omnia imperia . . . administrārī**: 'all orders . . . be given.'

8. **in tantā rērum inīquitāte**: 'under so disadvantageous conditions.' How lit.? **fortūnae**: dependent on *ēventūs*.

9. **ēventūs variī**: 'various issues.'

**23.** 1. **viiii, x**: *nonae, decimae*. 38, *b*. **aciēi**: 21, *b*. For the position of the legions see Map 6.

2. **pilīs ēmissis**: 'having hurled their pikes.' 322, *d*. **lassitūdine**: 'fatigue,' resulting from the three-quarter mile dash first downhill to the river, then across the river, and uphill again to the Roman line. **exanimātōs**: 'who were out of breath.' 227, *a*, (1).

3. **vulneribus cōfectōs**: 'disabled by wounds,' referring to those struck by the pikes. **ea pars**: the Roman left wing, which was in command of Labienus. **obvenerat**: 'had encountered.'

4. **locō superiōre**: the Romans, being nearer the top of the hill, were on higher ground. **compulērunt**: 'forced.'

5. **cōnantēs**: sc. *eōs* (*Atrebātēs*), object of *insecūtī*.

impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et, in locum inīquum prōgressi, rūrsus resistantēs hostēs, redintegrātō proeliō, in fugam coniēcērunt.

Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, XI et VIII, 10 prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre, in ipsis flūminis ripīs proeliābantur.

At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō XII et, nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō, VII cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōnfertissimō agmine 15 duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum

6. **impeditam**: by the crossing of the river. **Ipsī**: the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions. **trānsire**: 201, *b*.

7. **locum inīquum**: the 'ground' south of the Sambre, sloping back from the river and in part covered with woods; Map 7.

8. **hostēs**: object of *coniēcērunt*. **redintegrātō proeliō**: 'they (the Romans) renewed the battle and.' 144, *b*, (2).

9. **aliā in parte**: the Roman center, in front of the camp. See Map 7. **diversae**: 'in different places'; not, as ordinarily, forming a continuous line.

10. **prōfligātis Viromanduis**: 'having driven the Viromanduan.' **quibuscum**: 126, *c*. **erant congressae**: 57, *c*.

11. **proeliābantur**: 'were continuing the battle.' 176, *a*.

12. **ā**: 126, *b*. **nūdātis**: not only the 8th and 11th legions in front, but the 9th and 10th legions on the left of the camp, had abandoned their positions to pursue the enemy, leaving the camp 'unprotected' except on the right, where the 12th and 7th legions stood.

13. **cum**: 'since.' 184, *a*. **XII**: *duodecima*. **nōn**: with *magnō*. 239, *g*. **intervāllō**: 188.

14. **VII**: (*legio septima*). **cōstitisset**: why singular? **omnēs Nervii**: their fighting force was estimated by the Remi at 50,000 (chap. 4, l. 25), but was later reported as 60,000 (chap. 28, l. 8). **cōnfertissimō agmine**: a mass formation, like that of the Helvetians (I, 24, l. 12); called 'column,' *agmen*, rather than 'battle-line,' *aciēs*, because it was still advancing, not yet having divided in order to deliver the attack at two points.

15. **duce Boduognātō**: 'led by Boduognatus.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2). **summam imperiī**: 'the supreme command.'

locum contendērunt ; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*The Roman camp is taken ; seemingly all is lost.*

**24.** Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis



Figure 86. — Open ground along the Sambre, over which the Nervians advanced ; looking toward the site of Caesar's Camp, now in part covered by woods.

**16. ab apertō latere :** 'on the exposed flank,' the right flank. **legiōnēs :** the 7th and 12th.

**17. summum castrōrum locum :** 'the height on which the camp was.' How lit.?

**24. 1. levis armātūrae peditēs :** slingers and bowmen (chap. 19, l. 8).

**2. cum eis ūnā :** 'along with them,' the cavalry.

**3. dixeram :** chap. 19, ll. 15-23. **reciperent, respexissent** (l. 7) : force of *re-*? 79, *d.* **adversis, etc. :** 'were meeting the enemy face to face.' 107, *a.* The Nervians came up so rapidly that they were already entering the Roman camp at the time when Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops, which had been routed on the other side

hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressi, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor  
 10 fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti, equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, qui auxiliī causā ā civitatē ad Caesarem missi vēnerant, cum multitudīne  
 15 hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene

of the Sambre, were just coming back to it again. The descriptive force of the imperfects in this chapter adds to the vividness of the picture.

5. **cālōnēs**: 'camp-servants,' chiefly, we may assume, servants of officers. **ab decumānā portā**: 'at the rear gate' of the camp, which, since the hill sloped toward the river, was on the highest part of the hill. Map 7, C, C. 334, a.

6. **nostrōs**: the 9th and 10th legions. **praedandī**, etc.: they were leaving the camp by the rear gate to hunt for plunder.

7. **hostēs . . . versārī**: 'that the enemy were moving about.'

8. **praecipitēs**: 'precipitately.' 151. B. 239; A. 290; H. 497.

9. **eōrum, qui**: the drivers of the baggage-train, just coming up; behind it were the 13th and 14th legions bringing up the rear. See Map 7. **clāmor**: 'shouting.'

10. **fremitus**: 'hubbub.' **oriēbātur**: 61, b, and 173, a. **aliique**, etc.: 'some in one direction, others in another.' 171, c.

11. **ferēbantur**: 'were rushing.' 174. B. 256, 1; H. 517.

13. **virtūtis opīniō**: 'reputation for courage'; meant of the Treveri as a whole, not merely of the cavalry. **singulāris**: 'extraordinary.' The implication is that the Treveran horsemen went away not by reason of cowardice but because they thought the day hopelessly lost. **auxilli**, etc.: Caesar must have made an agreement with the Treveri before starting on this campaign.

14. **civitatē**: personified, hence with *a*. 126, a. **cum . . . vidissent**: 185, c.

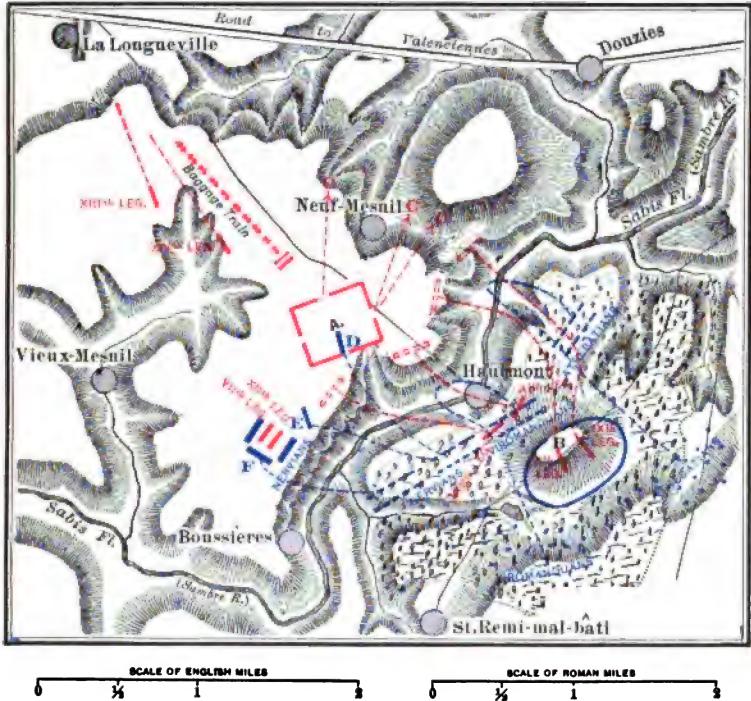
15. **legiōnēs**: the 7th and 12th; see Map 7.

# MAP 7

## THE BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE (SABIS): SECOND PHASE

Book II, 23-27

To face page 172



### EXPLANATION

The Atrebatians, having crossed the river, were thrown back by the IX<sup>th</sup> and X<sup>th</sup> legions, and fled through the woods east of the Belgian camp. The IX<sup>th</sup> and X<sup>th</sup> legions entered the Belgian camp (B), which was on a hill.

In like manner the XI<sup>th</sup> and VIII<sup>th</sup> legions routed the Viromanduan and crossed to the south side of the river in pursuit.

Of the Nervians, one division (D) made for the Roman camp (A) and entered it; the cavalry, bowmen, and slingers that had taken refuge there fled precipitately (C). Other divisions (E, F) started to surround the VII<sup>th</sup> and XII<sup>th</sup> legions, which by Caesar's order took up a position rear to rear.

Hearing the noise of battle the baggage train halted, and the XIII<sup>th</sup> and XIV<sup>th</sup> legions hastened to the scene.

Caesar rushed into the front rank, and saved the day.



circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus, domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potitōs, civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

20

*Caesar rushes into the fight, calls centurions by name, directs the formation of a double front.*

**25.** Caesar ab x legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātis XII legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse

**17. diversōs dissipātōsque:** 'separated,' one body of troops from another, 'and scattered.'

**18. dēspērātis, etc.:** 'despairing of our victory.' 144, b, (3).

**19. pulsōs, superātōs:** sc. *esse*. **castris, impedimentis:** after *potitōs* [*esse*]. 131, c.

**25. 1. Caesar, etc.:** subject of a complex sentence which ends with *possent* in l. 18.

**1-18. Analysis:** The paragraph forms a single complex sentence. The principal clause has for its subject *Caesar*, with which the participles *profectus* (l. 2) and *cohortātus* (l. 16) agree; for its predicate it has the verbs *processit* (l. 15), *iussit* (l. 17). The leading subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vidit*, which is so expanded by the introduction of details that *vidit* is repeated (l. 12) for clearness. These details are expressed in part by infinitives with subject-accusatives dependent on *vidit*, in part by ablatives absolute, and in part by the minor clauses *ut . . . posset* (l. 8) and *quod . . . posset* (l. 13).

In translating, the sentence may be broken up into three or four English sentences; most of the ablatives absolute are best rendered by clauses.

**1. ab . . . cohortātiōne:** = *ab decimā legiōne, quam cohortātus erat*. Caesar's account of his personal part in this battle, which was interrupted by his description of the progress of the fighting (chaps. 22-24) is here resumed from chap. 21, ll. 1-9. **X:** 38, b, and 38.

**2. suōs urgērī:** 'that his men were hard pressed.' **signis:** 'the standards' of the maniples. 324, b, (2).

**3. XII: duodecimae.** The crowding together of the soldiers of the 12th legion, which exposed them all the more to the missiles of the enemy, and their consequent losses, were no doubt in part due to their



impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus  
 5 occisis signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum  
 cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut  
 occisis, in hīs primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō,  
 multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre  
 10 simīs, dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs  
 neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et  
 ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vidit,

lack of experience in fighting; for this legion, raised in 58 B.C. (I, chap. 10, l. 10 and N.), had been in service only a year. During the battle with the Helvetians it guarded the baggage, having no part in the fray. **sibi . . . impedimentō**: 'were hindering one another in fighting.' How lit.? 178, and 112, b.

4. **quārtae cohortis**: at the front, perhaps at the end of the first line. 337, a, and Fig. 186.

5. **signiferō**: 'the standard-bearer.' Each cohort had three standards, of which there were thirty in the legion. Here the reference probably is to the standard-bearer who carried the standard of the first manipule of the cohort, which was looked upon as the standard of the cohort. 324, b, (2).

7. **primipilō**: 'the first centurion' of the first cohort, hence regarded as the first centurion of the legion. 315, b.

8. **multis gravibusque**: 'many severe wounds.' 152, c. **cōnfectō**: 'exhausted'; with *primipilō*. Baculus did not die, but lived to establish the reputation of being one of the bravest, if not the most brave, among Caesar's men. **ut**: 'so that.'

9. **tardiōrēs**: 'less active,' having lost their initiative. **ab novissimis**: 'in the rear ranks.' 126, c.

10. **dēsertō locō . . . excēdere**: 'had abandoned their position and were withdrawing.' How lit.? **proeliō**: 127, a. **hostēs**, etc.: 'that both in front the enemy did not cease coming up—and on both flanks,' etc.; see Map 7. The Nervians outnumbered the men of the 12th and 7th legions five or six to one.

11. **neque . . . et**: 233, d. **ex inferiōre locō**: 'from the lower ground' along the river.

12. **rem**, etc.: 'that matters had reached a crisis.' How lit.? 154, a.

neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summitti posset; scūtō ab novissimis ūnī militi detrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque 13 nōminātīm appellātis, reliquōs cohortātus, militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent.



Figure 87. — Typical hedges near the site of the battle at the Sambre.

13. **subsidium**: 'reserve force'; the 13th and 14th legions were not yet available, because too far off. **posset**: 194, *a*. B. 283, 2; A. 535, *a*; H. 591, 1. **scūtō**, etc.: 'snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear rank.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2).

14. **ūnī**: here 'a,' weaker than 'one'; in English "an" and "one" were originally the same word. 23, *a*. **militi**: 109, *b*. B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; H. 427. **eō**: adverb. **sine scūtō**: in battle even commanders may have carried shields, for protection in an emergency.

16. **nōminātīm**: Caesar's personal knowledge of his men was always an important factor in his success. **signa inferre**: 'to advance.' 325.

17. **manipulōs laxāre**: 'to open up the ranks,' we say; lit. 'to spread out the companies.' **quō**: 193, *b*. Longfellow in "The

Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō,  
 20 cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar, cum VII legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium sferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

*The Romans gain a complete victory, though the enemy fight with the courage of despair.*

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō,

Courtship of Miles Standish" has portrayed the course of the battle in verse:

He seized a shield from a soldier,  
 Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,  
 Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;  
 Then to widen the ranks, and make more room for their weapons;  
 So he won the day.

19. **Cuius**: 167. **illātā**: 69, *b*. **militibus**: why dative?

20. **prō sē quisque**: 170, *b*. **in extrēmīs suis rēbus**: 'under conditions of the utmost peril to himself.' How lit.?

21. **operam nāvāre**: 'to do his best.'

22. **tardātus est**: 'was checked.'

26. 1. **iūxtā**: the 7th legion was 'near by' the 12th, on the right wing; see Map 6.

2. **vīdisset**: 185, *c*. **ut . . . Inferrent**: 'that the (two) legions gradually draw together, face about, and advance against the enemy.' Probably one legion simply took up a position behind the other, facing in the opposite direction, so that the rear of both was secure. 199, *a*.

3. **conversa signa**: 325, and 228, *a*. B. 337, 2; A. 496, N. 2; H. 639.

5. **ferrent**: 184, *a*. **neque**: trans. as if *et . . . nōn*. **nē**: 202. **āversī** 'in the rear'; the new formation is shown on Map 7.

7. **legiōnum duārum**: the 13th and 14th; see Map 7.

cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre, 10 quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur, cōspiciātus, x legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculē et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt. 15

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostri, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equi-

9. **cursū incitātō**: 'having quickened their pace'; relation of this ablative absolute to the preceding? **summō colle**: 'the top of the hill' back of the Roman camp. 152, a.

10. **castris**: 131, c. **locō superiōre**: the height on which the Belgian camp was; Map 7, B. Hither Labienus with the 9th and 10th legions had pursued the Atrebatēs; chap. 23, ll. 1-8. The probable lines of flight and pursuit are indicated on Map 7.

11. **quae**: 48, b. **gererentur**: 204, (2). **cōspiciātus**: as spy-glasses were not yet invented, Labienus saw with the unaided eye; the distance from camp to camp across the valley was over a mile. **x**: *decimam*.

12. **subsidiō, nostris**: 112, b. **Quī cum**: 'And when they.' 167. **Quī**: plural from the idea of *militēs* in *legiōnem*.

13. **quō in locō rēs esset**: 'how matters stood.' How lit.? 204, (2). B. 300, 1; A. 574; H. 649, II.

14. **versārētur**: agrees with the nearest subject; trans. 'were.' 172, b, and 204, (3).

15. **nihil . . . fēcērunt**: 'they made the utmost possible speed,' more lit. 'left nothing undone in regard to speed.' **sibi**: 109, a. **reliquī**: predicate genitive.

27. 2. **quī (ei) quī**. **prōcubuissent**: 'had sunk down.' 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

3. **scūtīs**: 131, c. **innixī**: 'supporting themselves.' **redintegrārent**: 197, b. **perterritōs**: predicative.

4. **inermēs**: with *cālōnēs*; placed, for the sake of contrast, next to *armātīs*; 'unarmed, rushed against armed (men).'

5 tēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pugnandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtutem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum  
15 locum, quae facilia ex difficillimis animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

5. **vērō**: 236, *a*. **turpitūdinem**: 'disgrace.' **dēlērent**: 'they might wipe out.' **omnibus**, etc.: 'strove to outdo the legionaries at all points in fighting.' As an arm of the service cavalry was rated by the Romans of secondary importance. 309.

6. **pugnandō**: 230, (4). **militibus**: 107, *b*.

7. **etiam**, etc.: 'even in utter despair of safety.'

8. **primī eōrum**: 'their foremost ranks.' How lit.? 154, *a*.

9. **iacentibus insisterent**: 'mounted upon the fallen.' 227, *a*, (4).  
**ex**: 126, *c*.

10. **coacervātis cadāveribus**: 'when their bodies had been heaped' on those of the Nervians that had first fallen. **quī**: as antecedent supply *ei*, subject of *conicerent*. **superessent**: 220.

11. **ut ex tumulō**: 'as from a mound.' **conicerent**: 'continued to hurl.' **pila intercepta remitterent**: 'picked up and threw back the pikes,' though these could be of little value as weapons; cf. *N.* to I, 25, l. 9. **conicerent, remitterent**: in the same construction as *insisterent, pugnarent*. 197, *b*.

12. **ut**, etc.: a result clause, presenting Caesar's conclusion; 'so that it ought not to be thought that men of so great valor in vain dared,' etc.; they fought in a manner worthy of their heroic advance.

13. **ausōs esse**: 62. **lātissimum**: Fig. 88. 153, *a*.

14. **altissimās**: the banks are steep where the Nervians crossed.

15. **quae**: 'things (referring to the actions expressed in the preceding infinitives) which, in themselves most difficult, their heroic courage had made easy.' How lit.? **facilia**: 116, *b*.

*Caesar spares the remnant of the Nervians.*

**28.** Hōc-proeliō factō, et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redactō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex



Figure 88. — View on the Sambre, near the site of the battle.

**28. 1. Hōc proeliō factō:** 'Now that this battle was over.' How lit.? **interneciōnem:** 'utter destruction.' Six years later, however, the Nervians were expected to send a force of 6000 warriors to Alesia (VII, 75, l. 14). **gente:** 'stock.'

**2. maiōrēs nātū, puerīs:** Notes to chap. 13, l. 7 and l. 11.

**3. aestuāria:** here 'tidal marshes,' surrounded by salt water at high tide. **palūdēs:** 'swamps.' **coniectōs:** 89, c.

**4. dixerāmus:** chap. 16, ll. 8-10. **cum:** 184, a. **nihil impeditum:** 'that there was nothing to oppose.' How lit.?

**5. victis:** 227, a, (4). **nihil tūtum:** 'no safety,' we should say. **omnium:** masculine, dependent on *cōnsensū*.

DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad D, qui arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt.

- 10 Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūtī iussit et finitimis imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

### Capture of the Stronghold of the Atuatucl. 29-33

*The Atuatucl gather in one stronghold.*

29. Atuatucl, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertis, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum, ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum, con-

---

8. DC: *sescentis (senātoribus)*. Reckoning the Nervian army at 60,000 (10,000 more than the Remi reported, chap. 4, l. 25), 600 *senātōrēs* would average one to every 100 men. It is possible, therefore, that the Latin word *senātor* is here applied to a leader of a hundred; and this suggestion seems to be confirmed by the losses of the *senātōrēs* in battle. D: *quingentōs*, modified by *vix*; 'barely.' Exaggeration on the part of the suppliants was to be expected. qui . . . possent: subjunctive in the direct form. 194, a.

10. in: 'toward.' ūsus: sc. *esse*. 221, b. B. 328, 2; A. 582; H. 612, 1. misericordiā: 'compassion'; cf. chap. 14, l. 11. 131, c.

12. ut, etc.: 199, a. iniuriā et maleficiō: 'wrong-doing and ill-treatment' of the weak remnant of the Nervians.

29. 1. suprā: chap. 16, ll. 7-8. cum: 185, c. omnibus cōpiis: 19,000 men, if they reached the estimate of the Remi (chap. 4, l. 29). 136, b. B. 220, 1; A. 412; H. 473, 3.

2. auxiliō Nervii: 112, b. ex itinere: see Vocab., under *iter*.

3. castellis: 'fortresses'; small fortified places, perhaps occupied only in time of danger.

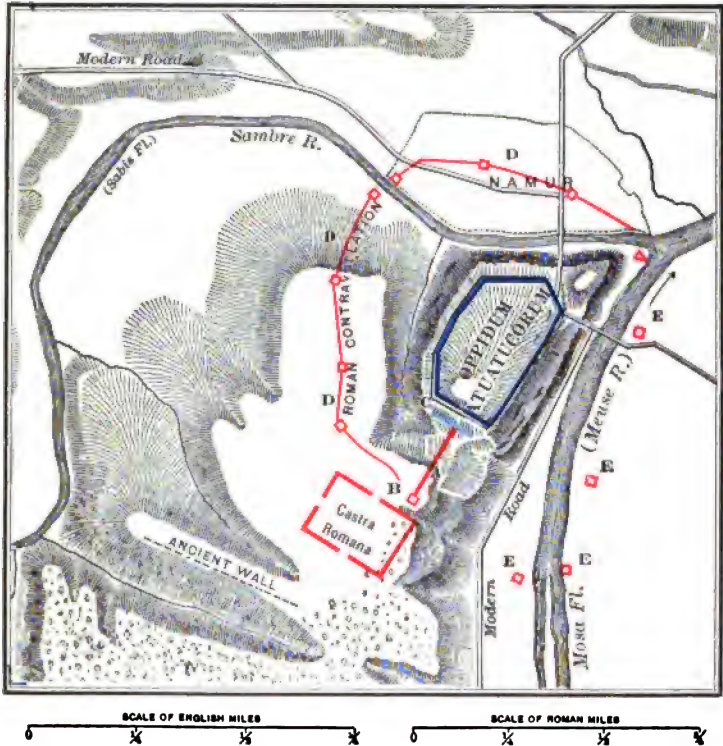
4. oppidum: 'stronghold,' like that of the Bellovacī; see N. to chap. 13, l. 5. This stronghold is by some located on the hill where now the citadel of Namur is, at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre and across the Sambre from the city of Namur; see Map 8. Others, considering the hill at Namur too small, prefer, as the site of the stronghold, the hill of Falhize, which lies on the north bank of the

# MAP 8

## OPERATIONS AGAINST THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ATUATUCI

Book II, 29-33

To face page 180



### EXPLANATION

The Atuatuci abandoned their towns and gathered in a stronghold protected by steep cliffs except on one side, where there was an easy approach not more than 200 Roman feet wide.

Caesar blockaded the stronghold with a rampart and redoubts. Afterwards he ran an embankment up the inclined approach, and made ready to attack.

**A.** Incline along which Caesar-constructed his siege embankment, *agger*.

**B.** General's gate, *porta praetoria*, of Caesar's camp.

**C.** Upper end of the inclined approach, fortified with a double wall (chap. 29, ll. 8-10) and moat (chap. 32, ll. 9, 10).

**D-D.** Rampart, *vallum* (chap. 30, l. 3).

**E-E.** Redoubts, *castella* (chap. 30, l. 4).





tulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altis-  
simās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter  
acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum  
pedum relinquebātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō  
mūnierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs  
in mūrō collocābant. 10

Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, qui, cum  
iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis im-  
pedimentis, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant,  
citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, cūstōdiam ex suis ac prae-  
sidium vi mīlia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. Hi post eōrum  
obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitāti, cum aliās bel-

Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, 19 miles below Namur. **ēgregiē**:  
'admirably.'

5. **Quod oūm**: 'And although this.' 187, and 187. **ex**, etc.:  
'on all sides round about.' How lit.?

6. **rūpēs**: 'cliffs.' 15, b. **lēniter acclivis**: 'gently rising.' If  
the stronghold was on the hill across from Namur, this narrow 'ap-  
proach' was on the southwest side.

8. **pedum**: the case is not influenced by *amplius*. 100, a, and  
129, b. **duplici**: 'double.' 26, a.

9. **ponderis**: 100, a. **praeacūtās trabēs**: 'beams sharpened  
at the ends.' 17, c.

10. **in**: 'on.' **collocābant**: 'they were placing,' at the time  
(*tum*) when Caesar came up; the change of tense from the pluperfect  
(*mūnierant*) is to be noted.

11. **Cimbris Teutonisque**, etc.: see N. to I, chap. 33, l. 17.  
**prōgnāti**: 'descended.' 128, b.

12. **prōvinciam**: 290. **impedimentis**: 'cattle and goods';  
the use in l. 13 of *agere*, 'drive,' with *portāre*, shows that cattle as  
well as portable possessions are here included.

14. **citrā**: on the west side. **dēpositis**: with *impedimentis*.  
**cūstōdiam**: 'as a guard' of the *impedimenta*. 115, a. **ex suis**:  
i.e. *sex mīlia hominum ex suis*. 97, d. **praesidium**: 'as a garrison.'

15. **HI**: the 6000 Atuatuē. **eōrum**: the great host of the Cim-  
brians and Teutons.

16. **obitum**: 'destruction,' at Aquae Sextiae in 102 B.C. and at

lum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

*Caesar besieges it ; the Atuatuci ridicule the siege-works.*

**30.** Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant ; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūniti oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Ubi, vineis āctis, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōstituit vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōci-

Vercellae in 101 B.C. **exagitātī** : 'harassed.' **aliās . . . aliās** : 'sometimes . . . sometimes.'

**17. illātum** : sc. *bellum* ; 'were repelling attack.' **eōrum omnium** : 'of them all,' including the Atuatuci and their neighbors.

**18. domiciliō** : 112, a. **locum** : 'district' (Fig. 89).

**30. 1. primō adventū** : i.e. *primō post adventum tempore*, 'Immediately after the arrival.' 147, b.

**2. excursiōnēs** : 'sallies.' **parvulis proeliis** : 'skirmishes.' How lit. ? 76, c.

**3. vāllō, castellis** : these formed the line of contravallation ; see Map 8.

Figure 89. — Coin of the Atuatuci.

Bronze. Obverse, a design suggesting the heads of snakes. Reverse, horse ; inscription, AVAVCTA.

It has been thought strange that, if the site of the stronghold was opposite Namur, or at Falhize, no mention in this description is made of the Sambre or the Meuse. The brow of the hill on which the stronghold stood was so steep and high that perhaps the rivers hardly entered into Caesar's calculations in planning the contravallation. **pedum XII** : in height. 38, b, and 100, a. **XV mīlium** : sc. *pedum*, though Caesar in such cases elsewhere has *passuum*. A circuit of three Roman miles seems to satisfy the conditions. 243, b.

**4. circummūniti** : 'closed in.' How lit. ? **oppidō** : 131, a.

**6. vineis āctis** : 342, a. **aggere exstrūctō** : '(and) after an embankment had been built up.' 341. **turrim** : 14, b, and 342, b.

**7. irridēre** : 'they (the Atuatuci) scoffed.' 182. **increpitāre vōcibus** : 'made taunting remarks.' How lit. ? 182, and 131, a.



bus, quod tanta mächinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur : *Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae* (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudīne corporum suōrum brevītās nostra contemptuī est) *tantī oneris turrīm in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōfiderent ?*



Figure 90. — Site of the stronghold at Namur.

Caesar's camp was probably on the hill at the left.

8. *quod*, etc. : 'because (as they said) so big an engine,' etc. 214, *b*. B. 286, 1 ; A. 592, 3 ; H. 588, II. *ā tantō spatiō* : 'so far off' ; i.e., 'at' (lit. 'from') 'so great a distance.' Cf. N. to chap. 7, l. 10.

9. *Quibusnam . . . cōfiderent* : 213, *b*, and 212, *c*, (6). *Quibusnam* : 48, *c*. *vīribus* : 18, *a*. *hominēs*, etc. : contemptuous, '(being) men of so small size,' 'such little chaps.' 91, *b*, and 100, *a*.

10. *nam . . . est* : 214, *c*. *Gallis, contemptuī* : both datives, but trans. 'held in contempt by the Gauls.' How lit.?

12. *oneris* : 'weight.' 13, *c*. The Atuatuaci seem to have thought that the Romans would have to pick up the tower in order to move it. *cōfiderent* : 217, *a*. B. 315, 1 ; A. 586 ; H. 642, 3.

aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis, eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

*They make a treacherous attack ; are defeated, and sold into slavery.*

**33.** Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod, dēditione factā, nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eis, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs

11. **acervī**: 'heaps.'

12. **cēlātā**: 'concealed.'

13. **patefactis**: 'thrown open.' **pāce sunt ūsi**: 'they kept quiet'; lit. 'they enjoyed peace.'

**33.** 1. **Sub**: 'Towards.' **vesperum**: 7, *b*.

2. **nē**, etc.: 196, *a*. **quam**: as in chap. 32, l. 6. **ā**: as in chap. 31, l. 14.

3. **ante initō** — **cōnsiliō**: 'having previously formed a plot.' How lit.?

4. **praesidia dēductūrōs** [esse]: 'would withdraw the outposts' from the redoubts and the line of circumvallation, where the Roman sentries kept watch.

5. **dēnique**: 'at any rate.' **indiligentius**: 'less carefully.' 153, *a*. **servātūrōs** [esse]: 'would maintain (them)' the outposts.

6. **cum**: with *armīs*, and understood with *scūtis*, l. 7.

7. **cortice**: 'bark.' 98, *b*. **vīminibus intextis**: '(of) wicker-work,' lit. 'withes interwoven.' Cf. Fig. 48, p. 60.

8. **pellibus**: 'with skins.' The Atuatuca had driven cattle into the enclosure; cf. chap. 29, l. 4.

9. **tertiā vigiliā**: 242, *c*. **arduis**: 'steep.' 30.

ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō 10  
ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significā-  
tiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursum est, pugnā-  
tumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā viris fortibus in  
extrēmā spē salūtis iniquō locō, contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō 15  
turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā vir-  
tūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occisis ad hominum  
milibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt.

Postrīdiē eius diēi refrāctis portīs, cum iam dēfenderet  
nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, sectiōnem eius 20

10. **ascēsus**, etc.: implies that at the point attacked the Roman line of contravallation was on ground somewhat above the level of the plain, so that the enemy, after rushing down from the town, must advance up a height in order to storm the Roman fortifications. **cōpiis**: 187, b.

11. **ēruptiōnem**: 'sortie.'

12. **ignibus**: 'by fire-signals.' See Plate IV, 2. **significātiōne**: 'warning.'

13. **eō**: to the point attacked. **concursum est**: 'the soldiers rushed.' 73, d.

14. **ut**, etc.: 'as brave men were bound to fight.' **in . . . salū-  
tis**: cf. chap. 27, l. 7, and N.

15. **iniquō locō**: 145, c. **vāllō**: the Roman line of contravallation.

16. **turribus**: stationed at intervals along the line of contravallation, as on the rampart around a camp; cf. Plate IX, 6. **iacerent**: 194, a. B. 283, 2; A. 535; H. 591, 1. **ūnā**: 'alone.'

17. **ad**: adverb, 'about,' modifying *quattuor* (III).

19. **diēi**: 94, c. **refrāctis**: 'had been burst in.' How lit.? **cum**: 184, a. **iam**: 'any longer.'

20. **intrōmissis**: 'had been sent in,' lit. 'into,' the stronghold. **sectiōnem universam**: 'the booty in one sale,' at auction; in such cases the buyers who joined in the bid afterwards divided up the purchase among themselves for resale in smaller lots. Such wholesale buyers accompanied Roman armies. In this instance the booty included not only everything that the captured Atuatuca had, but the people themselves, who were sold into slavery.

oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, qui ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium LIII.

### Successful Closing of the Year. 34, 35

*Maritime states in northwestern Gaul submit to Publius Crassus.*

**34.** Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

*German tribes offer submission; the army goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.*

**35.** His rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem

21. vēndidit: 'sold.'

22. capitum: 'of persons'; cf. I, chap. 29, l. 6, and N. LIII: *quīnquāgintā trium.* 38, b, and 36. Some of the Atuatuci, however, were still left in the country; cf. V, 38, ll. 1-2, and 39, ll. 9-11.

34. 1. P.: 19, a. Crassō: see Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2).

legiōne ūnā: the 7th, which must have started for western Gaul soon after the battle of the Sambre.

2. Venetōs: N. to III, 8, l. 3. Venellōs: for the location of the Venelli and other peoples mentioned, see Map at the end of this volume. Coriosolitas: (Fig. 91). 19, f.



Figure 91. — Coin of the Coriosolites. Reverse, human-headed horse. Obverse, a fanciful head.

3. quae: 164, c. maritimae: 'maritime.'

4. Ōceanum: the Atlantic; see Vocab.

5. 3. incolerent: 220. B. 324, 1; A. 593; H. 652.

mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgatiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam, Illyricumque properābat, inītā proximā aestāte ad sē reverti iussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae hīs locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs 10 ex litteris Caesaris diērum xv supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

4. **sē**: feminine, taking the gender of *nātiōnibus*; hence *datūrās* and *factūrās* (sc. *esse*) are feminine.

5. **pollicērentur**: 193, a. **Quās**: 167. **Italiam**: here including Cisalpine Gaul. 283, b.

6. **Illyricum**: 298.

8. **Carnutēs**, etc.: 282. See Map. **quaeque civitatēs**: *et in eas civitatēs quae*. 165, c.

10. **hiberna**: 335, b. **eāsque**: 233, b.

11. **ex**: 'after receipt of.' **litteris**: 'dispatches' to the Roman Senate, reporting his victories. **supplicatiō**: 'solemn thanksgiving,' services of prayer to avert misfortune as well as giving of thanks to the gods for victory. Usually such services lasted only three or four days; the longest previous 'thanksgiving' was of twelve days, decreed after Pompey had brought to a close the war with Mithridates. **quod**: sc. *id*, referring to the fact stated in the preceding clause.

12. **nūlli**: = *nēmini*. 12, d.



## COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS

### Operations in the Alps. 1-6

*Caesar stations Galba with a small force in the Alps.*

1. CUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam, cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs, in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsue- rant, patefieri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrarētur, uti in hīs locis legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret.

1. 1. **proficisceretur**: Caesar 'was starting' on the trip referred to in II, chap. 35, l. 10. 185, c. The events of Book III, as a whole, belong to the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, narrated in chapters 1-6, took place in the latter part of the autumn and early winter of B.C. 57. **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul. 283, b. **Ser.** = *Servium*. 19, a. **Galbam**: see Vocab. under Galba, (1).

2. **XII**: *duodecimā*. 38, b. Caesar had eight legions, numbered 7 to 14 inclusive. **Nantuātēs**: 282. Locate the states mentioned on Map 1.

4. **summās Alpēs**: 'the highest part of the Alps.' 152, a.

5. **mittendi**: 230, (1). **iter**: 'route' to Italy, over the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, where the famous hospice is. By this route Napoleon I in May, 1800, made his venturesome "crossing of the Alps," with an army of 36,000 men. (Fig. 92.)

6. **periculō**: the danger arose not so much from the precipitous way over the mountains as from the hostility of the natives. These lived in part by plundering and by levying tolls on the goods of traders going over the pass. **portōriis**: N. to I, 18, l. 9.

7. **patefieri**: 'be kept open'; the subject is *iter*. 70, c, and 223, a. **Huic**: Galba. **opus esse**: 'that it was necessary.' **arbitrarētur**: *arbitrāberis* in the unattracted form. 220.

8. **legiōnem**, etc.: the 12th legion had suffered so severely in the

*Galba locates his winter quarters in Octodurus.*

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis<sup>10</sup> obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in



Figure 92. — The Great St. Bernard Pass and the famous hospice.

battle of the Sambre (II, chap. 25), that Caesar would hardly have stationed it at so difficult a post if he had anticipated serious opposition. **collocaret**: 199, *a*.

9. **proeliis**, etc.: the ablatives absolute indicate successive events, and should be rendered by clauses. First come the engagements, then the taking of strongholds; later, the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages; finally, the ratification of peace.

11. **cohortes duas**: how many men? 307, *c*. in **Nantuatibus**: perhaps where St. Maurice now is, on the upper Rhone. 282.

Nantuātib<sup>us</sup> collocāre et ipse, cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus, in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus, positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā  
 15 plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram, vacuam ab hīs relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.

*There is a sudden uprising of the mountaineers.*

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque, quī impendērent, ā  
 5 maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.

12. *reliquis cohortibus*: doubtless the two strongest cohorts were detailed for the separate post; how many men the remaining eight contained it is difficult to estimate.

13. *vico*: how different from *oppidum*? *Octodūrus*: near Martigny; see Map I, and Fig. 93.

14. *qui*: 167. *valle*: 'valley.' *nōn magnā*: 239, *g*. *adiectā*: 'adjoining.' How lit.?

16. *flūmine*: the Dranse, which flows into the Rhone, from the south, at the point where the Rhone turns northwest toward Lake Geneva. *alteram . . . alteram*: 171, *b*.

17. *vacuam*: predicative, after *relictam*; Galba expelled the inhabitants from the part of Octodurus which was on the west bank of the Dranse, and turned the dwellings into winter quarters. 88, *b*.

2. 1. *hibernōrum*: 'of the (life in) winter quarters.' *trānsissent*: 68, *b*, and 185, *c*.

2. *eo*: to the part of the town used for winter quarters. *iussisset*: *sc. Galba*. *explorātōrēs*: 327.

3. *concesserat*: 214, *c*. The Gauls occupied the part of the town on the east bank.

4. *impendērent*: 214, *a*. *ā*: with the ablative of agent because of the idea of *hominēs* in *multitudō*. 126, *b*.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat, ut subitō Gallī belli renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri existimābant.

Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum



Figure 93. — Valley of the Dranse.

View near Martigny. The tower belongs to the ruined castle of Batiaz.

6. **Id**: explained by the clause *ut . . . caperent*. 203, (4). **renovandi**: 'of renewing.' 230, (1).

8. **neque eam plēnissimam**: 'and that lacking its full strength'; the reason is explained by the following ablatives absolute. How lit. ? 161, c.

9. **complūribus**: sc. *militibus*. **singillatim**: 'as individuals,' not sent out as cohorts or maniples. **commeātūs**, etc.: 230, (1).

11. **tum etiam**: *deinde* is more common as correlative with *primum*. 237, b.

12. **ipsi**: *Galli*. **dēcurrerent**: 'should rush down.'

15. **quod . . . dolēbant**: subject of *Accēdēbat*; 'There was the

nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possēsiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

*Galba, calling a council, decides not to retreat.*

3. His nūntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod, dēditōne factā obsidibusque acceptis, nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, sententiās exquirere coepit.

Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentini periculī praeter

further consideration that,' etc. 198, *b*. B. 299, 1; A. 572; H. 588, 3. **abstrāctōs**: 'had been taken away.' 89, *c*, and 223, *a*, (2).

16. **nōmine**: 'under the name.' 136, *b*. **itinerum causā**: cf. chap. 1, ll. 5-7.

17. **culmina**: 'summits,' commanding the passes. 12, *e*.

18. **prōvinciae**: 107, *b*, and 290. **adiungere**: 'annex.' **sibi persuāsum habēbant**, etc.: 'were convinced that the Romans were trying,' lit. 'had persuaded themselves,' etc. 229, *a*. B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*. **persuāsum**: predicative, in agreement with the infinitive clause *Rōmānōs . . . cōnārī*, object of *habēbant*. 148, *d*.

3. 1. **neque . . . neque**: 'not . . . and not.' **opus hibernōrum, mūnitiōēs**: 'the work on the winter quarters,' in general, including as the most important item, 'the fortifications' (chap. 1, l. 18). Cf. I, 31, l. 48, *exempla cruciātūsque*, and *N*.

2. **plēnē**: 'quite.' **perfectae**: agreement? 172, *b*. **dē**: 'for.'

3. **satis esset prōvisum**: 'sufficient provision had been made.'

4. **nihil . . . timendum** [esse]: 'that he had no occasion to fear hostilities.' How lit.? 73, *e*.

5. **cōnsiliō**: doubtless of the centurions; cf. I, 40, ll. 1-2. **sententiās exquirere**: 'to ask for opinions' regarding the best course to pursue.

7. **Quō**: 167. **tantum repentini periculī**: 'so great danger suddenly;' lit. 'so much of sudden danger.' 97, *b*. **praeter opiniōnem**: 'contrary to expectation.'

opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīri neque commeātūs supportāri, interclūsīs 10 itineribus, possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīri 15 et castra dēfendere.

*The mountaineers, superior in numbers, make a furious attack.*

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus, quās cōstituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere.

Nostri primō integris viribus fortiter repugnāre neque sūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quae-

9. **complēta** [esse]: participle here used as a predicate adjective. 221, b. **neque subsidiō venīri**: sc. *posset* 'and help could not come.' How lit.? 73, d, and 112, a.

10. **interclūsīs itineribus**: 144, b, (3).

12. **eius modī**: 'of the following purport.' 100, a. **ut**, etc.: 203, (4).

13. **isdem**: 45. **itineribus**: 134, a. **pervēnissent**: 220.

14. **ad salūtem**: 'to (a place of) safety.' **Maiōri partī placuit**: 'the majority decided.' 73, c.

15. **ad extrēmum**: 'to the last.' 154, a. **ēventum experīri**: 'to await the outcome.'

4. 1. **Brevi spatiō interiectō**: 'After a brief interval.' How lit.? **ut**: 'so that.' **rēbus** — **collocandis**: 230, (2). **cōstituissent**: 220.

3. **dēcurrere, conicere**: 182. B. 335; A. 463; H. 610.

4. **gaesa**: Gallic 'javelins.' 349, and Fig. 40.

5. **integris**: 'unimpaired.' 22, f, and 80, b; also, 135, a. **neque ūllum tēlum**: 'and no missile.'

6. **frūstrā**: 'in vain.' **ex locō superiōre**: the rampart of the camp; chap. I, l. 18. **quaecumque**: 50, a, and 192.

cumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris viribus succēdēbant. Quārum rērum ā nostris propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius loci, ubi cōstiterat, relinquiendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

*The Romans, forced to extremities, resolve upon a sally.*

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn solum virēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī

7. dēfēnsōribus : 127, a, and 74, a.

8. eō : = *in eam partem*; 'to that part they rushed.' ferre : 182. hōc superārī : 'on this account they were at a disadvantage.' How lit.? 135, a.

9. dēfessi : '(when) exhausted.' proeliō : 127, a. alii : '(and) others.' 238, a.

10. viribus : 143, a. succēdēbant : 'were taking their places.' rērum : dependent on nihil. 97, a.

11. nōn modo : trans. as if *nōn modo nōn*; 'not only not to one (who was) exhausted,' i.e. one on the Roman side. 236, d, and 154, a. B. 343, 2, a; A. 288; H. 495.

12. excēdendī : dependent on facultās. sauciō : 'to one (who was) wounded.' 154, a, and 237, c. loci — relinquiendī : 230, (1).

13. suī recipiendī : 'of looking after himself.'

5. 1. Cum iam — pugnārētur : 'When fighting had been going on.' 175, f, and 73, d. hōris : 129, a.

3. ācrius : 34, a. languidiōribus nostris : 'as our men became weaker.' How lit.? 144, b, (3). vāllum scindere : 'to destroy the rampart' by pulling up the palisades along the outer edge.'

4. fossās : plural because the parts of the moat on the four sides are thought of as separate trenches.

5. ad extrēmum cāsum : 'to the last crisis.' P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīli centuriō : II, 25, l. 8, and Note. 315, b.

pili centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī, ēruptiōne factā, extrēmum auxilium experirentur.

10

Itaque, convocātis centuriōnibus, celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post, datō signō, ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

15

*The Romans win; but Galba withdraws to the Province.*

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō, omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī, quid fieret, neque suī

6. **proeliō**: 147, *b*. **Nervicō**: 'with the Nervians,' we should say. The battle had taken place not long before this time; see II, chapters 19-28.

7. **Volusēnus**: the suggestion was evidently made first by Baculus to his ranking officer, Volusēnus, who hurried with him to Galba. **tribūnus**: 314.

8. **cōsiliī magnī**: 'of excellent judgment.' 100, *a*.

9. **ūnam spem**: 'that the only hope.' **factā**: 'by making,' etc. 144, *b*, (6). **extrēmum auxilium**: 'the last resource.'

11. **centuriōnibus**: how many ordinarily in 8 cohorts? 315, *b*. **militēs certiōrēs facit**: 'he directed the soldiers,' through the centurions.

12. **intermitterent proelium**: 'to stop fighting.' 216. B. 316; A. 588; H. 642. **tantum modo**, etc.: 'only to parry,' with their shields, 'the missiles hurled' by the enemy, in order to save their strength for the sortie.

14. **ērumperent**: 'to burst forth,' suddenly assuming the offensive. 216.

6. 1. **Quod**, etc.: *id, quod facere iussī sunt, faciunt*. 180, *c*. **portis**: 134, *a*, and 334, *a*. B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476.

2. **suī colligendī**: 'of collecting their forces,' scattered on all sides of the camp, in order to resist the four mass attacks launched from the four gates. 154, *b*. B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.



colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita, commūtātā fortūnā, eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, s undique circumventōs intercipiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque  
 10 exūtis, sē in castra mūnitiōnēque suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmenti comēātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vici

4. **eōs** — **circumventōs intercipiunt**: 'they surrounded and slew those.' 228, a. **potiundōrum**: 64, b.

5. **ex**, etc.; i.e. *plūs tertiā parte, ex amplius trigintā hominum mīlibus, numerō barbarōrum* ('of natives') *quem ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, interfectā*. **ex**: 97, d.

6. **amplius, plūs**: 129, b. **numerum**: 165, b. It seems hardly credible that a force of more than 30,000 men, attacking under conditions very favorable to themselves, could have been beaten off even by a Roman force less than one tenth as large; perhaps the estimate of the number of the enemy was exaggerated.

7. **plūs tertiā parte interfectā**: on this basis the Roman soldiers on the average accounted for three to five Gauls apiece.

8. **locis superiōribus**: the heights round about; see chap. 1, l. 15.

9. **fūsis**: 'routed.' **armisque exūtis**: 'and bereft of their arms,' which they dropped in their hasty flight. **armis**: 127, a.

11. **Quō proeliō factō**: 'After this battle.' How lit.? **saepius**: 'too often.' 163, a.

12. **aliō — cōnsiliō**: 'with one design,' stated in chap. 1, ll. 5-8. 158, and 171, c.

13. **aliis occurrisset rēbus**: '(but) that he had found conditions different,' implying the impossibility of carrying out the original design with the force at his disposal.

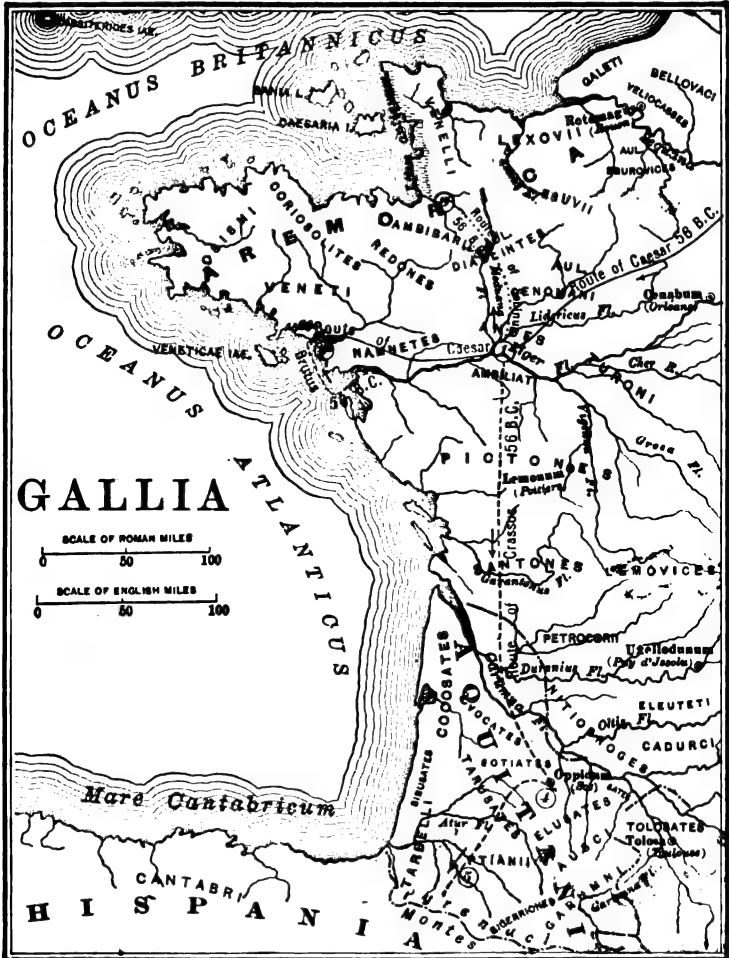
14. **eius vici**: Octodurus, of which the part assigned to the natives, as well as that occupied by the Romans (chap. 1, ll. 15-18), was now burned.

# MAP 9.

OPERATIONS OF THE YEAR 56 B.C.

Book III, 7-27

To face page 198



## EXPLANATION

1. Base whence Caesar sent Sabinus north and Crassus south.
2. Sea-fight with the Venetans (chap. 13-15).
3. Battle of Sabinus (17-19).
4. Battle of Crassus with the Sotiates (20-22).
5. Final victory of Crassus (23-26).



aedificiis incēnsis, in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac, nūllō<sup>15</sup> hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs, perdūxit, ibique hiemāvit.

### Campaign against the Venetans. 7-16

*Crassus, wintering near the Ocean, sends to the nearest states for grain.*

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est.

Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne VII proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in fīnitimās civitatēs frū-<sup>10</sup>menti commeātūsque petendī causā dimisit; quō in numerō

16. iter dēmorante: 'delaying his march.' 61, a, (1). in-columem: predicative, 'in safety.'

7. 1. cum: 'although.' 187. omnibus dē causis: with *exīstimāret*, 'had every reason to think.' How lit.?

2. pācātam: sc. *esse*. Galliam: 287, b. superātis Belgis: II, chapters 1-33. expulsis Germanis: I, chapters 30-54.

3. Sedūnis: of the Alpine tribes the Seduni, as the most important, are alone mentioned. initā hieme: 'at the beginning of winter.' How lit.? 68, b, and 144, b, (1).

4. Illyricum: 298, and 255. See II, 35, l. 6.

6. coörtum est: 'broke out.' How lit.? 61, b.

7. haec: 'as follows.' 161, a. adulēscēns: cf. I, 52, l. 16, and N., and Vocab. under *Crassus*, (2).

8. VII: *septimā*. 38, b. proximus, etc.: 'very near the Ocean'; lit. 'very near the sea,' more specifically designated as 'the Ocean' to distinguish it from the Mediterranean sea. 123, b.

9. praefectōs: 'subsidiary officers'; cf. I, 39, l. 10, and N.

10. tribūnōs militum: 214. complūrēs: with *civitatēs*.

est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Venetans detain his representatives and lead a revolt.*

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum reliquōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris atque apertō, paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnēs ferē, quī eō mari ūti cōsuērunt, habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Siliī atque Velānii, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant.

13. **Coriosolitas**: 19, f., and 282. Locate, on Map 9, the peoples mentioned.

8. 1. **Huius civitātis**: of the Venetans. **omnis ōrae**, etc.: trans. as if *omnium civitatum ōrae maritimae eārum regiōnum*.

2. **et . . . et** (l. 4) . . . **et** (l. 5): 233, d.

3. **in — nāvigāre**: 'to make the voyage to.' The Venetans had developed an extensive carrying business between Gaul and Britain; Britain was less advanced than Gaul in most respects but was regarded as the center of Druidism (VI, 13, ll. 34-37). **Britanniam**: 294. **cōsuērunt**: 64, a, (2), and 176, b.

4. **scientiā**: 142, a. **rērum nauticārum**, 'nautical matters.' **antecēdunt**: 'excel.'

5. **in**, etc.: 'since the violence of the open sea is great, with harbors few and far between.' How lit.?

6. **omnēs**: object of *habent*. **eō mari**: the modern Bay of Biscay. 16, b, and 131, c.

7. **vectigālēs**: 'subject to tribute'; predicative. 115, a, b. On account of the violence of the sea, and the fewness of the harbors, navigators were obliged to take refuge in the harbors of the Venetans, who mulcted them in tolls. **Ab his**, etc.: 'These took the first step by detaining,' etc. How lit.?

8. **per eōs**: as an exchange. 123, a. **suōs**, etc.: *sē recuperātūrōs [esse] suōs obsidēs*.

9. **dedissent**: 214, a. **recuperātūrōs [esse]**: 'would get back.'

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum <sup>10</sup>  
 subita et repentina cōnsilia — eādē dē causā Trebiūm  
 Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter, missis lēgātīs, per  
 suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil, nisi commūnī cōn-  
 siliō, āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātū-  
 rōs; reliquāsque civitatēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertāte, quam <sup>15</sup>  
 ā maiōribus accēperint, permanēre, quam Rōmānōrum ser-  
 vitūtem perferre mālīnt. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad  
 suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad



Figure 94. — View of the Loire river, with the town of Decize and its medieval castle.

10. **Hōrum auctōritāte**: 'by their example.' **ut**, etc.: 'consistently with the practice of the Gauls, to form plans suddenly and without reflection.' How lit.? The fickleness of the Gauls is more than once alluded to by Caesar; see N. to chap. 19, l. 20.

13. **inter sē**: 159. **nihil**, etc.: *sē nihil āctūrōs esse . . . lātūrōs esse*. 213, b.

14. **eundem**: 45. **exitum**: 'issue.'

15. **reliquās**: 171, a. **ut . . . mālīnt**: 199, a, and 71.

16. **accēperint**: 220. **quam**: '(rather) than.'

P. Crassum mittunt: *sī velit suās recuperāre, obsidēs sibi*  
 20 *remittat.*

*Caesar orders ships built — the coast states prepare for war.*

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet.  
 5 His rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item civitatēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admisisent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs  
 10 sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculi bellum parāre et maximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,

19. *sī*, etc.: in the direct form, *sī vīs tuās recuperāre, obsidēs nobīs remitte.* 218, (1), a, and 216.

9. 2. *longius*: 'too far away.' Caesar was probably in Cisalpine Gaul; for the revolt of the Venetans came to a head in the early spring, and in April of 56 B.C. Caesar met Pompey and Crassus at Luca. 256, and 153, a. *nāvēs longās*: 'galleys.' 346, a. *interim*: 'meanwhile,' pending his return to the army. *aedificārī*: 'be built.'

3. *Ligerī*: 18, e. See Maps 9 and 10. *quod*, etc.: explains why, although the Venetans were strong on the ocean, the ships were ordered built on the Loire (Fig. 94). *rēmigēs*: 'rowers.'

4. *nautās*: 'sailors.' *gubernātōrēs*: 'steersmen,' who managed the rudders. 346, b. and 84. The fighting on these ships was to be done by legionaries (chap. 14, l. 9).

5. *cum*, etc.: 'as soon as the season of the year permitted.' How lit.? 185, b. Caesar probably rejoined the army in May.

8. *in sē . . . admisisent*: 'they had committed'; *sē* refers to the subject of *admisisent*. How lit.? 204, (3).

9. *lēgātōs . . . coniectōs* [esse]: explains *quantum . . . admisisent*; 'in that envoys had been,' etc. *quod nōmen*: 'a title which,' the title of envoy or ambassador. 165, b. *ad*: 'among.'

10. *sānctum inviolātumque*: 'sacred and inviolable.'

prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant.

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem 13 impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter inopiam frūmenti diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; *ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nā- 20 vium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse*; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vastissimō atque apertissimō Oceanō perspiciebant.

His initis cōsiliis, oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in 25 oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās

13. **instituunt**: 175, b.    **hōc**: 'on this account.'    **spē**: 138.  
**multum cōfidēbant**: 'had much confidence.' 118, b.    **nātūrā**: 135, a.

15. **Pedestria**, etc.: 'that the land routes were cut by inlets of the sea,' making progress of an army difficult; see Map 10.    **nāvigātiōnem**: 'navigation,' by the Romans; sc. *esse*. 81.

16. **inscientiam locōrum**: 'lack of knowledge of the country.'

17. **neque**: trans. as if *et* . . . *nōn*.

18. **ac . . . nōvisse**: a brief summary in indirect discourse; 'and (they believed) that,' etc. 212, c, (6).

19. **ut**: with *iam*, 'even granting that.'    **acciderent**: subjunctive also in direct discourse. 191, b. B. 308; A. 527, a; H. 586, II.  
**plūrimum posse**: cf. I, 3, l. 21 and N.

21. **ubi**: = *in quibus*.    **gestūrī essent**: 63.

22. **insulās**: 'islands.'    **longē aliam . . . atque**: 'far different . . . from what it was.' 233, c.

23. **in conclūsō mari**: 'on a land-locked sea,' referring to the Mediterranean.    **vastissimō, apertissimō**: 'illimitable, unconfined.' How lit. ?

25. **frūmenta**: unthreshed 'grain,' just ripening in the fields, hurriedly cut and transported into the towns; N. to I, 16, l. 3. The time was near the beginning of July.



possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs  
 30 asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eas regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

*Caesar considers it equally important to check this uprising and to distribute his forces so as to prevent revolts elsewhere.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprà ostendimus, sed multa tamen Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīo facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primis nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur.

Itaque cum intellexeret, omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem ser-

28. **Sociōs**: 'as allies.' 115, a. **Osismōs**, etc.: locate these states on the Map at the end of this volume.

30. **auxilia**, etc.: help furnished to his enemies by the Britons gave Caesar a pretext later for invading the island (IV, chap. 20).

10. 1. **Erant**: 90, a. **suprà**: chap. 9.

3. **iniūria**, etc.: 'the wrong done by the detention of Roman knights,' referring to the envoys (chap. 8, ll. 7-12), who, as the other tribunes in Caesar's army, had the rank of *equites*. 228, b. B. 337, 6; A. 497; H. 636, 4. **equitum**: 96. **rebellīo**: 'renewal of war.'

4. **dēfectiō**: 'revolting.' **datīs obsidibus**: 144, b, (5).

5. **nē . . . arbitrarentur**: the clause is in the same construction as *iniūria, rebellīo*, etc., in apposition with *multa*; '(the fear) that,' etc. 202. **hāc parte neglēctā**: 'if this part (of Gaul),' etc. 144, b, (4).

6. **idem**: subject accusative with *licēre*; 'the same course.' *licēre*: 73, b.

7. **cum**: 184, a. **novīs rēbus studēre**: 'were eager for a change of rule.' 105.

8. **mōbiliter**: 'easily.' **excitārī**: 'were stirred.'

9. **nātūrā libertātī studēre**: 'have a natural desire for liberty.' How lit.?

vitūtis ōdisse, prius quam plūrēs civitatēs cōspirārent, 10  
partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvīt.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī  
flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat,  
Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat,  
Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, si  
per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōentur, prohibeat. 5

P. Crassum, cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō  
numerō equitātūs, in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his  
nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs  
coniungantur.

Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in 10  
Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum  
distinendam cūret.

D. Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās

10. **ōdisse**: 72, *b*, and 176, *b*. **prius quam**: with the subjunc-  
tive also in direct discourse. 189, *b*. **cōspirārent**: 'should  
league together.'

11. **partiendum** [esse], etc.: 'that he ought to divide up his army  
and distribute (it) more widely,' in order to hold all parts of the coun-  
try in check. 73, *e*.

11. 1. **Trēverōs**: see Map at the end of the volume. 282.  
**proximī**: here followed by the dative. 108, *a*.

3. **adeat**: sc. *ut*. 200, *a*, and 199, *a*. **in officiō**: 'in allegiance.'

4. **auxiliō**: 112, *a*. **arcessitī** [esse]: 148, *e*.

5. **cōentur**: 220. B. 324; A. 593; H. 652.

6. **XII**: *duodecim*; Crassus had a legion and two cohorts of infantry.

7. **Aquitāniam**: 287, *c*.

8. **Galliam**: Celtic Gaul. 287, *b*. As the Aquitanians were of  
different stock, their relations with their Celtic neighbors seem ordi-  
narily not to have been intimate.

11. **quī . . . cūret**: 'in order to keep their forces at a distance.'  
How lit. ? 193, *a*.

12. **distinendam**: 79, *d*, and 229, *b*. B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; H. 622.

13. **D.**: 19, *a*. **classī**: 'fleet,' built on the Loire (chap. 9,  
ll. 2-5). **Galliois nāvibus**: used as supply ships.

ex Pictōnibus et Santōnis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus con-  
 15 venire iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum possit, in Venetōs  
 proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

*The capture of strongholds of the Venetans proves fruitless.*

**12.** Erant eius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut, posita in  
 extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque, neque pedibus aditum  
 habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod bis



Figure 95. — A tongue of land, on the Venetan coast.

This tongue of land, projecting westward, is seen across the inlet as one looks northward from Le Croisic (Map 10).

**15. possit:** Indicative in the direct form.

**16. eō:** in *Venetōs*. **cōpiis:** 137, *b*.

**12. 1. eius modi . . . ut:** 'of such a character that.' 100, *b*, and 197, *b*. **sitūs:** 'locations.'

**2. extrēmīs,** etc.: 'at the ends of tongues of land,' relatively low, 'and promontories,' high points of land, projecting into the sea. (Fig. 95). 152, *a*. **pedibus:** 'by land.' How lit.? 131, *a*. **aditum:** i.e. for an attacking army.

**3. cum,** etc.: 'when the tide had rushed in from the deep.' How lit.? **quod:** 'which,' referring to the preceding clause; hence neuter. **bis,** etc.: On July 1 in Quiberon Bay the sun rises at 4.12 and sets at 7.48, while the tide reaches high-water mark at 5 A.M. and 5.25 P.M.; there are thus two tides in the one day. The interval between the forenoon and afternoon tides, in general, is less than the length of the summer days when Caesar was in this region; hence

accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod, rursus minuenta aestū, nāvēs in vadis afflicterentur. 5

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quandō, magnitudine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis, suis fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, omnia sua 10

Caesar's form of statement, as Professor Oliphant has shown (*American Journal of Philology*, 1916, p. 297).

4. **accidit**: 'happened.' **hōrārū**: the long 'hours,' of the summer days. 242, a. **spatiō**: 'within the period.' 147, c. **rursus minuenta aestū**: 'at ebb tide.' How lit.?

5. **afflicterentur**: 'would be stranded,' in case they should be over the shallow places when the tide went out.

6. **utrāque rē**: 'by both conditions,' both the rising and the ebbing of the tide. How lit.?

7-11. **Explanation**: Starting from the nearest point of land which at high tide remained above water, the Romans prolonged toward the town two massive parallel embankments, or dikes, working whenever the tide would allow, since at high tide the inclosed space would be under water. Having prolonged their dikes almost to the city, quickly, when the tide was low, they filled in the last stretch and shut out the water from both sides, thus giving a dry avenue of approach between the dikes from the adjacent country to the town. But by the time they were ready to attack, using each embankment as an *agger* (341), the townspeople had already taken ship and departed "bag and baggage." See Map 10, A.

7. **quandō**: 'at any time.' **operis**: = *mūnitio*num, explained by what follows. **superāti**: agrees with *oppidant*, understood as subject of *coeperant*. **extrūsō mari**: 'when the sea had been shut out.' 144, b, (2).

8. **aggere ac mōlibus**: 'by massive dikes'; hendiadys. How lit.? 238, d. B. 374, 4; A. 640; H. 751, 3, N. 1. **hīs**, etc.: 'when these had been built up to a level with the walls.' **moenibus**: 107, a.

9. **fortūnis**: dative. 109, a.

10. **appulsō**: 'having brought up' to the threatened town. How lit.? **cuius rei**: instead of *quārū*; we should say, 'of which they had the greatest abundance.' How lit.?

dēportābant sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant.

Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat  
 15 vastō atque apertō marī, magnis aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

*Advantages of the sea-going Venetan ships over Roman galleys.*

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrarum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae, atque item puppēs, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam

11. **dēportābant**: repeated action, 'they would carry off.' 175, *d.*

12. **Isdem**: 45. **opportunitātibus**: 'advantages.' **dēfendēbant**: 175, *d.*

14. **tempestātibus dētīnēbantur**: 'were held back,' in the Loire (chap. 9, ll. 1-4), 'by storms.' **summa . . . difficultās**: 353, *d.*

15. **vastō**, etc.: 144, *b*, (3). There is an implied contrast with the more sheltered and almost tideless waters of the Mediterranean. **rārīs ac prope nūllīs**: 'infrequent, in fact, almost entirely lacking.' How lit.?

13. 1. **Namque ipsōrum**: closely connected with the preceding: 'And (the Venetans have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters) for their.' **hunc**: 'the following.'

2. **armatae**: 'equipped.' **carinae**: 'keels'; sc. *erant*. **aliquantō plāniōrēs**: 'considerably flatter,' so that the ships were more flat-bottomed than the Roman galleys. **quam**: 'than (those).'

3. **quō**: 193, *b*. **dēcessum**: 'the ebbing.'

4. **prōrae**, etc.: 'the prows were very high'; sc. *erant* in this and the following clauses. **puppēs**: 'sterns.'

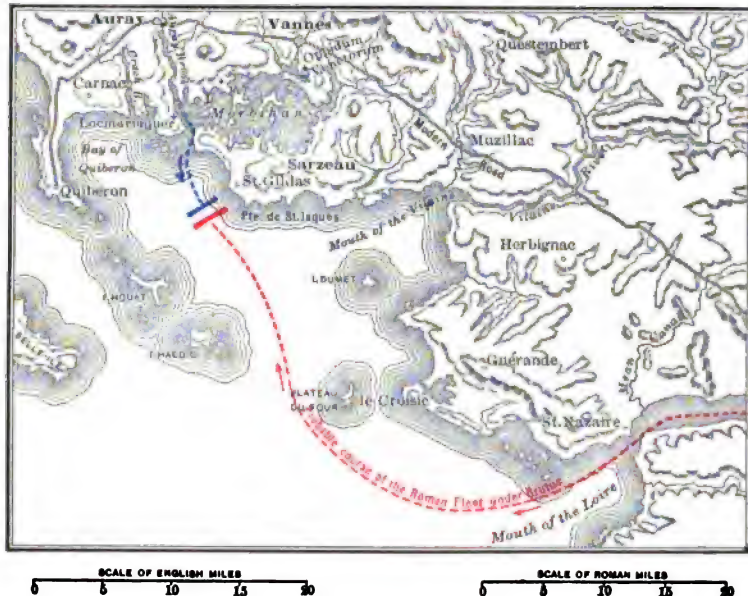
5. **fluctuum**: 'of sea-waves.' **accommodatae**: 'adapted.'

6. **tōtae**: 'wholly.' 151. **rōbore**: 'oak.' 13, *f*. **quamvis**: 'no matter how great,' lit. 'any you please.' 49, *a*. **vim et contumēliam**: 'violence and buffeting.' 230, (3).

# MAP 10 SEA-FIGHT WITH THE VENETANS

Book III, 7-16

To face page 208



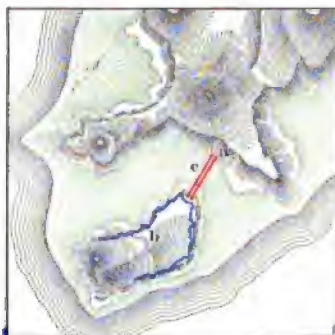
## EXPLANATION

Caesar's fleet was built on the Loire (Liger, chap. 9, ll. 2-4), and placed in command of Brutus. From the mouth of the Loire it followed a northerly course till it met the Venetan fleet (chap. 14).

## MAP 10, A

### OPERATIONS AGAINST A VENETAN TOWN (III, 12)

- a. Mainland.
- b. Stronghold, *oppidum*, surrounded by water at high tide.
- c. Parallel dikes over land submerged except at low tide. The dikes, or embankments, were high enough to keep out the water at high tide.



SCALE OF MILES  
0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1 1 ¼ 1 ½  
MAP 10, A



perferendam; trānstra, ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus, cōfixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter linī inopiam atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Oceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regi vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum his nāvibus nostrae classī eius modi congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum illis essent aptiōra et

7. **trānstra**, etc.: 'the cross-timbers, (made) of beams a foot thick' (lit. 'in height'), were 'fastened (to the sides) with iron bolts of the thickness of a thumb.' **trabibus**: 17, c.

8. **crassitudine**: 143, a. **ancorae**: 'anchors,' like those in use to-day.

9. **prō**: 'instead of.' **fūnibus**: 'ropes.' As the Romans used only cables of rope, the chain cables of the Venetans seemed noteworthy. **revinctae**: were 'held.' **pellēs**: 'hides.' **vēlis**: 'sails' of canvas.

10. **alūtae tenuiter cōfectae**: 'leather dressed thin.' **sive** . . . **sive**: 235, a, b. **linī**: 'flax.'

11. **eius**: **linī**. **eō**: 'on this account,' explained by *quod* (l. 12) . . . **arbitrābantur**. 135, a. **quod**: relative, refers to the thought of the following *quod*-clause. **vērī**: 108, b.

12. **impetūs**: 'gusts.'

13. **tanta onera nāvium**: trans. 'so heavy vessels.' How lit.? **onera**: 13, c. **regi**: 'be managed.' **vēlis**: 'with (canvas) sails.'

15. **nostrae classī congressus**: 'the encounter of our fleet.' How lit.? 111. **eius modī**: 'such.' How lit.? 100, b.

16. **erat**: 'would be.' **ūnā**: 'only.' **pulsū rēmōrum**: 'propulsion by oars,' which gave to the galley a rapidity and freedom of movement comparable with that of a modern steamship. **reliqua**: 'other conditions.' 154, a.

17. **prō**: 'in regard to.' **illis**: the Venetan ships. **aptiōra**: 'better suited.'



accommodātiōra. Neque enim his nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur.

Accēdēbat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōsisterent tūtius et, ab aestū relictæ, nihil saxa et cautēs  
25 timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*Caesar's fleet, commanded by Brutus, arrives; desperate sea-fight.*

**14.** Complūribus expugnātis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit, frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captis oppidis, reprimi neque eis nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem.

18. **his**: 105. **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs*. **rōstrō**: 'by ramming,' lit. 'with the beak.' 346, c, and 347. **nocēre**: 'do injury.'

19. **firmitūdō**: 'solidity.'

20. **tēlum adigēbātur**: 'could a missile be thrown up' on to them. The galleys were built relatively low, and light.

21. **cōpulis continēbantur**: 'could they be held with grappling hooks,' thrown out from a galley to catch and hold a hostile ship so that the Romans could board it. 347.

22. **Accēdēbat, ut**: 'There was the further advantage, that.' 203, (1). **saevire**: 'to blow a gale.' How lit.? **sē ventō dedissent**: 'they ran before the wind.' 220. How lit.?

23. **ferrent**: 'they would weather.' **cōsisterent**: 'would ride.'

24. **tūtius**: 34, b. **aestū**: personified, hence with *ab*. 126, b. **relictæ**: the Venetan ships, being flat-bottomed, when left by the tide settled easily and safely on the ground. **nihil**: = emphatic *nōn*. 118, c. B. 176, 2, b; A. 390, d, and N. 2; H. 416, 2.

25. **nāvibus**: 110, and 239, h. B. 189, 1; A. 374; H. 431. **cāsus**, etc.: 'the occurrence was greatly to be feared.' 229, c.

**14. 3. captis**, etc.: 'could be checked by taking the towns.' 144, b, (6). **eis nocērī posse**: 'harm could be done them.' 106, b, and 105. **expectandam**: in full, *sibi expectandam esse*.

Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostris adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praecerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quāam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen hās altitudō puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre

5. **Quae**: 167. **convēnit**: 'arrived.'

6. **CCXX**: *ducentae et viginti*. 38, *b*, and 36. **parātissimae**: 'fully ready.' 153, *a*. **genere**: 133.

7. **armōrum**: 'of equipment,' including everything needed to make a ship ready for action. **ōrnātissimae**: 'completely fitted out.' **ex portū**, etc.: the sea-fight probably took place in the bay of Quiberon, Caesar's army being drawn up in sight on the heights of St. Gildas. The courses of the fleets may be traced on Map 10.

8. **neque . . . cōnstābat**: 'and it was not quite clear to Brutus,' etc. After the Gallic war Brutus, as an official of the Roman mint, struck a coin commemorating Gallic victories (Fig. 96). 73, *c*.

9. **tribūnis**, etc.: the legionaries on the Roman galleys were under their regular officers. How many galleys participated in the battle we do not know.

10. **quid agerent**: 'what they were to do.' 217, *b*. B. 315, 3; A. 587; H. 642, 3.

11. **Rōstrō**: as in chap. 13, l. 18. **nocērī**: sc. *eis*, the enemy's ships.

12. **turribus excitātis**: 'even though the towers had been erected' on the Roman ships. 144, *b*, (5), and 346, *d*.

13. **ex**: 'on.' 126, *c*. **Inferiōre locō**: the decks and towers of the Roman vessels.



Figure 96. — Coin of Decimus Brutus.

Silver, denarius; struck in 49 or 48 B.C. Oval Gallic shield and round shield between two Gallic war trumpets; inscription, ALBINUS BRUTI [ILIUS], 'Albinus, son of Brutus.'

Decimus Brutus was named Albinus after A. Postumius Albinus, who adopted him.

locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis  
15 gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, falcēs  
praeacūtāe insertae affixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili fōrmā  
mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs, qui antemnās ad mālōs  
dēstinābant, comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigio rēmīs  
20 incitātō, praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis, antemnae ne-  
cessariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs  
in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, his ēreptis, omnis ūsus  
nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri  
25 militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū  
Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

14. **adigī possent**: cf. chap. 13, l. 20, and N. **missa**: sc. *tēla*.

15. **gravius**: 'with greater force,' because thrown from a considera-  
ble height down upon the decks of the galleys.

16. **magnō ūsuī**: 'very useful.' How lit.? 112, a. **praepa-  
rāta**: 'made ready beforehand.' **falcēs**, etc.: 'hooks sharpened at  
the ends, let into (the ends of) long poles and fastened to (them).'  
**falcēs**: 17, c, and 91, a.

17. **nōn**, etc.: = *fōrmā nōn absimili fōrmāe mūrālium falcium*,  
'of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks.' 143, a, and 238, b.

18. **mūrālium falcium**: used on long poles to pull stones out of  
walls. 342, c. **His**: 181, a. **cum**: 'whenever.' 186, a. B. 288,  
B. 3; H. 601, 4. **antemnās**: 'sail-yards.' **mālōs**: 'masts.'

19. **dēstinābant**: 'fastened.' **adducti erant**: 'had been  
pulled taut.' **nāvigio incitātō**: 'when the ship,' that had caught its  
hook in the enemy's rigging, 'was driven forward,' etc. 144, b, (2).

20. **praerumpēbantur**: 'they were severed.' **abscisis**: 'cut off.'

21. **concidēbant**: 'fell down.' **cum**: 184, a. **Gallicis nā-  
vibus**: 'in the case of the Gallic ships'; dative. 109, a. B. 188, I, N.;  
A. 376; H. 425, 4, N.

22. **armāmentis**: 'rigging'; they had no oars. **ūsus**: 'control.'

23. **ūnō**: trans. as if *eodem*.

24. **Reliquum**: emphatic position. 363, d. **certāmen**: 'con-  
test.' **erat positum in**: 'depended on.' How lit.?

26. **rēs**: 'the struggle.' **gerēbātur**: force of the imperfect?

paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

*Roman courage, ingenuity, and good luck win the day.*

**15.** Dēiectis, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus

**27. paulō fortius:** 'unusually brave,' lit. 'a little braver (than usual).' **factum:** 'deed.' **latēre:** 'be unobserved.' **collēs,** etc.: heights of St. Gildas; see Map 10.

**28. dēspectus in mare:** 'view over the sea,' *de* implying a view from an elevation.

**15. 1. cum:** 186, *a.* **singulās,** etc.: 'two or' (lit. 'and') 'three galleys had surrounded a single ship' of the enemy. We are not to suppose that Caesar's fleet outnumbered that of the Venetans; the Romans simply concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time, instead of engaging the whole line of the enemy at once. **singulās:** sc. *nāvēs*. **bīnae:** 36.

**3. trāscendere in:** 'to board,' in the nautical sense. **contendēbant:** 'would hasten.' 175, *d.* B. 260, 2; A. 470; H. 534, 3. **Quod:** trans. as if *et hoc*.

**5. ei auxilium:** 'no remedy,' i.e. counter-tactic, 'was discovered against this,' the boarding of their vessels by the legionaries.

**5-6. Historical Significance:** "Thus was this naval battle," says Mommsen (History of Rome, Vol. V, p. 57) — "so far as historical knowledge reaches, the earliest fought on the Atlantic Ocean — just like the engagement at Mylae two hundred years before, notwithstanding the most unfavorable circumstances, decided in favor of the Romans by a lucky invention suggested by necessity."

**7. quō:** trans. as if *in quam*. **ventus ferēbat:** 'the wind was blowing,' we should say.

ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostri cōnsectāti expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

*The captive Venetans are sold into slavery as a warning.*

**16.** Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsiliū aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubique fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dē-

8. **malacia ac tranquillitās**: 'calm and stillness.' **exstitit**: 'ensued'; in the latter part of summer a morning wind in these regions is usually followed by a calm in the afternoon. 176, a, and 173, a.

9. **nōn possent**: relying entirely on sails, the Venetans were helpless when the wind failed them. **rēs**: 'circumstance.'

10. **singulās**: 'one by one'; sc. *nāves*.

11. **cōnsectāti**: 'pursuing.' 226, c. **numerō**: 97, d.

12. **interventū**: 'because of the coming.' 135, a. **cum**: 'although.' 187. **hōrā quartā**: a little before ten o'clock by our reckoning; the battle took place toward the end of summer, before the autumnal equinox. 242, a, and b.

16. 2. **cum . . . tum**: 186, b. B. 290, 2; H. 657, 4, N. 1.

3. **graviōris**: 'more advanced.' **aliquid . . . dignitātis**: 'any weight of judgment or influence.' 97, b.

4. **fuit**: 90, a. **ad**: to the country of the Venetans. **nāvium quod**: i.e. *id nāvium, quod eis ubique fuerat*, 'all the ships that they had had anywhere.' 97, b.

5. **quibus**: including men as well as ships. **reliquis**: 'those who survived.' How lit.? **neque**, etc.: 'had (in mind) neither a place to which they might make their escape, nor any means by which they might defend,' etc. How lit.?

6. **reciperent**, etc.: indirect question; it would have the subjunctive also as a direct question. 217, b.

fenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque, omni senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēdidit.

### Expedition of Sabinus against the Venellans. 17-19

*Sabinus encamps in the country of the Venelli and pretends fear.*

**17.** Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eis cōpiis, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit.

His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperiū tenēbat

7. **suaque omnia**: 'and all they had.' How lit.

9. **eō . . . quō**: 'on this account . . . in order that.' 193, *b*. **gravius vindicandum** [esse]: 'that a severer punishment ought to be inflicted.' How lit.?

10. **in reliquum tempus**: 'for the future.' **iūs lēgātōrum**: 'the rights of ambassadors,' whose persons, from the beginning of civilized life, have been considered inviolable.

11. **omni**, etc.: 'killed all the senate and.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2), and 289, *b*. **sub corōnā**: 'into slavery'; lit. 'under the wreath,' referring to the wreath placed on the heads of captives sold at auction. We can hardly suppose that the entire population was sold into slavery; yet these maritime states were so reduced in strength that they afterwards gave Caesar no trouble.



Figure 97. — Venellan coin. Gold; reverse, fanciful lion turning its head toward a wheel.

**17. 1. Venetis**: 282. **geruntur**: trans. by a past tense. 190, *a*.

2. **eis cōpiis**: three legions, as related in chap. 11, ll. 10-12. **in finēs Venellōrum**: the probable route of Sabinus is shown on Map 9.

4. **Viridovix**: 19, *d*. **summam imperiū**: 'the chief command.' How lit.? Viridovix not only commanded the forces of the Venellans (Fig. 97) but was commander in chief of all the forces raised by the revolting states.

5 eārum omnium civitatum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulerci Eburovicēs Lexoviique, senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō  
10 undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī culturā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdis-  
15 set cotidiēque, prōductis cōpiīs, pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tēque opiniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam

5. **exercitus**: 'an army,' trained and equipped, as distinguished from **cōpiās**, 'forces' hastily levied and organized.

6. **hīs paucīs diēbus**: 'within the few days' after the arrival of Sabinus. 147, a, and 160, d.

7. **Aulerci Eburovicēs**: one name; see Map 9.

8. **auctōrēs**: 'favorers'; why nominative? 221, b. **nōlēbant**: plural because *senātū* is thought of as *senātoribus*. 173, b. **portās clausērunt**: the shutting of city gates on the approach of an army was a virtual declaration of war.

10. **perditōrum**: 'desperate.' **latrōnum**: 'bandits.'

12. **agrī culturā**: 'farming.' **sēvocābat**: lured away. How lit.? 79, d.

13. **omnibus rēbus**: 'in all respects.' 142, a. **loco**: 145, c. **castris**: 151, a. The camp of Sabinus was probably near the small river Sée, in the southern part of the Venellan territory (Map 9).

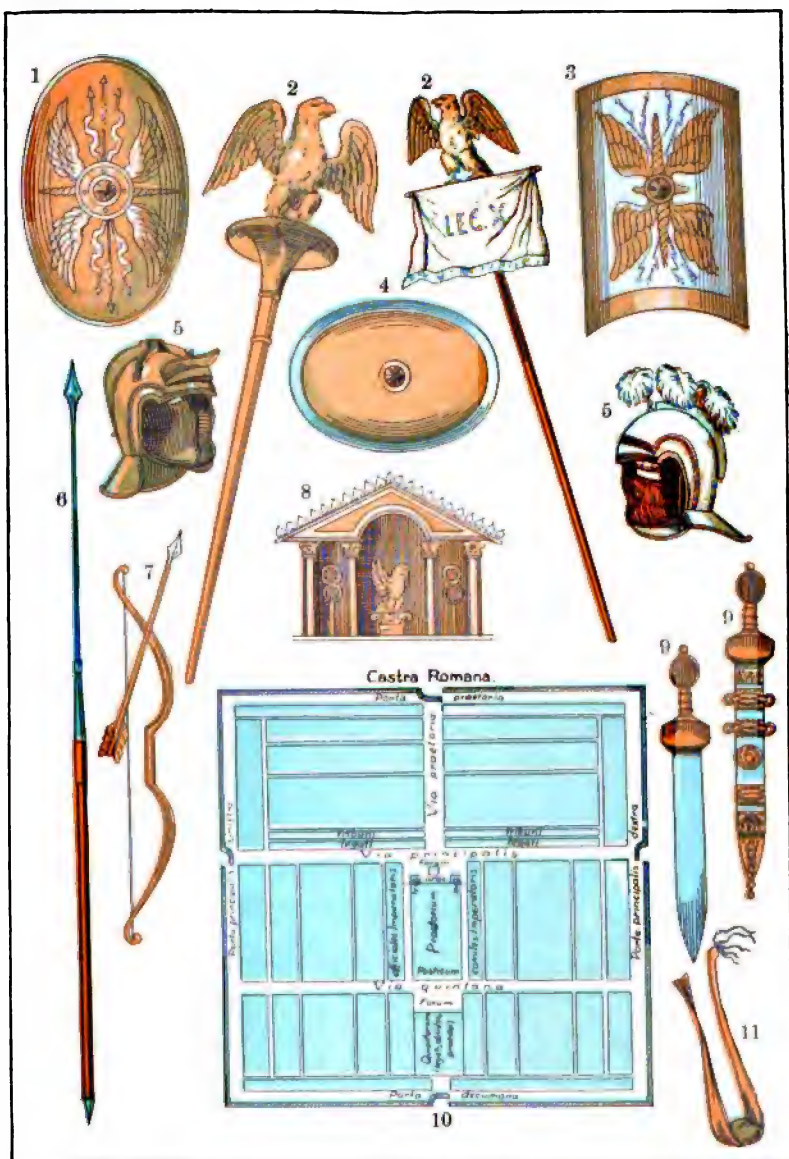
14. **cum**: 187. **duorum**, etc.: '(only) two miles away.' **spatiō**: 147, c.

16. **ut**: 'so that.' **hostibus**: 'in the eyes of the enemy.' 109, a. B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N. **contemptiōnem**: 'contempt.'

17. **nōn nihil**: 'rather sharply.' How lit.? 118, c.

18. **carperētur**: 'was criticized.' **opiniōnem**: 'impression.'

81. **praebuit**: 'produced.'



1. Oval Shield, *clipeus*. 2, 2. Eagle of the Legion. 3. Oblong Shield, *scutum*.
4. Light Shield, *parma*. 5, 5. Cavalry Helmet, *cassis*. 6. Pike, *pilum*.
7. Bow, *arcus*; Arrow, *sagitta*. 8. Shrine for the Eagle, *sacellum*.
- 9, 9. Sword, *gladius*; Scabbard, *vagina*. 10. Roman Camp.
11. Sling, *funda*.





ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, prae-<sup>20</sup>sertim eō absente, quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existimābat.

*By a ruse he leads the enemy to attack him.*

**18.** Hāc cōfirmātā opiniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis, quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fieri velit, ēdocet.

Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quā proximā nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, con-<sup>10</sup>clāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmit- tendam nōn esse; ad castra irī oportēre.

19. Id: the holding of the Roman soldiers in camp.

21. eō absente, quī: 'in the absence of him (Caesar) who.' 144, b, (3). tenēret: 214, a. nisi: i.e. nisi dīmīcāret. aequō locō: 'advantageous position'; sc. datō. 144, b, (2).

22. dīmīcandum [esse], etc.: 'a lieutenant ought not,' etc. 110.

18. 2. callidum: 'tactful.' ex eis: 97, d.

5. velit, premātur (l. 7): 204, (2). ēdocet: 'explained.' 175, b.

6. Quī, Quod (l. 10): 167. prō perfugā: 'as if a deserter.' vēnit: 188, a.

8. neque, etc.: neque longius abesse proximā nocte, quā . . . proficiscātur, 'and that no later than the following night Sabinus would stealthily lead,' etc. 201, b. B. 298; A. 558; H. 595, 1.

11. occāsiōnem, etc.: 'the chance to score a notable success.' How lit.?

12. Irī, etc.: 'that they ought to attack the camp.' How lit.? 68, d, and 73, d. B. 138, IV; A. 208, d; H. 302, 6.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia  
 15 cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt.

His rēbus adductī, nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum,  
 20 arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā, laeti, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

*He surprises them, and wins a decisive victory.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. 'Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatīi ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt.

14. **superiōrum**: 'preceding.' **cunctātiō**: 'inaction.' 91, a, and 74, b. **cōfirmātiō**: 'the assurance.'

16. **quod . . . orēdunt**: appositive of *rēs*. 198, b, and 175, c. **ferē**: 'as a rule.' Caesar's keen insight into human nature was an important factor in his success.

18. **prius — quam — sit concessum**: 'until permission had been granted.' 189, b. B. 292; H. 605, 1.

21. **laeti**: 'joyfully.' 151. **ut explōrātā victōriā**: 'as if victory were (already) assured.' **sarmentis**: 'brushwood,' cut from trees. **virgultis**: 'fascines,' bundles of shoots and bushes tied together for convenience in handling. **collēctis**: 'they gathered and.' How lit.?

22. **quibus . . . compleant**: trans. as if *ut eis . . . compleant*. 193, a, and 131, a.

19. 1. **Locus**: 'site.' **ab imō**: 'from the bottom' of the hill. 154, a.

2. **passūs**: 118, a. **Hūc**: up the slope to the camp. **magnō cursū**: 'at full speed.'

3. **quam minimum spatīi**: 'as little time as possible.' 97, b, and 153, c.

Sabinus, suōs hortātus, cupientibus signum dat. Im-  
peditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subito  
duābus portis ēruptionem fieri iubet. Factum est oppor-  
tūnitāte loci, hostium īnsientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte  
militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum  
quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga ver-  
terent. Quōs impeditōs integris viribus milites nostri cōn-  
secūtī, magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs  
equitēs cōnsecatī, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquē-  
runt.

Sic, ūnō tempore, et dē nāvāli pugnā Sabinus et dē  
Sabīnī victoriā Caesar certior factus est, civitatēsque  
omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella  
suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic  
mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās  
mēns eōrum est.

20

5. **hortātus**: N. to I, 25, l. 3. 226, c. **cupientibus**: sc. *els*.

7. **duābus portis**: sc. *castrōrum*; probably the gates on the right and left sides of the camp. 334, a, and 134, a. **Factum est**: 'the result was.' How lit.? **opportūnitāte**: 135, a.

8. **īnsentia**: 'lack of skill.' **dēfatigātiōne**: 'exhaustion.'

10. **ferrent**: sc. *hostēs*. 203, (1). **ac**: 'but.' 234, b.

11. **viribus**: 135, a, and 18, a. **cōnsecūtī**: 226, c.

12. **reliquōs**: 'the rest' of the Gauls not slain by the legionaries.

13. **equitēs**: = *equitēs nostri*. **paucōs**: '(only) a few.' 154, a.

17. **Titūriō**: for the full name see chap. 11, l. 10. 19, b. **ut**: 'just as.' The subjugation of these states was now complete; the submission reported the previous year (II. 34) had been only nominal.

18. **alacer**: 'impetuous.' 24. **prōptus**: 'ready.' **animus**: 'temperament.'

19. **mollis**: 'yielding.' **resistēns**: adjective; with *minimē*, 'not at all capable of resistance.' Caesar again comments on the fickleness of the Gauls (cf. III. 8, ll. 10-11, and 10, ll. 7-8; IV, 5, ll. 5-13). 'At the beginning of a battle,' says Livy, 'the fighting of the Gauls is more than that of men; at the end, less than that of women.'

20. **mēns**: 'character.'

### Conquest of Aquitania by Crassus. 20-27

*Crassus, entering Aquitania, meets a force of the Sotiates.*

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, tertiā pars Galliae est, cum intellegeret, in eīs locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus, exercitū pulsō, interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul, impedimentis āmissis, profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat.

Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque com-

20. 1. **P. Crassus**: with twelve cohorts and a large body of cavalry (chap. 11, ll. 6-9). The cavalry would have been of no



Figure 98. — Cavalryman.

This cavalryman has helmet and spear; his sword is not shown.

use to Caesar in the campaign against the Venetans, but could be employed by Crassus to advantage in the mountainous regions of Aquitania (Fig. 98).

3. **cum**: 184, *a.* **gerendum**: sc. *esse*. **ubi**: = *in quibus*.

4. **paucis ante annis**: twenty-two years before, in 78 B.C. In that year Praeconinus, mentioned only here, and Lucius Manlius, proconsul of the Province, were routed by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius. Cf. chap. 23, l. 11, and N. 140.

5. **unde**: = *ē quibus*. **L.**: 19, *a.*

6. **nōn mediocrem**: 'no ordinary.' 239, *g.* **sibi**: 110.

parātō, multis praetereā viris fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae 10 his regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātis, in Sōtiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs, magnis cōpiis coāctis, equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī, primum equestre proelium commisērunt; deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque insequenti- 15 bus nostris, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī, nostrōs disiectōs adortī, proelium renovārunt.

*In a fierce fight he defeats them and captures their city.*

**21.** Pugnātum est diū atque ācritē, cum Sōtiātēs, superiōribus victōriis frētī, in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscentulō duce, efficere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō,

9. **viris fortibus**: soldiers who, having served their time (20 years), were living in the Province. 307, a. **Tolōsā**: 127, a, and 293, a.

11. **nōminātim**: requests to reënter the service were sent to the veterans individually. **ēvocātis**: 'called out.' **Sōtiātium**: see Map 9. 19, e.

13. **equitātū**: with *adortī*. 131, a. **quō**: 142, a. **plūrimum**: 118, b.

15. **equitātū**, etc.: apparently the flight of the cavalry was a ruse, to draw the pursuing Romans into the valley (*convalle*) where the infantry of the Sotiates was in ambush.

17. **Hī**: referring to *pedestrēs cōpiās* of l. 16. Why masculine?

21. 2. **victōriis**: 131, e. B. 218, 3; A. 431, a; H. 476, 1. **frētī**: 'relying on.'

3. **putārent**: 184, a. **quid . . . possent**: subject of *perspicī*. 204, (2).

4. **adulēscentulō duce**: 'with a youth as leader,' referring to Crassus. 144, b, (2).

Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistantibus, vineās turrēsq̄ ēgit.

Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem  
10 vineāsq̄ āctis (cuius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquitāni,  
propterea quod multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque  
sunt), ubi diligentīā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse  
intellēxerunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditi-  
ōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere  
15 iussi faciunt.

*Adiatunnus with a devoted band makes a sortie, is captured.*

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum intentis animīs,  
aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī tenē-

7. **ex itinere**: Vocab. under *iter*. **oppidum**: identified with Sos, the name of which is derived from *Sotiātes*. **oppugnāre**: Crassus tried to take the town by sudden storming. 340.

8. **Quibus**: 167. **vineās, turrēs**: appliances for besieging. 342, *a* and *b*.

9. **aliās . . . aliās**: 'at one time . . . at another.' **cuniculis**: 'tunnels,' underground passageways from which the Roman works could be undermined, so that they would fall in, or could be set on fire.

10. **cuius rei**: 'an operation,' the driving of tunnels, 'in which.' 102, and 165, *b*.

11. **locis**: 145, *c*. **aerāriae**: 'copper mines.' **sectūrae**: 'excavations,' probably open cuts from which iron ore was taken, as distinguished from the more elaborate tunnels of the copper mines. Remains of ancient copper and iron mines have been found in the region of the Sotiates, and mining operations are still carried on there.



Figure 99.—Coin of the Sotiates.

Bronze, struck by Adiatunnus. Obverse, REX ADIETUANUS EF; reverse, wolf with the word, SOTIOTA.

12. **sunt**: 90, *a*. **diligentiā**: 135, *a*. **his rēbus**: 'by these devices.' 131, *a*.

22. 1. **in**: 'upon.' **intentis animīs**: 'while the attention was fixed.' How lit.? 144, *b*, (2).

2. **Adiatunnus**: a coin has been found bearing his name (Fig. 99) in Roman letters; the spelling of the name is not the same as that

bat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illi 'solduriōs' appellant — quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum eis fruuntur, quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant (neque adhūc hominum memoriā reperi- tus est quisquam, qui, eō interfectō, cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret) — cum his Adiatunnus ērup- tiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis 10 sublātō, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūteretur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

*Proceeding further, Crassus finds a formidable army.*

**23.** Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari, commōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnītum paucis diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnātum cognō-

given by Caesar, and E F at the end may be for E—F[ilius], in imi- tation of Roman usage. **summam imperiī**: chap. 17, l. 4, and N.

3. **de**: *sescentis*. 38, b. **dēvōtis**: 'faithful followers.' **solduriōs**: 'the vow-beholden.' **quōrum**, etc.: 'the terms of whose association are these.' How lit.?

4. **utī . . . fruuntur**: 203, (4). **commodis**: 131, c. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477, 1.

5. **amicitiae**: dative. **dēdiderint**: 220. **si-quid**, etc.: cf. I, 18, l. 24, and N.

6. **vim**: 'violence.' **eundem cāsum unā**: 'the same fate at the same time.' **ferant**: sc. *ut*. **sibi**, etc.: cf. I, 4, l. 12, and N.

7. **adhūc**: 'up to this time.' **memoriā**: 147, b.

9. **recūsāret**: 194, a. B. 283, 2; A. 535, a; H. 591, 1. **his** = *dēvōtis* in l. 3, resuming the narrative interrupted by the long explanation.

12. **utī**, etc.: 199, a. **eādem**: 'the same' as the rest.

**23. 3. oppidum**: *oppidum Sotiātium*, chap. 21, l. 7. **manū**: the natural defenses of the town had been strengthened by fortifications.

4. **quibus**: 'after,' lit. 'within which.' 147, a. **ventum erat**: 73, d. **expugnātum**: sc. *esse*.



5 verant, lēgātōs quōque versus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī, quae surt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur.

Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā  
10 hominum multitudīne bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, qui ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.  
15 Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidiī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frumentum commeātumque sibi suppor-

5. quōque versus: 'in all directions.'

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: 94 d, and 296. finitimae: agrees with quae.

9. adventū: 147, b. magnā, etc.: to be taken closely with adventū. auctōritāte: 'prestige.'

10. hominum: 98, a. Ducēs: In predicate. 88, a.

11. Q. Sertōriō: a military leader of the popular party in the first Civil War at Rome, the war between Marius and Sulla. After the death of Marius, and Sulla's return to Rome, Sertorius organized an army in Spain, and held his own against the government for ten years, till at length he was treacherously assassinated, in 72 B.C. omnēs annōs: 'during all (those) years,' 82-72 B.C., when Sertorius had an army in the field.

13. loca capere: 'to choose locations' for encampment. The Aquitanians were in this respect in advance of the Gauls, who did not begin to fortify their camps till four years later (VII, 29, ll. 16-18).

15. Quod: 'Now — this (fact),' explained by the following infinitive clauses.

16. didūcī: 'spread out,' so as to cope at all points with the numerically superior enemy. hostem, etc.: '(but) that the enemy both roamed,' at will 'and.'

17. et: 'and (still).' castris: of the enemy. praesidiī: 87, b.

tāri, in diēs hostium numerum augēri, nōn cunctandum existimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium 20 dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

*Forming battle order, he waits, then attacks the enemy's camp.*

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsiliī caperent, expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrā- 3 bantur, obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victoriā potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et

19. *in diēs*: 'day by day.' *nōn cunctandum* [esse]: sc. *sibi*, 'that he ought not to delay.'

20. *quīn*, etc.: 'to fight a decisive battle.' How lit.? 201, *b*.

21. *omnēs idem sentīre*: 'that all held the same opinion.' 117, *a*.

24. 1. *duplici aciē*: not so strong as the customary triple line, but necessary here because the Roman force was so greatly outnumbered by the enemy. 337. *duplici*: 26, *a*.

2. *auxilia*: the auxiliary troops were usually stationed upon the wings; in this instance they were placed at the middle of the line because Crassus did not have confidence in them (chap. 25, ll. 3-4). *quid cōsiliī*: 'what plan.' 97, *b*.

3. *caperent*: 'would adopt.' 204, (2). *expectābat*: 'was waiting (to see).' *multitudinem*: estimated at 50,000 (chap. 26, l. 16).

4. *paucitātem*: the whole force under the command of Crassus (chap. 11, ll. 6-7; chap. 20, ll. 8-12) can hardly have amounted to 10,000 men.

5. *tūtō*: 34, *b*. *tūtius*: predicative with *esse*, of which the subject is *potiri* (l. 7). 222, *b*, and 148, *d*.

6. *obsessis viis*: 'having blocked the roads (and).' How lit.? 238, *a*.

8. *sēsē recipere*: 'to retreat.' *imeditōs*: sc. *eos* [Rōmānōs].

sub sarcinis infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc  
 10 cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis,  
 sēsē castris tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque  
 opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pug-  
 nandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur,  
 15 *exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quā ad castra irētur*,  
 cohortātus suōs, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra  
 contendit.

*He learns that the enemy's rear gate is not well guarded.*

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii, multis tēlis  
 coniectis, dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent,  
 auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus  
 cōnfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque sumministrandis et ad ag-  
 30 gerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem

9. *sarcinis*: 330. *infirmiorēs animō*: 'less courageous.' How  
 lit.? 142, a. *cōgitābant*: 'they were proposing.'

13. *opiniōne*: 'impression.' *hostēs*: nominative.

14. *omnium*: i.e. *omnium militum*. *vōcēs*: 'remarks.'

15. *exspectārī*, etc.: '(to the effect) that they ought not to delay  
 further to attack the camp.' How lit.? 213, b. *irētur*: 68, d,  
 73, d, and 201, b.

16. *omnibus cupientibus*: 144, b, (3). *ad hostium castra*: this  
 is the only attack of the Romans on a fortified camp recorded in the  
 Gallic War.

25. 1. *alii* . . . *alii*: *militēs Rōmāni*. 171, b. *fossās*: as in  
 chap. 5, l. 4.

2. *vāllō*: constructed in the Roman fashion (chap. 23, ll. 13-14).  
 127, a, and 333.

3. *auxiliārēs*: chap. 24, l. 2 and N. *quibus*: dative. 105.

4. *lapidibus* . . . *comportandis*: 'by bringing,' etc., ablatives of  
 means. 230, (4) *ad aggerem*: sc. *faciundum*. The rampart of  
 the enemy's camp was so high that the Romans began to make a sloping  
 mound up to it, like the *agger* used in besieging a town.

5. *caespitibus*: 'sods.' 10, d. *speciem* . . . *pugnantium*:  
 'the appearance and impression of combatants.'

pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs, circumitis hostium castris, Crassō renūntiāvērunt, nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre. 10

*Surprising the enemy by a rear attack, he routs them.*

26. Crassus, equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri velit, ostendit.

III, ut erat imperātum, ēductis eīs cohortibus, quae, praesidiō castris relictæ, intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre, itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eās, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque, his prōrutis, prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt, quam plānē ab his vidēri aut, quid rei gererētur, cognōsci posset. 10

7. *locō superiōre*: the top of the rampart of the camp; the camp lay in a plain (chap. 26, l. 16).

8. *circumitis hostium castris*: 'having ridden about the enemy's camp.' 334, a.

9. *ab decumānā portā*: 'on the side of the rear gate.' 126, c.

26. 1. *equitum praefectōs*: 309, c. ut, etc.: 199, a.

2. *suōs*: the cavalymen, on whom the success of the surprise depended.

4. *III*: the cavalry prefects, who guided cohorts of infantry to the rear of the enemy's camp. It is possible that the cavalymen took the legionaries with them on their horses in order to transport them quickly thither by a roundabout way. *praesidiō castris*: 112, b.

5. *intritæ*: 'unfatigued.' *longiōre*: 153, a.

7. *omnium*: *hostium*. *oculis*, etc.: 144, b, (2).

8. *eās* — *mūnitiōnēs*: at the rear of the enemy's camp; chap. 25, ll. 9-10.

9. *prōrutis*: 'demolished.' *prius* — *quam*: 189, b. *plānē*: 'clearly.'

10. *vidēri*: sc. *possent*, 'they could be seen.' *quid*, etc.: 'what was going on.' How lit.?

Tum vērō, clāmōre ab eā parte auditō, nostrī, redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs  
 15 dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōsectātus, ex mīlium L. numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*Crassus receives the submission of other Aquitanian states.*

27. Hāc auditā pugnā, maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumni, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs;  
 5 paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs, anni tempore cōfīsæ, quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

11. **clāmōre**, etc.: from the shouting at the rear of the camp the Romans fighting in front knew that the attack there was in progress, and were inspired to greater efforts.

12. **quod**: relative, refers to the thought in *redintegrātis viribus*; trans., with *plērumque*, 'as generally.'

14. **dēspērātis omnibus rēbus**: 'in utter despair.' How lit.? per: 'over.'

16. **apertissimīs**: 'wide and open.' Cf. 163, a. **campīs**: 145, c. **cōnsectātus**: 226, c.

17. **quæ**: subject accusative of *convēnisse*; the antecedent is *mīlium*.

18. **multā nocte**: 'late at night.' 162, a.

27. 2. **quō in numerō**: we should say 'in the number of whom,' 'among whom.'

3. **Tarbellī**, etc.: see Map 9. The Tarbelli have left a trace of their name in modern Tarbes; the Bigerriones, in Bagnères de Bigorre, a watering-place in the Pyrenees; the Elusates, in Eauze; the Ausci, in Auch; the Sibusates, in Saubusse.

5. **paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs**: i.e. *paucae nātiōnēs, quæ ultimæ erant*; 'a few remote peoples.' **tempore**: 135, a. B. 219, 1; A. 431; H. 476, 3.

**Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and the  
Menapii. 28, 29**

*Caesar proceeds against the Morini and the Menapii.*

**28.** Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod, omni Galliā pācātā, Morinī Menapiique supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant, maximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contēdissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, cōtinentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt.

---

**28. 1. Eōdem ferē tempore:** 'About the same time' that Crassus completed the reduction of Aquitania, perhaps in the latter part of August. The narrative of Caesar's own military operations, interrupted at chap. 16, is here resumed. **prope exācta:** 'almost over.'

**2. omni Galliā:** 'Gaul as a whole.'

**3. supererant, etc.:** 'were the only remaining (peoples) that were.' The Morini and Menapii were more backward than most of the Gauls, but were good fighters (Fig. 100). **essent:** 194, a. **neque:** trans. as if *et nōn*.

**4. arbitrātus:** 226, c.

**5. exercitum dūxit:** the distance traversed in the march from the sea-coast of the country of the Venetans could hardly have been less than 400 English miles. **quī:** 'but they.' 167. **longē, etc.:** 'in a way far different from that of the rest of the Gauls.' How lit.? 233, c.

**8. continentēs:** 'continuous.'

**9. habēbant:** coördinate with *intellegēbant*; sc. *quod*. **eō:** in *eads* [*silvās ac palūdēs*].



Figure 100. — Coin of the Morini.

Gold, but of rude workmanship, particularly in the fanciful representation of a horse appearing disjointed.

10 Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset  
 castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim visus  
 esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus  
 silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri  
 celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et,  
 15 complūribus interfectis, longius impeditiōribus locis secūti,  
 paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

*Hiding in forests, favored by rains, they elude him.*

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, uti

13. *ēvolāvērunt*: 'rushed forth.' How lit.?

15. *longius*: 'too far.' 153, a. *impendiōribus locis*: 'in places (that were) much obstructed' by trees and marshes.

29. 1. *deinceps*: 'without interruption.' *caedere*: 'to cut down.'

2. *quis*: 49, a. *imprudentibus*: 'off their guard.' 144, b, (2).

3. *māteriam*: 'timber,' here used of untrimmed trees.

4. *conversam*, etc.: 'turned toward the enemy and laid in order and built up as a rampart.' How lit.? As the Romans advanced they felled trees, and placed them, with the tops outwards, at either side of the space which they cleared, thus forming an effective defense against the lurking foe.

6. *cōfectō*: 'cleared.' *iam . . . tenērentur*: 'were already in our hands.' *pecus*: 'cattle.' 13, f. *extrēma impedimenta*: 'the rear of their baggage-train.' 152, a.

7. *ipsi*: the people themselves, as distinguished from their possessions; as Caesar cut his way through the woods, they retreated further and further into the forest fastnesses. 238, a.

opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrum  
diūtius sub pellibus milītēs continēri nōn possent. 10

Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicis aēdificiisque  
incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviis-  
que, reliquīs item civitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant,  
in hibernis collocāvit.

9. **continuātiōne**: 'continuation.' 135, *a*, and 81. **imbrum**:  
'rainstorms.' 15, *c*.

10. **sub pellibus**: 'in tents.' How lit.? 335, *a*.

12. **Auleroīs**, etc.: see Map 9. **Lexoviis**: chap. 11, ll. 10-12.

13. **reliquis civitātibus**: Venetans (chapters 12-16), Venellans  
(17-19), and Sotiates (20-27).



## COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS

### Destruction of the Usipetes and Tencteri. 1-15

*Pressed by the Suebi, the Usipetes and Tencteri enter Gaul.*

1. **EĀ**, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germāni et item Tencteri magnā cūm multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnū trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod, ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitāti, bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur.

*Customs, hardihood, and prowess of the Suebi.*

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex

1. **i**: **hieme**: 12, *a*, and 147, *a*. **quī**: in agreement not with the antecedent *hieme*, but with the predicate noun *annus*. 164, *c*. B. 250, 3; A. 306; H. 396, 2. **annus**: 55 B.C.; Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship January 1 of that year. The winter of 56-55 B.C., according to the calendar in use, fell wholly in 55 B.C.; for the old Roman calendar, which was still used, had fallen so far behind, that January 1 of the official year came on November 30 of the solar year. A corrected calendar was introduced later by Julius Caesar.

2. **cōsulibus**: 240, *a*. **Germānī**: appositive of both *Usipetēs* and *Tencteri*.

4. **quo**: = *in quod*. The horde of Usipetes and Tencteri is thought to have crossed the Rhine near Xanten or Emmerich, below Cologne, in the region where the Rhine receives the Lippe as tributary. (Map 11, and Fig. 101.)

5. **trānseundi**: 68, *b*. **Suēbis**: ancestors of the modern Swabians; see Map at the end of this volume. **annōs**: 118, *a*.

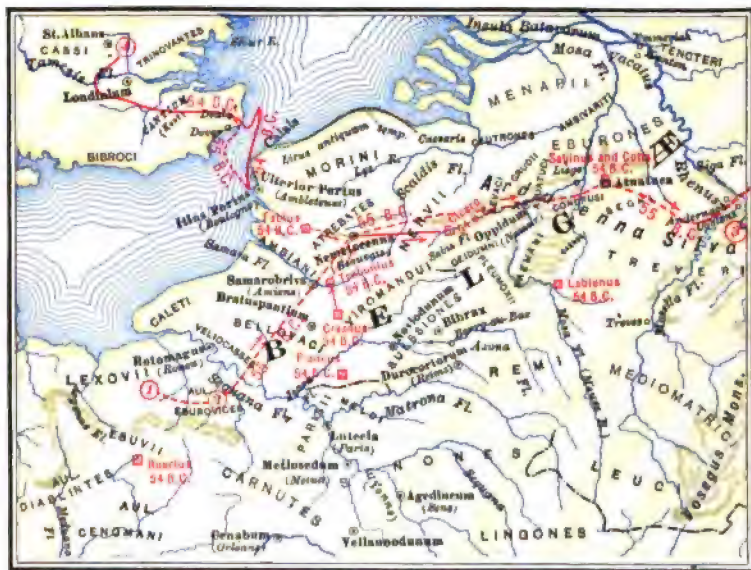
6. **premēbantur**: force of Imperfect? 175, *a*. **culturā**: 127, *a*.

# MAP II

## OPERATIONS OF 55 AND 54 B.C.

Books IV, V.

To face page 232



SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES  
0 50 100

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES  
0 50 100

### EXPLANATION

#### MAP II

- 1, 2. Winter quarters, 56-55 B.C. (III.29).
3. Expedition into Germany, 55 B.C. (IV. 19).
4. March into Britain, 54 B.C. (V. 21).

#### MAP II, A

Heavy broken red line, route of main fleet in 55 B.C. (IV. 23).

Light broken red lines, route of transports with cavalry, part driven back, part driven down the channel (IV. 28).

Unbroken red line, route of fleet in 54 B.C. (V. 8).



#### MAP II, A

Detail of Caesar's crossings to Britain.



quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus edūcunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rursus in vicem annō post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

15



Figure 101. — A typical landscape on the Lower Rhine.

9. **singula milia**: 'a thousand each'; if each clan furnished a thousand warriors, the armed force of the Swabians must have reached a total of 100,000 men. **bellandī**: 230, (1).

10. **ex finibus edūcunt**: invasion of neighboring territory is implied. **qui domi manserunt**: 'who (each year) have remained at home.'

11. **illōs**: 'the others,' those in the field. **hī, illi**: 'the latter,' 'the former,' 161, b. **in vicem**: 'in turn.' **annō**: 140.

12. **ratiō . . . belli**: 'the pursuit of war in theory and practice.' How lit.?

13. **intermittitur**: 173, a. **privāti ac sēparāti**: 'assigned to an individual and marked off' by boundaries; the land was held in common. **agrī nihil**: 'no land.' 97, a.

14. **annō**: 129, a. **remanēre**: 222, a.

15. **colendī causā**: 'in order to till the soil.' How lit.? Changes

Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venātiōnibus; quae res, et cibi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertate vitae, quod, a pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā assue-  
 20 facti, nihil omninō contrā voluntatē faciunt, et virēs alit et immāni corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōsuētūdinem adduxerunt, ut, locis frigidissimis, neque vestitūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et  
 25 laventur in flūminibus.

2. Mercatōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad

of location were doubtless made each year in order to obtain the best results from the primitive farming.

16. **frūmentō**: ablative of means; trans. with *vivunt*, 'they live on grain.' How lit.? **partem**: 118, c. **lacte**: 'milk.' 10, g.

17. **pecore**: 13, f. **multum sunt in**: 'devote much time to.' How lit.? **venātiōnibus**: 'hunting,' we should say. 92, a.

18. **quae res**: 'this circumstance,' their devotion to hunting. 167. **et cibi genere**: 'both by reason of the kind of food' obtained by hunting. 135, a.

19. **a pueris**: 'from childhood.' How lit.? **officiō**: ablative; 'habituated to no obligation or training.' How lit.? 139.

20. **et . . . et**: 233, a. **virēs**: 18, a.

21. **immāni**: 'huge.' **hominēs**: predicate accusative, with *eōs* understood as object of *efficit*. Cf. I, 39, l. 4 and N.

22. **in**, etc.: 'they have trained themselves to.' How lit.? **locis frigidissimis**: '(even) in the coldest places.' 145, c.

23. **neque vestitūs — quicquam**: 'no clothing.' How lit.? **neque . . . et**: 233, d. **habeant**: 203, (4). **quicquam**: 49, a.

25. **laventur**: 'to bathe.' How lit.? 174.

2. 1. **Mercatōribus**, etc.: *Mercatōribus est aditus (ad Suēbōs) magis eō* ('on this account'), *ut (eōs) habeant quibus vēndant (ea), quae bellō cēperint, quam*, etc.

2. **cēperint**: 220. [*eōs*] **quibus vēndant**: 'those to whom they may sell'; purchasers for their booty are meant. 194, a. **quam quō**: = *quam eō quod*, 'than for the reason that.' 183, c.

sē importāri dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Galli dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germāni importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent.

3. **dēsiderent**: 'desire.' **iūmentis**: with *ūtuntur* (131, c); emphatic by position. Horses alone are meant. 353, d.

4. **maximē dēlectantur**: 'have very great pleasure.' How lit.? **impēnsō pretiō**: 'at an extravagant price.' 141. **parant**: 'obtain.' So great was the interest of the Gauls in horses that they developed choice breeds, and Gallic horses were in demand in Rome. The horse figures prominently on Gallic coins (Fig. 102).

6. **dēfōrmia**: 'unsightly.'

7. **summī labōris**: '(capable) of the greatest endurance.' 100, b. B. 203, 5; A. 345; H. 447. **sint**: 203, (3).

8. **dēsiliunt**: 'leap down.' **pedibus**: 'on foot.' Why ablative?

9. **eōdem vēstigiō**: 'on the same spot' where they have been left. 145, c.

10. **cum ūsus est**: 'when it is necessary.' 186, a. **neque — quicquam**: 168.

11. **eōrum mōribus**: 'according to their view.' How lit.? 136, c. **inertius**: 'more unmanly.' **habētur**: 'is regarded.'

12. **ephippīis**: 'saddle-cloth,' padded, spread over the horse's back, and taking the place of our saddles. **quemvis**: 49, a. **ephippiātōrum**: 'riding with saddle-cloths.'

13. **quamvis pauci**: 'however few' in number.



Figure 102. — Coin of the Treverans.

Gold. Fanciful design on the obverse. Reverse: horse galloping, wheel, star; above, the letter V.

Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē  
 15 ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effē-  
 minārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē  
 ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī, magnum  
 numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque  
 ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum c agri vacāre  
 5 dicuntur.

Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās  
 ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ei paulō  
 sunt eiusdem generis cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod  
 Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant,  
 10 et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus assuē-  
 facti. Hōs cum Suēbī, multis saepe bellis experti, propter

14. Vinum, etc.: cf. II, 15, ll. 10-13. rē: 135, a.

15. remollēscere: 'lose their vigor.'

3. 1. Pūblicō: 'for a people.' How lit.? laudem: 88, a.  
 quam: 153, c.

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of *esse*. significārī: the subject is the  
 infinitive clause following.

4. ūnā ex parte: 'on one side.' The east side is meant, and the  
 country left vacant was probably Bohemia, from which the Boii had  
 withdrawn; cf. I, 5, ll. 12-14. The name *Boii* survives in "Bohemia."  
 Suēbīs: 282. mīlia: 118, a. c: 38, b, and 56. agri:  
 nominative plural. 172, d.

6. Ad alteram partem: 'On the opposite side,' toward the Rhine.  
 How lit.? fuit: the past tense implies that the condition described  
 no longer exists.

7. ut est captus Germānōrum: 'according to the German  
 standard.' How lit.?

8. eiusdem generis cēteris: i.e. than the rest of the Germans.  
 129, a. hūmāniōrēs: 'more civilized.'

9. multum ventitant: 'freely come and go.' 78, a.

10. sunt, etc.: 'have become familiar with,' etc. Caesar gives an  
 interesting comparison between Gallic and German customs later (VI,  
 chapters 11-24). 139.

11. experti: 'although they had tried.' How lit.? 227, a, (3).

amplitūdinem gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

*By strategy the Usipetes and Tencteri overcome the Menapii.*

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs suprà diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum tamen, agris expulsi et multis locis Germāniae triennium vagāti, ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hi ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed, tantae multitudinis aditū perterriti, ex eis aedificiis, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum, dispositis praesidiis, Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

III, omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstodiās

12. *gravitātem*: here 'power of resistance.' *civitātis*: of the Ubii. *finibus*: 127, a.

13. *vectigālēs*: predicate accusative; 'made (them) tributary.' 115, b. *multō*, etc.: 'caused them to become much less prominent and powerful.' How lit.?

4. 1. *eādē causā*: 'the same condition' of subjection to the Swabians.

2. *suprà*: chap. 1, ll. 1-6. *annōs*: 118, a.

3. *ad extrēmum*: 'finally.' *multis locis*: 'over many parts.' 145, c.

4. *triennium*: used instead of *trēs annōs*. *quās regiōnēs*: '(to) the districts which'; in full, *ad eas regiōnēs quās*. 165, c.

6. *aedificia*, *vicōs*: cf. Notes to I, 5, ll. 4, 5. *tantae multitudinis*: reported as 430,000 (chap. 15, l. 8).

7. *trāns flūmen*: on the east side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the point of view of one in Gaul.

8. *dēmigrāvērunt*: 'they moved away.'

9. *Germānōs trānsire*: 'the Germans from crossing.' 223, a, (3).

10. *III*: *Germāni*. *omnia experti*: 'having tried every expedient.' How lit.? *vī contendere*: 'to force a passage.'



Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et, trīduī viam prōgressī, rūsus revertērunt atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs  
 15 inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī, dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, prius quam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen  
 20 trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

*Caesar fears the effect of this victory upon the fickle Gauls.*

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit.

5 Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs, etiam invitōs, cōsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē

13. trīduī: trans. as if *trium dierum*. 100, a. viam: 117, b.

14. omni hōc itinere cōfectō: 'covered the entire distance — and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2). equitātū: 131, a. Insciōs: 'being in ignorance' of what the Germans were doing.

17. trāns: to the east side. remigrāverant: 'had moved back.'

19. fieret: 189, b. B. 292, 1, b; A. 551, b; H. 605, II.

21. partem: 118, a. eōrum: the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine. eōrum cōpiis: 'with their supplies.'

5. 1. infirmitātem: 'fickleness.' Cf. III, 19, II. 17–20, and Notes.

3. nihil hīs committendum [esse]: 'that no reliance whatever ought to be placed on them.' 73, c. nihil: = emphatic *nōn*. 118, c. B. 176, 2, b; A. 390, d, N. 2; H. 416, 2.

5. Est . . . cōgant: 'For it is a custom of the Gauls to compel,' etc. How lit.? cōnsuētūdinis: 100, b. utī cōgant, quærant, circumsistat, cōgat: explain *hōc*. 203, (4). viātōrēs: 'travelers,' on country roads.

6. invitōs: 151. cōgant: the subject is supplied in thought from *Gallicae*, as if it were *Gallōrum*. quid: 204, (2). eōrum: 97, a.

quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumstat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūtiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti, dē summīs saepe 10 rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.



Figure 103. — Falls of the Rhine at Schaffhausen.

- 
7. **quāque**: 49, *a*.      **audierit**: 64, *a*, (3).  
 8. **vulgus**: 6, *b*.      **quibusque**: = *quibus* (48, *b*) + *-que*.  
 9. **quāsque**: = *quās* + *-que*. 204, (2).      **prōnūtiāre**: '(them) to declare.'  
 10. **rēbus atque auditiōnibus**: 'reports and mere hearsay.' How lit.?      **summīs**: 'of the utmost importance.'  
 11. **quōrum**: 'of which they must immediately repent.' How lit.? 103, *c*. B. 209, 1; A. 354, *b*; H. 457.      **paenitēre**: subject of *est*. 73, *a*.  
 12. **incertis**: 'indefinite.'      **serviant**: 'they subject themselves.' 184, *a*.      **plērique**: 'most men.' when questioned.      **ad**, etc.: 'make up answers to gratify them.' How lit.?

*He resolves to fight the Usipetes and Tencteri.*

6. Quā cōnsuetūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōsuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit; missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; *omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab se fore parāta*. Quā spē adductī, Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant.

10 Principibus Galliae ēvocātis, Caesar ea, quae cognōverat, dissimulanda sibi existimāvīt eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis, equitatūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

6. 1. **graviōri**: 'quite serious,' in case the fickle Gauls and the Germans should unite against him. 153, a. **bellō**: 107, a.

2. **mātūrius**: 'earlier' in the spring, perhaps in the first part of April. 34, a. **exercitum**: divided up for winter quarters, among the Lexovii and other states, in the autumn of 56 B.C. (III, 29, ll. 12-14); now probably brought together again, near the lower Seine, in advance of Caesar's arrival.

3. **Eō**: *ad exercitum*. **fore**: 'would take place.'

4. **facta, missās, invitātōs**: sc. *esse*.

5. **utī**, etc.: i.e. to proceed toward the interior of Gaul in order to help drive the Romans out.

6. **omniaque**: 'and (with the promise) that everything.' 213, b. **postulāssent**: future perfect indicative in the direct form. 64, a, (1). **fore parāta**: a substitute for the future infinitive passive. **Quā spē**: 'by this prospect.' 167.

8. **Eburōnum, Condrūsōrum**, etc.: see Map at the end of the volume.

11. **dissimulanda** [esse]: 'ought to be kept secret.' **permulsis**: 'having soothed.' How lit.?

13. **cōstituit**: here not 'determined,' but 'announced his intention'; he had previously made up his mind.

*He marches near; the Germans parley, assert their rights in Gaul, and request lands.*

7. *Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō :*

*Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre, neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī.*

*Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eis ūtilēs esse amīcōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint : sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem*

7. 2. *iter facere* : 'to march.' *locīs* : 165, a.

3. *quibus* : 'these (places).' 167. *diērum* : 100, a. *iter* : 118, a, and 243, c.

4. *quōrum*, etc. : 'whose plea was as follows.' 161, a.

5. *Germānōs*, etc. : 'that the Germans did not take the lead in making war . . . and that, nevertheless, they would not refuse to fight.' How lit. ? *priōrēs* : 152, b.

6. *lacessantur* : present, used for greater vividness, where a past tense might have been expected. 218, (1), a. *contendant* : subjunctive also in the direct form. 201, a.

8. *quicumque* : 56, a. *resistere* : sc. *eīs* (105), as antecedent of *quicumque*. 79, d. *neque dēprecārī* : 'and not to beg for mercy.'

9-14. *Direct form* : *Haec tamen dicimus, (nōs) vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; sī (vōs Rōmānī) nostrā grātiā vultis, possumus vōbīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs ; vel nōbīs agrōs attribuite (216) vel patimīnī (nōs) eōs (agrōs) tenēre, quōs armīs possēdimus ; ūnīs Suēbīs concēdimus, quibus nē dī quidem immortalēs parēs esse possint (194, a) ; reliquus quidem in terris est nēmō, quem nōn superāre possimus.*

9. *dicere, vēnisse, posse, tenēre* (l. 11) : sc. *sē*. 215. *ēiectōs* : 'because they had been driven forth.' 227, a, (1). *domō* : 127, a.

12. *possēderint* : from *possidō*. *ūnīs* : 'alone.' 23, a. *dī* : 8, d, and 237, c. *concēdere* : 'admitted inferiority.'

*immortālēs parēs esse possent; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.*

*Caesar insists that they go back to Germany; parleying continues.*

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orātiōnis:

*Sibi nullam cum hīs amicitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī. nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ullōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī, tantae praesertim multitudinī, sine iniuriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniuriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et, rē dēliberātā, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem

13. **reliquum nēminem**: 'no one else.' 12, d. **in terrīs**: 'on earth'; why is *terrīs* plural?

8. 1. **visum est**: sc. *respondere*. Caesar does not give the whole of his answer, which perhaps followed the same line of argument as his statement to Ariovistus (I, chap. 45).

3. **Sibi**, etc.: in the direct form, *Mihi nulla cum vobīs amicitia esse potest*, 'I can have no friendly relations with you.' 111, and 212, c, (1).

4. **vērū**: consistent with what is true, 'a fair thing.' **quī**: for antecedent supply *eōs* as subject-accusative with *occupāre*.

5. **aliēnōs**: sc. *finēs*; 'of others.'

7. **possint**, etc.: the present tense is used for the sake of vividness. **licēre**: sc. *etsi*. 73, a, b.

8. **apud sē**: 'with him.' **Suēbōrum iniuriis**: chap. 3, ll. 6-14.

9. **hōc**, etc.: 'that he would order the Ubiī (to allow them to do) this,' lit. 'he would command this to the Ubiī.' Caesar could 'order' the Ubiī because he held hostages from that people (chap. 16, ll. 19-20).

9. 2. **post diem tertium**: 'in three days,' i.e. 'the next day but one'; in such expressions the Romans included the days with which a period began and ended.

3. **propius sē**: 123, b. **movēret**: 199, a.

Caesar ab sē impetrāri posse dixit. Cognōverat enim, magnam partem equitātūs ab eis, aliquot diēbus ante, praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectāri equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrātur.



Figure 104. — Along the Meuse, below Namur.

Women are unloading clay from a canal boat.

4. **ab**: 'from.'

5. **diēbus**: 140. B. 223; A. 424, *f*; H. 488, 1.

6. **frūmentandī causā**: 'to forage.' How lit.? **trāns**: 'across' to the west side of the Meuse (Fig. 104); the main body, and Caesar, were on the east side, between the Meuse and the Rhine.

7. **hōs exspectāri**, etc.: in order that an attack with all their forces might be made upon the Romans. **rei**: the return of the cavalry.

*Description of the Rhine region.*

[10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō mīlibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum influit.

5 Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Oceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffuit partēs, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars  
10 magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur), multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.]

10. 1-12. On account of certain difficulties and inconsistencies in this chapter many think that it was not written by Caesar, but added later by some one who wished to supply a geographical background for this part of the narrative; the Meuse, for example, does not rise in the Vosges mountains, and the Rhine could hardly have flowed through the country of the Nantuates. Nevertheless the rapid current of the Rhine is referred to, which is particularly noticeable in the upper part of its course, as at Schaffhausen (Fig. 103); and we cannot assume that Caesar had accurate knowledge of regions so far from those which he himself had visited.

If the chapter is omitted, there is an easy transition from chap. 9 to chap. 11. Translation:—

'The Meuse rises in the Vosges mountains, which are in the country of the Lingones; receiving from the Rhine an affluent, which is called the Waal, it forms (with this) the island of the Batavians, and not further from this than eighty miles it flows into the Ocean.

'The Rhine, moreover, rises in the country of the Lepontii, who dwell in the Alps, and in a long course flows rapidly through the territories of the Nantuates, the Helvetians, the Sequanians, the Mediomatrici, the Triboci, and the Treverans; where it approaches the Ocean it divides up into several branches, forming many large islands. Of these (islands) a considerable portion are inhabited by wild and savage tribes, some of whom are believed to live on fish and birds' eggs. (The Rhine) flows into the Ocean through many mouths.'

*The parleying, Caesar concludes, is continued merely to gain time.*

**11.** Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, nē longius prōgrederetur, orābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, uti ad eōs equitēs, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohiberet, sibi ut potestatem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; *quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrando fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferretur, sē iūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.* 1c

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut, trīduī morā interpositā, equitēs eōrum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen *sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII, aquātiōnis causā, prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē*

**11. 1. cum ab hoste**, etc.: after denying the request of the Germans (chap. 9, l. 3), Caesar evidently had marched toward them. **XII: 38, b, and 36. milibus: 129, a.**

**2. ut erat cōstitutum**: the agreement was that the envoys should return in three days (chap. 9, l. 2). **73, d.**

**3. congressī**: sc. *cum eō*, 'meeting him.' **57, c, and 228, c. prōgrederetur: 199, a.**

**5. antecessissent: 220, and 328. praemitteret**: here without an object; with *ad eōs equitēs*, 'that he send forward to,' etc.

**6. pugnā: 127, a. sibi**, etc.: 'that he would give them permission to send.' How lit.?

**8. iūre iūrando fidem fēcisset**: 'should have bound themselves by an oath.' **15, h.** How lit.? **fēcisset**: agrees with the nearer subject. **172, b. eā**, etc.: 'that they would accept the terms proposed by Caesar.' **131, c.** How lit.?

**10. daret: dā** in the direct form. **216.**

**11. eōdem illō pertinēre**: 'had the same end in view.' How lit.? **ut**, etc.: explaining *eōdem illō*. **199, a.**

**12. abessent: 220.** Cf. chap. 9, ll. 4-8.

**14. aquātiōnis causā**: 'in order to get water.' **94, b. hūc**: to the place where he was at the time of the conference.



15 *quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut de eōrum postulātis cognōsceret.*

Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsi lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū  
20 propius accessisset.

*The German cavalry surprises and routs the cavalry of Caesar.*

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexerunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ei, quī frumentandī causā erant trāns Mosam profecti, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus  
s nostris, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesse-  
rant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāverunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuetūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equis

15. *quam frequentissimī*: 'in as great numbers as possible.' 163, c. *convenirent*: *convenite* in the direct form. 216.

17. *praefectōs*: 309, c. *equitātū*: 137, a.

18. *quī nūntiārent*: '(men) to convey the order.' 193, a.

19. *sustinērent*: sc. *ut*. 200, a. The Roman cavalry were ordered to act on the defensive.

20. *accessisset*: subjunctive also in the direct form. 190, c. B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

12. 1. *ubi primum*: 188, c. *nostrōs equitēs*: the Roman cavalry had apparently advanced in the direction of the German camp.

2. *v milium*: 309, b, and 100, a. *cum*: 187. *dccc*: *octingentōs*. 38, b, and 36.

3. *equitēs*: 129, b. *ei . . . profecti*: chap. 9, ll. 4-8.

6. *indūtiis*: 'for a truce.' 112, a. Caesar explains why his cavalry were caught off their guard. *impetū factō*: 'charged and.' How lit.? 144, b, (2).

7. *hīs*: the Roman cavalry.

8. *cōnsuetūdine*: 136, c. *suā*: 157, b. *ad pedēs*: 'to the ground,' we should say. 10, b. *dēsiluērunt*: from their horses. *subfossis . . . dēiectis*: 'stabbed the horses (of our cavalry) underneath and dismounted quite a number of our men and.' How lit.?

complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcē-  
runt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsis-  
terent, quam in cōspectum agminīs nostrī vēnissent.

*Bravery of the Aquitanian, Piso, in the skirmish.*

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur, IIII et LXX,  
in his vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere  
nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amīcus



Figurę 105. — The slopes of the Rhine Valley.

9. *reliquōs*: sc. *nostrōs*. *fugam*: the flight of the Gallic cavalry, as in a previous instance (I, 18, ll. 27-31), may have been stimulated by treachery among the native leaders.

11. *agminis*: the main force. *vēnissent*: subjunctive by attraction. 189, *a*, and 220.

12. *ex equitibus*: 97, *d*. IIII et LXX: *quattuor et septuāgintā*. 38, *b*. The result of the skirmish showed the superiority of the German over the Gallic cavalry. Caesar afterwards hired German horsemen, and made much use of them (VII, 80, l. 20 and N.).

13. *Pisō*: a Roman name, probably conferred on some Aquitanian with the Roman citizenship; cf. I, chap. 47, l. 13 and N. *genere*: 128, *a*. B. 215; A. 403, 2, *a*; H. 469, 2.

14. *amīcus*: cf. I, 3, l. 13 and N. 88, *a*.

15 *ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī, interclūsō ab hostibus, auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse, equō vulnerātō, dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset,*  
 20 *incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.*

*The German leaders come to offer apology; Caesar detains them.*

‘13. *Hīc factō proeliō Caesar nēque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis, quī per dolum atque insidiās, petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque réverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et, cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatii dandum existimābat.*

17. *dēiectus*: ‘although thrown’ from his horse, he continued to fight on foot. 227, a, (3). *potuit*: 190, c.

19. *id*: ‘that (mishap).’ *proeliō*: 127, a.

20. *incitātō equō*: ‘urging his horse forward.’ How lit.? *sē hostibus obtulit*: ‘he hurled himself upon the enemy.’ Many instances of individual bravery and devotion are recorded by Caesar.

13. 1. *Hīc factō proeliō*: ‘After this battle.’ How lit.?

2. *audiendōs*: 89, c. *ab*: ‘from’; Caesar had arranged to take up their proposals (chap. 11, ll. 14–15) on the following day.

3. *per dolum atque insidiās*: ‘craftily and treacherously.’ How lit.? *ultrō*: ‘without provocation.’ How lit.? *bellum intulissent*: ‘had made an attack.’

4. *exspectāre*: subject of *esse*. 222, b. *dum*: ‘until,’ with the subjunctive also in the direct form. 190, b. B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

5. *summae dēmentiae esse*: ‘that it was the height of folly.’ How lit.? 100, b.

6. *infirmitāte*: cf. chap. 5, ll. 1–3. *quantum — auctōritātis*: ‘how great prestige.’ 97, b, and 204, (3).

8. *quibus*: trans. as if *et eis*. *ad*, etc.: 230, (3). *nihil spatii*: ‘no time.’ 97, a.

His cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, 10 opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius diēi māne, eādē et simulatiōne et perfidiā ūsī, Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitis, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium 15 pridīē commisissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūitiis fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

20

9. cōsiliō: 'determination,' explained by the appositive clause *nē . . . praetermittet*, 'not to let slip any chance to fight,' lit. 'any day of battle.' cum — commūnicātō: 'after he had imparted to.' How lit.? 137, c. quaestōre: 313, b.

11. diēi: 94, c. māne: 'early in the morning.'

12. eādē: 'the same' as before. perfidiā: 'treachery.' To justify his own course Caesar accuses the Germans of bad faith. But if they did not mean what they said, why did so many of them trust themselves in Caesar's power? The collision on the previous day may have been precipitated by hotheads, without the approval of the leaders of the German host.

14. simul — simul: 'both — and.' suī pūrgandī causā: 'in order to clear themselves.' 154, b, and 230, (1). B. 339, 5; A. 504, c; H. 626, 3.

15. quod, etc.: 'because, contrary to what had been said.' contrā: adverb. atque: 233, c.

16. commisissent: '(as they admitted) they had started the battle.' 183, a. si quid possent: 'if in any degree possible.' How lit.? 118, b. dē: 'in the matter of.'

17. fallendō: 'by playing false.' Quōs: 167. oblātōs [esse]: 69, b. gāvīsus: 'rejoicing.' 62, and 226, c.

20. agmen subsequi: 'to follow the main force,' i.e. to bring up the rear, instead of leading the van, as the cavalry usually did. 328.

*Surprising the leaderless German host, he utterly destroys it.*

14. *Acie triplici instituta et celeriter VIII milium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fugam salutem petere praestaret.*

Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significarentur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaue proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant

14. 1. *Acie triplici*: 337, a. *VIII*: 38, b. *itinere*: the army probably marched in three parallel columns, which deployed as they neared the camp of the enemy. The country must have been open and fairly level to admit of the rapid execution of the movement.

2. *prius . . . quam . . . possent*: 189, b. B. 292, 1, b; A. 551, b; H. 605, II. *hostium castra*: a corral protected by carts, like that of the Helvetians (I, 26, l. 8).

4. *et — et*: 'both — and.' 233, a.

5. *suorum*: the German leaders who had gone to Caesar and were held by him under guard. *consilii . . . capiendi*: gerundive and gerund in coördinate construction; trans. 'for,' etc. 230, (1). *spatio*: *tempore*.

6. *perturbantur*: 'were (too) confused (to decide).' *ne . . . an . . . an*: 'whether . . . or . . . or.' 204, (1). *ducere*: 222, a.

8. *Quorum*: 167. *cum*: 185, c.

9. *pristini diei*: 'of the previous day.' *irruerunt*: 'burst into.'

10. *Quo loco*: *castris Germanorum*.

11. *restiterunt*: sc. *ei*, antecedent of *qui*. *inter carros*, etc.: cf. I, 26, ll. 7–11.

12. *at*: 236, a. *reliqua*, etc.: 'the rest of the host (consisting) of women and children.' 98, a.

13. *cum*: N. to 1, 1, l. 13. *excesserant*: i.e. *Usipetes et Tencteri*.

Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

15

**15.** Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abiectis signīsque militāribus relīctis, sē ex castris ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et



Figure 106. — The Moselle at Beilstein; ruins of the castle at the right.

**14. quōs**: the antecedent is *multitūdō*. *104, d.* Caesar's conduct in detaining the German leaders, who had come to him under a flag of truce, and then attacking and pursuing the leaderless host without mercy, seems treacherous and unlike his ordinary procedure. When afterwards his friends proposed, in the Roman senate, a thanksgiving for the victory, Cato urged that Caesar be delivered up to those whom he had treacherously entrapped, as an atonement for the wrong. Not much weight should be attached to this as a judgment on Caesar's course, however, for debates in the Roman senate, as in our own, were colored by political and personal antagonisms.

**15. 1. Germānī**: the warriors who armed for defense when the camp was attacked (chap. 14, l. 10). **clāmōre**: 'the shrieking' of the women and children, part of whom were cut down by the legionaries entering the camp, part by the cavalry after they had fled from the camp.

**3. cōnfluentem**: 'confluence.' **Mosae**: probably the Moselle (Fig. 106) is here meant, not the Meuse; *Mosellae* may have been

Rhēni pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī se in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātis, ex tanti bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

- 10 Caesar eīs, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illi, supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

### First Expedition into Germany. 16-19

*Caesar resolves to cross the Rhine and enter Germany.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit

written and changed to *Mosae* in copying. It seems probable that the German camp was south of the Moselle and that the fleeing warriors came to the region of Coblenz, which lies in the angle formed by the Moselle as it enters the Rhine.

4. *reliquā*, etc.: 'abandoning hope of further flight.' How lit.? 144, b, (2).

5. *flūmen*: the Rhine, at Coblenz.

6. *lassitūdine*: in consequence of the fighting and running.

7. *ad ūnum*: 'to a man.' *incolumēs*: 'in safety.' *ex . . . oum*: 'notwithstanding (their) apprehension of a hard campaign, since.' 184, a. How lit.?

8. *capitum . . . fuisset*: 'had amounted to 430,000'; cf. N. to I, 29, l. 6. 100, b. *ccccxxx*: = *quadrīngentōrum trīgintā*. 38, b, and 38. If, as among the Helvetians, one fourth were fighting-men, the Usipetes and Tencteri mustered an army of more than 130,000. The number seems greatly exaggerated.

11. *veritī*: 61, a, (2), and 226, c.

13. *libertātem*: 'leave' to stay. They probably entered his service as mercenaries.

16. 2. *quārum*: 97, a. *illa*: 161, a.

iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegent, et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprà commemorāvī praedandī frumentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs<sup>10</sup> Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūtiōs misisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, responderunt:

*Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī, sē invitō,<sup>15</sup> Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperiū aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?*

3. iūstissima: 'the most weighty.' quod . . . voluit: explains *illa* [causa].

4. ut . . . venīrent: 'to come.' 198, a. suis quoque rēbus: 'for their own interests also.'

5. cum: *cum* temporal has here a conditional force also; 'in case.'

7. Accessit etiam quod: 'There was the further reason that.' 198, a, and b.

8. suprà: chap. 9, ll. 4-8. commemorāvī: cf. *dēmōstrāvimus*, II, 1, l. 2, and N.

12. quōs: *Sugambrōs*. postulārent: 193, a.

13. dēderent: 200, a. B. 295, 8; A. 565, a; H. 562, 1, N.

15. imperium Rhēnum finīre: i.e. *Rhēnum* (subject accusative) *esse finem* ('limit') *imperiū*. sē invitō: N. to I, 8, l. 7.

16. aequum: 'right'; in predicate, neuter, accusative, in agreement with the infinitive clause *Germānōs trānsire*, which stands as object of *existimāret*.

17. suī, etc.: 'that anything beyond the Rhine was under his authority or power.' 94, d.

18. postulāret: with *cūr*, 'why should he claim.' 217, a.



Ubi autem, qui ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem  
 20 lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant,  
 magnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter  
 ab Suēbis premerentur :

*Vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae prohibērētur,  
 exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret ; id sibi ad auxilium  
 25 spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse  
 nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et  
 hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum  
 nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitia populī Rōmānī tūtī esse  
 possint.*

30 Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum  
 pollicēbantur.

*He builds a bridge across the Rhine.*

**17.** Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvi, Rhēnum  
 trānsire dēcrēverat ; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tū-  
 tum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī

19. ūnī: 'alone.' 23, a. ex Trānsrhēnānīs: 'of the peoples  
 across the Rhine.' 97, d.

20. miserant, fēcerant, dederant: 234, a, and 238, a.

21. quod . . . premerentur: 183, a.

23. Vel: 213, b, and 235, a. id facere: 'from doing that.'  
 223, a, (3). occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae: 'by the requirements  
 of public business.'

24. exercitum, Rhēnum: 114, a. trānsportāret: 216. id:  
 'that (movement).' ad . . . temporis: 'for (present) help and  
 (for) hope in respect to the future.' How lit.?

26. opīniōnem: 'reputation.' eius: 'his,' i.e. Caesaris. Ario-  
 vistō pulsō: 'in consequence of the defeat of Ariovistus,' related in  
 Book I. How lit.? 144, b, (3).

17. 2. trānsire: 222, b. tūtum: predicative. 148, d. Caesar  
 was always careful to have the country in the rear of his army well  
 secured, not only for the transportation of supplies but also to make a  
 retreat safe in case of necessity.

3. suae, populī: 167, d.

dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendi pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum, existimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit :

Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia, paulum ab imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum, māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen, dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō

4. **dignitātis**, etc. : 'would be inconsistent with the prestige.' 94, *d*. How lit.? **et** : 191, *a*.

5. **lātitudinem** : between 1300 and 1600 feet in the region where Caesar built the bridge, that is, near Neuwied, between Coblenz and Andernach (Map 11, facing p. 232). **rapiditātem** : 'swiftness.' 76, *a*.

6. **id**, etc. : sc. *esse*, 'that he ought to make every effort (to accomplish) this.'

7. **aut** : 235, *a*.

8. **Ratiōnem**, etc. : 'the plan of the bridge (which) he devised (was) as follows.' 161, *a*. How lit.?

9. **Tigna bīna** : 'a pair of logs,' to be driven into the river bed and used as posts to support the bridge; see Plates V and VI, *a a*. 36. **sēsquipedālia** : 'a foot and a half thick.' 79, *b*. **ab imō** : 'at the lower end.' 154, *a*, and 126, *c*.

10. **dīmēnsa** : passive; with *ad*, etc., 'measured off to correspond with the depth of the river,' the longer piles for use near the middle, the shorter for driving nearer the banks. How lit.? 59, *b*. **intervāllō**, etc. : 'two feet apart.' How lit.? 138.

11. **inter sē** : 'together.' 159. **iungēbat** : sc. *Caesar*; the object is *Tigna*. The two logs of each pair were apparently fastened together on the bank, before they were driven into the river bed. **māchinātiōnibus immissa** : 'had let down by mechanical appliances,' rafts equipped with suitable tackle. How lit.? 228, *a*.

12. **dēfixerat**, etc. : 'had planted these firmly and driven [them] home with pile-drivers,' in the case of each pair; the pluperfect with *cum* implies repeated action. 186, *a*. B. 288, 3; H. 539, 2. **nōn sublicae modō** : 'not like an (ordinary) pile,' because ordinarily piles are driven in perpendicularly, while these pairs were driven with a slant. How lit.?

dērectē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūrā flūminis prōcumberent, his item contrāria  
 15 duo ad eundem modum iūcta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte, contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa, statuēbat.

Haec utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binis utrimque  
 20 fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs

13. **dērectē**: 'straight up and down.' **ad perpendiculum**: 'according to a plumb-line.' **prōnē ac fastigātē**: 'leaning forward with a decided slant.' How lit.? **secundum**: 'in conformity with.' 122, a.

14. **nātūrā flūminis**: 'the direction of the current.' 74, d. **his contrāria**: 'opposite these.' 108, a. Plates V, VI, a' a'.

15. **duo**: sc. *tigna*; *bi*na might have been used. **ad eundem modum**: 'in the same manner.' 45. **quadrāgēnum**: 'forty' Roman feet in each case. 22, c. The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water. Plate V, A.

16. **ab inferiōre parte**: 'on the lower side,' i.e. downstream from the first pair. **contrā**, etc.: 'against the violent rushing of the current.' How lit.? As the first pair of posts slanted downstream, so the second pair slanted upstream. Plate V, A, a'.

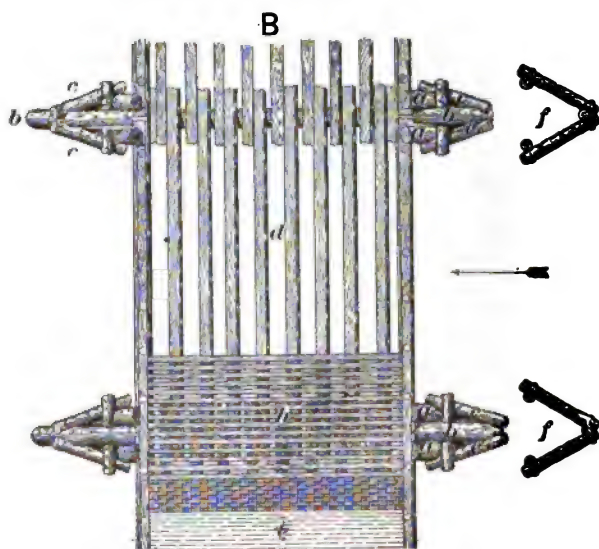
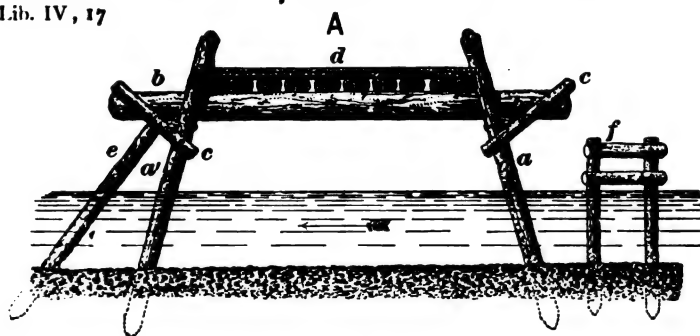
18. **Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur**: 'the two pairs' of posts 'were held apart.' 51. **insuper**: 'above.' **bipedālibus**, etc.: 'after a beam having the thickness of two feet, corresponding with the space between the posts' (of each pair), 'had been let in.' How lit.? The heavy crossbeam, or sill, is marked, **b b** on Plates V, VI.

19. **quantum**: representing the idea of measure in *bipedālibus*; accusative. 118, a. **binis . . . parte**: 'by a pair of braces on each side' (i.e. with each pair of posts), 'at the very end' of the sill. What these 'pairs of braces' were it is not easy to understand. If of wood, they may have been like those represented in the Plates V and VI, o o; for with such braces the greater the pressure the more closely the structure would have been bound together. If the braces were of iron — a less probable supposition because of the amount of iron required, — the arrangement must have been altogether different. .

20. **quibus . . . revinctis**: i.e. *tignis*; 'now that these' (the two pairs of posts, one pair above and one below) 'were kept' (at the proper

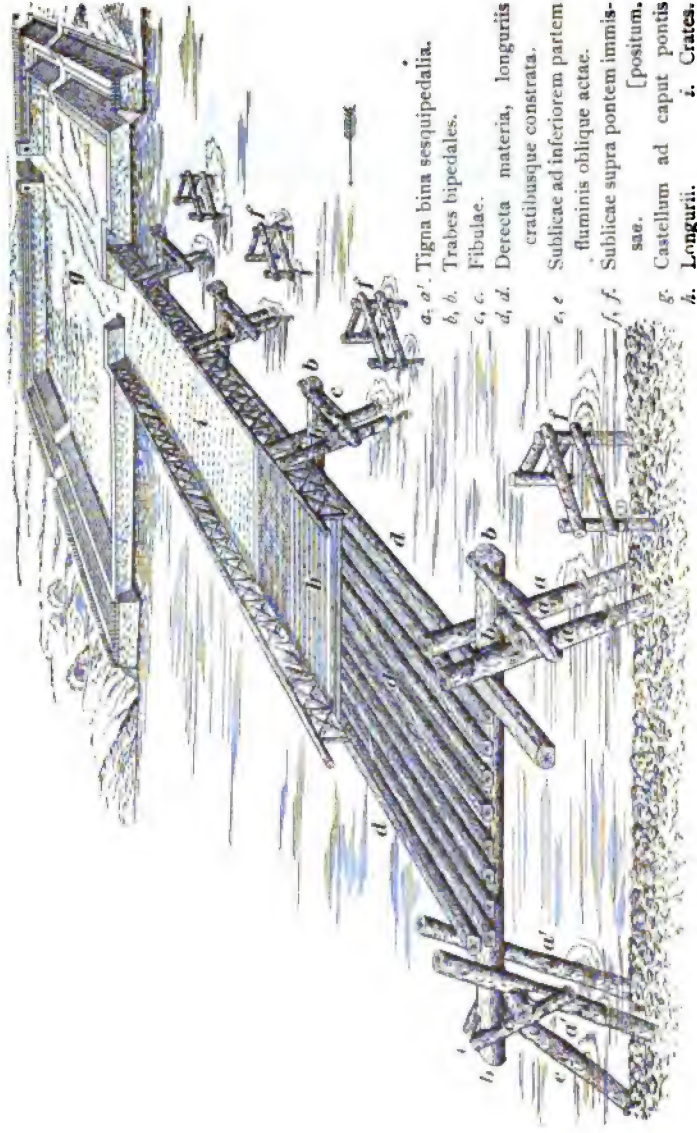
PLATE V CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE, SECTIONS

Lib. IV, 17



A. Cross-section.

B. The Bridge seen from above.



atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur.

Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et<sup>25</sup> ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae, prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae, vim flūminis

distance) 'apart, and were braced in opposite directions,' the lower posts slanting upstream, the upper posts slanting downstream. How lit.? 144, b, (3).

22. **ea rērum nātūra**: 'such the character of the structure' as a whole. How lit.? **quō**, etc.: 'the greater the force of the water rushing against it.' 220. How lit.? **quō** . . . **hōc**: 140. B. 223; A. 414, a; H. 471, 10.

23. **hōc**, etc.: 'the more closely they' (the opposite pairs of posts, *tigna*) 'were tied and held together.' **illigāta**: 228, a.

24. **Haec**: 'These piers,' each pier formed by fastening the sill, two feet thick, securely to the pair of posts at either end. **dērēctā**: 'in the direction of the bridge.' How lit.? **materiā iniectā**: 'by laying timber,' i.e. girders, **d** on the Plates; these were, of course, at right angles with the direction of the current. 92, b, and 144, b, (6). **contexēbantur**: 'were joined.' As the bridge was designed to carry a moving load of cavalry and draft animals as well as infantry, and was obviously built hastily of rough timbers, with a wide margin of safety, we may suppose that the length of the girders between the sills was not more than 25 English feet, possibly not more than 20 feet; the number of piers was probably between sixty and seventy. **longuriis**: 'joists,' laid on the girders, in the direction of the current; marked **h** on the Plates.

25. **crātibus**: 'wickerwork,' woven of supple branches, laid over the joists and taking the place of the planks on a modern bridge; marked **i** on the Plates. **cōsternēbantur**: 'were covered.' **nihilō sētius**: 'nevertheless,' in order still further to assure the safety of the bridge. 140. **et**: 'also.'

26. **ad**, etc.: 'on the down-stream side.' How lit.? **obliquē agēbantur**: 'were driven with a slant'; these piles, slanting upstream, braced the piers against the force of the current; marked **e** on the Plates. **quae**: 'in order that they.' 193, a.

27. **prō ariete subiectae**: 'set below as props.' 10, e. How lit.?

exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēficiendi operis causā essent  
 30 ā barbaris missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

*Entering Germany, he finds some tribes submissive; but the Sugambrians flee.*

18. Diēbus x, quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō, in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit.

5 Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt; quibus, pācem atque amicitiam petentibus, liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. At Sugambrī ex

28. **aliae**: *aliae publicae agēbantur*, marked f f on the Plates. These vertical piles protected the bridge against floating logs or other objects in the current liable to damage it. **mediocri spatiō**: 'a short distance.' 140.

29. **trunci**: 'tree-trunks.' 81. **nāvēs**: barges loaded with stones or earth are probably meant. **operis**: 'the structure.' 230, (1). **essent missae**: 220.

30. **hīs dēfēnsōribus**: ablative absolute, = *hīs dēfendentibus*, *hīs* being personified; trans. 'by these defenses.' **eārum rērum**: tree-trunks and weighted barges.

31. **neu**: 'and not'; lit. 'or not.' 196, b.

18. 1. **Diēbus x, quibus**: 'Within ten days after.' 147, a. **comportāri**: 72, c. The rapidity and skill with which the bridge was built bear witness to Caesar's genius in practical affairs as well as to the efficiency of his engineers and mechanics. 310, b.

3. **partem**: we should say 'end.' **praesidiō relictō**: 'having left,' etc. 144, b, (2). Plate VI, g. **Sugambrōrum**: the German end of the bridge led into the country of the Ubians; north of the Ubians were the Sugambrians. See Map at the end of the volume.

6. **quibus**: dative. **liberāliter respondit**: 'be returned a gracious answer.' How lit.? 175, b.

7. **At**: 236, a. **ex**: 'immediately after.'

eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis, quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitudinem ac silvās abdiderant.

*He ravages the country of the Sugambrians, encourages the Ubians, and returns to Gaul.*

**19.** Caesar, paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit:

*Suēbōs, postea quam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri cōperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, uti dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlectum*

8. **eō**: 'the.' 160, *d.* **fugā comparātā**: 'taking to flight.' How lit.?

9. **hortantibus eis**: 'at the instigation of those.' From chap. 15, ll. 1-6, it might be inferred that few of the Tencteri and the Usipetes escaped besides cavalry (chap. 16, ll. 7-11).

11. **exportāverant**: 'had carried away.' in: cf. N. to I, 12, l. 11; 'into the recesses of the forests.'

19. 1. **eōrum**: *Sugambrōrum*. **morātus**: 226, *c.*

2. **vicīs**, etc.: cf. I, 5, ll. 4-5 and Notes. **frūmentis succīs**: 'cut down the standing grain and.' How lit. 144, *b*, (2).

4. **si . . . premerentur**: indirect, from the idea of "saying" in *pollicitus*; future indicative in the direct form. 213, *b*.

5. **postea quam**: with the indicative in the direct form. 188, *a*.

6. **mōre**: 136, *c.* **nūntiōs**: 'messengers.'

7. **uti**, etc.: '(directing the people) to move away from the strongholds,' etc.; the substantive clauses give the gist of the instructions conveyed by the messengers. 199, *a*.

9. **hunc**: predicative after *dēlectum esse*, with which *locum* is to be supplied as subject; 'that there had been chosen, as this (mustering point). a place.'



10 *medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc*  
*Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi decertāre cō-*  
*stituisse.*

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōfectis,  
 quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut  
 15 Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut  
 Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhē-  
 num cōsūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem prō-  
 fectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

### First Expedition to Britain. 20-38

*Caesar resolves to invade Britain; he lacks information.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in hīs  
 locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae  
 sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod,

10. **medium ferē**: 'nearly (at) the center.' **regiōnum**: 102.

11. **exspectāre**: sc. *eōs* (*Suēbōs*). **ibi**: 'at that point.'

13. **Quod**: 'this fact.' 167. **eīs rēbus cōfectis**: 'having accomplished the objects,' explained by the appositive *ut*-clauses following. 144, b, (3). In reality Caesar accomplished very little by the march into Germany. The formal enumeration which follows seems intended to justify an expedition barren of tangible results.

14. **rērum**: 165, a. **ut**, etc.: 199, a.

16. **obsidiōne**: 'from oppression'; the Ubii had been forced to pay tribute to the Swabians (chap. 3, ll. 11-14). 127, a. **ut . . . libe-**  
**rāret**: 'to free.' XVIII: 38, b, and 36.

17. **prōfectum** [esse]: the subject is *satis*. 57, b.

20. 1 **Exiguā . . . reliquā**: ablative absolute; 'As a small part,' etc.; it was now near the end of July.

2. **omnis Gallia**: cf. I, 1, l. 1, and N. **ad . . . vergit**: 'lies toward the north,' in relation to the latitude of Italy; cf. Map 12.

3. **Britanniam**: 294. **quod . . . intellegēbat**: the aid given by the Britains to the Venetans (III, 9, ll. 30-31) and to the other Gauls, as for example to refugees from the Bellovaci (II, 14, ll. 3-9), seems to have been of slight account; it furnished, however, a plausible pretext for the invasion of Britain.

omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere, praeter mercātōrēs, illō



Figure 107. — Foot of chalk cliffs north of Dover, at low tide.

4. **bellis**: 147, *b*. **inde**: *ē Britannia*. **sumministrāta**: *sc. esse*.

6. **dēficeret**: 'was insufficient.' **sibi ūsuī fore**: 112, *b*. **arbitrābatur**: 183, *a*.

7. **adisset**: *adiret* might have been expected; Caesar conceives of the expedition as an accomplished fact. 218, (1), *b*.

8. **aditūs**: 'approaches'; points, outside the regular harbors, where a landing could be made. **quae omnia ferē**: 'for nearly all of these things.' 167, and 97, *c*.

9. **incognita**: the Venetans at least must have been informed about Britain (III, 8, ll. 1-3), but they had been well-nigh exterminated; and it was not to be expected that Gauls having the knowledge desired by Caesar would be free in imparting it to him. **Neque enim — quisquam**: 'for no one.' 168. **temere**: 'without good reason'; only traders and students of Druidic theology (VI, 13, ll. 34-37) had occasion to go to Britain. **illō**: adverb.

10 adit quisquam, neque eis ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram  
maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās,  
nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta  
esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantaē nātiōnēs  
15 incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus  
institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium  
multitūdinem idōnei portūs, reperire poterat.

*He sends Volusenus to Britain and makes preparations; he receives British envoys, and sends Commius also to Britain.*

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prius quam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explorātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum revertātur.

5 Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs

10. neque . . . quicquam: 'and nothing.' eis: 108, a.

11. Galliās: plural because referring to the different divisions; we should say, 'the (several) parts of Gaul.'

15. incolerent: sc. eam. 204, (2) and (3). quem: 48, b. ūsum bellī: 'methods of warfare.' How lit.?

16. ad . . . multitūdinem: i.e. for a fleet, whose requirements were very different from those of trading vessels coming to port singly or in small numbers.

21. 1. prius . . . faceret: 'before making the attempt.' 189, b.

2. idōneum: adj. in predicate; trans. 'a suitable person.' nāvī longā: 346, a.

3. praemittit: sc. eum. ut, etc.: 199, a.

4. quam primum: 153, c.

6. inde: 'from their country.' How lit.? See Map 11. in Britanniam: after trāiectus. 150, d. trāiectus: 'passage.' Hūc: to the vicinity of modern Boulogne.

7. quam — classem: = eam classem, quam. 165, c. B. 251, 4, a; A. 307, b; H. 399, 3.

undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiōre aetate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, iubet convenire.

Interim, cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus superātis, rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et vir- tūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cuiusque auctōritās in his regionibus magni habēbatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

Volusēnus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nō auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

8. *ad Veneticum bellum*: III, 11, ll. 13-16, and chaps. 14, 15.

11. *polliceantur*: 193, a. *dare*: i.e. *sē datūrōs esse*. 178. *imperiō obtemperāre*: 'submit to the authority.' 106.

15. *Atrebātibus*: conquered in the battle at the Sambre, two years previously (II, 23, ll. 1-8). *rēgem*: 116, a. *ibi*: among the Atrebatians. *virtūtem et cōsiliū*: 'energy and discretion.'

16. *probābat*: 'he appreciated.' *fidēlem*: 'loyal.' Afterwards Commius was disloyal to Caesar; cf. VII, chap. 75, ll. 22-26.

17. *magni habēbatur*: 'was considered great,' lit. 'of great (value).' 101. B. 203, 3; A. 417; H. 448, 1.

18. *possit*: sc. *adire*. Why subjunctive? 220. *adeat*: 200, a. B. 295, 8; A. 565, a; H. 565, 4.

19. *populi . . . sequantur*: 'fix their confidence in the Roman people.' How lit.? 199, a. *sē*: Caesar.

21. *quantum facultātis*: 'so far as opportunity.' 97, b.

22. *quī*: 'since he.' 194, c. *nāvi*: 14, b, and 127, a.

*Opportunely he receives the submission of the Morini. He assembles a fleet.*

**22.** Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parantiārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērē-runt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent, quod, hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī, bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae impe-rāssēt, factūrōs pollicērentur.

Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque  
10 hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnen-dās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis, eōs in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis contrāctisque,

**22. 1. his locis:** in the country of the Morini, probably in the vicinity of modern Boulogne.

**2. morātur:** 190, *a.* B. 293, 1; A. 556; H. 533, 4.

**3. quī sē . . . excūsārent, pollicērentur:** 'to offer excuse,' lit. 'excuse themselves,' etc. 193, *a.* **dē . . . cōsiliō:** 'for their conduct the previous season,' 56 B.C. (III, chap. 28).

**4. quod . . . fēcissent:** 'because (as they said) they had made.' 183, *a.* **hominēs barbarī:** '(being) uncivilized people.' 91, *b.* **cōsuētūdinis:** sing., but trans. 'usages'; the reference is particularly to the Roman practice of treating with consideration peoples that submitted to Roman rule. 102.

**5. imperāssēt:** 64, *a.* (1), and 214, *a.*

**9. annī tempus:** it was already August, too late in the season to enter upon an extended campaign. **neque, etc.:** 'and he judged that the exactions of so trivial affairs ought not to have precedence over (the invasion of) Britain.' How lit.?

**10. hās:** 160, *d.* **tantulārum:** 76, *c.* **Britanniae:** 107, *a.*

**13. Nāvibus onerāriis:** 'transports'; these were sailing vessels, while the galleys were propelled by oars. 346, *a.* **LXXX:** *octōgintā.* 38, *b.* **coāctis contrāctisque:** 'pressed into service and brought together' in a single harbor.

quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōri, lēgā-<sup>15</sup> tis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerā-  
riae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō  
tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venire possent;  
hās equitibus distribuit.

Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabinō et L. Auruncu-<sup>20</sup> leiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Mori-  
nōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum  
dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō,  
quod satis esse arbitrābatur, portum tenēre iussit.

14. **quot**: 'as many as.' **duās legiōnēs**: the 7th and the 10th.  
The smallness of the force is consistent with Caesar's statement that  
the purpose of the expedition was not conquest but the obtaining of  
information. If the two legions, after three years of hard fighting, con-  
tained each about 3600 men (307, b) fit for service, the total of 7200  
men divided up among the 80 transports would have averaged 90 men  
to a ship. The vessels were not large; and the supplies, not merely  
provisions but tents and other equipment, must have taken up much room.

15. **quod nāvium longārum**: 'the galleys which'; lit. 'what of  
long ships.' 97, b. **quaestōri**: 313, b.

16. **praefectis**: 'subsidiary officers.' The galleys seem also to  
have carried slingers, bowmen, and artillery (chap. 25). **Hūc ac-**  
**cēdēbant**: 'In addition to this number there were.' How lit.? 90, b.

17. **eō locō**: portus Itius, now Boulogne; see Map 11. **ā**: 'off.'  
The small harbor eight Roman miles up the coast, where the 18 trans-  
ports were detained, is now called Ambleteuse. Map 11 A.

18. **quō minus**: 'so that . . . not.' 201, a. **eundem portum**:  
portus Itius.

19. **equitibus**: the cavalry contingents of the two legions, 500 or  
600 horsemen in all. 309, a. **equitibus distribuit**: the horsemen  
could more easily go across the country to the smaller harbor (chap.  
23, ll. 2-3).

20. **Reliquum exercitum**: five legions, if we assume that one  
legion was assigned to duty at the harbor; for Caesar had eight legions  
in all, and only two were required for the expedition.

21. **in — dūcendum**: 'for operations against.' How lit.? 229, b.

23. **eō praesidiō, quod**: = *tantō praesidiō, quantum*.

*Caesar sails to Britain, and makes preparation to land.*

**23.** His cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-  
dum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in  
ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscondere et sē  
sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset adminis-  
trātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus  
Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās  
hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit.

Cuius loci haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustis  
mare continēbātur, utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum  
adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum

**23. 1. nactus:** 61, a, (3), and 226, c.

**2. tempestātem:** 'weather.' As might be inferred from its deri-  
vation from *tempus*, 'time,' *tempestās* may imply good or bad weather  
according to the connection. We use "time" similarly in "a good  
time," "a bad time." **tertiā ferē vigiliā:** 'about the third watch';  
indefinite because the embarkation must have taken two or three hours.  
242, c. **solvit:** sc. *nāvēs*, 'got under way,' from Boulogne. The  
date was probably August 26.

**3. ulteriōrem portum:** Ambleteuse, northeast of Boulogne (chap.  
22, l. 17). **prōgredi:** i.e. by land. **nāvēs cōnscondere:** 'to  
embark.'

**4. quibus:** 'them,' the cavalry. 167. **paulō tardius:** 'with a  
little too much delay,' probably due to the difficulty of getting the horses  
aboard. 153, a. **esset administrātum:** 'the orders were carried  
out.' How lit.? 73, d.

**5. hōrā quārtā:** the beginning of 'the fourth hour' on August 26  
in the latitude of Dover by Roman reckoning was about 8.30 A.M. by  
our time. 242, b.

**6. Britanniam attigit:** 'reached Britain,' near Dover; see Map  
II. **expositās:** 'arrayed.'

**8. haec:** 'such.' **ita,** etc.: 'the sea was so closely bordered by  
abrupt cliffs'; *angustis*, lit. 'narrow,' implies sharp outlines, as seen  
from the sea, and an abrupt descent. The chalk cliffs near Dover run  
almost straight up from the water's edge. (See Figures 107, 108, 110,  
and Plate VIII.)

**9. locis superiōribus:** the top of the cliffs. **litus:** 'shore.' 13, f.

locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.

Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs<sup>15</sup> postulārent, ut, cum celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis admi-



Figure 108. — St. Margaret's Bay, passed by Caesar in his search for a landing place.

11. **convenirent**: 190, *b*. B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; H. 603, II, 2.

12. **hōram nōnam**: the beginning of the ninth hour was about 2.20 P.M. by our time. 242, *b*. **in ancoris**: 'at anchor.' The ancient anchors were like those of to-day.

13. **tribūnis militum**: 314. **et . . . et**: 233, *a*. **quae**: 204, (2). The information derived from Volusenus was probably to the effect that there was a good landing place further up the coast.

15. **ut . . . postulārent**: 'as military practice, above all, as marine service required.' 220. How lit.?

16. **ut . . . omnēs**, etc.: after *monuit*; 'that all orders be executed.' 199, *a*. **cum**, etc.: 'since (these conditions) involved quick and unsteady movement.'

17. **ad nūtum**: 'on the instant.' How lit.? **ad tempus**: 'at the (right) time.'



nistrārentur. Hīs dimissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, 20 circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

*The legionaries attempt to land; the Britons resist fiercely.*

24. At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus s ēgredi prohibēbant.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem, nisi in altō, cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum 10 et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi, aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi,

19. **secundum**: 'favorable,' both wind and tide bearing toward the northeast.

20. **eō locō**: Dover. **prōgressus**: 226, c. **apertō ac plānō litore**: between Walmer and Deal, about seven miles northeast of Dover. 145, c.

21. **nāvēs cōstituit**: 'he ran the ships aground.' How lit.?

24. 2. **essedāriis**: 'chariot-fighters,' described in chap. 33. **quō genere**: 'a type (of warrior) which.' 165, b.

3. **cōpiis**: the Britons followed by land, as near the shore as possible. 137, b. **nāvibus ēgredi**: 'from disembarking.' 223, a, and 127, a.

5. **Erat**: 90, a. **hās**: refers to what follows. 161, a.

6. **in altō**: 'in deep (water).' 154, a. **cōstitui**: 'be grounded,' so as to remain firm. **militibus . . . dēsiliendum [erat]**: 'the soldiers . . . had to jump down.' How lit.? 73, c, and 110.

7. **ignōtis locis**: '(being) on unfamiliar ground.' How lit.? 145, c.

8. **oppressis**: agrees with *militibus*; 'weighed down.' **et . . . et . . . et**: 238, f.

10. **oum**: 'while.' 187. **illi**: *Britanni*. **ex āridō**: 'from dry land.'

omnibus membris expeditis, nōtissimīs locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti, atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperiti, nōn eādē alacritātē ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērāt, ūtēbantur.

15

*The standard-bearer of the Tenth leaps overboard, bidding the others follow.*

**25.** Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum ex-

**11. nōtissimīs locis:** 'thoroughly acquainted with the ground. How lit.? 153, *a*, and 144, *b*, (2). **audācter**, etc.: the British were provided with weapons much like those of the Gauls (Fig. 109).

**12. insuēfactōs:** 'trained' to go into the water.

**13. generis:** with *imperiti*. 102. B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; H. 451, 1.

**14. eādē:** 150, *a*. **quō:** 163, *c*. **pedestribus:** i.e. *terrestribus*, 'on land.'

**15. ūtēbantur:** 'were displaying.'

**25. 1. Quod:** 'Now . . . this.' 167. **animadvertit:** 188, *a*.

**2. speciēs:** 'appearance.' 80, *b*. **inūsitātior:** 'less familiar.' Oar-driven galleys were not so well adapted to withstand the buffetings of northern waters as solidly built sailing vessels, such as those of the Venetans (III, chap. 13-14). **ad ūsum:** i.e. *ad nāvigandum*; 'the movement was more easily controlled.' How lit.? The galleys could be driven faster, and in any direction.

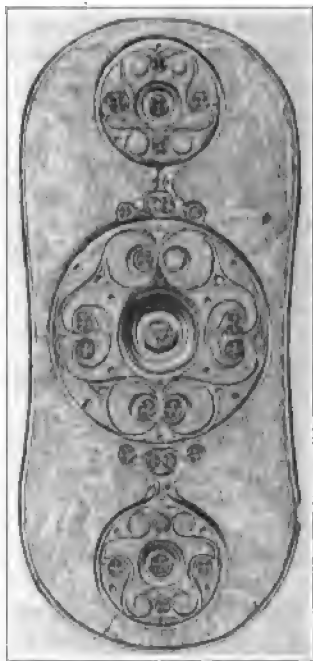


Figure 109. — British shield. Of bronze, enamelled; found in the Thames, near London.

pedītor, paulum removēri ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī, atque inde fundis, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpelli ac summovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam, et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōti, barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.

- 10 Atque nostrīs milītibz cunctantībz, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter evenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibz prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque  
15 imperātōri officium praestiterō.'

4. **ad latus apertum**: 'over against the exposed flank,' the right flank of the enemy. The galleys were to be placed parallel with the shore. **inde**: = *ē nāvibus longis*.

5. **fundis**: 'with slings,' which hurled slingshots of lead when this material was available; such slingshots were sometimes inscribed (N. to II, 18, l. 2.). **sagittīs**: 'arrows.' 308. **tormentīs**: 'artillery'; our word "artillery" was applied to engines of war, whose propelling force was derived from tension, before it came to be restricted to cannon, which derive their propelling force from explosives. The '*torsioners*' used on the galleys were probably small catapults, which Caesar elsewhere calls 'scorpions' (343, a).

6. **quae rēs**: 'and this manoeuvre.' **ausi**: 112, b.

7. **figurā**: the galleys were relatively long, narrow, and low.

8. **paulum modo**: 'just a little,' from the water's edge.

10. **altitudinem**: the sailing vessels which had been run aground on the sandy bottom formed a line, irregular because of the variation in depth, at least two thirds of a mile long; the water where the bows were driven into the sand was probably up to the soldiers' necks.

11. **quī**: as antecedent sc. *is*, subject of *inquit*. **aquilam**: 'eagle.' 324, b, (1). **obtestātus**, etc.: 'praying the gods that his effort might turn out fortunately for the legion.' 199, a.

13. **commilitōnēs**: 'fellow-soldiers.' 93. **vultis**: 71.

14. **ego**: 87, b. **certē**: 'at any rate.'

15. **praestiterō**: 176, c.

Hōc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis primī nāvibus cum cōnspexisserunt, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt. 20

*Finally the Romans force the enemy back, and land.*

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōnspeixerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

16. cum: 185, c. vōce: 136, b. magnā: 'loud.'

17. cohortātī inter sē: 159 and 226, c.

18. dēdecus: 'disgrace,' the loss of the eagle of the legion. 13, f. ūniversī: 'all together.'

20. subsecūtī: 'they followed and.' How lit.? 228, a. appropinquārunt: 64, a, (1).

26. 1. Pugnātum, etc.: 'sharp fighting was kept up by both sides.' How lit.? utrisque: 51.

2. ōrdinēs servāre: 'to keep the ranks.' firmiter insistere: 'to get a firm footing.'

3. signa: 324, b, (2). alius, etc.: 'one from this ship, another from that.' 171, c. quibuscumque . . . aggregābat: 'they were joining any standards that they had fallen in with.' How lit.? 50, a.

6. singulārēs: 'one by one.' cōnspeixerant: 188, d.

7. incitātis equīs: 'urging their horses forward.' 144, b, (2). adoriēbantur: 'they would attack.' 175, d. plūrēs paucōs: plūrēs hostēs paucōs Romānōs.

8. ab latere apertō: 'on the exposed flank,' the right side, unprotected by a shield. ūniversōs: 'groups of soldiers,' contrasted with the individuals referred to in l. 6.

10 Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum  
 nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia, militibus complēri iussit  
 et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, his subsidia summittēbat.  
 Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis,  
 in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt;  
 15 neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum  
 tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum  
 ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons offer to submit, and return Commius to Caesar.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā  
 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-  
 runt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs, quaeque imperāset, factūrōs  
 polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebās  
 5 vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britan-  
 niam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad  
 eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehen-  
 derant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum, proeliō factō,

10. *scaphās*: 'small boats,' carried on the galleys.

11. *speculātōria nāvigia*: 'scouting vessels,' smaller and lighter  
 than the galleys, without a beak, and designed for rapid movement.

13. *in āridō*: 'on dry ground.' 164, a. *cōstitērunt*:  
 188, a.

15. *neque*: 'but . . . not.' *equitēs*: still at Ambleteuse (chap.  
 23, l. 4).

16. *insulam capere*: 'to make the island.' *Hōc*, etc.: 'in this  
 respect only was Caesar's usual good fortune incomplete.' How lit.?

27. 2. *recēpērunt*: 188, a. *statim*: 77. *lēgātōs*: 'envoys.'

3. *datūrōs*: 89, c. *quaeque*, etc.: i.e. *et ea, quae imperāvisset*,  
*factūrōs esse*. 214, a.

5. *suprā*: chap. 21, ll. 14-20. *dēmōnstrāveram*: cf. II, 1, l. 2,  
 and N.

7. *ōrātōris modō*: 'in the character of an envoy,' lit. 'of a pleader.'  
 80, b.

8. *proeliō factō*: i.e. *post hōc proelium*. 144, b, (2).

remisērunt. In petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et, propter imprudentiam ut ignōsceretur, petivērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō, in continentem lēgātis missis, pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit;



Figure 110. — Cliffs on the English coast, north of Dover.

9. *remisērunt*: sc. *eum*. *eius rei*: i.e. *quod Commius, orator Caesaris, comprehensus atque in vincula coniectus erat*.

10. *imprudentiam*: 'lack of knowledge.' *ignōsceretur*: sc. *sibi*, 'that pardon be granted them.' 199, *a*, and 106, *b*.

12. *questus*: 226, *c*. *quod . . . intulissent*: 'because (as he said) they had,' etc. 183, *a*. B. 286, 1; A. 540; H. 588, 11. *continentem*: 'the continent,' Gaul.

13. *petissent*: 187. *sine causā*: from the Roman point of view; but the Romans would have considered the defence of the shores of Italy against an armed force a most noble action. Thus conditions alter opinions. In 1916 many Mexicans considered the presence of the American punitive expedition in Mexico as a hostile invasion.

14. *ignōscere sē*: 'that he would pardon.' *imprudentiae*: 105.

- 15 quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longin-  
 quioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt.  
 Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque  
 undiquē convenīre et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commen-  
 dāre coepērunt.

*The ships with the cavalry are prevented from landing by a storm.*

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum,  
 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus  
 suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex  
 superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt.
- 5 Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidē-  
 rentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum  
 cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant pro-  
 fectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae

16. *arcessitam*: i.e. *cum ea (pars) arcessita esset*. 227, a, (1).

17. *suōs*: 'their people'; the demobilization of the British host  
 was ordered. *iussērunt*: sc. *ei*, the British envoys.

18. *convenīre*: *ad Caesarem*. *Caesarī commendāre*: 'to put  
 under Caesar's protection.'

28. 1. *His rēbus*: the giving of hostages, the demobilization of  
 the British host, and the presence of British leaders in Caesar's camp.  
*post — quam*: = *quārtō diē postquam*, 'three days after' by our reck-  
 oning; cf. chap. 9, l. 2, and N.

2. *est ventum*: 73, d.

3. *suprā*: chap. 22, ll. 16-19. *sustulerant*: 'had taken on  
 board.'

4. *superiōre portū*: Ambleuse. *lēni ventō*: 'with a light  
 breeze,' blowing north or northeast. 138. *solvērunt*: 'sailed.'

5. *ex castris*: Caesar's camp was on rising ground, not far from  
 the shore, so that it commanded a wide view of the sea. *vidēren-  
 tur*: trans. as passive.

6. *tempestās*: 'storm,' a northeaster. Cf. N. to chap. 23, l. 2.

7. *aliae . . . aliae*: 171, b. *eōdem*, etc.: Ambleuse.

8. *referrentur*: sc. *ut*. *ad . . . occāsum*: southwest from  
 Caesar's landing-place. See Map 11, A.

est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae, tamen ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*The fleet on the British shore is wrecked by a high tide.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerariās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent — fūni-

9. **propius**: 123, *b*. B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; H. 420, 5. **suō**: 'to themselves.' How lit.? **dēicerentur**: 'were driven.' 57, *b*.

10. **quae . . . cum**: 'nevertheless they anchored and when they.' How lit.? 167, and 144, *b*, (2).

11. **adversā nocte**: 'in the face of the night,' a form of expression transferred from space (as *adversō colle*, 134, *a*) to time. **in altum prōvectae**: 'they put out to sea and.' How lit.? 226, *c*, and 228, *a*.

29. 1. **eādem nocte**: the night of August 30, as determined by astronomical calculations. **accidit . . . plēna**: 'it happened to be full moon.' How lit.? **quī diēs**: 'and this date.'

2. **aestūs . . . incognitum**: the rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean, as in our Great Lakes, is hardly perceptible. Caesar's men had learned of the existence of tides in the Ocean the previous year (III, chap. 12); what they had failed to notice was the coincidence of the highest tides with the time of the full moon. At Dover the highest tide rises about 19 feet; at Boulogne, 25 feet.

4. **exercitum**, etc.: 'had had the army brought over.' 229, *b*.

7. **administrandī**: 'of managing' the vessels, the crews being on shore.

8. **auxiliandī**: by getting men on to the ships.

9. **fūnibus . . . amissis**: 'on account of the loss of,' etc. 144, *b*, (3).



bus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et quod omnibus cōnstābat, 15 hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

*The Britons, learning of the disaster, secretly plan a revolt.*

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegent, et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt, rebellione factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, his

11. **magna**: with *perturbātiō*; emphatic. 353, d. **id**, etc.: 'as was bound to happen.' How lit.? 160, c.

12. **perturbātiō**: 'commotion.' **Neque**, etc.: 'for there were no other ships.' 90, a. How lit.?

13. **reportārī**: 'be carried back.' **possent**: 194, a.

14. **ūsuī**: trans. as if *utilia*. 112, a. **cōnstābat**, etc.: 'it was clear that they would have to winter.' How lit.?

15. **hīs locis**: in Britain. **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.' 12, a. Rations had been taken for only a limited stay in Britain.

30. 2. **inter sē collocūtī**: 159. B. 245, 1; A. 301, f; H. 502, 1.

5. **quae erant**: 'which was.' **hōc etiam angustiora**: 'even smaller (than usual for two legions) for this reason,' explained by the *quod*-clause. **impedimentis**: left in Gaul. 311.

6. **optimum factū esse**: 'that the best thing to do was.' How lit.? **optimum**: in predicate, after *esse*. 148, d. **factū**: 232.

7. **dūxerunt**: 'decided'; the subject is *principēs* in l. 1. **rebellione factā**: 'renewing hostilities.' How lit.? 144, b, (2). **frūmentō**: 127, a.

8. **rem**: 'their operations.' **hīs**, etc.: 'if these (invaders) should be,' etc. 144, b, (4).

superātis aut reditū interclūsis, nēminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. 10

Itaque, rūsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castris discēdere ac suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

*Caesar, anticipating trouble, gathers supplies and hastens repairs on the ships.*

**31.** At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum, et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum mātēriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum

9. **reditū**: 'return.' 127, a. **postea**: 'in the future.'

11. **paulātim**: one or two at a time. That the British leaders were assembled in the Roman camp is clear from ll. 1-2.

**31.** 1. **cognōverat**: 'was familiar with.' 176, b.

2. **ex . . . suārum**: 'from what had happened to his ships.' How lit.? **ex eō, quod**: 'from the fact that.' 198, b.

4. **ad . . . comparābat**: 'he was providing for every emergency.'

5. **frūmentum**: from the new harvest. Later a head of wheat on British coins became an appropriate symbol of the island's staple crop (Fig. 111). **quae . . . nāvēs, eārum**: = *eārum nāvium, quae*. 165, c.

7. **quae**: as antecedent sc. *ea*, subject-accusative with *comportārī*. **ad eās rēs**: 'for that purpose.'



Figure 111. — British coin.

Gold, struck within a century after Caesar's invasions. Inscription, CAMV-[LODUNI], CUNO[BELINI], 'of Cunobelinus, at Camulodunum,' modern Colchester.

Cunobelinus was a British ruler, better known under the name Cymbeline.

summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus  
 10 missis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

*The Britons make a treacherous attack, using war-chariots.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā  
 frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id  
 tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in  
 agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō  
 portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt,  
 pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte  
 vidēri, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod  
 erat, suspicātus, aliquid novi ā barbaris initum cōnsiliī,  
 cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem

9. **summō studiō**: 'with the utmost enthusiasm.' **administrārētur**: 'the work was carried on.' 184, a.

10. **reliquīs**, etc.: sc. *nāvibus* (131, a); 'he made it possible to utilize the others fairly well for navigation.' How lit.? 203, (3).

32. 1. **geruntur**: 190, a. **legiōne**: with *missā*.

2. **frūmentātum**: 'to get grain,' from the fields. 231, a. VII: *septima*. 38, a, and 36. **neque**, etc.: 'without any suspicion of hostilities up to that time.' How lit.?

3. **hominum**: *Britannōrum*. 98, a.

4. **ventitāret**: 'came frequently,' a frequentative from *veniō*. 78, a. **eī**: *militēs*.

5. **portīs castrōrum**: 334, a. **in statiōne**: 'on guard.' 81.

6. **pulverem**: '(a cloud of) dust.' 13, g. **quam**, etc.: 'than usual.' 197, c. **parte**: 'direction.'

7. **quam in partem**: 'in which.' 165, a. **quod erat**: 'which was actually the case.'

8. **suspiciātus**: 226, c. **aliquid**, etc.: 'some new scheme had been worked up.' How lit.? **aliquid**: 168, and 49, a. **initum**: sc. *esse*. 68, b and c. **cōnsiliī**: 97, b.

9. **cohortēs**: probably four in number, one at each of the four gates of the camp. How many men? 307, c. **in statiōnibus**: 'on guard'; plural because each gate was thought of as a separate post.

proficisci, ex reliquis duās in stationem cohortēs succēdere, 10 reliquās armāri et cōfestim sēsē subsequi iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat 15 reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositis armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti, paucis interfectis reliquōs, incertis ordinibus, perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

20

10. **reliquis**: six cohorts, of the 10th legion. The four cohorts on guard went with Caesar; two stood guard in their place, and the last four cohorts of the legion were ordered to arm and follow Caesar as soon as they could. 307, c. **in stationem succēdere**: 'to relieve guard.'

11. **armāri**: 'to arm,' lit. 'to arm themselves.' 174. **cōfestim**: 'with all haste.'

12. **paulō longius**: 'some little distance.' 153, a. **suōs**: the men of the 7th legion.

13. **aegrē sustinēre**: 'were holding their own with difficulty.' **cōnfertā legiōne**: 'since the legion was crowded together.' 144, b, (3). The more closely the men stood the more effective were the missiles of the enemy surrounding them.

14. **conici**: sc. *in eam*. 57, b.

15. **dēmessō**: 'cut.' 144, b, (3). **ūna**: 'only one.'

17. **dēlituerant**: 'had hidden.' **dispersōs, occupātōs**: sc. *eos* (= *nostrōs* of l. 16), object of *adorti*. **dēpositis armīs**: 'having laid aside their weapons.'

18. **in metendō**: 'in reaping.' 230, (4). **adorti**: 226, c.

19. **incertis ordinibus**: 'since their ranks were in disorder,' a proper formation being impossible under the circumstances.

20. **essedis**: 'with war chariots.' Scythed war chariots, with a long sharp blade projecting from each end of the axle, were in use in Oriental countries, but the British chariots to which Caesar refers were apparently without scythes. Remains of chariot wheels have been found in the graves of warriors.

*The way the Britons use war-chariots in battle.*

**33.** Genus hōc est ex essedis pugnae :

Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant, et tēla coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.

Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, si illi ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant.

**33. 1. ex essedis:** with *pugnae*. 150, d. B. 353, 5, N.

**2. per . . . perequitant:** sc. *essedarii*; 'they' (the chariot-fighters) 'ride everywhere.' Each chariot (Fig. 112) carried a driver and one fighter. As the drivers dashed against the enemy, the men in the chariots sprang out and fought on foot. The chariots meanwhile withdrew a little from the thick of the fight, so that the drivers could see how the battle was going. If they saw their warriors defeated in any part of the line they swiftly drove thither, took on board those hard pressed, and quickly passed beyond the reach of danger.



Figure 112. — British war chariot.

**3. terrōre equōrum:** 'fright caused by the horses'; subjective genitive. 95. **ordinēs:** 'the ranks' of the enemy.

**4. sē . . . insinuāvērunt:** 'they have penetrated'; the British cavalry were so deployed as to leave spaces through which the chariots could be driven against the enemy.

**5. pedibus:** 'on foot.' 131, a.

**6. Aurigae:** 'the drivers.' ita . . . ut: 197, b.

**7. illi:** the chariot-fighters. premantur: 220.

**8. ad suōs:** 'to their own lines,' we should say. receptum: 'a retreat.'

Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, 10 uti in dēclivī ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere, et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

*Caesar brings aid; the Britons prepare to attack the camp.*

**34.** Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris, novitāte pugnae, tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacesendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō con-

tinuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agris reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs com-

9. **stabilitātem**: 'steadiness.' **peditum**: 10, *d.*

10. **praestant**: 'exhibit'; sc. *essedārī*. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: 'they become so expert.' How lit.?

11. **incitātōs equōs sustinēre**: 'to keep control of their horses at full gallop.' How lit.?

12. **brevī**: for *brevi tempore*, 'in an instant.' **moderārī**: 'to check.' **flectere**: 'to turn.' **per**, etc.: 'to run along the pole.'

13. **iugō**: yokes were used with horses as well as cattle; see Fig. 29, p. 8. **citissimē**: 'with the utmost quickness.' 34, *b.*

**34.** 1. **rēbus**: ablative of means. **nostris**: dative after *tulit*. 154, *a.* **novitāte**: 'strangeness.' 135, *a.*

4. **Quō factō**: 'Though this had been accomplished,' referring to the effects of Caesar's arrival. 144, *b.* (5).

5. **aliēnum**: 'unfavorable.' **suō**: 'favorable,' to himself. How lit.?

7. **nostris**, etc.: while the Romans were busy repairing ships and strengthening their defenses, the Britons 'withdrew' from the open country, gathering for attack. **quī**: as antecedent, sc. *et* as subject of *discessērunt*.

plūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

Interim barbari nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitatemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

*Caesar repels the attack on the camp and pursues the Britons.*

**35.** Caesar, etsi idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcūm trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuerunt, complūrēs ex eis

9. quae . . . continērent: 194, a. B. 283; H. 591, 2.

13. praedae faciendae: 'of securing booty.' in perpetuum: 'forever.' suī: 164, b. B. 339, 5; A. 504, c; H. 626, 3.

14. darētur: 204, (3). expulissent: 218, (1), b.

15. His rēbus: 'by means of these statements.' How lit.? equitātūs: apparently including also the *essedarii*, the close connection of whom with the cavalry has already been noted.

35. 1. idem: subject of *fore*, explained by the appositive clause *ut* . . . effugerent. 203, (4).

3. effugerent: 'they would escape from.' nactus: 61, a, (3), and 226, c. xxx: a squad (*turma*). 38, b, and 309, c.

4. ante: chap. 21, 14-20. The 30 horsemen were too few to be of service except in scouting or in following up a fleeing enemy.

6. diūtius: 'very long.' 153, a.

7. ac: 'but.' 234, b. tantō spatiō, etc.: 'so far as their speed and strength allowed.' How lit.? 147, c. secūti, etc.: *sc nostri*.

8. complūrēs: accusative. ex eis: 97, d.

occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis,  
sē in castra recēpērunt.

10

*The Britons sue for peace. Caesar sails back to Gaul.*

**36.** Eōdem diē lēgātī, ab hostibus missī, ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctii, infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat.

5

Ipse, idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt, sed ex eis onerariae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt.

*Legionaries from two transports are attacked by the Morini.*

**37.** Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Caesar, in

**36. 2. Hīs:** with *duplicāvit*; kind of dative? 109, a. **quem,** etc.: see chap. 27, ll. 12-19.

**3. duplicāvit:** 'doubled.'

**4. propinquā diē aequinoctii:** 'since the season of the equinox was near at hand,' a period when storms are unusually prevalent. 144, b, (3). The equinox fell on September 26, and Caesar probably left Britain at least a week before that date. He had been on the island about three weeks, and had hardly been able to go out of sight of the seashore.

**5. hiemī,** etc.: 'that the voyage ought to run the risk of stormy weather.' How lit.?

**8. eōsdem portūs:** probably Boulogne and Ambleteuse.

**9. reliquae:** 'as the rest'; sc. *nāvēs cēpērunt*. **capere:** 'make.' **paulō infrā:** i.e. southwest. Whether the two transports made some harbor, or were stranded on the beach, Caesar does not say.

**37. 1. Quibus nāvibus:** 'these vessels,' the two transports mentioned in l. 8 of the preceding chapter. **essent expositi:** 'had been landed.'

**2. ccc: trecenti,** averaging about 150 men to a ship. **castra:** probably constructed by Publius Sulpicius Rufus for the protection of



Britanniam proficiscēns, pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī, orbe factō, sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt.

Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque  
10 amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt; et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs, abiectis armis, terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

---

the harbor at *portius Itius*, Boulogne; cf. chap. 22, ll. 23-24. **Morini**, etc.: belonging to the part of the Morini who had given hostages to Caesar just before he sailed for Britain; cf. chap. 22, ll. 1-12.

4. **nōn ita magnō**: 'not very large.' **circumsteterunt**: sc. *eōs*, 'the three hundred.'

5. **si . . . nōllent, pōnere**: in the direct form, *si . . . nōn vultis, pōnere*. **pōnere**: here = *dēpōnere*, 'lay down.'

6. **orbe factō**: 'formed a circle and'; how lit.? 144, b, (2). The 'circle' formed by soldiers for defense was hollow and corresponded with our "hollow square." 338. **ad clāmōrem**: 'on (hearing) the shouting' of the attacking Morini. In Gaul news was transmitted quickly by shouting across the country (VII, 3, ll. 8-13).

7. **hominum**: i.e. *Morinōrum*; dependent on *milia*. 98, a. **vi sex**. The number is probably exaggerated; in any case it evidences a much denser population in this region than is implied for the regions penetrated in the expedition against the Morini and Menapii the previous year; cf. III, chap. 28-29.

8. **omnem equitātum**: including probably the cavalry that had embarked in the 18 transports but had failed to reach Britain (chap. 22, ll. 16-19), as well as the contingent left with Sulpicius (chap. 22, ll. 23-24); the rest must have gone with Titurius Sabinus and Cotta (chap. 22, ll. 20-22).

12. **Postea quam**: 188, a. **vērō**: 236, a.

*Caesar inflicts punishment upon the Morini and Menapii.*

**38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis legiōnibus, quās ex Britannīā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebellīonem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō fuerant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem, Labiēni pervēnerunt.

At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vastātis, frūmentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. 10

*Winter quarters in Belgium. Thanksgiving decreed at Rome.*

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitatēs ex Britannīā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

**38. 1. T. Labiēnum:** he had probably accompanied Caesar to Britain.

**3. Quī cum:** 'And since they.' 184, a. **siccitatēs:** plural because there was dryness in a number of marshes; trans. 'dryness.' 92, c.

**4. quō, etc.:** '(a placē) to which they might escape.' 194, a. **quō perfugiō:** i.e. *perfugium*, quō, 'the refuge which.' 166, b.

**5. superiōre annō:** 56 B.C.; cf. III, chap. 28-29.

**7. Menapiōrum:** N. to III, 28, l. 3, and Fig. 113.

**10. in, etc.:** cf. I, 12, l. 11 and N.

**13. reliquae neglēxērunt:** *obsidēs mittere*. The expedition to Britain, as that into Germany, was followed by no tangible results; but great fame was thereby won by the daring general for having opened up to his fellow-countrymen new and extensive regions. Hence the thanksgiving



Figure 113.—Coin of the Menapii.

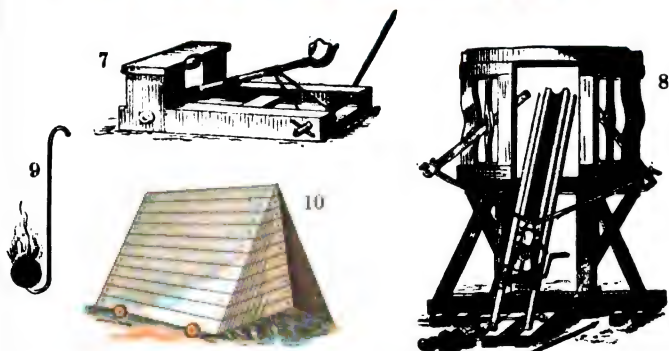
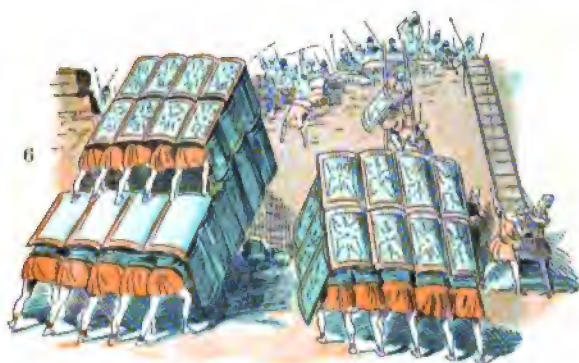
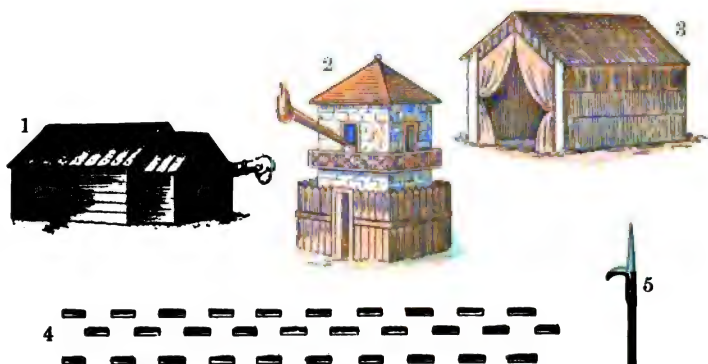
Gold, of very crude workmanship. The attribution to the Menapii is not certain.

His rēbus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris diērum xx sup-  
15 plicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

---

decreed at Rome, obtained by his friends for Caesar in the face of all the opposition that his enemies could stir up (N. to chap. 14, l. 14).

14. **supplicātiō**: cf. II, 35, ll. 10-12. This 'thanksgiving' was to be 5 days longer than the one decreed at the end of 57 B.C., though that was the longest known up to that time.



1. Timbered Shed, *testudo*, with Battering Ram.
2. Fire-signal Tower.
3. Tent, *tabernaculum*.
4. Order of Battle.
5. Wall Hook, *falx muralis*.
6. Turtle-shell roof, *testudo*.
7. *Onager*.
8. *Ballista*.
9. *Glans fusili ex argilla* (V. 43).
10. Turtle-shell shed, *testudo*.



## COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

### Second Expedition to Britain. 1-23

*Caesar orders ships built, and quiets disturbances in Illyricum.*

1. L. DOMITIŌ, Ap. Claudiŏ cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, uti, quam plūrimās possent, hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent.

5



Figure 114. — View across Belgium's fertile fields.

Caesar usually chose the site of his winter quarters with reference to the grain supply.

1. 1. L. Domitiŏ, Ap. Claudiŏ cōsulibus: 54 B.C. 240, a, and 234, a.

2. hibernis: in Belgium (IV, chap. 38). Italiam: 283, b.

Eārum mōdum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandi subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō mari ūti cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus  
 10 magnōs ibi fluctūs fieri cognōverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquis ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitās multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā ap-  
 15 portārī iubet.

Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctis, in Īlyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirustis finitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitātibus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet.  
 20 Quā rē nūntiātā, Pirustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nīhil eārum rērum publicō factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum, Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūci iubet; nisi ita fē-  
 25 cerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eis ad diem adductis, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātēs dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

7. *onerandī*: 'of loading.' *subductiōnēs*: 'beaching.' 92, a. *humiliōrēs*: 'shallower.' *quam quibus*: i.e. *quam eas [nāvēs] sunt, quibus*.

9. *commūtātiōnēs aestuum*: cf. IV, 29, l. 2, and N.

11. *lātiōrēs*: predicative; sc. *eās facit*.

12. *āctuāriās*: predicative, 'for rapid movement,' with the use of oars as well as sails.

13. *humilitās*: 'lowness' of the deck above the water.

14. *Hispāniā*: 296. *apportārī*: 'be brought.'

16. *perāctis*: 'finished.' *Īlyricum*: 298.

18. *incursiōnibus*: 'raids.'

26. *arbitrōs*: 'referees.' 7, c, and 80, b.

27. *litem*: 'the (matter of) damages.'

*Proceeding to Gaul he finds ships ready, visits the Treverans.*

2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque perāctis, in ceteriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC eius generis, cuius suprà dēmōstrāvimus, nāvēs, et longās xxviii, invenit instrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quin paucis diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātis militibus atque eis, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognōverat, circiter milium passuum xxx ā continentī; huic rei, quod satis esse vīsum est militum, reliquit.

Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis iiii et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trāns- rhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

*By means of hostages he binds Indutiomarus to keep the peace.*

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque; ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, tangit.

In eā civitatē duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorix; ē quibus alter, simul atque dēs Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futurōs neque ab amicitia

2. 5. DC: *sescentās*. *oulus*: *cuius generis nāvēs*; trans. *cuius* as if *quod*. *suprà*: in chap. 1.

6. *longās*: i.e. *nāvēs duodetrīgintā*. 346, a. *neque*, etc.: 'and that in a few days they would be about ready to launch.' How lit.?

7. *Collaudātis*: 'warmly commending.' How lit.?

12. *huic rei*: 'for this purpose.' *quod mīlitum*: 'so many soldiers as.' 97, b.

3. 3. *suprà*: III, II, ll. 1-2. *tangit*: 'extends to'; lit. 'touches.'



populi Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur, ostendit.

- 10 At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eisque, qui per aetātem in armis esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae, ingenti magnitūdine, per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed postea quam nōn  
15 nūlli principēs ex eā civitāte, et familiāritāte Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti, ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis privātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitāti cōsulere nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indutiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem  
20 mittit :

*Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nobilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberētur; itaque civitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, si Caesar  
25 permittet, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās civitātisque fortūnās eius fidēi permissūrum.*

4. Caesar, etsi intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dicerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aetātem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātis, Indutiomārum ad  
5 sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. His adductis, in eis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōsōlātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est, uti in officiō

11. *per aetātem*: 'by reason of age.' *in armis esse*: i.e. *arma ferre*.

21. *Sēsē*, etc.: '(saying) that he.' *idcirco*: 'on this account.'

23. *imprudentiam*: 'lack of foresight.' *lāberētur*: 'fall away,' becoming disloyal.

4. 2. *ab institūtō cōnsiliō*: 'from (carrying out) the plan (which he had) formed.'

6. *ēvocāverat*: sc. *Caesar*.

manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis, hōs singillatim Cingetorigi conciliāvit; quod cum meritō eius ab sē fieri intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābātur, eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspexisset.

Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, suam grātiā inter suōs minui, et, qui iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

15

*Caesar gathers his forces at portus Itius.*

5. His rēbus cōstitūtis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit.

Ibi cognōscit, LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte reiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās, ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invenit.

Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milium quattuor, principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

9. **quod oum**, etc.: 'and not only did he understand that he was doing this in accordance with what Cingetorix deserved.' How lit.? 186, b.

10. **eius**: *Cingetorigis*. 19, d. **magnī**: 103, d.

14. **quī**: 'although he.' 187. B. 283, 3, b; H. 593, 2.

15. **gravius . . . exārsit**: 'on account of this grievance he became much more indignant.' How lit.?

5. 3. **nāvēs**, etc.: these vessels had to be taken down the Marne and the Seine to the Channel, then north to Boulogne (portus Itius); see Map II.

7. **numerō**: 142, a, and 85. **mīlium**: dependent on *equitātus*. 100, a, and 309, b.

11. **abesset**: 185, c.

*Dumnorix attempts to elude Caesar's vigilance, and is slain.*

6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis  
5 cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.
- 10 Ine omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod, insuētus nāvigandi, mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Postēā quam id obstinātē sibi negāri vidit, omni spē impe-  
trandi adēptā, principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre sin-  
15 gulōs hortārique coepit, uti in continentī remanērent; metū territāre:

*Nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nōbilitate spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trā-*  
20 *ductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, com-*  
*mūni cōsiliō administrārent.*

6. 2. ante: I, chap. 16–20. Dumnorix had always opposed Caesar.

3. eum: sc. esse. 289, c.

6. sibi . . . dēferri: contrary to the constitution of the Aeduans, who elected a Vergobret annually; see I, 16, ll. 12–14.

11. insuētus nāvigandi: 'unused to sailing.' 230, (1).

12. religiōnibus: 'by religious scruples.' dīceret: 183, b.

13. obstinātē: 'persistently.'

14. sēvocāre: 'to call aside,' for secret conference. 79, d.

16. tērritāre: sc. edōs; 'he worked upon their fears (saying).' 182, and 213, b. How lit.?

17. spoliārētur: 'was being stripped,' by taking the leading men to Britain.

Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitatī Aeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locis flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōscendere nāvēs iubet.

At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castris, insciente Caesare, domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pāreat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc, sē absente, prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, qui praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns, liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

7. 3. posset: sc. eum coercere et dēterre.

4. prōspiciendum: sc. esse statuēbat.

6. eō locō: portus Itius, Boulogne. commorātus: 'while waiting.' Cōrus: 'from the northwest.'

8. dabat operam: 'was taking pains.'

10. tempestātem: cf. IV, 23, l. 2, and N.

16. retrahī: sc. eum, 'that he be brought back.'

18. prō sānō: 'like a man in his senses.' How lit.? praesentis: sc. sui, i.e. Caesaris.

20. clāmitāns: 'crying out.' 78, a.

*Caesar sails to Britain, lands, and captures a stronghold.*

8. His rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continētī cum III legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continētī reliquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit.

Et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et, longius dēlātus aestū, ortā  
10 luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum, rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus, rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs,  
15 nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequāunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognōvit, cum magnae manūs  
20 eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās suī quisque commodi causā

8. 4. prō . . . rē: 'as conditions at the time might require.' How lit.?

5. parī: trans. as if eōdem.

8. Āfricō: 'southwest wind.' Caesar probably sailed about July 6.

11. aestūs, etc.: the change of course is shown on Map II, A.

12. caperet: 'reach.'

14. laudanda: 'praiseworthy.' vectōriīs, etc.: 'heavy transports.'

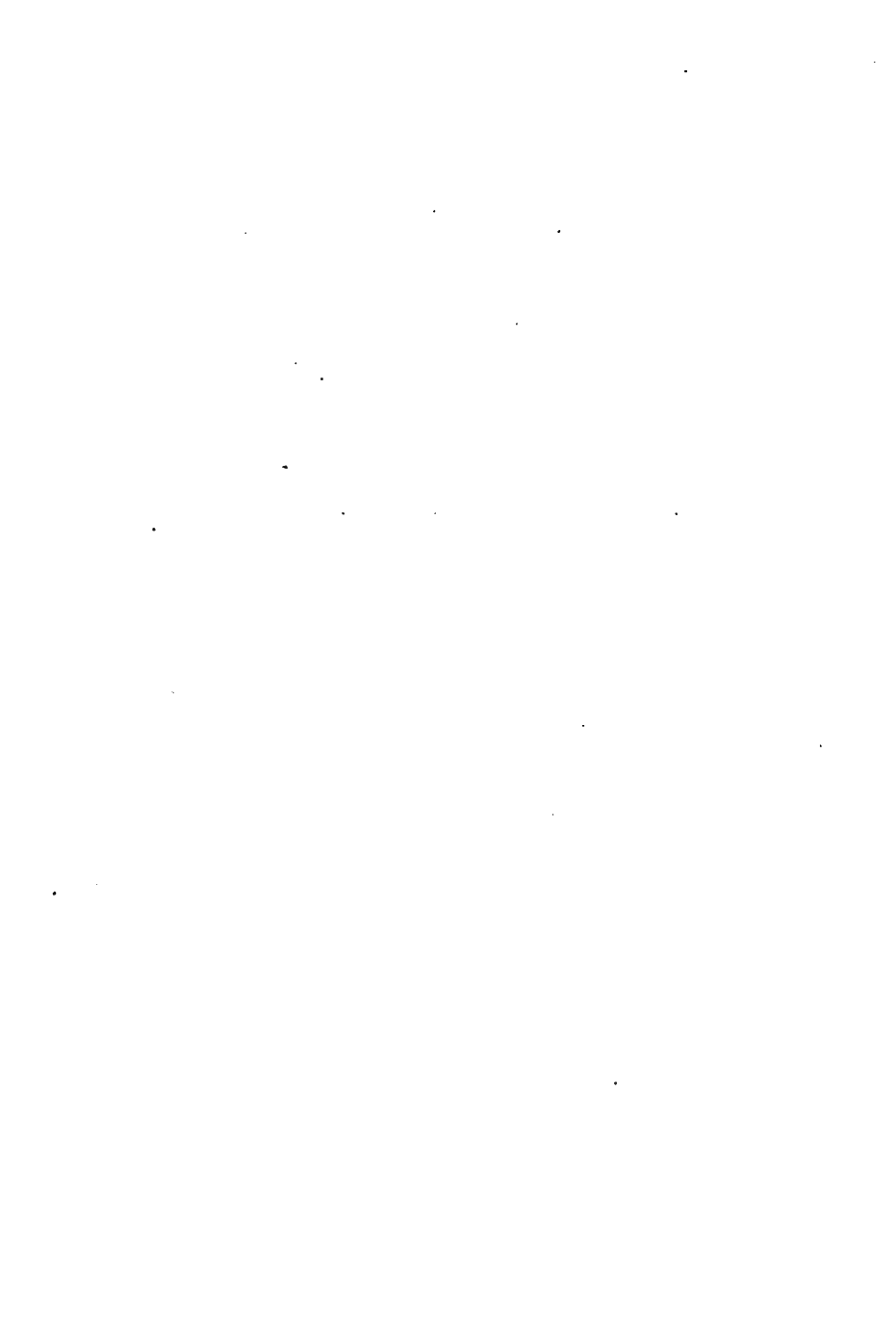
15. rēmigandī: 'of rowing'; the transports were provided with oars, in addition to the usual sails (Fig. 202, in Vocab.).

17. meridiānō tempore: 'midday.'

21. annōtinis: sc. nāvibus, 'ships of the previous year.'



Between Dover and Deal. The cliff is here about 400 feet high. At the top is the lighthouse of South Foreland.



fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cognōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat; eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefēcit. Ipse, noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii, hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.

Illi, equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī belli, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praelūsi. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant, nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūram ignōrābat, et quod, magnā 20

22 DCCC: *octingentae*; with *quae*, 'of which more than 800.' 97, c, and 129, b.

9. 3. quī . . . essent: 'to guard the ships.' How lit.? 193, a, and 112, b.

5. nāvibus: dative. molli: affording good anchorage.

9. essedis: see IV, chap. 33 and Notes. flūmen: the Great Stour; see Map II.

14. omnēs, etc.: 'all the entrances were obstructed.'

15. rārī prōpugnābant: 'in small bodies were hurling missiles.' How lit.? The British stronghold was perhaps near Canterbury.

16. prohibēbant: 'were trying to prevent.' 175, c, and 223, a.

17. testūdine: 345. aggere: probably made of tree trunks. 341.



parte diēi cōnsūptā, mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*A storm shatters the fleet; Caesar orders repairs, returns inland.*

**10.** Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō ad Caesarem vērunt, qui nūntiarent, superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

**11.** His rēbus cognitis, Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocāri atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque cognoverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut, āmissis circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur.

Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continenti aliōs arcessi iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, eis legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse,

**10. 1. tripertitō:** 'in three columns.'

**2. in expeditiōnem:** 'for a rapid march,' with light equipment.

**3. aliquantum itineris:** 'some distance.' How lit.? **extrēmī:** 'the rear' of the Roman force was just visible to those in camp.

**11. 2. in itinere resistere:** to beat off the enemy, without halting for a pitched battle.

**3. nūntiis:** 'messengers,' mounted (chap. 10, l. 4). **litteris:** 'dispatch,' from Quintus Atrius.

**5. negōtiō:** 'trouble.'

**6. fabrōs:** 'mechanics.' 7, c, and 310, b.

**8. eis legiōnibus:** 'with (the help of) the legions,' at portus Itius. 160, d.

etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūci et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungi. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōsūmit, nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis.

Subductis nāvibus castrisque egregiē mūnitis, eādem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellique administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed, nostrō adventū permōti, Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque prae-fecerant.

*The Britons and their island.*

**12.** Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur, quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis, qui praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiē-

9. **rēs**, etc.: 'it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking.' How lit.? 100, b.

10. **subdūci**: the ships were built so that they could be beached; chap. 1, ll. 6-10.

15. **eodem**, etc.: the British stronghold, near modern Canterbury (chap. 9, ll. 11-19).

20. **Tamesis**: only the upper Thames formed the boundary of the territories ruled by Cassivellaunus. 14, c. **marī**: at the point where Caesar landed, near Deal.

**12. 1. quōs**, etc.: *quōs nātōs* [*esse*] is subject of *prōditum* [*esse*]; 'who, they say, according to tradition, originated in the island itself.' How lit.? 294.

2. **dicunt**: 172, c. Several ancient peoples considered themselves "autochthones," sprung from the soil in the region in which they dwelt.

runt (quī omnēs ferē eis nōminibus cīvitatū appellatur, s quibus orti ex civitatibus eō pervēnērunt), et, bellō illātō, ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinīta multītūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō, aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus ex-  
10 āminātis, prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus,

4. quī, etc.: there was, for example, a British tribe called *Atrebatēs*.

6. **Hominum**, etc.: 'The population is beyond number.' How lit.?



Figure 115. — British gold coin.

Probably in circulation in Caesar's time. Obverse, curious patterns; reverse, conventional horse, star, chariot wheel.

7. **aedificia**: sc. *sunt*. **Gallicis** [aedificiis]: large round huts of timbers and wickerwork, with conical thatched roofs.

8. **aere**: 'bronze,' bronze coins. The earliest British bronze coins yet discovered date from a few years after Caesar's time.

9. **nummō aureō**: 'gold coins,' we should say. Gold coins began to be struck in Britain at least a hundred

years before Caesar's invasions (Fig. 115). **tāleis ferreis**: 'iron bars.' **ad**, etc.: 'weighed to a certain standard,' lit. 'weight.' The iron currency bars that have been found represent several different weights, the heaviest being twice as heavy as the second, and so on.

11. **Nāscitur**: 'is found.' **plumbum album**: 'tin,' which began to be exported from Cornwall as early as the ninth century, B.C. **mediterrāneis**: 'inland.' The Cornish tin mines were in reality near the sea, but they were a long distance from Caesar's landing-place.

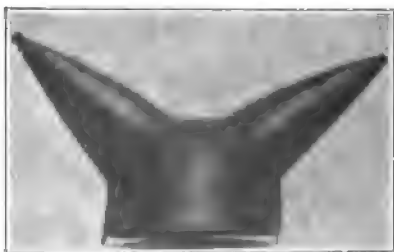


Figure 116. — British helmet.  
Of bronze; found in the Thames at London.

were a long distance from Caesar's

in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est, praeter fāgum atque abietem.

Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; 15 haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frigoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum D.

5

12. *ferrum*: iron mines were worked in Sussex from the prehistoric period to the nineteenth century. *aere*: some bronze seems to have been imported into Britain (Fig. 125), but most of the bronze objects found in Britain were made there, from native mixtures of the component metals (Fig. 116).

14. *fāgum*: 'beech.' 5, b. Caesar seems to have been mistaken in saying that the beech was not found in Britain; but his opportunities for direct observation were limited. *abietem*: 'fir.' 10, e.

15. *Leporem*, etc.: 'hare, chicken, and goose.' The origin of the superstition it is difficult to understand; for the hare, cf. Levit. xi. 6. 13, g, and 234, a. *ānserem*: 11, c. *gustāre*: 'to taste.'

16. *haec alunt*: 'they raise these.' *animi*, etc.: 'for pastime and amusement.' *Loca*: 'the region.' 8, c. *sunt temperātiōra*: 'has a milder climate.' How lit.?

17. *remissiōribus frigoribus*: 'the cold being less severe.' How lit.? 92, c, and 13, f.

13. 1. *nātūrā*: 'in shape'; lit. 'by nature.' *triquetra*: 'triangular.' *contrā*: 'opposite.'

2. *alter angulus*: 'one corner.' *ad Cantium*: 'by Kent' (Map 12, A); the boundaries of Kent in Caesar's time are not known with exactness.

3. *quō*: refers to *angulus*. *appelluntur*: 'come to land.' How lit.? *ad orientem sōlem*: 'toward the east.' How lit.?

4. *Inferior* [angulus]: see Map 12, B. *ad meridiem*: 'toward the south.'

5. *D: quīngentōrum*; how many English miles in 500 Roman miles? 243, a, b.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem ;  
 quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidiō minor, ut existimātur,  
 quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmis̄sūs, atque ex  
 Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula,  
 10 quae appellātur Mona ; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs sub-  
 iectae insulae existimantur ; dē quibus insulis nōn nūlli  
 scrīpsērunt, diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmā esse noctem.  
 Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certis  
 ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs

6. **Alterum** [latus], etc. : 'The second side has a westerly trend, toward Spain.' How lit.? Caesar's erroneous belief that Spain extended north nearly to Britain was shared by his contemporaries, and even by some writers after his time. See Map 12.

7. **quā ex parte** : 'and on this side.' **dimidiō minor** : 'a half smaller.' How lit.? 140.

8. **Britannia** : sc. *est*. **parī**, etc. : '(reached by) a passage just as long as that from Gaul to Britain.' How lit.? **parī spatiō** : descriptive ablative, taking the place of an adjective, and coördinated with *minor* by *sed*. **trāsmis̄sūs** : genitive, depending on *spatiō*. **atque** : 233, c.

9. **In . . . cursū** : 'half way across,' between Britain and Ireland. How lit.? 152, a.

10. **Mona** : see Map 12. **subiectae** [esse], etc. : 'are thought to lie off (the coast on this side).'

11. **insulae** : probably the Hebrides are referred to **nōn nūlli scrīpsērunt** : perhaps Greek writers, whose works have perished, are meant.

12. **sub brūmā** : 'about the winter solstice.' The statement regarding a period of thirty days without the sun is not true of the Hebrides or of the other islands near Scotland.

13. **Nōs** : 156. **percontātiōnibus** : 'through inquiries.' **certis**, etc. : 'by exact measurements (made) with a water-clock.' How lit.? A water-clock, *clepsydra*, was used in a Roman camp, especially to mark the watches. 242, e.

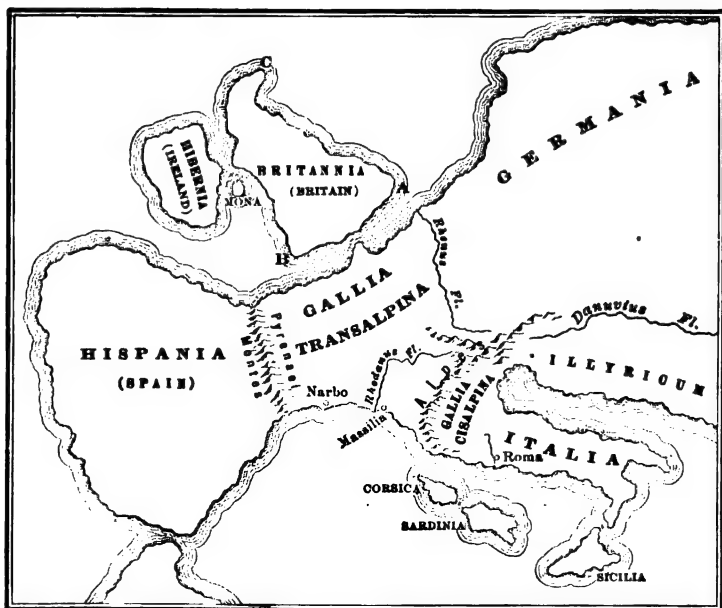
14. **ex aquā** : with *mēnsūris*. 150, d. **breviōrēs** : Caesar's observations were made in summer ; in winter the nights would of course be longer.

## MAP 12

### MAP OF BRITAIN AS CONCEIVED BY CAESAR

Book V, 13

To face page 300



### EXPLANATION

In view of the meagerness of Caesar's information, his statement about the geography of Britain is surprisingly near the truth in essential particulars. In this respect it compares favorably with the statements of modern travelers and explorers in regard to regions of which they have seen only a small part.

He knew that the Island was triangular in shape, and in his two expeditions he had himself seen a portion of the coast facing Gaul (chap. 13, l. 1). He could easily believe that one corner (A) faced east, another (B) toward the south. His language implies that he had a vague idea of a projection eastward (C) at the northern extremity (l. 18). He knew the location, and approximately the size, of Ireland (l. 7).

Caesar, as other ancients, found it more difficult to estimate distances north and south than east and west. He fell easily into the error of supposing that the northern end of Spain extended so far that it lay west of the southern part of Britain (l. 6); and his conception of the relative positions of the two Gauls, Italy and Illyricum, was probably very nearly as represented.

The strait between Italy and Sicily, now Strait of Messina, is called by Caesar *Fretum* (C. II, l. 3).

leum efficit colorem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō.

*The Britons fight fiercely, but Caesar defeats them.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācrit̄er proeliō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, ita tamen, ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās colēsque compulerint; sed, complūribus interfectis, cupidius insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt.

At illi, intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castris collocāti, ācrit̄er pugnāvērunt; duābusque missis  
10 subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissēt, novō genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum,  
15 interficitur. Illi, plūribus summissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium

7. hōc: 'on this account.' horridiōrēs aspectū: 'rather wild-looking'; similar was the use of war-paint by the American Indians. How lit.? 142, a.

8. capillō, etc.: 'they let their hair grow long.' How lit.?

15. 1. Equitēs, etc.: cf. IV. 33, and Notes. The narrative, interrupted by the description of Britain, is here resumed from chap. 11.

10. atque, etc.: 'and those the first.' 161, c.

11. perexiguō: 'very small.' 79, b. inter sē: 'apart.'

12. novō, etc.: the two cohorts had evidently not been on the first expedition. per mediōs: between the cohorts.

16. 1. genere, etc.: 'throughout the engagement, with fighting of this sort.' How lit.? sub oculis omnium: i.e. in cōspectū omnium.

ac prō castris dimicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequi cēdentēs possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum periculō proeliō dimicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilirent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed



Figure 117. — Scene in a Roman camp.

Left to right: background, captives, foreground, legionary in marching order; cavalry officer; legionaries, one with head bandaged in consequence of a wound; Roman standards; three captured standards, one in the left hand of a military tribune, the other two lying on the ground; commander-in-chief, lictors, second in command, and horn blowers.

2. **intellēctum est**: 'it was evident.' How lit.?

6. **illi**, etc.: 'they,' the Britons, 'would fall back purposely.'

8. **dispari proeliō**: 'in battle with the advantage on their side,' because Caesar's Gallic cavalry were no match for warriors fighting on foot. How lit.?

9. **Accēdēbat hūc**: 'There was the further fact that.' **cōnfertī**: 'in close formation.'



10 *rārī* magnisque intervāllis proeliārentur statīōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius, quam pridīē, nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed meridiē, cum Caesar, pābulandī causā, iii legiōnēs atque omnem 5 equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt sic, utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.

Nostri, ācritē in eōs impetū factō, reppulērunt neque finem sequendi fēcērunt, quoad, subsidiō cōnfisī, equitēs, 10 cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō, neque suī colligendi neque cōsistendi, aut ex essedis dēsiliendi, facultātem dedērunt.

Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia 15 discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

10. *rārī*: 'in small bodies.' *statīōnēs*: here 'reserves.'

11. *aliōs*, etc.: 'were relieving one another in turn.' 171, *b*.

12. *dēfatigātis*: 227, *a*, (4).

17. 4. *pābulandī causā*: 'to forage.' Three legions and the cavalry made a foraging party of extraordinary size.

6. *pābulātōrēs*: 'foragers.' *advolāvērunt*: 'rushed upon.' How lit.? *ab . . . absisterent*: 'they did not hold back from the standards of the legions,' lit. 'and the legions'; the Britons even charged upon the legionaries, formed in order of battle. 238, *d*, and 324, *b*, (2).

9. *quoad*: 190, *c*. *subsidiō*: 'on the support (of the legions).' 135, *a*.

10. *cum*: 184, *a*. *praecipitēs*: accusative, 'head over heels.' 151.

11. *suī colligendi*: 164, *b*. B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; H. 626, 3.

14. *Ex*: 'after.' *auxilia*: *auxilia Britannōrum*.

*With great dash Caesar's men force the passage of the Thames.*

**18.** Caesar, cognitō cōsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omninō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsirī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit, ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixis mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur.

His rēbus cognitis ā captivīs perfugisque, Caesar, prae-missō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō impetū militēs iērunť, cum capite 10 sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dimitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

*Cassivellaunus harasses Caesar's army on the march.*

**19.** Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiīs, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestri-

**18. 1. cōnsiliō:** the 'plan' of the Britons, revealed in chap. 19.

**3. locō:** 145, c.    **hōc:** sc. locō.

**6. acūtis sudibus:** 'with sharp stakes.'    **praefixis:** 'driven in front,' at the water's edge.

**10. cum,** etc.: 'though they were in water up to the chin.' How lit.? Caesar crossed the Thames from the south to the north side; precisely where he crossed, is not known. See Map 11.

**19. 2. contentiōnis:** 'of a general engagement.'    **ampliōribus cōpiīs:** 'the greater part of his forces.'

**3. IIII quattuor.** It is not possible to determine whether Caesar means that Cassivellaunus kept in the field 4000 chariot-drivers, each having a chariot and accompanied by a warrior (N. to IV, 33, l. 2), making a force of 8000 men, or whether in *essedāriōrum* both drivers and warriors are included; in the latter case there would be 2000 chariots, each with two men, making a total of 4000 men.

5 coāctis omnibus cōpiis, castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorian-  
tur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri,  
ēruptiōne factā, multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili  
duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis  
10 acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfec-  
tiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dē-  
ditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōstituisset  
hiemāre in continenti propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs,  
neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī  
15 posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs  
singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet,  
cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Man-  
dubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

*Caesar returns to the coast, finds ships ready, sails to Gaul.*

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs  
invenit reffectās. Hīs dēductis, quod et captivōrum mag-  
num numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dē-  
perierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre  
5 instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot  
nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla om-  
ninō nāvis, quae milites portāret, dēsiderārētur, at ex eis,

5. castra nāvālia: see chap. 11, ll. 8-13.

8. Lugotorige: 10, c. incolumēs: predicative.

14. id, etc.: 'and that this could easily be wasted,' lit. 'drawn out,'  
in profitless negotiations.

15. quid — vectigālis: 97, b. in annōs singulōs: 'each year.'

17. interdicit, etc.: 'laid the strictest injunctions on Cassivellaunus.' How lit. ? 175, b.

23. 2. reffectās: 'repaired'; cf. chapters 10, 11. dēductis:  
'launched,' lit. 'drawn down' to the water, from the fortified enclosure  
(castra nāvālia, chap. 22, l. 5) in which they had been guarded and  
repaired.

4. duōbus commeātibus: 'in two trips.' 136, b.

quae inānēs ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs, expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, 10 reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur.

Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoc-tium suberat, necessariō angustius milites collocāvit ac, summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset 15 vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

### Division of the Army for the Winter. 24, 25

*Grain being scarce, Caesar for the winter divides his army.*

**24.** Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrī-vae peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā, propter siccitatēs, angustius prōvēnerat, coactus est aliter ac superi-ōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocāre legiōnēque in plūrēs civitatēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam, in Morinōs dūcendam, C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōni, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit;

8. *et, etc.*: 'both (the ships used) in the first trip, (sent back) after the soldiers had been landed, and (other ships) which.'

10. *locum caperent*: 'reached their destination,' Britain.

12. *Quās*: 'these' ships, sent from the continent. 167.

13. *aequinoc-tium*: Caesar must have left Britain shortly after the middle of September, having been two months or more on the island.

14. *necessariō angustius*: 'of necessity rather closely.' 153, a.

24. 1. *Subductis*: cf. chap. I, ll. 6-7. *Samarobrīvae*: 4, a.

3. *siccitatēs*: cf. IV, 38, l. 3, and N. *aliter ac*: 233, c.

6. *dūcendam, etc.*: 'to be led into the country of the Morini.' 229, b.

8. *in cōfiniō Trēverōrum*: 'on the Treveran frontier.' The site of Labienus's camp is indicated on Map II.

trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit: hīs M. Crassum et L.  
 10 Munātiū Plancum et C. Trebōniū lēgātōs praefēcit.

Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, misit. Hīs militibus Q. Titūrium Sabi-  
 15 num et L. Aurunculeiū Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus, facillimē inopiae rei frumentariae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem  
 20 dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

*Tasgetius murdered, Caesar transfers Plancus to the country of the Carnutes.*

25. Erat in Carnutibus, summō locō nātus, Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentīā, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum  
 5 locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem, inimici palam, multis ex civitatē auctōribus, interfēcērunt.

Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad

9. **M. Crassum**: quaestor; see Vocab. under *Crassus*, (3).

11. **trāns Padum**: north of the Po, in Cisalpine Gaul; Caesar writes from the point of view of one in Rome.

16. **inopiae—medērī**: 'to remedy the shortage' (Fig. 114). 106, *b*.

20. **c**: *centum*. Caesar perhaps means that no two camps were more than 100 Roman miles apart; if so, his estimate is somewhat under the truth. 81.

25. 1. **summō locō nātus**: 'of the highest rank by birth.' 128, *a*.

3. **virtūte**: 'efficiency.' **in sē benevolentīā**: 'loyalty to himself.' 150, *d*.

7. **quod**, etc.: 'because a large number were implicated.' How lit.?

plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cognōverat<sup>10</sup> Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere.

Interim ab omnibus lēgātis quaestōreque, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque esse mūnītum.

### Attacks of the Gauls upon Caesar's Winter Camps

#### 1. Destruction of the force under Sabinus and Cotta by Ambiorix, 26-37

*Ambiorix attacks the camp of Sabinus and Cotta, parleys.*

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinū tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad finēs rēgnī sui Sabinō Cottaque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī, suōs concitāvērunt, subitōque oppressis lignātōribus, magnā manū ad castra oppugnātum vērunt.

Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque ūnā ex parte, Hispānis equitibus ēmissis, equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē, hostēs<sup>11</sup>

11. *comprehēnsōs*, etc.: 'to take into custody and send to him.' 228, a.

26. 1. *Diēbus . . . quibus*: 'About fifteen days after.'

3. *Ambiorige et Catuvolcō*: chap. 24, ll. 13-14. 19, d, and 10, c. *Sabinō*, etc.: 'had met Sabinus and Cotta,' whom they came to meet at the Eburonian frontier (*ad finēs rēgnī sui*). How lit.?

5. *Trēverī*: genitive. *suōs*: the Eburones.

6. *lignātōribus*: 'wood foragers,' soldiers detailed to get wood (Fig. 136, p. 402). *manū*: 137, b.

8. *vāllum*: the camp of Sabinus and Cotta was perhaps on the site of modern Limburg; see Map 11.

suos ab oppugnatiōne redūxerunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāverunt, utī aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prōdīret :

*Habere sēsē, quac dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērarent.*

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendi causā C. Arpineius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrii, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, qui iam ante, missū Caesaris, ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōsuērat ; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est :

*Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum eī cōnfiterī debēre, quod, eius operā, stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Atuatucis, finitimis suis, pendere cōsuēssset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quos Atuatuci, 10 obsidum numerō missōs, apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent ; neque id, quod fecerit dē oppugnatiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiō aut voluntāte suā fecisse, sed coactū civitātis, suaeque esse eius modī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō, quam ipse in multitudinem.*

15 *Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūratiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rerum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium ; omnibus 20 hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē*

12. aliqui: 49, a.

14. contrōversiās: 'the questions at issue.'

27. 2. Q. Titūrii: Q. Titūrius Sabinus, called *Sabinus* in l. 3 of chap. 26, and elsewhere. Cf. chap. 24, l. 14. 19, a-c.

3. missū Caesaris: 'sent by Caesar.' How lit.?

6. Sēsē, etc.: *Sēsē cōnfiterī, prō Caesaris beneficiis in sē, (sē) et plūrimum debēre.* 213, b.

8. ei: for *sibi*, referring to Ambiorix.

12. iūdiō: 138. coactū civitātis: 'forced by his state.' How lit.? *suaeque*, etc.: 'and that the conditions of his authority were such.'

*qua legiō alteri legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōsiliū initum vidērētur.*

*Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfecerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiū prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titū-  
rium prō hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutē cōsulat. Mag-  
nam manū Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse;  
hanc affore biduō. Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū, velintne prius  
quam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad  
Cicerōnem, aut ad Labiēnum, dēducere, quōrum alter milia  
passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud  
sē pollicērī et iūre iurandō cōfirmāre, tutum sē iter per suōs  
finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitatī sēsē cōsulere,  
quod hibernis levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā  
referre.*

35

Hāc orātiōne habitā, discēdit Ambiorix.

*Cotta refuses to receive advice from Ambiorix, an enemy;  
Sabinus trusts him.*

28. Arpineius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad lēgātōs  
dēferunt. Illi, repentinā rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea

23. **initum**: sc. *esse*.

24. **Quibus**, etc.: 'Since he had done his duty by them and by his country,' in attacking the Roman camp. Duty to one's country is here expressed by *pietāte*; cf. Fig. 25. How lit.? **habēre**, etc.: 'he recognized (his) obligation.' How lit.?

27. **conductam**: i.e. *conductam mercēde*; 'mercenaries.'

28. **Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū**: 'They (the Roman officers) were to decide.' How lit.? 94, d. **velintne**: 204, (1).

33. **Quod cum faciat**: 'in doing this.' **civitatī**: 105.

34. **hibernis levētur**: 'it would be relieved of the winter encampment.' 127, a, and 335, b. **grātiā referre**: 'and would show his gratitude.' This wily and lying speech lured the Roman force to its destruction.

28. 2. **etsi** . . . **dīcēbantur**: implies Caesar's disapproval of the consideration afforded to Ambiorix's statement.



dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, maximē-  
que hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque  
humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum  
facere ausam vix erat crēdendum.

Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaue inter eōs  
existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculeius complūrēsq̄ue tri-  
būnī militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil  
temere agendum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris dis-  
cēdendum existimābant; quantāsvīs Gallōrum, magnās  
etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse, mūnitis hibernis,  
docēbant:

*Rem esse testimoniō, quod primum hostium impetum,  
multis ultrō vulneribus illātis, fortissimē sustinuerint; rē  
frumentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis hibernis  
et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius  
aut turpius, quam, auctōre hoste, dē summīs rēbus capere  
cōnsilium?*

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum  
maiōrēs manūs hostium, adiūctīs Germānīs, convēnissent,  
aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximis hibernis esset  
acceptum.

4. ignōbilem: 'obscure' (Fig. 118.)

6. ausam [esse]: 62. vix erat crēdendum: 'was hardly  
credible.' How lit.?

9. primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs: cf. I, 41, l. 7 and N.

11. quantāsvīs: cōpiās; 'any force  
of Gauls,' no matter how great.

15. rē, etc.: 'that there was no  
difficulty about supplies.' How lit.?

17. quid esse: 217, c.

18. auctōre hoste: 'on the advice  
of an enemy.' 144, b, (2).

29. 1. sērō: 'too late.' factū-  
rōs: sē factūrōs esse. olāmitābat:  
'kept protesting loudly.' 78, a.



Figure 118. — Coin of the  
Eburones.

Gold. The curved designs on the ob-  
verse perhaps represent boar's tusks.

*Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionem. Caesarem, sē arbi-  
trārī, profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs interfici-  
endī Tasgetiū cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī  
ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs  
esse.*

*Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre: subesse<sup>10</sup>  
Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovisti mortem et  
superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam, tot contumēliis  
acceptis, sub populī Rōmānī imperiū redāctam, superiōre  
glōriā rei militāris exstinctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi per-  
suādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad eius modī cōsiliū<sup>15</sup>  
dēscendisse?*

*Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: sī  
nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem  
perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentiret,  
ūnam esse in celeritāte positā salutē. Cottae quidem<sup>20</sup>  
atque eōrum, quī dissentirent, cōsiliū quem habēre exi-  
tum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā  
obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.*

6. Italiam: 283, b. interficiendī, etc.: chap. 25.

7. sī adesset . . . ventūrōs esse: 218, (3).

8. nostrī: 155. ad, etc.: i.e. castra oppugnātūrōs esse.

10. Sēsē, etc.: 'that he had regard not for the enemy as adviser, but for (the facts of) the situation.'

11. Germānīs, dolōrī: 112, b. Ariovisti mortem: nothing is known about the death of Ariovistus, who was last mentioned in Book I, chap. 53.

12. victōriās: over Ariovistus (I, 30-54), the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV, 1-15), and the expedition into Germany in the previous year (IV, 16-19). ārdēre: 'was ablaze.'

14. exstinctā: 'obscured.' quis, etc.: 217, a.

15. ad . . . dēscendisse: 'had resorted to.'

17. in utramque partem: 'for either alternative.' sī . . . dūrius: 'if nothing serious should happen.' How lit.?

20. ūnam — salutē: 'their only safety.' 363, d.

21. dissentirent: 'disagreed with him.' habēre: 217, c.

*After heated argument Sabinus persuades Cotta to accept Ambiorix's guarantees of safety and leave the camp.*

**30.** Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque ōrdinibus ācrit̄er resisterēt̄ur,

'Vincite,' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars mīlitum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear. Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē, cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī, communem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn, reiecti et relēgātī longē ā cēteris, aut ferrō  
10 aut fame intereant.'

**31.** Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant; *facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; s contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.*

Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta, permōtus, manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur, primā lūce itūrōs.

**30.** 1. *in utramque partem*: 'on both sides.' *disputātiōne*: 'discussion.'

2. *ōrdinibus*: = *centuriōnibus*. *ācrit̄er resisterēt̄ur*: 'vigorous opposition was still offered.'

3. *Vincite*: 'Have your own way.' *et id*: 161, c. *clāriōre vōce*: 'raising his voice.' How lit.?

5. *ex vōbīs*: 97, d. *terrear*: 194, a.

6. *Hī sapient*: 'These,' the soldiers, spoken with a gesture, 'will understand.' *sī*, etc.: 206, (4).

7. *sī . . . liceat*: 'if you would consent.' *perendinō diē*: 'day after tomorrow.'

9. *relēgātī*: 'treated as outlaws.'

**31.** 1. *Cōnsurgitur*: 'all stood up.' How lit.? *comprehendunt*: by the hand. *utrumque*: Sabinus and Cotta.

2. *dissēnsiōne*: 'disagreement.'

7. *dat* — *manūs*: 'yielded'; Sabinus was the senior officer.

Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex<sup>10</sup> instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquare cōgerētur. Omnia ex-cōgitantur, quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeātur.

Prīmā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimō cōn-<sup>15</sup>siliū datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentis.



Figure 119. — Looking down into a depression thought by some to be the valley where the ambush took place.

10. **quid**: '(to see) what.'

11. **Instrūmentō**: 'outfit.' **Omnia**, etc.: 'Every reason was thought of (to prove to themselves) both why they could not remain without danger and (why) the danger would be increased by the exhaustion of the soldiers resulting from (unrelieved) watches.' How lit.?

14. **ut . . . persuāsum**: 'like men convinced,' i.e. *ut* ('as') *ei quibus persuāsum esset* (subjunctive of characteristic).

16. **longissimō**, etc.: with disregard of every precaution.

*The Roman force, enticed into a defile, is treacherously attacked.*

**32.** At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigili-  
isque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis  
bipertitō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā milibus  
passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum expectā-  
bant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem  
dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt  
novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque,  
iniquissimō nostris locō, proelium committere coepērunt.

**33.** Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset,  
trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen  
ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod  
plērumque eis accidere cōsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōn-  
silium capere cōguntur.

At Cotta, quī cōgitāssset, haec posse in itinere accidere,  
atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā  
in rē commūni salūti deerat; et in appellandis cohortan-  
disque militibus imperātōris, et in pugnā militis, officia  
praestābat. Cum propter longitudinē agminis nōn facile  
per sē omnia obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset,

**32. 3. bipertitō:** 'at two points,' on opposite sides of a depression through which the road ran (Fig. 119). **ā:** 'off'; N. to II, 8, l. 10.

**5. sē . . . dēmīssisset:** 'had passed down.' **convallem:** 'defile.'

**7. novissimōs,** etc.: the enemy crowded toward those in the rear and checked the advance of those in front.

**33. 1. quī:** 'since he.' 194, c. B. 283, 3, a; A. 535, e; H. 592

**2. trepidāre:** 'was greatly agitated.' 182. **concurāre:** 'rushed from place to place.'

**3. ut,** etc.: '(in such a way) that all (his resources) seemed to fail him.' **quod:** *id, quod.*

**4. in ipsō negōtiō:** 'in the emergency.'

**7. auctor:** 'in favor of.' How lit.?

**11. omnia obīre:** 'to look after everything.'

prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent.

Quod cōnsilium, etsi in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere<sup>20</sup> properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbaris cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: *illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimārent.*<sup>5</sup>

Nostri, tametsi ab duce et ā fortunā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et,<sup>10</sup> quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitate

12. **iussērunt prōnūntiārī**: 'they,' Cotta and Sabinus, 'gave orders that the word be passed.'

13. **relinquerent**: 'that (the men) should abandon.' **orbem**: 'circle,' corresponding with our hollow square. 338.

14. **reprehendendum nōn est**: 'it is not to be criticized.'

15. **incommodē accidit**: 'turned out unfortunately.' **militibus**: 109, a.

17. **nōn sine**: 239, g. **dēspērātiōne**: 'despair.'

20. **cārissima**: 'most dear,' predicative; *petere ab impedimentis* (ea) *quae quisque cārissima habēret*. **habēret**: 220. **arripere**: 'carry off,' before the enemy should loot the abandoned baggage.

34. 1. **cōnsilium**: 'presence of mind,' contrasted with the confusion and panic on the Roman side.

10. **coniciant**: 'that (his men) hurl.'

armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil eis nocērī posse),  
rūrsus sē ad signa recipientēs insequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, cum  
quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēce-  
rat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem  
nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere.  
5 Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressi, reverti  
coeperant, et ab eis, qui cesserant, et ab eis, qui proximi  
steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre  
vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā  
multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant.  
10 Tamen, tot incommodis cōnflctātī, multis vulneribus  
acceptis, resistēbant, et magnā parte diēi cōnsūptā, cum ā  
primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil, quod ipsis  
esset indignum, committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui  
superiōre annō primum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et mag-  
15 nae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q.

12. nihil, etc.: '(saying that) no harm could be done to them.'

13. sē: object of *recipientēs*; '(the Romans) returning to their standards,' to the place in the circle whence they had made a charge.

35. 1. praeceptō: 'order.' eis: *barbaris*.

2. quaepiam: 'any.' 49, a.

3. refugiēbant: 'would rush back in flight.' 175, d. eam partem: the charging cohort.

4. ab latere apertō: 'on the exposed side,' the right side, unprotected by a shield. 126, c.

5. eum locum: in the circle. ēgressi, etc.: sc. *militēs*.

7. locum tenēre: in the circle, without charging.

10. cōnflctātī: 'although harassed.'

12. hōram octāvam: 242, a. pugnārētur: 184, a. ipsis indignum: 'unworthy of them.' 142, b.

13. T. Balventiō: 109, a.

14. superiōre, etc.: Balventius had been the first centurion of the legion the year before; he was now serving probably as a veteran volunteer (*evocātus*). 316.

15. auctōritātis: 'influence.' 100, a. femur: 'thigh' 18, d.

Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātūs, omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns, in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

*Sabinus and others surrender to Ambiorix, and are cut down.*

**36.** His rēbus permōtus, Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompeium, ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit:

*Sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre, ā multitudīne im-  
petrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō  
nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.*

Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā colloquantur; *spērāre, ab  
eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse.* Cotta sē ad  
armātum hostem itūrum negat, atque in eō persevērat.

**37.** Sabinus, quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum  
sē habēbat, et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs, sē sequī

16. **eiusdem ōrdinis**: 'of the same rank,' a first centurion. **cir-  
cumventō**: 'who had been surrounded.' 227, a, (4).

17. **filiō subvenit**: 'came to the rescue of his son.' 175, b.

18. **ōrdinēs**: here 'centuries.' **in adversum ōs**: 'full in the  
face.' **fundā**: by a sling-shot.

**36. 2. cohortantem**: 228, c. **interpretem**: 10, e.

4. **parcat**: 'to spare.' 199, a.

5. **impetrārī**, etc.: 'that the request might be granted, so far as the  
safety of the soldiers was concerned.'

6. **quod**: the antecedent is implied in **impetrārī**. 194, f. **ipsī**:  
Titurius Sabinus. **vērō**: 236, a.

7. **noctum irī**: future infinitive passive; 'that no harm should be  
done.' 54, and 73, d.

8. **Ille**: Titurius Sabinus. **videātur**: 204, (4).

10. **dē**, etc.: 'for their own safety and that of the soldiers.' 157, d.

**37. 1. quōs tribūnōs**: *eōs tribūnōs, quōs.* **in praesentiā**: 'at  
the time.'



iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorige instituitur sermō, paulātim circum-ventus interficitur.

*Cotta dies heroically fighting. The soldiers spared by the day's slaughter at night end their own lives.*

Tum vērō suō mōre 'Victōriam' conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum.

Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit; ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs, dēspērātā salūte, sē ipsi interficiunt.

3. Ambiorigem: 123, b.



Figure 120. — Statue of Ambiorix.

6. sermō: 'talk.' 12, b.

8. mōre: 136, c. ululātum: 'yell,' a kind of war whoop.

13. aquilifer: 'eagle bearer.' 324, b, (1). cum: 'although.'

16. ad ūnum: 'to a man.' They probably killed one another.

17. sē ipsi: 162, c. The number of Roman soldiers that perished was probably above 5000. We are told that when Caesar heard of this disaster he vowed that he would cut neither hair nor beard till he had wreaked vengeance on Ambiorix and the Eburones. Ambiorix is now regarded by some as a national hero, as a

Pauci, ex proeliō ēlāpsi, incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

20

2. *Heroic defence of Cicero's camp against the Nervians.*  
38-45

*A fierce attack, inspired by Ambiorix, is made on Cicero's camp.*

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Atuaticōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sēsē subsequī iūbet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuaticisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, nē sui in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis, quās accēperint, iniūriis occāsiōnem dimittant; *interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interisse* dēmōnstrat; *nihil esse negotiū, subito oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī*; sē ad eam rem pro-<sup>10</sup> fitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dimissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs, cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrii morte perlātā.

---

defender of his people's liberties against Roman aggression; a statue has been erected in his honor at Tongres (Fig. 120).

38. 4. Rē: 'what had been done.' concitātis: 'stirred up.' 144, b, (2).

5. nē, etc.: 'not to lose the chance.' sui: 154, b.

8. lēgātōs duōs: Sabinus and Cotta. magnam partem: in reality about one fifth of Caesar's legionaries.

9. nihil, etc.: 'that it would be no trouble suddenly to crush the legion . . . and destroy it.' How lit.? 97, a, and 228, a.

10. sē, etc.: 'he promised his coöperation.' How lit.? 115, a.

39. 1. Ceutronēs, etc.: small Belgic peoples, clients of the Nervii.

3. eōrum: Nerviorum. quam maximās: 153, c.

Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūlli militēs, qui lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Atuatuci atque hōrum omnium sōcii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscedunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritatē pōnēbant atque, hanc adeptī victōriam, in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnis prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis, missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur; incēdibilī celeritatē, quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur.

Hostēs posterō diē, multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā pridīe, ā nostris resistitur.

6. **Huic**: Cicero; the probable location of his camp is indicated on Map II. **quod**: for *id, quod*.

7. **lignātiōnis**, etc.: 'to get timber for the fortification' of the camp (Fig. 136). How lit.? **discessissent**: 220.

12. **vāllum cōnscedunt**: they stood on the rampart, behind the palisades (*vallt*). 333.

13. **hanc adeptī victōriam**: = *si hanc victōriam adepti essent*. 227, a, (2).

40. 1. **Mittuntur**: emphatic position. 353, a. **ad Caesarem**: at Samarobriua.

2. **si pertulissent**: *si nūntii eas litteras pertulissent*.

3. **missi**: 'those who had been sent.' 227, a, (4).

4. **turrēs**: 333. **admodum**: 'fully.' **cxx**: *centum viginti*. Unless the camp were larger than would seem to have been required for a single legion, the 120 towers must have been about 40 feet apart; if so, men on the towers could defend the short spaces between with any kind of missile. Ordinarily such towers were about 80 feet apart.

5. **excitantur**: 'were erected.'

Hōc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur.

Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

*The crafty parleying, which was Sabinus's undoing, has no effect on Cicero.*

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloqui sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: *Omne Galliam esse in armīs; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī.*

Addunt etiam dē Sabīni morte; Ambiorigem ostentant

12. **vulnerātis**: 227, a, (4). **facultās quiētis**: 'chance to rest.' How lit.? 10, e. **Quaecumque**: 50, a.

14. **praeūstae sudēs**: 'stakes hardened at the ends by burning'; the stock of ordinary weapons had given out. **mūrālium pilōrum**: 'of wall-pikes'; heavy pikes, to be hurled from the towers.

15. **contabulantur**: 'were provided with floors.' **pinnae**: 'batlements.' **lōricae ex crātibus**: 'breastworks of wattle,' made by interweaving branches, and put up as screens to protect the soldiers in the towers. 98, b, and 150, d.

16. **attexuntur**: 'were attached,' lit. 'woven,' 'to the towers.'

17. **oim**: 187. **tenuissimā valētūdine**: 'in very delicate health.' 143, a.

41. 1. **sermōnis aditum**: 'pretext for an interview.'

7. **ostentant**, etc.: 'they pointed to Ambiorix in order to inspire credence.'

fidei faciundae causā. *Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab his praesidiū spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant ;*

- 10 *Sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint ; licēre illis per sē incolumibus ex hibernis discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficiscī.*

- 15 Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit :

*Nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem ; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant ; spērāre, prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.*

*The Nervians besiege the camp. Fire rages among the huts.*

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi, Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nacti captivōs, ab his docēbantur ; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs

8. faciundae: 64, b. Errāre: 'were deluding themselves.'  
eōs: Cicero and his men. quicquam praesidiū: 'any help at all.'  
49, a.

9. his: the Romans in the other camps. quī, etc.: 'who were in desperate straits.' How lit.? 62, and 135, a.

10. hōc esse — animō: 'had this feeling.' How lit.? 143, b.

12. cōsuētūdinem: 'custom' of imposing winter camps upon them. per sē: 'so far as they,' the Nervii, 'were concerned.'

17. armātō: 'in arms.' ab armīs discēdere: in our idiom, 'to lay down their arms.' sē, etc.: 'they might utilize him as mediator.' 131, f.

18. spērāre: sc. sē, Cicero.

42. 1. spē: 'hope' of cozening Cicero. pedem x: in height.

2. pedum xv: in width, at the top. 100, a.

4. nūllā, etc.: 'having no stock of iron tools.' 144, b, (3).

5. esset: 194, a. caespitēs: 10, d.

circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgebantur.

Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitudō cognōsci potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus milium passuum III in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquis diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vālli, falcēs testudinēsque, quās idem captivī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsill ex argillā glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testudinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit

6. **circumcidere**: 'cut'; lit. 'cut around.' **sagulis**: 'in their cloaks.' 348, and 131, a. **exhaurire**: 'to take out.'

10. **turrēs**: movable 'towers.' **ad**: 'proportioned to.'

11. **falcēs**: large 'hooks' for pulling down the palisade. **testudinēs**: 'turtle-shell sheds,' probably less solid than those built by the Romans. 342, a.

43. 2. **ferventēs**, etc.: 'red-hot balls of kneaded clay,' which would not crack to pieces when heated. Experiments have shown that red-hot balls of clay the size of one's fist when thrown will retain their heat long enough to ignite straw. 98, b. **fervefacta iacula**: 'burning javelins.'

3. **casās**: 'huts.' 335, b. **strāmentis**: 'with thatch.'

5. **ventī magnitudīne**: 'by reason of the force of the wind.' **distulērunt**: *hae casae ignem distulērunt*, the huts being looked upon as agents. Probably the high wind carried bits of burning thatch all over the camp. 239, h.

6. **sicutī**: 'just as if.'

7. **agere**: 'to move up.' The Gauls were using Roman methods of attack. 542, a and b. **scālis**: 'with scaling-ladders.' 342, d.

9. **At**: 236, a. **ea praesentia animī**: 'such their presence of mind.'

10 ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlorum  
 multitūdine premerentur, suaque omnia impedimenta  
 atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegent, nōn modo  
 dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē  
 respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē for-  
 15 tissimēque pugnārent.

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc  
 habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vul-  
 nerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnsti-  
 pāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.

20 Paulum quidem intermissā flammā, et quōdam locō turri  
 adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs  
 ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remō-  
 vērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre  
 coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni  
 25 parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

10. *cum*: 187. *flammā torrērentur*: 'they were being scorched by the flames.' 92, b.

12. *cōnflagrāre*: 'were on fire.'

13. *dēmigrandī causā*: 'in order to withdraw' temporarily to rescue his valuables or get a brief respite. *paene*, etc.: 'but hardly any one even looked around.'

14. *tum*: emphatic, 'then,' above all other times.

18. *ut*: 'since.' *sub*, etc.: 'had crowded together close up to the rampart.'

19. *recessum . . . dabant*: 'those behind would not give those in front a chance to draw back.'

20. *intermissā flammā*: the Gauls dared not risk moving forward the wooden towers while the flames were at their height. *locō*: 145, c.

22. *recessērunt*: 'drew back.'

23. *sī*: 204, (4). *introīre*: 'to come inside.'

25. *lapidibus*: the supply of ordinary weapons had given out. Practice in hurling the pike enabled Roman soldiers to throw stones effectively. Both pike-hurling and stone-throwing find a parallel in the throwing of hand grenades in the Great War. *dēturbātī*: sc. *sunt*; 'they were forced back in disorder.'

*Brave deeds of two rival centurions, Pullo and Vorenus.*

**44.** Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī primīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. 5

Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit.'

Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque 10 pars hostium cōfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed, omnium veritus existimātiōnem, subsequitur.

Mediocri spatiō relicto, Pullō pilum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur.

**44. 1. Erant:** 90, *a.* **quī,** etc.: 'who were nearing the first rank,' the position of centurion of first rank. 194, *a.* and 315, *a.*

**4. anteferrētur,** etc.: 'should have the preference over the other,' as the better man. 69, *b.* and 204, (3). **omnibus annis:** 'year in year out.' **dē locō:** 'for advancement.' **summīs simultātibus:** 'with the utmost bitterness.'

**6. ācerimē — pugnārētur:** 'the fighting was the very hottest.'

**7. Quid:** 'Why.' 118, *e.* **locum:** 'opportunity.'

**11. eam:** *eam partem.* 165, *c.* **irrumpit:** 'he rushed.'

**14. Mediocri spatiō relicto:** 'At a moderate distance,' perhaps four or five rods from the enemy.

**15. quo:** refers to the wounded Gaul, who, as *prōtegunt* implies, was not killed; trans. as if *et hōc*, 'and since he was made breathless by the blow.' How lit.?

**16. prōtegunt:** 'protected.' **illum:** Pullo.

**18. Pullōnī:** 109, *a.* **verūtum:** the same 'dart' that pierced Pullo's shield. **balteō:** 'sword-belt.' 322, *e.*



Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī  
 20 dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circum-  
 sistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōranti  
 subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitudō con-  
 vertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Vorēnus  
 25 gladiō rem comminus gerit atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs  
 paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus  
 inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium  
 fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectis,  
 summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt.

30 Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque ver-  
 sāvīt, ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salūtique esset, neque  
 dīiudicārī posset, uter utri virtūte antefendus vidērētur.

*Word of Cicero's desperate plight finally reaches Caesar.*

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppug-  
 nātiō, et maximē quod, magnā parte militum cōnfectā

19. **vāgīnam**: 'scabbard.' **cōnantī**: sc. *ei*, 'as he' (lit. 'to him') 'was attempting.'

20. **impeditum**: sc. *eum*.

21. **Succurrit illi**: 'ran to his rescue.' How lit.? **inimicus**: 'adversary.'

25. **rem comminus gerit**: 'engaged in close fighting.' 175, *b*.

26. **in**, etc.: 'stumbling' (lit. 'thrown down') 'into a hollow.'

28. **ambō**: 'both.' 37, *c*.

30. **contentiōne et certāmine**: 'in contest and combat.'  
**utrumque versāvīt**: 'shifted (the positions of) both.'

31. **alter alterī**: 171, *b*. **alterī, auxiliō**: 112, *b*.

32. **dīiudicārī**: 'be determined.' **utri**: 'to the other.' 23, *a*,  
 and 107, *a*. **virtūte**, etc.: 'should seem worthy to be considered  
 superior in point of valor.' 142, *a*.

45. 1. **Quantō**, etc.: 'The harder and more violent—the more  
 frequently dispatches.' How lit.? 140. B. 223; A. 414, *a*; H. 471,  
 10. **in diēs**: 'day by day.'

2. **maximē quod**: 'chiefly because.' **cōnfectā**: 'enfeebled.'

vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars, dēprehēnsa, in cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur.

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, qui ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et, Gallus inter Gallōs sinē ūllā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

### 3. *Crushing defeat of the beleaguering Gauls by Caesar.*

46-52

*Caesar makes hurried preparations, and proceeds by forced marches to relieve Cicero.*

46. Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēi, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venire. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium

5. *dēprehēnsa*: 'caught.'

7. *ūnus*: 'one,' the only Nervian. *intus*: in the camp. *loco*, etc.: 'of good family.' 128, a.

8. *ā primā obsidiōne*: 'soon after the beginning of the siege.' 152, a.

11. *in iaculo illigātās*: 'tied in a javelin.' The javelin may have been split; the dispatch, written on papyrus, may have been put between the parts, the javelin then being tied with cords as if accidentally split and repaired. *inter Gallōs versātus*: 'mingling with Gauls.'

13. *Ab eō* — *cognoscitur*: *Caesar ab eō cognoscit*.

46. 1. *Caesar*: at Samarobriua. *hōrā ūndecimā*: about 5 P.M.; it was now early autumn. 242, a and b.

5. *Alterum*: sc. *nūntium*. *C. Fabium*: chap. 24, ll. 5-6.

lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod  
 10 paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

**47.** Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legiōnemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās  
 5 pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō, tolerandae hiemis causā, dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

Labiēnus, interitū Sabinī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus  
 10 nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs

6. ut: '(directing him) to.' 199, a. Caesar would have to march through the country of the Atrebatians (Fig. 121) in order to reach Cicero's camp, in the country of the Nervians. See Map 11.



Figure 121. — Coin of the Atrebatians.

Gold. Obverse, crude head, with mark on right cheek. Reverse, fanciful horse, and crescent.

7. rei pūblicae commodō: 'consistently with the public interest.' 138.

9. veniat: 216. Reliquam partem exercitūs: chap. 24. ll. 7, 10.

47. 1. antecursōribus: 'advance guard' of Crassus.

3. Crassum, etc.: Caesar left Samarobriua before Crassus arrived.

4. impedimenta: 311. litterās pūblicās: 'state documents,' such as dispatches and accounts.

7. nōn ita, etc.: 'with very little delay.' How lit.? occurrit: sc. Caesarī.

11. praesertim quōs, etc.: 'especially since he knew that they.' 184, b.

recenti victoriā efferri sciret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernis ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III milia passuum 15 longē ab suis castris cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs.

Ibi ex captīvis cognōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, 5 quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs praemiis persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.

Hanc Graecis cōscrip̄tam litteris mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Si ad- 10 ire nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmmen- tum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litteris scribit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem retineat.

Gallus, periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam 15 mittit. Haec cāsū ad turr̄im adhaesit, neque ā nostris bīduō

13. **quantō**, etc.: '(explaining) how dangerous it would be for him to withdraw the legion.' How lit.? 204, (3).

14. **rem gestam**: 'what had taken place,' referring to the destruction of the force under Sabinus and Cotta.

48. 1. **opiniōne**, etc.: 'disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions he had been reduced to two,' the legion which he had had at Samarobriua, and the ope under Fabius that had joined him.

3. **magnīs itineribus**: 329.

7. **epistulam**: 'letter.'

9. **Graecis litteris**: in Greek characters, not Greek words; some of the Nervians apparently could read Latin.

11. **adire**: 'to reach' the camp. **ammentum**: 'thong' attached to a javelin and used in throwing.

16. **turr̄im**: 14, b. **adhaesit**: 'stuck.' **neque**: 'and not.'

animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur, dēmp̄ta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī  
 20 incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

*Caesar approaching, the Gauls turn from Cicero's camp to attack him.*

49. Galli, rē cognitā per explorātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquant, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX.

Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem  
 5 sup̄rā dēmōnstfāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet, iter cautē diligerenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad  
 10 dīmīcandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē, lūce primā, movet castra; et circiter milia passuum IIII prōgressus, trāns vallem magnam et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat magni periculī rēs,

17. dēmp̄ta: 'was taken down and.' 228, a.

18. perlēctam — recitat: sc. eam; 'after he had read it through he read it aloud.' 227, a.

19. afficit: 'filled.' fūmī incendiōrum: of burning villages, set on fire as Caesar's relieving force passed through; the plural implies more than one fire.

49. 1. rē: 'the fact' of Caesar's approach. per: 123, a.

4. Gallum, etc.: 'asked the same Vertico . . . for another Gaul.' 116, b.

5. sup̄rā: chap. 45, ll. 7-12. quī, etc.: 193, a.

6. hunc, etc.: 'warned him' (Caesar) 'to proceed with caution.' 200, a.

12. rīvum: 'brook,' flowing in a 'wide valley.'

13. Erat, etc.: 'It was extremely hazardous.' How lit.?

tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum <sup>15</sup> dē celeritāte existimābat. Cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit, atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen angustis viarum, quam maximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hosti- <sup>20</sup> bus veniat. Interim, speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis, explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

*Caesar, encamped, pretends fear, lures the Gauls on, routs them.*

**50.** Eō diē, parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis, utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; si <sup>5</sup> id efficere nōn posset, ut, explōrātis itineribus, minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret.

Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliūque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex <sup>10</sup>

**15. aequō,** etc.: 'that without anxiety he could slacken his pace.' How lit.?

**17. haec:** object of *contrahit*; 'this' camp, 'although it was,' etc.

**18. vix,** etc.: '(containing) barely 7000 men'; the two legions with Caesar averaged hardly 3500 men each. *100, b,* and *307, b.*

**19. angustis,** etc.: 'by making the passages as narrow as possible.' *334, b,* and Fig. 185.

**20. cōnsiliō:** *138.* **hostibus:** trans. as if *hostium.* *109, a.*

**50. 1. ad aquam:** 'by the water,' the brook mentioned chap. 49, l. 12.

**3. Caesar,** etc.: *Caesar [sē continet suō locō] ut, si . . . posset, citrā vallem . . . contenderent.*

**4. suum locum:** 'a position favorable to himself.' *157, a.* **ēlicere:** 'to entice.'

omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīri portāsque obstruī atque in his administrandis rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

**51.** Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt; nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūntiārī iubent:

*Seu quis, Gallus seu Rōmānus, velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.*

Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctis in speciem  
10 portis singulis ordinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, alii vāllum manū scindere, alii fossās complēre inciperent.

Tum Caesar, omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque  
ēmīssō, celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pug-  
15 nandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnēs armis exuit.

*Caesar, joining Cicero, praises him and his men.*

**52.** Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrimentō illōrum

12. **obstruī**: 'be blocked up.'

13. **concurārī**: 'that the men rush about.' 73, d. **agī**: 'go through their motions.' How lit.?

**51. 1. cōpiās trādūcunt**: *cōpiās rīvum trādūcunt.* 114, a.

4. **praecōnibus**, etc.: 'they sent criers around' the camp, 'directing that the announcement be made.' How lit.?

9. **in speciem**: 'for show.' The barriers in the gates, of turf and only the breadth of a sod in thickness, seemed solid but were easily pushed over from the inside.

10. **eā — intrōrumpere**: 'to break in that way,' through the gates.

14. **omnīnō — nēmō**: 'no one at all.'

**52. 2. neque . . . relinquit**: 'and that no opportunity was left for (inflicting) even a trifling loss upon them.' How lit.?

locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit.

Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium ad-  
mīrātur; prōductā legiōne, cognōscit, nōn decimum quem-  
que esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus  
iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte  
rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiō-  
nemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātīm tribūnōsque  
militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testi-  
moniō Cicerōnis cognōverat.

Dē cāsū Sabīni et Cottae certius ex captivis cognōscit.  
Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, milītēs  
cōnsolātur et cōfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et teme-  
ritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum  
docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eō-  
rum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia  
neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

5. **turrēs**, etc.: chap. 42, ll. 10-11, and Notes.

6. **prōductā**: 'drawn up' for review. **nōn**, etc.: 'that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded.' How lit.? 170, a.

9. **rēs**, etc.: 'the operations' for defence 'were handled.' **eius meritō**: Cicero's heroic defence is famous in military annals.

11. **appellat**: 'he addressed' in complimentary terms.

13. **certius**: an earlier report had come from Labienus (chap. 37).

14. **cōntiōnē**: 'an assembly.' **rem**, etc.: 'set forth what had happened.'

15. **quod dētrimentum**: *id dētrimentum, quod.* **culpā et temeritāte**: 'through the culpable rashness.' 238, d.

16. **hōc**: 'on this account.' **aequiōre animō**: 'with the greater tranquillity.'

18. **expiātō**: 'atoned for.'

**53-58. Summary.** A report of the relief of Cicero's camp was quickly conveyed to Labienus, encamped on the Treveran border (Map 11); but notwithstanding this victory Caesar found it increasingly difficult to prevent revolts. Finally Indutiomarus and the Treverans made an attack on Labienus, who first feigned fear, then surprised and routed them. Indutiomarus was slain.



## COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS

### Second Expedition into Germany. 9-29

*Caesar bridges the Rhine, crosses, makes terms with the Ubii.*

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum ūna erat, quod Germāni auxilia contrā sē Trēveris miserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habēret. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum, quō ante exercitum trādūxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne, magnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque  
10 trādūcit.

Ubii, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandi suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant, neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant, ut sibi

---

1-8. **Summary.** Early in 53 B.C. Caesar heard that the Nervians and several other peoples were preparing for war. By sudden movements he forced the Nervians, Senones, and Menapians to sue for peace, and marched into the country of the Treverans, who had meanwhile been defeated by Labienus.

9. 4. **Ambiorix:** cf. N. to V, 37, l. 17.

5. **ante:** in 55 B.C.; see IV, 17-19, and Notes.

6. **Nōtā . . . studiō:** 'Since the plan (of such a bridge) was familiar and had been tried, (and) the soldiers worked with much enthusiasm.' How lit.?

9. **orerētur:** 61, b.

12. **suī:** 164, b, and 230, (1). **quī doceant:** 193, a.

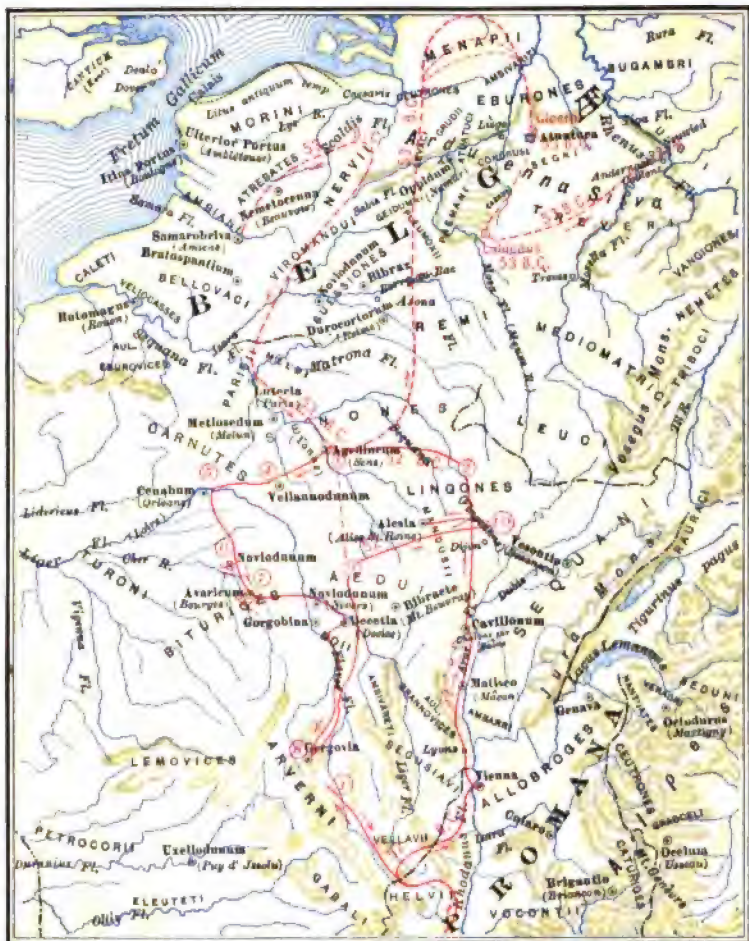
14. **fidem laesam** [esse]: '(their) pledge had been violated.'

# MAP 13

OPERATIONS OF 53 AND 52 B.C.

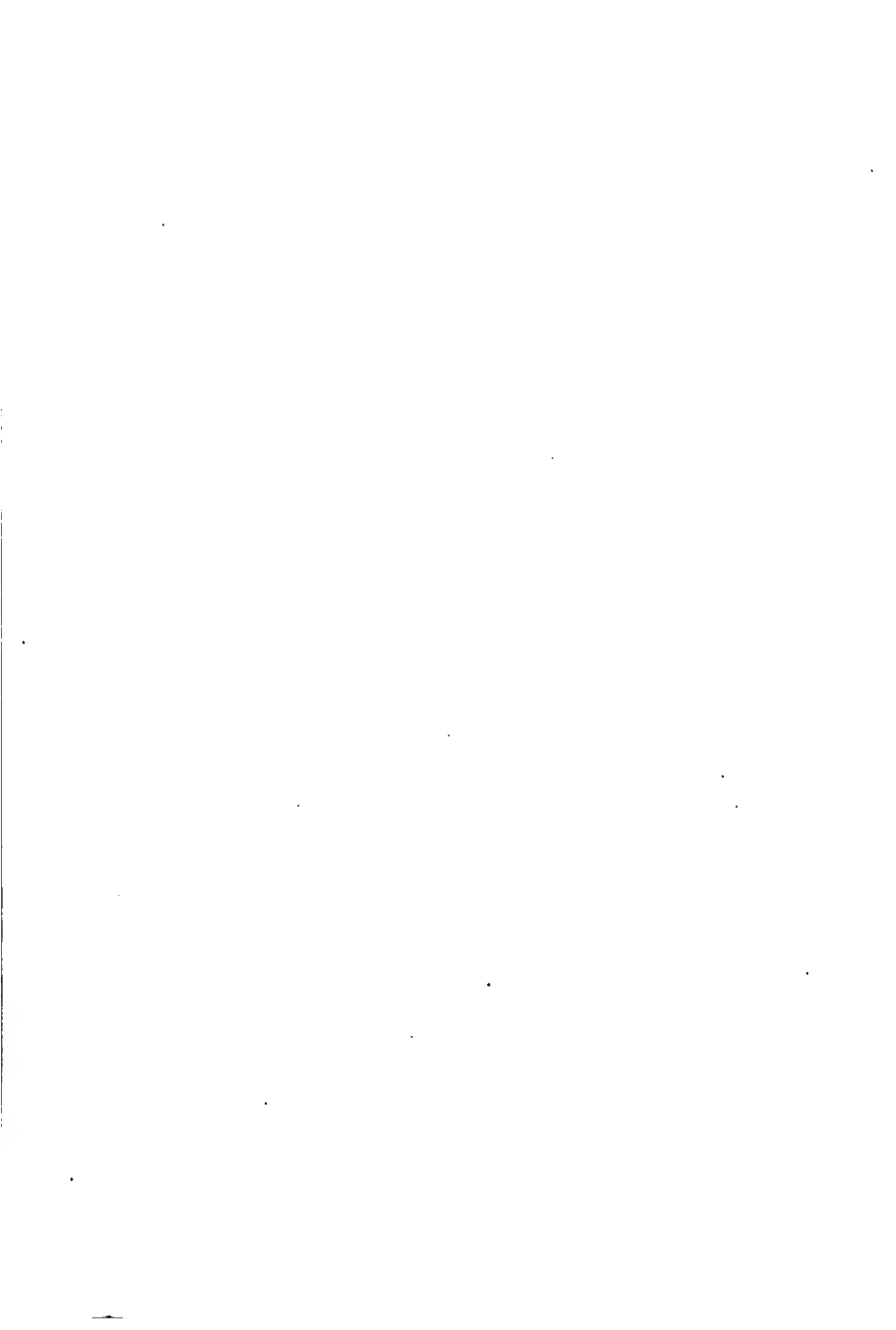
Books VI, VII.

To face page 338



## EXPLANATION

1. March into the Arvernian country, 52 B.C. (VII. 8).
2. Winter quarters (VII. 9).
3. Base, 52 B.C. (VII. 10).
4. Vellaunodunum captured (VII. 11).
5. Cenabum destroyed (VII. 11).
6. Noviodunum captured (VII. 12).
7. Avaricum destroyed (VII. 14-28).
8. Gergovia blockaded (VII. 36 ff.).
9. Junction with Labienus (VII. 62).
10. Defeat of Vercingetorix (VII. 67).



parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō no-<sup>15</sup>  
centibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari,  
pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit, ab Suēbīs au-  
xilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs  
viāsque in Suēbōs perquirīt.

*He finds it impossible to reach the Suebi.*

**10.** Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suē-  
bōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque eis nātiōni-  
bus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō, dēnūntiāre, ut auxilia  
peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitis rēbus, rem  
frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit;<sup>5</sup>  
Ubiis imperat, ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agris  
in oppida cōferant, spērāns, barbarōs atque imperitōs  
hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad iniquam pugnandī  
condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat, ut crēbrōs explōrā-  
tōrēs in Suēbōs mittant, quaeque apud eōs gerantur, co-<sup>10</sup>  
gnōscant.

Illi imperāta faciunt et, paucis diēbus intermissis, referunt:

*Suēbōs omnēs, pōsteā quam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū  
Rōmānōrūm vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs,  
quās cōēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse;<sup>15</sup>  
silvam esse ibi infīnitā magnitudīne, quae appellātur  
Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et, prō nātivō mūrō*

---

15. **commūnī odiō**: 'indiscriminate hatred.' **innocentēs**, etc.:  
'the innocent for the guilty.' 81.

16. **amplius obsidum**: 'more hostages.' 97, b. B. 201, 2; A.  
346, a, 3; H. 442.

19. **Suēbōs**: 282. **perquirīt**: 'made careful inquiry about.'

10. 2. **in ūnum locum**, etc.: cf. IV, 19, ll. 5-12.

9. **crēbrōs**: 'a great many.' The scouts were of course Ubians;  
cf. chap. 29, l. 1.

15. **extrēmōs finēs**: 'the most remote part of their country.'  
162, a.

17. **prō nātivō mūrō**: 'as a natural barrier.'

*obiectam, Cheruscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Cheruscīs  
iniuriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium  
20 Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.*

*The customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted.  
11-28.*

*Political conditions in Gaul; motives for leadership.*

**11.** Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur, dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et, quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in  
5 omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis  
domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs  
sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiō habēre ex-  
istimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa  
omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.

18. **ab**: 'on the part of.'

19. **iniuriis**, etc.: 'protected . . . from destructive raids.' 238, d, and 127, a.

11. 1. **Quoniam**, etc.: 'Since we have reached this point' in the narrative. 73, d. **aliēnum**: 'out of place.' The digression which follows was introduced to gratify Roman readers, who were eager to have information about the new countries; it is regarded by historians as a source of information of prime importance regarding political institutions and conditions of life in Northern Europe in antiquity. Cf. N. at end of chap. 23.

2. **dē**—**prōpōnere**: 'to give an account of.' **quō**: 'in what respect,' introduces an indirect question.

5. **partibus**: 'districts.' 289, c.

6. **domibus**: 20, c. **factiōnēs**: 'party divisions.'

7. **eōrum**: *Gallōrum*. **iūdiō**: 138.

8. **quōrum**: refers to (*ei*) **quī** . . . *existimantur*; 'so that the final decision in respect to all affairs and projects is referred to their arbitrament and judgment.' How lit.? 194, a.

Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē<sup>10</sup> quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilii egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimi et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

15

**12.** Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hi cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnis iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis, atque omni nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādū-

10. **Id — institūtum** [esse] **vidētur**: 'that practice seems to have become established.' **eius rei causā**: 'with this object in view,' referring to the clause *nē . . . egēret*. How lit.? 161, a.

11. **auxilii**: 127, d. **egēret**: 'lack.'

12. **quisque**: 'each (leader).' **neque . . . faciat, habet**: 207, (2).

14. **ratiō**, etc.: 'This same condition holds true of the whole of Gaul.' How lit.?

15. **dīvisae**: 148, c. **partēs**: 'groups,' explained in chap. 12.

12. 1. **Cum**: '(At the time) when.' 185, b. **alterius**: 23, b, and 171, b.

2. **Hi**: 'The latter.' Previously the Arvernians had held a position of leadership; cf. I, 31, ll. 10-28.

4. **clientēlae**: 'dependencies,' states acknowledging the sovereignty of the Aeduans.

5. **eōs ad sē . . . perdūxerant**: 'had won them over.' **iactūris**: 'pecuniary sacrifices.'

7. **omni nōbilitāte**: cf. I, 31, l. 21 and N.

8. **tantum — antecesserant**: 'they had so far outstripped (the Aeduans).'

9. **clientium**: dependent states are here meant.

cerent obsidēsque ab eis principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliū initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Diviciācus, auxilii petendī causā, Rōmam ad senātum profectus, infectā rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novīs per Caesarem comparātis, quod ei, quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani principātum dimiserant.

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei, quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi diligenter

11. *pūblio*: 'for the state.' *iūrāre*: as subject sc. *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōrum principēs*. *nihil* — *cōnsiliū*: 'no scheme.' 97, a.

12. *occupātam possidērent*: 'seized . . . and retained in their possession.' 228, a.

14. *Diviciācus*, etc.: the statement of Diviciacus himself on this point is summarized by Caesar, I, 31, ll. 29-33.

15. *Infectā rē*: 'without accomplishing his purpose.' How lit.?

16. *Adventū*: 147, b. *factā*, etc.: the ablatives absolute are best translated by clauses. 144, b, (2) and (3). *commūtatiōne rērum*: 'a complete change of relations.'

17. *Aeduīs*: dative. *novīs*: sc. *clientēlis*.

18. *comparātis*: for the Aeduans. *sē*, etc.: 'had joined themselves to them as allies.' How lit.?

20. *sē ūtī*: 'that they enjoyed.' *reliquis rēbus*: 'in all other respects' also.

22. *quōs* . . . *intellegēbātur*: 'and since it was understood that they (the Remi) stood equally high in Caesar's favor.' How lit.?

24. *inimicitias*: 'enmities.' *coniungī*: 174.

25. *Rēmīs*, etc.: 'attached themselves as dependents to the Remi.' How lit.?

tuēbantur ; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs habērentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

*The two ruling classes, and the common people, in Gaul.*

**13.** In omni Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo ; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus ; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominis in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

*'The Druids : their power as priests and judges, their organization, their teachings about the soul.'*

Illi rēbus dīvinis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta<sup>10</sup> prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur ; ad hōs magnus adu-

**26. repente collēctam :** 'suddenly acquired,' in the brief period since the defeat of Ariovistus, five years before.

**13. 1. aliquō, etc. :** 'are of any account and (receive) recognition.' How lit. ? 143, b.

**3. servōrum locō :** 'as slaves.' 288, b. **nullī cōnsiliō :** 'to no consultation.' 23, a.

**4. aere aliēnō :** 'by debt.' How lit. ?

**5. tribūtōrum :** 'of the taxes.' **sēsē, etc. :** 'attach themselves as bondmen.' How lit. ?

**6. quibus, etc. :** 'and these have over them.' 167, and 111.

**7. quae, etc. :** sc. *sunt* ; 'as masters (have) over slaves.'

**8. alterum [genus] :** 171, b. **druidum :** '(that of) the Druids,' a priesthood possessing great power in Gaul and Britain. Very little is known of the Druids in Caesar's time beyond what he tells us in this book.

**10. Illi, etc. :** 'the former have charge of the services of worship.' **sacrificia — prōcūrant :** 'regulate the sacrifices.'

**11. religiōnēs interpretantur :** 'settle religious questions.' 238, a.



lēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrō-versiis publicis privātisque cōstituunt et, sī quod est  
 15 facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī, aut privātus aut populus, eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt.

Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est  
 20 interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

25 His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquis excellit dignitātē, succēdit; aut, sī sunt plūrēs

12. **disciplīnae causā**: 'in order to receive instruction.' How lit.?

81.

13. **hī**: the Druids. **eōs**: *Gallōs*.

14. **quod**: adjective form. 49, a, and 168.

15. **facta**: sc. *est*. **hērēditātē**: 'an inheritance.'

16. **finibus**: here 'boundaries.' **Idem dēcernunt**: 'they likewise render judgment.'

17. **quī**: substantive form; 'any (party)' to a controversy, 'whether ... or,' etc. 49, a.

18. **dēcrētō**: 'decision.' 138. **sacrificiis interdīcunt**: 'they exclude (the offender) from the sacrifices.' 127, a.

19. **Quibus**: dative; 'on whom such an interdict has been laid.'

20. **numerō**, etc.: 'as wicked and crime-polluted men.' How lit.?

21. **hīs**: dative; 'these all men avoid.' 109, b. **dēfugiunt**: 'shun.'

22. **contāgiōne**: 'contact' with the excommunicated.

23. **petentibus**: 'though they may seek (justice).' **honōs**: 13, a, and b.

26. **Hōc mortuō**: 'When he' (the arch-Druid) 'dies.' 160, b.

27. **excellit**: 'is preëminent.' 205, (1). **dignitātē**: 'in standing.' 142, a.

parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē principātū contendunt.

Hi certō anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō<sup>30</sup> tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciisq̄ pārent.

Disciplina in Britannā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta esse existimātur, et nunc, quī diligentius eam rem<sup>35</sup> cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

**14.** Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, militiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantis excitāti praemiis, et suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūlli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent.

28. **parēs**: i.e., *parēs dignitāte*. **suffrāgiō**: 'by vote.'

30. **quae regiō**: 'a region which.' 165, b. **Carnutum**: Fig. 122.

31. **cōnsīdunt**: 'hold a meeting.' **looō cōnsecrātō**: the 'hallowed spot' was probably a sacred grove. 146, a.

34. **Disciplina**: 'The system' of the Druids. **reperta, trāslāta**: 221, b. It is not now possible to determine the truth of the tradition recorded by Caesar, that Druidism originated in Britain.

35. **diligentius**: 'with special thoroughness.' **eam rem**: 'the system.' 160, d.

**14. 2. ūnā cum reliquīs**: 'at the same rate as the rest'; the Druids paid taxes at a lower rate than ordinary citizens, or were not legally bound to pay taxes at all. **pendunt**: N. to I, 36, l. 14. **militiae**: 80, b. **vacātiōnem**, etc.: 'exemption from' (lit. 'of') 'military service and freedom from all (public) burdens.' 81.

4. **in disciplinam**: 'to receive instruction,' from the Druids. How lit.? **parentibus**: 81.

5. **mittuntur**: sc. *multi*; so to-day many "are sent" to school.

6. **versuum**: 'lines'; the metrical form was probably adopted to facilitate memorizing. **ēdiscere**: 'to learn by heart.'

7. **vicēnōs**: 36. **in disciplinā**: 'under instruction.'

- Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis  
 10 litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque eōs, quī discunt, litteris cōfīsōs, min⁹s memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.
- 15 In primis hōc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitāri putant, metū mortis neglēctō.

8. **ea**: the teachings set forth in verse. **litteris**: 'to writing,' we should say. **cum**: 'although.' 187.

9. **ratiōnibus**: 'accounts,' included under **rebus** but added as a concrete example; trans. 'as in,' etc. **Graecis litteris**: 'Greek characters,' used in writing the Gallic languages (cf. I, 29, l. 1). Gallic coins occasionally had inscriptions in the Latin alphabet, in imitation of Roman coins (Fig. 122).



Figure 122. — Coin of the Carnutes.

Bronze. Obverse, head, Venus; inscription, PICTILOS, a name. Reverse, lion-headed griffin holding down a man; inscription, PIIIX or PILX.

11. **quod . . . velint**: 'because (as it has been suggested) they do not wish to have their body of teachings spread abroad among the common people,' who would remain in subjection to the druidical priesthood only so long as they should be kept in ignorance. 183, a.

12. **discunt**: vivid use of the indicative; cf. 220. **litteris**: 185, a. **minus — studēre**: 'pay too little heed.'

13. **quod**: 'and this.' 167. **praesidiō litterārum**: 'through reliance upon written records.' How lit.?

14. **perdiscendō**: 'learning by heart.' 230, (4). The truth of this statement is unquestioned.

15. **animās**: 'the soul,' as life-principle; the doctrine of transmigration of souls, or metempsychosis, was widely accepted in antiquity, and is held to-day by the Buddhists. 92, a.

16. **aliis, aliōs**: 171, b, and 164, a. **hōc**: 'by this (belief).'

17. **excitāri**: impersonal; 'men are spurred on.' **metū, etc.**: 144, b, (3).

Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt. 20

*The knights : their warlike occupation, and their retainers.*

**15.** Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsi iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

*Superstitions of the Gauls ; their human sacrifices.*

**16.** Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam, quī sunt affecti graviōribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum

**18. Multa — disputant :** 'They treat many subjects.' **sīderibus :** 'heavenly bodies.' **mundī :** 'the universe.'

**19. terrārum :** for *orbis terrārum*, 'the earth.'

**15. 1. Alterum :** cf. chap. 13, l. 8. **cum :** 'whenever.' 186, a.

**2. aliquod :** 49, a. **incidit :** 'breaks out.' **quod :** 'and this.'

**5. eōrum, etc. :** 'each knight has about him the greatest number of vassals and retainers that his social position and resources will warrant.' How lit.? A notable example is Orgetorix (I, 4, ll. 4-7).

**6. Hanc, etc. :** 'This (numerousness of retinue) is the only sign of influence and power that they recognize.' How lit.? 176, b.

**16. 1. omnis :** 'as a whole.' **dēdita :** 'devoted.' 148, c. **religiōnibus :** 'religious observances.'

**3. morbis :** 'diseases.' **prō victimis :** 'as victims.'

**4. immolant :** 'offer up.' **sē immolātūrōs :** i.e. *sē immolātūrōs esse hominēs prō victimis*. **vovent :** 'vow.' **administris :** 'as officiating priests.' 7, c, and 131, f.

immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia.

Alii immāni magnitudine simulācra habent, quōrum con-  
10 texta viminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs, circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs.

Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā  
noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcīt, etiam ad  
15 innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

*The gods worshipped by the Gauls.*

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium fe-

7. **nūmen**: 'majesty;' lit. 'nod.' **plācārī**: 'be appeased.'

8. **habent institūta**: 229, a. B. 337, 7; A. 497, b; H. 431, 3. **sacrificia**: human sacrifices were offered at times in Eastern lands (cf., for example, 2 Kings, iii. 27), and in ancient Mexico; and even at Rome an instance of human sacrifice is reported as late as 216 B. C.

9. **simulācra**: 'images' of wickerwork, having some resemblance to the human form.

10. **vivīs**: 'living.' **quibus**: *et eis (simulacris)*.

12. **Supplicia**: 92, a. **fūrtō**: 'theft.' **latrōciniō**: 'highway robbery.'

13. **noxiā**: 'crime.' **grātiōra**: 'more acceptable.'

15. **dēscendunt**: 'resort.'

17. 1. **Deōrum**: dependent on *maximē*. 97, e. **Mercurium**: in the case of Mercury and the other gods mentioned, Caesar gives the name of the Roman divinity whose attributes and functions seemed to him to correspond most nearly with those of the Gallic divinity; the Gallic names were of course not known to Roman readers.

2. **simulācra**: since the Gauls began making statues only after the Roman conquest, it has been suggested that the 'images' of Mercury referred to here were the huge upright stones (menhirs) of which several groups must have been seen by Caesar in Gaul (Fig. 123), and that these were associated in some way with the worship of the Gallic divinity identified by him with this god. Pillars of a certain type were sacred to Hermes, the Greek god corresponding with Mercury. **inventōrem**: 80, b. **artium**: 'arts.' 81. **ferunt**: 172, c.

runt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur ; post hunc, Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. 5

Dē his eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opiniōnem : Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō 10 cēperint, plērumque dēvoent ; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt.



Figure 123.— Sacred stones called Menhirs.

Probably thought by Caesar to be Images of Mercury. These Menhirs are near that part of the west coast where Caesar and his army witnessed the sea-fight with the Venetans (III, 14, l. 25). In the background is a modern windmill.

3. **viārum** : Mercury is 'guide for roads' in that he points out the road, and 'for journeys' because he accompanies the traveler on the way. **quaestūs** : 'acquisition.' 92, a.

4. **mercātūrās** : 'commercial transactions.'

7. **Apollinem**, etc. : the infinitive clauses are appositional. 12, d. **operum**, etc. : 'imparts the elements of the trades and crafts.'

8. **caelestium** : 'the gods' as dwellers in the sky (*caelum*).

11. **cēperint** : subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, for the future perfect indicative. **cum superāvērunt** : *post victōriam*.

**animālia** : 16, b, and 80, b.

Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum extrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut  
 15 neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic ob-  
 5 servant, ut noctem diēs subsequatur.

*Strange customs of the Gauls.*

In reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus militiae

13. **tumulōs**: such piles of booty would after a time rot down and be covered with vegetation, presenting the appearance of a mound.

15. **quispiam**: 49, a. **capta**: neuter plural, accusative. 227, a, (4). **apud sē**: 'in his possession.'

16. **posita tollere**: 'to take away what had been deposited' as an offering to the gods, as Achan did (Joshua, chap. 7, verses 20-22). **supplicium**, etc.: like the terrible doom of Achan (Josh. 7, 23-26).

18. 1. **Dīte patre**: Caesar identifies the Gallic divinity with a Roman god of the Underworld known in earlier times as 'Father Dis' (*Dis pater*), later generally called Pluto. 128, b.

2. **Ob eam causam**: because sprung from the god of the Underworld, the realm of darkness and night.

4. **finiunt**: 'measure.' The ancient Germans also reckoned time by the number of nights; traces of this reckoning remain in our words "fortnight" (= fourteen nights) and "sennight" (= seven nights, i.e. a week). **diēs nātālēs**: 'birthdays.'

5. **ut**, etc.: instead of saying "the first day of the month," as we do, the Gauls said 'the first night of the month,' 'the first night of the year,' 'birthnight,' etc. Primitive peoples find it more difficult to keep track of time by days than by nights because it is easier to note the changes of the moon than of the sun. So Indians reckoned time by "moons."

6. **hōc**: 142, a. **ab reliquīs**: 'from all other people.' 171, a.

7. **adolēvērunt**: 'have grown up.' **mūnus militiae**: 'military service.'

sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

10

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acciperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatione facta, cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum vitam superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit.

Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae, illustriore loco natus,

8. *se*: only the fathers are referred to, as shown by l. 9.

9. *puerili aetate*: 'while in the age of childhood.' How lit.?  
143, a.

10. *turpe*: predicative, 'consider it disgraceful for a son . . . to appear.' On public occasions the Gauls would appear armed; it was thought in bad form for an armed man to have with him, in a public place, a son who was not also armed.

19. 1. *Viri*: 'husbands'; German *Mann* is similarly used. *pecunias*: 'property' in general; trans. as if *tantas pecunias, quantas dotis nomine*: 'as dowry.' 17, c.

2. *bonis*: 'possessions.' *aestimatione facta*: 'making an estimate of value.' 144, b, (2).

3. *communicant*: 'set aside.' From his own property the husband set aside an amount equal to the dower received with the wife. The income from this common fund, or estate, was saved up and added to the principal; when the husband or wife died the whole went to the survivor. *coniunctim*, etc.: 'a joint account is kept.' How lit.?

4. *fructus*: 'income.' 92, a. *uter*: 'whichever,' husband or wife. *vita*: 142, a.

5. *utriusque*: 'of both.' 51. The custom could have prevailed only among the higher classes, on account of the abject poverty of the common folk (chap. 13, ll. 2-4).

7. *in*: 'over.' *vitae*, etc.: among the early Romans also the father had 'the power of life and death' over his household.

8. *pater familiae*: 'the head of a family.' *illustriore loco natus*: 'of higher rank.' 128, a.



dēcessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, dē morte si rēs in  
 10 suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaesti-  
 ōnem habent et, si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tor-  
 mentis excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa ;  
 omniaque, quae vivīs cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem in-  
 15 ferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servi

9. *dē*, etc. : 'if suspicion has arisen regarding (the cause of) death.'  
 How lit.?

10. *uxōribus* : the plural implies the existence of polygamy among  
 the higher classes in Gaul. *in*, etc. : 'an examination like that of

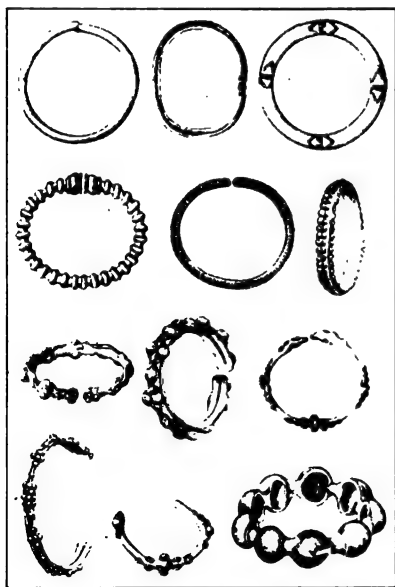


Figure 124. — Gallic bronze bracelets.

Bronze bracelets and neck rings were popular  
 ornaments in ancient Gaul.

burned in wooden  
 buckets adorned with bronze ornaments (Fig. 125; wood restored).

15. *suprā hanc memoriam* : 'before our time.' How lit.?

slaves,' under torture. How  
 lit.? Roman law and custom  
 sanctioned the torture of  
 slaves on the death of a  
 master under suspicious cir-  
 cumstances.

11. *compertum est* : im-  
 personal, '(their guilt) has  
 been proved.' *Ignī*, etc. :  
 'agonize and kill them with  
 fire and every instrument of  
 torture.' 228, *a*, and 206 (3).

13. *Fūnera* : 'funerals.'  
*18, c.* *prō cultū* : 'con-  
 sidering the civilization,'  
 which in art as in life seemed  
 to the Roman crude (Fig.  
 124). *magnifica* : 'splen-  
 did.' 31. *sūmptuōsa* :  
 'costly.' 75, *f*.

14. *cordi fuisse* : 'were  
 dear.' How lit.? 10, *g*, and  
 112, *b*. *Ignem* : of the  
 funeral pyre. The ashes were  
 sometimes buried in wooden

et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūne-  
bribus cōfectis, ūnā cremābantur.

*Their precautions in dealing with rumors affecting public safety.*

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem pūblicam ad-  
ministrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis  
quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,  
utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō communicet,  
quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rū-  
mōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summis rēbus  
cōsiliū capere cognitum est.

Magistrātūs, quae vīsa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse ex  
ūsū iūdicāverunt, multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi  
per conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

10

16. *dilēctōs esse*: 'were loved.' *iūstis*, etc.: 'on the comple-  
tion of the regular funeral rites.'

17. *ūnā*: 'at the same time,' with the body of the master. The  
burning of favorite dependents on their master's funeral pyre was probably  
intended to continue their service for  
him in the other world. Interment with-  
out burning was also in vogue in Gaul.

20. 1. *Quae civitatēs*: i.e. *cae*  
*civitātēs*, *quae*. *rem pūblicam*:  
'public affairs.'

2. *habent*, etc.: 'have it ordained  
by law that if anybody has heard any-  
thing.' 49, a.

3. *dē rē pūblicā*: 'touching the  
public interest.' How lit.?

4. *nēve*: 'and not.' *quō*: 49, a.

5. *falsis*: 'baseless.' 83, a. Cf.

IV, 5, ll. 5-13.

8. *vīsa sunt*: i.e. *vīsa sunt occul-*  
*tanda*, 'which they have thought best to  
conceal.' *quaeque et (ea) quae*.

10. *per conciliū*: 'at an assem-  
bly' duly convoked, lit. 'through (the medium of) an assembly.' Very  
few states could have enforced this regulation for any length of time.



Figure 125.— Bucket in which  
burnt human bones were found;  
imported from Gaul into Britain  
in Caesar's time.

*Altogether different are the beliefs and customs of the Germans.*

**21.** Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, qui rēbus divīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.

Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōrī ac dūritiae student.

*The Germans do not take to farming, and have no private land.*

**22.** Agri cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō

**21. 1. Germānī**, etc.: 'The German mode of life and government differs greatly from that described.' How lit.? 238, b.

**2. druidēs**: there were priests among the Germans, but they did not form a dominant class, as the Druids did in Gaul. **rēbus divīnīs**: chap. 13, l. 10, and N. **praesint**: 193, a. B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2.

**3. Deōrum**, etc.; the religion of the Germans in Caesar's time was a primitive nature-worship.

**5. Vulcānum**: god of fire. **Lūnam**: the host of Ariovistus dared not fight before the new moon (I, 50, ll. 11-17). **reliquōs**: sc. *deōs*.

**6. vēnātiōnibus**: 'hunting' 92, a. **in**, etc.: 'in warlike pursuits.'

**7. ā parvis**: 'from childhood.' **dūritiae**: 'hardship.'

**22. 2. lacte**: 10, g. **cāseō**: 'cheese.' **carne**: 18, a.

**3. finēs propriōs**: 'lands of his own'; there was no private ownership of land. Cf. IV, 1, ll. 13-15.

**4. in annōs singulōs**: 'each year.' **gentibus**: 'clans.' **cognātiōnibus**: 'those connected by blood,' groups of families.

**5. quique**, etc.: 'and (to those) who have joined together,' associating themselves for the purpose. **quantum**—**agri**, etc.: 'as much land as they deem proper, and in whatever place (they think best).'

vīsum est agrī, attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt.

Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē, assiduā cōnsuētūdine capti, studium belli gerendi agrī culturā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs<sup>10</sup> possessionibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frigora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factionēs dissensionēsque nāscuntur; ut animi aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

15

*Their ambitions are military; but they protect a guest.*

**23.** Cīvitātibus maxima laus est, quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātis finibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magis-

6. vīsum est: sc. *eis* (*magistratibus ac principibus*). annō: 140. Cf. IV, 1, ll. 9-13. aliō: adverb, 'to another place.'

8. Eius rei causās: 'explanations of this practice,' defined by the *nē*-clauses and *ut*-clause following. assiduā, etc.: 'captivated by the attractiveness of permanent residence.' How lit.?

9. culturā: 139. A. 417, b; H. 478, 4.

11. accūrātius: 'with too great pains.' frigora: 92, c.

13. dissensionēs: 'dissensions.' 81. nāscuntur: indicative as expressing the view of the writer; cf. 220.

14. animi aequitāte: 'in a state of contentment.' How lit.?  
cum, etc.: 'each one seeing.'

15. cum potentissimis: *cum opibus potentissimorum*. 238, b.

23. 1. maxima laus: 'the highest distinction.' quam: 153, c.

2. proprium virtūtis: 'a proof of valor.' How lit.?  
102. Cf. IV, 3, ll. 1-5.

3. neque quemquam: 'and that no one.' 168, and 49, a.

5. incursiōnis: 'raid.' timōre: 144, b, (3).

6. bellum illātum dēfendit: 'repels an attack that has been made.'

trātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter  
 10 suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam, quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit, *sē ducem fore, quī sequi*  
 15 *velint, profiteantur*, cōsurgunt eī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex his secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque his rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.

7. **praesint**: 193, *a.* B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; H. 590.

8. **commūnis**: 'common' to a whole people or tribe.

9. **principēs**, etc.: 'the head men of divisions and districts.' Nothing is known about the details of the German civil administration in Caesar's time; these probably varied somewhat among the different peoples.

10. **iūs dicunt**: 'administer justice.'

11. **Latrōcinia**: 'marauding expeditions' outside their own borders have generally been considered by barbarous peoples as not merely permissible but even praiseworthy. **habent**: 'involve.' **Infāmiam**: 'disgrace.'

13. **dēsidiāe**: 'indolence.' **praedicant**: 'they (the Germans) declare.' **quis**: 49, *a.*

14. **ducem**: 'leader' of an expedition or raid. **quī**: as antecedent supply *et*, subject of *profiteantur*.

15. **profiteantur**: 'that they . . . are to volunteer.' 216.

17. **ex his**: 'of those' who have offered to follow. In this voluntary relation between the chieftain as leader and his followers lies the origin of the peculiar relation between lord and vassal in the Middle Ages.

18. **dēsertōrum**, etc.: 'as deserters and traitors.' 81. **omnium rērum fidēs**: 'confidence in all matters,' not merely in respect to warlike prowess.

19. **his**: dative. 109, *b.* **dērogātur**: 'is withdrawn.'

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē<sup>20</sup> causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniuriā prohibent, sānctōs habent, hisque ōmnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

*The Gauls, once superior to the Germans, are now inferior.*

**24.** Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis

**20. Hospitem violāre:** 'to maltreat a guest.' **quī:** as antecedent supply *eōs*, object of *prohibent*. **quācumque:** 50, *a*.

**References.** The statements in chapters 22 and 23 about the institutions of the early Germans are of particular interest; for they reveal the application, in a crude way, of principles of government the fuller outworking of which in the feudal system and in the English Constitution have had much to do with shaping the political history of Europe, and even of America. References are: Stubbs, Constitutional History of England, vol. I., chaps. 1 and 2; Taylor, Origin and Growth of the English Constitution, book I., chaps. 1, 2; Adams, Civilization during the Middle Ages, chap. 5; Hallam, View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages, chap. 2.

**24. 2. Inferrent, mitterent:** 238, *a*.

**3. trāns Rhēnum;** the Gauls in earlier times had not only held extensive regions east of the Rhine, but had pressed far down into Italy, giving to Cisalpine Gaul its name. The Boii (as noted elsewhere) gave their name to "Bohemia," and coins struck by different branches of the Boii, east of the Rhine and in northern Italy, have been found (Fig. 126 and Vocab. under *Boii*). **colōniās:** 81.

**4. fertilissima:** 'most productive.' **81. loca:** accusative.

**5. Hercyniam silvam:** see Vocab. **Eratosthenī:** see Vocab. **quibusdam:** 168. **Graecis:** it is not now possible to determine to what Greek writers Caesar refers.



Figure 126. — Coin of the Boii.

Silver; probably struck east of the Rhine, while the Boii still dwelt there.

Reverse, serpent with a lion's head.

fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opiniōnem.

- 10 Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestātē, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trāsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim assuēfacti superārī multisque victi proeliis,  
15 nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

*The Hercynian forest, and the wonderful animals found in it.*

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprà dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō VIII diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim

6. **videō**: Caesar evidently had before him the works of the Greek writers referred to. He probably kept at his headquarters copies of writings that he thought might be in any way useful in his campaigns.

7. **Volcae Tectosagēs**: see Vocab. under *Tectosagēs*.

8. **quae gens**: 'and that people.' **ad . . . continet**: 'to this day continues to maintain itself,' a Gallic outpost, as it were, on German soil. **summam**: 353, d.

9. **bellicae**, etc.: 'reputation for . . . prowess in war.'

10. **in**, etc.: 'in the (same condition of) poverty, privation, (and) endurance as before.' 234, a.

12. **prōvinciārum**: the two provinces, Cisalpine Gaul and "the Province" in Transalpine Gaul. **trāsmarinārum**, etc.: 'familiarity with products brought across the sea,' which entered Gaul chiefly through the port of Massilia. How lit.? 293, a.

13. **multa**: 'many articles,' not contributing to the "simple life." **ad . . . largitur**: 'supply in abundance for common use.' How lit.?

15. **ipsi**: *Galli*. **illis**: trans. as if *Germānis*.

25. 1. **suprà**: chap. 24, l. 5.

2. **lātitudō**: 'breadth,' from north to south. **VIII**, etc.: 243, c. **expeditō**: 'for an unencumbered (traveler),' who might average 20 miles a day; if so, the 'nine days' journey' would be a rough equivalent of 180 miles.

aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvii regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus, diversis ā flūmine regiōnibus, multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae, quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōstat, quae reliquis in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervi figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs unum cornū exsistit, excelsius magisque dērectum hīs, quae

3. **neque**, etc.: 'and (the people) have no system of measuring distances,' by paces and miles (243, a) such as the Romans had. How lit.? **Oritur**: sc. *ea* (*Hercynia silva*).

4. **finibus**: 'frontiers.' **rēctā**, etc.: 'following the line of the Danube it extends' How lit.?

5. **regiōne**: 136, b.

6. **sinistrōrsus**: 'to the left' of the Danube, spreading out northward, toward the Carpathian Mountains. **diversis**, etc.: 'in a direction away from the river.' 92, a.

8. **huius Germāniae**: 'of this (part of) Germany,' the western part.

9. **initium**: the eastern limit. **dīcat**: 194, a. **oum**: 187.

11. **ferārum**: 'wild animals.' **quae**: 'such as.' 194, a. **reliquis locis**: 'any other places.'

12. **ex quibus quae**: *et ex eis (ea) quae*.

13. **memoriae**: dative; trans., 'seem worthy of mention.' How lit.? **haec**: 161, a.

26. 1. **Est**: 90, a. **bōs**, etc.: 'an ox having the form of a stag.' Caesar is describing the reindeer, with which the American caribou is closely related. As a descriptive term *bōs* was applied also to the elephant, one name of which was *Lūca bōs*, 'Lucanian cow.' 18, a. **figurā**: 143, a. **mediā**: 152, a. **aurēs**: 'ears.' 82, c.

2. **unum cornū**: reindeer and caribou shed their antlers each year, and Caesar's informant may have seen a reindeer which had lost one antler, but had not yet shed the other. In the Provincial Museum at



*nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.*



Figure 127. — Caribou with one horn.

In the Provincial Museum at Victoria, British Columbia.

Victoria, British Columbia, there is a degenerate caribou which, when shot, had only one antler (Fig. 127). *excoelsius*, etc.: 'higher and straighter.' 30, and 129, *a*.

3. *ab eius summō*: 'at the end of the antler.' How lit.? *slout*, etc.: 'hands' (i.e. with fingers extended) 'and branches, as it were, are widely spread out.' The aptness of the description, and the comparison with the deer-horns familiar to the Romans (*nōbīs nōta sunt*), suggest that Caesar had probably obtained an antler of a reindeer. The error of placing a single antler at the middle of the forehead of the reindeer may be due to an interpreter's misunderstanding; if so, the error is certainly no more remarkable than that mistranslation of Exodus (chapter 34, verse 29), which led Michael Angelo to put horns on his famous statue of Moses.

4. *fēminae*, etc.: 'the natural characteristics of the male and the female.' *maris*: 13, *g*.

5. *eadem*, etc.: here again Caesar was misinformed; the antlers of the female reindeer are somewhat smaller than those of the male.

**27.** Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis capris figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitudine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, si quō afflictāe cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre possunt.

His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant, atque ita, paulum modo reclīnātae, quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subru-

**27. 1. alcēs:** 'moose.' The American moose closely resembles the European elk, to which Caesar refers; the American elk belongs to a different genus.

**2. capris:** i.e. *figūrae* (dative) *caprārū*, '(like) that of goats'; brachylogy. 238, b. **varietās:** 'mottled appearance.'

**3. antecēdunt:** 'they surpass (the reindeer).' **mutilae,** etc.: 'their horns present a broken appearance' (Fig. 128). How lit.? **cornibus:** 142, a. **crūra:** 'legs.' 13, g.

**4. nōdis articulisque:** 'nodes and joints.' In this statement Caesar reflects the condition of scientific knowledge in his time.

The even more marvelous unicorn found a place in a textbook of Natural History as late as the fourteenth century. In England down to the nineteenth century the belief was still current that elephants have no joints in their legs. **quiētis:** 10, e.

**5. afflictāe:** 'thrown down.' **ērigere,** etc.: 'to assume a standing position, or raise themselves up.'

**7. sunt prō cubilibus:** 'serve as resting-places.' **ad,** etc.: 'they lean up against these.'

**8. reclīnātae:** 'leaning to one side'; lit. 'leaned back.'

**9. cum:** 185, b. **vēnātōribus:** 'hunters.' 74, a.

**10. omnēs:** with *arborēs*. 353, d. **ab:** 'at.' 126, c.

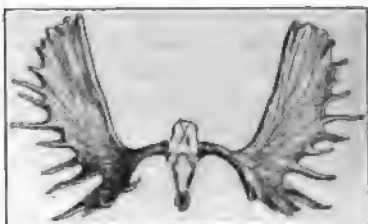


Figure 128.—Horns of a Moose.

unt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum, ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine reclināverunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

**28.** Tertium est genus eōrum, qui ūri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudīne paulō infā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā tauri. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspexērunt, parant.

**5** Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et qui plūrimōs ex his interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus, quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem  
**10** excepti possunt.

Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrō-

**11. accidunt:** 'cut into.' **tantum,** etc.: '(only) so much that the trees retain perfectly the appearance of standing firmly.' How lit.?

**12. Hūc:** *in hās arborēs.* **cōsuētūdine:** 136, c. This wonderful story may have originated in a distorted account of a kind of pitfall, made by covering a deep hole with timber so weakened by notches that a heavy animal passing above would break through.

**28. 1. ūri:** 'wild cattle,' now extinct; sometimes confused with the aurochs, or European buffalo, of which a few herds still exist in game preserves. The 'wild cattle' had spreading horns, like those of our Texas cattle, and it is thought that they represented the primitive stock from which our domestic cattle are descended. The last specimen died in 1627.

**2. elephantōs:** 'the elephant.' 92, a. **speciēs:** 143, a. **colōre:** 80, b.

**3. tauri:** i.e. of a domestic 'bull.'

**4. parant:** 'spare'; they attack indiscriminately. 105.

**5. studiōsē:** 'diligently.' **foveīs:** 'by means of pitfalls.' **captōs:** 228, a. **sē dūrant:** 'they develop hardihood.' How lit.?

**7. relātis,** etc.: 'publicly exhibiting the horns as a trophy.'

**8. sint:** 193, a. **testimoniō:** 112, a.

**9. assuēscere,** etc.: 'become domesticated.' **mānsuēfierī:** 'be tamed.' **nē,** etc.: 'not even if very young when caught.'

rum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

*Caesar returns to Gaul, cuts down the farther end of the bridge.*

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit, Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed, nē omninō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret atque ut eōrum s auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū, partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum iv cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium xii, pontis tuendī causā, pōnit magnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. 10

Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefēcit.

12. **conquīsita**: 'collect and.' 228, a. **ab labrīs**, etc.: 'mount them with silver at the rim.' How lit.?

13. **in amplissimis epulis**: 'at their more elaborate feasts.' The principal beverage was beer.

14. **ūtuntur**: sc. *his*; 'use them as drinking cups.' Such drinking horns continued in use in the Middle Ages; in later times horns of cattle were made into "powderhorns," the use of which in this country continued till after the Revolutionary War. Drinking horns were used also by the early Greeks.

29. 1. **Caesar**, etc.: the narrative, broken off at chapter 10, is here resumed.

3. **suprā**: chap. 22, ll. 1-2; cf. IV, 1, ll. 12-15.

8. **in extrēmō ponte**: 'on the end of the bridge,' in the river, 200 Roman feet from the east bank. The bridge here probably crossed a small island, which furnished a secure foundation for the tower. **tabulātōrum iv**: 'four stories high.' How lit.? 100, a.

10. **mūnitiōnibus**: of a fortified enclosure at the end of the bridge, on the west bank.

## COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS

### Beginning of a General Uprising; First Movements. 1-10

*The Gauls secretly plan a general uprising.*

1. QUIĒTĀ Galliā, Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdii caede; dē senātūsque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dilēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit.

Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Galli, quod rēs poscere

1-10. **The Circumstances.** During the sixth year of the Gallic War (53 B.C.) the restlessness of the conquered states became increasingly manifest, but all attempts to revolt were sternly repressed by Caesar. After his return from the second expedition into Germany (VI, 29), Caesar devoted himself particularly to the chastisement of the Eburones, but narrowly escaped the loss of a legion, which was stationed at Atuatuca in command of Quintus Cicero and was attacked by a force of marauding Sugambrians (VI, 30-44).

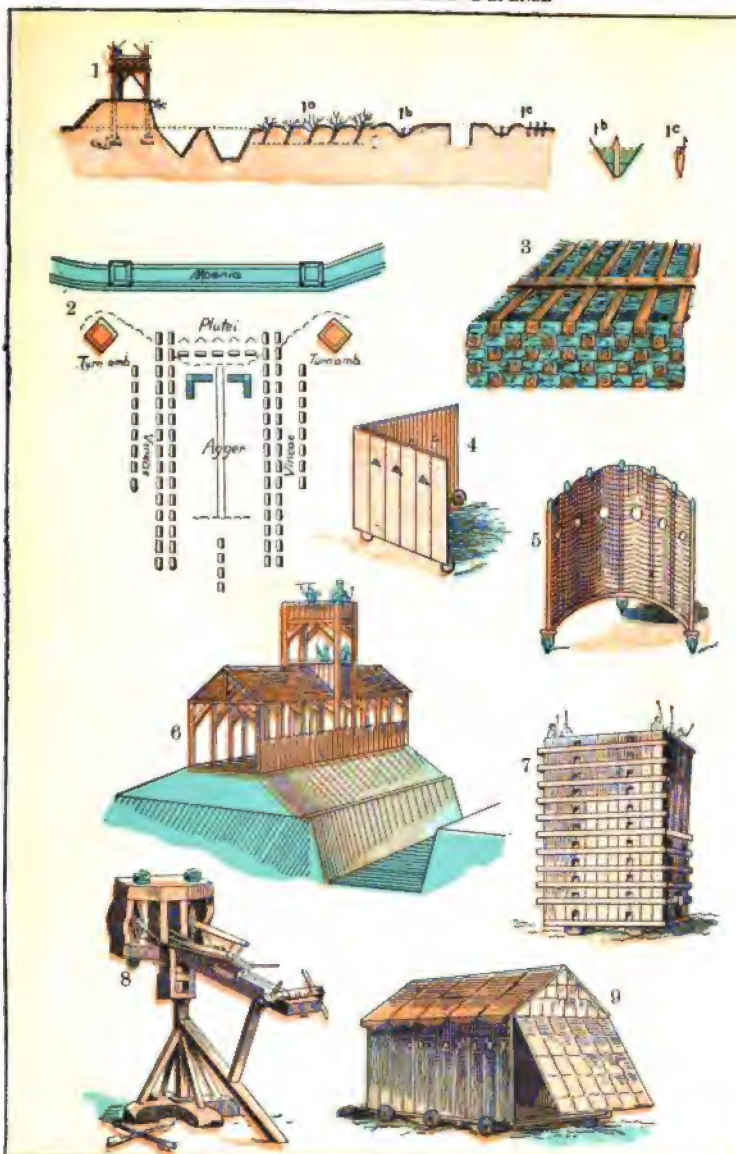
Before the close of the winter 53-52 B.C. the Gauls began to organize a general rebellion. The earlier part of the Seventh Book, which is devoted to the events of 52 B.C., deals with the first movements of the Gauls and with Caesar's counter-movements, which were characterized by amazing quickness of decision, energy, and despatch.

1. 1. **Quiētā Galliā**: the "calm before the storm." 144, b. (3). **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul. 283, b. **ad**, etc.: N. to I, 54, l. 8.

2. **P. Clōdii**: killed in January, 52 B.C., in an encounter with his personal enemy, T. Annius Milo. Riots ensued at Rome, and the Senate ordered out all men throughout Italy capable of bearing arms.

4. **iūniōrēs**: men between the ages of 17 and 46. **coniūrārent**: 'should together take the oath' that they would obey the consuls. **dilēctum**: 'levy.' 307, a. **prōvinciā**: = *citeriōre prōvinciā*. 284.

7. **Addunt et affingunt**: 'added to (the facts) and embellished (them) with rumors.' 175, b. **quod**: = *id quod*, explained by *retinēri . . . posse*; "the wish" was "father to the thought." **rēs**: 'the condition of affairs.'



1. Caesar's Works before Alesia (VII. 72, 73): 1a, Cippi; 1b, Lilia; 1c, Stimul
2. Agger, etc. (VII. 24). 3. Gallic City Wall (VII. 23).
- 4, 5. Movable Breastworks, *plutei*.
6. Rampart of Camp, with Passageway and Towers.
7. Movable Tower, *turris ambulatoria*. 8. Catapult, *catapulta*.
9. Sapper's Hut, *vinea*.



vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantis dissēnsiōibus ad exercitum venīre posse.

Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante sē populī Rōmāni<sup>10</sup> imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis querunter dē Accōnis morte; hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere posse dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollici-<sup>15</sup> tātiōnibus ac praemiis dēposcunt, quī belli initium faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primis ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur:

*Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant, absente imperātore, ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque, quam ā maiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.*

*The Carnutes lead in revolt, massacre the Romans in Cenabum.*

2. His rēbus agitātis, profitentur Carnutēs, sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque

8. **urbānō mōtū**: 'the disturbances in the city,' in Rome.

9. **dissēnsiōibus**: 'strifes.'

10. **quī**: 'since they.' 194, c. **ante**: adverb.

13. **Accōnis**: a leader in uprisings the previous year (VI, 4, 44).

14. **ad ipsōs recidere**: 'might fall upon themselves.'

15. **omnibus polliciōtātiōnibus**: 'by every sort of promise.'

17. **sui**, etc.: 'at the risk of their lives would assert the freedom of Gaul.' How lit.?

18. **ratiōnem esse habendam**: 'that a plan should be devised.'

22. **hibernis**: 6 legions at Agedincum (3, Map 13), 2 among the Lingones (2, Map 13), and 2 near the Treveran frontier.

2. 1. **profitentur**: at a meeting of representatives of Gallic states.

2. **principēs**, etc.: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'



ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sancīātur, petunt, collātis militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur, nē, factō initiō belli, ab reliquis dēserantur. Tum, collaudātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrاندō ab omnibus, quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō, ā conciliō  
10 discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs, Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt civēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant, in his C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem s Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt.

Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps ex-

3. **quoniam**, etc.: 'since at the time they could not bind one another for mutual protection by an exchange of hostages.'

5. **fidē**: 'a pledge of honor.' **sancīātur**: sc. *ut*; 'that (the compact) be ratified.' 199, a. **collātis signīs**: 'by placing their standards close together,' signifying inviolable alliance for war.

6. **mōre eōrum**: 'in accordance with their custom.' 136, c. **gravissima**: 'most solemn.'

9. **eius rei**: the commencing of hostilities.

10. **discēditur**: 'they went away.' 73, d, and 176, b.

3. 1. **diēs**: the 'day' appointed for commencing hostilities. 21, a.

2. **dēspērātis**: here an adjective. **Cēnabum**: Map 13. 119, a.

3. **negōtiandī**: the Roman citizens engaged in business in Gallic cities were chiefly money-lenders who furnished capital for various enterprises, and dealers in supplies, particularly of grain; cf. p. xxviii.

6. **interficiunt**: the massacre of the Roman citizens, well organized in advance, took place at daybreak (l. 11).

8. **quae**: 'any.' 168. **clāmōre**: 'by shouting.'

9. **per agrōs regiōnēsque**: 'across the country.' How lit.?  
**hunc** [clāmōrem], etc.: 'others in turn take up the shouting.'

cipiunt et proximis trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae 10  
Cēnabi oriente sōle gesta essent, ante primam cōfectam  
vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium  
est milium passuum circiter CLX.

*The Arverni revolt, under the leadership of Vercingetorix.*

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā civitatē erat interfectus, convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortunam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen, atque in agris habet dilēctum egentium ac perditōrum.

Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex civitatē, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur, ut commūnis libertātis causā

---

11. **Cēnabi**: 146. **gesta essent**: adversative, 'although these things had been done.' 194, d. **ante . . . vigiliam**: 228, b, and 242, c.

12. **quod spatium**: 'a distance which.' Perhaps men had been posted in advance along the roads leading from Cenabum, in readiness to transmit the news; otherwise the population must have been so dense over the country that neighbors were within hailing distance. 165, b.

4. 1. **ibi**: in the country of the Arvernians; Map 13.

2. **principātum tōtius Galliae**: 'a position of leadership throughout the Celtic country,' on account of his influence. 287, b.

3. **eam**: 161, a. **causam**: explained by the *quod*-clause.

5. **olientibus**: a feudal following, like that of Orgetorix (I, 4).

6. **ad arma concurritur**: 'they rushed to arms.' How lit.? 73, d. **patruō**: 'uncle,' on his father's side.

7. **hanc**, etc.: 'that fortune ought not to be tempted in this way'; cf. Fig. 198. How lit.?

11. **quōscumque**, etc.: 'all the men of his state whom he approached.' 50, a.

arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex  
 15 ab suis appellatur. Dimittit quoque versus legationes; obtestatur, ut in fide maneat.

*Vercingetorix wins over many states, including the Bituriges.*

Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovicos, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad  
 20 eum deferretur imperium. Qua oblata potestate, omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; in primis equitatu studet.

Summae diligentiae summam imperii severitatem addit;  
 25 magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam, maiore commissio delicto, igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviores de causa auribus desectis, aut singulis effossis oculis, domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentum et magnitudine poenae  
 30 perterreant alios.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Biturigis proficiscitur.

13. **adversarios**: 'opponents,' such as Gobannitio.

16. **obtestatur**: 'he adjured (his allies),' through his envoys.

22. **armorum quantum**, etc.: 'how great a supply of arms each state should furnish.' 97, b.

23. **domi**: 'of its own manufacture,' lit. 'at home.' 146. **quod**, etc.: 'and before what time'; Vercingetorix fixed the date for delivery.

26. **dubitantes**: 'those who hesitated' to join him. 227, a, (4).

27. **delictis**: 'offence.' **necat**: sc. *eum qui id commiserat*.

28. **leviores de causa**: i.e. *si qui levius peccaverunt*. **auribus**, etc.: 'he cut off their ears, or gouged out one eye, and.' 144, b, (2).

29. **documentis**: 'a warning.' 112, b.

5. 3. **Rutenos**, etc: Vercingetorix (Figures 18, 145) proceeds with great energy against the states friendly to Caesar.

Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium, cōpiās sustinēre possint.

Aeduī dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Aeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morāti neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostris renūntiant, sē *Biturigum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsiliū fuisse cognōverint, ut, sī flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent.* Id eāne dē causā, quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt, an perfidiā adductī fēcērint, quod nihil nōbis cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum.

Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

*Caesar leaves Cisalpine Gaul, proceeds to Narbo, in the Province.*

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātis, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompei commodiōrem in statum

4. quōrum, etc.: 'in whose allegiance they were.' The Aeduans were at the head of one league of Gallic states, the Arvernians of the other (I, 31, ll. 10-28).

5. rogātum: 231, a. hostium: the Arvernian army.

7. lēgātōrum: these had been left 'with the army' when it was placed in winter quarters at the end of 53 B.C. 313, a.

9. Biturigibus: 19, e, and 112, b. Quī: 167. Ligerim: 18, e.

11. ausī: 62. domum: 20, c, and 119, b.

12. veritōs: 61, a, (2), and 227, a, (1). quibus, etc.: 'having found out that the Bituriges had the design.' 97, b, and 214, a.

15. -ne . . . an: 204, (1). B. 162, 4; A. 335; H. 380.

16. fēcērint: the object is *Id*. nihil: adverbial accusative. 118, c. nōbis: 156. prō certō: 'as certain.' 154, a.

6. 1. Italiam: Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul. 283, b, and 256.

2. urbānās rēs: 'affairs in the city,' Rome; see chap. I, ll. 2-9, and Notes. virtūte: 'through the energetic action.' The break between Caesar and Pompey did not come till two years later. 258.

pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpinam Galliam profectus est.

5 Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā  
ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs  
in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmi-  
cātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē  
eis quidem eō tempore, quī quiētī vidērentur, suam salūtem  
10 rēctē committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam  
civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs  
et Gabalōs, ab utrisque obsidēs accipit et, magnā coactā  
manū, in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptiōnem facere  
5 contendit.

Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnibus cōsiliis antevertendum  
exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnis-  
set, timentēs cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis prōvinciālibus,  
Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae  
10 loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit, partem cōpiārum  
ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, quod ex Italiā addūxerat,  
in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire  
iubet.

5. **magnā**, etc.: 'he experienced great difficulty in devising a plan for reaching his army.' How lit.?

6. **posset**: 204, (2). **legiōnēs**: see chap. 1, l. 22, and N.

8. **ipse**: alone, or with only a small military escort.

9. **eō tempore**: 'at so critical a time.' How lit.?

7. 1. **Rutēnōs**: 282. **missus**: chap. 5, ll. 1-3.

2. **Nitiobrogēs**, **Gabalōs**: west, and east, of the Ruteni; see Map GALLIA.

4. **versus**: 'in the direction of.' 123, c. **irruptiōnem**: 'raid.'

6. **omnibus**, etc.: 'that setting out for Narbo should precede all (forming of) plans.' How lit.?

8. **prōvinciālibus**: a part of the Ruteni were in the Province.

9. **quae loca**: (*in*) *locis quae*. 165, c.

11. **supplēmentum**: 'raw contingent'; cf. chap. 1, ll. 3-5.

*Caesar crosses the Cévennes through deep snow, surprising the Arverni.*

8. His rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiſcitur. Etsi mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviis disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive in altitudinem pedum, sex atque ita viis patefactis summō militum sūdōre, ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam lātissimē<sup>10</sup> possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāmā ac nūntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortūnis cōsulat neu sē ab hostibus diripi patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus, castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

8. 1. **His**, etc.: 'Having completed these preparations.'

2. **intra praesidia**: 'within the (chain of) garrisons' by which Caesar had secured the western frontier of the Province. **periculōsum**: 76, f; 84, and 148, d. **putābat**: sc. *Lucterius*.

3. **proficiſcitur**: sc. *Caesar*.

4. **dūrissimō tempore**: 'the most inclement season.'

5. **discussā nive**: 'the snow was cleared away' in the pass by which he crossed the Cévennes. Cf. Map 13, (1). 144, b, (2).

6. **summō sūdōre**: 'with the utmost effort.' 136, b. How lit.?

9. **nē**, etc.: 'not even for one man alone,' not to speak of an army.

10. **sēmitae**: mountain 'trails.' **patuerant**: 'were passable.'

13. **fāmā**: 'by report;' less definite than **nūntiis**, 'by messages.'

15. **suis**: 'their own.' **neu**: 199, d.

16. **omnē**: 184, b. **omne**: 353, d.

18. **in . . . versus**: 123, c. **Arvernōs**: 222.

*Caesar assembles his legions; he leaves two at Agedincum and starts for Gorgobina, besieged by Vercingetorix.*

9. At Caesar, bīdūm in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātusque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscētem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: *Datūrum sē operam, nē longius trīduō ā castris absit.*

His cōstitūtis rēbus, suis inopinātibz, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem 10 equitātum, quem multis ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduis inirētur cōnsiliū, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās 15 legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit, quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūtiārī posset.

Hāc rē cognitā, Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturigēs exercitum reducit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiōrum

9. 1. *haec dē Vercingetorige*: 'these movements on the part of Vercingetorix.'

2. *ūsū ventūra* [esse]: 'would take place; lit., 'would come in experience.' 142, a. *opiniōne praecēperat*: 'had conjectured.'

3. *per causam*, etc.: 'making a pretext of bringing together his new force,' etc. How lit.?

6. *Datūrum* [esse] . . . *absit*: said as a blind, to prevent information regarding his plans from reaching the enemy.

9. *nactus*, etc.: 'finding his cavalry refreshed.'

12. *duae legiōnēs*: see (2) on Map 13.

13. *quid*, etc.: 'any design involving his personal safety.' 97, b; 353, d.

14. *celeritāte*: 'by quickness of movement.' *praecurreret*: that he might forestall (it).'

16. *nūtiārī posset*: 'any report could reach.' 73, d; 189, b.

18. *Boiōrum*, etc.: I, 28, ll. 15-18; also, N. to VI, 24, l. 3.

oppidum, quōs ibi, Helvēticō proeliō victōs, Caesar collocāverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.

**10.** Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōsiliū capiendū afferēbat: sī reliquā partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē, stipendiāriis Aeduōrum expugnātis, cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amicis in eō praesidium vidērēt positum esse; sī mātūrius ex hibernis, ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret.

**10. 1. haec rēs:** 'This movement' of Vercingetorix.

**3. nē,** etc.: if Caesar failed to protect the Gauls pledged to his interest, he would soon find them enemies.



Figure 129. — Low ground northeast of Bourges, ancient Avaricum.

**4. cōnota Gallia:** 'the whole of Gaul.' **amicis:** 'for those (who were) friendly (to him).' **eō:** Caesar.

**6. ēdūceret:** sc. *legiōnēs*. **ab:** 'in respect to.' **dūris subvectiōnibus:** 'on account of difficulties of transportation,' caused by the bad state of the roads toward the end of winter.



Praestāre visum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti, quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Boiōs, quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque, ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agedinci legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relictis, ad Boiōs proficiscitur.

### The Siege and Destruction of Avaricum. 23-31

#### *The ingenious construction of Gallic city walls.*

**23.** Mūri autem omnēs Gallici hāc ferē fōrmā sunt.

Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea

9. tantā contumēliā acceptā: 'by acquiescing in so great an indignity' as the capture of Gorgobina by Vercingetorix would be. suōrum: 'who were loyal to him.' voluntātēs: 'the good will.'

11. quī, etc.: '(messengers) to explain.' 193, a.

14. tōtius exercitūs: ten legions, besides auxiliary troops. 308.

**11-22. Summary.** Caesar in rapid succession captures Vellaunodunum, Cenabum, and Noviodunum (4, 5, and 6 on Map 13), and marches toward Avaricum (7 on Map 13). This city the Gauls, contrary to the advice of Vercingetorix, resolve to defend. Caesar besieges it, and Vercingetorix is unable to gain any advantage over him.

**23. 2. Trabēs, etc.:** beams at right angles to the course of the wall were laid in a row two feet apart along the entire length of the wall.

**4. revinciuntur intrōrsus:** 'are made fast inside' the wall, probably by means of crossbeams parallel with the line of the wall, as indicated in Plate IX, 3. **vestiuntur:** 'are covered.'

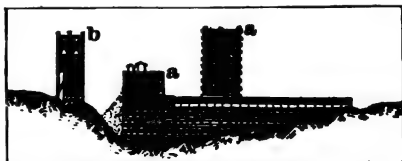


Figure 130. Section of works at Avaricum.

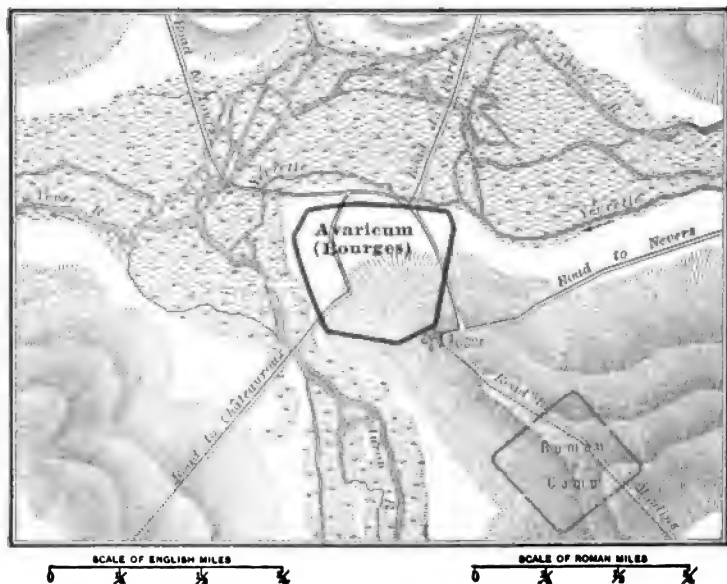
a, a. Roman agger, with a tower on the raised front facing the Gallic wall, and a higher movable tower further back.

b. Section of Gallic wall surmounted by a tower.

MAP 14  
THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM

Book VII, 15-28

To face page 374



EXPLANATION

The city of Avaricum, on the site of modern Bourges, was situated at the confluence of two streams, now called Yèvre and Auron, and was protected by marshes on three sides. It was surrounded by a strong wall (outlined in blue), and was reckoned by its inhabitants the most beautiful city in Gaul.

Caesar encamped on the higher ground on the side of the city free from marshes. Selecting a favorable point of approach he commenced the construction of a huge embankment, agger, consisting of two parallel dikes, or viaducts, terminating in a long embankment near the wall and parallel with it.

The siege embankment, composed largely of timber, was in part destroyed by fire, and the city was finally taken by assault.



autem, quae diximus, intervālla grandibus in fronte saxis efferciuntur.

His collocātis et coagmentātis, alius insuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur nēque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae singulis saxis interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps 10 omne opus contextitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur.

*The Gauls set the agger on fire and make a fierce attack.*

**24.** His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne, militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et assiduīs imbris tardārentur, tamen continenti labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs Lxxx extrūxērunt. 5

Cum is mūrū hostiū paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur, nē quod omninō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore, 10

5. **fronte**: the outside of the wall; the large stones tightly fitted the spaces between the ends of the beams.

6. **efferciuntur**: 'are closely packed.'

7. **coagmentātis**: 'fastened together.'

8. **idem illud intervāllum**: two feet. **inter**, etc.: 'touch one another.' 159.

9. **singulae**, etc.: 'the individual (beams) are held in position by tightly fitting a stone between' each two. How lit.?

11. **iūsta**: 'proper.' **expleātur**: 'is reached.' 190, b.

**24. 1. oppugnātiōne**: 340. **cum**: 'although.'

2. **tempore**: 147, c. **frigore**: it was still winter, probably in March (chap. 32, l. 4). **assiduīs**: 'continual.' 81.

4. **cccxxx**: *trecentōs et trigintā*, measured where the siege bank faced the wall (Map 14, and Fig. 130). **Lxxx**: *octōgintā*. The unusual height is explained by the existence of a gully in front of the wall.

7. **excubāret**: 'was watching.'

9. **fūmāre aggerem**: 'that the siege embankment was smoking.'

10. **cuniculō**: 'by means of a countermine,' run out underneath.

tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portis ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat; aliī facēs atque āridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs, quibus ignis excitārī potest, fundēbant,  
 15 ut, quō primum occurrerēt aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō iniri posset.

Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plūrēsq̄ue, partitis temporibus, erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent,  
 20 alii turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

*An instance of extraordinary bravery.*

**25.** Cum in omnibus locis, cōsūptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum animad-

**11. portis:** 134, a. **ab utrōque latere:** 'on both sides' of the siege embankment, designated by the movable towers now at the corners (Plate IX, 2).

**12. facēs:** 'firebrands.' 17, c. **āridam:** 81.

**15. ut,** etc.: 'so that it was hardly possible to decide at what point a counter-attack should first be made, or to what part reinforcements should be sent.' How lit.?

**17. institūtō,** etc.: 136, c. The legionaries on duty worked in shifts.

**20. turrēs,** etc.: they first drew back the towers, so as to remove these beyond the reach of the flames, then cut the siege embankment in two in order to confine the fire to the part already burning.

**21. ad restinguendum:** 'to put out (the fire).' 230, (3).

**25. 2. hostibus:** 109, a. B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; H. 425, 4, N.

**3. deūstōs,** etc.: sc. *esse*, 'that the breastworks of the towers were burned'; these were wooden screens, probably protected by hides, on the front of the towers.

**4. neo,** etc.: sc. *militēs*; 'and that it was not easy for the men exposed' to the enemy's missiles 'to come forward to help' in putting out the fire. The artillery was placed in the towers, which were there-

vertēbant, semperque ipsi recentēs dēfessis succēderent; omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit, inspectantibus nōbīs, quod, dignum memoriā vīsum, praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus.

Quidam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī apicis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpione ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque, concidit. Hunc ex proximis ūnus iacentem trāsgressus, eōdem illō mūnere fungēbatur; eādē ratiōne, ictū scorpionis, exanimātō alterō, successit tertius, et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus, quam, restinctō aggere atque omnī ex parte summōtis hostibus, finis est pugnandī factus.

*The defenders, despairing, plan to flee, but are thwarted.*

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnāti,

fore special objects of attack; the towers were finally saved, perhaps by throwing earth against the parts that caught fire.

5. **ipsi**: 'on their side.' **recentēs, dēfessis**: 227, a, (4).

7. **accidit**: sc. *id*; 'there happened, under my own observation, (something) which.' How lit.? 156. **dignum**: predicative, after *vīsum*. 142, b.

9. **per**, etc.: 'lumps of tallow and pitch passed from hand to hand,' till they reached the Gaul who threw them. The siege embankment, built of green timber and earth and stones, did not burn readily.

10. **ē regiōne turris**: 'directly in a line with one of the towers' on the siege embankment, hence within range. How lit.?

11. **scorpione**, etc.: 'his right side pierced with a (bolt from a) scorpion.' How lit.? 343, a.

12. **Hunc**, etc.: 'stepping over him as he lay.'

14. **tertiō**: *ictū scorpionis exanimātō tertiō (Gallō), successit quārtus (Gallus)*. **prius . . . quam**: 189, a.

15. **prōpugnātōribus**: 'defenders.' **vacuus**: predicative.

nōn magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat.

Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātres familiae repente in publicum prōcurrērunt flentēque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et viriū infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recīpit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānis coepērunt.

Quō timōre perterriti Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

*In a final assault the Romans capture Avaricum, sparing none.*

**27.** Posterō diē Caesar, prēmōtā turri perfectisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magnō coōrtō imbri, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidiū in opere versārī iussit et,

**26. 4. nōn magnā:** 'no great.' 239, g.

**6. et:** correlative with *neque*. 233, a. **palūs:** cf. chap. 19, ll. 1-10.

**7. tardābat:** 'would delay.'

**8. apparābant:** 'they were preparing.'

**10. prōiectae:** 'casting themselves.' **suōrum:** 'of their (husbands).'

**14. nōn, etc.:** 'knows no pity.' 177, c, and 175, c.

**16. Quō, etc.:** 'frightened by this' (giving of notice to the Romans) 'and fearing that.' How lit.?

**17. praeoccupārentur:** 'be seized in advance.' 202.

**27. 2. imbrī:** 15, c. **nōn inūtilem:** 239, g.

**4. incautius:** 'rather carelessly.' 153, a.

**5. languidiū:** 'quite lazily' according to appearances, in order to deceive the enemy.

quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legiōnēs intrā vineās in occultō expeditās cohortātus, ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, eis, quī primī mūrum ascendissent, praemia prōposuit militibusque signum dedit.

Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

**28.** Hostēs, rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti, in forō ac locis patentiōribus cuneātīm cōstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, si quā ex parte obviam venirētur, aciē instrūctā dēpugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundi viderunt, veriti, nē omninō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ultimās oppidi partēs continenti impetū petivērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portarum sē ipsi premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, quī praedae studēret. Sic, et Cēnabi caede et labōre operis incitāti, nōn aetāte cōfectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt.

Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter milium XL, vix dccc, quī, primō clāmōre auditō, sē ex oppidō eiēcērant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus, nē qua

9. **praemia**: 318. **signum**: 326, *b*.

**28.** 1. **turribus**: on the walls of Avaricum (chap. 22, l. 9). 127, *a*.

2. **cuneātīm**: 'in wedge-shaped masses.' 77.

3. **si**, etc.: 'if an attack should be made from any quarter.' How lit.?

4. **dēpugnārent**: 'they would fight it out.'

5. **circumfundi**: impersonal, 'that they' (the Romans) 'distributed themselves thickly.' How lit.? 174.

8. **ā militibus**: sc. *interfecta est*.

10. **quisquam**: 168. **studēret**: 194, *a*. **Cēnabi**: 146.

11. **nōn**, etc.: 239, *a*. **aetāte cōfectis**: 'the aged.' How lit.?

15. **Vercingetorigem**: In Fig. 131 a modern designer represents



in castris ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditio  
 orerētur, procul in viā dispositis familiāribus suis principi-  
 busque civitātum, disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs  
 20 cūrāvit, quae cuique civitāti pars castrōrum ab initio  
 obvenerat.



Figure 131. — Vercingetorix viewing the burning of Avaricum.

Vercingetorix with a group of Gallic soldiers as viewing from a distance the burning of Avaricum after the slaughter of the inhabitants.

17. **sēditio**: 'mutiny.'

18. **orerētur**: 61, *b*. **procul**, etc.: 'he stationed personal representatives and leading men of the (different) states along the road at a distance' from the camp, in order to intercept the fugitives, '(and).'

19. **disparandōs**, etc.: 'he had them' (the fugitives) 'divided up and conducted in each case to the men of their own state, (who were) in the part of the camp that had from the first been assigned to that state.' How lit.? The 10,000 defenders of Avaricum had been drawn from different states (chap. 21, l. 6). 229, *b*.

"It is probable," says Desjardins, "that if the orders of the Gallic

## The Siege of Gergovia. 36-51

*Caesar arrives at Gergovia and fortifies two camps.*

**36.** Caesar ex eō locō quintis castris Gergoviam pervēnit equestrique eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae, posita in altissimō monte, omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit, quam rem frūmentāriam expēdisset. 5

At Vercingetorix, castris prope oppidum positis, medicribus circum sē intervāllis sēparātīm singulārū civitātū

chief had been obeyed, and Avaricum had been burned, as he wished to have it, Caesar and his army would have had the lot of Napoleon after the burning of Moscow."

**29-35. Summary.** Vercingetorix, calling together the Gallic leaders, reminded them that at the outset he had opposed the defense of Avaricum, and encouraged them with the hope of ultimate victory. He undertook to win over the remaining states that had not yet joined in the revolt, and levied more troops.

Representative Aeduan appealed to Caesar to settle a dispute between two claimants for the office of Vergobret; he proceeded to Decetia (*Decise*), ascertained the facts, and gave the office to Convictolitavis. He sent four legions north under Labienus, and himself led six legions southward into the Arvernian country. He marched first along the east bank of the Elaver (*Allier*), Vercingetorix marching on the opposite side; by a clever ruse (p. xv) he crossed the river behind Vercingetorix, who proceeded rapidly toward Gergovia, Caesar following (Map 13).

**36. 1. eō locō:** the place where Caesar encamped after crossing the Elaver (*Allier*). **quintis castris:** 'in five marches,' encampments being counted as marches because at the close of each day's march a camp was fortified. 147, c, and 331, a. **Gergoviam:** 119, a.

**2. equestri,** etc.: Vercingetorix had reached Gergovia first.

**3. monte,** etc.: Gergovia lay on a high, narrow plateau, accessible only from the south and southeast. See Map 15.

**4. oppugnātiōne, obsessiōne:** 340.

**5. expēdisset:** 'had arranged for.' 189, b.

**6. castris . . . positis:** on an elevated terrace, adjoining the town on the south; marked GALLIC ENCAMPMENT on Map 15.

**7. sēparātīm:** the soldiers of each state had a separate camp.

cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātis, quā dēspici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebāt :  
 10 principēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capiendum dēlēgerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum vidērētur ; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat, quā equestri proeliō, interiectis sagittāriis, quid in quōque esset  
 15 animi ac virtūtis suōrum, periclitārētur.

Erat ē regiōne oppidi collis sub ipsis rādicibus montis, ēgregiē munitus atque ex omni parte circumcīsus ; quem si tenērent nostrī, et aquae magnā parte et pābulatiōne liberā prohibētūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab  
 20 his nōn nimis firmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar, ex castris ēgressus, prius quam subsidiō ex oppidō veniri posset, dēiectō praesidiō, potitus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum

8. **eius iugī collibus** : 'the minor elevations of the height,' the points of vantage on the mountain, about and below the town. 160, d.

9. **quā**, etc. : 'where a view over the plain could be had.' How lit. ? 73, d. **horribilem** : 'formidable.' 81.

13. **neque**, etc. : 'and he allowed hardly a day to pass without trying.' 201, a.

14. **interiectis sagittāriis** : 'placing archers among (the cavalry).' How lit. ? **quid**, etc. : i.e. *quid animi ac virtūtis* (97, b) *in quōque suōrum* (97, a) *esset* (204, 2).

16. **ē regiōne oppidi** : 'directly opposite the town,' on the south. **collis** : White Rock (*La Roche Blanche*), near the village of the same name (Map 15).

17. **munitus** : principally by nature. **circumcīsus** : 'precipitous.'

18. **aquae**, etc. : the Gauls probably obtained water from the Auzon.

19. **hostēs** : accusative. **ab his** : *ab hostibus*.

21. **castris** : marked LARGE CAMP on Map 15. **subsidiō**, etc. : 'before relief could come.' How lit. ? 73, d, and 112, a.

22. **locō** : 131, c. **ibi** : on White Rock.

23. **fossam**, etc. : 'two (parallel) trenches, each 12 feet wide.' How lit. ? According to the excavations, which have brought to light many

ā maiōribus castris ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singuli commeāre possent.

25



Figure 132. — Gergovia.

East end of the plateau of Gergovia and upper half of slope down toward White Rock, as seen from an elevation just above the village of Jussat.

traces of Caesar's works near Gergovia, the hastily dug trenches were hardly more than six feet wide. **duodēnum**: 22, c.

24. **minōra** [castra]: on White Rock, marked **SMALL CAMP** on Map 15. As this contained two legions, in the large camp there must have been stationed four legions besides the cavalry and auxiliaries.

**37-45. Summary.** Leading Aeduan, including Convictolitavis, turned against Caesar, and a body of 10,000 Aeduan soldiers, sent to serve under him, was moved to defection. Caesar by prompt action won back the allegiance of the soldiers, but in his absence from Gergovia the Gauls fiercely attacked both camps. The Aeduan revolt was temporarily checked.

Anticipating more serious trouble, however, Caesar began to plan how he could withdraw from Gergovia, and reunite his forces, without giving the impression that he was fleeing from the enemy. In order to frighten the Gauls he resolved to make a feint assault. He sent part of his forces around, as if to threaten an exposed point west of the town (**D** on Map 15), thus drawing off the Gauls from their encampment, which he prepared to attack in force.

**46.** Mūrus oppidi ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēsus rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxis vi pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque, inferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis, ūsque ad mūrum oppidi, dēnsissimis castris complēverant.

**10** Militēs, datō signō, celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trāsgressi trīnīs castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendīs celeritās, ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut mēridiē con-

**46. 1. plānitiē, etc.:** the lower ground at the right of the Small Camp and just above the Parallel Trenches; **E** on Map 15. **rēctā regiōne:** 'in a straight line.'

**2. sī, etc.:** 'if there should be no deviation.' How lit.? **ānfrāctus:** 79, *d.* **MCC:** *mille ducentōs*, somewhat more than an English mile. 38, *a, b,* and 243, *b.*

**3. quicquid . . . augēbat:** 'the distance to be traversed was increased by every detour (made) in order to render (the ascent of) the slope easy.' How lit.? The wall of Gergovia lay almost 1000 feet above the point where the legions started.

**4. Ā, etc.:** 'about halfway up the height.' 126, *c,* and 152, *a.*

**5. in, etc.:** 'following the long side of the mountain as the contour permitted.' How lit.?

**6. mūrum:** marked WALL 6 FEET HIGH ON Map 15. **tardāret:** 193, *a.*

**7. Inferiōre spatiō:** the sloping mountain side below the wall. **vacuō:** predicative. 148, *c.*

**8. superiōrem partem collis:** **GALLIC ENCAMPMENT** ON Map 15.

**9. dēnsissimis castris:** 'with camps (standing) close together'; each camp contained the troops of a single state, in accordance with the arrangement described in chap. 36, ll. 6-8. 153, *a.*

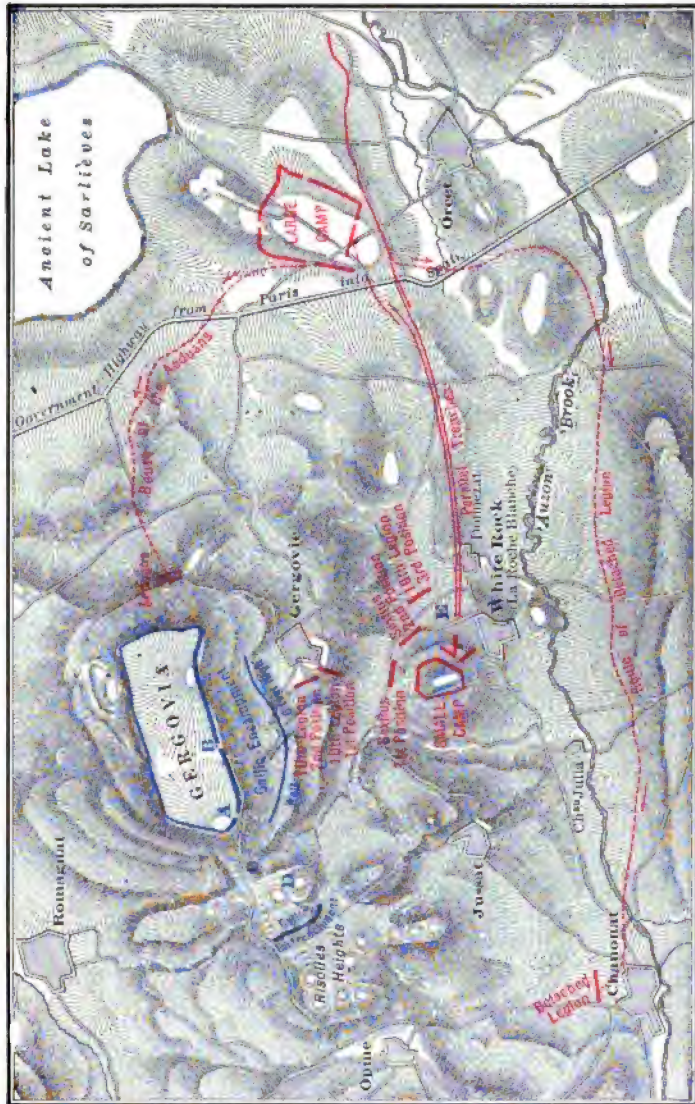
**11. trīnīs castris:** 'three camps.' 37, *e,* and 131, *c.*

**13. conquiēverat:** 'he was having a nap'; lit. 'had taken complete rest.'

# MAP 15 THE SIEGE OF GERGOVIA

Book VII, 36-51

To face page 384



SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6



quiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō,  
vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet. 15

*Flushed with victory, the soldiers do not retreat as ordered.*

47. Cōsecūtus id, quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptui cani iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, continuō signa cōstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum milites, nōn exaudītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnis militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeeptum, retinēbantur ; sed, ēlāti spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt, quod nōn virtute cōsequi possent, nēque finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quā mūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārunt. 10

Tūm vērō, ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, qui longius aberant, repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem intrā portās esse existimārent, sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Matrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et, pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passis manibus obtestābantur 15

47. 1. *id*, etc.: 'what he had in mind,' that is, to give the enemy a good scare by a bold dash, so as to be able to retire from Gergovia without discredit.

2. *receptui*, etc.: 'gave orders that the recall be sounded.' 326, c. How lit.? 112, a, and 73, d.

3. *signa cōstituit*: 'brought to a halt the standards.' 324, b, (2). *nōn exaudītō*: 'though they did not hear.' How lit.? 144, b, (5).

4. *tubae*: 326, a, (1). *vallēs*: a depression in the slope, just west of the village of Gergovie; Caesar with the tenth legion was east of this depression (Map 15, 10th LEGION, 1st POSITION).

6. *retinēbantur*: 'an attempt was being made . . . to hold the soldiers . . . back.' How lit.? 175, c.

10. *portis*: probably at the points marked A and B on Map 15.

12. *longius*, etc.: the Gauls who were some distance inside the wall. *hostem*: the Romans.

14. *vestem*: 'clothing.' *argentum*: 'silver.'

15. *pectore*: 'breast.' *prōminentēs*: 'leaning forward.' *passis manibus*: N. to II, 13, l. 12.



quod insigne pācātōrum esse cōsuērat, tamen id ipsum suū fallendī causā militēs ab hostib⁹ factum existimābant.

Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō, quīque ūnā mūrum  
 10 ascenderant, circumventī atque interfectī, mūrō praecipitā-  
 bantur.

*The heroic self-sacrifice of Marcus Petronius.*

M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās ex-  
 cidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac sibi dē-  
 spērāns, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipulāribus  
 15 suis, quī illum secūtī erant,

‘Quoniam,’ inquit, ‘mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn pos-  
 sum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs, cupiditāte  
 glōriae adductus, in periculum dēdūxi. Vōs, datā facultāte,  
 vōbīs cōnsulite.’

20 Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectis re-  
 liquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī  
 suis,

‘Frūstrā,’ inquit, ‘meae vitae subvenire cōnāmini, quem  
 iam sanguis virēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est  
 25 facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.’

Ita pugnāns, post paulum concidit ac suis salūtī fuit.

7. quod, etc. : ‘the customary sign indicating those at peace.’ How lit.?

8. suū: 154, b. B. 339, 5; A. 504, c; H. 626, 3.

12. eiusdem legiōnis: the 8th; see chap. 47, l. 19. excidere :  
 ‘to hew down.’

14. manipulāribus : dative after *inquit*.

16. Quoniam, etc. : 211, b, (2). mē: 158, b. vōbiscum :  
 125, c.

17. vestrae vitae, quōs : ‘for the lives of you, whom.’ How lit.?  
 92, b, and 164, b.

23. meae vitae, quem : i. e. *vitae meae* (genitive), *quem*.

25. vōs : object of *recipite*. 158, b.

26. ac, etc. : ‘and saved his men.’ How lit. ? 112, b.

*The Romans retire, with severe losses.*

**51.** Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissis, dēiecti sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs insequentēs legiō x tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstitērat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae, ex castris minōribus ēductae, cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi primum plānitium attigērunt, infestis contrā hostēs signis cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādicibus collis suōs intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit.

Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsiderāti.

10

---

**51. 1. XLVI:** *quadrāgintā sex*. As the centurions led their men, the percentage of casualties was proportionately much higher than among the common soldiers (l. 10).

**2. dēiecti sunt locō:** 'were forced down from their position.' **intolerantius:** 'with considerable violence.'

**3. paulō aequiōre locō:** see Map 15, 10th LEGION, 3d POSITION.

**6. locum superiōrem:** see Map 15, SEXTIUS, 2d POSITION.

**7. infestis,** etc.: 'they halted and faced the enemy.' How lit.? 325, and 144, b, (2). That the soldiers, swept down the slope by an overwhelming force, rallied even when supported by the 10th and 13th legions, is all the more remarkable in view of the severe losses among their officers.

**10. DCC:** *septingenti*. 129, b. If the losses among the common soldiers had been in proportion to those among the centurions, the number would have been considerably above two thousand.

**52-56. Summary.** Caesar addressed his soldiers, rebuking them for not obeying the order to halt, but nevertheless paying a tribute to their bravery. Afterwards he drew up in battle order, but Vercingetorix did not come down to fight. Caesar retired from Gergovia, and recrossed the Elaver (*Allier*), to the east side.

Two prominent Aeduans, who had heretofore been loyal to Caesar, now left him, and joined their countrymen in declaring for Vercingetorix; they destroyed Caesar's supplies at Noviodunum (*Nevers*), burning the town. Caesar pushed rapidly northward, and forded the Liger (*Loire*) in the face of the enemy.

## General Uprising, with Vercingetorix in Command. 63-68

*The Aeduans lead; Vercingetorix assumes command.*

- 63.** *Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritātē, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs, quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, s hōrum supplicio dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Aeduī, ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque belli gerendi commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperii trādātur, et, rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur.*
- 10** *Eōdem conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis suffrāgiis rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātorem.*

*Ab hōc concilio Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illi,*

**57-62. Summary.** While Caesar was engaged in the operations about Gergovia and in checking the first attempts of the revolting Aeduans, Labienus with four legions advanced from Agedincum (modern Sens) toward the north-west and captured Metlosedum (*Melum*; Map 13). Thence he proceeded to the neighborhood of Lutecia, a town of the Parisii on an island in the Seine, which forms the heart of modern Paris (Fig. 133). He defeated the Parisii and their allies in battle, and marching south rejoined Caesar (at 9 on Map 13).

**63. 1. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum:** the Aeduans, after much dissension, had finally cast in their lot with Vercingetorix.

**2. circummittuntur:** 'were sent in all directions' by the Aeduans. **quantum, etc.:** 'to the limit of their influence.'

**5. dubitantēs territant:** cf. chap. 4, ll. 25-30 and NN.

**6. ratiōnēs, etc.:** 'work out the plan of campaign with (them).'

**9. Bibracte; 145, b, and 16, c.** See Fig. 41, p. 42.

**11. ad ūnum:** 'to a man'; the vote was unanimous.

**13. illi;** 'the former,' including both the Remi and the Lingones.



Figure 133. — Coin of the Parisii.

Gold. Fanciful designs.

quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quae fuit<sup>15</sup> causa, quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutris auxilia mitterent.

Magnō dolōre Aedui ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requirunt, neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōsiliū ab reliquis sēparāre audent. Inviti summae<sup>20</sup> spei adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et Viridōmārus, Vercingetorigi pārent.

**64.** Ille imperat reliquis civitātibus obsidēs itemque ei rei cōstituit diem; omnēs equitēs, xv milia numerō, celeriter convenire iubet. Peditātū, quem antea habuerit, sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut in acie dīmicātūrum;

*Sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frumentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant acedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequi videant.*

16. tōtō bellō: 147, c. abessent: 'they held aloof.'

17. sē dēiectōs [esse] prīncipātū: 'that they had been forced out of their position of leadership'; cf. VI, 12, ll. 27-28.

19. indulgentiam: 'favor.' requirunt: 'they greatly missed.'

20. Inviti: 'Unwillingly.' 151.

summae spei: 'of the greatest promise.' 100, a.

**64.** 1. Ille: Vercingetorix. ei rei: the delivery of the hostages to him.

3. Peditātū: 135, a. B. 219, 1.

4. neque . . . videant: the policy of Vercingetorix was to avoid a decisive battle with infantry.

6. frumentātiōnibus: 'from getting grain.'

9. qua . . . iactūrā: 'since by this sacrifice of property.'



Figure 134. — Coin of the Senones.

Bronze. Fanciful designs taken from animals: reverse, wolf and boar. On the obverse, four Greek letters, ΑΓΗΔ, abbreviation of Agedillius or some similar name.

His cōstitūtis rēbus, Aeduīs Segusiāvisque, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae, x milia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs dccc. His praeficit frātre[m] Eporēdorigis bellumque inferri Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs  
 15 proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnis nūntiis lēgātiōibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pe-  
 20 cūniās, civitātī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

*Caesar takes account of his forces, sends for German cavalry.*

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et viginti, quae, ex ipsā coācta prōvincia ab L. Caesare lēgātō, ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvii suā sponte cum finitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur et,  
 5 C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, prīncipe civitātis, complūribusque aliis interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cūrā et diligentīā suōs finēs tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegē-  
 10 bat et, interclūsis omnibus itineribus, nullā rē ex prōvincia atque Italiā sublevāri poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs, quās superiōribus annis pācāverat, equitēsque ab his arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs,

12. prōvinciae: 290. hūc: for *his*, 'to these.'

15. Helviōs: west of the Rhone; see Map GALLIA.

19. superiōre bellō: the uprising of the Allobroges in 61 B.C.

65. 1. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs: 'To meet all these conditions.'

3. ad . . . oppōnēbantur: 'were posted to secure every point.'

5. Cabūrī filiō: see I, 47, ll. 10-13. prīncipe: 'first magistrate.'

6. intrā, etc.: 'into their fortified towns and behind walls.'

10. interclūsis, etc.: 'since all the roads were blocked.'

12. eās civitātēs: the Ubii were friendly to Caesar (IV, 16, ll. 19-20); what other German states are here referred to we do not know.

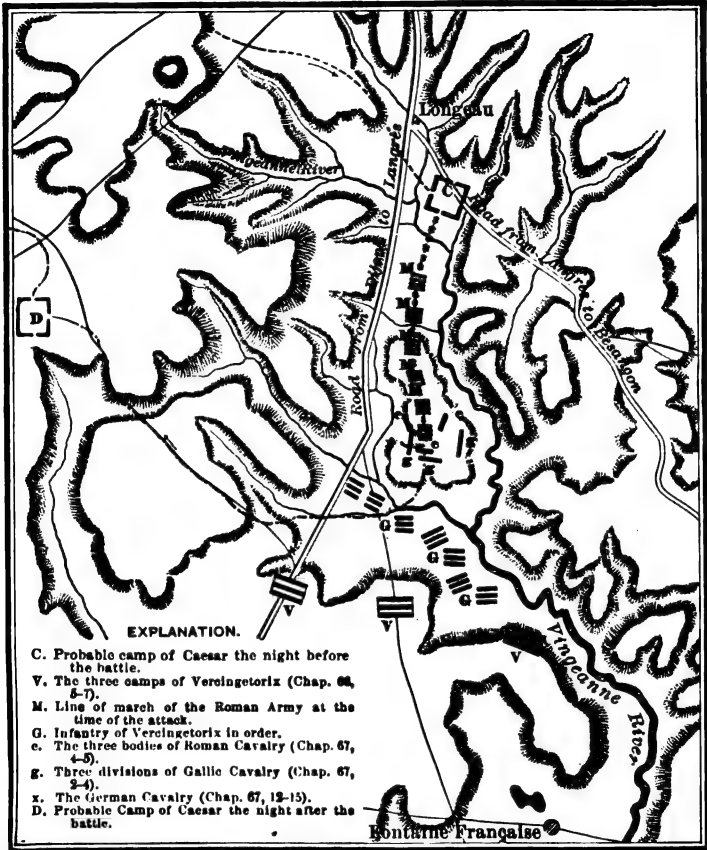
superiōribus annis: 55 and 53 B. C. (IV, 16-19, and VI, 9-28).

# MAP 16

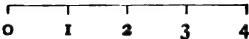
## VICTORY OF CAESAR OVER VERGINGETORIX

Book VII, 66-68

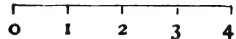
To face page 392



Scale of English Miles.



Scale of Roman Miles.



### EXPLANATION

Vercingetorix drew up his infantry in front of his three camps, on the bank of a river, and ordered his cavalry to attack Caesar's army, which was marching toward the river on the opposite side.

Caesar's legionaries, though surprised, held their own until finally the German cavalry in Caesar's employ hurled back the Gallic cavalry, which suffered complete defeat.



quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneis equis ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquīs-<sup>15</sup> que equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātis equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

*Vercingetorix encamps near Caesar, addresses his troops.*

**66.** Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque, quī tōti Galliae erant imperāti, conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferri posset, circiter milia 5 passuum x ab Rōmānis trīnis castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat:

*Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad<sup>10</sup> reliquū temporis pācem atque otium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs.*

*Proinde in agmine impeditōs adorianitur. Sī peditēs suīs*

14. quī . . cōsuērant: in the manner previously described (I, 48, ll. 12-20). Caesar had previously had a division of German cavalry.

15. minus idōneis equis: cf. IV, 2, ll. 3-7, and p. xxviii.

66. 1. dum, etc.: while Caesar was collecting forces from the Province and from Germany. 190, a.

4. extrēmōs Lingonum finēs: 'the most distant (part of the) country of the Lingones'; i.e. the southeastern part, 'most distant' from Agedincum, chief city of the Senones (Fig. 134), which was Caesar's principal base for the operations of 52 B.C. See Map 13.

6. trīnis castris: marked V, V, V, on Map 16, which represents the location as fixed by Napoleon, about 40 miles northeast of Dijon. The battle was probably fought north of Dijon, and much nearer; but Napoleon's plan indicates the relative positions clearly. trīnis: 37, c.

9. Fugere, etc.: 213, b. Id: the retreat to the Province.

12. reversūrōs [esse]: sc. Rōmānōs.

14. impeditōs: sc. eōs (= Rōmānōs). If the legionaries, thus caught at a disadvantage, should attempt to defend the baggage-train, their



## The Siege and Fall of Alesia. 69-90

*Caesar commences to surround Alesia with a line of works.*

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant.

5 Ante oppidum plānitēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitudinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocri interiectō spatiō, parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant.

Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat,  
10 hunc omnem locum cōpia Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum praedūxerant.

Eius mūnitiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur, circuitus

69. 1. **Alesia**, etc.: Alesia was situated on the top of an oval hill now called *Mont Auxois*, a part of which is occupied by the village of *Alise-Ste-Reine* (see Map 17). The highest point is more than 500 feet above the beds of the small streams on either side (Fig. 135). The accuracy of Caesar's description has been attested by discoveries made in the course of excavations in 1862-65, and since 1900.

Various objects found at Alesia are reproduced in this book; see Figures 44, 49, 50, 138, 144, 190; cf. also Fig. 1.

2. **obsidiōne**: 340.

4. **flūmina**: the *Ose* and the *Oserain*. **subluēbant**: 'washed.'

5. **plānitēs**: 'the plain' of *Les Laumes* (pronounced *lā lōm*).

7. **spatiō**: the average distance between the height of Alesia and the tops of the surrounding hills is about a mile. **parī**, etc.: 'having a like elevation.' How lit.?

9. **Sub mūrō**, etc.: 'Below the wall,' on the side facing the east.

10. **hunc omnem locum**: 'all the space.' 160, *d*.

11. **māceriam**: 'wall of loose stones,' without mortar; Map 17.

13. **Eius mūnitiōnis**: 'of the line of investment,' a series of fortified camps, between which at intervals were the 'redoubts,' *castella*.

xi milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnis locis erant posita ibique castella xxiii facta; quibus in castellis interdiū 15 stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmis praesidiis tenēbantur.

*The Gauls attempt to stop the work, and are driven back.*

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē, quam, intermissam collibus, tria milia passuum in lon-



Figure 135. — The hill of Alesia, as seen from the southeast.

14. **tenēbat**: 'extended.' **Castra**: plural. The infantry camps are those marked **A, B, C, D** on Map 17; the camps marked **G, H, I, K** were probably occupied by cavalry.

16. **stationēs**: 'outposts.'

17. **excubitōribus ac firmis praesidiis**: 'by strong garrisons of men in bivouac,' sleeping under arms in the open; the redoubts were fortified enclosures without tents. 238 d.

70. 2. **intermissam collibus**: 'free from hills,' lit. 'left off by hills.'

gitūdinem patēre suprà dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditur.

- 5 Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēque prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō, nostris animus augētur; hostēs, in fugam coniecti, sēipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustiōribus portis relictis coartantur.
- 10 Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī, relictis equis, fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur.

Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōstituerat, prōmovēri iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant,

15 Galli perturbantur; venīri ad sē cōfestim existimantēs, ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī, perterriti, in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

3. **suprà**: chap. 69, ll. 5-8. **Summā**, etc.: 'Both sides fought with their utmost strength.' How lit.?

5. **Labōrantibus**: 'hard pressed.' How lit.? **Germānōs**: mercenaries, consisting of cavalry, and light-armed troops, trained to fight with them, brought from Germany to offset the superiority of Vercingetorix in cavalry (chap. 65, ll. 9-17).

6. **castris**: plural, as in chap. 69, l. 14. **irruptiō**: 'attack.'

7. **Praesidiō**: 'support.' **nostris**: 109, a.

9. **portis**, etc.: 'gate-openings' in the wall of loose stones (chap. 69, ll. 10-11; a, b, c, on Map 17), '(which had been) left rather narrow'; it is not probable that gates had been placed in the openings. **coartantur**: 'were jammed together.' 352, a.

13. **prō vāllō**: probably the rampart of the infantry camps alone (A, B, C, D, on Map 17) is meant.

15. **venīri**: trans. 'that the Romans were coming.' 73, d.

17. **portās**: here 'gates' of the town, through which panic-stricken Gauls rushed, in the effort to escape from their threatened camp into the city. **castra**: on the east side of Alesia, between the city wall and the wall of loose stones.

*Vercingetorix summons all Gaul to the rescue, and apportion  
the available provisions.*

**71.** Vercingetorix, prius quam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque, qui per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōponit; obtestāturque, ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē, optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum, hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat; *ratiōne initā, sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.*

His datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam eis, qui nōn pāruerint, cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Man-<sup>15</sup> dubiis compulsa, viritū distribuit; frūmentum parcē et

**71. 2. perficiantur:** 189, b. B. 292; A. 551, b, n. 2; H. 605, 1.

**3. Discēdentibus:** sc. *eis* (*equitibus*), implied in the preceding *equitātum*.

**4. omnēs:** object of *cōgant*. **per aetātem:** 'by reason of age.'

**7. meritum:** participle; 'who had rendered most excellent service in behalf of their common liberty.' How lit.?

**8. Quod:** 118, d. **indiligentiōrēs:** 'too remiss.'

**9. ratiōne initā:** '(he said that), having made calculation.' 213, b.

**10. diērum xxx:** '(to last) 30 days.' How lit.? 100, a.

**11. parcendō:** 'by reducing the rations,' we should say. How lit.? 230, (4).

**12. erat,** etc.: 'there was a break in our line of works,' the contravallation, which there had not been time to complete.

**13. secundā vigiliā:** 242, c. **Frūmentum omne:** in the city; Vercingetorix put the inhabitants under martial law.

**14. capitis poenam:** 'the penalty of death.' **pāruerint:** subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, as part of the notice given to the Alesians.

paulātīm mētīrī instituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

*Description of the inner line of Caesar's siege works.*

**72.** Quibus rēbus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis, Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit.

Fossam pedum xx dērēctis lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessariō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs, operī  
10 dēstinātōs, conicere possent.

Hōc intermissō spatiō, duās, fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem

17. **prō oppidō**: in the encampment on the east side.

**72. 2. haec**: 'the following.' 161, a. **mūnitiōnis**: 'works,' together forming the contravallation, the purpose of which was to hem in Vercingetorix and protect Caesar's forces against attack from within (Map 17, CONTRAVALLATION). 92, b.

3. **Fossam**, etc.: 'a trench twenty feet (in width), with vertical sides,' much harder for an enemy to fill and cross than the ordinary triangular trench (333); it ran across the plain west of the town, between the Ose and the Oserain (Map 17, TRENCH 20 FEET WIDE).

4. **solum**, etc.: 'the bottom was as broad as the distance between the edges at the top.' How lit.?

6. **CCCC**: *quadringentōs*. The distance, as shown by excavation, averages so much more than 400 Roman feet, that it has been suggested that Caesar intended to write *passūs* or *passibus*. **hōc**, etc.: i.e. *hōc cōnsiliō, nē, quoniam . . . cingerētur, dē imprōvisō . . . possent. esset — complexus, cingerētur*: 220.

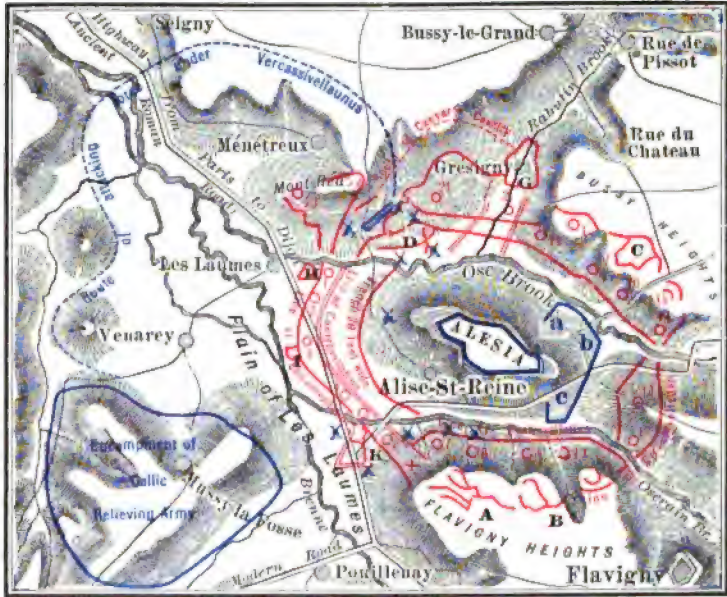
7. **nec**, etc.: 'and the whole line of works could not easily be manned with a continuous cordon of soldiers.' How lit.?

11. **spatiō**: refers to *pedēs cccc* above. **duās fossās**: Map 17, where it will be observed that the outer trench ran only to the edges of the plain, while the inner trench was continued around the town,

MAP 17  
THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

Book VII, 69-90

To face page 400



EXPLANATION

Caesar's lines of works about Alesia encompassed a circuit of 11 Roman miles on the inside, 14 miles on the outside.

In the plain west of the city, and at other points where required, there were two systems of defenses, one to protect Caesar's men against the attacks of Vercingetorix in the city, the other as a defense against the relieving army.

Camps of infantry were probably located at A, B, C, D; of cavalry, at G, H, I, K. The redoubts, castella (chap. 69), are numbered 1 to 23.

On the west, along the edge of the plain, a trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, with vertical sides, was constructed (chap. 72, ll. 3-5). Further west, in this order, 'goads,' stimuli; 'wolf-holes,' lilia; 'boundary posts,' cippi; two V-shaped 'trenches,' fossae; 'rampart, agger, and 'palisade,' vallus, with a 'breastwork,' lōrica, and 'battlements,' pinnae; also 'towers,' turrēs, at intervals of 80 feet. These defenses formed the LINE OF CONTRAVALLATION (chap. 72-73).

The same defenses, in a reverse series, the 'goads' being furthest outside, the rampart inside, formed the LINE OF CIRCUMVALLATION (chap. 74).

pau  
coll  
Gal

## 7

hae  
I  
sol  
s dist  
ccc  
spa  
cin  
tūc  
ro dē

—

tog  
in  
(M

sid  
tri  
tw

the

av  
th  
cō  
es

m

w  
ol

altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissis locis aquā, ex flūmine dērivātā, complēvit.

Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit. Huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervis ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, qui ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

forming a part of the contravallation. **eādem altitūdine**: of the same depth, 8 or 9 feet; these trenches were V-shaped.

12. **interiōrem**: sc. *fossam*. **campestribus**: 'in the plain.'

13. **dēmissis**: 'low.' **flūmine**: the Oserain. **dērivātā**: 'drawn.' Silt, evidencing the action of running water, was found in the inner trench.

14. **Post eās**: 'Behind these,' on the side away from the town. **aggerem**: 'bank,' made of the earth thrown out of the nearer trench. **vāllum**: masculine, 'palisade,' like the palisade of a camp (333). **XII pedum**: measured from the surface of the ground beside the 'bank' to the top of the 'palisade.' **Huic**: singular because the 'bank' and the 'palisade' are thought of as forming one fortification; 'to this rampart.'

15. **lōricam**: a 'breastwork,' made by weaving supple branches closely together on the exposed side of the palisade. **pinnās**: 'battlements,' covered with wickerwork and projecting above the palisade, behind which the soldiers could find shelter after hurling their weapons over the palisade. **cervis**: 'stags,' large limbs of trees and tops of young trees, from which the foliage and twigs had been removed, the branches being stripped of their bark and sharpened; these were planted along the bank at the foot of the palisade, projecting outwards over the trench and towards the town (Plate IX, 1, the projecting branches at the foot of the tower). **ēminentibus**: 'projecting.'

16. **ad commissūrās**, etc.: 'along the line where the wood construction was fitted to the bank,' *pluteōrum* here including the 'palisade' (*vāllus*), the 'breastwork' (*lōrica*), and the 'battlements' (*pinnās*). How lit.?

17. **tardārent**: 193, a. **opere**: 'the line of works.' **quae**, etc.: 194, a.

18. **pedēs LXXX**: artillery was mounted in the towers (chap. 81, ll. 14-15; chap. 82, ll. 1-5); the spaces between the towers could be



**73.** Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frūmentāri ex tantās mūnitiōnēs fieri necesse, dēminūtis nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendi possent.

Itaque, truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscisis, atque hōrum dēlibrātis ac praeacūtis cacūminibus, 10 perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stipitēs dēmissī, et ab infimō revinctī, nē revelli possent,

covered also by hand-thrown missiles, in case the enemy should burst through the palisade.

**73. 1. Erat** — **necesse** : as subject *māteriāri* (Fig. 136) and *frūmentāri* are coördinated with *mūnitiōnēs fieri*; 'it was necessary both to get timber and to secure grain and to carry on the construction of these extensive fortifications.' How lit.?



Figure 136. — A Roman soldier cutting timber.

**2. dēminūtis**, etc. : 'with (consequent) weakening of our forces.' How lit.?

**3. longius** : the supplies of timber and grain near the camp were soon exhausted.

**6. addendum** [esse] : 'that an addition ought to be made.' 73, e.

**8. admodum firmīs rāmīs** : 'very large limbs,' probably not less than four or five inches in diameter.

**9. hōrum**, etc. : 'the ends (of their branches) barked and sharpened to a point.'

**10. perpetuae** : 'continuous,' running parallel with the rampart, at the points where needed, on the side toward the town. **quīnōs** : distributive; 'each five feet deep.'

**36. Hūc** : 'Into these,' the parallel trenches. **III stipitēs** : 'the stocks' of trees, prepared as described. 160, d.

**11. revinctī** : 'fastened down'; how the stocks were fastened at the bottom we do not know. **ab infimō** : 126, c, and 154, a.

ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō qui intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimis vāllis induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

Ante hōs, obliquis ōrdinibus in quincuncem dispositis, <sup>15</sup> scrobēs in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur, paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine, ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī, dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitis III ex terrā ēminērent; simul, cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā, singulī ab infimō <sup>20</sup> solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad

12. *ab, etc.*: 'had their branches' (these having been barked and sharpened) 'projecting' above the ground. How lit.? 126, *c*. *Quīnī ōrdinēs*: 'five rows,' one in 'each (trench)'; cf. Plate IX, 1.

13. *implicātī*: 'interwoven,' the parallel trenches being near together. *quō, etc.*: 'and any who tried to enter these' rows of branches, corresponding with the barbed wire entanglements of modern fortifications. How lit.?

14. *vāllis*: 'points.' *sē induēbant*: 'would pierce themselves.' *cippōs*: 'boundary posts,' jestingly named from their resemblance to the firmly set stocks of trees and posts used by surveyors to mark boundaries, especially in regions where boundary posts of stone were hard to procure. *appellābant*: 'the soldiers called.' 172, *c*.

15. *Ante*: 'In front of,' on the side toward the town. *obliquis, etc.*: 'in slanting rows having a quincuncial arrangement.' How lit.?

16. *scrobēs*: 'holes.' *fodiēbantur*: 'were dug.' 57, *b*.

17. *angustiore, etc.*: 'the side gradually narrowing toward the bottom,' like a funnel. How lit.? *Hūc*: 'Into these.' *teretēs*: 'smooth.' *feminis crassitudine*: 'of the thickness of a thigh.' 18, *d*, and 143, *a*.

18. *ab, etc.*: 'sharpened at the top and hardened (at the point) by burning.'

19. *amplius, etc.*: 'more than four finger-breadths,' about equivalent to three inches. 243, *a*.

20. *stabiliendī, etc.*: 'to give them a solid setting.' How lit.? *singulī, etc.*: 'earth was packed about them by treading, to the depth of a foot from the bottom,' lit. 'feet in each case from the bottom were trodden with earth.' Cf. Figures 1 and 2.

occultandās insidiās viminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id, ex similitūdine flōris, liliū appellābant.

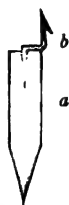
25 Ante haec tāleae, pedem longae, ferreīs hāmīs infixīs, tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissis spatiis, omnibus locis disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

*Caesar completes a similar outer line of works.*

74. His rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIII milia passuum complexus

22. **insidiās**: 'the pitfall.' **integēbātur**: 'was covered up.'

23. **octōnī ōrdinēs**: 'eight rows in each case,' wherever the wolf-holes were used; they were not needed at all points of the contravallation.



24. **flōris**: 13, c. **lilium**: 'lily,' the name being suggested by the appearance of the stalk of the lily rising from its funnel-shaped circlet of leaves; now "wolf-pit" or "wolf-hole."

Figure 137. — A "goad," stimulus.

a. Wooden block, talea, in which the barbed hook was set.

b. Barbed hook, of iron.

25. **tāleae**: 'blocks' (Fig. 137). **ferreīs**, etc.: 'with barbed hooks, of iron, set in.'

26. **infodiēbantur**, etc.: 'were buried in the earth,' only the barbed iron projecting. How lit.?

27. **disserēbantur**: 'were planted here and there.' Several of the irons have been found (Fig. 138). **stimulōs**: 'goads,' so called from the likeness of the projecting points to the sharp end of a goad.

74. 1. **regiōnēs**, etc.: 'following a course over the most nearly level stretches that the configuration of the country afforded.' How lit.?

2. **complexus**: participle; 'he embraced (a circuit of) fourteen miles and.' 228, a.

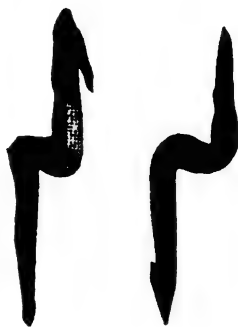


Figure 138. — Barbed hooks.

Barbed iron hooks, found at Alesia. The wooden blocks had rotted away.

parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multītūdine, sī ita accidat, mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; ac nē cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

*The Gauls gather a great army for the relief of Alesia.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli, conciliō principum indictō, nōn omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitatī imperandum, nē, tantā multītūdine cōnfūsā, nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent.

Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, milia xxxv; parem

3. **parēs**: 'corresponding.' **diversās**: 'facing in the opposite direction' from the inner line of works; see Map 17, CIRCUMVALLATION.

4. **exteriōrem hostem**: a relieving force. A view of a section of the outer works is shown in Fig. 1. **multītūdine**: sc. *hostium*.

5. **sī**, etc.: *sī magna multītūdō veniat*. **circumfundī**: 'be completely surrounded.'

6. **ex castris ēgredi**: in order to secure forage and grain.

7. **xxx**: cf. chap. 71, l. 10, and N. **omnēs**: 'all' his forces. **convectum**: 'collected.' 229, a.

75. 1. **ad**: 120, a. **Galli**, etc.: in response to the appeal of Vercingetorix (chap. 71).

4. **nē**, etc.: '(fearing) that . . . they would not be able either to manage (it) or . . . or.' **tantā**, etc.: 'if so enormous a host should be massed together.' 144, b, (4).

5. **frūmentandī**, etc.: 'to make systematic provision for supplying grain.'

7. **olientibus**: 'dependent states.'



Figure 139. — Coin of the Aulerci Cenomani.

Gold. Reverse, human headed horse galloping over a prostrate man. The driver above holds a branch, perhaps of mistletoe.

numerum Arvernīs, adiūctis Eleutetis, Cadūrcis, Gabalis,  
 10 Vellaviis, qui sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt;  
 Sēquanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutēnis, Car-  
 nutibus duodēna milia; Bellovacis x; totidem Lemovic-  
 bus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiis et Helvētiis;  
 sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Ner-  
 15 viis, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quinque milia Aulercis Cēno-  
 manis; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassis; Aulercis  
 Eburovicibus III; Rauracis et Boiis bīna: xxx ūniversis  
 civitātibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōn-  
 suētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō  
 20 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibarii, Caletēs, Osismj, Veneti,  
 Lexovii, Venelli.

Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod  
 sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānis bellum gestū-  
 rōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs;  
 25 rogāti tamen ā Commiō, prō eius hospitio duō milia ūnā  
 misērunt.

12. **duodēna milia**: 'twelve thousand each,' or 72,000 for these six states. The total levy, amounting to 287,000 men, shows that after six years of war the population of Gaul must have been considerably larger than is ordinarily supposed. The population, in Caesar's time, of the territory west of the Rhine has been estimated as high as "20 to 30 millions."

15. **Aulercis Cēnomanis**: Fig. 139.

21. **Venelli**: in the list of revolting states we do not find the Remi and the Lingones, who remained friendly, nor the Treverans, who were pressed by the Germans (chap. 63, ll. 13-17), nor the Aquitanian states.

22. **numerum**: 'contingent.' **quod . . . dicerent**: 183, b.

23. **suō**, etc.: 'on their own responsibility and in their own way.' How lit.?

25. **prō eius hospitio**: 'in consideration of their relations of hospitality with him': N. to I, 31, l. 23. **ūnā**: 'at the same time' with the other states.

*Commius, Viridomarus, Eporedorix, and Vercassivellaunus are placed in command of the Gallic army of relief.*

76. Huius operā Commiī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille prō meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōsēnsiō fuit, libertātis vindicandae, et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctis equitum milibus viii et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Aeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibatur, praefecti cōstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebāti,

76. 1. **Commii**: after the final defeat of the Gauls Commius seems to have established himself as a ruler in Britain, and to have left sons who were rulers, who issued coins in imitation of Roman coins struck near the beginning of the Empire. Three sons of Commius are named on coins, Verica or Virica, Tincommius, and Eppillus (294, and Fig. 140).



Figure 140. British coin, struck by a son of Commius.

3. **quibus**, etc.: trans. as if *et prō his meritis*. **civitatem**: the Atrebates. **immūnem**: 'free from tribute.' Apparently, as implied also by *iūra lēgēsque reddiderat*, the Atrebates had become a dependency of some other state.

Gold; dated about the beginning of the Christian era. Inscription: VIR [ICA] REX COM[MI] F[ILIUS], 'Virica, king, son of Commius.'

4. **ipsi**: to Commius; the Morini had been hard to manage.

5. **Tanta**, etc.: 'So strong was the common purpose of entire Gaul to recover its liberty.'

7. **movērentur**: the subject is implied in *Galliae*; 'men were influenced.'

8. **-que**: 'but.' 234, b. **incumberent**: 'were devoting themselves.'

10. **recēnsēbantur**: 'were reviewed'; we say 'mobilized.'

Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperiī trāditur. His dēlēcti ex cīvitatibus attribuentur, quōrum cōnsiliō  
 15 bellum administrārētur.

Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cūm ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae  
 20 cōpiaē equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

*The Gallic force in Alesia faces starvation; Critognatus proposes to sustain life by eating the non-combatants.*

77. At eī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūptō omni frūmentō, inscii, quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coactō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsulṭābant. Ac variīs dic-  
 5 tis sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hic, summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus  
 10 auctōritātis,

13. **cōnsobrinō**: 'cousin.' **summa imperiī**: the commander-in-chief, Vercingetorix, was shut up in Alesia.

14. **dēlēcti**: 'men chosen'; delegates, forming a kind of general staff. **quōrum cōnsiliō**: 'in accordance with whose counsel.'  
 193, a.

16. **fidūciae**: 'confidence.' **ad**: 'for.' 120, a.

18. **ancipiti proeliō**: 'with fighting on two sides.'

19. **forīs**: 'on the outer side.'

77. 1. **Alesiae**: 146. **praeteritā diē**: the limit of 30 days had passed (chap. 71, l. 10). 21, a.

6. **suppeterent**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse. 214, b.

7. **vidētur**, etc.: sc. *mihi*; 'the speech of Critognatus should not, I think, be passed over.' **nefāriam**: 'atrocious.'

9. **locō**: 128, a. **magnae auctōritātis**: 100, b.

'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, qui turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant; neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum his mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō, omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū, pristinae<sup>15</sup> residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.



Figure 141. — Alise-Ste-Reine, the modern city on the site of Alesia. The point against the sky-line at the left is the statue of Vercingetorix (Fig. 142).

11. **Nihil**, etc.: 211, b, (3), and 280.

14. **Cum**, etc.: 'Let me deal (only) with those.' 180, b.

15. **omnium**, etc.: 'according to the common feeling of you all.' 97, c, and 138.

16. **residēre** — **vidētur**: 'is seen to linger.' **ista**: for *istud*, addressed to those who would risk all by an immediate sortie, explained by the appositional infinitive clause *paulisper . . . posse*; 'that is lack of resolution on your part.' 160, a, and e.

18. **offerant**: 194, a. **reperiuntur**: sc. *et*. **quam**: *quam et*.



20 'Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), si nūllam praeterquam vitāe nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis, propin-  
 25 quis cōsanguineisque nostris animi fore existimātis, si paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritātē vestrā aut animi imbēcillitātē omnem Galliam prōster-  
 30 nere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

'An, quod ad diem nōn vērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis, omni  
 35 aditū praesaepitō, his ūtiminī testibus, appropinquāre eōrum

20. *ego*: 87, *b*. *hanc sententiam*: in favor of a sortie. *tantum*, etc.: 'so great weight does the standing (of its advocates) carry with me.'

21. *iactūram*: 'loss'; *nūllam iactūram praeterquam vitāe nostrae (iactūram)*.

23. *respiciāmus*: 180, *a*. *concitāvimus*: 'we have summoned.'

24. *Quid* — *animi*: 'what feelings.' *milibus LXXX*: the number of the army of Vercingetorix, not counting the inhabitants of Alesia (chap. 71, l. 9).

27. *Nōlite* — *exspoliāre*: 'do not rob.' 181, *b*. *auxiliō*: 187, *a*. *quī*, etc.: the relieving force.

28. *stultitiā*, etc.: 'by your folly and rashness or weakness of resolution, utterly cast down.'

31. *An*: 179, *a*, (2). *B*. 162, 4, *a*; *A*. 335, *b*; *H*. 380, 3. *vērunt*: 176, *a*.

33. *animi causā*: 'for the sake of amusement.' *-ne*: 179, *a*, (1). *exercēri*: 'are exerting themselves.' 174.

34. *illōrum*: the Gallic forces on the way.

35. *praesaepitō*: 'shut off.' *his*: the Romans.

adventum; cuius rei timōre exterriti, diem noctemque in opere versantur.

‘Quid ergō mei cōsiliū est? Facere, quod nostri maiōres nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fecērunt; qui in oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā subāctī, 40 eōrum corporibus, qui aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vitam tolerāverunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iudicārem.

‘Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā, 45 Cimbri, magnāque illātā calamitate, finibus quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nobīs reliquērunt. Rōmāni vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi, invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nobilēs potentēsque bellō cognōverunt, hōrum 50 in agrīs civitatibusque cōsidere atque his aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nātiōibus geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae, in

38. **Quid**, etc.: ‘What, then, is my proposal?’ **Facere**: i.e. *meum cōsiliū est facere*.

39. **Cimbrōrum**: ‘with the Cimbrians’ and Teutons; N. to I, 33, l. 17.

40. **subāctī**: ‘reduced to straits.’

42. **Cuius**, etc.: ‘And if we had no precedent for such a course.’ How lit.?

44. **Institutū**: sc. *exemplum*, ‘that a precedent be established.’ **pulcherrimum**: ‘a most noble thing.’ 28, a.

45. **quid**, etc.: ‘what resemblance had that war to the present one?’ How lit.? **Dēpopulātā**: 59, b.

49. **invidiā**: ‘envy.’

50. **fāmā nobilēs potentēsque bellō**: 239, c.

51. **iniungere**: ‘to fasten upon,’ as a yoke is fastened upon oxen.

52. **aliā condiciōne**: ‘on (any) other principle.’

54. **finitimam Galliam**: ‘the neighboring (part of Gaul).’ 152, a.

55 prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus subiecta, perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

*The residents of Alesia with wives and children are driven outside the walls; Caesar refuses to receive them.*

78. Sententiis dictis, cōstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; *Illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque* 5 *auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditionis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem.*

Mandubii, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hi, cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut 10 sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositis in vāllō cūstōdiis, recipī prohibēbat.

*The cavalry of the Gallic army of relief attacks fiercely, is repulsed.*

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et, colle exteriōre occupātō, nōn longius mille passibus ab nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt.

55. **secūribus**: 'the axes' of the lictors, symbols of authority; see Plate II, 4.

78. 1. **valētūdine**: 'by reason of health.'

5. **subeundam** [esse] **condiciōnem**: 'submit to terms.'

7. **Mandubii**: the inhabitants of Alesia and those who had fled into the city from the surrounding country.

10. **sē** — **receptōs**: 'receive them — and.' 228, a.

11. **recipī**: sc. *eōs*. Cast out by Vercingetorix and rejected by Caesar, the women and children and men unfit for war perished miserably in the spaces between the town walls and the Roman contravallation. Caesar's army at the time was suffering from lack of supplies (C. III, 47, ll. 16-21). 228, a.

79. 1. **Commius**: chap. 76, l. 1. **ducēs**: chap. 76, ll. 11-13.

3. **colle exteriōre**: southwest of Alesia; see Map 17, ENCAMPMENT OF GALLIC RELIEVING ARMY.

Posterō diē, equitātū ex castris ēductō, omnem eam plānitie[m], quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum patēre dēmōstrāvimus, complent, pedestrēsque cōpiās, paulum ab eō locō abditās, in locis superiōribus cōstituunt.

Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt, his auxiliis vīsīs; fit grātulatiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, prōductis cōpiis, ante oppidum cōsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar, omni exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs milites intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant.

Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcera[n]t, qui suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs, dē imprōvisō vulnerātī, proeliō excēdēbant.

6. **plānitie[m]**, etc.: see chap. 69, ll. 5-8.

8. **abditās**: 'drew back and.' 228, a.

9. **Concurrunt**: 'They' (the Gauls in the town) 'rushed together.'

12. **proximam fossam**: the trench nearest the city; "TRENCH 20 FEET WIDE" on Map 17.

80. 1. **utramque**, etc.: both the inner and the outer lines of works.

3. **castris**: the cavalry camps were probably those marked **G**, **H**, **I**, **K** on Map 17.

4. **castris**, etc.: the infantry camps (**A**, **B**, **C**, **D**), in which were the *milites*.

6. **prōventum**: 'issue.'

7. **inter equitēs**, etc.: N. to chap. 18, l. 4.

8. **qui**, etc.: 'in order that these might furnish support.' 193, a, and 112, a.

10. **complūrēs**: of Caesar's cavalry.

Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premi vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, qui mūnitiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, qui ad auxilium  
 15 convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat.

Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā  
 20 pugnārētur, Germāni ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectis, sagittārii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī, cēdentēs ūsque ad castra insecūti, suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt.

25 At eī, qui ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

13. **nostrōs**: *equitēs*; the infantry did not go into action.

14. **mūnitiōnibus**: of the town.

15. **ululātū**: N. to V, 37, l. 8. If upwards of 200,000 men were shouting and shrieking at once, the noise in the Roman lines across the plain, where the sounds from both sides met, must have been terrific; even the noise at one of the great football games would furnish no standard of comparison. The Romans under arms in the camps were probably silent, awaiting a signal for action.

16. **rēs gerēbātur**: 'the engagement was going on.'

17. **rēctē**, etc.: 'and no brave or cowardly action.' How lit.?

18. **ignōminiae**: 'disgrace.' 81.

19. **Cum**, etc.: 'After the battle had been raging . . . with victory in doubt.' How lit.?

20. **Germānī**: the German cavalry rendered effective service on several critical occasions (chap. 67, ll. 12-15, and 70, ll. 5-12).

22. **sagittārii**, etc.: among the cavalry; they had not yet learned to keep up with the horsemen by taking hold of the horses' manes, as the Germans did (I, 48, ll. 18-20).

23. **cēdentēs**: 'the enemy in retreat.' How lit.? 227, a, (4).

24. **suī**: 154, b. B. 339, 5; A. 504, c; H. 626, 3.

25. **maestī**: 'in sadness.' 151.

*A second attack, by night, is equally unsuccessful.*

**81.** *Ūnō diē intermissō, Galli, atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressi, ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne, qui in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.*

10

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis librilibus sudi-

**81.** 1. *hōc spatiō*: 'during this interval.' 147, c.

2. *scālārum*: 'ladders.' *harpagōnum*: 'grappling-hooks,' for pulling down the Roman breastworks and palisades. 12, c.

3. *campestrēs*: west of the town, and nearest the Gallic encampment.

4. *quā significātiōne*: *ut eā significātiōne*, 'that by this sign.' 193, a.

5. *obsidēbantur*: vivid use of the indicative. Cf. 220.

7. *vāllō*: of the circumvallation, running from the Ose to Flavigny Heights. *prōturbāre*: 'dislodge.'

9. *dat tubā signum*: Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman system of signals. 326, a, (1), and II, 20, l. 3.

12. *fundis librilibus*: 'pound-weight slings'; whether these were



Figure 142. — Statue of Vercingetorix at Alesia.

busque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēptō, multā utrimque  
 45 vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premi intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs summittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Galli, plūs multitudine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; postea quam propius successerunt, aut sē stimulis inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus  
 5 trāiecti pilis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nūllā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veriti, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt.

At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent,

slingshots of stone weighing about a Roman pound, or stones of a pound weight hurled with the help of a cord attached to them, we do not know; Balearic slingers were trained to hurl stones weighing a pound.  
 85. **sudibus**; 'stakes,' with pointed ends hardened by fire, for use as javelins (*praeustaes sudēs*; cf. V, 40, l. 14 and N.).

13. **disposuerant**: 'had piled at intervals,' as reserve ammunition.  
 79, d. **glandibus**: probably leaden 'bullets'; N. to II, 10, l. 2.

14. **prōterrent**: 'drove back.' **tenebris**: 'by the darkness'; the attack began at midnight (l. 2). **multa**, etc.: the soldiers could not parry the blows with their shields because they could not see the missiles coming.

16. **M. Antōnius**: the first mention of Mark Antony by Caesar. **hae partēs**: 'this portion' of the fortifications, in the plain.

82. 3. **stimulis**, etc.: chap. 73, ll. 25-28, and Notes.

4. **scrobēs**: chap. 73, ll. 15-24. **dēlāti**: 'stumbling.' How lit.? **trānsfodiēbantur**: 'were impaled.' 57, b.

5. **trāiecti**, etc.: 'transfixed by wall pikes'; N. to V, 40, l. 14.

7. **superiōribus castris**: on Flavigny Heights; marked A, B.

9. **interiōrēs**: the Gallic army in Alesia.

10. **priōrēs fossās**: precisely what trenches are meant we do

diūtius in his rēbus administrandis morātī, prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt, quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

*The Gauls plan a surprise, and make a last desperate assault.*

**83.** Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsi, Galli, quid agant, cōnsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēque cognōscunt.

Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostri; 5



Figure 143. — A characteristic bit of the slope at Alesia.

On the south side, near the top, facing Flavigny Heights.

not know; evidently not the same as *proximam fossam*, chap. 79, l. 12.

13. **rē infectā**: 'without accomplishing their purpose.'

**83. 1. Bis . . . repulsi**: first in an attack with cavalry (chap. 80), then in an attack with infantry (chap. 81-82).

2. **locōrum**, etc.: 'they brought in men who knew the ground.' How lit.? 102.

4. **ā septentriōnibus**: 'on the north.' **collis**: Mont Réa.



necessariō paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgāti cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cognitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium **LX**  
 10 mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum, quae maximam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundi tempus dēfiniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex **IIII** ducibus, propinquum  
 15 Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt.

Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit, militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprà dēmōn-  
 20 strāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

*Vercingetorix attacks the Roman works on the inner side.*

**84.** Vercingetorix, ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert.

6. **lēniter dēclivī**: 'gently sloping' toward the city; hence offering an advantage to a force attacking from the north. **castra**: **D** on Map 17.

11. **virtūtis opiniōnem**: 'reputation for courage.' **quid**, etc.: 'what plan they would deem it best to carry out, and in what way.'

12. **adeundi**, etc.: 'they fixed as the hour of attack.'

14. **IIII ducibus**: 'the four commanders' named in chap. 76, ll. 11-13.

16. **sub lūcem**: 'toward daybreak.'

17. **itinere**: shown on Map 17, ROUTE OF ATTACKING FORCE UNDER VERCASSIVELLAUNUS. **post montem**: behind Mont Réa.

19. **castra**: marked **D**; described in lines 4-8.

20. **campestrēs**: chap. 72, l. 12, and N.

**84. 2. longuriōs**: 'poles,' sharpened at the end, for thrusting;

Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 5 Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus existit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs 10 perturbant.

*Caesar surveys the field, meets crises wherever they arise.*

**85.** Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium summittit.

Utrisque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, si rem 5 obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant.

Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum loci ad

much longer than the ordinary javelin. **mīsculōs**: 'mousies'; Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman siege appliances (342, a). **falcēs**: *falcēs mūrālēs*; N. to chap. 22, l. 4. 342, c, and Figure 188.

6. **neo**, etc.: 'could not easily meet (the enemy) at several points (at the same time).'

8. **post tergum pugnantibus**: 'at the rear of the men in action'; the shouting of those fighting on the outer line of works was heard by those defending the inner line, and *vice versa*. 109, a.

10. **absunt, perturbant**: 176, c.

**85.** 1. **locum**, etc.: Caesar's post of observation was probably on the Flavigny Heights, at the point marked with a cross on Map 17.

3. **Utrisque**, etc.: 'To both sides came the conviction, that now was the time for a supreme final effort.' How lit.?

5. **sī**, etc.: 'if they could (only) maintain their position, looked forward to.'

8. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: chap. 83, ll. 9-20. **Inīquum**, etc.: 'The unfavorable ground' (above the camp marked D); 'sloping downwards' (cf. chap. 83, l. 6), 'proved a serious factor.' How lit.?

dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Alii  
 10 tēla coniciunt, alii, testūdine factā, subeunt; dēfatigātis in  
 vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger, ab ūniversis in mūnitio-  
 nem coniectus, et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terrā  
 occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec  
 virēs suppetunt.

86. His rēbus cognitis, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohorti-  
 bus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinēre  
 nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id, nisi  
 necessariō, nē faciat.

5 Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant;  
 omnium superiōrum dimicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque  
 hōrā docet cōsistere.

10. **testūdine factā**: 'formed a turtle-shell roof' (in the Roman  
 fashion) 'and.' 144, b, (2), and 338, 345.

11. **Agger**: 'earth'; no  
 regular siege embankment was  
 made.

12. **ea, quae**, etc.: chap.  
 73, ll. 8-28.

13. **contegit**: 'covered  
 up.'

86. 2. **labōrantibus**: the  
 troops under Antistius Reginus  
 and Caninius Rebilus, in the  
 fiercely assaulted camp at D.

3. **dēductis**, etc.: 'to draw  
 off the cohorts (from the en-  
 gagement) and make a sortie.'  
 A similar tactic had saved the  
 day for Galba at Octodurus  
 (III, 5, ll. 8-15).

5. **Ipse**: 'in person.' **re-  
 liquōs**: the other divisions  
 besides that to which Labienus  
 had been sent.

6. **dimicātiōnum**: 'com-  
 bats.'

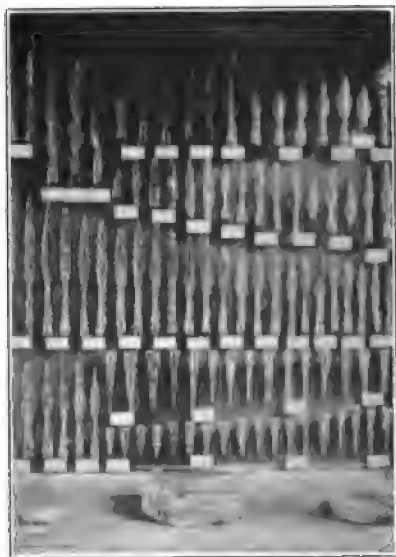


Figure 144. — Heads and butts of lances  
 found at Alesia.

*The attack of Vercingetorix is repulsed.*

Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum, loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum<sup>10</sup> ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit primō Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcīt.

*A charge and a flank movement on the north rout the enemy.*

Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet.

Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis unā XI cohortibus, quās

8. **Interiōrēs**: as in chap. 82, l. 9.

9. **loca**, etc.: 'places with a steep ascent' (lit. 'steep in respect to ascent'), along the side of Flavigny Heights, which it had not been thought necessary to provide with defenses as elaborate as those in the plain of Les Laumes.

10. **ea, quae**, etc.: see chap. 84, ll. 2-3.

11. **prōpugnantēs**, etc.: 'forced back (our) men (who were) fighting from the towers.'

12. **falcibus**: chap. 84, l. 2. **vāllum, lōricam**: chap. 72, ll. 14-15.

87. 1. **Mittit**: to the point attacked by Vercingetorix. **cohortibus**: the number is not given.

4. **Restitūtō**, etc.: reënforced, the men defending the ramparts attacked by Vercingetorix rallied and beat him off.

6. **partem circumire**: sc. *equitum*. The division of cavalry ordered to execute the flank movement probably started from the camp at G; Map 17, ROUTE OF CAESAR'S CAVALRY.

8. **aggerēs**: here 'ramparts,' at camp D.

10 ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiores, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

88. Eius adventum ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consuebat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quas se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt.

Utrisque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallibus atque omnibus munitionibus clamor.

Nostrum, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae 10 appropinquant.

Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes.

Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugam comprehenditur;

10. **praesidiis**: detachments under arms at the redoubts; cf. chap. 69, l. 17, and N.

11. **Accelerat**: 'hastened.'

88. 1. **colore**: scarlet. **vestitus**: cloak (*paludamentum*).

88. 1. **cognito**: by the enemy. **insigni**: 'as a distinguishing mark.'

3. **locis superioribus**: Mont Réa. **haec declivia et devexa**: 'these descending slopes,' on the northwest side of Flavigny Heights, down which Caesar passed, on horseback, in full view of the enemy.

4. **committunt**: with the division under Labienus just coming into action.

6. **Utrisque**, etc.: the extraordinary vividness of the following description is due in part to the brevity of the sentences, some of which a writer of less restraint would have expanded into paragraphs; to the omission of connectives (88, a), and to the sparing use of adjectives. **excipit** — **clamor**: 'the cheering was taken up' by those not in the action. How lit.? 88, a.

8. **omissis pilis**: the legionaries were charging up hill, so that pikes could not be hurled to advantage.

9. **tergum**: sc. *hostium*. **equitatus**: from camp G. **cohortes aliae**: the fresh cohorts with Caesar (l. 2).

signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex 15  
tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt.

Cōspicāti ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspē-  
rātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūitiōnibus redūcunt.

Fit prōtinus, hāc rē auditā, ex castris Gallōrum fuga.  
Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs 20  
essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent.  
Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōse-  
quitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī  
ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

*Vercingetorix surrenders.*

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id  
bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed com-  
mūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae  
cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā  
Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. 5

Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma  
trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūitiōne prō castris  
cōnsēdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur,  
arma prōiciuntur.

15. signa militāria: see Figures 30 and 42.

16. numerō: 60,000 (chap. 83, l. 9).

17. Cōspicāti ex oppidō: brief for *ei, qui in oppidō sunt, cōspicāti*, etc.

20. Quod: 118, d. nisi, etc.: 208, a, (2). crēbris sub-  
sidiis: 'with frequent (service in) supporting forces.'

22. Dē mediā nocte: 242, d.

89. 4. ad utramque rem: 'for either alternative' (Fig. 145).

7. Ipse: Caesar.

8. Vercingetorix, etc.: Vercingetorix, as we learn from Plutarch, having arrayed himself in splendid armor, mounted a horse adorned with trappings, passed slowly out from Alesia, and rode around Caesar sitting to receive the prisoners; then, halting before Caesar, he sprang from his horse, laid off his armor, and without a word seated himself at the feet of his conqueror, "every inch a king!"

10. *Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitūī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.*

For six years after this Vercingetorix was confined in a Roman prison.\* At length, in 46 B.C., he was led along the streets of Rome to grace Caesar's great triumph; then, in accordance with Roman custom, "while his conqueror was offering solemn thanks to the gods on the summit of the Capitol, Vercingetorix was beheaded at its foot as guilty of high treason against the Roman nation" (Fig. 145).



Figure 145. — Vercingetorix.

Denarius, struck while Vercingetorix was in prison, in Rome. He is represented with pointed beard and flowing hair, and with a chain about his neck. Behind the head is a shield.

Thus ended the career of the greatest of the Gauls, the first national hero of France.

10. *Reservātis*, etc.: afterwards 20,000 prisoners were returned to the Aeduans and Arvernians (chap. 90, l. 5). *sī*: '(to see) whether.' 204, (4). B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; H. 649, 3.

11. *capita singula*, etc.: each soldier in Caesar's army received a prisoner as his share of the booty (318); the number was probably not far from 50,000. On receipt of Caesar's dispatches announcing the victory, a thanksgiving of 20 days was declared at Rome (chap. 90, ll. 17-18).

**Historical Significance of the Siege of Alesia.** Caesar's devices for rendering impassable his lines of defense at Alesia, in ingenuity and adaptation to the purpose for which they were intended, have never been excelled in the annals of military engineering.

Caesar's success, again, well illustrates the superiority of generalship, discipline, persistency, and hard work over vastly greater numbers, even in the face of every disadvantage of position and surroundings.

For the Gauls the fall of Alesia was the crowning disaster of a hopeless struggle. They staked all on the relief of the city, and lost. But if Caesar had here suffered complete defeat, probably Gaul would long have remained unconquered, and the course of European history would have been changed.

The siege of Alesia may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world.

\* Doubtless the Mamertine Prison; for which see the editor's Select Orations and Letters of Cicero, p. 115 and N. to p. 115, 15.



Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar.  
Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village  
Than be second in Rome; and I think he was right when he said it.  
LONGFELLOW, *Courtship of Miles Standish*.





## SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S CIVIL WAR

### The Second Sea-fight off Massilia. II. 3-7

*The Massilian fleet is reënforced by ships sent by Pompey.*

3. Interim L. Nāsidiūs, ab Cn. Pompeiō cum classe nāvium xvi, in quibus paucae erant aerātae, L. Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō Siciliae, imprudente atque inopinante Cūriōne, pervehitur, appulsisque Messānam nāvibus atque, inde propter repentinum terrōrem s

3-7. **The circumstances.** On his way to Spain in April, 49 B.C. (259) Caesar sought the allegiance of Massilia (293, a), but the Massilians decided to cast in their lot with Pompey. Caesar directed Trebonius to besiege the city and Decimus Brutus, who had won the sea-fight with the Venetans, to destroy their formidable fleet. In June, when his ships were ready, Brutus took up a position at the island opposite Massilia (Map 18); the much larger Massilian fleet came out to fight, but proved to be no match for Brutus, who sank some ships, captured others, and drove the rest back into the harbor.

The second sea-fight, even more disastrous to the Massilians, took place in July; it is described in the following chapters.

3. 1. **L. Nāsidiūs**: apparently the same as Q. Nasidius named on coins (Figures 146 and 160). **Pompeiō**: Pompey, having fled from Italy (259), was on the east side of the Adriatic, in Macedonia (299).

2. **aerātae**: 'sheathed with copper,' particularly the beaks (346, c). **L. Domitiō**: at Massilia. The enemies of Caesar had arranged the appointment of Domitius to succeed Caesar in Gaul in 49 B.C., and he had helped the Massilians in the first sea-fight. 115, b.

3. **fretō**: 'strait,' between Italy and Sicily; Map 12. 134, a.

4. **Cūriōne**: Curio was engaged in crushing the Pompeian party in Sicily, whence, in August of 49, he crossed over to Africa. 12, c. **pervehitur**: 'sailed along.' How lit. ? **appulsis**, etc.: he landed at Messana, now Messina.

principum ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit.

Hāc adiūntā ad reliquās nāvēs, cursum Massiliam versus perficit, praemissāque clam nāviculā, Domitium Massilē-  
 10 sēsque dē suō adventū certiōrēs facit, eōsque magnopere hortātur, ut rūsus cum Brūtī classe, additis suis auxiliis, cōnfligant.

4. Massiliēnsēs, post superius incommodum, veterēs ad eundem numerum ex nāvālibus prōductās nāvēs refēcerant summāque industriā armāverant (rēmigum, gubernātorum magna cōpia suppetēbat) piscātōriāsque adiēcerant atque  
 5 contēxerant, ut essent ab ictū tēlorum rēmigēs tūtī; hās sagittāriis tormentisque complēvērunt.

Tāli modō instrūctā classe, omnium seniōrum, mātrem familiae, virginum precibus et flētū excitātī, extrēmō tempore civitātī subvenirent, nōn minōre animō ac fiduciā,  
 10 quam ante dimicāverant, nāvēs cōnscendunt. Commūnī enim fit vitiō nātūrae, ut invīsītātis atque incognitis rēbus magis cōfidāmus vehementiusque exterreāmur; ut tum

6. **nāvālibus**: 'shipyards.' **eōrum**: of the Messanians.

9. **nāviculā**: a small sailing vessel, faster than the fleet.

4. 1. **superius incommodum**: the first sea-fight, described C. I. 56-58.

2. **eundem numerum**: 'the same number,' 17, as in the first sea-fight; Nasidius, counting the ship seized at Messana, also had 17 ships.

4. **piscātōriās** [nāvēs]: 'fishing-smacks.'

5. **contēxerant**: 'had covered (them)' with decks, to protect the rowers underneath; the fishing-smacks, like those of the Mediterranean to-day, were open.

7. **seniōrum**: 'older men,' unfit for military or naval service.

8. **virginum**: 12, d. **extrēmō tempore**: 'in utmost peril.'

9. **subvenirent**, etc.: '(begging) them to help the state'; the idea of asking is implied in *precibus*. 200, a.

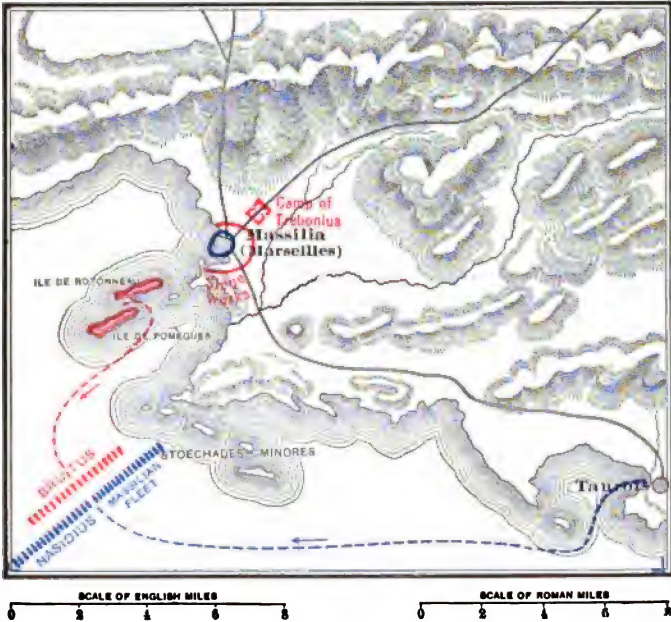
10. **Commūnī**, etc.: 'For it is a common failing of human nature that we are swayed by unseen and unknown factors to overconfidence and to too great fear.' How lit.? 135, a, and 203, (1).

# MAP 18

## THE SECOND SEA-FIGHT OFF MASSILIA

C. II, 3-7

To face page 426



### EXPLANATION

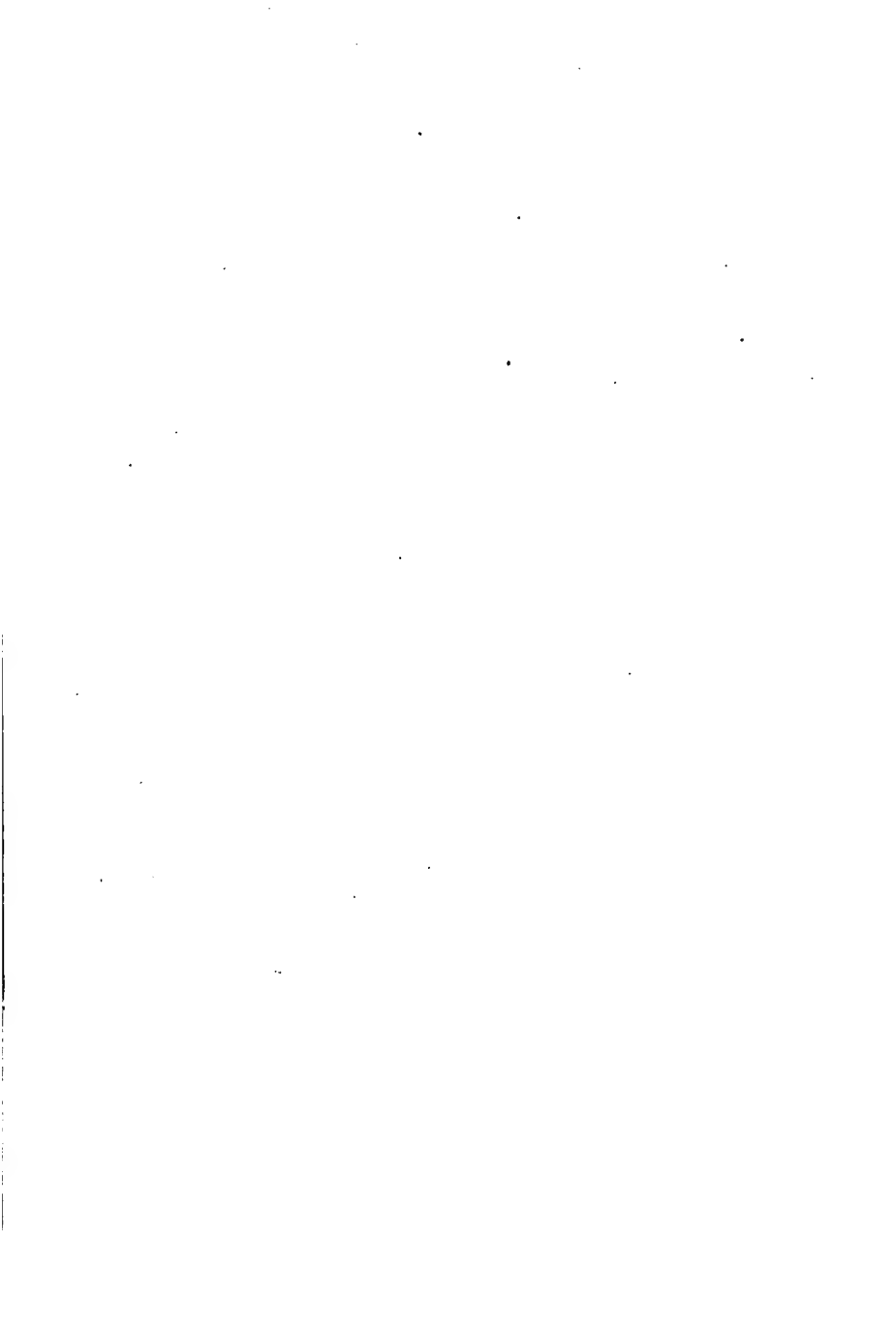
Nasidius, admiral of Pompey, had come to Taurois with 17 galleys. Here he was joined by the Massilian fleet, consisting of an equal number of galleys and some protected fishing-smacks.

To oppose this formidable squadron Brutus had only 18 galleys, some of which, newly built, could be less easily maneuvered than the ships of the enemy. His rowers, too, were inferior to those of the enemy, lacking experience.

Nevertheless Brutus left his anchorage, near an island opposite the harbor of Massilia, and led his fleet in the direction of Taurois.

In the battle an attempt to ram Brutus's flagship from opposite sides disabled two of the enemy's ships by collision. Brutus's men showed themselves specially skillful in the seizing of hostile ships by grappling-hooks and boarding, with hand-to-hand fighting. The fleet of Nasidius fled.

On the land side Massilia was shut in by the siege works of Trebonius, whose camp was on high ground on the northwest side of the city (chap. 5, l. 8).



accidit. Adventus enim L. Nāsidiī summā spē et voluntāte civitātem complēverat.

Nactī idōneum ventum, ex portū exeunt et Tauroēnta,<sup>15</sup> quod est castellum Massiliēnsium, ad Nāsidiū perveniunt; ibique nāvēs expediunt rūsusque sē ad cōnfigendum animō cōfirmant et cōnsilia communicant. Dextra pars attribuitur Massiliēnsibus, sinistra Nāsidiō.

*Brutus, in command of Caesar's fleet, comes out to join battle.*

5. Eōdem Brūtus contendit, auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās, quae factae erant Arelāte per Caesarem, captivae Massiliēnsium accesserant vi. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus instrūxerat. Itaque

13. **voluntāte**: 'eagerness' to fight.

15. **idōneum ventum**: from the north; see Map 18. **Tauroēnta**: 18, g, and 119, a.

16. **castellum**: Taurois was a fortified port. Nasidius had stopped there, instead of proceeding to Massilia, in order not to expose his fleet, in passing the islands, to the risk of an attack by Brutus; Map 18.

17. **expediunt**: 'made ready for action.' 175, b.

18. **animō**: 142, a. **cōnsilia communicant**: 'worked out together their plan' of battle. **pars**: 'formation.'

5. 1. **contendit**: from his naval base, at the island opposite Massilia.

2. **Arelāte**: 145, b. **per Caesarem**: 'on Caesar's order'; 12 galleys were built at Arelas (C. I. 36), and in the first sea-fight these alone formed the fleet of Brutus.

3. **captivae**; sc. *nāvēs*; 'captured' in the first sea-fight. In all, Brutus now had 18 galleys as against 34 galleys and the protected fishing-smacks in the combined fleet of the Massilians and Nasidius.



Figure 146. — Coin of Quintus Nasidius.

Silver, denarius, struck 38-36 B.C. Galley with beak, oars, and sail. The pilot stands on the prow; at the stern sits the helmsman, controlling a large steering-paddle thrust down into the sea. For obverse see Fig. 140.

suos cohortātus, quos integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus spei bonae atque animi, adversus eōs proficiscitur.

*The inhabitants of Massilia offer prayers for victory.*

Facile erat, ex castris C. Trebōnii atque omnibus superiōribus locis, prōspicere in urbem, ut omnis iuventūs, quae  
 10 in oppidō remānerat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum liberis atque uxōribus ex pūblicis locis cūstōdiisque aut mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent aut templa deōrum immortālium adirent et, ante simulācra prōiecti, victōriam ab dīs exposcerent.

15 Neque erat quisquam omnium, quī in eius diēi cāsū suarū omnium fortūnarū ēventum cōsistere existi-māret. Nam et honesti ex iuventūte, et cuiusque aetātis amplissimi, nōminātim ēvocāti atque obsecrāti, nāvēs cō-scenderant, ut, si quid adversi accidisset, nē ad cōnandum  
 20 quidem sibi quicquam reliquī fore vidērent; si superāvis-

5. suos, etc.; suos cohortātus ut (eōs), quos integrōs ('at their full strength') superāvissent, victōs ('as beaten') contemnerent. 199, a.

8. castris: on the northwest side of the city; Map. 18.

9. ut: 'how.' 204, (3). quae, etc.: cf. 220.

10. superiōris aetātis: 'of more advanced age.'

11. cūstōdiis: 'watch stations,' where watchmen were on duty.

12. ad . . . tenderent: in the attitude of prayer.

13. simulācra: 'images' of the gods. 74, d. prōiecti: 'cast-  
 ing themselves down.' 174.

14. exposcerent: 'were imploring.' 204, (3).

15. quī: = qui nōn. 195. in . . . cāsū: 'upon the issue.'

16. ēventum cōsistere: 'that the destiny . . . rested.'

17. honesti ex iuventūte: 'the youth of good family.' How  
 lit.? 97, d.

18. amplissimi: 'the most prominent men,' the leading men of the  
 city.

19. adversi, reliquī: 97, b. nō . . . fore: 'that even the  
 possibility of making another attempt would be cut off.' How lit.?

sent, vel domesticis opibus vel externis auxiliis de salute urbis confiderent.

*The Massilians and their allies, the Albici, fight desperately.*

6. **Commissō proeliō**, Massiliēnsibus res nulla ad virtutem defuit; sed memorēs eōrum praeceptōrum, quae paulō ante ab suis accēperant, hōc animō decertābant, ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūri vidērentur et, quibus in pugna vitae periculum accideret, nōn ita multō se reliquōrum civium fātum antecēdere existimārent, quibus, urbe captā, eadem esset belli fortūna patiēda.

Diductisque nostris paulatim nāvibus, et artificiō gubernātorum et mobilitāti nāvium locus dabatur; et si quandō nostri, facultātem nacti, ferreis manibus iniectis, nāvem religāverant, undique suis laborantibus succurrēbant. Neque vērō coniūcti Albici comminus pugnandō deficiēbant neque multum cēdebant virtute nostris.

21. **externis**: 'foreign.' **dē**, etc.: 'they confidently expected to assure the safety of the city' against Trebonius.

6. 1. **Commissō proeliō**: 'After the engagement had begun.' The probable formation in battle order is indicated on Map 18.

4. **habitūri vidērentur**: sc. *sibi*, 'it seemed to them that they were going to have.' **quibus . . . accideret**: 'if they should risk their lives.' How lit.?

6. **existimārent**: 203, (4). **urbe captā**: 144, b, (4).

7. **eadem fortūna**: they expected an indiscriminate slaughter, like that at Avaricum (VII. 28), if the city should be taken.

8. **Diductis**, etc.: the gradual drawing apart of Brutus's fleet in the course of the engagement gave to the Massilian steersmen, who were very skillful, a favorable opportunity to manœuvre their ships, which were seasoned and more easily handled than the new battle-ships of Brutus. **gubernātorum**: 84.

10. **ferreis**, etc.: 'had thrown grappling-hooks upon a ship and held it fast.' 144, b, (2), and 346, d.

12. **coniūcti Albici**: 'the Albici serving with (them),' as marines. **pugnandō**: dative after *deficiēbant*; trans. 'fail in hand-to-hand fighting,' when Brutus's men boarded a Massilian ship.



Simul ex minōribus nāvibus magna vis ēminus missa  
 15 tēlōrum multa nostrīs dē imprōvisō, imprudentibus atque  
 impeditis, vulnera inferēbant. Cōspiciātaeque nāvēs tri-  
 rēmēs duae nāvem D. Brūtī, quae ex insigni facile agnōsci  
 poterat, duābus ex partibus sēsē in eam incitāvērunt. Sed  
 tantum, rē prōvisā, Brūtus celeritātē nāvis ēnīsus est, ut  
 20 parvō mōmentō antecēderet. Illae adeō graviter inter sē  
 incitātae cōflicxērunt, ut vehementissimē utraque ex con-  
 cursū labōrārent, altera vērō, praefractō rōstrō, tōta collabe-  
 fieret. Quā rē animadversā, quae proximae ei locō ex  
 Brūtī classe nāvēs erant, in eās impeditās impetum faciunt  
 25 celeriterque ambās dēprimunt.

*Brutus wins the victory; grief fills the city.*

7. Sed Nāsidiānae nāvēs nūllī ūsuī fuērunt celeriterque  
 pugnā excessērunt; nōn enim hās aut cōspectus patriae  
 aut propinquōrum praecepta ad extrēmum vitae periculum  
 adire cōgēbant; itaque ex eō numerō nāvium nūlla dēside-  
 5 rāta est. Ex Massiliēnsium classe v sunt dēpressae, IIII

14. *minōribus nāvibus*: the protected fishing-smacks (chap. 4, ll. 4-6).

16. *Inferēbant*: 173, *b*. *Cōspiciātae*: 'sighting'; the ships are personified. 226, *c*, and 239, *h*. *nāvēs trirēmēs*: 'triremes.' 346, *a*.

17. *Insigni*: a red banner. 346, *d*. *agnōso*: 'be recognized.'

18. *duābus ex partibus*: 'from opposite sides.' 347.

19. *tantum*, etc.: 'Brutus, seeing what would happen, by a quick movement of his ship just managed, by a narrow margin, to drive ahead,' so that the two attacking ships rammed each other. How lit.?

22. *praefractō*, etc.: 'had had its beak broken off and was quite shattered.' 346, *c*, and Fig. 146.

25. *dēprimunt*: 'sunk.'

7. 1. *Nāsidiānae*: 'of Nasidius.' -*que*: 'but.' 234, *b*.

2. *hās* [nāvēs]: personification, as in chap. 6, l. 16.

4. *eō numerō nāvium*: i.e. *numerō eārum nāvium*, 17 (chap. 3, ll. 1-7).

PLATE XI      AN ANCIENT SEA-FIGHT BETWEEN GALLEYS



A bireme, with two banks of oars, is ramming a quinquereme, with five banks. Fighting-tops were used in the later Roman days, but not in Caesar's time.

The boat in the foreground, with one bank of oars on each side and deck along the middle, would pass very well for one of the protected fishing-smacks used by the Massilians, enlarged (C. III. 4).



captae, ūna cum Nāsidiānīs profūgit; quae omnēs citeriōrem Hispāniam petivērunt.

At ex reliquīs ūna, praemissa Massiliam huius nūntiū perferendī grātiā, cum iam appropinquāret urbī, omnis sēsē multitudō ad cognōscendum effūdīt; et, rē cognitā, tantus lūctus excēpit, ut urbs ab hostibus capta eōdem vēstigiō vidērētur.

Massiliēnsēs tamen nihilō sētius ad dēfēnsiōnem urbis reliqua apparāre coepērunt.

### Heroic Endurance of Caesar's Soldiers before Dyrrachium.

#### III. 47-49, 53

*Caesar with a smaller army shuts Pompey up at Dyrrachium.*

47. Erat nova et inūsītāta bellī ratiō, cum tot castellōrum numerō tantōque spatiō et tantīs mūnitiōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquīs rēbus.

6. *captae*: sc. *sunt naves*. The losses of Brutus are not reported. *quae omnēs*: 97, c. *citeriōrem Hispāniam*: 296.

10. *multitudō*: 'population.' *ad cognōscendum*: 'to learn the news.'

11. *lūctus excēpit*: 'lamentation followed.' *capta*: 148, e. *eōdem vēstigiō*: 'at that moment.' How lit.?

47-53. *Caesar before Dyrrachium*. When, early in 49 B.C., Pompey fled with his army from Italy (259), he established his base in the region of Dyrrachium, now *Durazzo* (Map 19). Here he had easy communication by sea with coastal regions, and by land also with Greece and the wealthy provinces of the Orient (261). Before the end of 49 Caesar had vanquished Pompey's forces in Spain and had received the capitulation of Massilia; in January, 48 B.C. (Unreformed Calendar; 241, c), he landed an army at Palaeate (Map 19), and took possession of Apollonia. By the middle of April, 48, military operations were concentrated at Dyrrachium, where Caesar, though he had a smaller army, shut Pompey in by an extended line of works on the land side.

After a long and bitter struggle Caesar was obliged to retire from before Dyrrachium; but the difficulties of the undertaking served only to bring out in clearer light the loyalty and endurance of his soldiers.

47. 1. *inūsītāta*: 'unprecedented.' *oūm*, etc.: 'considering not only the great number of redoubts.' How lit. ? *castellōrum*:

Nam quicumque alterum obsidēre cōnāti sunt, percussōs  
 5 atque infirmōs hostēs adorti, aut proeliō superātōs aut ali-  
 quā offēnsiōne permōtōs, continuērunt, cum ipsī numerō  
 equitum militumque praestārent; causa autem obsidiōnis  
 haec ferē esse cōnsuēvit, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent.  
 At tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar inferiōre  
 10 militum numerō continēbat, cum illi omnium rērum cōpiā  
 abundārent; cotidiē enim magnus undique nāvium nu-  
 merus conveniēbat, quae commeātum supportārent, neque  
 ūllus flāre ventus poterat, quān aliquā ex parte secundum  
 cursum habērent. Ipse autem, cōsumptīs omnibus longē  
 15 lātēque frūmentis, summīs erat in angustiis.

*His men, half-starved, say they will live on bark rather than let  
 Pompey escape.*

Sed tamen haec singulārī patientiā militēs ferēbant.  
 Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā  
 perpressōs labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse,  
 meminerant ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpressōs,

---

the number of redoubts in Caesar's lines we do not know; Pompey,  
 hemmed in by Caesar, built 24 for defense.

2. **spatiō**: the area included between Caesar's lines and the sea ex-  
 ceeded 20 square miles. **mūnitiōnibus**: Caesar's lines extended 17  
 Roman miles. For about two thirds of the distance they ran along  
 higher ground; for the rest, on lower ground, where parallel trenches  
 and ramparts were constructed, 600 feet apart.

3. **reliquis rēbus**: 'other conditions.'

4. **quicumque**, etc.: 'commanders who heretofore have attempted  
 to blockade an opponent.' How lit.? **percussōs**: 'demoralized';  
 the reason is given in *aut . . . permōtōs*.

5. **aliquā offēnsiōne**: 'by some other reverse.'

10. **illi**: the soldiers of Pompey, whose fleets controlled the sea.

15. **frūmentis**: here 'stores of grain.'

17. **Recordābantur**: 'They recalled the fact.' 259. **eadem**:  
 object of *perpressōs*; 'having experienced the same hardships.'

multō etiam maiōrem ad Avaricum, maximārum gentium<sup>20</sup> victōrēs discessisse. Nōn illi hordeum, cum darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius rei summa erat ex Ēpirō cōpia, magnō in honōre habēbant.

48. Est etiam genus rādicis inventum ab eis, qui fuerant in vallibus, quod appellātur chara, quod admixtum lacte multum inopiam levābat.

Id ad similitūdinem pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in colloquiis Pompeiānī famem nostris obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum minuerent.

49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat, quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōfidēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs militum in vigiliis colloquiisque audiēbantur, prius sē cortice ex arboribus victūrōs, quam Pompeium ē manibus dimissūrōs . . .

20. **maiōrem**: sc. *inopiam perpersōs* (VII. 17).

21. **hordeum**: 'barley,' not considered a fair substitute for wheat in the soldier's rations. 317.

22. **legūmina**: 'pulse,' including beans, lentils, etc. **pecus**, etc.: Caesar's soldiers counted it a hardship to have fresh meat as the staple of diet.

23. **Ēpirō**: mountainous, well adapted for raising cattle.

48. 2. **vallibus**: numerous ravines cut the surface of the higher ground on which Caesar extended his lines. **chara**: probably a species of arum, the tubers of which contained starch but were bitter to the taste and had to be mixed with milk, or cooked with milk, to make them edible. **admixtum**: 'mixed.' 189.

4 **Id**, etc.: 'This they made into a kind of bread.' How lit.?

5. **pānēs**: 'loaves.' **colloquiis**: the opposing lines were within calling distance. **Pompeiānī**: 'the soldiers of Pompey.'

6. **famem**, etc.: 'would taunt our men with hunger.'

49. 1. **frūmenta**: 'fields of grain.' The blockade of Pompey dragged on from April to July.

3. **crēbrae**: 151. **vigiliis**: when on guard duty at night.

4. **cortice**, etc.: 'that they would live on bark off the trees.' Cf. IV, 1, l. 16, and N. **ex**: 150, d.

*One day's fighting before Dyrrachium.*

**53.** Ita ūnō diē vi proeliis factis, tribus ad Dyrrachium, tribus ad mūnitiōnēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō habērētur, ad duo milia numerō ex Pompeiānis cecidisse reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs centuriōnēsq̄ complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus, L. filius, eius, quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat); signaque sunt militāria sex relāta.

Nostri nōn amplius xx omnibus sunt proeliis dēsiderātī.

*The extraordinary bravery of Scaeva, centurion, and his men.*

Sed in castellō illō nēmō fuit omnino militum, quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex ūnā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmisērunt.

<sup>10</sup> Et cum labōris suī periculūque testimōnium afferre velent, milia sagittārum circiter xxx, in castellum coniecta,

**49-53. Summary.** Pompey's water supply was cut off by Caesar, so that his troops were obliged to dig wells, which proved to be inadequate; the baggage-animals died, and there was much sickness among the soldiers. Pompey finally ordered an attack upon several of Caesar's redoubts at the same time, in order that reënforcements might not be sent from one to the other.

**53. 1. ūnō diē:** the day on which Pompey attacked several redoubts at the same time; the offensive cost him heavily. **Dyrrachium:** near the upper end of the area hemmed in by Caesar, on a peninsula projecting into the Adriatic sea.

**4. ēvocātōs:** 316.

**5. L.: Lucit. 8, a. eius:** sc. *Valerīi Flaccī*. This Lucius Valerius Flaccus was praetor in the year of Cicero's Consulship, 63 B.C. **Asiam:** the province Asia. 302, c. **obtinuerat:** ex-praetors, as well as ex-consuls, went out as governors of provinces.

**6. signa militāria:** of Pompey, 'brought back' by Caesar's men. 324, b, (2).

**7. xx: viginti. 129, b. omnibus proeliis:** 147, b.

**8. castellō illō:** apparently a redoubt held by the eighth cohort of the sixth legion.

**12. in castellum coniecta:** 'that had been shot against the redoubt.'

Caesari numerāverunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae, centuriōnis, inventa sunt in eō forāmina cxx. Quem Caesar, ut erat dē sē meritus et dē rē pūblicā, dōnātum milibus 15 cc . . . atque ab octāvīs ordinibus ad prīmipilum sē trādūcere prōnūntiāvit (eius enim operā castellum magnā ex parte cōservātum esse cōstābat) cohortemque postea duplici stipendiō, frūmentō, veste, cibāriis militāribusque dōnis amplissimē dōnāvit. 20

### Caesar's Treatment of Two "Grafters." III. 59-61

*Two "grafters," Gauls, are found in Caesar's cavalry.*

59. Erant apud Caesarem in equitum numerō Allobrogēs duo, frātrēs, Roucillus et Egus, Adbucillī filiī, quī principātum in civitāte multīs annīs obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicis

13. **numerāverunt**: 'they counted out.' **scūtō**, etc.: Scaeva, we are elsewhere told, held his post, at the gate of the redoubt, to the end of the engagement, though one eye was put out and he was wounded in shoulder and thigh (Suetonius, *Caesar*, 68).

14. **forāmina**: 'holes,' made by arrows. Scaeva must have parried with marvelous steadiness and quickness. **Quem**: trans. as if *et eum*.

15. **dōnātum**, etc.: filling the gap in the text as Meusel suggests we may read, *dōnātum* (228, a) *milibus ducentis sēstertium* (see Vocab.) *prō cōtione laudāvit*, 'presented him with 200,000 sesterces and praised him before the assembly of the soldiers.' The value of the gift exceeded \$8000 in our money.

16. **ab**, etc.: 'announced his promotion from the rank of centurion in the eighth cohort to the position of first centurion.' How lit.?

18. **cohortem**: all the men of the cohort had their pay doubled, besides receiving other gifts and decorations. 318.

59. 1. **Erant**, etc.: the incidents related in chapters 59-61 took place while Caesar was still before Dyrrachium. 90, a. **in equitum numerō**: 'among the cavalry,' apparently a contingent raised among the Allobroges.

3. **annis**: 147, c. **singulārī virtūte**: 143, a.



- 5 bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. His domī ob hās  
causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā  
ordinem in senātum legendōs cūrāverat, agrōsque in Galliā,  
ex hostibus captōs, praemiaque rei pecūniariae magna tri-  
buerat, locuplētēsque ex egentibus fēcerat.
- 10 Hī propter virtutem nōn solum apud Caesarem in ho-  
nōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī habēbantur;  
sed, frētī amicitia Caesaris, et stultā ac barbarā arrogantia  
ēlāti, dēspiciēbant suōs, stipendiumque equitum fraudābant  
et praedam omnem domum āvertēbant. Quibus illi rēbus
- 15 permōti, ūniversī Caesarem adiērunt palamque dē eōrum  
injūriis sunt questī, et ad cētera addidērunt, falsum ab eis  
equitum numerum dēferri, quōrum stipendium āverterent.

*Caesar disciplines them privately.*

60. Caesar, neque tempus illud animadversōnis esse  
existimāns, et multa virtūtī eōrum concēdēns, rem tōtam  
distulit; illōs sēcrētō castigāvit, quod quaestuī equitēs

5. **bellis**: 'campaigns.' **domī**: in their own country. 146.

6. **amplissimōs**: 'highest.' **extrā ordinem**: 'out of due  
course.'

7. **senātum**: sc. *Allobrogum*. 289, b. **legendōs**: 229, b.

8. **praemia rei pecūniariae**: 'rewards in money.'

12. **amicitia**: 131, c. **stultā**: 'stupid.'

13. **dēspiciēbant**: 'looked down upon their fellow-countrymen.'  
**fraudābant**: 'were appropriating.'

14. **domum āvertēbant**: they turned aside to private use what  
should have been divided up among all. **illi**: the aggrieved cavalry-  
men.

17. **equitum**, etc.: by turning in a 'fictitious number of cavalry-  
men' they drew pay for soldiers who did not exist. **āverterent**:  
193, a.

60. 1. **neque**, etc.: 'that that (time) was not the (proper) time  
for punishment.' 94, d.

3. **quaestuī**, etc.: 'they made booty of the cavalrymen.' 112, a.

habērent, monuitque, ut ex suā amīcitiā omnia exspectārent  
et ex praeteritis suis officiis reliqua spērarent. 5

*Resentful, they borrow money, buy horses, go over to Pompey.*

Magnam tamen haec rēs illis offēnsiōnem et contemp-  
tiōnem ad omnēs attulit, idque ita esse cum ex aliōrum  
obiectātiōnibus, tum etiam ex domesticō iūdiō atque animi  
cōnscentiā intellegēbant. Quo pudōre adducti, et fortasse  
nōn sē liberārī, sed in aliud tempus reservārī, arbitrātī, dis- 10  
cēdere ab nōbis et novam temptāre fortunam novāsque  
amicitiās experīri cōstituērunt.

Et cum paucis collocūti clientibus suis, quibus tantum  
facinus committere audēbant, primum cōnātī sunt praefec- 15  
tum equitum, C. Volusēnum, interficere, ut postea, bellō cōn-  
fectō, cognitum est, ut cum mūnere aliquō perfūgissee ad  
Pompeium vidērentur; postquam id facinus difficilior visum  
est, neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, quam maximās  
potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde ac si suis satisfacere  
et fraudāta restituere vellent, multis coēptis equis ad 20

5. **praeteritis suis officiis**: 'his good offices in the past.'

7. **ad omnēs**: 'before all.' **id**, etc.: 'and that this was so.'

8. **obiectātiōnibus**: 'reproaches.' **domesticō iūdiō**: 'the  
judgment (of those) of their own household.' **animi cōnscentiā**:  
'(their own) conscience.'

10. **liberārī**: sc. *poenā*.

13. **cum**, etc.: 'after conferring with a few of their clients.' How  
lit.?

14. **committere**: 'to entrust (the knowledge of).' **praefectum  
equitum**: 309, c.

15. **C. Volusēnum**: he had distinguished himself in the Gallic  
war; cf. III, 5, ll. 7-10.

16. **mūnere aliquō**: 'some service' rendered, to commend them  
to Pompey.

18. **quam**, etc.: 'having borrowed the largest sums of money that  
they could.'

20. **fraudāta**: 'the embezzled funds.' **vellent**: 210.

Pompeium trānsiērunt cum eīs, quōs suī cōnsiliī participēs habēbant.

61. Quōs Pompeius, quod erant honestō locō nātī et instrūctī liberālīter, magnōque comitātū et multis iūmentis vēnerant, virīque fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque novum id, et praeter cōsuētūdinem, acciderat, omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit atque ostentāvit. Nam ante id tempus nēmō, aut miles aut eques, ā Caesare ad Pompeium trānsierat, cum paene cotīdiē ā Pompeiō ad Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō vērō in Ēpirō atque Aetōliā cōnscriptī militēs, eārumque regiōnum omnium, quae ā  
10 Caesare tenēbantur.

### Last Operations about Dyrrachium. III. 64

*Bravery of a dying standard-bearer in a panic of Caesar's troops.*

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō, Mārcellīnus cohortēs . . . subsidiō nostris labōrantibus summittit ex castris; quae,

21. *suī cōnsiliī participēs*: 'as associates in the plot.' How lit.? 26, b, and 115, b.

61. 1. *Quōs*: object of *circumdūxit*. 167. 1008: 128, a.

2. *Instrūctī liberālīter*: 'generously supplied,' as explained in the next clause. *comitātū*: 'retinue.' Cf. chap. 84, ll. 20-23.

4. *novum*, etc.: 'as something new and without precedent.'

5. *circumdūxit*: with two accusatives. 114, a.

8. *perfugerent*: 'men were deserting.' 187. *vulgō*: 'in large numbers.'

9. *militēs*: sc. *perfugerent*. *eārum regiōnum*: sc. *militēs*.

64. 1. *tumultū*: 'sudden attack' at one end of Caesar's line of works, near the sea; two cohorts of the ninth legion, on guard duty, were driven back. *cohortēs*: a word, giving the number of the cohorts sent as reinforcement, has been lost.

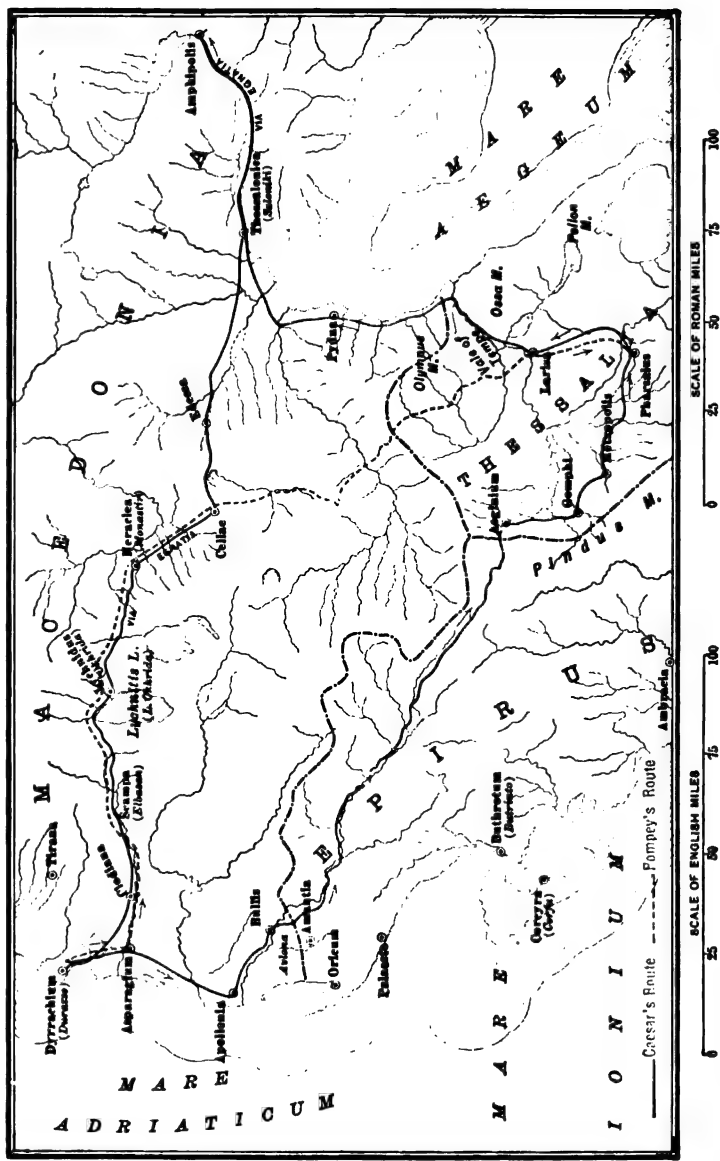
2. *subsidiō nostris*: 112, b. *castris*: one of Caesar's camps, in charge of the quaestor Marcellinus and near the point of attack. *quae*, etc.: 'but these (cohorts), when they saw our men fleeing.' How lit.?

# MAP 19

OPERATIONS OF THE YEAR 48 B.C.

C. III, 41-100

To face page 438





fugientēs cōspicātae, neque illōs suō adventū cōfirmāre potuerunt, neque ipsae hostium impetum tulērunt. Itaque quodcumque addēbātur subsidiō, id, correptum timōre fugientium, terrōrem et periculum augēbat; hominum enim multitudīne receptus impediēbātur.

In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset affectus aquilifer et ā viribus dēficerētur, cōspicātus equitēs nostrōs,

'Hanc ego,' inquit, 'et vivus multōs per annōs magnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc, moriēns, eādē fidē Caesarī restituō. Nōlīte, obsecrō, committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut rei militāris dēdecus admittātur, incolumemque ad eum dēferete.'

Hōc cāsū aquila cōservātur, omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectis praeter principem priōrem.

5. quodcumque, etc.: 'every additional detachment sent as reinforcement, seized by the panic of those in flight, (only) increased.' How lit.?

8. aquilifer: 'eagle-bearer,' always accompanying the first cohort of a legion. 324, b, (1).

9. ā viribus dēficerētur: 'his strength began to fail.' How lit.? equitēs: perhaps belonging to the cavalry detachment of the ninth legion. 309, a.

10. Hanc: hanc aquilam. 211, a, b, (3).

12. Nōlīte, etc.: 'Do not permit the incurring of a military disgrace.' How lit.? 181, b.

14. incolumen: sc. hanc aquilam. The cavalymen heeded his plea, and took the eagle. -que: 234, b. dēferete: 69, b.

15. Hōc cāsū: the appearance of the cavalymen at the opportune moment.

16. principem priōrem: 'the first centurion of the second manipule.' 315, b.

65-83. Dyrrachium to Pharsalus. While at Dyrrachium (261) Caesar sent Domitius Calvinus with two legions eastward into Macedonia in order to check the advance of Scipio (father of Pompey's fifth and last wife, Cornelia), who was bringing an army westward to Pompey.

Forced finally to withdraw from Dyrrachium, Caesar fell back on Apollonia (Map 19); thence he marched southeast, effected a junction with Domitius at

## The Battle of Pharsalus. III. 82-99

*Caesar draws up his army near Pompey's camp, tests his cavalry.*

84. *Rē frūmentāriā praeeparātā cōfirmātisque militibus, et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachi. nīs proeliīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar existimāvit, quidnam Pompeius prōpositi aut voluntātis ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque exercitum ex castris ēdūxit aciemque instrūxit, primō suis locis paulōque ā castris Pompei longius, continentibus vērō diēbus, ut prōgrederētur ā castris suis collibusque Pompeiānis aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōfirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.*

Aeginium in Thessaly (301, and Map 19), and led the united army to Gomphi, which, because its gates were closed, he stormed and gave over to looting. From Gomphi Caesar marched by way of Metropolis to the vicinity of Pharsalus, where he encamped, in a plain rich with ripening harvests, resolved there to await the coming of Pompey (Map 20).

Pompey, taking a northerly route (Map 19) by way of Heraclea (modern *Monastir*), joined the army of Scipio with his own, entered Thessaly from the north, and encamped not far from Caesar (Map 20).

84. 1. *Rē*, etc.: trans. by clauses commencing with 'when.' *cōfirmātis*: 'encouraged.'

2. *satis*, etc.: 'a sufficiently long period had elapsed since the engagements at Dyrrachium to enable him to assure himself of the spirit of his soldiers.' How lit.?

3. *perspectum*: 229, *a*. *vidērētur*: sc. *sibi*. 194, *a*.

4. *temptandum* [esse]: sc. *sibi*; 'that he ought to find out.' *quidnam*: etc.: 'what intention or desire.' 48, *c*, and 97, *b*.)

7. *suis locis*: 'in a position favorable to himself,' in front of his own camp. *castris Pompei*: on an elevation, east of Caesar's camp (Map 20). 8, *b*. *continentibus*: 'successive.'

8. *ut: ita instrūxit ut*; trans. 'in such a way that he moved forward.' *collibus*, etc.: 'pushed his line up to the hills occupied by Pompey.'

9. *rēs*: the fact that Pompey did not offer battle when Caesar's line moved up near him. *cōfirmātiōrem*: 'more confident.'

Superius tamen institutum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multis partibus esset inferior, adulēscentēs atque expeditōs ex antesignānīs, ēlēctīs ad pernīcītātem armīs, inter equitēs proeliārī iūberet, quī cotīdiānā cōsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius<sup>15</sup> generis proeliōrum perciperent.

His erat rēbus effectum, ut equitēs mille, etiam apertiōribus locīs, vii mīlium Pompeiānōrum impetum, cum adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proe-<sup>20</sup>lium secundum equestre fēcit, atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium suprā docuimus, cum quibusdam interfēcit.

11. **Superius institutum**: 'the former arrangement.' **dēmōnstrāvimus**: in chapter 75; there Caesar relates how he interspersed 400 light-armed footmen among his cavalry which, thus strengthened, defeated Pompey's cavalry with much slaughter.

12. **numerō**: sc. *equitum*. 142, a. **multis partibus**: 'much.' How lit.? 140.

13. **expeditōs**: 'with light equipment,' in place of the heavy weapons ordinarily carried by the legionary. **antesignānīs**: in each legion the 'men before the standards' formed a select contingent of the best fighters who were charged to protect the standards and in battle were posted in the parts of the line that were in front of the standards.

14. **ēlēctīs**, etc.: 'with arms selected for quickness of movement.'

15. **quī**: 'in order that they.' 193, a. **quoque**, etc.: 'in that kind of fighting also,' as well as in the methods in which they were trained as legionaries. The interspersing of agile footmen among cavalry Caesar had learned from the Germans (I, 48, ll. 12-20); in the latter part of the Gallic War Caesar had employed German horsemen (N. to VII, 70, l. 5).

17. **apertiōribus locīs**: 'on more open ground,' where Pompey's much larger force of cavalry could be deployed to the best advantage. 146, c.

18. **cum adesset ūsus**: 'when the necessity presented itself.' 220.

22. **duōbus**: Roucillus and Egus. **suprā**: chapters 59-61.



*Pompey remains stationary; finally, as Caesar breaks camp, he advances.*

**85.** Pompeius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās rādīcēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, si iniquis locis Caesar sē subiceret.

Caesar, nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompeium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, uti castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castris plūribusque adeundis locis commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur; simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dimicandī nancisceretur, et insolitum ad labōrem Pompei exercitum cotidiānis itineribus dēfatigāret.

His cōstitutis rēbus, signō iam profectiōnis datō, tabernāculisque dētēnsis, animadversum est, paulō ante, extrā cotidiānam cōsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompei prōgressam, ut nōn iniquō locō posse dīmīcārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis,

**85. 2. montis:** 'elevation.' **aciem:** Map 20, POMPEY'S FIRST POSITION. **Instruēbat:** on successive days. 175, d.

**3. exspectāns:** 'waiting (to see) whether Caesar would move close up to the unfavorable ground.' 204, (4).

**4. elloi:** 'be lured forth.' 57, b.

**5. bellī ratiōnem:** 'plan of campaign.'

**7. in itineribus:** 'on the march.' **haec spectāns:** 'having this in view.' **movendis castris:** 'by constantly moving his camp.' 230, (4).

**10. Insolitum ad labōrem:** 'not used to hard work.'

**12. Hic, etc.:** Caesar probably reached his decision on August 8, and gave orders to break camp early the next morning.

**13. dētēnsis:** 'struck.' **paulō, etc.:** the movement of Pompey's line, 'contrary to his daily practice,' was noticed 'a little before' the packing and loading of the tents was completed.

**15. ut, etc.:** 'so that it seemed possible to fight in a not disadvantageous position,' the advantages being more nearly equalized by Pom-

'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in praesentiā nōbīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō simus ad dimicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem postea reperiemus;'

20

cōfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

*Pompey believed that his cavalry alone would win the battle.*

**86.** Pompeius quoque, ut postea cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū, statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, *Prius quam concurrerent aciēs, fore, utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur.* Id cum essent plērīque admirātī,

5

'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paenē incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōsiliī mei accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostris (idque mihi factūrōs cōfirmāvērunt), ut, cum propius sit accessum,

pey's advance further into the plain from his camp on higher ground. 73, d, and 239, g.

18. **dēpoposcimus**: 'we have earnestly desired.' How lit.? **Animō**: 'in spirit.'

21. **expeditās**: 'in fighting trim'; lit. 'unencumbered,' having laid aside the burdens which they had started to carry on the march.

**86. 2. hortātū**: 'in consequence of the urging.' 135, a.

3. **cōsiliō**: a meeting of officers. **superiōribus diēbus**: from *in posterum diem* (l. 16) we are led to infer that the meeting of officers took place on August 8, the day before the battle.

4. **concurrerent**: present subjunctive in the direct form. 189, b. **aciēs**: the two opposing lines, Caesar's and Pompey's. **fore, etc.**: 203, (1).

6. **Sciō, etc.**: Fig. 147. 211, b, (3).

7. **ratiōnem cōsiliī mei**: 'the explanation of my plan.' **quō, etc.**: 193, b.

8. **Persuāsī**: as if Pompey had only to 'persuade' the cavalry to carry out the movement — and the battle would be won!

9. **cum, etc.**: 'when the lines have drawn nearer.' How lit.? 73, d.

10 dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggrederentur, et, circumventā ā tergō aciē, prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nobis tēlum in hostem iacerētur.

‘Ita sine periculō legiōnum, et paenē sine vulnere, bellum cōficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equi-  
15 tātū valeāmus.’

Simul dēnūtiāvit, ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem et, quoniam fieret dimicandī potestās, ut saepe rogītāvissent, nē suam neu reliquōrum opiniōnem fallerent.



Figure 147. — Pompey.

Marble bust in the Jacobsen Museum, Copenhagen; from a photograph courteously furnished by the Director of the Museum.

10. **ab latere apertō**: N. to I, 25, l. 17. Pompey's huge force of cavalry was to outflank Caesar's line of infantry and attack it from the rear. The outflanking was planned for Caesar's right wing because his left would be protected by the river Enipeus (cf. Map 20).

11. **perturbātum**: 'throw his army into confusion and.' 228, *a*.

14. **oūm**, etc.: 'since we are so much stronger in cavalry.' Pompey's horsemen numbered 7000, Caesar's 1000. 184, *a*.

16. **dēnūtiāvit**: 'he enjoined (them).'

18. **nō**, etc.: 'and not disappoint his own expectation or that of the others.' 157, *d*. **reliquōrum**: senators and other civilians of standing who were with Pompey. **fallerent**: 199, *a*.

*Even Labienus, over-confident, had expressed his contempt for Caesar's troops.*

**87** Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompei cōsiliū summis laudibus efferret,

'Nōli,' inquit, 'existimāre, Pompei, hunc esse exercitum, qui Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Omnibus interfui proeliis neque temere incognitam rem prōnūntiō. 5

'Perexigua pars illius exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit (quod accidere tot proeliis fuit necesse), multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōsūmpsit, multi domum discessērunt, multi sunt relictī in continentī.

'An nōn audistis, ex eis, quī per causam valētūdinis re- 10

**87. 1. Labienus:** Labienus had gone over to the side of Pompey and had already shown himself an implacable enemy of Caesar. So long as he was under the direction of Caesar he was an efficient officer, displaying military talents of a high order. When, however, he came to act more independently he showed lack of insight, as in the present instance; and he failed to realize the expectations of his new friends. **excēpit:** 'followed,' in speaking. **cum . . . dēspiceret:** 'disparaging.' 185, c.

**3. Nōli:** 181, b. **Pompei:** 8, c. B. 25, 1; A. 49, c; H. 83, 5.

**4. dēvicerit:** 'subdued.' The statement is an exaggeration, to heighten the effect; Germany was far from being subdued. There is similar exaggeration in the following statement, that Labienus took part in all the battles in Gaul and Germany.

**5. neque, etc.:** 'and I am not recklessly asserting something that I do not know.' How lit.?

**6. Perexigua pars:** 'An exceedingly small remnant.'

**7. dēperiit:** 'has been destroyed.' **quod:** = *id quod*. 160, c.

**8. autumnī pestilentia:** 'the autumn sickness,' fevers, from which, in the autumn of 49 B.C., Caesar's army had suffered in Apulia and the region of Brundisium (C. III, 2).

**9. in continentī:** in Italy.

**10. An:** 179, a, (2). B. 162, 4, a; A. 335, b; H. 380, 3. **audistis:** 64, a, (3).

mānsērunt, cohortēs esse Brundisii factās? Hae cōpiaē, quās vidētis, ex dilēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt reffectae, et plērique sunt ex colōniis Trāns-padānis. Ac tamen, quod fuit rōboris, duōbus proeliis  
 15 Dyrrachinis interiit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit, sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque, ut idem facerent, hortātus est.

Hōc laudāns, Pompeius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquis fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret.

20 Haec tum facta sunt in cōsiliō, magnāque spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praeciipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam peritō imperātore nihil frūstrā cōfirmārī vidēbātur.

11. *cohortēs*, etc.: 'that (whole) cohorts at Brundisium have been made up of those who were left behind on account of sickness.' 146.

12. *hōrum annōrum*: i.e. of the last two years, since the outbreak of the Civil War. *citeriōre Galliā*: 284.

13. *sunt reffectae*: 'have been recruited.'

14. *quod fuit rōboris*: 'all the (real) strength there was' in Caesar's army; the small nucleus of veterans which, after the reductions mentioned, Labienus thought that Caesar had been able to bring across the Adriatic. 97, *b*.

15. *interiit*: how badly mistaken Labienus was, he afterwards learned to his sorrow; the brunt of the fighting at Pharsalus was borne by Caesar's veterans.

16. *iūrāvit*, etc.: the oath was not unlike that taken by the Gauls under Vercingetorix (VII, 66, ll. 23-26; 67, l. 1); the result was in both cases the same. Similar, too, was the proclamation of General Ducrot, addressed to his soldiers in beleaguered Paris November 28, 1870, when he was trying to break through the Prussian "ring of iron" about the city. "For myself," the proclamation says, "I am fully resolved, I make my oath before you and before the entire nation, that I will re-enter Paris either dead or victorious; you may see me fall, but you will not see me retreat." Vercingetorix and his officers, Pompey, Labienus, Ducrot—all alike survived overwhelming defeat.

21. *omnium*: including, besides the officers, prominent civilians.

22. *tam peritō imperātore*: Labienus. *nihil*, etc.: sc. *sibi*; 'they

*Caesar notes the arrangement of Pompey's line of battle.*

**88.** Caesar, cum Pompei castris appropinquasset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instructam animum advertit:

Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae, trāditae ā Caesare initio dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōsultō; quārum ūna prima, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompeius. Mediam aciem Scipiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās

thought that confident assurances were not given without good grounds.' How lit.?

**88. 2. hunc:** 161, a. **animum advertit:** 118, c.

**3. trāditae:** 'which had been handed over (to him).' 227, a, (4).

**4. initio dissēnsiōnis:** 'at the beginning of the strife,' in 50 B.C. 147, b. **ex senātūs cōsultō:** 'in accordance with a decree of the Senate.' 258. **prima, tertia:** predicative. A legion transferred to another commander received a new number. Pompey's 'First Legion' had been *legio VI* in Caesar's army, and his 'Third Legion' had been Caesar's *legio XV*; both legions entered the service of Caesar in 53 B.C. 307, g.

**5. eō locō:** Pompey's left wing, facing Caesar's right.

**6. legiōnibus Syriacis:** two legions that had been serving in Syria, that Scipio had conducted to Pompey in Macedonia.

**7. Ciliciēnsis:** 'from Cilicia'; this was a veteran legion. **quās . . . docuimus:** the passage here referred to 'has



Figure 148. — Legionary's cuirass.

Pompey's soldiers had the same armor and weapons as Caesar's; there was no such disparity in equipment as there had been between Caesar's soldiers and the Gauls.

- trāductās ab Āfrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompeius existimābat.
- 10 Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcera numerōque cohortēs cx explēverat. Haec erant numerō milia XLV; ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriis superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant, quae tōtā aciē disperserat.
- 15 Reliquās cohortēs VII castris propinquisque castellis praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impeditis rīpis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum, sagittariōs funditorēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcera.

*Caesar arranges his troops in order of battle.*

89. Caesar, superius institūtum servāns, x legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsi erat

been lost. Afranius and Petreius commanded forces of Pompey in Spain, but were conquered by Caesar in 49 B.C.

8. **erant collocātae**: the subject grammatically is *legiō*, but in thought the 'Spanish cohorts' also are included, as if *legiō et Hispānae cohortēs* had been written. 173, b.

9. **Hās**: the five legions mentioned, and the Spanish cohorts; 'that these were the strongest legions which he had.' How lit.?

10. **Reliquās**: sc. *legiōnēs* (Fig. 148).

11. **numerō**, etc.: Pompey had 110 cohorts, the equivalent of 11 legions, in his battle line (Map 20); these comprised 47,000 regular soldiers, besides cavalry and light-armed troops.

12. **ēvocātōrum**: 'veteran volunteers.' 316. **duo**: sc. *milia erant*. **beneficiāriis**: 'privileged soldiers'; see Vocab.

13. **superiōrum exercituum**: 'of (his) former armies,' as in the war with Mithridates.

15. **castellis**: marked **A A A** on Map 20.

16. **rīvus quīdam**: probably the Enipeus; see Map 20. **impeditis rīpis**: 'with banks hard to cross.'

89. 1. **superius institūtum**: 'his earlier arrangement' of having the tenth legion in the place of honor on the right wing, as in the battle with Ariovistus, eleven years before (Map 4). **x**: *decimam*. 38, b.

2. **erat**, etc.: 'it had been greatly reduced in strength.' 191, a.

# MAP 20 THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS

C. III, 82-99

To face page 448



A. Redoubts, built by Pompey (chap. 88, l. 15). B. Height on which Pompey's soldiers halted (chap. 97, l. 12).





Dyrrachinīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūnxerat octāvam, ut paenē ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. 5

Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōstitutās habēbat, quae summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs VII castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediae aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompeium cōstitit. 10

Simul hīs rēbus animadversis, quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns, nē ā multitudīne equitum dextrum cornū circumvenirētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit

5. **alterī**: sc. *legiōni*; 'that, the one (legion) should support the other.' 23, a, and 112, b.

6. **LXXX**: 36. **quae summa**: trans. as if *quārum summa* (cf. I, 29, l. 5).

7. **mīlium XXII**: Caesar's 80 cohorts, 8 legions (Map 20), containing a total of only 22,000 men, averaged less than 300 men to a cohort; Pompey's 110 cohorts averaged above 400 men each. 100, b, and 307, b, c.

8. **cornū**: dative. 20, b. **Antōnium**: Mark Antony.

9. **contrā Pompeium**: Caesar was with the tenth legion on the right wing, facing Pompey's left wing, where Pompey was (chap. 88, l. 5).

11. **hīs rēbus**: Pompey's disposition of forces, especially the massing of cavalry and light infantry over against Caesar's right wing (chap. 88, ll. 17-18); Caesar saw at a glance that a flanking movement was intended, and with amazing quickness of decision devised a means to resist it.

13. **tertiā aciē**: 337.



Figure 149. — Banner, *vexillum*.

atque ex his quārtam instituit equitātūque opposuit, et,  
 15 quid fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque eius diēi victōriam in  
 eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre.

Simul tertiae aciēi imperāvit, nē iniussū suō concurreret;  
 sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

*Caesar briefly addresses his soldiers and gives the signal  
 to attack.*

**90.** Exercitum cum militārī mōre ad pugnam cohortā-  
 rētūr suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedicāret,  
 in primīs commemorāvit :

*Testibus sē militibus utī posse, quantō studiō pācem  
 s petisset; quae per Vatīnium in colloquiis, quae per A. Clō-  
 dium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum  
 Libōne dē mittendis lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē um-  
 quam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō  
 exercitū privāre voluisse.*

**14. quārtam** [aciem] : this line was made up of eight cohorts, less than 3000 men; see Map 20, FOURTH LINE.

**18. vēxillō** : used generally to give the signal 'to arms' (II, 20, l. 2, and Fig. 149); in this instance, to order a division into action. 324, b, (3).

**90. 1. militārī mōre** : 'in accordance with military custom'; N. to I, 25, l. 3. 136, c.

**2. sua**, etc. : 'was setting forth his kindnesses to it, an unbroken series' (lit. 'of unbroken time'). 100, a.

**4. Testibus**, etc. : 'that he could call upon his soldiers to bear witness.' How lit.? 131, f, and 212, c, (2).

**5. per Vatīnium**, etc. : the efforts made by Caesar to arrange terms of peace through the agency of Publius Vatininus and Aulus Clodius are narrated in chapters 19 and 57 of Book III.

**7. dē**, etc. : 'had endeavored to arrange the sending of envoys' for a peace conference; cf. C III, 16-17. 204, (3).

**8. abūtī** : 'waste.' 131, c. **alterutrō** : 51.

**9. exercitū** : 127, a. B. 214; H. 462. **privāre** : 'deprive.'

Hāc habitā ōrātiōne, exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.

*With heroic words, Crastinus leads the charge.*

91. Erat Crāstinus, ēvocātus, in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne x duxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hīc, signō datō,

‘Sequiminī mē,’ inquit, ‘manipulārēs mei quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōri, quam cōsuēvistis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium superest; quō cōfectō, et ille suam dignitātem, et nōs nostram libertātem recuperābimus.’

Simul respiciēns Caesarem,

‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.’ 10

Haec cum dixisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēcti militēs circiter cxx voluntārii sunt prōsecūtī.

10. **ōrātiōne**: the words must have been repeated several times, probably by Caesar himself, riding along the line; no single utterance could have been heard over so extended a front. **exposcentibus**: sc. *signum*. Caesar's watchword in this battle was VENUS VICTRIX, ‘Venus Bringer of Victory.’ He vowed a temple to this goddess if he should be victorious, and afterwards fulfilled his vow by erecting a temple to Venus in Rome. 244.

11. **ārdentibus**: a strong word; ‘burning.’ **tubā**, etc.: 326, a, (1), and b. The date was August 9, unreformed calendar. 261, and 241, c.

91. 1. **Crāstinus**: 76, b. **ēvocātus**: 316.

2. **pilum**: from *pilus*; see Vocab., and 315, b. **x**: 38, b.

4. **manipulārēs**, etc.: ‘who were the men of my manipulus’ (when I was first centurion).

6. **quō cōfectō**: ‘when this is over.’ How lit.? **dignitātem**: ‘his position’ in the state; sc. *recuperabit*.

7. **nostram libertātem**: jeopardized by Pompey.

9. **Faciam**, etc.: ‘General, you will to-day have occasion to thank me, living or dead.’ How lit.? 203, (3).

12. **voluntārii**: ‘who were serving as volunteers’; like Crastinus, they were ‘veterans,’ *ēvocātī*.

*Caesar's veterans halt to take breath, hurl themselves on the foe.*

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relīctum spatīi, ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompeius suis praedixerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent, nēve sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triārii fēcisse dicēbātur, ut primus excursus visque militum infringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suis ordinibus dispositi dispersōs adorirentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat, in locō retentis militibus, quam si ipsi immissis tēlis occurrissent; simul fore, ut, duplicātō cursū,  
10 Caesaris militēs exanimārentur et lassitudīne cōnficerentur.

Quod nōbīs quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompeiō vidētur, proptereā quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque

92. 1. **tantum spatīi**: '(only) so much space'; probably about 100 *passūs*, somewhat less than 500 English feet. 97, *b*, and 243, *b*. **ut**, etc.: 'as to enable each army to charge.' How lit.? 197, *b*.

3. **praedixerat**, etc.: 'had given orders in advance' (i.e. not to countercharge when they saw the enemy advancing but) 'to await Caesar's attack and not to move from their position.' 199, *d*.

4. **aciem**, etc.: 'his line to become disordered,' as his soldiers should rush forward in the charge.

5. **primus**, etc.: 'that the initial vigor of attack of (Caesar's) soldiers might be lessened.' How lit.?

7. **dispositi dispersōs**: sc. *sut* (i.e. *Pompeiānt militēs*) *eōs* (*Caesaris militēs*); 'that his own men with ranks in perfect order might fall upon them when in confusion.' How lit.? **levius cāsūra** [esse]: 'would fall with less effect,' than if his soldiers should charge against them as they were hurled.

8. **in**, etc.: 'if his soldiers should be held in position.' 144, *b*, (4).

9. **duplicātō cursū**: 'having twice as far to run' in the charge, covering the whole distance between the two armies instead of half the distance.

10. **exanimārentur**, etc.: 'would get out of breath and be weakened by fatigue.'

11. **Quod**: 'Now this.' 167. **nullā ratiōne**: 'quite without reason.' How lit.? 135, *a*. **factum**: sc. *esse*.

12. **est**, etc.: 'all men have by nature a kind of latent capacity for being spurred to action, and this is kindled by the heat of battle.' How lit.?

alacritās nātūrālīter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperatōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antiquitus institūtum est, ut signa 15 undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrēri et suōs incitārī existimāvērunt.

93. Sed nostrī militēs, signō datō, cum infestis pīlis prōcucurrissent atque animum advertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompeiānīs, ūsū peritī ac superiōribus pugnis exercitātī, suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsumptīs viribus appropinquārent; par-5 vōque intermissō temporis spatiō, ac rūsus renovātō cursū, pila misērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Neque vērō Pompeiānī huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs 10 cōservārunt, pīlisque missis, ad gladiōs rediērunt.

15. **signa**: 'signals' with the trumpet. 326, a, b.

16. **undique concinerent**: 'should in all parts (of the line) sound at the same time.' **ūniversī**: '(the soldiers) in a body.'

17. **quibus rēbus**: 'and by these means.' **existimāvērunt**: as subject supply *antiqui*, 'men of the olden time.'

93. 1. **cum**: 185, c. **infestis pīlis**: 'with pikes raised,' ready for hurling. How lit.?

2. **nōn concurrī**, etc.: 'that no advance was made by the soldiers of Pompey,' who had been ordered to stand still and let Caesar's soldiers come on.

4. **ad medium ferē spatium**: 'about half-way between' the two armies. These experienced soldiers covered nearly the distance of our 100-yard dash, stopped of their own accord to take breath, ran again a like distance and hurled their pikes, then 'drew their swords.' Pompey had again miscalculated, in assuming that Caesar's men would allow themselves to be exhausted by a charge of twice the ordinary length.

9. **Neque**, etc.: 'And in truth the soldiers of Pompey did not fail to meet this movement.' How lit.? **tēla**: the pikes hurled by Caesar's men.

10. **excēpērunt**: with their shields. **ōrdinēs**: 'ranks.'

*Caesar's cavalry is defeated; his fourth line routs Pompey's cavalry and attacks Pompey's left wing in the rear.*

Eodem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompei cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversi prōcucurrerunt, omnisque multitudō sagittariōrum sē prōfūdīt. Quōrum impetum noster equi-  
 15 tātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompei hōc ācrius instāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciē-  
 que nostram ab latere apertō circumīre coepērunt.

Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, quārtae aciēi, quam instituerat, cohortibus dedit signum.

20 Illae celeriter prōcucurrerunt infestisque signis tantā vī in Pompei equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōn-  
 sisteret, omnēsque conversi nōn solum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitāti fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtis, omnēs sagittarii funditorēsque dēstitūti, inermēs,  
 25 sine praesidiō, interfecti sunt.

12. **Equitēs**, etc. : see chap. 86, ll. 8-15; chap. 88, ll. 17-18. Pompey's cavalry was commanded by Labienus, who soon forgot his oath (chap. 87, ll. 16-17). See Map 20.

14. **sē prōfūdīt**: 'rushed forward.'

16. **hōc**: 135, a. **sē turmātim explicāre**: 'to deploy by squadrons.' The cavalry had charged in close formation; it now deployed by squadrons in order the more easily to execute the flanking movement ordered by Pompey. 309, c.

18. **acīēi**: dependent on *cohortibus*; see chap. 89, ll. 14-16, and Map 20, FOURTH LINE.

20. **infestis signis**: 325. Cavalry are at a disadvantage in withstanding a charge of infantry.

22. **-que**: 'but.' 234, b. **conversī**: 'wheeling about.' How lit.?

23. **incitāti fugā**: 'scurrying in flight.' How lit.? Their probable course is shown on Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S CAVALRY IN FLIGHT.

24. **dēstitūti**: by the flight of the cavalry. **inermēs**: without defensive weapons.

25. **sine praesidiō**: in the open plain, without a rampart to shield them.

Eodem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompeiānis, circumiērunt eosque ā tergō sunt adortae.

*Caesar's third line enters the action; Pompey's infantry gives way, and Pompey flees to his camp.*

94. Eodem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, alii autem ā tergō adorirentur, sustinēre Pompeiāni nōn potuerunt atque ūniversi terga vertērunt. 5

Sed Pompeius, ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit atque eam partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, perterritam animum advertit, aliis diffisus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et eis centuriōnibus, quōs in statione ad praetoriam portam posuerat, clārē, ut milites exaudirent, 10

26. **Eodem impetū**: 'Continuing their movement.' How lit.? **cohortēs**: of the fourth line. **sinistrum cornū**: of Pompey.

27. **Pompeiānis**: Pompey's legionaries; his cavalry and light-armed troops were already disposed of.

28. **ā tergō**: by forming a fourth line, notwithstanding his inferior numbers, Caesar was enabled not only to defeat Pompey's plan to outflank him but to turn the tables and outflank Pompey.

94. 1. **tertiā aciem**: the third line had been ordered to await Caesar's signal with the red banner (chap. 89, ll. 17-18).

3. **recentēs atque integrī**: the soldiers of Caesar's third line. **dēfessīs**: the soldiers of the first and second lines, fighting against superior numbers, until now without reënforcements. 337, b. **alii**: Caesar's fourth line.

6. **ut**: 188, a. **atque**: 'and (thus).' **eam partem**: the cavalry.

8. **aliis diffisus**: 'losing confidence in his other troops.' 62, and 106. **aciē**: 127, a. **sē equō contulit**: 'rode on horseback.' How lit.? 131, a.

10. **praetoriam portam**: here the west gate of the camp (Map 20). 334, a. **clārē**: 'in a loud voice.'



'Tuēminī,' inquit, 'castra et dēfendite dīlīgenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōfirmō.'

Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium contulit, summae  
15 rei diffidēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

*Caesar takes Pompey's camp, finding many evidences  
of luxury.*

95. Caesar, Pompeiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis, nūllum spatium perterritis darī oportēre existimāns, militēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsi magnō aestū fatigātī — nam ad  
5 meridiem rēs erat perducta — tamen, ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pārūerunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relīctae, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant militēs,  
10 et animō perterriti et lassitūdine cōfectī, dīmissis plērīque

11. **Tuēminī**: 61, a, (2). **sī**, etc.: 'if any unusual difficulty presents itself.' How lit.? 206.

13. **cōfirmō**: 'encourage'; vivid use of the present tense.

14. **praetōrium**: 'general's quarters.' 334, b. **summae**: dative, with *rei*, genitive, depending on it; 'distrustful of the final issue.' How lit.?

95. 1. **vāllum**: of Pompey's camp; his men had been forced back to the elevation on which the camp was, and up the slope (Map 20).

3. **ut**, etc.: 'to take advantage of fortune's favor.'

4. **magnō aestū**: in the plain of Pharsalus the heat in summer is intense.

5. **rēs**: 'the struggle.' **tamen**, etc.: notwithstanding the physical exhaustion of Caesar's soldiers, their grit did not fail them.

7. **cohortibus**: 7 in number, for the camp and redoubts (chap. 88, ll. 15-16).

9. **barbarisque auxiliis**: 'and (other) barbarian auxiliary troops.' **Nam**: '(The defense was left to these) for.'

10. **dīmissis**, etc.: 'in most cases throwing away.' How lit.?

armis signisque militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant.

Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstitērant, multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuerunt, sed, cōfecti vulneribus, locum reliquerunt, prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centuri-<sup>13</sup> ōnibus tribūnisque militum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōfūgērunt.

96. In castris Pompei vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nullōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā, quae nimiam lūxuriā et victōriāe fidūciā dēsīgnārent; ut, facile existimārī posset, nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn necessariās conquirerent voluptātēs. At hī

13. quī: as antecedent sc. *et*, subject of *potuerunt*.

15. duobus, etc.: 'having as their leaders' (in flight) 'the centurions and military tribunes,' who ought to have rallied the demoralized troops and continued the battle; bitter sarcasm, veiled under a form of expression that on the surface is complimentary. 131, f.

16. montēs, etc.: see Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S FLEEING LEGIONARIES.

96. 1. *houit*: 73, b. *trichilās strūctās*: 'arbors that had been built,' covered with branches having their leaves on, as a protection against the sun. These did not take the place of the tents, but were used for dining; in summer well-to-do Romans made much use of arbors shaded with branches or vines.

2. *argentī*: 'silver plate.' *expositum*: 'set out' on tables, in readiness for dinner. *recentibus*, etc.: 'tents carpeted with fresh turf.'

3. *L. Lentulī*: mentioned by name because of his prominence; he had been consul the previous year.

4. *prōtēcta hederā*: 'decked with ivy,' trailed along the sides, to keep out the heat.

5. *dēsīgnārent*: 'evidenced.' The unsoldierly camp life of Pompey's aristocratic civilian contingent is known from other sources. 194, a.

7. *nōn necessariās voluptātēs*: 'needless indulgences.' 239, g. *At*: 236, a.

miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dē-  
10 fuissent!

*Pompey flees from the camp, reaches the sea, takes ship.*

Pompeius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus, detrāctis insignibus imperātōriis, decumānā portā sē ex castris eiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit.

15 Neque ibi cōstitit, sed eādem celeritāte, paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opiniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spē-  
20 rāsset, ab eō initīo fugae factō, paenē prōditus vidērētur.

8. **miserrimō**: 28, *a*.      **patientissimō**: 'most long-suffering.' 27, *a*.

9. **oui**, etc.: 'although it had lacked everything.' 194, *d*.

12. **equum nactus**: the language implies that Pompey did not wait to get his own mount but jumped on the first horse he could find. 61, *a*, (3), and 286, *c*.      **Insignibus imperātōriis**: the distinguishing marks of his rank as commander, particularly his scarlet mantle (*paludamentum*), which he replaced by a traveler's cloak. 321. **decumānā portā**: in this case the east gate (Map 20). 334, *a*, and 134, *a*.

13. **equō citātō**: 'urging his horse forward.' 144, *b*, (7). **Lārisam**: see Map 19. The distance from Pharsalus to Larisa is about 25 English miles.

15. **paucōs suōs**: among Pompey's companions in flight was Lucius Lentulus (l. 3) who likewise met death in Egypt (C. III. 104).

17. **mare**: at the mouth of the Peneus, about 25 miles northeast of Larisa; in the latter part of his flight Pompey passed through the famous Vale of Tempe, which runs back from the sea between Mt. Olympus and Mt. Ossa (Map 19); see Fig. 209, in Vocab.

18. **sē**, etc.: 'that he had been so grievously disappointed in his expectations'; *sē* is object of *fefellisse*. How lit.?

19. **ā quō**, etc.: 'that it almost seemed as if he had been betrayed,

*Caesar completes the victory, taking many captives.*

**97.** Caesar, castris potitus, ā militibus contendit, nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtīi gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre Instituit.

Pompeiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī ei locō, s relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eis Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit partemque legiōnum in castris Pompei remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, III sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompeiānis occurrere coepit, 10 et, prōgressus milia passuum VI, aciem instrūxit.

Quā rē animadversā, Pompeiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat.

---

since the rout was started by that division of men (the cavalry), from whom.' How lit.? 148, *e*; 172, *d*, and 165, *c*.

**97. 1. castris:** 131, *c*. **militibus:** the soldiers immediately on capturing the camp began to plunder it. **contendit:** 'urged and demanded,' not *imperat*; see N. to chap. 98, l. 7. 199, *a*.

**2. reliquī, etc.:** 'the opportunity to finish up the business in hand.' How lit.?

**3. Quā rē impetrātā:** 'Having carried his point.' That under the circumstances Caesar's soldiers left off looting in order to resume fighting, is evidence not only of his power to maintain discipline but also of their loyalty to him. **montem:** 'elevation'; see chap. 95, l. 16. **opere:** the usual trench and rampart.

**6. iugīs eis:** 'along the ridges,' connecting the heights. 134, *b*, and 160, *d*. **Lārisam versus:** 'in the direction of Larisa.' Their course was first toward the northeast, to find a place where they could cross the Enipeus; Map 20, ROUTE OF POMPEY'S FLEEING LEGIONARIES.

**10. commodiōre itinere:** Caesar passed over the height on which was Pompey's camp and followed the more level ground along the river, being thus enabled to head off the fleeing legionaries who were traversing the high ground; Map 20, ROUTE OF CAESAR OVERTAKING THE LEGIONARIES OF POMPEY.

**12. quōdam monte:** marked **B** on Map 20.

**13. flūmen:** Enipeus.

Caesar, militēs cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēi continentī  
 15 labōre erant cōfecti noxque iam suberat, tamen mūniti-  
 ōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompeiānī  
 possent. Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditionē, missis  
 lēgātis, agere coepērunt. Pauci ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē  
 cum hīs coniūnixerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt.

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōn-  
 sēderant, ex superiōribus locis in plānitē dēscendere  
 atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsatiōne  
 fēcērunt, passisque palmis, prōiecti ad terram, flentēs, ab eō  
 5 salūtem petivērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit, et pauca  
 apud eōs dē lēnitātē suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre,  
 omnēs cōservāvit; militibusque suis commendāvit, nē quī  
 eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsiderārent. Hāc adhibītā  
 diligentīā, ex castris sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās,

15. **mūnitiōne**: Map 20, CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS.

16. **sēclūsit**: 'shut off.' 79, d. **aquārī**: 'to obtain water.'

18. **ōrdinis senātōrii**: 'of senatorial rank.' These men, having  
 bitterly opposed Caesar, feared his vengeance even more than the sol-  
 diers did.

98. 3. **Quod**: trans. as if *et id.* **recūsatiōne**: 'protest.'

4. **passis palmis**: 'with their palms outstretched,' in supplication.  
**prōiecti ad terram**: 'casting themselves upon the ground.' 174.  
**ab eō**: 116, b.

5. **cōnsurgere iussit**: sc. *eōs*, 'he bade them rise.'

6. **quō**, etc.: 'in order to allay their fears.' How lit.? 143, b.

7. **nē**: '(urging) that.' **quī**: 49, a, and 168. **commendāvit**  
 [eōs]: not *imperāvit*; in a time of so great excitement and strain  
 Caesar could more easily control his men through a request than by a  
 command.

8. **violārētur**: 'be harmed.' **neu**: 199, d. **sui**: genitive,  
 singular, neuter; 'anything that belonged to them,' lit. 'anything of  
 their own.' 97, b, and 154, a. **Hāc adhibītā diligentīā**: 'Having  
 given this matter careful attention.' How lit.?

9. **sibi occurrere**: with *iussit*, 'he ordered other legions to join  
 him.'

quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem requiēscere atque in castra 10  
reverti iussit, eōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnit.

*The losses, on both sides. Death of the brave Crastinus.*

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc militēs dēsiderāvit, sed  
centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmīsīt.

Interfectus est etiam, fortissimē pugnāns, Crāstinus, cuius  
mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō.  
Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille, in pugnam proficiscēns, s  
dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat, eō proeliō excellen-  
tissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē  
meritum iūdicābat.

10. quās, etc.: these legions had been fighting, marching, fortifying,  
or on guard duty, continuously for twenty-four hours. requiēscere :  
'to take rest.'

11. Lārisam pervēnit: a march of 25 English miles, on the day  
after the battle, in very hot  
weather — no mean accom-  
plishment. 329.

99. 1. cc: ducentōs. 129,  
b. B. 217, 3; A. 407, c; H.  
471, 4.

2. centuriōnēs, etc.: cf.  
N. to VII, 51, l. 1.

3. suprā: chap. 91.  
gladiō, etc.: 'having re-  
ceived a sword-thrust directly  
in the face.'

6. excellentissimam,  
etc.: 'that the valor of Cras-  
tinus was the most extraordinary' of all. "The army bore witness,"  
says Appian, "how, like one inspired, running to each rank he per-  
formed prodigies of valor. And when, after search, he was found among  
the dead, Caesar put military decorations upon him, and buried them  
with him, and built for him a separate tomb near the common burial-  
place where many were interred."

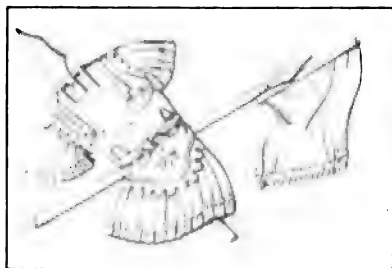


Figure 150. — Symbols of Victory.

Cuirass, two spears, and a banner, suggesting  
victory over a civilized nation. From a relief.

Ex Pompeiānō exercitū circiter milia xv cecidissee vidē-  
 10 bantur, sed in dēditionem vēnērunt amplius milia xxiii  
 (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant,  
 sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multi praetereā in finitimās  
 cīvitatēs refūgērunt; signaque militāria ex proeliō ad  
 Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae viii.

15 L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs  
 eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

9. *vidēbantur*, etc.: the expression suggests a rough estimate; the number of prisoners is more definitely stated, since they were accurately counted.

14. *aquilae viii*: the eagles of all but two of Pompey's 11 legions fell into Caesar's hands, a sweeping victory (Fig. 150). The most graphic description of the battle of Pharsalus in English literature is in chap. 21 of *A Friend of Caesar*, by W. S. Davis.

15. *L. Domitius*: N. to chap. 3, l. 2.

**Historical Significance of the Battle of Pharsalus.** "In none (of the world's decisive battles)," says Warde Fowler, "have the contending forces in a world-wide revolution been so exactly focussed in two armies on a single battle-field. On one side the disunion, selfishness, and pride of the last survivors of an ancient oligarchy, speculating before the event on the wealth or office that victory was to bring them; on the other, the absolute command of a single man, whose clear mental vision was entirely occupied with the facts and issues that lay before him that day.

"The one host was composed in great part of a motley crowd from Greece and the East, representing that spurious Hellenic civilisation that for a century had sapped the vigour of Roman life; the other was chiefly drawn from the Gallic populations of Italy and the West, fresh, vigorous, intelligent, and united in devotion and loyalty to a leader whom not even defeat could dishearten.

"With Pompeius was the spirit of the past, and his failure did but answer to the failure of a decaying world; with Caesar was the spirit of the future, and his victory marks the moment when humanity could once more start hopefully upon a new line of progress."

## SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

### 1. The Pig's Last Will and Testament

#### *Testāmentum Porcelli.*

Incipit testāmentum porcelli.

M. Grunnius Corocotta, porcellus, testāmentum fēcit.  
Quoniam manū meā scribere nōn potui, scribendum dictāvi.

Magirus, cocus, dixit:

'Venī hūc, ēversor domī, solivertiātor, fugitive porcelles, s  
et hodiē tibi dirimō vitam.'

Corocotta, porcellus, dixit:

'Sī qua fēcī, sī qua peccāvi, sī qua vāscella pedibus meis

---

1. 1. **Incipit**: '(Here) begins.' **testāmentum**: in our legal phrase, 'the last will and testament.' The Pig's Will, the author of which is unknown, afforded amusement to many generations of Roman schoolboys. **porcellus**, -i, m., 'pig.' 75, a.

2. **M. Grunnius Corocotta**, gen. **Māroī Grunniī Corocottae**, m., 'Marcus Grunter Bristleback.' All the names of the Will are made up, and their meaning, although obvious to a Roman, can be only approximated in translation.

3. **scribendum**: gerundive, 'for writing'; sc. *testāmentum*. **dictō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [frequentative of **dīcō**, 78, a], 1, 'dictate.'

4. **Magirus**, -i, [μάγιστος], m., 'Chef'; Greek word meaning 'cook,' here used as a name. **cocus**, -i, m., 'cook.'

5. **ēversor**, -ōris, [ēvertō], m., 'overturner.' **solivertiātor**, -ōris, [solum, 'ground,' vertō], m., a made-up word, 'rooter.'

6. **hodiē**: adv., 'to-day.' **dirimō**: colloquial present instead of the future.

8. **qua**: 'anything,' lit. 'anythings.' **peccō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, 'transgress,' 'do mischief.' **qua peccāvi**: 'have done any mischief.' **qua**: 'any.' **vāscellum**, -i, n., 'dish.'



cōnfrēgi, rogō, domine coce, vitam petō, concēde rogantī.'

10 Magirus, cocus, dixit :

'Trānsī, puer, affer mihi dē cocinā cultrum, ut hunc porcellum faciam cruentum.'

Porcellus comprehenditur ā famulis, ductus, sub diē xvi kal. lucerninās, ubi abundant cymae, Clibanātō et Pipe-  
15 rātō cōsulibus. Et ut vidit, sē moritūrum esse, hōrae spatium petiit, et cocum rogāvit, ut testāmentum facere posset.

Clāmāvit ad sē suōs parentēs, ut dē cibāriis suis aliquid dimitteret eis. Quī ait :

20 'Patri meō, Verrinō Lārdinō, dō, lēgō dari glandis modios xxx; et mātī meae, Veturinae Scrōfae, dō, lēgō dari Lacōnicae siliginis modios xl; et sorōrī meae Quirinae, in

9. cōnfringō, -ere, cōnfrēgi, -fractus, 3, 'smash,' 'break to pieces.' dominus, -ī, m., 'master.' rogantī: sc. mihi.

11. puer: the cook's helper. cocīna, -ae, f., 'kitchen.' culter, -trī (7, c), m., 'butcher-knife.'

12. cruentus, -a, -um, adj., 'bloody'; here, 'all bloody.'

13. famulus, -ī, m., 'servant.'

14. lucerninus, -a, -um, adj., a made-up word, 'of candle-light'; the expression 'the kalends of candle-light' humorously suggests the beginning of the long winter nights — the season when spring pigs (and turkeys) are in demand. cōyma, -ae, f., 'young cabbage.'

Clibanātus, -ī, [clibanus, 'baking-pan'], m., 'Roastingpan.' Piperātus, -ī, [piper, 'pepper'], m., 'Blackpepper.'

18. olāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, 'call.'

19. dīmitteret eis: 'bestow upon them.' Quī ait: 'And he said.'

20. Verrinus Lārdinus, -ī -ī, [verrēs, 'boar', lārdum, 'bacon'], m., 'Boar Bacon.' lēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, 'appoint.' lēgō dari: 'I bequeath,' lit. 'I appoint to be given'; legal formality and redundancy of expression. glandis: singular where we use the plural; 'of acorns.' modius, -ī, m., 'peck.'

21. Veturina Scrōfa, -ae -ae, 'Dame Hogg.'

22. Lacōnicus, -a, -um, adj. 'Lacedaemonian.' silīgō, -inis, f. 'white wheat.' Quirina, -ae, f., 'Squealy.' in: 'at.'

23. vōtum: 'wedding.' hordeum, -ī, n., 'barley.'

cuius vōtum interesse nōn potuī, dō, lēgō darī hordei modiōs xxx.

‘Et dē meīs visceribus dabō, dōnābō, sūtōribus saetās, rixōribus capitīnās, surdis auriculās, causidicīs et verbōsīs linguam, isiciāriīs femora, cursōribus et vēnātōribus tālōs, latrōnibus ungulās.

‘Et nec nōminandō cocō lēgātō dīmittō popiam et pistillum, quae mēcum attuleram, dē Tebeste ūsque ad Ter-<sup>30</sup> geste; liget sibi collum dē reste.

‘Et volō mihi fierī monumentum, aureīs litterīs scrīptum,

M · GRUNNIUS · COROCOTTA · PORCELLUS

VIXIT · ANNIS · DCCCC XC VIII · ET · S

QUOD · SI · SĒMISSĒM · VĪXISSET

35

MILLE · ANNOS · IMPLESSET

25. **vīscus**, -oris, (13, *e*), n., ‘flesh.’ **sūtōr**, -ōris, m., ‘shoe-maker.’ **saeta**, -ae, f., ‘bristle,’ used by cobblers in the waxed end of their threads.

26. **rixor**, -ōris, m., ‘quarreler.’ **capitīna**, -ae, [caput], f., ‘head-meat,’ suggesting our word “headcheese.” **surdus**, -a, -um, adj., ‘deaf.’ **auricula**, -ae, [diminutive of auris], f., ‘ear’; the hearing of pigs is very keen. **causidicus**, -i, [causa, dīcō], m., ‘pleader.’ **verbōsus**, -i, [verbum], m., ‘talkative person.’

27. **isiciārius**, -i, m., ‘sausage-maker.’ **cursor**, -ōris, [currō], m., ‘runner.’ **tālus**, -i, m., ‘knucklebone.’

28. **ungula**, -ae, f., ‘hoof.’

29. **nec nōminandō**: ‘unspeakable.’ **lēgātum**, -i, n., ‘legacy’; here dative of purpose. **popia**, -ae, f., ‘soup-ladle.’ **pistillum**, -i, n., ‘pestle’ of a mortar.

30. **dō**, etc.: like “from Dan to Beersheba.” **Tebeste**, -is, n., ‘Tebeste,’ a city in Numidia, now Tébessa. **Terbeste**, -is, n., now Trieste.

31. **ligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i, ‘bind.’ **collum**, -i, n., ‘neck.’ **dō**: we should say ‘with.’ **restis**, -is, f., ‘rope’; the cook is exhorted to hang himself.

32. **monumentum**, -i, [moneō; 74, *d*], n., ‘monument.’

34. **S**: for **sēmisse**, abl. **sēmis**, **sēmisse**, m., ‘half.’

'Optimī amātōrēs meī, vel cōsulēs vītae, rogō vōs, ut cum corpore meō bene faciātis, bene condiātis dē bonis condīmentis nucleī, piperis et mellis, ut nōmen meum in  
40 sempiternum nōminētur.

'Meī domini vel cōsobrinī meī, quī in mediō testāmentō interfuistis, iubēte signārī.'

Lārdiō signāvit.

Ofellicus signāvit.

45 Cŷminātus signāvit.

Lūcānicus signāvit.

Tergillus signāvit.

Celsīnus signāvit.

Nūptiālicus signāvit.

50 Explicit testāmentum porcelli, sub diē xvi kal. lucerninās, Clibanātō et Piperātō cōsulibus, fēliciter.

35. quod: 'but.' sēmissem: 'half' of a year.

36. impleō, -ere, implēvi, -ētus, 2, 'fill out'; satirical in respect to the veracity of inscriptions on tombstones.

37. amātor, -ōris, [amō], m., 'lover.' meī: 'of me.' cōn-sulēs: translate as if cōsulentēs; double meaning, 'ye who have regard for (my) life,' 'ye who are fond of good living.'

38. condiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, 4, word of double meaning: 'embalm' from the pig's point of view, 'season' from the point of view of the 'lovers' of roast pig. condiātis: sc. id. dē: 'with.'

39. cōndīmentum, -i, [condiō], n., 'seasoning.' nucleus, -i, m., 'nut-meat.' piper, -eris, n., 'pepper.' mel, mellis, n., 'honey.'

40. sempiternus, -a, -um, [semper], adj., 'everlasting'; neuter as noun, in sempiternum, 'forever and ever.'

41. Meī domini: title of respect; 'good sirs.' cōsobrinus, -i, m., 'cousin.' in mediō testāmentō: i.e. 'at the making of my will.'

42. signō, -ere, -avi, -ētus, [signum], 1, 'affix a seal'; signārī, 'that the seals be affixed.' Each of the seven witnesses of a will was supposed to stamp his signet in the wax covering the ends of the string with which the tablets were tied together (Fig. 203).

43-49. Lārdiō: 'Fatbacon.' Ofellicus: 'Tidbit.' Cŷmi-

## 2. Witticisms attributed to Cicero

*On Lentulus, his son-in-law.*

Cicerō cum Lentulum, generum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, longō gladiō accinctum vīdisset,  
'Quis,' inquit, 'generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?'

*On Piso, a son-in-law, who walked effeminately.*

Cicerō, cum Pisō gener eius mollius incēderet, filia autem concitātius, ait filiae: 'Ambulā tamquam vir!' 5

*On a portrait of his brother Quintus, larger than life.*

Nec Q. Cicerōnī frātrī circā similem mordācitatē pepercit. Nam cum in eā prōvinciā, quam ille rēxerat, vīdisset

**nātus**: 'Youngcabbager.' **Lūcānicus**: 'Porksausager.' **Ter-gillus**: 'Porkrind.' **Celsinus**: 'Porkpie.' **Nūptiālicus**: 'Weddingporker,' suggesting a dish in favor for wedding-feasts.

50. **explicō**, -āre, **explicui**, **explicuitus**, [**ex** + **plicō**], 1, 'unroll,' as a book written in the form of a scroll. **Explicit**: in full, *explicitum est*, lit. 'is unrolled'; we should say, 'Here ends.' The form of expression, while not suitable for the tablets on which wills were written, is appropriate for the scroll-shaped book in which the Pig's Will is represented as being recorded (Figures 166 and 191).

51. **fēlīciter**: 'happily,' a word of good omen, often added at the end of a writing.

2. **accingō**, -cingere, -cīnxi, -cīnotus, [**ad** + **cingō**], 3, 'gird on,' 'arm.'

3. **alligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**ad** + **ligō**], 1, 'tie (to).'

4. **molliter**, [**mollis**], adv., 'lazily.'

5. **concitātē**, [**concitātus**, participle of **concitō**], adv., 'energetically.' **ambulō**, -āre, -āvī, 1, 'walk.' **tamquam**, [**tam** + **quam**], adv., 'just as.' **vir**: '(your) husband (does).'

6. **circā**: 'in the use of'; lit. 'around.' **mordācitas**, -ātis, [**mordāx**], f., 'sharpness' of speech. **pepercit**: sc. *M. Cicero*.

7. **rēxerat**: 'had governed'; Quintus Cicero was governor of the province of Asia (302, c) for three years, before he became a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

clipeātam imāginem eius, ingentibus liniāmentis, ūsque ad pectus ex mōre pictam (erat autem Quintus ipse statūrae  
 10 parvae), ait :

‘Frāter meus dīmidius maior est quam tōtus.’

*On a certain foppishness of Caesar's attire.*

In Caesarem quoque mordācitās Cicerōnis dentēs suōs strīnxit. Nam primum post victōriam Caesaris interrogā-  
 tus, cūr in ēlectiōne partis errāset, respondit: ‘Praecinctūra  
 15 mē dēcēpit,’ iocātus in Caesarem, qui ita togā praecingēbā-  
 tur, ut trahendō laciniam velut mollis incēderet.

*On Caesar's enlargement of the Senate.*

Cicerō aliās facilitātem Caesaris in allēgandō senātū  
 irrisit palam. Nam cum ab hospite suō, P. Malliō, rogārē-

8. **olipeātus**, -a, -um, [**olipeus**], adj., ‘shield-shaped,’ i.e. ‘oval,’ like the *clipeus*. **imāgō**, -inis, f., ‘portrait.’ **liniāmentum**, -i, n., ‘feature.’ **ūsque**, etc.: the painted portrait resembled a bust.

9. **ex mōre**: ‘in the usual fashion.’ **pingō**, -ere, **pīnxī**, **pictus**, 3, ‘paint.’

11. **Frāter meus dīmidius**: ‘the half of my brother.’

12. **dentēs suōs strīnxit**: ‘showed its teeth,’ we should say.

13. **victōriam**: at Pharsalus; Cicero had joined the party of Pompey.

14. **ēlectiō**, -ōnis, [**ēligō**], f., ‘choice.’ **praecinctūra**, -ae, [**praecingō**], f., ‘manner of dress,’ referring to the effeminate way that Caesar draped his toga.

15. **iocor**, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., ‘jest.’ **toga**, -ae, f., ‘toga,’ the principal outer garment worn by Roman men. **praecingō**, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cinctus, [**prae** + **cingō**], 3, ‘gird about.’ The passive is here used in a middle sense; ‘would wrap his toga about him in such a way,’ lit. ‘would so wrap himself up with his toga.’

16. **lacinia**, -ae, f., ‘end’ of a toga; ‘by letting the end of his toga drag,’ instead of carefully tucking it in.

17. **facilitās**, -ātis, [**facilis**], f., ‘ready compliance.’ **allēgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, ‘depute’; ‘in appointing (men to) the Senate.’

18. **P. Mallius**, gen. **Publii Mallii**, m.; a friend of Cicero.

tur, ut decuriōnātum prīvignō eius expediret, assistente frequentiā, dixit:

‘Rōmae, si vīs, habēbit; Pompeiis difficile est.’

20

*A play upon words.*

Nē illa quidem (ōrātōribus conveniunt), quae Cicerōnī aliquando, sed nōn in agendō, exciderunt, ut dixit, cum is candidātus, quī cocī filius habēbatur, cōram eō suffrāgium ab aliō peteret:

25

‘Ego, quoque, tibi favēbō.’

*To Vatinius, Caesar's friend, anticipating a compliment.*

Vatinius, pedibus aeger, cum vellet vidēri commodiōris valētūdinis factus et diceret, sē iam bina milia ambulāre:

‘Diēs enim,’ inquit Cicero, ‘longiōrēs sunt.’

30

19. **decuriōnātus**, -ūs, m., ‘membership in a town council,’ probably at Pompeii, near which Cicero had a countryseat. **prīvignus**, -ī, m., ‘step-son.’ **expediret**: ‘help to secure.’

20. **frequentia**, -ae, [frequentia], f., ‘crowd.’

21. **Rōmae**: locative. 146. **Pompeii**: ‘at Pompeii.’ 145, b.

22. **illa**: ‘those (sayings).’ **ōrātōribus conveniunt**: ‘are proper for an orator.’ **Cicerōnī** — **exciderunt**: ‘fell from the lips of Cicero.’ 109, b.

23. **in agendō**: ‘while arguing’ in court.

24. **candidātus**, -ī, [candidus, ‘white’], m., ‘candidate.’ **cocī**: gen. of **cocus**, ‘cook,’ pronounced as if spelled **quoquus**. **cōram**: here a preposition with the ablative; ‘in his presence.’

26. **quoque**: either the adverb, or the vocative of **quoquus** = **cocus**.

27. **pedibus aeger**: Vatinius had the gout.

28. **commodiōris valētūdinis factus** [esse]: ‘to have improved in health,’ lit. ‘to have become of better health.’ **bina milia** [passuum]: ‘two miles (a day).’

30. **enim**: ‘(Of course), for.’

*On the consulship of Vatinius, which lasted a few days.*

In cōsulātū Vatīnii, quem paucīs diēbus gessit, notābilis Cicerōnis urbānitās circumferēbātur:

'Magnum ostentum,' inquit, 'annō Vatīnii factum est, quod illō cōsulātū nec brūma nec vēr nec aestās nec au-  
35 tumnus fuit.'

Querentī deinde Vatīniō, quod gravātus esset, domum ad sē infirmātum venire, respondit:

'Volui in cōsulātū tuō venīre, sed nox mē comprehendit.'

*On the consulship of Caninius Rebilus, formerly a lieutenant of Caesar, which lasted only a few hours, at the end of 45 B.C.*

40 'Hōc cōsecūtus est Rebilus, ut quaereretur, quibus cōsulibus cōsul fuerit.'

'Vigilantem habēmus cōsulem Canīnium, qui in cōsulātū suō somnum nōn vidit.'

*Retorts for persons who lie about their age.*

Redarguimus interim apertē, ut Cicerō Vibium Curium,  
45 multum dē annīs aetātis suae mentientem:

31. notābilis, -e, [nota], adj., 'remarkable.'

32. urbānitās, -ātis, [urbānus], f., 'pleasantry'; trans. 'witticism.' circumferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [circum + ferō], 3, 'carry around'; here 'circulate.'

33. ostentum, -i, [ostendō], n., 'marvel.'

36. gravātus esset: 'because (as he said, Cicero) had been unwilling.' domum ad sē: 'to his house to (see) him.'

37. infirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [infirmus], 1, 'enfeeble.' infirmātum: 'when he was laid up.'

40. ut quaereretur: 'that the question should be raised.' quibus cōsulibus: 'in whose consulship.'

42. vigilāns, -antis [vigilō, 'keep awake'], adj. of double meaning, 'watchful' and 'wakeful.'

44. redarguō, -ere, -uī, 3, 'show up'; 'we show up (people).' interim: 'sometimes.' Vibius Curius, -ī -ī, m., an acquaintance of Cicero's; sc. redarguit.

'Tum ergō, cum ūnā declāmābāmus, nōn erās nātus!'

Interim et simulātā assēnsiōne, ut idem, Fabiā Dolābellae dicente *trīgintā sē annōs habēre*,

'Vērum est,' inquit, 'nam hōc illam iam vīgintī annīs audiō!'

50

*On a man from Africa, who wished to pass as an aristocrat.*

Octāvius, qui nātū nōbilis vidēbātur, Cicerōnī recitanti ait: 'Nōn audiō, quae dīcis.'

Ille respondit: 'Certē solēbās bene forātās habēre aurēs!'

Hōc eō dictum, quia Octāvius Libys oriundus dicēbātur, quibus mōs est aurem forāre.

55

### 3. Legal Maxims

*Fundamental maxims of right conduct.*

Iūris praecepta sunt haec: honestē vivere, alterum nōn laedere, suum cuique tribuere.

*Definition of justice.*

Iūstitia est cōnstāns et perpetua voluntās iūs suum cuique tribuendī.

45. *mentior*, -īrī, -ītus, 4, dep., 'lie.'

46. *declāmō*, -āre, etc., [*clā* + *āmō*], 1, 'practice declamation.'

47. *assēnsiō*, -ōnis, f., 'agreement.' *Idem*: Cicero; subject of *inquit*. *Fabiā*, -ae, f., wife of Dolabella. *Dolābella*, -ae, m., P. Cornelius Dolabella, who was born in 70 B.C., and was prominent in Roman politics at the time of the Civil War.

48. *trīgintā*, etc.: 'that she was thirty years old.'

49. *hōc*, etc.: sc. *dicere*; 'I've been hearing her say that.'

53. *forō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, 'bore'; of the ear, 'pierce.'

54. *Libys*, -yos, m., 'a Libyan'; 'was said to be a Libyan by birth.'

55. *quibus*: *et eis*, the Libyans.

3. 1. *honestō*, [*honōs*]: adv., 'honorably.'

2. *suum cuique*: 'to each what belongs to him.'

3. *cōnstāns*, -tis, adj., 'unvarying.' *voluntās*: 'determination.'

*iūs suum cuique*: 'to each his due.'

4. *tribuendī*: translate as if an infinitive.



*The principal is responsible for his agent.*

5 Qui facit per alium, facit per sē.

*The plea, "I did not know the law," is not valid.*

Ignōrantia lēgis nēminem excūsat.

*We cannot confer upon another ampler rights than we ourselves possess.*

Nēmō plūs iūris in alium trānsferre potest quam ipse habet.

*A single crime, a single punishment.*

Nēmō dēbet bis pūniri prō ūnō dēlictō.

*In heated argument men lose sight of the truth.*

10 Nimium altercandō vērītās āmittitur.

#### 4. Fables

*In union lies safety; in discord, weakness.*

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in maximā concordīā, et sic ab omnī ferārū incursiōne tūti erant. Sed discidiō inter illōs ortō, singuli ā feris petiti et laniāti sunt.

Fābula docet, quantum bonī sit in concordīā.

*Circumstances may make cowards brave.*

5 Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī male-

6. ignōrantia, -ae, f., 'ignorance.'

9. pūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, 4, 'punish.'

10. altercor, -āri, -ātus, [alter], 1, dep., 'dispute.' vērītās, -ātis, [vērūs], f., 'truth.'

4. 1. prātum, -ī, n., 'meadow.' pāscor, -ī, pāstus, 3, dep., 'feed.' concordia, -ae, f., 'harmony.'

3. discidium, -ī, n., 'discord.' laniō, -āre, etc., 1, 'tear to pieces.'

4. fābula, -ae, f., 'fable.'

5. haedus, -ī, m., 'kid.' lupus, -ī, m., 'wolf.' maledicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, 3, 'rail at.'

dixit. Cui lupus, 'Nōn tū,' inquit, 'sed tēctum mihi male-dicit.'

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

*The dog in the manger.*

Canis iacēbat in praesēpī bovēsque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, 'Quanta ista,' inquit, 'invidia 10 est, quod nōn pateris, ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse capere nec possis!

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

*"Who will put the bell on the cat?"*

Mūres aliquando habuērunt cōsiliū, quō modō sibi ā fēle cavērent. Multis aliis prōpositis, omnibus placuit, ut 15 eī tintinnābulum annexerētur; sic enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs quaererētur, quī fēli tintinnābulum annexeretur, nēmō re-pertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācēs, sed in 20 ipsō periculō timidōs.

*He who urges others on, shares the responsibility.*

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, 'Nē mē,' inquit, 'interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quicquam habeō praeter hanc tubam.'

---

9. **canis**, -is, m., 'dog.'      **praesēpe**, -is, n., 'manger.'      **lātrō**, -āre, -āvī, 1, 'bark.'

10. **arceo**, -āre, -uī, 2, 'keep (from).'      **invidia**, -ae, f., 'meanness.'

11. **vescor**, -ī, 3, dep., 'eat.'

13. **indolēs**, -is, f., 'true nature.'

14. **mūs**, **mūris**, m., 'mouse.'

15. **fēlis**, -is, f., 'cat.'

16. **tintinnābulum**, -ī, n., 'bell.'      **annectō**, -nectere, -nexuī, -nexus, 3, 'tie (to).'      **sonitus**, -ūs, m., 'sound.'

20. **suādeō**, -āre, -sī, 2, 'advise.'

22. **tubicen**, -inis, m., 'trumpeter.'

25 At hostēs, 'Propter hōc ipsum,' inquit, 'tē interimē-  
mus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī sis imperitus, aliōs ad  
pugnam incitāre solēs.'

Fābula docet, nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs, sed  
etiam eōs, quī aliōs ad male faciendum irritent.

### 5. The First Psalm

Beātus vir, quī nōn abiit in cōnsiliō impiōrum,

et in viā peccātōrum nōn stetit,

et in cathedrā pestilentiae nōn sedit;

sed in lēge Domini voluntās eius,

5 et in lēge eius meditābitur diē ac nocte.

Et erit tamquam lignum, quod plantātum est secus dēcur-  
sūs aquārum,

quod fructum suum dabit in tempore suō,

et folium eius nōn dēfluēt,

et omnia, quaecumque faciet, prosperābuntur.

25. inquit: from *inquam*; 'say.' interimō, -imere, -ēmī,  
-ēptus, 3, 'kill.'

28. maleficus, -ī, m, 'evildoer.'

29. irritō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, 'stir up.'

5. 1. Beātus, -a, -um, adj., 'happy,' 'blessed.' impius, -a, -um,  
[in- + pius], adj., 'wicked,' 'ungodly'; as a noun, impius, -ī, m.,  
'wicked man.'

2. peccātor, -ōris, [peccō], m., 'sinner.'

3. cathedra, -ae, [καθέδρα], f., 'chair,' 'seat.' pestilentia, -ae,  
[pestilēns, 'unwholesome'], f., 'plague'; here 'they that are a plague,'  
'the scornful.' sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sup. sessum, 2, 'sit.'

4. Dominus, -ī, m., 'Lord.' voluntās: sc. est.

5. meditator, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., 'reflect,' 'meditate.'

6. lignum, -ī, n., 'wood,' 'tree.' plantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
[planta, 'a plant'], 1, 'plant.' secus, prep., 'along,' 'beside.'  
dēcursus, -ūs, [dēcurrō], m., 'course' of a brook or stream, 'river.'

8. folium, -ī, n., 'leaf.' dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, [dē + fluō], 3,  
'flow away'; of a leaf, 'fade,' 'wither.'

9. prosperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prosper, 'favorable'], 1, 'succeed,'  
'prosper.'

Nōn sic impiī, nōn sic ; 10  
 sed tamquam pulvis, quem prōicit ventus ā faciē terrae.  
 Ideō nōn resurgent impiī in iūdiō,  
 neque peccātōrēs in conciliō iūstōrum ;  
 quoniam nōvit Dominus viam iūstōrum,  
 et iter impiōrum peribit. 15

### 6. The Twenty-third Psalm

Dominus regit mē, et nihil mihi deerit.  
 In locō pāscuae ibi mē collocāvit ;  
 super aquam refectiōnis ēducāvit mē,  
 animam meam convertit.  
 Dēdūxit mē super sēmītās iūstītie propter nōmen suum. ,  
 Nam, et si ambulāverō in mediō umbræ mortis,  
 nōn timēbō mala, quoniam tu mēcum es :  
 virga tua et baculus tuus, ipsa mē cōsōlāta sunt.  
 Parāsti in cōspectū meō mēnsam, adversus eōs qui tribu-  
 lant mē :

---

10. *impiī* : sc. *sunt*.

11. *faciēs*, -ēī, f., 'face.'

12. *resurgō*, -ere, *resurrēxi*, *resurrēctus*, [re- + *surgō*], 3, 'rise again,' 'stand.'

13. *iūstus*, -ī, [*iūstus*, -a, -um], m., 'just man,' 'righteous man.'

6. 2. *pāscua*, -ae, f., 'pasturage,' 'pasture.'

3. *refectiō*, -ōnis, [*reficiō*], f., 'refreshing.' *ēducō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + *ducō*, from *dux*], 1, 'rear'; 'support,' 'nourish.'

5. *iūstītie*: 'righteousness.'

6. *et*: 'even.' *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, 1, 'walk.' *umbra*, -ae, f., 'shadow.'

8. *virga*, -ae, f., a slender branch, 'rod.' *baculus*, -ī, m., 'staff.'  
*ipsa*: neuter plural as referring to both *virga* and *baculus* (cf. 163, c); emphatic 'they.'

9. *mēnsa*, -ae, f., 'table.' *tribulō*, -āre, 1, 'thresh'; 'afflict,' 'torment.'

10. impinguāstī in oleō caput meum,  
 et calix meus inēbriāns quam praeclārus est!  
 Et misericordia tua subsequētur mē omnibus diēbus vitae  
 meae,  
 et ut inhabitem in domō Dominī in longitūdinem diērum.
- 

10. **impinguō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + **pinguis**], 1, 'make fat';  
 'anoint.' **in**: 'with.' **oleum**, -ī, n., 'oil' of the olive.

11. **calix**, -icis, m., 'cup.' **inēbriō**, -āre, 1, 'fill full'; 'over-  
 flow.' **praeclārus**, -a, -um, [prae + **clārus**], adj., 'glorious,'  
 'splendid.'

13. **inhabitō**, -āre, -āvī, [in + **habitō**], 1, 'dwell in,' 'dwell.'  
**in longitūdinem diērum**: 'forever.'

## A COMPANION TO CAESAR

Essentials of Latin Grammar for the Study of	
Caesar . . . . .	§§ 1-243
Gaius Julius Caesar . . . . .	§§ 244-280
The Geography of Caesar's Commentaries . . . . .	§§ 281-306
The Roman Art of War in Caesar's Time . . . . .	§§ 307-351

---



FIGURE 151. — The Goddess of Victory bearing a Gallic war trumpet, in commemoration of a victory over Gauls. From a relief at Pompeii.

---



# ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR FOR THE STUDY OF CAESAR

## INFLECTIONS

### NOUNS

1. The Latin language has no article. In translating into English, the definite article *the*, or the indefinite article *a*, should be supplied with nouns in the different cases as the sense may require.

#### FIRST DECLENSION

2. *a.* The Nominative Singular of nouns of the First Declension ends in *-ā*.

*b.* Nouns of the First Declension are nearly all of the Feminine Gender; a few nouns referring to males are masculine, as *nauta*, *sailor* (III. 9); *Cotta*, a man's name (C. I. 6).

3. An example of the First Declension is: *via* (stem *viā-*), *F.*, *way* (I. 9):

SINGULAR		
CASE	MEANING	TERMINATION
Nom. <i>viā</i>	<i>a way, the way</i>	<i>-ā</i>
Gen. <i>viāe</i>	<i>of a way, of the way</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Dat. <i>viāe</i>	<i>to or for a way, or the way</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Acc. <i>viām</i>	<i>a way, the way</i>	<i>-am</i>
Voc. <i>viā</i>	<i>O way!</i>	<i>-ā</i>
Abl. <i>viā</i>	<i>from, by, in a way or the way</i>	<i>-ā</i>
PLURAL		
Nom. <i>viāe</i>	<i>ways, the ways</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Gen. <i>viārum</i>	<i>of ways, of the ways</i>	<i>-arum</i>
Dat. <i>viāis</i>	<i>to or for ways, or the ways</i>	<i>-is</i>
Acc. <i>viās</i>	<i>ways, the ways</i>	<i>-as</i>
Voc. <i>viāe</i>	<i>O ways!</i>	<i>-ae</i>
Abl. <i>viāis</i>	<i>from, by, in ways, or the ways</i>	<i>-is</i>

4. *a.* Besides the six cases of the First Declension there is a rare Locative Case, of which the Singular is exactly like the Genitive, as *Samarobrivae*, at *Samarobriva* (V. 24).

*b.* The Greek Name *Achillās* (C. III. 104) is of the First Declension, and declined as follows: *Nom. Achillās*, *Gen. Achillae*, *Dat. Achillae*, *Acc. Achillam*, *Voc. Achillā* or *Achilla*, *Abl. Achillā*.



## SECOND DECLENSION

5. *a.* The Nominative Singular of the Second Declension ends in **-um** for Neuter Nouns and **-us**, **-er**, **-ir** for all others.

*b.* Nouns of the Second Declension in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir** are generally Masculine. Feminine are most names of Trees and Plants, as **fāgus**, *bēech* (V. 12), and most names of Countries, Islands, and Cities, as **Aegyptus**, *Egypt* (C. III. 104).

6. *a.* Examples of Nouns of the Second Declension in **-us** and **-um** are **lēgātus** (I. 7) and **bellum** (I. 1):

**lēgātus** (stem **lēgāto-**), *m.*,  
*envoy, lieutenant*

**bellum** (stem **bello-**), *n.*, *war*

## SINGULAR

	TERMINATION		TERMINATION
<i>Nom.</i> <b>lēgātus</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>bellum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>lēgātī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>bellī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>lēgātō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>bellō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>lēgātum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>bellum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>lēgāte</b>	<b>-e</b>	<b>bellum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>lēgātō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>bellō</b>	<b>-ō</b>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> <b>lēgātī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>bella</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>lēgātōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>	<b>bellōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>lēgātīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>lēgātōs</b>	<b>-ōs</b>	<b>bella</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>lēgātī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>bella</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>lēgātīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>bellīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

*b.* Caesar uses the Neuter **vulgus** in the Nominative (IV. 5), Genitive **vulgī** (I. 20), and the Accusative **vulgus** (I. 46).

*c.* Caesar uses **locus**, *-ī, m.*, *place*, with a Neuter Plural declined thus: *Nom. loca, Gen. locōrum, Dat. locīs, Acc. loca, Abl. locīs.*

*d.* The Second Declension has a rare Locative Case, of which the Singular is like the Genitive; as **Cavillōnī**, *at Cavillonum* (VII. 90).

7. *a.* Examples of Nouns of the Second Declension in **-er** and **-ir** are **puer**, *boy* (I. 29), **ager**, *field* (I. 4), and **vir**, *man* (II. 25):

**puer** (stem **puero-**), *m.*, *boy*      **ager** (stem **agro-**), *m.*, *field*      **vir** (stem **viro-**), *m.*, *man*

## SINGULAR

			TERMINATION
<i>Nom.</i> <b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	<b>vir</b>	—
<i>Gen.</i> <b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>puerum</b>	<b>agrum</b>	<b>virum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	<b>vir</b>	—
<i>Abl.</i> <b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>-ō</b>

PLURAL			TERMINATION	
<i>Nom.</i>	pueri	agri	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	pueri	agri	virī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

b. Declined like **puer** are **socer**, *m.*, *father-in-law* (I. 12), **gener**, *m.*, *son-in-law* (V. 56), **vesper**, *m.*, *evening* (I. 26), **liberī**, *m.*, plural only, *children* (I. 11), and compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, as **signifer**, *standard-bearer* (II. 25).

c. Like **ager** is **arbitr**, *-trī, m.*, *referee* (V. 1); also **fabr**, *-brī, m.*, *mechanic*, *Gen.* Plural generally **fabrum** (V. 11), **administer**, *-trī, m.*, *helper* (VI. 16), **cultur**, *-trī, m.*, *butcher-knife* (p. 464).

8. a. In Caesar's time nouns of the Second Declension in **-ius** and **-ium** formed the Genitive Singular in **-ī** (not **-īī**), retaining the accent on the penult of words of more than two syllables even when this was short; thus, **filī**, **Valerī**, **negōtī**, **impe'rī**. Afterwards Common Nouns in **-ius**, and many Proper Names in **-ius**, were written with the Genitive in **-īī**, and for the sake of consistency such Genitives are frequently printed with **-īī** to-day, as **cōnsiliī** (I. 21), **Valerīī** (I. 47).

b. The Genitive of **Pompeius** is written with **-ī**, **Pompe'ī** (VII. 6, C. III. 84), as are also the Genitives of some other Proper Names in **-ius**.

c. The Vocative of **filius** and of Proper Names in **-ius** ends in **-ī** (not **-īe**), the accent remaining on the penult of vocatives containing more than two syllables; thus: **Pompe'ī** (C. III. 87).

d. The declension of **deus**, *m.*, *god* (I. 12), is irregular:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	deus	di, dei, dii	
Gen.	dei	deōrum, deum	
Dat.	deō	dis, deis, diis	
Acc.	deum	deōs	
Voc.	deus	di, dei, dii	
Abl.	deō	dis, deis, diis	

### THIRD DECLENSION

9. In the Third Declension are comprised nouns with stems ending in a consonant (mute stems, liquid stems, nasal stems, and **-s** stems), nouns with stems ending in **-ī**, nouns with mixed stems, and nouns of irregular declension. The stem rarely appears unchanged in the Nominative, but may usually be recognized in the Genitive.

10. *a.* Mute Stems may end in a Labial, *p, b*; in a Guttural, *c, g*; or in a Dental, *t, d*. In Guttural Stems the *-s* of the case ending in the Nominative unites with the *c* or *g* of the stem, producing *x*; thus *dux* for *duc-s*, in which the stem is *duc-*, the termination *-s*; and *rēx* for *rēg-s*.

*b.* Examples of nouns with mute stems are *prīnceps* (I. 13), *rēx* (I. 31), *pēs* (I. 8), *mīles* (I. 7), *virtūs* (I. 1) and *caput* (I. 29):

*prīnceps* (stem in oblique cases *prīncip-*), *m.*, *leader*, *leading man*     *rēx* (stem *rēg-*), *m.*, *king*     *pēs* (stem in oblique cases *ped-*), *m.*, *foot*

SINGULAR			TERMINATION	
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	rēx	pēs	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	prīncipis	rēgis	pedis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	prīncipi	rēgi	pedi	-i
<i>Acc.</i>	prīncipem	rēgem	pedem	-em
<i>Voc.</i>	prīnceps	rēx	pēs	-s
<i>Abl.</i>	prīncipe	rēge	pede	-e

PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	principēs	rēgēs	pedēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	principum	rēgum	pedum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	principibus	rēgibus	pedibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	principēs	rēgēs	pedēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	principēs	rēgēs	pedēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	principibus	rēgibus	pedibus	-ibus

*mīles* (stem in oblique cases *mīlit-*), *m.*, *soldier*     *virtūs* (stem in oblique cases *virtūt-*), *f.*, *valor, virtue*     *caput* (stem in oblique cases *capit-*), *n.*, *head*

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīliti</i>	<i>virtūti</i>	<i>capiti</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>virtutem</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>virtute</i>	<i>capite</i>

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>virtutum</i>	<i>capitum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

*c.* Like *rēx* are declined Gallic Proper Names in *-rix*, as, in Singular only, *Orgetorix*, *Gen. Orgetorigis* (I. 2), and *Dumnorix*,

-*rigis* (I. 3), and, in Plural only, *Biturigēs*, *Biturigum* (I. 18); also *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*, *leader* (I. 13), *pāx*, *pācis*, *f.*, *peace* (I. 3), *pix*, *picis*, *f.*, *pitch* (VII. 22), and *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f.*, *voice*, *utterance* (I. 32).

d. Like *miles* in Declension are *eques*, *equeis*, *m.*, *horseman* (I. 15), *pedes*, *peditis*, *m.*, *foot-soldier* (I. 42); and *caespes*, *m.*, *sod* (III. 25), *comes*, *m.*, *companion* (VI. 30), *hospes*, *m.*, *guest-friend* (I. 53), *stipes*, *m.*, *tree-trunk* (VII. 73).

e. *Quies*, *f.*, *repose* (V. 40), is declined *quies*, *quiesis*, *quiesci*, etc.; but *ariēs*, *m.*, *battering-ram* (II. 32), *abiēs*, *f.*, *fir-tree* (V. 12), *interpres*, *m.*, *interpreter* (I. 19), *seges*, *f.*, *grainfield* (VI. 36) have *-ētis* in the Genitive and are declined *ariēs*, *arietis*, *arieti*, *arietem*, etc.

f. Like *virtus* are *salūs*, *salūtis*, *f.*, in Singular only, *safety* (I. 27), *servitūs*, *servitūtis*, *f.*, *slavery* (I. 11); here also belong the Feminine Nouns whose Nominative ends in *-tās*, as *civitas*, *civitātis*, *state* (I. 2), *aestas*, *aestātis*, *summer* (I. 54).

g. Lacking the Dental in the Nominative are the Neuters *cor*, *cordis*, *heart* (VI. 19), and *lac*, *lactis*, *milk* (IV. 1).

11. a. Liquid stems end in -l or -r.

b. Examples of nouns with liquid stems are *cōnsul* (I. 2), *victor* (I. 31) and *pater* (I. 3):

*cōnsul* (stem *cōnsul-*), *m.*, *victor* (stem *victōr-*), *m.*, *pater* (stem *patr-*),  
*consul* *victor* *m., father*

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>pater</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōnsulis</i>	<i>victōris</i>	<i>patris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōnsuli</i>	<i>victōri</i>	<i>patri</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōnsulem</i>	<i>victōrem</i>	<i>patrem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>pater</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōnsule</i>	<i>victōre</i>	<i>patre</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulūm</i>	<i>victōrūm</i>	<i>patrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>

c. Like *consul* are *sōl*, *sōlis*, *m.*, *sun* (I. 1), *exsul*, *exsulis*, *m.*, *exile* (V. 55), *sāl*, *salis*, *m.*, *salt* (C. II. 37); also some -r stems, as *Caesar*, *Caesaris*, *m.*, *Caesar* (19, c); *agger*, *aggeris*, *m.*, *mound* (II. 20), *ānser*, *-eris*, *m.*, *goose* (V. 12), *mulier*, *mulieris*, *f.*, *woman* (I. 29), *arbor*, *arboris*, *f.*, *tree* (II. 17).

d. Like **victor** are declined Masculine nouns of Agency in **-tor**, as **mercātor**, **-ōris**, *trader* (I. 1), **dēprecātor**, **-ōris**, *intercessor* (I. 9); and Abstract nouns in **-or**, as **timor**, **-ōris**, *fear* (I. 22).

e. Like **pater** are declined **frāter**, **frātris**, *m., brother* (I. 3), and **māter**, **mātris**, *F., mother* (I. 18).

12. a. Nasal Stems end in **-n**, excepting in **hiems**, **hiemis**, *F., winter* (IV. 1), of which the stem ends in **-m**.

b. Examples are **sermō** (V. 37), **homō** (I. 2) and **nōmen** (I. 13):

<b>sermō</b> (stem <b>sermōn-</b> ), <i>M., conversation</i>	<b>homō</b> (stem <b>homin-</b> ), <i>M., man</i>	<b>nōmen</b> (stem <b>nomīn-</b> ), <i>N., name</i>
---	--	--

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>sermō</b>	<b>homō</b>	<b>nōmen</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>sermōnis</b>	<b>hominis</b>	<b>nōminis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sermōni</b>	<b>hominī</b>	<b>nōminī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sermōnem</b>	<b>hominem</b>	<b>nōmen</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>sermō</b>	<b>homō</b>	<b>nōmen</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>sermōne</b>	<b>homine</b>	<b>nōmine</b>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>sermōnēs</b>	<b>hominēs</b>	<b>nōmina</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>sermōnum</b>	<b>hominum</b>	<b>nōminum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sermōnibus</b>	<b>hominibus</b>	<b>nōminibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sermōnēs</b>	<b>hominēs</b>	<b>nōmina</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>sermōnēs</b>	<b>hominēs</b>	<b>nōmina</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>sermōnibus</b>	<b>hominibus</b>	<b>nōminibus</b>

c. Like **sermō** are declined **harpagō**, **harpagōnis**, *M., grappling-hook* (VII. 81); **latrō**, **latrōnis**, *M., bandit* (III. 17); **Dīvicō**, **Dīvicōnis**, *M.*, (I. 13; in Singular only); and nouns in **-iō**, as **suspiciō**, **suspiciōnis**, *F., suspicion* (I. 4), **coniūrātiō**, **-ōnis**, *F., league* (I. 2), **Cūriō**, **Cūriōnis**, *M.*, (C. II. 3; in Singular only).

d. Like **homō** are declined **ōrdō**, **ōrdinis**, *M., rank* (I. 40); **necessitūdō**, **-inis**, *F., close connection* (I. 43); **testūdō**, **testūdinis**, *F., testudo* (II. 6); **nēmō**, *Dat. nēmīnī*, *Acc. nēmīnem* (the place of the *Gen.* and *Abl.*, and sometimes the *Dat.*, being supplied by *Gen. nūllius*, *Abl. nūllō*, *Dat. nūllī*, from *nūllus*), *M., no one*; **Apollō**, **Apollinis**, *M.*, (VI. 17, in Singular only); **sōlitūdō**, **sōlitūdinis**, *F., wilderness* (IV. 18); and **virgō**, **-inis**, *F., maiden* (C. II. 4).

e. Like **nōmen** are declined other Neuters in **-men**, as **fūmen**, **fūminis**, *river* (I. 1), **agmen**, **agminis**, *column* (I. 15), and **certāmen**, **-inis**, *contest* (III. 14).

13. a. The **-s-** of **-s** Stems becomes **r** between vowels in the oblique cases. In **honōs**, **-r** generally appears also in the Nominative; **-r** is

always found in the Nominative of **rāmōr** and many other nouns of this class.

b. Examples of nouns with **-s** stems are **mōs** (I. 4), **honōs** (VI. 13), or **honor**, and **genus** (I. 48) :

<b>mōs</b> (oblique stem <b>mōr-</b> ), <i>M., custom</i>	<b>honōs, honor</b> (oblique stem <b>honōr-</b> ), <i>M., honor</i>	<b>genus</b> (oblique stem <b>gener-</b> ), <i>N., race</i>
SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i> <b>mōs</b>	<b>honōs</b> or <b>honor</b>	<b>genus</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>mōris</b>	<b>honōris</b>	<b>generis</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>mōri</b>	<b>honōri</b>	<b>generi</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>mōrem</b>	<b>honōrem</b>	<b>genus</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>mōs</b>	<b>honor</b>	<b>genus</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>mōre</b>	<b>honōre</b>	<b>genere</b>
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> <b>mōrēs</b>	<b>honōrēs</b>	<b>genera</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>mōrum</b>	<b>honōrum</b>	<b>generum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>mōribus</b>	<b>honōribus</b>	<b>generibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>mōrēs</b>	<b>honōrēs</b>	<b>genera</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>mōrēs</b>	<b>honōrēs</b>	<b>genera</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>mōribus</b>	<b>honōribus</b>	<b>generibus</b>

c. Like **mōs** is declined **flōs**, *M., flower* (VII. 73).

d. Like **honor** are **soror**, **sorōris**, *F., sister* (I. 18), **uxor**, **uxōris**, *F., wife* (I. 18).

e. Like **genus** are declined the Neuters **fūnus**, **fūneris**, *funeral* (VI. 19); **latus**, **lateris**, *side* (I. 25); **mūnus**, **mūneris**, *gift* (I. 43); **onus**, **oneris**, *burden, load* (II. 30); **opus**, **operis**, *work* (I. 8); **scelus**, **sceleris**, *crime* (I. 14); **vulnus**, **vulneris**, *wound* (I. 25), etc.

f. Similar in declension to **genus**, but having a different vowel before the Endings of the Oblique Cases, are the Neuters **corpus**, **corporis**, *body* (I. 25); **dēdecus**, **-oris**, *disgrace* (IV. 25); **facinus**, **-oris**, *evil deed* (I. 40); **frigus**, **frigoris**, *cold* (I. 16); **litus**, **litoris**, *shore* (IV. 23); **pectus**, **pectoris**, *breast* (VII. 47); **pecus**, **pecoris**, *cattle* (III. 29); **tempus**, **temporis**, *time* (I. 16); and **rōbur**, **rōboris**, *oak* (III. 13).

g. Among other Nouns of the Third Declension with Nominative in **-s** and Genitive in **-ris** are the Masculine **pulvis**, **pulveris**, *dust* (*Acc.* **pulverem**, IV. 32), **lepus**, **leporis**, *hare* (*Acc.* **leporē**, V. 12), **mās**, **maris**, *male* (*Gen.* VI. 26); and the Neuters **iūs**, **iūris** (I. 4; *Nom.* Plural **iūra**, VI. 13), **aes**, **aeris**, *copper* (IV. 31), **crūs**, **crūris**, *leg* (VI. 27), and **ōs**, **ōris**, *mouth, face* (V. 35; *Acc.* Plural **ōra**, VI. 39).

h. **iūs iūrandum**, *N., oath* (I. 3), is thus declined, in the Singular :

*Nom.* iūs iūrandum, *Gen.* iūris iūrandi, *Dat.* iūri iūrandō, *Acc.* iūs iūrandum, *Abl.* iūre iūrandō.

14. a. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine nouns with -i Stems ends ordinarily in -is, the Genitive Plural always in -ium.

b. Examples of Masculine and Feminine -i Stems with Nominative Singular in -is are *turris* (II. 30), *ignis* (I. 4) and *hostis* (I. 21):

*turris* (stem *turri-*), *F.*, *tower*      *ignis* (stem *igni-*), *M.*, *fire*      *hostis* (stem *hosti-*), *C.*, *enemy*

## SINGULAR

				TERMINATION
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	-is
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>igni</i>	<i>hosti</i>	-i
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turrim</i> or -em	<i>ignem</i>	<i>hostem</i>	-im, -em
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	-is
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turri</i> or -e	<i>igni</i> or -e	<i>hoste</i>	-e, -i

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>hostes</i>	-es
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turrium</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turris</i> or -es	<i>ignes</i> or -es	<i>hostis</i> or -es	-is, -es
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turres</i>	<i>ignes</i>	<i>hostes</i>	-es
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	-ibus

c. Like *turris*, but in the Singular only, is *Sabis*, -is, *Acc.* -im, *M.*, the *Sambre* (II. 16); also *Tamesis*, -is, *Acc.* -im, *M.*, the *Thames* (V. 11, 18).

15. a. The Nominative Singular of some nouns with -i Stems ends in -es, of a few others in -er. Examples are *caedēs* (V. 47) and *linter* (I. 12):

*caedēs* (stem *caedi-*), *F.*, *slaughter*

*linter* (stem *lintri-*), *F.*, *skiff*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>		<i>linter</i>	<i>lintrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>caedium</i>		<i>lintris</i>	<i>lintrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>caedi</i>	<i>caedibus</i>		<i>lintri</i>	<i>lintribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>caedēs</i> or -is		<i>lintrem</i>	<i>lintrēs, -is</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>caedēa</i>	<i>caedēs</i>		<i>linter</i>	<i>lintrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>caedibus</i>		<i>lintri</i> or -e	<i>lintribus</i>

b. Like *caedēs* are declined the Feminine Nouns *cautēs*, *cautis*, jagged rock (III. 13), *mōlēs*, *mōlis*, dike (III. 12), *rūpēs*, -is, cliff (II. 29), *sēdēs*, -is, abode (I. 31), *saepēs*, -is, hedge (II. 17), *alcēs*, -is, moose (VI. 27); also *famēs*, -is, hunger (I. 28), which, however, has *famē* in the Ablative Singular (VII. 20).

c. Like *linter* is *imber*, *imbris*, *M.*, rainstorm (III. 29).

16. *a.* The Nominative Singular of Neuter nouns with -i Stems ends in -e, -al, and -ar; the Ablative Singular ends in -i, the Genitive Plural in -ium.

*b.* Examples of neuter nouns with -i Stems are **mare** (III. 7) and **animal** (VI. 17):

**mare** (stem *mar-*), *N.*, **animal** (stem *animāl-*), *N.*,  
*sea* *animal*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS	
					SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>animālia</b>	-e or wanting	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>maris</b>	<b>marium</b>	<b>animālis</b>	<b>animālīum</b>	-is	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>animālībus</b>	-ī	-ībus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>animālia</b>	-e or wanting	-ia
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>mare</b>	<b>maria</b>	<b>animal</b>	<b>animālia</b>	-e or wanting	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>marī</b>	<b>maribus</b>	<b>animālī</b>	<b>animālībus</b>	-ī	-ībus

*c.* **Bibracte**, *N.*, is declined thus: *Nom.* **Bibracte**, *Gen.* **Bibractis**, *Dat.* **Bibractī**, *Acc.* **Bibracte**, *Abl.* **Bibracte**; no Plural.

*d.* Like **animal** is **vectigal**, -*ālīs* (I. 18).

17. *a.* The declension of nouns with Mixed Stems in the Singular conforms to that of Mute Stems, in the Plural to that of -i Stems.

*b.* Examples of nouns with Mixed Stems are **mōns** (I. 1), **pars** (I. 1), **nox** (I. 26) and **urbs** (I. 39):

<b>mōns</b> (stem <i>mont-</i> ), <i>M.</i> , <i>height</i>	<b>pars</b> (stem <i>part-</i> ), <i>F.</i> , <i>part</i>	<b>nox</b> (stem <i>noct-</i> ), <i>F.</i> , <i>night</i>	<b>urbs</b> (stem <i>urb-</i> ), <i>F.</i> , <i>city</i>
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> <b>mōns</b>	<b>pars</b>	<b>nox</b>	<b>urbs</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>montis</b>	<b>partis</b>	<b>noctis</b>	<b>urbis</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>montī</b>	<b>parti</b>	<b>noctī</b>	<b>urbī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>montem</b>	<b>partem</b>	<b>noctem</b>	<b>urbem</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>mōns</b>	<b>pars</b>	<b>nox</b>	<b>urbs</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>monte</b>	<b>parte</b>	<b>nocte</b>	<b>urbe</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i> <b>montēs</b>	<b>partēs</b>	<b>noctēs</b>	<b>urbēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>montium</b>	<b>partium</b>	<b>noctium</b>	<b>urbium</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>montibus</b>	<b>partibus</b>	<b>noctibus</b>	<b>urbibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>montēs, -is</b>	<b>partēs, -is</b>	<b>noctēs, -is</b>	<b>urbēs, -is</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>montēs</b>	<b>partēs</b>	<b>noctēs</b>	<b>urbēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>montibus</b>	<b>partibus</b>	<b>noctibus</b>	<b>urbibus</b>

*c.* Among Nouns with Mixed Stems used by Caesar are **pōns**, **pontis**, *M.*, *bridge* (I. 6); **oliēns**, **clientis**, *M.*, *retainer* (I. 4); **parēns**, **-entis**, *M.* and *F.*, *parent* (V. 14); **falx**, **falcis**, *F.*, *sickle*, *hook* (III. 14); **fax**, **facis**, *F.*, *torch* (VII. 24); **glāns**, **glandis**, *F.*, *acorn*,



*slingshot* (V. 43); *dōs, dōtis*, F., *dowry* (VI. 19); *fraus, fraudis*, F., *deception* (VII. 40); *frōns, frontis*, F., *front* (II. 8); *laus, laudis*, F., *praise* (I. 40); *līs, litis*, F., *damages* (V. 1); *mors, mortis*, F., *death* (I. 5); *nix, nivis*, F., *snow* (VII. 8); *plēbs, plēbis*, F., *people* (I. 8); *trabs, trabis*, F., *beam* (II. 29); *sors, sortis*, F., *lot* (I. 50); *stirps, stirpis*, F., *stock* (VI. 34).

d. Defective is the noun with the stem *spont-*, which has only a Genitive, *spontis*, and Ablative, *sponte* (I. 9).

18. a. The declension of the nouns *vis* (I. 6), *bōs* (VI. 26), *carō* (V. 14), and *Iuppiter* (VI. 17), is exceptional, not conforming to any of the types which have been given:

<b>vis</b> (stems <i>vi-</i> , <i>vir-</i> ), F., <i>force</i>	<b>bōs</b> (stem <i>bov-</i> ), C., <i>ox, cow</i>	<b>carō</b> (stem <i>car-</i> ), F., <i>flesh</i>	<b>Iuppiter</b> (stem <i>io-</i> , + <i>pater</i> in the Nom.), M., <i>Jupiter</i>
---	---	--	--

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>carō</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	—	<i>bovis</i>	<i>carnis</i>	<i>Iovis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	—	<i>bovi</i>	<i>carni</i>	<i>Iovi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>bovem</i>	<i>carnem</i>	<i>Iovem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>carō</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>bove</i>	<i>carne</i>	<i>Iove</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>virium</i>	<i>bovm</i> or <i>bovm</i>	<i>carnium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>bōbus</i> or <i>būbus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	<i>carnēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>bōbus</i> or <i>būbus</i>	<i>carnibus</i>

b. *Senex*, M., *old man* (I. 29), stem *seni-* in oblique cases, is declined thus: *senex, senis, seni, senem, senex, sene; senēs, senum, senibus, senēs, senēs, senibus*.

c. *Iter*, n., *journey, route* (I. 3), has a stem *itiner-* in the oblique cases: *iter, itineris, itineri, iter, iter, itinere; itinera, itinerum, itineribus, itinera, itinera, itineribus*.

d. *Femur*, n., *thigh*, in the oblique cases has two stems, *femor-* and *femin-*, thus: *Nom. femur, Gen. femoris* or *feminis* (VII. 73), etc.

e. *Arar*, M., *the Arar* (I. 12, 13, 16), is declined thus: *Arar, Araris, Arari, Ararim, Arar, Arari*; similar is *Liger, Ligeris, M., the Liger* (III. 9).

f. *phalanx*, F., *mass formation, mass*, is declined thus: *Nom. phalanx, Gen. phalangis, Dat. phalangī, Acc. phalangem* or *phalanga, Abl. phalange*.

*g. Taurois*, F., *Taurois*, is thus declined: **Taurois**, *Gen. Taurois*, *Acc. Taurois* (C. II. 4).

#### NAMES OF THE FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS

19. *a.* Of the Second Declension are all Roman First Names (*praenōmina*) used by Caesar, and in reading the text the name should be supplied, in the proper case form, from the abbreviation. The First Names are **Aulus**, *Gen. Auli* (abbreviation **A.**), **Appius** (**Ap.**), **Gaius** (abbreviation **C.**, an old form of **G.**), **Decimus** (**D.**), **Gnaeus** (**Cn.**), **Lūcius** (**L.**), **Mārcus** (**M.**), **Pūblius** (**P.**), **Quintus** (**Q.**), **Servius** (**Ser.**), and **Titus** (**T.**).

*b.* The Clan Names (*nōmina*), ending in *-ius* (as **Iūlius**, **Tullius**), are of the Second Declension.

*c.* The Family Names or Surnames (*cognōmina*) are partly of the First Declension, as **Galba** (**Servius Sulpicius Galba**); of the Second, as **Baculus** (**Pūblius Sextius Baculus**); and of the Third, as **Caesar** (II, *c*), the full name being declined thus: *Nom. Gaius Iūlius Caesar*, *Gen. Gai Iūli Caesaris* or *Gai Iūli Caesaris* (8, *a*), *Dat. Gaiō Iūliō Caesarī*, *Acc. Gaium Iūlium Caesarem*, *Voc. Gai Iūli Caesar* (8, *c*), *Abl. Gaiō Iūliō Caesare*.

*d.* The names of Gauls or Germans are generally of the Second Declension, as **Diviciācus**, *-i*, or of the Third, as **Dumnorix**, *Gen. Dumnorigis*; of the First Declension are **Galba** (II. 4, 13) and **Nasua** (I. 37), as well as the Numidian names **Juba**, **Saburra** (C. II. 38).

*e.* The names of Foreign Peoples are ordinarily declined in the Plural only. A few are of the First Declension, as **Belgae**, *-arum* (I. 1); the rest are of the Second Declension, as **Helvētīi**, *-ōrum* (I. 1), or of the Third, as **Allobrogēs**, *-um* (I. 6).

*f.* In the Accusative Plural of names of foreign peoples Caesar sometimes has the Greek ending *-as* instead of *-ēs*; as **Allobrogas** (I. 14), **Crētas** (II. 7), **Coriosolitas** (II. 34).

#### FOURTH DECLENSION

20. *a.* Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are generally Masculine, nouns ending in *-ū* are Neuter; **domus**, **manus**, and **Idūs** (Plural) are Feminine.

*b.* Examples of nouns of the Fourth Declension are **fructus** (VI. 19) and **cornū** (I. 52):

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Gen.</i> [alius]	<b>alius</b>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>alii</b>	<b>alii</b>	<b>alii</b>	<b>alteri</b>	<b>alteri</b>	<b>alteri</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>alium</b>	<b>aliam</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alterum</b>	<b>alteram</b>	<b>alterum</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>alterō</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterō</b>

<i>Nom.</i> <b>totus</b>	<b>tota</b>	<b>totum</b>	<b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>totius</b>	<b>totius</b>	<b>totius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>toti</b>	<b>toti</b>	<b>toti</b>	<b>utri</b>	<b>utri</b>	<b>utri</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>totum</b>	<b>totam</b>	<b>totum</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>utram</b>	<b>utrum</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>totō</b>	<b>totā</b>	<b>totō</b>	<b>utrō</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrō</b>

*b.* The Genitive Singular of **alter** is generally **alterius**, instead of **alterfus**; and **alterius** is ordinarily used in place of the Genitive **alius**.

24. Some Adjectives of the Third Declension have three endings in the Nominative Singular, others two, and others only one. Adjectives with three endings are declined like **acer**, **ācris**, **acre**, *sharp* (C. III. 72):

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <b>acer</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>acre</b>	<b>acrēs</b>	<b>acrēs</b>	<b>acrīa</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācrīum</b>	<b>ācrīum</b>	<b>ācrīum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācre</b>	<b>acrēs, -is</b>	<b>acrēs, -is</b>	<b>acrīa</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>acer</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>acre</b>	<b>acrēs</b>	<b>acrēs</b>	<b>acrīa</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācri</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>

25. *a.* Adjectives of the Third Declension with two endings are in part formed on -i Stems, like nouns, and in the Positive Degree, as **fortis**, **forte**, *strong* (II. 33); in part they are Comparatives formed on -s Stems (13, *a*), as **fortior**, **fortius**, *stronger* (III. 14), **mellior**, **melius**, *better* (VI. 12):

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <b>fortis</b>	<b>forte</b>	<b>fortēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>fortis</b>	<b>fortis</b>	<b>fortium</b>	<b>fortium</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>forti</b>	<b>forti</b>	<b>fortibus</b>	<b>fortibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>fortem</b>	<b>forte</b>	<b>fortēs or -is</b>	<b>fortia</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>fortis</b>	<b>forte</b>	<b>fortēs</b>	<b>fortia</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>forti</b>	<b>forti</b>	<b>fortibus</b>	<b>fortibus</b>

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <i>mellor</i>	<i>mellius</i>	<i>melliōrēs</i>	<i>melliōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>melliōris</i>	<i>melliōris</i>	<i>melliōrum</i>	<i>melliōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>melliōri</i>	<i>melliōri</i>	<i>melliōribus</i>	<i>melliōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>melliōrem</i>	<i>mellius</i>	<i>melliōrēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>melliōra</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>mellor</i>	<i>mellius</i>	<i>melliōrēs</i>	<i>melliōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>melliōre</i>	<i>melliōre</i>	<i>melliōribus</i>	<i>melliōribus</i>

*b. Plūs, more*, is defective, in the Singular having only the neuter forms, *Nom. plūs*, *Gen. plūris*, *Acc. plūs*, *Abl. plūre*; the Plural is declined *Nom. plūrēs*, *plūra*, *Gen. plūrium*, *plūrium*, *Dat. plūribus*, *plūribus*, *Acc. plūrēs* or *plūris*, *plūra*, *Abl. plūribus*, *plūribus*.

26. *a.* With Adjectives of the Third Declension having one ending in the *Nom. Singular* are included also present participles. Examples are *duplex*, *double* (II. 29), *regēns*, *ruling*, and *vetus*, *old* (I. 13):

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>duplicis</i>	<i>duplicis</i>	<i>duplicium</i>	<i>duplicium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>duplici</i>	<i>duplici</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>duplicem</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>duplici</i>	<i>duplici</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <i>regēns</i>	<i>regēns</i>	<i>regētēs</i>	<i>regētia</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>regēntis</i>	<i>regēntis</i>	<i>regētium</i>	<i>regētium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>regēnti</i>	<i>regēnti</i>	<i>regēntibus</i>	<i>regēntibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>regēntem</i>	<i>regēns</i>	<i>regētēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>regētia</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>regēns</i>	<i>regēns</i>	<i>regētēs</i>	<i>regētia</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>regēnte</i> (participle)	<i>regēnte</i> (participle)	<i>regēntibus</i>	<i>regēntibus</i>
<i>regēnti</i> (adjective)	<i>regēnti</i> (adjective)		

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE AND FEM.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>veteri</i>	<i>veteri</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>vetero</i>	<i>vetero</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

*b.* The Adjective *princeps*, *-cipis* (I. 7) is declined like the Noun (10, *b*); the Adjectives *anceps*, *incipitis* (I. 26), *particeps*, *-cipis*, (C. III. 60), and *praeceps*, *-cipitis* (II. 24), also have additional syllables in the oblique cases.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

27. *a.* Examples of the Regular Comparison of Adjectives, and of participles used as Adjectives, are :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>altus</b> , -a, -um, <i>high</i>	<b>altior</b> , <b>altius</b> , <i>higher</i>	<b>altissimus</b> , -a, -um, <i>very high, highest</i>
<b>antiquus</b> , -a, -um, <i>ancient</i>	<b>antiquior</b> , -ius	<b>antiquissimus</b>
<b>fortis</b> , -e, <i>brave</i>	<b>fortior</b> , <b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimus</b>
<b>nobilis</b> , -e, <i>noble</i>	<b>nobilior</b> , <b>nobilius</b>	<b>nobilissimus</b>
<b>ferax</b> , <i>fertile</i>	<b>feracior</b> , <b>feracius</b>	<b>feracissimus</b>
<b>potens</b> , <i>able</i>	<b>potentior</b> , <b>potentius</b>	<b>potentissimus</b>
<b>apertus</b> , <i>open, exposed</i>	<b>apertior</b> , <b>apertius</b>	<b>apertissimus</b>

*b.* **Novus**, *new*, lacks the Comparative, but has a Superlative, **novissimus**, *last* (I. 15).

28. *a.* Examples of Adjectives in -er, with Comparative in -ior and Superlative in -issimus, are :

<b>asper</b> , -ra, -rum, <i>rough</i>	<b>asperior</b> , -ius	<b>asperissimus</b> , -a, -um
<b>celer</b> , -aris, -ere, <i>swift</i>	<b>celerior</b> , -ius	<b>celerrimus</b>
<b>creber</b> , -bra, -brum, <i>frequent</i>	<b>crebrior</b> , <b>crebrius</b>	<b>creberrimus</b>
<b>pulcher</b> , -chra, -chrum, <i>beautiful</i>	<b>pulchrior</b> , -ius	<b>pulcherrimus</b>

*b.* **Vetus**, *Gen. veteris*, *old*, Sup. **viterrimus**, lacks the Comparative.

29. Six Adjectives in -ilis have -issimus in the Superlative: **facilis**, **difficilis**, **gracilis**, **humilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis** :

<b>facilis</b> , -e, <i>easy</i>	<b>facilior</b> , <b>facilius</b>	<b>facillimus</b> , -a, -um
<b>difficilis</b> , -e, <i>difficult</i>	<b>difficilior</b> , -ius	<b>difficillimus</b>
<b>humilis</b> , -e, <i>low</i>	<b>humilior</b> , -ius	<b>humillimus</b>
<b>similis</b> , -e, <i>like</i>	<b>similior</b> , -ius	<b>simillimus</b>

30. Some Adjectives form the Comparative and the Superlative by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, as **magis dērectum**, *straighter* (VI. 26), and **maximē acceptus**, *very acceptable* (I. 3). **maximē frumentāris**, *exceedingly fertile* (I. 10), **maximē ferī**, *most barbarous* (II. 4).

31. The Adjectives **dives** or **dis**, *rich* (I. 2), **honorificus**, *complimentary* (I. 48), and **magnificus**, *splendid* (VI. 19) are thus compared :

<b>dives</b> or <b>dis</b>	<b>divitior</b> or <b>ditior</b>	<b>divitissimus</b> or <b>ditissimus</b>
<b>honorificus</b>	<b>honorificentior</b>	<b>honorificentissimus</b>
<b>magnificus</b>	<b>magnificentior</b>	<b>magnificentissimus</b>

### 32. Several common Adjectives are irregular in Comparison :

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	mellior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>less</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, gen. plūris (25, b)	plūrimus, <i>most</i>

33. Several Adjectives lack the Positive, though the Stem appears in Prepositions and Adverbs; others have a Positive only in a limited or special use. Examples are :

(citrā, on this side)	citerior, citerius, on this side, hither	citimus, -a, -um, nearest
(ultrā, beyond)	ulterior, ulterius, farther	ultimus, farthest
(intrā, within)	interior, interior, inner	intimus, inmost
(prope, near)	propior, propius, nearer	proximus, nearest
(dē, down)	dēterior, dēterius, inferior	dēterrimus, worst
(prae, prō, before)	prior, prius, former	primus, first
posterius, following	posterior, later	postrēmus, latest, last
inferus, below	inferior, inferior, lower	{ infimus, } lowest
		{ imus, }
superus, above	superior, superior, higher	{ suprēmus, last
		{ summus, highest
exterus, foreign } (C. III. 43)	exterior, outer	extrēmus, outermost

### ADVERBS

34. a. Adverbs regularly formed from Adjectives have the Positive in -s (-s in facile) or -ter, the Comparative in -ius, and the Superlative in -issimē :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
amplē (amplus), fully	amplius, more fully	amplissimē, most fully
aegrē (aeger), ill	aegrus	aegerrimē
mātūrē (mātūrus), early	mātūrius	mātūrrimē
facile (facilis), easily	facilius	facillimē
fortiter (fortis), bravely	fortius	fortissimē
audācter (audāx), boldly	audācius	audācissimē
ācriter (ācer), fiercely	ācrius	ācerrimē

b. Some Adverbs formed from Adjectives end in -s (-s in cito), as continuō, subitō, primō; such, with Comparative and Superlative, are :

crēbrō (crēber), frequently	crēbrius	crēberrimē
tūtō (tūtus), safely	tūtius	tūtissimē
cito (citus), quickly	citius	citissimē

c. A few Adverbs formed from Adjectives end in -um (Acc. Singular Neuter), as multum (multus), much (III. 9); in -tim, as privātim (privātus), privately (I. 17); and in -tus, as antiquitus (antiquus), in ancient times (II. 4).

35. The following Adverbs have irregularities in Formation or in Comparison :

bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male, <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
nōn multum, } <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
parum, }	—	nūperrimē, <i>most recently, very recently</i>
nūper, <i>recently</i>		diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>
diū, <i>long</i>	diūtius, <i>longer</i>	saepissimē, <i>most often, oftenest</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	proximē, <i>nearest, next</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	potissimum, <i>especially, above all</i>
—	potius, <i>rather</i>	—
satis, <i>enough</i>	satius, <i>better</i>	primum, <i>first</i>
—	prius, <i>before</i>	

### NUMERALS

36. The Roman Notation, and Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive Adjectives are presented in the following list:

ROMAN NOTATION	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES
I.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum,	primus, <i>first</i>	singulī, <i>one by one</i>
II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus, <i>second</i>	bini, <i>two each</i>
III.	trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	terni, trini, <i>three by three, three each</i>
III, or IV.	{ quattuor, <i>four</i>	quārtus, <i>fourth</i>	quaterni, <i>four by four, four each</i>
V.	quinque, <i>five</i>	quīntus, <i>fifth</i>	quini, <i>five by five, five each</i>
VI.	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>	seni, <i>six by six, six each</i>
VII.	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>	septēni, <i>by sevens, seven each</i>
VIII.	octō, <i>eight</i>	octāvus, <i>eighth</i>	octōni, <i>by eights, eight apiece</i>
VIII, or IX.	{ novem, <i>nine</i>	nōnus, <i>ninth</i>	novēni, <i>nine each</i>
X.	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>	dēni, <i>ten each</i>
XI.	undecim, <i>eleven</i>	undecimus, <i>eleventh</i>	undēni, <i>eleven each</i>
XII.	duodecim, <i>twelve</i>	duodecimus, <i>twelfth</i>	duodēni, <i>twelve each</i>
XIII.	tredecim, <i>thirteen</i>	tertius decimus, <i>thirteenth</i>	terni dēni, <i>thirteen each</i>
XIII, or XIV.	{ quattuordecim, <i>fourteen</i>	quārtus decimus, <i>fourteenth</i>	quaterni dēni, <i>fourteen each</i>
XV.	quindecim, <i>fifteen</i>	quīntus decimus, <i>fifteenth</i>	quini dēni, <i>fifteen each</i>
XVI.	sēdecim, <i>sixteen</i>	sextus decimus, <i>sixteenth</i>	seni dēni, <i>sixteen each</i>

ROMAN NOTATION	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES
XVII.	septendecim, <i>seven- teen</i>	septimus decimus, <i>seventeenth</i>	septēni dēni, <i>seven- teen each</i>
XVIII.	duodēviginti, <i>eigh- teen</i>	duodēvicēsimus, <i>eighteenth</i>	duodēvicēni, <i>eighteen each</i>
XVIII, or XIX.	undēviginti, <i>nine- teen</i>	undēvicēsimus, <i>nineteenth</i>	undēvicēni, <i>nineteen each</i>
XX.	viginti, <i>twenty</i>	vicēsimus, <i>twentieth</i>	vicēni, <i>twenty each</i>
XXI.	{ viginti ūnus, ūnus et viginti, <i>twenty-one</i>	{ vicēsimus primus ūnus et vicēsimus, <i>twenty-first</i>	{ vicēni singulī, singulī et vicēni, <i>twenty-one each</i>
XXII.	{ viginti duo, duo et viginti, <i>twenty-two</i>	{ vicēsimus secundus, alter et vicēsimus, <i>twenty-second</i>	{ vicēni bini, bini et vicēni, <i>twenty-two each</i>
XXX.	trigintā, <i>thirty</i>	tricēsimus, <i>thirtieth</i>	tricēni, <i>thirty each</i>
XXXX, or XL.	{ quadrāgintā, <i>forty</i>	{ quadrāgēsimus, fortieth	{ quadrāgēni, <i>forty each</i>
L.	quinqūāgintā, <i>fifty</i>	quinqūāgēsimus, <i>fiftieth</i>	quinqūāgēni, <i>fifty each</i>
LX.	sexāgintā, <i>sixty</i>	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēni, <i>sixty each</i>
LXX.	septuāgintā, <i>seventy</i>	septuāgēsimus, <i>seventieth</i>	septuāgēni, <i>seventy each</i>
LXXX.	octōgintā, <i>eighty</i>	octōgēsimus, <i>eightieth</i>	octōgēni, <i>eighty each</i>
LXXXX, or XC.	{ nōnāgintā, <i>ninety</i>	{ nōnāgēsimus, ninetieth	{ nōnāgēni, <i>ninety each</i>
C.	centum, <i>one hun- dred</i>	centēsimus <i>one hundredth</i>	centēni, <i>one hundred each</i>
CI.	{ centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, <i>one hundred and one</i>	{ centēsimus primus, centēsimus et primus, <i>hundred and first</i>	{ centēni singulī, one hundred and one each
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a, <i>two hundred</i>	ducentēsimus, <i>two hundredth</i>	ducentēni, <i>two hundred each</i>
CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a, <i>three hundred</i>	trecentēsimus, <i>three hundredth</i>	trecentēni, <i>three hun- dred each</i>
CCCC.	quadrīngentī, <i>four hundred</i>	quadrīngentēsimus, <i>four hundredth</i>	quadrīngēni, <i>four hundred each</i>
D.	quingentī, <i>five hundred</i>	quingentēsimus, <i>five hundredth</i>	quingēni, <i>five hun- dred each</i>
DC.	sescentī, <i>six hun- dred</i>	sescentēsimus, <i>six hundredth</i>	sescentēni, <i>six hundred each</i>
DCC.	septīngentī, <i>seven hundred</i>	septīngentēsimus, <i>seven hundredth</i>	septīngēni, <i>seven hun- dred each</i>
DCCC.	octīngentī, <i>eight hundred</i>	octīngentēsimus, <i>eight hundredth</i>	octīngēni, <i>eight hun- dred each</i>
DCCCC.	nōngentī, <i>nine hundred</i>	nōngentēsimus, <i>nine hundredth</i>	nōngēni, <i>nine hun- dred each</i>
M.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	millēsimus, <i>thousandth</i>	singula millia, <i>a thou- sand each</i>
MM.	duo millia, <i>two thousand</i>	bis millēsimus, <i>a two thousandth</i>	bina millia, <i>two thou- sand each</i>



37. *a.* **Ūnus** is declined like **tōtus** (§3, *a*).

*b.* **Duo** (I. 48) and **trēs** (I. 1) are declined thus:

<i>Nom.</i> duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i> duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, tria	tria
<i>Abl.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

*c.* Like **duo** is declined **ambō** (V. 44), excepting **-ō** instead of **-o**.

*d.* **Ducentī**, **-ae**, **-a** (I. 43) and the other words for *hundreds* to **nōngentī**, **-ae**, **-a** (C. III. 71) are declined like the Plural of **bonus**, but the Genitive Plural generally ends in **-um**.

*e.* When Plural Nouns, which generally have a Singular Meaning, are used with a Plural Meaning, a Numeral in agreement must be Distributive; with such Nouns **trīni** is always used instead of **terni**. Thus, **trīnis catēnis**, with *three chains* (I. 53).

38. *a.* **Mille** (I. 22) in the Singular is used as an Indeclinable Adjective. In the Plural it is used as a Substantive and thus declined:

<i>Nom.</i> milia	<i>Gen.</i> millum	<i>Dat.</i> millibus	<i>Acc.</i> milia	<i>Abl.</i> millibus
-------------------	--------------------	----------------------	-------------------	----------------------

*b.* The Roman numerical symbols are frequently used in place of Ordinal as well as Cardinal Adjectives. In reading Latin the proper form of the Adjective should be supplied; thus **ducenta quadragintā** should be read for **CCXL** in **milia passuum CCXL** (I. 2); **decimā** for **X** in **legiōne X** (C. III. 91).

## PRONOUNS

39. *a.* The Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Person are declined as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> ego, <i>I</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i> mei	nostrum, <i>nostrī</i>	tui	vestrum, <i>vestrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	tū	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis

*b.* The place of a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person is taken by the demonstratives (§60, *a* and *b*).

40. *a.* In the oblique cases the Pronouns of the First and Second Person may be used in a Reflexive sense, as **vōs recipite**, lit. *take yourselves back, retreat* (VII. 50); **mei**, may mean *of myself, tibi, to or for thyself, yourself*, etc.

b. The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person has no separate forms for the three genders, and is declined in Singular and Plural alike, as follows:

*Gen.* **sui**, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves  
*Dat.* **sibi**, to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves  
*Acc.* **se** or **seesē**, himself, herself, itself, themselves  
*Abl.* **se** or **seesē**, with, or by, himself, herself, itself, themselves

41. The Possessive Pronouns are declined like Adjectives. They are: **meus, mea, meum, my**; **noster, nostra, nostrum, our**; **tuus, tua, tuum, thy**; **vester, vestra, vestrum, your**; and **suus, sua, suum, his, her, its, their**. **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense.

42. a. The Demonstrative Pronouns are **hic, this, such**; **iste, that of yours, that**; **ille, that, such**; **is, that, he, such**, and **idem, the same**.

b. **Hic, this, such**, is declined thus:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hos</b>	<b>has</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>	<b>his</b>

43. a. The Demonstrative Pronoun **ille, that, such**, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>	<b>illos</b>	<b>illas</b>	<b>illa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>illo</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illo</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>	<b>illis</b>

b. The Demonstrative Pronoun **iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that**, is declined like **ille**.

44. The Demonstrative Pronoun **is, that, he, such**, is thus declined:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>is</b>	<b>ea</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>eī, īi</b>	<b>cae</b>	<b>ea</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eōrum</b>	<b>eārum</b>	<b>eōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ei</b>	<b>ei</b>	<b>ei</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eum</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>eōs</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>ea</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eō</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>eō</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>	<b>eīs, iīs</b>

45. The Demonstrative Pronoun **idem, the same**, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	eīdem, īdem, or idem	eādem	eādem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem, īdem, or īdem	eīdem, or īdem	eīdem, or īdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōdem	eādem	eādem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīdem, īdem, or īdem	eīdem, or īdem	eīdem, or īdem

46. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse, self*, is thus declined :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

47. The Relative Pronoun *qui, who, which*, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

48. *a.* The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun is *quis, quid, who? what?* It is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*b.* The Adjective Interrogative Pronoun is *qui, quae, quod, what?* as *qui numerus, what number?* (I. 29). It is declined like the Relative Pronoun (47).

*c.* Interrogative *quis* and *qui* may be strengthened by *-nam*, as *quibusnam manibus, by what hands, pray?* (II. 30).

49. *a.* The Indefinite Pronouns follow the Declension of the Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, but only the Pronominal Part of the Compounds is declined. The following Indefinite Pronouns are used by Caesar, in both Substantive and Adjective forms:

SUBSTANTIVE FORMS			ADJECTIVE FORMS		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
quis or quī (Masc.)	quid	{ any one, anything	quī or quis	quae or qua	quod } any
			Nom. and acc. Pl. Neut., quae or qua		
aliquis aliquī (V. 26)	aliquid	{ some one, something	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod } any
quispiam	quidpiam	{ some one, something	quispiam	quaepiam	quodpiam } some
quisquam	quicquam	{ any one, anything at all	quisquam		quicquam } any (rare)
(Plural lacking.)			(Plural lacking.)		
quisque	quidque	{ each one, each thing	quisque	quaeque	quodque } each
quīvis quaevis quidvis		{ any one, anything	quīvis quaevis quidvis		
acc. quem- quam- quid-		{ anything	acc. quemvis quamvis quod-		
vis vis vis		{ you please	vis vis vis		
quidam quaedam quiddam		{ a certain	quidam quaedam quoddam		
acc. quen- quan- quid-		{ person, or thing	acc. quen- quan- quod-		
dam dam dam			dam dam dam		

*b.* The Indefinite Pronoun **quis, quī**, is used by Caesar only after **si, nisi, seu, nō, neu**, and **ubi**.

50. *a.* The Indefinite Relative **quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whoever, whatever*, the first part **quī-** being declined like the relative **quī**, is used both as an Adjective and as a Substantive; as **quaecumque bella**, *whatever wars* (I. 44), **quicumque bellum inferant**, *whoever, or no matter who, should wage war* (IV. 7).

*b.* The parts of the Indefinite Relative **quisquis, quidquid** or **quicquid**, *whoever, whatever*, are both declined like **quis** (48), but only **quisquis, quicquid** (II. 17), and **quōquid** are in common use.

51. Caesar uses two compounds of **uter** (23, *a*) with the force of Indefinite Pronouns, **uterque, utraque, utrumque** (**utrusque**, etc.), *each of two*, Plural *both, the two*; and **alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum**, *one or the other*, as **alterutrō exercitū**, *the one or the other army* (C. III. 90).

VERBS <sup>1</sup>

52. The verb *sum* is inflected as follows :

## PRINCIPAL PARTS :

PRæs. INDICATIVE    PRæs. INFINITIVE    PRæs. INDICATIVE    FUT. PART. (Perf. Part. lacking)  
*sum*                    *esse*                    *ful*                    *futūrus*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>
<i>es, thou art</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>
<i>est, he (she, it) is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, thou wast</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

## FUTURE

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, thou wilt be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

## PERFECT

<i>ful, I have been,</i> <i>I was</i>	<i>fuimus, we have</i> <i>been, we were</i>
<i>fuisti, thou hast</i> <i>been, you were</i>	<i>fuistis, you have</i> <i>been, you were</i>
<i>fuit, he has been,</i> <i>he was</i>	<i>fuērunt, } they have</i> <i>fuēre, } been, they</i> <i>were</i>

## PLUPERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuērāmus, we had</i> <i>been</i>
<i>fuerās, thou hadst,</i> <i>you had, been</i>	<i>fuērātis, you had</i> <i>been</i>
<i>fuerať, he had been</i>	<i>fuērant, they had been</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuero, I shall have</i> <i>been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall</i> <i>have been</i>
<i>fueris, thou wilt</i> <i>have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will</i> <i>have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have</i> <i>been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will</i> <i>have been</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

## PERFECT

<i>fuierim</i>	<i>fuierimus</i>
<i>fuieris</i>	<i>fuieritis</i>
<i>fuierit</i>	<i>fuierint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

<sup>1</sup> Since the Principal Parts of all the Verbs in the Latin Text of this book are given in the Vocabulary, it has not been thought necessary to extend this outline by presenting either a List of Verbs or a discussion of the Stems.

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> es, be thou	<i>esto</i> , be ye
<i>Fut.</i> <i>estō</i> , thou shalt be	<i>estōte</i> , ye shall be
<i>estō</i> , he shall be	<i>suntō</i> , they shall be

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> esse, to be
<i>Perf.</i> fuisse, to have been
<i>Fut.</i> futurus esse, or fore, to be about to be

PARTICIPLE

<i>Fut.</i> futurus, about to be
----------------------------------

FIRST CONJUGATION

53. Verbs of the First Conjugation are inflected like *amō*, I love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

Pres. Indicative	Pres. Infinitive	Perf. Indicative	Perf. Pass. Participle
<i>Active.</i> amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
Pres. Indicative	Pres. Infinitive	Perf. Indicative	
<i>Passive.</i> amor	amāri	amātus sum	

ACTIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
amō, I love	amāmus, we love
amās, you love	amātis, you love
amat, he loves	amant, they love

PASSIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
	<i>I am loved, etc.</i>
amor	amāmur
amāris or -re	amāmini
amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT

amābam, I was loving	amābāmus, we were loving
amābas, you were loving	amābātis, you were loving
amābat, he was loving	amābant, they were loving

IMPERFECT

	<i>I was loved, etc.</i>
amābar	amābāmur
amābaris or -re	amābāmini
amābatur	amābantur

FUTURE

amābō, I shall love	amābimus, we shall love
amābis, thou wilt, you will, love	amābitis, you will love
amābit, he will love	amābunt, they will love

FUTURE

	<i>I shall be loved, etc.</i>
amābor	amābimur
amāberis, or -re	amābimini
amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT

amāvī, I have loved, I loved	amāvimus, we have loved, we loved
amāvistī, you have loved, you loved	amāvistis, you have loved, you loved
amāvit, he has loved, he loved	amāvērunt, -ēre, they have loved, they loved

PERFECT

	<i>I have been loved or I was loved, etc.</i>
amātus (-a, -um) sum	amātī (-ae, -a) sumus
amātus es	amātī estis
amātus est	amātī sunt

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PLUPERFECT

<i>amāveram, I had loved,</i>	<i>amāverāmus, we had loved</i>
<i>amāverās, you had loved</i>	<i>amāverātis, you had loved</i>
<i>amāverat, he had loved</i>	<i>amāverant, they had loved</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>amāverō, I shall have loved</i>	<i>amāverimus, we shall have loved</i>
<i>amāveris, you will have loved</i>	<i>amāveritis, you will have loved</i>
<i>amāverit, he will have loved</i>	<i>amāverint, they will have loved</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>I may love, let us love, etc.</i>	
<i>amem</i>	<i>amēmus</i>
<i>amēs</i>	<i>amētis</i>
<i>amet</i>	<i>ament</i>

## IMPERFECT

*I might love*

<i>amārem</i>	<i>amārēmus</i>
<i>amārēs</i>	<i>amārētis</i>
<i>amāret</i>	<i>amārent</i>

## PERFECT

*I may have loved*

<i>amāverim</i>	<i>amāverimus</i>
<i>amāveris</i>	<i>amāveritis</i>
<i>amāverit</i>	<i>amāverint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have loved*

<i>amāvissē</i>	<i>amāvissēmus</i>
<i>amāvissēs</i>	<i>amāvissētis</i>
<i>amāvisset</i>	<i>amāvissent</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been loved, etc.*

<i>amātus erām<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>amāti erāmus</i>
<i>amātus erās</i>	<i>amāti erātis</i>
<i>amātus erat</i>	<i>amāti erant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been loved*

<i>amātus erō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>amāti erimus</i>
<i>amātus eris</i>	<i>amāti eritis</i>
<i>amātus erit</i>	<i>amāti erunt</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>I may be loved, etc.</i>	
<i>amer</i>	<i>amēmur</i>
<i>amēris, or -re</i>	<i>amēmini</i>
<i>amētur</i>	<i>amentur</i>

## IMPERFECT

*I might be loved*

<i>amārer</i>	<i>amārēmur</i>
<i>amārēris, or -re</i>	<i>amārēmini</i>
<i>amārētur</i>	<i>amārentur</i>

## PERFECT

*I may have been loved*

<i>amātus sim<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>amāti simus</i>
<i>amātus sis</i>	<i>amāti sitis</i>
<i>amātus sit</i>	<i>amāti sint</i>

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have been loved*

<i>amātus essem<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>amāti essemus</i>
<i>amātus esses</i>	<i>amāti essetis</i>
<i>amātus esset</i>	<i>amāti essent</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the Perfect Passive *fuī, fuisti, fuit, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, est, etc.*, and *fueram, fueras, fuerō, etc.*, for *eram, erō, etc.*

<sup>2</sup> Here *fuērim, fueris, fuissem, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim, essem, etc.*

ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* amā, love thou    amāte, love ye  
*Fut.* amātō, thou    amātōte, ye  
          shall love    shall love  
          amātō, he shall    amantō, they  
          love    shall love

INFINITIVE

*Pres.* amāre, to love  
*Perf.* amāvisse, to have loved  
*Fut.* amātūrus esse, to be  
          about to love

PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* amāns, loving  
          (Gen. amantis)  
*Fut.* amātūrus, about to love

GERUND

*Gen.* amandi, of loving  
*Dat.* amandō, for loving  
*Acc.* amandum, loving  
*Abl.* amandō, by loving

SUPINE

*Acc.* amātum, to love  
*Abl.* amātū, to love, to be loved

PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

*Pres.* amāre, be thou loved  
*Fut.* amātor, thou shalt be loved  
          amātor, he shall be loved

PLURAL

*Pres.* amāmini, be ye loved  
*Fut.* amantor, they shall be loved

INFINITIVE

*Pres.* amāri, to be loved  
*Perf.* amātus esse, to have been  
          loved  
*Fut.* amātum iri, to be about to be  
          loved

PARTICIPLE

*Perfect.* amātus, loved, having  
          been loved  
*Gerundive.* amandus, to be loved,  
          worthy to be loved

SECOND CONJUGATION

**54.** Verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like *moneō*, I advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS :

<b>PRES. INDICATIVE</b>	<b>PRES. INFINITIVE</b>	<b>PERF. INDICATIVE</b>	<b>PERF. PASS. PARTICIPLE</b>
<i>Active.</i> moneō	monēre	monui	monitus

<b>PRES. INDICATIVE</b>	<b>PRES. INFINITIVE</b>	<b>PERF. INDICATIVE</b>
<i>Passive.</i> moneor	moneri	monitus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>
<i>I advise, etc.</i>	
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>
<i>I am advised, etc.</i>	
moneor	monemur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur



## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## IMPERFECT

*I was advising, or I advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

## FUTURE

*I shall advise*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

## PERFECT

*I have advised, or I advised*

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, or -ere

## PLUPERFECT

*I had advised*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may advise, let us advise, etc.*

moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

## IMPERFECT

*I might advise, you would advise*

monērēm	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## IMPERFECT

*I was advised, etc.*

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, or -re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall be advised*

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, or -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT

*I have been advised, I was advised*

monitus sum	moniti sumus
monitus es	moniti estis
monitus est	moniti sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been advised*

monitus eram	moniti erāmus
monitus erās	moniti erātis
monitus erat	moniti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been advised*

monitus erō	moniti erimus
monitus eris	moniti eritis
monitus erit	moniti erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may be advised, etc.*

monear	moneāmur
moneāris, or -re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

## IMPERFECT

*I might be advised*

monērer	monērēmur
monēreris, or -re	monēremini
monēretur	monērentur

ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PERFECT

*I may have advised, etc.*

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

PLUPERFECT

*I might have advised, you would have advised, etc.*

monuissem	monuissemus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. monē, advise thou	monēte, advise ye
Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise	monētōte, ye shall advise
monētō, he shall advise	monētō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, to advise
Perf. monuisse, to have advised
Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about to advise

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns, advising (Gen. monēntis)
Fut. monitūrus, about to advise

GERUND

Gen. monendī, of advising
Dat. monendō, for advising
Acc. monendum, advising
Abl. monendō, by advising,

SUPINE

Acc. monitum, to advise
Abl. monitū, to advise, to be advised

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PERFECT

*I may have been advised, etc.*

monitus sim	moniti simus
monitus sis	moniti sitis
monitus sit	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT

*I might have been advised*

monitus essem	moniti essemus
monitus essetis	moniti essetis
monitus esset	moniti essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres. monēre, be thou advised	monēmini, be ye advised
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be ad- vised	monētor, they shall be ad- vised

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēri, to be advised
Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLE

Perfect, moni- tus, advised, having been advised
Gerundive, mo- nendus, to be advised, worthy to be advised

## THIRD CONJUGATION

55. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are inflected like *regō, I rule*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PREF. INDICATIVE	PREF. PASS. PARTIC.
Active.	regō	regere	rēxi	rēctus
	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PREF. INDICATIVE	
Passive.	regor	regi	rēctus sum	

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

*I rule, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

## IMPERFECT

*I was ruling, or I ruled*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

## FUTURE

*I shall rule*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

## PERFECT

*I have ruled, or I ruled*

rēxi	rēximus
rēxisti	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or -ēre

## PLUPERFECT

*I had ruled*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

*I am ruled, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regor	regimur
regēris or -re	regimini
regitur	reguntur

## IMPERFECT

*I was ruled*

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or -re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall be ruled*

regar	regēmur
regēris, or -re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

## PERFECT

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled*

rēctus sum	rēcti sumus
rēctus es	rēcti estis
rēctus est	rēcti sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been ruled*

rēctus eram	rēcti erāmus
rēctus erās	rēcti erātis
rēctus erat	rēcti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been ruled*

rēctus erō	rēcti erimus
rēctus eris	rēcti eritis
rēctus erit	rēcti erunt

ACTIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may rule, let us rule, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

## IMPERFECT

*I might rule, you would rule, etc.*

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

## PERFECT

*I may have ruled*

rēxerim	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have ruled, you would have ruled*

rēxissem	rēxisseāmus
rēxisseās	rēxisseātis
rēxisset	rēxisserent

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. rege, rule thou	regite, rule ye
Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule	regitōte, ye shall rule
regitō, he shall rule	reguntō, they shall rule

## INFINITIVE PARTICIPLE

Pres. regere, to rule	Pres. regēns, rul- ing
Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled	(Gen. ro- gentis)
Fut. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule	Fut. rēctūrus, about to rule

PASSIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may be ruled, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
regar	regāmur
regāris, or -re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

## IMPERFECT

*I might be ruled, you would be ruled*

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, or -re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

## PERFECT

*I may have been ruled*

rēctus sim	rēcti simus
rēctus sis	rēcti sitis
rēctus sit	rēcti sint

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have been ruled, you would have been ruled*

rēctus essem	recti esseāmus
rēctus esses	recti essētis
rēctus esset	recti essent

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. regere, be thou ruled	regimini, be ye ruled
Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled	
regitor, he shall be ruled	reguntor, they shall be ruled

## INFINITIVE PARTICIPLE

Pres. regi, to be ruled	Perfect, rēctus, ruled, having been ruled
Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled	Gerundive regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled
Fut. rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled	

## ACTIVE VOICE

## GERUND

*Gen. regendi, of ruling*  
*Dat. regendō, for ruling*  
*Acc. regendum, ruling*  
*Abl. regendō, by ruling*

## SUPINE

*Acc. rectum, to rule*  
*Abl. rectū, to rule, to be ruled*

56. Verbs in -*io* of the Third Conjugation have in the present system forms in which -*i-* is followed by a vowel; these forms are like the corresponding forms of the Fourth Conjugation. An example is *capio, I take*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
<i>Active.</i>	<i>capio</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>cēpi</i>	<i>captus</i>
	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	
<i>Passive.</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capī</i>	<i>captus sum</i>	

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capio</i>	<i>capimus</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebāmus</i>
<i>capiebās</i>	<i>capiebātis</i>
<i>capiebat</i>	<i>capiebant</i>

## FUTURE

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiēmus</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>

## PERFECT

<i>cēpi</i>	<i>cēpimus</i>
<i>cēpisti</i>	<i>cēpistis</i>
<i>cēpit</i>	<i>cēperunt or -ēre</i>

## PLUPERFECT

<i>cēperam</i>	<i>cēperāmus</i>
<i>cēperās</i>	<i>cēperātis</i>
<i>cēperat</i>	<i>cēperant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>cēperō</i>	<i>cēperimus</i>
<i>cēperis</i>	<i>cēperitis</i>
<i>cēperit</i>	<i>cēperint</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>caperis, or -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>capiebar</i>	<i>capiebāmur</i>
<i>capiebāris</i>	<i>capiebāmini</i>
<i>capiebatur</i>	<i>capiebantur</i>

## FUTURE

<i>caplar</i>	<i>caplēmur</i>
<i>caplēris</i>	<i>caplēmīni</i>
<i>caplētur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

## PERFECT

<i>captus sum</i>	<i>capti sumus</i>
<i>captus es</i>	<i>capti estis</i>
<i>captus est</i>	<i>capti sunt</i>

## PLUPERFECT

<i>captus eram</i>	<i>capti erāmus</i>
<i>captus erās</i>	<i>capti erātis</i>
<i>captus erat</i>	<i>capti erant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>captus erō</i>	<i>capti erimus</i>
<i>captus eris</i>	<i>capti eritis</i>
<i>captus erit</i>	<i>capti erunt</i>

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SUBJUNCTIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiam	capiamus	capiar	capiamur
capias	capiatis	capiaris, or -re	capiamini
capiat	capiant	capiatür	capiantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
caperem	caperemus	caperet	caperemur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris	caperēmini
caperet	caperent	caperētür	caperentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēperim	cēperimus	captus sim	capti simus
cēperis	cēperitis	captus sis	capti sitis
cēperit	cēperint	captus sit	capti sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēpissē	cēpissēmus	captus essem	capti essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	captus essēs	capti essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	captus esset	capti essent
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i> cape	capite	<i>Pres.</i> capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i> capito	capitote	<i>Fut.</i> capitor	capiuntur
capito	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor
INFINITIVE PARTICIPLE		INFINITIVE PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i> capere	<i>Pres.</i> capiēns	<i>Pres.</i> capi	
<i>Perf.</i> cepisse	( <i>Gen.</i> capientis)	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse	<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Fut.</i> capturus esse	<i>Fut.</i> capturus	<i>Fut.</i> captum iri	<i>Ger.</i> capien- dus
GERUND		SUPINE	
<i>Gen.</i> capiendi			
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō			
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum	<i>Acc.</i> captum		
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō	<i>Abl.</i> captū		

57. *a.* Inflected like **capiō** are its Compounds, **accipiō**, **con-  
cipiō**, **dēcipiō**, **excipiō**, **incipiō**, **percipiō**, **praecipiō**, **recipiō**, and  
**suscipiō**.

*b.* The following verbs in **-iō**, inflected like **capiō**, are used by  
Caesar: **cupiō**, *ardently desire, wish well to* (I. 18, etc.); **faciō**, *do,  
make*, and its Compounds **afficiō**, **cōnficiō**, **dēficiō**, **efficiō**, **inficiō**,  
**perficiō**, **praeficiō**, **prōficiō**, **reficiō** and **sufficiō**; **ēliciō**, *entice* (V.  
50), **fodiō**, *dig* (VII. 73) and its Compounds **effodiō** (VII. 4), **infodiō**  
(VII. 73), **subfodiō** (IV. 12), **trānsfodiō** (VII. 82); **fugiō**, *run away*,

and its Compounds *cōnfugiō*, *dēfugiō*, *effugiō*, *perfugiō*, *prōfugiō*, and *refugiō*; *iaciō*, *throw*, and its Compounds *abiaciō*, *coniaciō*, *dēiaciō*, *diaciō*, *ēiaciō*, *iniaciō*, *obiaciō*, *prōiaciō*, *reiaciō*, and *subiaciō*; *pariō*, *bring forth*, *gain* (C. III. 82); two Compounds of *quatiō*, *shake*, *discutiō* (VII. 8) and *percutiō* (V. 44); five Compounds of *rapīō*, *seize*, *arripīō* (V. 33), *corripīō*, *dīripīō*, *ēripīō* and *praeripīō*; *sapiō*, *have sense* (V. 80); *alliciō*, *attract* (V. 55, VII. 31); and Compounds of *speciō*, *look*, *cōnspeciō*, *dēspeciō*, *perspeciō*, *prōspeciō*, and *respeciō*.

c. Similar in inflection to the Passive of *capīō* are the following Deponent Verbs in *-ior* used by Caesar: *patior*, *suffer* (inflected below, 60), and its Compound *perpetior* (C. III. 47); *morior*, *die* (L 4, etc.); and the following Compounds of *gradior*, *step*: *aggredior*, *congrudior*, *dēgrudior*, *dīgrudior*, *ēgrudior*, *ingrudior*, *praegrudior*, *prōgrudior*, and *regrudior*.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

58. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are inflected like *audiō*, *I hear*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
Active.	<b>audiō</b>	<b>audire</b>	<b>audivi</b>	<b>auditus</b>
	PRES. INDICATIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE	PERF. INDICATIVE	
Passive.	<b>audior</b>	<b>audiri</b>	<b>auditus sum</b>	

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE

## PRESENT TENSE

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>audiō</b>	<b>audimus</b>
<b>audis</b>	<b>auditis</b>
<b>audit</b>	<b>audiunt</b>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>audior</b>	<b>audimur</b>
<b>audiris, or -re</b>	<b>audimini</b>
<b>auditur</b>	<b>audiuntur</b>

## IMPERFECT

## IMPERFECT

*I was hearing, or I heard**I was heard*

<b>audiēbam</b>	<b>audiēbāmus</b>
<b>audiēbas</b>	<b>audiēbātis</b>
<b>audiēbat</b>	<b>audiēbant</b>

<b>audiēbar</b>	<b>audiēbāmur</b>
<b>audiēbāris, or -re</b>	<b>audiēbāmini</b>
<b>audiēbātur</b>	<b>audiēbantur</b>

## FUTURE

## FUTURE

*I shall hear**I shall be heard*

<b>audiam</b>	<b>audiēmus</b>
<b>audies</b>	<b>audiētis</b>
<b>audiet</b>	<b>audient</b>

<b>audiar</b>	<b>audiēmur</b>
<b>audieris, or -re</b>	<b>audiēmini</b>
<b>audietur</b>	<b>audientur</b>

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PERFECT

*I have heard, or I heard*

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit	audiverunt, or -ere

## PLUPERFECT

*I had heard*

audiveram	audiveramus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard*

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may hear, let us hear, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiamus
audias	audiatis
audiat	audiant

## IMPERFECT

*I might hear, you would hear*

audirem	audirēmus
audirēs	audirētis
audiret	audirent

## PERFECT

*I may have heard*

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have heard, you would have heard*

audivissem	audivissemus
audivissēs	audivissetis
audivisset	audivissent

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PERFECT

*I have been heard, or I was heard*

auditus sum	auditi sumus
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est	auditi sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been heard*

auditus eram	auditi erāmus
auditus erās	auditi erātis
auditus erat	auditi erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been heard*

auditus erō	auditi erimus
auditus eris	auditi eritis
auditus erit	auditi erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I may be heard, let us be heard, etc.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiamur
audiaris, or -re	audiamini
audiat	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

*I might be heard, you would be heard*

audirer	audirēmur
audirēris, or -re	audirēmini
audirēt	audirentur

## PERFECT

*I may have been heard*

auditus sim	auditi simus
auditus sis	auditi sitis
auditus sit	auditi sint

## PLUPERFECT

*I might have been heard, you would have been heard*

auditus essem	auditi essemus
auditus esses	auditi essetis
auditus esset	auditi essent



ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres. audi, hear thou</i>	<i>audite, hear ye</i>	<i>Pres. audire, be thou heard</i>	<i>audimini, be ye heard</i>
<i>Fut. auditis, thou shalt hear</i>	<i>audistote, ye shall hear</i>	<i>Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard</i>	
<i>audite, he shall hear</i>	<i>audiunt, they shall hear</i>	<i>auditor, he shall be heard</i>	<i>audiuntor, they shall be heard</i>
INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres. audire, to hear</i>	<i>Pres. audiens, hearing</i>	<i>Pres. audiri, to be heard</i>	<i>Perf. auditus, heard,</i>
<i>Perf. audivisse, to have heard</i>	<i>(Gen. audientis)</i>	<i>Perf. auditus esse, to have been heard</i>	<i>having been heard</i>
<i>Fut. auditurus esse, to be about to hear</i>	<i>Fut. auditurus, about to hear</i>	<i>Fut. auditum iri, to be about to be heard</i>	<i>Ger. audiendus, to be heard, worthy to be heard</i>
GERUND	SUPINE		
<i>Gen. audiendi, of hearing</i>			
<i>Dat. audiendō, for hearing</i>			
<i>Acc. audiendum, hearing</i>	<i>Acc. auditum, to hear</i>		
<i>Abl. audiendō, by hearing</i>	<i>Abl. auditū, to hear, to be heard</i>		

## DEPONENT VERBS

59. *a.* The forms of Deponent Verbs are generally Passive, while the meaning is Active.

*b.* The Passive meaning is found in the Gerundive of Deponent Verbs, and sometimes in the Perfect Participle; as *dimēnsus*, *measured off* (II. 19); *dēpopulātus*, *having been ravaged* (I. 11).

*c.* Deponent Verbs have in the Active form a Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

60. Deponent Verbs in the four conjugations are inflected, as *hor-tor*, *urge* (I. 19); *vereor*, *fear* (I. 19); *sequor*, *follow* (I. 22), and *patior*, *suffer*, *allow* (I. 6. 9); *largior*, *give freely* (I. 18):

## INDICATIVE MOOD

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJ. IN -IOT	FOURTH CONJUGATION
<i>Pres.</i> hortor	vereor	sequor	patior	largior
hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	pateris, -re	largiris, -re
hortātur	verētur	sequitur	patitur	largitur
hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	patimur	largimur
hortāmini	verēmini	sequimini	patimini	largimini
hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	patiuntur	largiuntur
<i>Imp.</i> hortābar, etc.	verēbar, etc.	sequēbar, etc.	patiēbar, etc.	largiēbar, etc.
<i>Fut.</i> hortābor	verēbor	sequar	patiar	largiar
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	largītus sum
<i>Plup.</i> hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	largītus eram
<i>F. P.</i> hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	largītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortor	vereor	sequar	patiar	largiar
<i>Imp.</i> hortārer	verērer	sequerer	paterer	largirer
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	largītus sim
<i>Plup.</i> hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	largītus essem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortāre	verēre	sequere	patere	largire
<i>Fut.</i> hortātor	verētor	seqltor	patitor	largitor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortārī	verērī	sequī	pati	largiri
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	largītus esse
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	largitūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> hortāns	verēns	sequēns	patiēns	largiēns
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	largitūrus
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus	veritus	secūtus	passus	largītus
<i>Ger.</i> hortandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	largiendus

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i> hortandī	verendī	sequendī	patiendī	largiendī
<i>Dat.</i> hortandō	verendō	sequendō	patiendō	largiendō
<i>Acc.</i> hortandum	verendum	sequendum	patiendum	largiendum
<i>Abl.</i> hortandō	verendō	sequendō	patiendō	largiendō

## SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i> hortātum	veritum	secūtum	passum	largitum
<i>Abl.</i> hortātū	veritu	secūtū	passū	largitū

61. *a.* Of the Deponent Verbs used by Caesar, besides those previously mentioned, the most important are:

- (1) First Conjugation, *arbitror*, *think* (I. 4), *cohortor*, *urge on* (I. 25), *oñnor*, *attempt* (I. 8), *oñnsector*, *pursue* (III. 19), *oñnsñlor*, *reassure* (I. 20), *oñnsploor*, *catch sight of* (I. 25), *cunotor*, *delay* (III. 23), *dominor*, *hold sway* (II. 31), *frumentor*, *get supplies* (IV. 9), *glñrior*, *boast* (I. 14), *grätutor*, *congratulate* (I. 30), *interpretor*, *expound* (VI. 13); *mñror*, *wonder* (I. 32) and *admñror* (I. 14); *miseror*, *lament* (I. 39); *moror*, *delay* (I. 39), and *dñmoror* (III. 6); *pñbulor*, *get fodder* (V. 17), *populor*, *lay waste* (I. 11), and *dñpopulor*, *completely lay waste* (II. 7); *recordor*, *recall* (C. III. 72), *remñneror*, *compensate* (I. 44), and *speculor*, *spy out* (I. 47).
- (2) Second Conjugation, *fateor*, *acknowledge* (C. III. 20), and its Compounds *oññfiteor* (V. 27) and *profiteor* (VI. 23); *hñeor*, *bid* (I. 18), and *polliceor*, *promise* (I. 14); *mereor*, *earn* (I. 40); *tueor*, *protect* (IV. 8), and *intueor*, *look upon* (I. 32); *vereor*, *be afraid* (I. 19).
- (3) Third Conjugation, *complector*, *embrace* (I. 20), *dñfetiscor*, *become exhausted* (VII. 88); *frñor*, *enjoy* (III. 22); *lñbor*, *slip, fall away* (V. 3), and *ñlñbor*, *escape* (V. 37); *loquor*, *speak* (I. 20); *nñscor*, *be born, rise* (II. 18), and *ñnñscor*, *grow out* (II. 17); *nanciscor*, *obtain* (I. 53); *nñtor*, *strive, rely on* (I. 13), and *innñtor*, *lean upon* (II. 27); *oblñviscor*, *forget* (I. 14), *profñscor*, *set out* (I. 3), *queror*, *complain* (I. 16); the Compounds of *sequor*, *oñnsequor*, *exsequor*, *insequor*, *persequor*, *prñsequor*, *subsequor*; *reminiscor*, *remember* (I. 13), *uloñscor*, *avenge* (I. 12); and *ñtor*, *use, adopt* (I. 5).
- (4) Fourth Conjugation, *experior*, *try* (I. 31), *largior*, *give freely, bribe* (I. 18); *mñtiar*, *measure* (I. 16), and *dñmñtiar*, *measure off* (II. 19, IV. 17); *partior*, *divide* (III. 10), and *potior*, *become master of* (I. 3).

*b.* To the Fourth Conjugation belongs the Deponent *orior*, *rise*, with its Compounds *adorior*, *attack* (I. 13) and *coñrior*, *arise* (III. 7); but Caesar uses certain forms of *orior* which are like those of Deponents in *-ior* of the Third Conjugation, as *oritur* (VI. 25) and *orerñtur* (Imperfect Subjunctive; VI. 9, VII. 28).

62. Semi-Deponent Verbs have a Perfect System Passive in form but Active in meaning; they are *audeñ* (I. 18), *ññdñ* (C. III. 111)

with its compounds *cōnfidō* (I. 23) and *diffidō* (V. 41); *gaudeō* (IV. 13), and *soleō* (VI. 15):

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare.*

*fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust.*

*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice.*

*soleō, solāre, solītus sum, be wont.*

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

63. The Periphrastic Conjugation has an Active and a Passive form, made up by combining the Future Active Participle and the Future Passive Participle, or Gerundive, with the verb *sum*, thus:

#### ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

##### INDICATIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to love</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amātūrus eram, I was about to love</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fui, I have been, was, about to love</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love</i>

##### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amātūrus sim, I may be about to love</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amātūrus essem, I might be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerim, I may have been about to love</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisset, I might have been about to love</i>

#### INFINITIVE

*Pres. amātūrus esse, to be about to love*

*Perf. amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love*

#### PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

##### INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus (-a, -um) sum, I am to be loved, I must be loved</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amandus eram, I had to be loved</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus erō, I shall have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui, I have had to be loved, had to be loved</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fueram, I had deserved to be loved</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>amandus fuerō, I shall have had to be loved</i>

##### SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim, I may have to be loved</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>amandus essem, I might have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuerim, I may have had to be loved</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuisset, I might have had to be loved</i>

#### INFINITIVE

*Pres. amandus esse, to have to be loved*

*Perf. amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved*

64. *a.* Perfects in **-āvī**, **-vī**, and **-vī**, and other tenses formed from the same stems, are sometimes contracted by the loss of **-vī-** or **-ve-** before **-s-** or **-r-**; Perfects in **-vī** lose the **-v-** before **-r-** but retain the vowel. Examples are:

- (1) **oppugnārant** (I. 5) for **oppugnāverant**; **adamāssent** (I. 31) for **adamāvissent**; **commemorāssent** (I. 14) for **commemorāvissent**; **superārint**, Perfect Subjunctive (I. 40) for **superāverint**; **superāssent** (I. 40) for **superāvissent**.
- (2) **cōnsuērunt** (III. 8, etc.) for **cōnsuēverunt**; **cōnsuērint** (I. 44, etc.) for **cōnsuēverint**; **cōnsuēsse** (I. 14) for **cōnsuēvisse**.
- (3) **audiērunt** (V. 28) for **audivērunt**; **audierit** (IV. 5) for **audiverit**; **audierant** (II. 12, VI. 87) for **audiverant**; **audissent** (VII. 62) for **audivissent**; **audietis** (C. III. 87) for **audivistis**.

*b.* The Future Passive Participle, or Gerundive, sometimes has the ending **-undus** instead of **-endus**, as **faciundī** (I. 7), **potiundī** (II. 7).

#### IRREGULAR VERBS

65. Of the Irregular Verbs Caesar most frequently uses **sum**, **dō**, **eō**, **ferō**, **fiō**, **volō** and certain compounds.

66. *a.* Of the compounds of **sum** Caesar uses **absum**, **adsum**, **dēsum**, **intersum**, **possum**, **praesum**, **prōsum**, **subsum**, and **supersum**. These are inflected like **sum** (§2), excepting **possum**; but in **prō-sum** (**prōfuisse**, VI. 40) the preposition has the form **prōd-** before vowels, as **prōdest**.

*b.* **Possum**, *I am able*, is inflected as follows:

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS:

		<b>possum</b>	<b>posse</b>	<b>potul</b>		
		<b>INDICATIVE MOOD</b>			<b>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD</b>	
		<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>		<b>SINGULAR</b>	<b>PLURAL</b>
<i>Pres.</i>		<b>possum</b>	<b>possumus</b>	<i>Pres.</i>	<b>possim</b>	<b>possimus</b>
		<b>potes</b>	<b>potestis</b>		<b>possis</b>	<b>possitis</b>
		<b>potest</b>	<b>possunt</b>		<b>possit</b>	<b>possint</b>
<i>Imp.</i>		<b>poteram</b> , <b>poterāis</b> , etc.	<b>poterāmus</b> <b>-erātis</b> , etc.	<i>Imp.</i>	<b>possem</b>	<b>possemus</b>
					<b>possēs</b>	<b>possētis</b>
<i>Fut.</i>		<b>poterō</b> , <b>poteris</b> , etc.	<b>poterimus</b>		<b>posset</b>	<b>possent</b>
				<i>Perf.</i>	<b>potuerim</b>	<b>potuerimus</b>
<i>Perf.</i>		<b>potuī</b> , <b>potuistī</b> , etc.	<b>potuimus</b>		<b>potueris</b>	<b>potueritis</b>
					<b>potuerit</b>	<b>potuerint</b>
<i>Plup.</i>		<b>potueram</b> , <b>potuerās</b> , etc.	<b>potuerāmus</b>	<i>Plup.</i>	<b>potuissē</b>	<b>potuissēmus</b>
					<b>potuissēs</b>	<b>potuissētis</b>
<i>Fut. P.</i>		<b>potuerō</b> , <b>potueris</b> , etc.	<b>potuerimus</b>		<b>potuisset</b>	<b>potuissent</b>

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* posse  
*Perf.* potuisse

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* potēns (*used as an adjective*)  
*Gen.* potētis

67. *a.* **Dō, dare, give**, has **-a-** instead of **-ā-** in the Present System except in the Second Person of the Present Indicative and the Present Imperative. The inflection of the Perfect System (**dedī, etc.**), is regular.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

**dō dare dedī datus**

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dō</b>	<b>damus</b>
	<b>dās</b>	<b>datīs</b>
	<b>dat'</b>	<b>dant</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>dabam, etc.</b>	<b>dabāmus</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>dabō, etc.</b>	<b>dabimus</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>dedī, etc.</b>	<b>dedimus</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>dederam, etc.</b>	<b>dederāmus</b>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>dederō, etc.</b>	<b>dederimus</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dem</b>	<b>dēmus</b>
	<b>dēs</b>	<b>dētīs</b>
	<b>det</b>	<b>dent</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>darem</b>	<b>darēmus</b>
	<b>darēs</b>	<b>darētīs</b>
	<b>daret</b>	<b>darent</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>dederim, etc.</b>	<b>dederimus, etc.</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>dedissem, etc.</b>	<b>dedissemus, etc.</b>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dā</b>	<b>date</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>datō</b>	<b>datōte</b>
	<b>datō</b>	<b>dantō</b>

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>dare</b>	<b>dāns</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>dedisse</b>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>datūrus esse</b>	<b>datūrus</b>

## GERUND

**dandi, etc.**

## SUPINE

**datum, datū**

*b.* The Passive of **dō** has **-a-** instead of **-ā-**, as **darī, datur, dabar, dabor, darer, datus, etc.**; the First Person of the Present Indicative Passive is not in use.

*c.* The compounds of **dō** are of the Third Conjugation except **circumdō**, which is inflected like **dō**.

68. *a.* **Ēō, ire, go**, is thus inflected:

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

**eō ire ii (iv) itum (est)**

## INDICATIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>eō</b>	<b>īmus</b>
	<b>īs</b>	<b>ītīs</b>
	<b>it</b>	<b>eunt</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>ībam, etc.</b>	<b>ībāmus</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>ībō, etc.</b>	<b>ībimus</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>ii</b>	<b>īimus</b>
	<b>īstī or iistī</b>	<b>īstīs or iistīs</b>
	<b>iit</b>	<b>iērunt or iēre</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>ieram, etc.</b>	<b>ierāmus</b>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>ierō, etc.</b>	<b>ierimus</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>eam</b>	<b>eāmus</b>
	<b>eās</b>	<b>eātīs</b>
	<b>eat</b>	<b>eant</b>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>īrem</b>	<b>irēmus</b>
	<b>irēs</b>	<b>irētīs</b>
	<b>iret</b>	<b>irent</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>ierim</b>	<b>ierimus</b>
	<b>ieris</b>	<b>ierītīs</b>
	<b>ierit</b>	<b>ierint</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>issem, etc.</b>	<b>issēmus, etc.</b>

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ite</i>	<i>Pres. ire</i>	<i>Pres. iēns</i>	<i>Gen. euntis</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>itō</i>	<i>itōte</i>	<i>Perf. isse</i>		
	<i>itō</i>	<i>euntō</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus esse</i>	<i>Fut. itūrus</i>	<i>Gerundive eundum</i>
			<i>Pass. iri</i>		

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, eundō, etc.	itum, itū

b. Caesar uses the Compounds *abeō*, *adeō*, *coeō* (VI. 22), *exeō*, *ineō*, *obeō*, *prōdeō*, *redeō*, *subeō*, and *trāseō*, inflected like *eō*.

c. Transitive compounds of *eō* are used also in the Passive, as *numerus infātur*, the number was cast up (VII. 76); *initā aestāte*, at the beginning of summer (II. 2); *trānsitur*, is crossed (I. 6).

d. Impersonal Passive forms of *eō* are *irī* (III. 18), *irētur* (III. 24).

69. a. *Ferō*, *ferre*, bear, carry, is inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

<i>Active.</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>tuli</i>	<i>lātus</i>
<i>Passive.</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferri</i>		<i>lātus sum</i>

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferō</i> <i>fers</i> <i>fert</i>	<i>ferimus</i> <i>fertis</i> <i>ferunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferēbam, etc.</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tuli</i>	<i>tulimus</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulerāmus</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>tulerō</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>feram</i> <i>ferās</i> <i>ferat</i>	<i>ferāmus</i> <i>ferātis</i> <i>ferant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferrem</i> <i>ferrēs</i> <i>ferret</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i> <i>ferrētis</i> <i>ferrent</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>tulissem</i>	<i>tulissēmus</i>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fer</i>	<i>ferite</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertō</i> <i>fertō</i>	<i>fertōte</i> <i>feruntō</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>feror</i> <i>ferris</i> <i>fertur</i>	<i>ferimur</i> <i>ferimini</i> <i>feruntur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lāti sumus</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lāti erāmus</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>lātus erō</i>	<i>lāti erimus</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferar</i> <i>ferāris, or -re</i> <i>feratur</i>	<i>ferāmur</i> <i>ferāmini</i> <i>ferantur</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>ferrer</i> <i>ferrēris</i> <i>ferrētur</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i> <i>ferrēmini</i> <i>ferrentur</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>	<i>lāti simus</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>	<i>lāti essēmus</i>

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertor</i> <i>fertor</i>	<i>feruntor</i>

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ferre	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns	<i>Pres.</i> ferri	
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse	( <i>Gen.</i> ferentis)	<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i> lātum iri	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus or ferundus
GERUND	SUPINE		
<i>Gen.</i> ferendī			
<i>Dat.</i> ferendō			
<i>Acc.</i> ferendū	<i>Acc.</i> lātum		
<i>Abl.</i> ferendō	<i>Abl.</i> lātū		

b. Caesar uses the Compounds, *afferō*, *anteferō*, *conferō*, *dēferō*, *differō*, *efferrō*, *inferō*, *offerō*, *perferō*, *praeferō*, *prōferō* and *referō*, which are inflected like *ferō*.

70. a. *Fīō*, *become* (with -I- except in *fīt* and before -e-), is used as the Passive of *faciō*, with the meaning *be made*, *be done*. It is inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:		<i>fīō</i>	<i>fieri</i>	<i>factus sum</i>
INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD		
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fīō</i>	<i>fīmus</i>	<i>Pres.</i> <i>fīam</i>	<i>fīāmus</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fītis</i>		<i>fīātis</i>
	<i>fīt</i>	<i>fīunt</i>		<i>fīant</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>fīēbam, etc.</i>	<i>fīēbāmus</i>	<i>Imp.</i> <i>fīerem</i>	<i>fīerēmus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>fīēmus</i>		<i>fīerētis</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>facti sumus</i>		<i>fīerent</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>facti erāmus</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus sim</i>	<i>facti simus</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>factus erō</i>	<i>facti erimus</i>	<i>Plup.</i> <i>factus essem</i>	<i>facti essemus</i>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <i>fī</i>	<i>fite</i>
------------------------	-------------

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> <i>fieri</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>factum iri</i>

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus</i>
<i>Ger.</i> <i>faciendus</i>

b. Of compounds of *fīō* Caesar uses *confieri* (VII. 58) and *col-labefieri* (C. II. 6).



c. Compounds of *facio* with Prepositions have their own Passive forms; so *oñfecta erat*, *had been made* (I. 29); *patefacti*, *be kept open* (III. 1).

71. *Volō*, *I wish*, and its compounds *nōlō*, *I am unwilling*, and *mālō*, *I prefer*, are inflected as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	<i>volō</i>	<i>velle</i>	<i>volui</i>
	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>nolui</i>
	<i>mālō</i>	<i>malle</i>	<i>malui</i>

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
<i>volō</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nōlim</i>	<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālim</i>
<i>vis</i>	<i>velis</i>	<i>nōn vis</i>	<i>nōlis</i>	<i>māvis</i>	<i>mālis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>velit</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlit</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālit</i>
<i>volumus</i>	<i>velimus</i>	<i>nolumus</i>	<i>nōlimus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>	<i>mālimus</i>
<i>vultis</i>	<i>velitis</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>nōlitis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>	<i>mālitis</i>
<i>volunt</i>	<i>velint</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālunt</i>	<i>mālint</i>
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
<i>volēbam, etc.</i>	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>	<i>māllem</i>
FUTURE		FUTURE		FUTURE	
<i>volam, etc.</i>		<i>nōlam</i>		<i>mālam</i>	
PERFECT		PERFECT		PERFECT	
<i>volui, etc.</i>	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>nōlui</i>	<i>nōluerim</i>	<i>mālui</i>	<i>māluerim</i>
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>volueram</i>	<i>voluissem</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>nōluissem</i>	<i>mālueram</i>	<i>māluissem</i>
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>voluerō, etc.</i>		<i>nōluerō</i>		<i>māluerō</i>	

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>nōli</i>	<i>nolite</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nolitōte</i>
	<i>nōlitō</i>	<i>nōluntō</i>

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>velle</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluisse</i>

## INFINITIVE

<i>nolle</i>
<i>nōluisse</i>

## INFINITIVE

<i>malle</i>
<i>māluisse</i>

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volēns</i>
--------------	---------------

<i>nōlēns</i>
---------------

—
---

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

72. a. Caesar uses one or more forms of each of the following Defective Verbs: **inquam**, *I say*, which he uses only in direct quotations, in the Third Person Singular Indicative Present, **inquit**, *he says, says he*; **coepi**, *I have begun, I began*, which belongs chiefly to the Perfect System; **memini**, *I remember*, and **odi**, *I hate*, which are Perfect in form, but Present in meaning.

b. **Coepi**, **memini** and **odi** are inflected as follows:

INDICATIVE MOOD			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD		
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>coepi</b> , etc.	<b>memini</b> <b>odi</b>	<b>coeperim</b>	<b>meminerim</b>	<b>oderim</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>coeperam</b>	<b>memineram</b>	<b>coepissem</b>	<b>meminissem</b>	<b>odissem</b>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>coeperō</b>	<b>meminerō</b> <b>oderō</b>			
IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		
	<i>Sing.</i> <b>mementō</b>		<i>Perf.</i> <b>coepisse</b>	<b>meminisse</b>	<b>odisse</b>
	<i>Plur.</i> <b>mementōte</b>		<i>Fut.</i> <b>coepturus</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>essurus</b>
			PARTICIPLE		
			<i>Perf.</i> <b>coeptus</b> , <i>begun</i>		<b>odius</b>
			<i>Fut.</i> <b>coepturus</b>		<b>essurus</b>

c. The Passive forms of **coepi** are used with the Passive Infinitive, as **lapidēs iaci coepti sunt**, *stones began to be thrown* (II. 6).

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

73. a. Of the Impersonal Verbs Caesar oftenest uses **licet**, *it is permitted* (I. 7) and **oportet**, *it is necessary, it behooves* (I. 4); he has also **paenitet**, *it makes sorry* (IV. 5) and **pudet**, *it makes ashamed* (VII. 42).

b. The Impersonal **licet** is inflected as follows:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>licet</b> , <i>it is permitted</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<b>liceat</b> , <i>it may be permitted</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<b>licēbat</b> , <i>it was permitted</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<b>licēret</b> , <i>it might be permitted</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>licēbit</b> , <i>it will be permitted</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<b>licuerit</b> , <i>it may have been permitted</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>licuit</b> , <i>it has been permitted</i> or <i>it was permitted</i>	<i>Plup.</i>	<b>licuisset</b> , <i>it might have been permitted</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>licuerat</b> , <i>it had been permitted</i>		
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<b>licuerit</b> , <i>it will have been permitted</i>		

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.*    **licēre**, *to be permitted*

*Perf.*    **licuisse**, *to have been permitted*

**tabella** (C. III. 83), *voting tablet (tabula)*; **porcellus**, *pig*, dim. from **porculus**, *young hog, pig*, which is itself a dim. from **porous**, *hog*, (p. 463).

b. Nouns with the Suffix **-ātus**, denoting an official position or body, as **cōsul-ātus** (I. 35), *consulship (cōnsul)*; **magistrātus** (I. 4), *magistracy, magistrate (magister)*; **senātus** (I. 3), *senate (senex)*.

c. A few Abstract Nouns in **-tās** and **-tūs**, as **cīvi-tās** (I. 2), *citizenship, state (cīvis)*; **vir-tūs** (I. 1), *valor (vir)*.

d. Adjectives with the Suffix **-eus**, denoting material, as **aureus** (V. 12), *of gold (aurum)*; **ferreus** (III. 13), *of iron (ferrum)*.

e. Adjectives with the Suffixes **-ius, -icous, -cus, -ānus, -īnus, -nus, -ālis, -ilis, -ārius, -āris, -ivus**, meaning *connected with, belonging to, from, etc.*, as **patr-ius** (II. 15), *of a father, ancestral (pater)*; **bell-icous** (VI. 24), *of war (bellum)*; **Gall-icous** (I. 31), *Gallic*; **German-icous** (IV. 16), *Germanic*; **urb-ānus** (VII. 1), *of a city, of the city (urbs)*; **Rōm-ānus**, *of Rome (Rōma)*; **Lat-īnus**, *of Latium, Latin*; **nāv-ālis** (III. 19), *naval (nāvis)*; **legiōn-ārius** (I. 51), *of a legion, legionary (legiō)*; **cōsul-āris** (C. III. 82), *consular*; **aest-ivus** (VI. 4), *of summer*.

f. Adjectives with the suffix **-ōsus**, denoting fullness, as **pericu-lōsus** (I. 33), *full of danger (periculum)*; **bellic-ōsus** (I. 10), *warlike (bellic-us, bellum)*.

g. Denominative Verbs, of the different conjugations, as **cūrō, -āre** (I. 19), *care for, take care (cūra)*; **laudō, -āre** (C. III. 87), *praise (laus, laudis)*; **tribuō, -ere** (I. 13), *assign (tribus)*; **finiō, -ire** (IV. 16), *limit (finis)*; **partiōr, -iri** (III. 10), *divide (pars, partis)*.

76. a. Derived from Adjectives are Abstract Nouns with the Suffixes **-tia, -ia, -tās, and -tūdō**, denoting quality or condition, as **dūri-tia** (VI. 21), *hardness (dūrus)*; **audāc-ia** (I. 18), *boldness (audāx)*; **grāt-ia** (I. 9), *favor (grātus)*; **cupidi-tās** (I. 2), *desire (cupīdus)*; **forti-tūdō** (I. 2), *bravery (fortis)*.

b. Derived from Adverbs are several Adjectives in **-urnus, -turnus, -tinus**, referring to Time, as **dīd-turnus** (I. 14), *long-continued (dīd)*, and **dīd-tinus** (V. 52), *protracted (dīd)*; so **Crāstinus** (C. III. 91), like the English name *Morrow*, from **crās-tinus**, *of to-morrow (crās)*.

c. A few Adjectives have a Diminutive in **-ulus**; as **tantulus**, *so small*, from **tantus** (IV. 22).

77. Adverbs<sup>1</sup> are sometimes formed from the Stem of the Perfect Passive Participle with the suffix **-im**, as **stat-im** (I. 53), *immediately*

<sup>1</sup> The formation of Adverbs from Adjectives is treated under Adverbs, 34, 35.

(*status*, *stō*); and from nouns, with the ending *-tim* (or *-im*), as *virī-tim* (VII. 71), *man by man* (*vir*), and *part-im* (II. 1), *partly*, which was originally an Accusative of *pars*.

78. Verbs derived from Verbs are:

a. Frequentatives, expressing repeated or intensive action; frequentatives derived from Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *-itō*, as *olāmitō* (V. 7), *cry out loudly, shout* (*olāmō*); others end in *-tō* or *-sō*, as *iactō* (I. 25), *toss about, cast* (*iaciō*), *concurō* (V. 83), *rush hither and yon, rush about* (*concurrō*).

b. Inchoatives, or Inceptives, expressing the beginning of an action or state, a becoming; they end in *-sō*, preceded by *-ā-*, *-ē-*, or *-ī-*, as *mātūrēsō* (VI. 29), *become ripe* (*mātūrō*).

79. a. In the first part of a Compound Word the final vowel of the Stem of a Noun or Adjective is dropped before a vowel, and becomes *-i-* before a consonant, while in the case of consonant Stems *-i-* is often inserted; in the second part vowel changes frequently appear. Thus *signi-fer* (II. 25), *standard-bearer* (for *signo-fer*, *signum* + *fer-* in *ferō*); *prīn-ceps* (I. 30), *leader*, i.e. *taking foremost place* (for *primo-cap-s*, *primus* + *cap-* in *capīō*); *ampli-ficō* (II. 14), *enlarge* (for *amplo-fac-ō*, *amplus* + *fac-* in *faciō*).

b. The first part of a Compound is often a Preposition or other indeclinable word, as *per-ficiō* (I. 3), *carry through* (*per* + *faciō*); *in-iussū* (I. 19), *without orders* (negative *in-* + *iussū*); *bi-enn-ium* (I. 3), (*period of*) *two years* (for *bi-anno-ium*, *bis* + *annus* + suffix *-ium*); *quotannū* (I. 36), *annually* (*quot* + Ablative of *annus*).

c. Compounds originating in phrases are sometimes declinable, as *prō-cōnsul*, *proconsul*, Abl. *prō-cōnsule* (VI. 1); sometimes indeclinable, as *ob-viam*, *in the way* (VII. 12, 28).

d. The following indeclinable prefixes are found only in Compound Words:

**amb-, am-, (an-)**, *about*, as in *ān-frāctus* (VII. 46), *curve*.

**com-, co-** (old form of *cum*, *with*), *with, together*; see under *cum* in Vocabulary.

**dis-**, appearing also as **dir-, dī-**, *apart*, as in *dis-cēdō* (I. 16), *go apart*; *dir-imō* (I. 46), *take apart, break off*; *dī-mitto* (I. 18), *send about, send off*.

**in-**, = *un-*, *not*, as in *incertus* (IV. 5); to be carefully distinguished from the preposition *in* in composition.

**por-**, *forth, forward*, as in *por-rigō* (II. 19), *extend*.

**re-, red-**, *back*, as in *re-maneō* (I. 39), *stay behind*; *red-eō* (I. 29), *return*.

**sē-, sēd-**, *apart*, as in *sē-parō* (VII. 63), *separate*, *sēd-itiō* (VII. 28), *mutiny*.

## THE DERIVATION OF ENGLISH WORDS FROM THE LATIN<sup>1</sup>

**80. a.** Very many of the Words in the English Language in common use are derived, indirectly or directly, from the Latin.

The percentage of classical Latin words that have been taken over into English directly,<sup>2</sup> however, is exceedingly small; the people whose name survives in the word "English" reached Britain too late for any direct contact with classical Latin. But in the Middle Ages a modified Latin was spoken and written by educated men all over Europe; and classical Latin authors continued to be read, less in the Middle Ages, but extensively after the Revival of Learning. Meanwhile the Latin spoken by the common people in Italy, France, Spain, and other countries conquered by the Romans, had developed into the Romance languages, French, Italian, Spanish and kindred tongues; and after the Norman Conquest, in the eleventh century, French was both spoken and written in England. Thus it happens that words of Latin origin have come down into the English of to-day in various ways, some through the writings and speech of those who read classical Latin, a great many through mediæval Latin, but far the greatest number through the Romance languages, particularly French.

**b.** Some Latin words appear in English in their Latin forms, though they may have passed through other forms and may now have a different meaning; as "arbor" (II. 17), "census" (I. 29), "color" (V. 14), "duplex" (II. 29), "senator" (II. 28), "victor" (I. 31), and "omnibus," meaning originally *for all*, from the Dative Plural Masculine of *omnis* (I. 1).

**81.** Many Latin Words appear in English with slight change of spelling, as "cent" from *centum* (I. 37), "condition" from *conditio* (I. 28) through a late spelling *conditiō*; "difficulty" from *difficultas*

---

<sup>1</sup> Classes in Caesar find it a useful exercise to make, on separate slips or cards, a list of Latin words in each lesson having English derivatives, adding the words derived from them. The Latin words from time to time can be classified, in groups corresponding with the numbered paragraphs 80-85, the words in each group being arranged in alphabetical order.

<sup>2</sup> The editor is indebted to Professor O. F. Emerson, of Western Reserve University, for helpful suggestions.

(II. 20), "fort" from *fortis* (I. 48), "future" from *futūrus* (I. 10), the Future Participle associated with *sum*; "office" from *officium* (I. 40), "senate" from *senātus* (I. 8), and "victory" from *victōria* (I. 53); "false" from *falsus* (VI. 20), and "pedal" from *pedālis* (III. 13), which goes back to *pēs*, Gen. *pedis*, *foot* (I. 25); "admire" from *admiror* (I. 14), "ascend" from *ascendō* (I. 21), "accept" from *accipio* (I. 14) through the Frequentative *acceptō*, *accept*, which is formed from *acceptus* (I. 48), Participle of *accipio*.

82. a. Some English Words have been formed from Latin Words by Analogy of Latin or French Words already in the language. Examples are "magistracy" and "classical."

b. "Magistracy" goes back to *magistrātus* (I. 4). From *magistrātus* came "magistrate," to which the suffix "-cy" was added from Analogy to the English nouns of Latin origin ending in "-cy"<sup>1</sup>; this suffix represents the Latin termination *-tia*, as in "clemency," from *clēmētia* (II. 14). With the addition of the suffix "-cy" the last two letters of "magistrate" disappeared; hence "magistracy."

c. "Classical" comes from the Adjective *classicus*, *first class*, which goes back to *classis*, *a class*, though in Caesar *classis* (III. 14, etc.) has only the meaning *fleet*, as a class or division of military forces. From *classicus* comes "classic"; the suffix "-al" was added from Analogy to the English Words which are derived from the Latin Adjectives ending in *-alis*, as "social" from *socialis* (ultimately from *socius*, *fellow, ally*, I. 5), "hospital" from *hospitālis* (ultimately from *hospes*, Gen. *hospitis*, *guest-friend*, I. 53), and "legal" from *lēgālis* (ultimately from *lēx*, *lēgis*, *law*, I. 1). Similarly, "aural" is derived from *auris*, *ear* (VI. 26), "continual" from *continuus* (I. 48), and "senatorial" from *senātorius* (C. III. 83), the suffix "-al" replacing the Latin terminations.

83. a. Some English Words are formed from Words of ultimate Latin origin by the addition of a suffix of English origin. Thus "falsehood" comes from "false" (Latin *falsus*, VI. 20) with the suffix "-hood" denoting quality; "citizenship" from "citizen," which goes back ultimately to Latin *civis* (VII. 77), with the suffix "-ship" denoting state or office; "instantly" from "instant" (Latin *instāns*, Gen. *instantis*, Present Participle of *instō*, I. 16), and "nobly" from "noble" (Latin *nōbilis*, I. 2), by addition of the suffix "-ly," which has the same origin as the English word "like."

<sup>1</sup> This suffix has no connection with a similar suffix of Greek origin found in "democracy" and a few other English words.

b. A few English Words are formed from Latin Words by the addition of an English suffix of Greek origin; as "jurist" from *iūs*, Gen. *iūris* (I. 4) with the suffix "-ist," which represents a Greek termination denoting the agent; "Caesarism," "nihilism," "terrorism" from *Caesar* (I. 7), *nihil* (I. 11), and *terror* (II. 12) with the suffix "-ism," also of Greek origin, implying doctrine or practice.

84. Many Latin Words, especially those that have come into English through the French, have undergone so great changes that their Latin origin is not at once perceived, though it can always be traced through intermediate forms. Such are "captaincy," from "captain," which is ultimately derived from *caput* (I. 29), *head*, with the suffix "-cy" (82, b); "city," from *civitas* (I. 2); "lieutenant," from *locum tenēns* (Present Participle of *teneō*, *hold*), one holding another's office or place; "madam," "Madonna," from *mea domina*, Feminine corresponding to the Masculine *meus dominus* (Dative *dominūs*, VI. 13); "governor" from *gubernātor* (III. 9); "peril" from *periculum* (I. 17), and "perilous" from *periculōsus* (I. 33), "preach" from *praedicō* (I. 44), and "receive" from *recipiō* (I. 5).

85. A few common abbreviations represent Latin Words; as "no." in "no. 9," where "no." stands not for "number" but for *numerus* (I. 5), the Ablative of *numerus*. Also, the symbols for English money, £ s. d., now read as "pounds, shillings, pence," are derived from Latin words: £ = *libra*, a *pound* in weight, whence *libra*, weighing a pound (VII. 81); s. = *solidus*, a Roman gold coin; and d. = *dēnārius*, a Roman silver coin, translated *penny*, though its value as silver was originally between fifteen and twenty cents in our currency. *Solidus*, the name of the coin, came from the Adjective *solidus*, from which our word "solid" is derived; it survives in our word "soldier" as "one having pay" for military service. *Dēnārius* came from *dēni*, *ten each* (I. 43) because it originally contained ten of the monetary units called *as*, and *as* survives in our word "ace."

Our abbreviation "Mr." is for "Master," but "Master" is of Latin origin, being derived from *magister* (C. III. 43).

86. The value of the contribution which the English language has received from the Latin cannot be measured in percentages of words. The words of English origin which we use are largely concrete, and well fitted to express fundamental ideas; but we are indebted to the Latin for a very large proportion of the words employed in the arts, science and education, which fit the English language to be the vehicle of expression for a constantly developing civilization.

## SYNTAX

### SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

87. *a.* A Noun or Pronoun, or an Adjective taking the place of a Noun, when used as the Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case; as, **lĕgātī revertērunt**, *the envoys returned* (I. 8); **integrī dēfessīs succēderent**, *fresh men were relieving the exhausted* (VII. 41).

*b.* A Personal Pronoun used as a Subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast; as, **Dēsillite, commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum . . . officium praestiterō**, *Leap down, comrades, unless you want to abandon your eagle to the enemy; I at any rate shall have done my duty*. Here **ego** is emphatic, but the subject of the Plural Verbs is not emphatic, and hence is not expressed (IV. 25).

*c.* Instead of a Noun or other Substantive word an Infinitive or a Clause may be used as the Subject of a Verb; as, **Commodissimum visum est Gāium Valerium Procellum . . . mittere**, *It seemed most expedient to send Gaius Valerius Procellus*, where **mittere** is the subject of **visum est** (I. 47).

88. *a.* A Predicate Noun, in the same case as the Subject, is used with **sum** and the Passives of Verbs of *calling, choosing, making, esteeming*, and the like; as, **Diviciō princeps fuit**, *Divico was the leading man* (I. 13); **qui . . . Galli appellantur**, *who are called Gauls* (I. 1); **duces ei dēliguntur**, *those are chosen (as) leaders* (III. 23).

*b.* A Predicate Noun after Passive Participles is similarly used; as, **obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis**, *having received the foremost men of the state as hostages*, lit. *the foremost men of the state having been received as hostages* (II. 13).

89. *a.* A Verb is sometimes omitted when it can easily be supplied from the context; as, **aciēs** (I. 25), where **intulit** is to be supplied.

*b.* Forms of **sum** are often omitted in the compound tenses; as, **occisa** (I. 53) for **occisa est**, *was killed*.

*c.* In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, and also in the Present Passive Infinitive of the Periphrastic Conjugation, **esse**



is frequently omitted; as, *conciliatūrum* (I. 3) for *conciliatūrum esse*; *itūrōs atque futūrōs* (I. 13) for *itūrōs esse atque futūrōs esse*; *lātūrī* for *lātūrī esse* (I. 40); *ocoīsum . . . pulsum . . . missum* (I. 7) for *ocoīsum esse . . . pulsum esse . . . missum esse*; *exspectandum* (I. 11) for *exspectandum esse*.

90. *a.* In certain connections *est*, *erat*, etc., may best be translated *there is*, *there was*, etc., with the Subject following; as, *Flūmen est Arar*, *There is a river, the Arar* (I. 12); *Erant itinera duo*, *There were two routes* (I. 6).

*b.* Occasionally *sum* may be used in like manner in translating other verbs than *sum*; as, *Relinquēbatur ūna via*, *There remained only the route* (I. 9).

## NOUNS

91. *a.* Nouns used as Appositives, whether in the Nominative or in the Oblique cases, agree in case with the Nouns to which they belong; as, *Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum*, *Ariovistus, king of the Germans* (I. 31); *ā Bibracte, oppidō* (Ablative) *Aedūōrum*, *from Bibracte, a town of the Aeduians* (I. 28).

*b.* Nouns in Predicate Apposition sometimes agree with an unexpressed Subject, which is implied in the Verb; as, *hominēs . . . (ei) afficiēbantur*, *(being) men . . . they were sorely troubled* (I. 2).

*c.* A Noun referring to a Part may be in Apposition to a Noun expressing the Whole (Partitive Apposition); as, *itinera duo: unum (iter), alterum (iter)*, *two routes: the one (route) . . . , the other . . .* (I. 6).

92. *a.* A Plural Noun is often used in Latin where English usage prefers the Singular; as, *ad effēminandōs animos*, *to weaken the courage* (I. 1).

*b.* An Abstract Noun is sometimes used in Latin where English usage expects a Concrete Plural Noun; as, *coniūratiōnem nobilitātis*, *a conspiracy of the nobles, lit. of the nobility* (I. 2).

*c.* Abstract Nouns are sometimes used in the Plural to denote instances of the Quality; as, *ad frigora atque aestūs vitandōs*, *to avoid heat and cold* (VI. 22).

## THE VOCATIVE CASE

93. The Vocative Case is used only in Direct Address; as, *Quid dubitās, Vorenē?* *Vorenus, why do you hesitate?* (V. 44).

# THE GENITIVE CASE

94. a. In the Possessive Genitive the idea of Possession or of Close Connection is generally prominent; as, *finēs Sēquanōrum*, the territory of the Sequanians, the Sequanians' country (I. 8); *ā hūmānitātē prōvinciāe*, from the refinement of the Province (I. 1).

b. The Possessive Genitive is used idiomatically with *causā*, *grātiā* and *instar*; as, *auxilii causā*, as an auxiliary force, lit. for the sake of support (II. 24); *sui pūrgandi grātiā*, in order to clear themselves (VII. 43); *instar mūri mūnimentum*, a barrier like a wall, lit. the image of a wall (II. 17).

c. A Genitive, perhaps Possessive in Origin, is used with *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*; as, *prīdiē eius diēi*, the day before that day, on the previous day (I. 47); *postrīdiē eius diēi*, the next day (II. 12).

d. With *sum* and *fiō* the Possessive Genitive is used Predicatively with the meaning (the business) of, belonging to, etc.; as, *neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Rōmāni*, and he judged that Gaul did not belong to Ariovistus (lit. was not Ariovistus's) any more than to the Roman people (I. 45).

95. The Subjective Genitive designates the Person or Agent whose act or feeling is expressed in the Noun on which the Genitive depends; as, *ab Ariovisti iniūriā*, from the wrongdoing of Ariovistus (I. 31); *terrōre equōrum*, the fright caused by the horses, lit. of the horses (IV. 33).

96. The Appositional Genitive defines or explains the Noun on which it depends; as, *iniūria retentōrum equitum*, the wrong (committed by) detaining the knights, the detaining of the knights being the wrong expressed in *iniūria* (III. 10).

97. a. The Partitive Genitive, or Genitive of the Whole, designates the Whole of which a Part is expressed in the Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, or Numeral on which it depends; as, *quārum ūnam (partem)*, of which (i. e. three parts) one (part) (I. 1); *milia passuum CCXL*, two hundred and forty miles, lit. two hundred and forty thousands of paces (I. 2); *primōs civitātis*, the first (men) of the state (II. 3); *nihil reliquū . . . fēcērunt*, they spared no effort, lit. nothing of the rest (II. 28).

b. The Part on which the Genitive of the Whole depends may be indefinitely expressed by the Singular Neuter of a Pronoun or of an Adjective, used substantively, or by the Adverb *satis* used substantively; as, *quid negōtiū*, what business, lit. what of business (I. 34);

*quid sui cōsiliū sit, what his plan was (I. 21); aliquid novī cōsiliū, some new scheme or other (IV. 32); quantum bonī, how great good (I. 40); plūs doloris, more suffering (I. 20); tōtius Galliae plurimum possent, were the most powerful of all Gaul (I. 3); satis causae, sufficient ground, lit. enough of cause (I. 19).*

c. In the English phrase *all of these* there is no Partitive idea, because *these* and *all* refer to the same whole. Such phrases are not expressed in Latin by the Partitive Genitive but by words agreeing in Case; as, **HI omnēs**, *all these* (I. 1); **complūrēs nostrī**, *a large number of our men* (I. 52); **omnium vestrum**, *of all of you, of you all* (VII. 77).

d. Caesar sometimes uses **dē** or **ex** with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with **quidam** and words referring to Number. Thus, **quidam ex his**, *some of these* (II. 17); **pauci dē nostrīs**, *a few of our men* (I. 15).

e. A Genitive of the Whole may be used with an Adverb in the Superlative Degree; as **Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt**, *of the gods they worship Mercury above all others* (VI. 17).

98. a. A variety of the Genitive of the Whole is the Genitive of Material, which is used to designate the Material or Units included in the Noun on which it depends; as, **multitudinem hominum**, *a force of men, lit. a multitude (made up) of men* (I. 4); **aciem legionum quattuor**, *a line (consisting) of four legions* (I. 24).

b. The Material of which anything is made is expressed by the Ablative with **ex**; as, **scūtis ex cortice factis**, *with shields made of bark* (II. 33).

99. The Genitive is used to express Origin; as, **Catamantaloedis filio**, *son of Catamantaloedes* (I. 3).

100. a. The Genitive of Quality and the Genitive of Measure are modified by Adjectives or Numerals; as, **hominēs magnae virtutis**, *men of great valor* (II. 15); **mūrum in altitudinem pedum sedecim**, *a rampart sixteen feet high, lit. to the height of sixteen feet* (I. 8).

b. The Genitive of Quality and Genitive of Measure may be used predicatively; as, **Erant eius modi sitūs oppidōrum**, *The strongholds were so situated, lit. the situations of the strongholds were of such a character* (III. 12).

101. The Neuter Genitives **magnī**, **tantī**, and some others are used predicatively, without a Noun, to express Indefinite Value; as, **magnī habebātur**, *was considered of great weight* (IV. 21); **tantī**, *of so great account* (I. 20).

**102.** The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns to denote the Object toward which Action or Feeling is directed, and with Adjectives to limit their application; as, *rei pūblicae* (Genitive) *iniūriam*, *the wrong done to the state* (I. 20); *rēgnī cupiditāte inductus*, *led by desire of kingly power* (I. 2); *imperfītum rērum*, *unversed in affairs* (I. 44); *alicuius iniūriae cōnsciū*, *conscious of any wrong-doing* (I. 14).

**103. a.** Caesar uses *reminiscor* and *obliscor* with a Genitive of the thing remembered or forgotten; as, *reminiscerētur incommodī*, *he should recall the disaster* (I. 13); *contumēliae obliscō*, *to be forgetful of an affront* (I. 14).

**b.** A Genitive of the Charge is used with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning; as, *prōditiōnis insimulātus*, *accused of treachery* (VII. 20); *capitis damnārent*, *should condemn (to loss) of civil rights*, lit. *of head* (C. III. 83).

**c.** Caesar uses the impersonal *paenitet* with the Accusative of the Person repenting and the Genitive of the Object of Repentance; as, *quōrum eōs paenitere necesse est*, *of which they of necessity repent*, lit. *of which it is necessary that it repent them* (IV. 5).

**d.** Caesar uses *interesse* with a Genitive Neuter to express the degree of concern; as, *magnī interesse arbitrābātur*, *he thought that it was of great importance* (V. 4).

**e.** With *interesse* Caesar uses a Genitive of the Interest concerned; as, *rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit* (Historical Present), *it concerned the State and their mutual welfare* (II. 5).

## THE DATIVE CASE

**104. a.** The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs which have a Direct Object in the Accusative, or an Infinitive Clause as Object, and also with the Passive of such Verbs; as, *dat* (Historical Present) *negōtium Senonibus*, *He assigned the task to the Senones* (II. 2); *nostris — dabātur*, *was given to our men* (IV. 29).

**b.** With such Verbs the place of the Direct Object may be taken by an Adverb or a Clause; as, *nō suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret*, *that he should not presume over-much upon his valor* (I. 13).

**105.** The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many Intransitive Verbs meaning *persuade*, *trust*, *distrust*; *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*; *pardon*, *spare*; *please*, *displease*, *favor*, *indulge*; *approach*; *envy*, *threaten*, *rebuke*, and some others; as, *persuādet Casticō*, *he persuades Casticus* (I. 3), that is, *he prevails upon Casticus*. The Roman point

of view in these verbs is somewhat different from that of the English, which with corresponding verbs generally uses a Direct Object.

The following are among the Intransitive Verbs thus used with the Dative by Caesar:

**accidit**, happens to (I. 18); **appropinquō**, approach (II. 10); **cēdō**, yield to (VII. 89); **concedō**, acknowledge inferiority to (IV. 7); **cōfidō**, trust (I. 42); **cōsulō**, look out for (VI. 31); **contingit**, it falls to the lot of (I. 43); **crēdō**, intrust (VI. 31); **cupiō**, wish well to (I. 18).

**dēspērō**, despair of (III. 12); **diffidō**, lose confidence in (VI. 38); **evenit**, it turns out (IV. 25); **faveō**, favor (VI. 7); **ignōscō**, pardon (I. 45); **imperō**, command (I. 28); **indulgeō**, treat with favor (I. 40); **invidēō**, envy, be jealous of (II. 31).

**licet**, it is permitted (I. 30); **medeor**, remedy (V. 24); **noceō**, do injury to (III. 13); **obtemperō**, submit to (IV. 21); **parcō**, spare (VI. 28); **pāreō**, obey (VI. 13); **persuādeō**, persuade (I. 2); **placet**, it pleases (I. 34); **prōspiciō**, arrange for (I. 23); **prōsum**, be of benefit to (VI. 40).

**repugnō**, contend against (I. 19); **resistō**, oppose (I. 25); **satisfaciō**, make restitution (I. 14); **serviō**, be the slave of (IV. 5), devote one's self to (VII. 34); **studeō**, be eager for (I. 9), give attention to (II. 17); **temperō**, restrain (I. 33).

**106. a.** A few Intransitive Verbs are also used Transitive by Caesar, and govern the Accusative; examples are, **impūnitātem concedere**, grant escape from punishment (I. 14); **militēs, quōs imperāverat**, the soldiers that he had levied (I. 7).

**b.** Verbs which take the Dative of the Indirect Object are in the Passive used only Impersonally; as, **Sibi persuādēri**, That the conviction was forced upon him, that he was persuaded (I. 40).

**107. a.** The Dative of the Indirect Object is used after many Verbs compounded with the Prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **com-** (for **cum**), **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **prae**, **sub**, and **super**; as, **omnibus praestārent**, they excelled all (I. 2).

**b.** Transitive Verbs compounded with these Prepositions may have both a Direct and an Indirect Object, the Dative depending not on the Preposition but on the Compound; as, **finitimis bellum inferre**, to wage war on their neighbors (I. 2).

**108. a.** The Dative is used after Adjectives meaning agreeable, friendly, hurtful, hostile, like, unlike, near, subject, obedient, suitable, appropriate, and many others; as, **plēbi acceptus**, acceptable to the people (I. 3); **proximi Germanis**, next to the Germans (I. 1); **locum idoneum castris**, a place suitable for a camp (II. 17).

**b.** **Similis** is used with the Genitive when referring to an inner or complete resemblance, as, **vērī simile**, probable, lit. having the likeness

of truth (III. 13); otherwise with the Dative; as, *fugae similis*, like a rout (V. 53).

109. *a.* The Dative of Reference designates the Person or Interest affected by the action or state expressed in a Verb, or in a Clause as a whole; it should be translated with *to, for, of, from, in*, or left untranslated, according to the meaning of the clause in which it appears, and the requirements of English idiom. Thus, *infūriæ sibi cōn-solus fuisset*, had been conscious of wrong-doing, lit. had been conscious, to itself, of wrong-doing (I. 14); *sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent*, if they wanted to clear themselves in his sight, lit. to clear themselves with reference to himself (I. 28); *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt*, prostrated themselves at Caesar's feet, lit. in relation to Caesar (I. 31).

*b.* A Dative of Reference is used with Verbs of taking away, especially those compounded with *ab, dē, and ex* (sometimes called Dative of Separation); thus, *Aedulis libertātem sint ereptūri*, that they were going to take away liberty from the Aeduians, lit. that as regards the Aeduians, they are, etc. (I. 17); *scūtō ūnī mīlitī dēstrāctō*, snatching a shield from a soldier, lit. to a soldier, the Dative expressing the point of view of the soldier (II. 25); *longē eis āfutūrum*, would be far from benefiting them, lit. would be far away with reference to them (I. 36).

*c.* A Dative of Reference is used with *interdicō*, which may take also the Ablative of the Thing; as, *Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset*, had denied to the Romans any rights in Gaul, lit. from Gaul (I. 46).

110. The Dative is used with the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation to express Agency; as, *omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum*, that all the Celts would have to do the same thing (I. 31); *Caesarī omnia erant agenda*, Caesar had to see to everything (II. 20).

111. The Dative is used with the Verb *sum* to denote Possession; as, *Mercatōribus est aditus*, Traders have access (IV. 2); *quid . . . Caesarī . . . negotiū esset*, what business Caesar . . . had (I. 34).

112. *a.* The Dative is used with Verbs to denote the Purpose or Tendency of an action; as, *locum domiciliū dēligerent*, might select a place for a permanent habitation (I. 30); *locum castris dēligit* (Historical Present), selected a place for a camp (VII. 16 and often); *Diēs colloquiū dictus est*, a day was appointed for a conference (I. 42).

*b.* *Sum* and several other Verbs may have two Datives, a Dative of Purpose or Tendency and a Dative of Reference; as, *sibi eam rem cūrae futūram*, that this matter should have his attention, lit. should be to him for a care (I. 33); *cum auxiliō Nervīs venīrent*, when they were

*coming to the assistance of the Nervians, lit. for an aid to the Nervians* (II. 29).

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

**113. a.** The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case; as, *frumentum combūrunt* (Historical Present), *they burned the grain* (I. 5).

**b.** Caesar uses as Transitive Verbs several Intransitives compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *com-*, *in*, *ob*, *prae*, *praeter*, *sub*, and *trans*; as, *si insulam adisset*, *if he should have visited the island* (IV. 20); *reliquos antecēdunt*, *surpass the rest* (III. 8); *eum convēnissent*, *had met him* (I. 27); *sē grātiām initūrōs [esse]*, *that they would gain favor* (VI. 43); *initā hieme*, *at the beginning of winter, lit. winter having been begun* (III. 7); *tectum nōn subissent*, *had not found shelter under a roof, lit. had not passed under a roof* (I. 36); *tantam virtutem praestiterunt*, *displayed so great valor* (II. 27).

**c.** Caesar uses both *animadvertō* and *animum advertō* with the Accusative of the Direct Object conceived as the object of the mental action expressed by the Compound; thus, *id animum advertit*, *he noticed that* (I. 24); *haec animadvertisset*, *had noticed this* (I. 40).

**114. a.** Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* or *circum* may have two Accusatives, one dependent on the Verb, the other on the Preposition; as, *trēs partēs cōplārū Helvētiorū id flūmen trādūxisse*, *that the Helvetians had taken three-fourths of their forces across the river* (I. 12), *partēs* being the object of *dūcere*, while *flūmen* is governed by *trans*.

**b.** In the Passive the Object of the Verb used with two Accusatives becomes a Subject, while the Accusative governed by the Preposition remains; as, *nē maior multitūdō Rhēnum trādūcātur*, *that no greater host be brought across the Rhine* (I. 31).

**115. a.** Verbs of making, choosing, regarding, giving, sending, having, calling, showing, and some others, may have two Accusatives, one a Direct Object, the other a Predicate Accusative; as, *quem rēgem cōstituerat*, *whom he had made king* (IV. 21); *quem 'vergobretum' appellānt Aedui*, *which the Aeduians call Vergobret* (I. 16).

**b.** In the construction of Verbs of making, choosing, calling, etc., with two Accusatives, the Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective; as, *utī . . . civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent*, *that they might have states tributary to them* (I. 30).

**c.** In the Passive of Verbs of making, choosing, calling, etc., the

Direct Object of the Active is made the Subject and the Predicate Accusative becomes a Predicate Nominative; as, **qui Celtae appellantur**, *who are called Celts* (I. 1); **Helvëtiis certiorës facti sunt**, *the Helvetians were informed*, where **certiorës**, an adjective in the comparative degree, is predicative (I. 7).

**116. a.** Verbs of asking, demanding, teaching may have two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing; as, **Aeduös frumentum flāgitāre**, *kept pressing the Aeduans for the grain* (I. 16).

**b.** With Verbs of asking and demanding, the Person may be expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition, the Thing asked by an Accusative or by a Clause; as, **abs tē ratiōnem reposcent**, *they will demand an accounting from you* (V. 30); **cum ab eis quaereret quae civitatēs . . . essent**, *making inquiry of them what states were . . .* (II. 4).

**c.** With **quaerō** the Person may be expressed by the Ablative with **ab** or **ex**; as, **quaerit ex sölō ea**, *asked, lit. asks, (him) alone about those things* (I. 18); the Accusative of the Thing may be replaced by an Ablative with **dē**; as, **quōrum dē nātūrā cum quaereret**, *making inquiry about the character of whom* (II. 15).

**d.** **Volō** is sometimes used like a Verb of asking, with two Accusatives; as, **si quid** (Accusative) **ille sē** (Accusative) **velit**, *if he (Caesar) wished anything of him* (I. 34).

**117. a.** With both Intransitive and Transitive Verbs Caesar sometimes uses a Neuter Pronoun as an Accusative of Result produced, to carry forward or qualify the meaning; as, **Id eis persuāsit**, *he persuaded them (to adopt) that (course)*, lit. *he persuaded that to them* (I. 2); **hōc facere**, *to do this* (III. 27).

**b.** The Accusative of Result may be a Noun of kindred meaning with the Verb (Cognate Accusative); thus, **tūtām vitām vivere**, *to live a safe life*.

**118. a.** The Accusative is used to express Extent and Duration; as, **mīlia passuum XVIII** (for **undēviginti**), *nineteen miles* (I. 8); **multōs annōs**, *many years* (I. 3); **magnam partem aestātis**, *during a great part of the summer* (III. 12); **tridui viam prōcessisset**, *had advanced a three days' march* (I. 38).

**b.** Indefinite Extent or Degree may be expressed with certain Verbs by the Neuter Accusative of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; as, **quicquid possunt**, *whatever strength they have*, lit. *to whatever degree they are able* (II. 17); **quid Germāni virtūte possent**, *what mettle the Germans had*, lit. *to what degree the Germans were*



**seu**, with him (I. 8), with himself (I. 36); **quibuscum**, with whom (I. 1).

126. a. Direct Agency with the Passive is expressed by **ā**, **ab**, with the Ablative; as, **ab Helvētīs pulsum**, routed by the Helvetians (I. 7).

b. Caesar sometimes uses an Abstract or Collective Noun with **ā**, **ab**, to express Agency; as, **ā multitudine**, by a host (III. 2).

c. Caesar often uses **ā**, **ab**, and sometimes **ex**, to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on*, *in*, or *at*; as, **ā dextrō cornū**, on the right wing, lit. from (the point of view of) the right wing (I. 52); **ā novissimō agmine**, on the rear (I. 23); **ā fronte**, in front (II. 23).

127. a. An Ablative of Separation without a Preposition is regularly used by Caesar with many Verbs meaning *keep from*, *refrain from*; *withdraw from*; *strip*, *deprive of*; *free from*; *lack*, *be without*; as, **proeliō abstinēbat**, was refraining from battle (I. 22); **ea spē delecti**, deprived of this hope (I. 8).

The most important of the Verbs thus used by Caesar are:

**abstinēō**, refrain from; **careō**, be without (VI. 38); **dēiciō**, cast down from; **dēsistō**, desist from, leave off (I. 8); **egeō**, lack (C. III. 32); **emittō**, let go from (I. 25); **excedō**, withdraw from, leave (II. 25); **exuō**, strip (III. 6); **intercludō**, cut off (I. 23).

**levō**, relieve from (V. 27); **liberō**, free from (IV. 19); **nūdō**, clear (II. 6); **prohibeō**, keep from (I. 1); **spoliō**, rob of, despoil (V. 6), and **exspoliō**, rob (VII. 77).

b. With several of these Verbs the idea of Separation may be expressed by a Preposition; as, **ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre**, to defend the towns against the violence of the enemy, lit. to hold back the violence of the enemy from the towns (I. 11).

c. With other Verbs the Ablative of Separation is regularly accompanied by a Preposition; as, **exercitum dēducit ex his regionibus**, leads his army out of these regions (I. 44).

d. Caesar uses **egeō** with the Genitive also: **nō quis . . . auxiliū egēret**, that not any one be without help (VI. 11).

128. a. A variety of the Ablative of Separation is the Ablative of Source, or Origin, which Caesar uses with **nātus**, participle of **nāscor**, and **ortus**, participle of **orior**; as, **amplissimō genere nātus**, sprung from most illustrious stock (IV. 12); **summō ortus locō**, born to the highest station in life, lit. risen from the highest place (VII. 77).

b. Origin is more broadly stated with Prepositions; as, **quibus orti ex civitatibus**, tribes from which they (were) descended (V. 12);

**ortōs à Germānis**, *descendants* (lit. *descended*) *from the Germans* (II. 4); **ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs**, *descendants from Father Dis* (VI. 18).

129. *a.* The Ablative of Comparison is used by Caesar after Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs; as, **paulō cōteris hūmāniorēs**, *cōteris* being used instead of *quam cōteri* (*sunt*), *a little more civilized than the rest* (IV. 3); **nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum**, *not more than five or six miles each day* (I. 15); **celerius omni opīniōne**, *more quickly than any one had anticipated, lit. than every expectation* (II. 3).

*b.* In a few instances Caesar uses **amplius**, **longius**, and **minus** as if in place of **amplius quam**, **longius quam**, **minus quam**, without influence upon the construction of the Noun following; as, **nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum** (Genitive of Measure), *not more than six hundred feet* (I. 38); **neque longius milia** (Accusative of Extent) **passuum viii**, *and not further than eight miles* (V. 53); **milites sunt paulō minus dcc dēsiderātī**, *almost seven hundred men were lost, lit. by a small degree less than 700* (VII. 51).

130. *a.* The Place Whence is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition, generally **ex** or **dē**; as, **ex agris**, *from the country* (I. 4).

*b.* **Domō**, Ablative of **domus**, is used in the Ablative of the Place Whence without a Preposition; as, **domō exīre**, *to go out from home* (I. 6).

131. *a.* The Ablative is used to denote Means or Instrument; as, **gladiis partem eōrum interfēcērunt**, *killed a part of them with swords* (II. 23); **proeliis contendunt**, *they contend in battle, lit. by means of battles* (I. 1); **memoriā tenēbat**, *he remembered, lit. held by means of memory* (I. 7).

*b.* The Ablative of Means may denote persons as well as things; as, **quingentis equitibus**, *with five hundred horsemen* (I. 15).

*c.* Caesar uses the Ablative of Means with **ūtor**, **abūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **nītor**, **innītor**, and ordinarily with **potior**; thus **ephippīis ūti**, *to use saddle-cloths, lit. to assist themselves by means of saddle-cloths* (IV. 2); **impedimentis potiti sunt**, *obtained possession of the baggage, that is made themselves masters by means of the baggage* (I. 26).

*d.* Caesar uses **potior** also with the Genitive; as, **tōtius Galliae potiri**, *to become masters of the whole (of) Gaul* (I. 3).

*e.* Caesar uses an Ablative of Means with **frētus**, *relying on*, lit. *supported by*; as, **victōris frēti**, *relying on their victories* (III. 21).

*f.* The Ablative with **ūtor** is sometimes accompanied by a Predi-

cate Ablative, the construction resembling that of two Accusatives after verbs of *having* (115, a); thus *Isdem duobus usus*, *employing the same men as guides* (II. 7).

132. a. *Opus est*, *there is need*, is used with the Ablative of the Thing needed, which may be expressed by a Perfect Passive Participle; thus, *si quid opus factū esset*, *if anything should require action*, lit. *if there should be need of (something) done, to any extent* (I. 42).

b. With *opus est* the Thing needed may be expressed by a Neuter Pronoun in the Nominative; as, *si quid* (Subject) *ipsi à Caesare opus esset*, *if he himself had wanted anything of Caesar*, lit. *if anything were necessary to himself from Caesar* (I. 34); *quid . . . opus esset*, *what was necessary* (II. 22); *Quaecumque opus sunt*, *Whatever is* (lit. *whatever things are*) *necessary* (V. 40).

133. The Ablative of Means is used with a few Adjectives; as, *nāvēs . . . omni genere armōrum ornātissimae*, *ships completely fitted out with every kind of equipment* (III. 14).

134. a. Caesar uses the Ablative of the Way by Which with several words referring to Natural Features and Military Operations; as, *adversū colle*, *up the hill*, lit. *by the hill facing them* (II. 19); *quod flūmine subvexerat*, *which he had brought up the river*, lit. *by means of the river* (I. 16); *duābus portis eruptionem fieri*, *that a sally be made from* (lit. *by*) *two gates* (III. 19).

The words thus used are:

*collis*, *flūmen*; *fretum* (C. II. 3); *iter*, especially in *magnis itineribus*, *by forced marches* (I. 37); *iugum* (C. III. 97); *pōns* (C. I. 55); *porta*, *vadum* (I. 6, 8), and *via* (V. 19).

b. The Ablative of the Way by Which is sometimes used indefinitely with words referring to Distance; as, *tantū spatiū secuti quantum efficere potuerunt*, *following so great a distance* (lit. *by so great a space*) *as they were able to cover* (IV. 35).

135. a. An Ablative denoting Cause is used with many Verbs and Adjectives, particularly those which express *pleasure*, *pain*, *trust*, *dis-trust*, *boastfulness*, and the like; as, *anni tempore confisae*, *trusting in the time of year*, lit. *confident because of the time of year* (III. 27); *Quod suā victoriā gloriārentur*, *the fact that they were boasting of* (lit. *by reason of*) *their victory* (I. 14).

b. In some phrases the force of the Ablative of Cause has become obscured, as in *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*, with the Genitive, and in *iussū*, *iniussū*, and the like; as, *auxilii causā*, *as an auxiliary force*, lit. *for the sake of support* (III. 18; II. 24); *iussū Caesaris*, *by*

(reason of) Caesar's orders (VII. 3); *iniussū suō et civitātis*, without his own authorization and (that) of the state, i.e. because of un-authorization (I. 19).

136. a. The Ablative of Manner (answering the question "How?") is used by Caesar with *cum*, especially when the Noun is modified by an Adjective; as, *cum cruciātū necābātur*, was put to death with torture (V. 45); *multis cum lacrimis*, with many tears (I. 20).

b. The Ablative of Manner is often used without a Preposition; as, *et mente et animō*, with heart and soul (VI. 5).

c. In certain connections Caesar uses an Ablative with the meaning in accordance with; as, *Mōribus suis*, in accordance with their customs (I. 4); *cōnsuetūdine populi Rōmāni*, in accordance with the practice of the Roman people (III. 23).

137. a. The Ablative is used with *cum* to express Accompaniment; as, *cum suis omnibus cōpīs*, with all his forces (I. 38).

b. An Ablative of Accompaniment referring to Military Operations, when qualified by an Adjective, may be used without *cum*; but if the modifier is a Numeral, *cum* must be used. Thus, *omnibus cōpīs contendērunt*, they hastened with all their forces (II. 7); *cum duābus legiōnibus*, with two legions (I. 21).

c. The use of *cum* with the Ablative of Accompaniment is much broader than the meaning together with. Examples are: *cōstituerat cum lēgātis*, had appointed with the envoys (I. 8); *cōnsiliō cum lēgātis communicātō*, having imparted his determination to his lieutenants (IV. 13); *cum Caesare ēgit*, treated with Caesar (I. 13); *cum illā (cōnsuetūdine) comparandam*, to be compared with that manner of life (I. 31).

138. An Ablative of Attendant Circumstance is used by Caesar with an Adjective, Pronominal Adjective, or Genitive as modifying word, and without a Preposition; as, *paribus intervāllis*, at equal intervals (I. 51); *imperio nostrō*, under our sovereignty (II. 1); *commodō rei publicae*, with advantage to (lit. of) the State (I. 35); *Caesaris voluntate*, with Caesar's approval (I. 30).

139. The Ablative is used with certain Verbs meaning exchange, mix, and accustom; thus, *nē studium belli gerendi agrī culturā commūtent*, that they may not exchange their devotion to aggressive warfare for farming (VI. 22); *nūllō officiō aut disciplinā assuefacti*, habituated to (lit. familiarized with) no obligation or training (IV. 1); *admixtum lacte*, mixed with milk (C. III. 48).

140. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Compar-

tives, and with Adverbs or Phrases implying Comparison; as, *paulō longius*, a little further, lit. further by a little (II. 20); *paucis ante diēbus*, a few days before (I. 18); *milibus passuum duobus ultra eum*, two miles beyond him, lit. beyond him by two miles (I. 48).

141. The Ablative of Price is used by Caesar only in indefinite expressions; thus, *parvō pretiō redēpta*, purchased at a low price (I. 18); *impensō pretiō*, at a high price (IV. 2); *quantō dētrimentō*, at how great a loss (VII. 19); *levi mōmentō*, of slight account (VII. 39).

142. a. The Ablative of Specification (answering the question "In respect to what?") is used with Verbs and Adjectives and the Adverb *saepe*; as, *cum virtūte omnibus praestarent*, since they surpassed all in valor (I. 2); *Sueba nātiōne*, a Sueban by birth (I. 53); *numerō ad duodecim*, about twelve in number, lit. in number about twelve (I. 5); *saepe numerō*, frequently, lit. often in respect to number (I. 33).

b. The Ablative of Specification is used with *dignus* and *indignus*; as, *nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committēbant*, they did nothing that was unworthy of them, lit. in respect to themselves (V. 35).

143. a. The Descriptive Ablative, or Ablative of Quality, is modified by an Adjective or, more rarely, by a Noun in the Genitive; as, *hominēs inimicō animō*, men of unfriendly (attitude of) mind (I. 7).

b. The Descriptive Ablative may be used predicatively; as, *ingentī magnitudīne Germānōs esse*, that the Germans were of huge size (I. 39); *sunt speciēs . . . taurī*, they have (lit. are of) the appearance of a bull (VI. 28).

144. a. The Ablative Absolute consists of a Noun or Pronoun in the Ablative with a Participle, Adjective, or Noun in the same case, and is loosely related with the rest of the sentence; as, *rēgnō occupātō*, having seized the governing power, lit. the governing power having been seized (I. 3).

b. The Ablative Absolute may express Time, Attendant Circumstance, Cause, Condition, Concession, Means, or Manner, and may often be translated by a clause; thus:

(1) Time: *M. Messalā, M. Pisonē cōnsulibus*, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, lit. Marcus Messala, Marcus Piso (being) consuls (I. 2).

(2) Attendant Circumstance: *convocātis eōrum principibus*, having called together their leading men (I. 16); *captō monte et succedentibus nostris*, after they had reached the height and our men were coming up (I. 25).

- (3) Cause: **omnibus frugibus amissis**, since all the produce of the fields was gone, lit. all . . . having been lost (I. 28).  
 (4) Condition: **data facultate**, if opportunity should have been granted (I. 7).  
 (5) Concession or Opposition: **superiōribus locis occupātis**, though the higher positions had been seized (I. 23).  
 (6) Means: **eō dēprecatōre**, through his intercession, lit. he (being) intercessor (I. 9).  
 (7) Manner: **equō admissō**, with (his) horse at top speed, lit. his horse having been let go (I. 22).

145. *a.* The Place Where is regularly expressed by the Ablative with a Preposition; as, **in eōrum finibus**, in their territories (I. 1).

*b.* Names of Towns, excepting those in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, are put in the Ablative of the Place Where, without a Preposition; as, **Bibraote**, at Bibracte (VII. 90).

*c.* The Noun **locus**, Singular and Plural, is often used in the Ablative of the Place Where without a Preposition, as are also several other Nouns when modified by an Adjective, particularly **tōtus**; thus, **aliēnō locō**, on unfavorable ground, lit. in an unfavorable place (I. 15); **tōtis castris**, throughout the camp, lit. in the whole camp (I. 39); **eōdem vēstigiō**, in the same spot (IV. 2).

146. With Names of Towns of the First and Second Declensions, Singular, Place Where is expressed by the Locative; as, **Cēnabī**, at Cenabum (VII. 14); also **domī**, Locative of **domus**, at home (I. 18).

147. *a.* The Time When, and Time Within Which anything happens, may be denoted by the Ablative without a Preposition; as, **diē quārtō**, on the fourth day (I. 26); **paucis annis**, within a few years (I. 31).

*b.* Words that have only an indirect reference to Time are sometimes put in the Ablative of Time When or Within Which; as, **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, within the memory of our fathers (I. 12); **initio orātiōnis**, at the beginning of his statement (I. 43).

*c.* Intervals of Space and Duration of Time are sometimes expressed by the Ablative, especially when modified by an Adjective or Genitive; as, **milibus passuum sex**, six miles (distant), lit. by six thousands of paces (I. 48); **tōtā nocte iērunt**, all night long they went on (I. 26).

## ADJECTIVES

**148. a.** Adjectives and Participles, whether Attributive or Predicative, agree in Gender, Number, and Case with the Noun or Pronoun to which they belong.

**b.** Attributive Adjectives and Participles stand in direct relation with a Noun or Pronoun; as, *fortissimō virō* (Abl.), *a very brave man* (II. 25); *Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus*, *He, led on by a desire of kingly power* (I. 2).

**c.** Predicate Adjectives, and Participles in Predicate used as Adjectives, are connected with a Noun or Pronoun through a Verb or Participle; as, *fortissimī sunt Belgae*, *the Belgians are the bravest* (I. 1); *quī peritissimus habēbātur*, *who was considered highly skilled* (I. 21); *Gallia est dīvisa*, *Gaul is divided*, the Perfect Passive Participle of *dīvidō* being used as an Adjective; if *est dīvisa* were here a Perfect Passive tense, it would have to be translated *has been divided* or *was divided* (I. 1).

**d.** A Predicate Adjective or Participle limiting an Infinitive or Clause is Neuter; as, *perfacile esse . . . potiri*, *that it was exceedingly easy* (or, *a very easy thing*) *to obtain possession of*, *perfacile* being the Predicate after *esse*, to which *potiri* stands as subject (I. 2).

**e.** A Participle forming part of an Infinitive may agree with the Subject of the Principal Verb; as, *meritus [esse] vidēbātur*, *was seen to have earned* (I. 40).

**149.** Demonstrative and other Pronouns used like Adjectives agree with the word to which they belong; as, *eō tempore*, *at that time* (I. 3); *quā arrogantia*, *what presumption* (I. 46); *id ipsum*, *that very thing* (VII. 50).

**150. a.** An Attributive Adjective used with two or more Nouns regularly agrees with the Nearest; as, *eādem alacritāte ac studiō*, *the same eagerness and enthusiasm* (IV. 24).

**b.** A Predicate Adjective used with two or more Nouns is regularly Plural; when the Nouns are of Different Genders, the Adjective is generally Masculine if Persons are referred to, Neuter if only Things or Abstract Qualities are denoted, though even in this case the agreement may be with the nearer substantive; as, *frāter et soror eōrum bonī sunt*, *their brother and sister are good*; *et mūrus et porta alta erant*, *both the wall and the gate were high*; *ut braccia atque umerī . . . liberī esse possent*, *that their arms and shoulders might be free* (VII. 56).

c. An Adjective or Participle may agree with a Noun in Sense, without regard to Grammatical Gender or Number; as, **hominum milia** (Neuter) **vi, perterriti** (Masculine), *six thousand (of) men, thoroughly frightened* (I. 27).

d. A Noun, particularly a Noun with Verbal Force, is sometimes modified by a prepositional phrase; as, **légationem ad civitates**, *the office of envoy to the states* (I. 3).

151. Adjectives are sometimes used in Latin where in English an Adverb or a Phrase is required; as, **laeti . . . ad castra pergunt** (Historical Present), *joyfully . . . they advanced against the camp* (III. 18); **viatorēs etiam invitōs cōsistere cōgant**, *they oblige travelers, even against their will, to stop* (IV. 5).

152. a. Certain Adjectives often designate a part of that to which they refer; as, in **colle mediō**, *halfway up the hill* (I. 24); **primā nocte**, *in the first part of the night* (I. 27); **summus mōns**, *the top of the height* (I. 22).

The Adjectives thus used by Caesar are **extrēmus** (as II. 5); **infimus** (II. 18); **medius**; **multus** (I. 22); **novissimus**, in **novissimum agmen** (I. 15 and often), *the rear of a marching column as the latest part of a column to pass a given point*; **primus** and **summus**.

b. The Adjectives **princeps**, **prior**, **primus** are sometimes used by Caesar to designate *the first to do or experience something*; as, **princeps poenās persolvit**, *was the first to pay the penalty* (I. 12); **neque priōrēs bellum inferre**, *did not take the lead in waging war*, where **prior** is used because only two peoples, the Germans and the Romans, are referred to (IV. 7).

c. The Adjective **multus** and another Adjective agreeing with the same Noun are joined by **et** or **-que**; as, **multis gravibusque vulneribus**, *many severe wounds* (II. 25).

153. a. The Comparative and Superlative of both Adjectives and Adverbs sometimes have shades of meaning best expressed in English by *too, rather, very, exceedingly, or highly*, and the like, with the Positive; as, **paulō fortius**, *unusually brave*, lit. *a little braver than usual* (III. 14); **lātissimō atque altissimō**, *very wide and very deep* (I. 2).

b. A Superlative is sometimes modified by an Adverb; as, **longē nobilissimus**, *far the highest in rank* (I. 2).

c. The highest possible degree is expressed by **quam** with the Superlative, as **quam maximum numerum**, *as great a number as possible, the greatest possible number* (I. 3); **quam celerrimē potuit**, *as quickly as possible* (I. 37); **quam primum**, *as soon as possible* (I. 40).



154. *a.* Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, **vērī** (Neuter) *simile, probable*, lit. *like truth* (III. 13); **nostrī**, *our men* (I. 52); **novissimī** (Masculine), *for the rear*, lit. *for those last* (I. 25); **sua**, *their possessions* (I. 11); **prō vīsō**, *as seen*, lit. *for (that which was) seen* (I. 22).

*b.* Caesar uses the Genitive Singular Neuter **sui** with a collective force in the Gerundive Construction, and in such cases it should be translated as if plural; as, **sui colligendī facultātem**, *opportunity of collecting their forces*, lit. *of collecting themselves* (III. 6).

### PRONOUNS

155. The Genitives **meī**, **nostrī**, **tui**, and **vestrī** (§9, *a*) are regularly Objective, **nostrum** and **vestrum** being used in other relations; as, **tantā contemptiōne nostrī**, *with so great contempt for us* (V. 29); **omnium vestrum**, *of you all* (VII. 77).

156. The Plural is often used for the Singular of the Pronoun of the First Person, just as in our "editorial we"; thus Caesar when referring to himself as writer often uses a Plural Verb, as, **ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus**, *as we have previously shown* (II. 22).

157. *a.* The Possessive Pronouns are expressed only when required for the sake of Clearness, Emphasis, or Contrast; in translating they must be supplied in accordance with English idiom; as, **Cōnsidius, equō admissō**, *Considius with (his) horse at top speed* (I. 22).

*b.* When expressed for Clearness, and unemphatic, the Possessive Pronoun follows its Noun, as, **in civitāte suā**, *in his state* (I. 3); when used for Emphasis or Contrast, the Possessive Pronoun precedes its Noun, as, **meum officium**, *my duty* (IV. 25).

*c.* Caesar often uses **noster** to designate that which is Roman; as, **nostram amicitiam**, *our friendship* (I. 43).

*d.* A Possessive Pronoun and a Genitive are sometimes coordinated in construction; as, **suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō**, *with his own kindness and that of the Roman people*, that is, *kindness of himself and of the Roman people* (I. 35).

*e.* **suus** may mean *his characteristic, his well-known*; as **suā olēmentīā**, *his well-known clemency* (II. 14).

158. *a.* The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person, **sē**, and the corresponding Possessive **suus**, refer to the Subject of the Verb; in a Subordinate Clause they may refer to the Subject of the Principal Clause (Indirect Reflexive). Thus, **sē eripuit**, *he rescued himself*

(I. 4); *legiō . . . ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset*, the legion . . . conveyed thanks to him because he had passed an extremely favorable opinion on it (I. 41).

b. In the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons the regular forms are sometimes Reflexive, as, *mē servāre nōn possum*, I cannot save myself (VII. 50); so also is, as *eōs*, themselves (II. 1).

c. In translating into Latin the English Possessives 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'their,' when referring to the subject of the Verb must be rendered by forms of the Reflexive *suus*.

159. The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter sē* (lit. among themselves), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter sē dant*, they gave (lit. give) to one another (I. 3); *inter sē differunt*, they differ from one another (I. 1); *inter sē collocūtī*, having conferred with one another (IV. 30); *cohortātī inter sē*, urging one another on (IV. 25); *inter sē contendere*, they strove together (I. 31); *inter sē*, referring to two persons, with each other (V. 44).

160. a. The Demonstrative Pronoun *hic*, this, refers to something near the speaker or the subject of thought; *iste*, that of yours, to something near the person addressed; *ille*, that, to something more remote; and *is*, that, to something thought of in a less definite relation. Thus: *Hic pāgus*, This canton (I. 12); *Animi est ista mollitia*, That is lack of resolution on your part (VII. 77); *illi simile bellō*, like that war with the Cimbrians and Teutons (VII. 77); *Is diēs*, That day just referred to (I. 6).

b. Caesar frequently uses the Demonstrative *is*, less frequently *hic* and *ille*, where the English has a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person; as, *ad eōs*, to them (I. 1); *cur hunc quisquam discessurum iūdicāret*, why should any one suppose that he (Ariovistus) would withdraw (I. 40); *illum unō diē fēcisse . . .*, that he (Caesar) had in one day accomplished (I. 13).

c. Caesar frequently uses the Neuter Singular and Neuter Plural of *hic*, *ille*, and *is* with the meaning *this (thing)*, *that (thing)*, *it*, *these things*, *those things*; a Noun may sometimes be supplied in translation. Thus, *id quod*, that which (I. 5); *Id eis persuāsit*, he persuaded them (to) that course (I. 2); *illa esse vōra*, that those statements were true (I. 20).

d. A Demonstrative Pronoun is sometimes used in Latin where English usage prefers an Article; thus, *Ea res*, The matter, lit. that thing (I. 4); *eum locum*, a place (II. 16).

e. A Demonstrative Pronoun used as Subject is regularly attracted into agreement with a Noun in the Predicate; as *Animi est ista mollitia*, for *istud est animi mollitia*, that is lack of resolution on your part (VII. 77).

161. a. The Demonstratives *hic* and *ille* sometimes refer to what follows; as, *hic facilius . . . quod*, the more easily on this (account) because (I. 2); *multis de causis . . . quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod*, for many reasons, of which this was the most weighty, that (IV. 16).

b. Caesar sometimes uses *hic* and *ille* in contrast, with the meaning the latter (that last mentioned) and the former (that previously mentioned); as, *Reliqui . . . se atque illos alunt; hi rursus anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent*, The rest support themselves and those in the field; the latter after one year are again in arms, the former remain at home (IV. I).

c. A Conjunction followed by *is* or *hic* may express an Emphatic Characterization; as, *legionem, neque eam plenissimam* (sc. *legionem*), the legion, and that lacking its full strength, lit. and that not most full (III. 2).

162. a. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse* with Nouns and Pronouns has the meaning *self*, *very*; as, *ipsi magistratus*, the magistrates themselves (I. 17); *ipsum esse Dumnorigem*, that Dumnorix was the very man (I. 18); *in ipsis ripis*, on the very banks (II. 23).

b. In Subordinate Clauses *ipse* may be used as an Indirect Reflexive referring to the Principal Subject, or to avoid ambiguity; as, *Ariovistus respondit, si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset*, Ariovistus answered that if he himself had wanted anything of Caesar, lit. if anything were necessary to himself from Caesar (I. 34).

c. Contrasted pronouns are often placed in proximity; as, *se ipsi interficiunt*, they all killed one another, lit. they themselves slay themselves (V. 37).

163. a. A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends upon its construction in the clause to which it belongs; as, *tres (legiones, Fem., Acc.), quae* (Fem., Pl., Nom.) . . . *hiemabant*, three legions which were wintering (I. 10).

b. A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of the same Gender and Number agrees with them in Gender, but in Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Plural; as, *pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam audirent*, in accordance with his forbearance and graciousness, of which they were hearing (II. 31);

**filius et fratris filius, . . . quōs . . .**, *his son and his brother's son, whom . . .* (V. 27).

c. A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of different Gender or Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Masculine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a man, Feminine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a woman and the others things, or Neuter Plural in case only things are denoted; thus, **frūmentō** (Neut.) **commeātūque, quī** (M., Sing.), *grain and (other) supplies which . . .* (I. 48); **mātrēs familiæ . . . petierunt, nō sē** (Fem.), **et liberōs dēderent, quōs . . .**, *the matrons besought not to give up themselves and the children whom* (VII. 26); **ūsus ac disciplina, quæ** (Neuter Plural) . . . , *experience and training, which . . .* (I. 40).

164. a. The Antecedent of a Relative Pronoun is sometimes omitted; as, **(ei incolunt) quī, those inhabit who** (I. 1).

b. Caesar sometimes uses a Relative referring to an implied Antecedent; as, **servī tumultū, quōs . . .**, as if he had said **tumultū servōrum, quōs . . .**, *in the uprising of the slaves, whom . . .* (I. 40).

c. A Noun in Predicate attracts a Relative Pronoun standing as subject into agreement with it; as, **Belgæ, quam** (for **quōs**) **tertiam esse Galliæ partem dixerāmus, the Belgians who, we had said, form** (lit. are) *a third of Gaul* (II. 1).

d. A Plural Relative may refer for its Antecedent to a Singular Collective Noun which suggests Plurality; as, **equitātum . . . quī videant, cavalry . . . to see, lit. who should see** (I. 15).

165. a. An Antecedent is sometimes repeated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated only once; as, **itinerā duo, quibus itineribus, two routes by which** (I. 6), *not by which routes*.

b. An Appositional Antecedent is sometimes incorporated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated; as, **quod tempus convēnerat, the time which had been agreed on** (II. 19).

c. An Antecedent is often incorporated in a Relative Clause; as, **Cui ratiōnī, . . . hāc, By the cunning, . . . for which** (I. 40).

166. Caesar uses the Neuter of a Relative or Demonstrative Pronoun, sometimes both a Demonstrative and a Relative, referring to a Clause or Thought as a whole; as, **supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod . . .**, *a thanksgiving was decreed, (a distinction) which . . .* (II. 35); **magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, perturbātiō facta est, a great commotion, as was bound to be the case, ensued** (IV. 29).

167. A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or

without a connective; as, *Quā dē causā, And for this reason, For this reason* (I. 1); *Qui . . . proellum committunt* (Historical Present), *They (or And they) . . . joined battle* (I. 15).

168. Of the Indefinite Pronouns, Caesar uses *quidam*, a certain, in respect to persons or things distinctly thought of but not described; *aliquis*, some, any, somebody, of persons or things referred to in a general way; *quis* and *qui*, any, some, still more vaguely, with *si*, *nisi*, *seu*, *nē*, and *ubi*; and *quisquam*, any at all, in Interrogative or Negative Clauses or in a Clause following a Comparative; as, *quādam res*, certain things (I. 30); *quidam ex militibus*, a certain one (or one) of the soldiers (I. 42); *alicuius infiriae*, of any wrong-doing (I. 14); *si quid vellent*, if they wanted anything (I. 7); *Cur quisquam iudicaret*, Why should any one suppose (I. 40); *prius quam quicquam cōnārētur*, before taking any measures, lit. before he should attempt anything at all (I. 19).

169. Caesar uses the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun *uterque*, each of two, in the Plural as well as the Singular; as, *utrisque castris*, for each camp (I. 51); *ab utrisque*, by those on each side (IV. 28).

170. a. Caesar sometimes uses the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, each, with a Superlative to designate a Class, or with a Numerical Ordinal to indicate a Proportion; thus, *nōbillissimī cuiusque liberōs*, the children of every man of high rank (I. 31); *decimum quemque militem*, one soldier in ten, lit. each tenth soldier (V. 52).

b. Caesar uses *quisque*, each, in close connection with *se* and *suus*; as, *cum sibi quisque . . . peteret*, when each one was seeking for himself (II. 11); *utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtutis habēret*, that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor (I. 52).

171. a. Of the Pronominal Adjectives, *cōterī* (Plural) means the other, the rest besides those mentioned; *reliquī*, the rest in the sense those remaining after some are taken; as, *Aeduōs cōterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī*, the Aeduans and the other friends of the Roman people (I. 35); *reliquōs Gallōs*, the rest of the Gauls, after the Helvetians have been singled out (I. 1).

b. Caesar repeats *alter* and *alius* in a Correlative Relation; as, *hārum altera occisa, altera capta est*, of these (daughters) one was killed, the other captured (I. 53); *aliae (nāvēs) . . . aliae . . . , some (ships) . . . others* (IV. 28); *alterī — alterī*, the latter — the former (VII. 17).

c. Caesar repeats *alius* with the sense one . . . one, another . . . another; as, *legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte resisterent*, legions were offering resistance, one at one point, another at another (II. 22).

## VERBS

### AGREEMENT, MOODS AND TENSES, QUESTIONS

**172. a.** A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person; in compound forms of the Verb the Participle must agree with the Subject also in Gender. Thus, **Orgetorix dēligitur**, *Orgetorix is chosen* (I. 3); **Ea res est enūtiāta**, *The matter (lit. that thing) was made known* (I. 4).

**b.** When a Verb is used with more than one Subject, it may agree with the nearest Subject, or be Plural; as, **filia et unus ē filius captus est**, *a daughter and one of the sons were taken captive* (I. 26); **Nammeius et Verucloetius . . . obtinēbant**, *Nammeius and Verucloetius held* (I. 7).

**c.** Verbs are sometimes used in the Third Person Plural with an implied indefinite subject, as, **dīcunt**, *they say* (V. 12).

**d.** A verb in Latin is sometimes used with a Personal Subject where the English prefers the Impersonal Construction with "it"; as, **Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs . . . dīcantur**, *As to the fact that it was said that they would not be obedient*, lit. *that they are said not to be about to be*, etc. (I. 40).

**173. a.** When two Subjects express a single idea, the Verb may be Singular; as, **Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit**, *the Marne and the Seine separate . . .*, the two rivers being thought of as forming one boundary (I. 1).

**b.** A Plural Verb may be used with a Singular Noun, or with an unexpressed Subject representing a Singular Noun, where the sense suggests Plurality; as, **cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent**, *when so great a host were hurling stones* (II. 6).

**174.** Caesar rarely uses a Passive Verb or Participle in a Reflexive Sense; as, **sublevātī**, *supporting themselves* (I. 48); **armārī**, *to arm themselves* (IV. 32).

**175. a.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses represent an action as going on in Present, Past, or Future Time; as, **eōrumque agrōs populābantur**, *and were laying waste their country* (I. 11).

**b.** In vivid narration Caesar often thinks of past events as in progress and uses the Present Indicative (Historical Present). In trans-

lating the Historical Present a past tense should generally be used; as, *dic̃it liberius*, *he spoke* (lit. *speaks*) *more freely* (I. 18).

c. The Present is used in statements true at all times (Universal Present), and statements about Customs; as, *hominēs id, quod [or̃d̃ere] volunt, or̃dunt*, *men readily believe what they wish to believe* (III. 18).

d. The Imperfect may be used of Repeated or Customary Action; as, *per̃colit̃ab̃atur*, *he kept trying* (II. 8); *ador̃ieb̃antur . . . circum-sist̃eb̃ant . . . coñicĩeb̃ant*, *would attack . . . would surround . . . would hurl* (IV. 26).

e. The Imperfect is sometimes used of Attempted Action (Conative Imperfect); as, *nostr̃os intr̃a m̃uñitiōñes ing̃redi prohib̃eb̃ant*, *were trying to prevent our men from getting inside the fortification* (V. 9).

f. The Imperfect with *iam*, used of an action already in progress for a considerable period, should be translated with a Progressive Pluperfect; as, *Cum iam amplius h̃oris sex pugñar̃etur*, *when fighting had now been going on more than six hours* (III. 5).

176. a. Caesar generally uses the Historical Perfect, as *discessit*, *he withdrew* (I. 14); very rarely he uses the Perfect in the sense of the English Present Perfect, as *ñon ṽeñerunt*, *they have not come* (VII. 77).

b. The Perfect and Pluperfect of *ñosc̃o*, *cogñosc̃o*, *c̃onsũesc̃o* express a state resulting from action, and are generally best translated by the Present and Imperfect; as, *ñoṽerunt*, *they are familiar with*, lit. *have come to know* (VI. 15); *ire c̃onsũerant*, *were accustomed (had become accustomed) to go* (III. 1). The Perfect and Pluperfect of *memini* and *odi* also are translated by the Present and Imperfect.

c. The Latin Future Perfect is used with great precision, where frequently in English a Future or Present Tense might be employed; as, *meum officium praestiter̃o*, *I shall have done my duty*, where we should ordinarily say, *I shall do my duty* (IV. 25).

177. a. In the Sequence of Tenses a Primary Tense (Present, Future, or Future Perfect<sup>1</sup>) in the Principal Clause is ordinarily followed by a Primary Tense in the Subordinate Clause; and a Secondary Tense (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect<sup>2</sup>) of the Principal

<sup>1</sup> The Primary Tenses of the Indicative, referring to Present and Future Time, are the Present, Future, and Future Perfect. The Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive are the Present and Perfect. Cf. 354 (p. 642).

<sup>2</sup> The Secondary Tenses of the Indicative, referring to Past Time, are the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Secondary Tenses of the Subjunctive are the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

Clause by a past tense in the Subordinate Clause. Thus, **Mercatōribus est aditus ut, quae bellō cōperint, quibus vāndant, habeant, Traders have access (to them) . . . that they may have purchasers for the things that they have captured in war, lit. that they may have (those) to whom they may sell (those things) which they have taken in war (IV. 2); equitātumque, quī sustinēret impetum, misit, and he sent his cavalry to sustain the attack (I. 24).**

b. A Historical Present in the Principal Clause is sometimes followed by a Primary Tense, sometimes by a Secondary Tense, in the Subordinate Clause; as, **diem dicunt, quā diū . . . conveniant, they set a day on which they were (lit. are) to come together (I. 6); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi, he gave (lit. gives) orders that the bridge, which was near Geneva, be cut down (I. 7).**

c. A verb in a Subordinate Clause containing a Statement of Fact or a General Truth may be in the Present Tense even though the verb of the Principal Clause is in a Past Tense; as, **eīs persuāsit, quod Helveti . . . continentur, he persuaded them, because the Helvetians are hemmed in . . . (I. 2).**

**178.** The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse express time relative to that of the Verbs on which they depend, the Present Infinitive expressing the same time as the Governing Verb; the Perfect Infinitive, time earlier than that of the Governing Verb; and the Future Infinitive, time later than that of the Governing Verb. Thus, **nōn sē hostem verēri . . . dicēbant, were saying that they did not fear the enemy (I. 39); illum fecisse intellegerent, they understood that he had done (I. 13); Caesar . . . sēs eōs . . . cōservātūrum [esse] dixit, Caesar said that he would spare their lives (II. 15).**

**179.** a. Direct Questions in Latin are introduced by Question Words and are of two kinds:

- (1) Single Questions, introduced by Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, or by the Enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word of the question and asking for information, by **nōnne** implying the answer "Yes," or **num** implying the answer "No." Thus: **quem locum . . . exspectās? what (kind of a) chance are you waiting for (V. 44)? Audīne? Do you hear? Nōnne audīs? Do you not hear? Num audīs? You don't hear, do you?**
- (2) Double Questions, which ordinarily have **utrum** or the Enclitic **-ne** in the First Member, and **an**, or, or **annōn**, or not, in the second; as, **utrum officium, an timor, plūs valet, Is sense**



*of duty, or cowardice, stronger?* The First Member of a Double Question may be omitted, **An** alone introducing the second; as, **An . . . dubitātis?** *Do you have (any) doubt* (VII. 77)?

b. In Indirect Discourse Caesar uses Rhetorical Questions, implying a Negative Answer, Doubt, or Perplexity; these in the Direct Form would have had the Indicative, or the Deliberative Subjunctive. Thus:

- (1) Indicative in the Direct Form: **num . . . memoriā dēpōnere posse?** *could he lay aside the recollection?* As a Direct Question: **Num . . . memoriā dēpōnere possum,** *can I put aside the recollection?* implying the answer "No"; as when we say "How can I do that?" meaning, emphatically, "I cannot do that" (I. 14).
- (2) Deliberative Subjunctive in the Direct Form: **cūr quisquam . . . iūdicāret,** *why should any one infer?* in the Direct form, **cūr iūdicet?** (I. 40); **neque satis Brūtō . . . centuriōnibusque . . . cōnstābat, quid agerent,** *and Brutus and the centurions . . . did not quite know what to do, lit. and it was not quite clear to Brutus and the centurions . . . what they should do;* as a Direct Question, **Quid agāmus?** *What are we to do?* (III. 14).

180. a. Caesar rarely uses the Subjunctive in the First Person to express an Exhortation (Hortatory Subjunctive); as, **hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus,** *let us kill these bandits* (VII. 38); **sīmus parātī,** *let us be ready* (C. III. 85).

b. Caesar rarely uses the Subjunctive in the Third Person to express a Command (Jussive Subjunctive); as, **Cum his mihi res sit,** *let me deal* (lit. *let the issue be to me*) *with those* (VII. 77).

c. A Wish Capable of Realization is expressed by the Present Subjunctive, often with **utinam**; as, **utinam redeant,** *may they return!*

d. A Wish Incapable of Realization is expressed in Present Time by **utinam** with the Imperfect Subjunctive and in Past Time by **utinam** with the Pluperfect Subjunctive; as, **utinam adessent,** *oh that they were here* (but they are not); **utinam redissent,** *oh that they had come back* (but they did not).

181. a. Caesar rarely uses the Imperative, in Direct Quotations, as **Dēsillite,** *Jump down* (IV. 25).

b. Caesar uses the Imperatives **nōlī, nōlīte** with the Infinitive to

express Prohibition; as, **Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre**, *Do not (lit. be unwilling to) rob them of your assistance* (VII. 77).

**182.** Caesar rarely uses an Infinitive in a Principal Clause in the place of an Imperfect or Perfect Indicative (Historical Infinitive), the Subject being in the Nominative; as, **Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre**, *Caesar kept pressing the Aeduans for the grain* (I. 16); **hostēs . . . signō datō dēcurrere**, *the enemy at a given signal rushed down* (III. 4).

#### CAUSAL AND TEMPORAL CLAUSES, RELATIVE CLAUSES, CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND RESULT

**183. a.** In Causal Clauses introduced by **quod** and **quoniam** Caesar uses the Indicative when the reason is stated as that of Caesar the Writer, the Subjunctive when the reason is presented as some one else's. Thus, **Dumnorix . . . Helvētīs erat amicus, quod . . . dūxerat**, *Dumnorix was friendly to the Helvetians, because he had taken . . .*, the **quod**-clause containing Caesar's explanation of the reason why Dumnorix favored the Helvetians (I. 9); **ei grātias ēgit, quod optimum iudiciū fēcisset**, *thanked him because (as the delegation said) he had passed a most favorable judgment*, the **quod**-clause here having the Subjunctive because it presents the reason given by the delegation for the expression of thanks (I. 41).

**b.** In Causal Clauses Caesar sometimes uses the Subjunctive of a Verb of Saying or Thinking to introduce a statement of a reason ascribed to some one else; as, **Bellovacī suū numerū nōn complēverunt, quod sē suō nōmine . . . bellum gestūrōs dicerent**, *the Bellovacī did not furnish their full contingent because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account . . .* (VII. 75).

**c.** The Subjunctive introduced by **nōn quod**, *not because*, or **quam quō** (= **quam eō quod**), *than because*, may be used to express an alleged or assumed reason; as, **quam quō . . . dēsiderent**, *than because they desire* (IV. 2).

**184. a.** A Causal Clause introduced by **cum**, *since*, has its verb in the Subjunctive; as, **cum . . . persuādere nōn possent**, *since they were not able to persuade* (I. 9).

**b.** Caesar sometimes uses the adverb **praesertim**, *especially*, to make prominent the Causal Idea in a Clause introduced by **cum**; as, **praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum susceperit**, *especially*

since, in response to (lit. prevailed upon by) their entreaties, he had undertaken the campaign (I. 16).

**185. a.** *Cum* Temporal, *when*, referring to the Present or Future is used with the Indicative; as, *cum . . . premuntur*, *when they are overwhelmed* (VI. 13).

*b.* With *cum* Temporal, *when*, and *cum primum*, *as soon as*, referring to Past Time, Caesar uses the Indicative when the force of *cum* is purely Temporal; as, *cum . . . exercitus . . . meritus (esse) vidēbātur*, *when the army clearly earned, lit. was seen to have earned* (I. 40); *cum primum potuit*, *as soon as he could* (III. 9).

*c.* With *cum* Temporal, *when*, and *cum primum*, *as soon as*, referring to Past Time, Caesar uses the Subjunctive when an idea of Circumstance, Condition, or Cause is involved; as, *cum ferrum sē inflexisset*, *when (i.e. when and because) the iron had become bent, lit. had bent itself* (I. 25); *cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet*, *as soon as (and because) there began to be plenty of forage* (II. 2).

**186. a.** Caesar sometimes uses *cum* Temporal or *ubi* with the Indicative to denote recurrent action; as, *cum ūsus est*, *whenever it is necessary* (IV. 2).

*b.* Caesar sometimes uses *cum* Temporal correlatively with the Adverb *tum* in the sense *not only . . . but also, but, both . . . and*; as, *cum omnis iuventūs . . . convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat*, *not only (lit. when) had all the youth . . . assembled but (lit. then) all the ships they had* (III. 16).

**187.** Caesar sometimes uses *cum* Adversative, *although, while*, with the Subjunctive; as, *cum ea ita sint*, *although this (lit. those things) is true* (I. 14).

**188. a.** Caesar uses the Temporal Conjunctions *ubi*, *ut*, *when*, *postquam*, *after*, *postea quam* (written as two words) *after that, after*, and *simul atque*, *simul*, *as soon as*, with the Indicative, usually in the Perfect Tense. Thus, *Quod ubi Caesar rescit*, *When Caesar found this out* (I. 28); *postquam Caesar pervēnit*, *after Caesar arrived* (I. 27); *simul atque sē recōpērunt*, *so soon as they rallied* (IV. 27).

*b.* The conjunction *ut*, *as*, introducing a comparison, is used with the Indicative; as, *ut . . . nōluerant, ita*, *as they had been unwilling so . . .* (II. 1).

*c.* *ubi primum*, *as soon as* (lit. *when first*), is used with the Perfect Indicative; as, *ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt*, *as soon as they saw our horsemen* (IV. 12).

d. The Pluperfect Indicative with *ubi* may denote a Repeated Action; as, *ubi . . . cōspexerant*, *whenever they saw*, lit. *when they had seen* (IV. 26).

189. a. Caesar uses *prius quam*, *until, before*, with the Indicative to denote an actual occurrence or a fact; as, *neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum . . . pervēnērunt*, *and they did not stop their flight until they reached the river Rhine* (I. 58).

b. Caesar uses *prius quam* and *ante quam*, *sooner than, before*, with the Subjunctive, implying Expectancy or Purpose in an action; as, *prius quam sē hostēs reciperent*, *before the enemy could rally* (II. 12).

190. a. Caesar uses *dum* Temporal in the sense of *while* with the Indicative Historical Present; in the sense of *so long as, while*, with the Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Perfect. Thus, *Dum ea conquīruntur*, *while those things were* (lit. *are*) *being sought out* (I. 27); *Dum longius aberant Galli*, *so long as the Gauls were further away* (VII. 82).

b. Caesar uses *dum*, *until*, with the Subjunctive to denote Intention or Expectancy; as, *dum . . . Helvētīi pervenīrent*, *until the Helvetians should reach* (I. 11).

c. Caesar uses *quoad* in the Temporal sense of *so long as, until*, with the Indicative; in the sense of *until* denoting Intention or Expectancy, with the Subjunctive. Thus, *quoad potuit*, *so long as he could* (IV. 12); *quoad ipse propius . . . accessisset*, *until he himself should have come up nearer* (IV. 11).

191. a. Caesar uses the Adversative Conjunctions *etsī, tametsī*, *although*, with the Indicative; as, *etsī . . . vidēbat*, *although he saw* (I. 46).

b. Concessive *ut*, meaning *granted that, although*, is followed by the Subjunctive; as, *ut omnia contrā opiniōnem accidant*, *granted that everything turn out contrary to expectation* (in Indirect Form III. 9).

192. Relative Clauses, introduced by a Relative or General Relative Pronoun, have their Verb in the Indicative unless an idea of Purpose, Characteristic, Cause, Result, or Condition is involved; as, *Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant*, *of the Allobroges, who had lately been subdued* (I. 6); *quaecumque pars castrōrum . . . premi vidēbātur*, *whenever any part* (lit. *whatever part*) *of the camp seemed to be hard pressed* (III. 4).

193. a. A Relative Clause of Purpose may be introduced by *quī* (= *ut is, in order that he*), or by the Relative Adverbs *quō* (= *ut*

eō), quā (= ut eā), and has its Verb in the Subjunctive; as, *lēgātōs mittunt* (Historical Present) *nōbillissimōs civitātis . . . quī dīcerent*, they sent as envoys the citizens of highest rank to say, lit. who should say (I. 7); *quō gravius hominēs . . . doleant*, in order that men may more bitterly suffer (I. 14). Cf. 355 (p. 643).

b. In Relative Clauses of Purpose quō is generally used with a Comparative; as, *quō facilius . . . possit*, that he might (lit. may) be able the more easily (I. 8).

194. a. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive, introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Relative Adverb, may characterize an Indefinite Antecedent (Clause of Characteristic); as, *itinerā duo, quibus itineribus . . . exire possent*, two routes by which they could go out, i.e. two routes of such a character that by them they could go out (I. 6); *nihil [eīs] erat quō famem tolerārent*, they had nothing with which they could satisfy hunger (I. 28).

b. A Clause of Characteristic may be used after a Comparative; as *nōn longius aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset*, were already within range, lit. not further away than (the distance) to which a dart could be thrown (II. 21).

c. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have a Causal Force; as, *Catuvolcus . . . dētestātus Ambiorigē, quī eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, . . . eō exanimāvit*, cursing Ambiorix, since he (lit. who) had been the originator of that scheme, Catuvolcus killed himself (VI. 31).

d. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have an Adversative Force; as, *Cicerō, quī . . . milites in castris continuisset*, Cicero, although he had kept the soldiers in camp (VI. 36).

e. A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may have a Conditional Force; as *quī . . . vidēret* if one should look at (VII. 19).

f. A Restrictive Clause may be introduced by the Relative quod and have the Subjunctive; as, *quod . . . posset*, so far as he might be able, (lit. that) which, etc. (I. 35).

195. A Relative Clause of Result may be introduced by quī (= ut is, so that he), or quīn (= quī nōn, quae nōn, quod nōn), and has its Verb in the Subjunctive; as, *Nēmō est tam fortis, quīn rei novitāte perturbētur*, No one (of them) was so strong that he was not upset by the unexpectedness of the occurrence (VI. 39).

196. a. Clauses of Purpose in Caesar are most often introduced by ut, utī, in order that, that, or nē, in order that not, lest, and have their Verb in the Subjunctive; as, *ut spatium interocēdere posset*,

in order that a period of time might (lit. might be able to) intervene (I. 7); *Id nō accideret*, in order that this might not happen (I. 38).

b. In Clauses of Purpose Caesar uses *nō . . . nōve* (*neu*) in the sense of *that not . . . nor*, and *ut* (*utī*) . . . *nōve* (*neu*) in the sense of *that . . . and that not*, with the Subjunctive; as, *ut . . . eārum rērum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent*, that the force of these things might be lessened and that they might not damage the bridge (IV. 17).

197. a. Clauses of Result are most often introduced by *ut* or *utī*, so that, that (negative *nōn*), and have their Verb in the Subjunctive; as, *ut perpauci prohibere possent*, so that a very few (men) could stop them (I. 6); *ut . . . iudiciū nōn possit*, that it cannot be determined (I. 12).

b. Clauses of Result are often preceded by a word of Measure or Quality, *tam*, *tantus*, *ita*, *sic*, etc.; as, *tanta rērum commutatio est facta, ut nostri . . . proelium redintegrarent*, so great a change was brought about that our (men) renewed the fight (II. 27); *sic muniēbatur, ut magnam . . . daret facultatem*, was so fortified that it afforded a great resource (I. 38).

c. A Clause of Result with the Subjunctive may be introduced by *quam* after a Comparative, with or without *ut*; as, *pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret*, a cloud of dust greater than usual lit. greater than (so that) an ordinary condition would bring it (IV. 32).

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

198. a. Substantive Clauses are used as Subject of a Verb, as Object of a Verb, and in other Relations similar to those in which Nouns are used.

b. A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, *that*, has its Verb in the Indicative, and may stand as Subject, or Predicate, or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition. Thus, *magnū erat impedimentū, quod . . . neque . . . poterant*, A great hindrance . . . was the fact that they were able neither to . . . the *quod*-clause being the Subject of *erat* (I. 25); *causa mittendī fuit quod . . . volēbat*, the reason for sending was the fact that he wanted . . . the *quod*-clause being in Predicate (III. 1); *multae res . . . in primis quod . . . vidēbat*, many circumstances, first of all the fact that he saw . . . the *quod*-clause being in Apposition with *res* (I. 33).

c. A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning *As to the fact that*, *As regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod . . . enūtiārit*, 'As to the

fact that he had reported'; in the direct form, *quod ōnūtiāvi*, as to the fact that I have reported (I. 17).

199. a. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, or *utī*, *that*, and *nē*, *that not*, are used after Verbs of *Commanding, Urging, Reminding, Asking, Persuading, Conceding and Permitting, Deciding, Striving*; the Subjunctive may often best be translated by an Infinitive. Thus, *Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut . . . oōpiam facerent*, ordered the Allobroges to furnish (lit. that they should furnish) a supply . . . (I. 28); *persuādet* (Historical Present) *Castio* . . . *ut rēgnum . . . occupāret*, persuaded Casticus to seize the kingly power (I. 8).

Such Verbs and Phrases used by Caesar are :

- (1) Commanding : *imperō*, order ; *interdicō*, enjoin (VII. 40); *mandō*, command (I. 47) ; *negōtium dō*, assign the task (II. 2) ; *praecipō*, enjoin, direct (I. 22) ; *dēnūtiō*, enjoin, (C. III. 86) ; *praedicō*, order in advance (C. III. 92).
- (2) Urging : *cohortor*, encourage (II. 21) ; *hortor*, urge (I. 19) ; *solicito*, press (III. 8).
- (3) Reminding : *admoneō*, admonish (V. 49) ; *moneō*, warn (I. 20).
- (4) Asking : *dēprecor*, beg to escape (II. 31) ; *oro*, beg (IV. 16) ; *obsecro*, beseech (I. 20) ; *obtestor*, pray (IV. 25) ; *petō*, ask earnestly (I. 28) ; *postulō*, demand (I. 34) ; *rogo*, ask (I. 7).
- (5) Persuading : *addicō*, prevail upon (I. 31) ; *persuadeō*, persuade ; *impellō*, incite (IV. 16).
- (6) Conceding and Permitting : *concedō*, grant (III. 18) ; *patior*, suffer, allow (I. 45) ; *permittō*, permit (I. 35).
- (7) Deciding : *cōnseō*, decree (I. 35) ; *cōstituō*, determine (II. 10) ; *placuit*, it pleased (I. 34) ; *sancio*, bind (I. 30).
- (8) Striving : *agō*, arrange (I. 41) ; *contendō*, strive (I. 31) ; *dō operam*, take pains (V. 7) ; *impetrō*, obtain one's request (I. 9) ; *labōrō*, put forth effort (I. 31).

b. Such Verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the Passive, the Substantive Clause taking the place of a Subject; as *erat ei praeceptum, nē proellum committeret*, he had been ordered not to join battle, lit. it had been ordered to him that he should not, etc. (I. 22).

c. With such Verbs the Substantive Clause is sometimes replaced by the Infinitive, with or without a Subject Accusative; as, *loqui concōditur*, permission is given to speak (VI. 20) ; *Hās [nāvēs] actuariās imperat fieri*, he ordered that these (ships) be built for fast movement (V. 1).

d. As a Negative Connective between Substantive Subjunctive Clauses Caesar uses *nōve* (before vowels and *h*) and *neu* (before consonants), with the meaning *and that . . . not*, or *that . . . not*.

200. a. In Substantive Clauses with **ut** after **admoneō**, **cōhortor**, **cōstituō**, **imperō**, **mandō**, **nūntiō**, *order*, **postulō**, *demand*, and **rogō**, *ask*, and a few phrases, the **ut** is sometimes omitted; as, **rogat** (Historical Present), **finem orandi faciat**, *asked him to make an end of his pleading* (I. 20).

b. **iubeō**, *order, bid*, and **vetō**, *forbid*, are regularly used by Caesar with the Infinitive and Subject Accusative; **cōnor**, *attempt*, with the Infinitive; as, **quemque effere iubent**, *they gave (lit. give) orders that each person carry away . . .* (I. 5); **exsequi cōnārētur**, *attempted to enforce* (I. 4).

201. a. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **nē**, *that not*, **quō minus**, *that not (lit. by which the less)*, and **quān**, *that not*, are used after Verbs of *Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing*; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, **hōs . . . dēterrēre nē frumentum cōnferant**, *these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain* (I. 17); **retinēri nōn potuerant quān . . . tāla conciderent**, *could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I. 47).

Such Verbs used by Caesar are:

**dēterreō**, *hold back through fear*; **recūsō**, *refuse* (I. 31); **retineō**, *restrain*; **temperō**, *restrain one's self* (I. 33); **teneō**, *hold back* (IV. 22); **terreō**, *frighten* (VII. 49).

b. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **quān** are used also after general expressions of Doubt and Negation, **quān** being translated *that*. Thus, **nōn esse dubium, quān . . .**, *that there was no doubt that* (I. 3); **neque abest suspiciō . . . quān**, *and there is ground for suspecting that, lit. and there is not lacking suspicion that* (I. 4).

c. After **dubitō**, meaning *doubt*, Caesar uses a Substantive Clause with **quān** and the Subjunctive; after **dubitō**, *hesitate*, generally the Infinitive, rarely a clause with **quān**. Thus, **nōn dubitāre quān . . . sumat**, *he did not doubt that he (Ariovistus) would inflict* (I. 31); **transire flumen nōn dubitāverunt**, *did not hesitate to cross the river* (II. 23); **dubitandum nōn existimāvit quān . . . proficiscirētur**, *thought that he ought not to hesitate to set out* (II. 2).

202. Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** and **nē** are used after Verbs of *Fearing*; after such Verbs **ut** is to be translated *that not*, and **nē**, *that, or lest*. Thus, **nē . . . offenderet verēbātur**, *was afraid that he might offend* (I. 19); **ut . . . supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant**, *were saying that they feared that (the supply of grain) could not be brought up* (I. 39).



**203.** Clauses of Result introduced by **ut** or **utī** and **ut nōn** are used as Substantive Clauses in four ways:

- (1) As the Subject of Impersonal Verbs; thus, **flēbat ut . . . vagārentur**, *it came about that they wandered* (I. 2); **Accēdēbat ut . . . tempestātem ferrent**, *There was the additional fact that they weathered the storm* (III. 13).

The more important Impersonal Forms thus used by Caesar are **accēdēbat**; **accidit**, *it happened* (IV. 29); **fit** (C. II. 4); **flēbat**; **factum est** (III. 19); **factum esse** (I. 31), **feri** (II. 4); **institūtum est**, *the custom became fixed* (C. III. 92); **Relinquēbātur**, *the result was*, lit. *it was left* (V. 19); and the Future Infinitive of **sum** in both forms, **futūrum esse** (I. 10, 20, 31), and **fore** (I. 42).

- (2) As Predicate or Appositive with **cōnsuētūdō est** and **īdē est**; thus, **ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae . . . dēclārārent**, *there was the custom that the matrons should declare* (I. 50).
- (3) As Object after Verbs of Action and Accomplishment; thus, **committeret ut is locus . . . nōmen caperet**, lit. *bring it about that the place . . . should assume a name* (I. 13); **commēatūs ut . . . portārī possent, efficiēbat**, *made it possible for supplies to be brought*, lit. *was accomplishing that supplies could be brought* (II. 5).

The Verbs thus used by Caesar are **committō**, **efficiō**, **perficiō** (I. 9).

- (4) As Appositive of a Noun or Neuter Pronoun whose meaning the **ut**-clause defines; thus, **poenam, ut Ignī cremārētur**, *the penalty of being burned by fire*, lit. *that he should be burned by fire* (I. 4); **id, quod cōstituerant . . . ut ē finibus suis exeant**, *that which they had resolved upon, a migration from their country*, lit. *that they should go out from their territories* (I. 5).

**204.** Indirect Questions are used as Substantive Clauses after Expressions of Inquiry, Narration, Deliberation, and Uncertainty, and have the Subjunctive. The following types of Indirect Questions are used by Caesar:

- (1) Introduced by the Interrogative Particles **-ne** (V. 27), **num** (I. 14) in Single Questions; in Double Questions, by the Correlative Particles **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or* (I. 40); **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not*, **necne** representing **annōn** of the Direct Form (I. 50); **-ne . . . an**, *whether . . .*

or (VI. 31); **-ne . . . an . . . an**, *whether . . . or . . . or* (IV. 14); **-ne . . . -ne**, *whether . . . or* (VII. 14); and **an** alone, *utrum* being omitted, or (VII. 15). Thus, *cōnsultum [esse], utrum Igni statim necārētur an . . . reservārētur*, *that counsel was taken whether he should at once be put to death by burning, or saved up for another occasion* (I. 53).

- (2) Introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun; as, *Dumnorigi cōstōdēs pōnit* (Historical Present), *ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit* (Caesar), *set guards over Dumnorix, in order to be able to know what (lit. what things) he did, with whom he talked* (I. 20).
- (3) Introduced by Pronominal Adjectives, and Adverbs used Interrogatively; as, in *utram partem fluat*, *in which direction it flows* (I. 12). Adjectives and Adverbs thus used by Caesar are *quālis*, *of what sort* (I. 21); *quam* with an Adjective, *how* (I. 43); *quantus*, *how great* (I. 17); *quem ad modum*, *in what way* (I. 36); *uter*, *which*; *cūr*, *why* (I. 40); *quārē*, *wherefore, why* (I. 45); *quō*, *whither* (III. 16); *quot*, *how many* (VII. 19); *quotiens*, *how often* (I. 43); *unde*, *whence* (V. 53); *ut*, *how* (I. 43).
- (4) Introduced by **si**, *if, whether*, after Verbs of Effort and Expectation; as, **si perrumpere possent, cōnātī**, *trying (to see) whether they could break through* (I. 8).

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**205.** Caesar has General Conditions of the First Type (Conditions of Fact) introduced by **si**, *if*, with the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Protasis implying Customary or Repeated Action; **si** is almost equivalent to *whenever*. Thus:

- (1) Present Tense in both Protasis and Apodosis: **si quis ex reliquis excellit, succēdit**, *if anyone of the rest is preëminent, he becomes the successor of the arch-druid* (VI. 13).
- (2) Imperfect Tense in both Protasis and Apodosis: **si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant**, *if there was unusually serious difficulty (lit. if there was anything rather hard) they would rush to the rescue* (I. 48).
- (3) Perfect Tense in the Protasis, Present in the Apodosis: **si compertum est, interficiunt**, *if the fact (of crime) has been established, they kill* (VI. 19).

- (4) Pluperfect Tense in the Protasis, Imperfect in the Apodosis: **si qui . . . equo dēolderat, circumstātēbant**, *if anyone had fallen from his horse, they would gather around him* (I. 48).

**206.** Caesar has Specific Conditions of the First Type (Conditions of Fact) introduced by **si**, *if*, or **nisi**, *unless*, with the Indicative in the Protasis, and the Indicative, Imperative, or Hortatory Subjunctive in the Apodosis. Thus:

- (1) Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis: **Cuius si vōs paenitet, vestrum vōbīs beneficium remittō**, *if you regret this, I give you back your favor* (C. II. 32).
- (2) Present Indicative in the Protasis, Present Imperative in the Apodosis: **Dēsillite . . . nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere**, *jump down, unless you wish to abandon your eagle to the enemy* (IV. 25).
- (3) Present Indicative in the Protasis, Hortatory Subjunctive in the Apodosis: **Si quid in nobīs animi est, persequāmur mortem**, *if we have any vestige of courage in us, let us avenge the death* (VII. 38).
- (4) Future Perfect Indicative in the Protasis, Future Indicative or Imperative in the Apodosis: **si gravius quid acciderit, ratiōnem reposcent**, *if any disaster shall befall them (lit. anything rather heavy shall have happened), they will demand an accounting* (V. 30); **Tuēmini castra, et dēfendite, si quid dūrius acciderit**, *guard the camp, and defend it in case of any trouble, lit. if anything rather hard shall have happened* (C. III. 94).

**207.** Caesar has conditions of the Second Type (Conditions of Possible Realization), introduced by **si**, *if*, **nisi**, *unless*, or **sin**, *but if*, with the Subjunctive in the Protasis, and the Potential Subjunctive, or the Indicative (emphasizing the situation as an actual one) in the Apodosis; thus:

- (1) Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis: **qui, si per te liceat, . . . cum reliquis belli cāsū sustineant**, *if they should have your permission, they would share the fortune of war with the rest* (V. 30).
- (2) Present Subjunctive in the Protasis, Present Indicative in the Apodosis: **neque, aliter si faciat, illam habet auctoritatem**, *and if (a leading man) does (lit. should do) otherwise, he has no influence at all* (VI. 11).

- (3) Imperfect Subjunctive in the Protasis, Imperfect Indicative in the Apodosis: **sī continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris**, *if he desired to keep his companies with the standards, the very (character of the) region was a protection to the natives* (VI. 34).

**208.** *a.* Caesar has Conditions of the Third Type (Conditions Contrary to Fact), introduced by **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *unless*, with the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present Time, the Pluperfect to Past Time. Thus:

- (1) Imperfect: **ego hanc sententiam probārem . . . sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri vidērem**, *I should approve this view if I saw that no (loss) was involved except the loss of our own lives*, implying that the speaker did not approve the view, and that other loss was involved (VII. 77).
- (2) Pluperfect: **nisi . . . milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent**, *if the soldiers had not been exhausted . . ., the entire forces of the enemy might have been wiped out*, implying that the soldiers were exhausted, and that many of the enemy escaped (VII. 88).

*b.* The Indicative is used in the Apodosis of Conditions Contrary to Fact when there is present an idea of Necessity, Propriety, or Possibility; as, **sī populus Rōmānus alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre**, *if the Roman people had been conscious of any wrongdoing it would not have been* (lit. *was not*) *difficult (for them) to take precautions* (from the Indirect Form in I. 14).

*c.* The Imperfect Subjunctive, referring to Past Time, may be used in Conditions Contrary to Fact, if a lasting state of affairs is implied; as, **sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem**, *If I had wanted (or now wanted) anything of Caesar, I should have come to him* (from the Indirect Form in I. 34).

**209.** In the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence an Ablative Absolute, a Participle, or other form of expression implying a Condition, may be used in place of the clause with **sī**; as, **datā facultāte**, taking the place of **sī facultās data esset**, *if an opportunity should have been granted*, in the Direct Form, **sī facultās data erit** (I. 7); **damnātum (eum)**, *him, if condemned*, **damnātum** taking the place of **sī damnātus esset** (I. 4).

**210.** Caesar has Conditional Clauses of Comparison with the Subjunctive introduced by *velut si*, *quasi*, and *proinde ac si*. Thus: *quod . . . absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem velut si cōram adesset, horrērent*, that is . . . *velut horrērent, si cōram adesset, horrērent*, because they dreaded Ariovistus's cruelty when he was away just as (they would dread it) if he were present (I. 32); *Quasi vērō cōsiliū sit rēs*, As if indeed it were a matter of choice, i.e. as it would be, if it should be a matter of choice (VII. 38); *proinde ac si . . . vellent*, just as if they proposed (C. III. 60).

## DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATION AND INDIRECT DISCOURSE

### GENERAL STATEMENT

**211. a.** Caesar presents the language of another person in two ways, either in Direct Quotation, or in Indirect Quotation, a form of Indirect Discourse.

*b.* In Direct Quotation Caesar quotes:

- (1) Words spoken directly to him, as the brave words of Crastinus just before going into action at the battle of Pharsalus (C. III. 91).
- (2) Words reported to him, presumably by his officers; as the exhortation of the unnamed standard-bearer of the Tenth Legion when landing on the British shore, if this was spoken outside of Caesar's hearing (IV. 25), and the challenge of Pullo to Vorenus (V. 44).
- (8) Words or Speeches, sometimes in dialects foreign to Caesar, which he presents in his own language, but throws into the form of Direct Quotation in order to enhance the effect; such are the words of the Eburonian captive to the Sugambrian leaders (VI. 35), and the speech of the cold-blooded Critognatus at the war council in Alesia (VII. 77); also the words of the dying eagle-bearer (C. III. 64), and the remarks of Pompey and Labienus before Pharsalus (C. III. 86, 87).

**212. a.** In Indirect Quotation, or Indirect Discourse in the narrower sense, Caesar in most cases aims to present, not a word-for-word reproduction of what was said or written, but a summary, as brief as possible, of the main points. For example, in order to move to action the other prominent Helvetians, and carry through the negotiations with Casticus and Dumnorix, Orgetorix must have had

many conferences, extending over a considerable period of time; yet the gist of the argument by which, according to Caesar, he persuaded the whole Helvetian nation to migrate, is given in ten words of Indirect Discourse (I. 2), while the gist of the argument by which Casticus and Dumnorix were induced to join him in forming a triumvirate of usurpation is summarized in thirty-one words (I. 3).

b. The kind of Summary found in the longer passages of Caesar's Indirect Discourse has a parallel in the condensed reports of addresses in the newspapers. A reporter, sent to prepare a synopsis of a lecture an hour in length, on the Moon, might on his return to the newspaper office find his space reduced, by pressure of matter, to sixty words; he might nevertheless summarize the main points thus:

*"The lecturer said that the moon is nearly two hundred and thirty-nine thousand miles from the earth; that under the telescope it has the appearance of a dead planet; that most careful observations have failed to detect the presence of air or water; and that, notwithstanding the moon's brightness, due to reflection, its surface must be as cold as ice."*

c. In a manner somewhat similar, but with marvelous clearness and cogency in view of the degree of condensation, Caesar in Indirect Discourse presents summarizing statements, or outlines, including —

- (1) Conferences with Gallic and German leaders, conducted, no doubt haltingly, through interpreters, as with Divico (I. 13, 14), Liscus and other Aeduans (I. 17, 18), the Gallic delegation (I. 30-33), and Ariovistus (I. 43-45).
- (2) His own addresses; as the speech with which he quelled an incipient mutiny (I. 40), and his exhortation to his soldiers at Pharsalus (C. III. 90).
- (3) Reports made to him; as by Labienus (II. 1) and the envoys of the Remi (II. 3. 4).
- (4) Requests and replies, messages and instructions; as the request of the Helvetian envoys, and Caesar's answer (I. 7); the plea of the Aeduans (I. 11), Caesar's message to the Lingones (I. 26), messages to and from Ariovistus (I. 34-36, 47).
- (5) Arguments; as the arguments of Orgetorix (I. 2, 3), and of disloyal natives (II. 17).
- (6) Brief reports, explanations or speeches, presented in some cases with little or no condensation, as the hurried report of Considius (I. 22), the apology of the soldiers (I. 41), the joke by the soldier of the Tenth Legion (I. 42), and the taunt of the Atuatucae as translated into Latin (II. 30).

d. Indirect Discourse in a broader sense includes all statements in the Indirect Form after words of Thought as well as Speech; as, *biennium satis esse dixerunt*, they reckoned that two years would be sufficient (I. 8).

e. In the Latin text of this book the more important Indirect Quotations and Summaries are printed in Italic Type.

213. a. Indirect Discourse is introduced by a Verb or other Expression of *Saying, Perceiving, Ascertaining, Thinking, Knowing, or Remembering*; as, *sē . . . condonare dicit* (Historical Present) he said that he would pardon (I. 20).

Such Verbs and Expressions used by Caesar are:

*ago*, present a case (I. 13); *animadvertō*, notice (I. 32); *arbitror*, think (I. 2); *audiō*, hear (IV. 7); *cōseō*, decide, think (VII. 21); *certiorem faciō*, inform (I. 11); *certior fit*, is informed (I. 12); *clāmitō*, cry out (V. 7); *cogitō*, think (V. 33); *cognōscō*, learn (I. 22); *commemorō*, relate (IV. 16); *comperiō*, ascertain (IV. 19); *conclāmō*, shout (III. 18); *cōnfidō*, be confident, trust (III. 9); *cōnfirmō*, assure (I. 3); *coniecturam capiō*, infer (VII. 35); *cōnspiciō*, see (II. 24); *cōnstat*, it is agreed (III. 6); *cōnstituō*, resolve (II. 10); *contendō*, insist (VI. 41); *crēdō*, believe (II. 33).

*dēmōstrō*, show, prove (I. 11); *dēnūtiō*, threaten (I. 36); *dīcō*, say; *diffidō*, lose confidence (VI. 36); *discō*, learn (VII. 54); *doceō*, explain (I. 43); *dīcō*, reckon (I. 3); *existimō*, reckon, think (I. 6); *faciō verba*, make a plea (II. 14); *intellegō*, understand (I. 16); *inveniō*, find out (II. 16); *iūdicō*, judge (I. 45); *iūrō*, swear (VI. 12); *loquor*, speak, say (II. 31).

*memini*, remember (III. 6); *memoriā teneō*, hold in memory, remember (I. 7); *mihi persuasum habēō*, am convinced (III. 2); *moneō*, explain (C. III. 89); *negō*, declare that . . . not (I. 8); *nūtiō*, announce (II. 2); *nūntium mittō*, send word (II. 6); *ostendō*, make plain (I. 8); *perscribō*, write fully (V. 49); *perspicīō*, perceive (III. 9); *polliceor*, promise (I. 33); *praedicō*, declare (I. 39); *prō explōrātō habēō*, consider certain (VI. 5); *probō*, show, prove (I. 3); *profiteor*, declare (VII. 2); *prōnūtiō*, announce (V. 56); *prōvideō*, foresee (VII. 39); *putō*, think (IV. 3).

*recordor*, recall (C. III. 47); *referō*, report (VI. 10); *renūtiō*, bring (back) report (I. 10); *reperiō*, find out, ascertain (I. 18); *respondeō*, answer (I. 14); *sciō*, know (I. 20); *scribō*, write (V. 13); *sentiō*, perceive (I. 18); *spem habēō*, have hope that (I. 33); *significō*, give intimation (II. 13); *simulō*, pretend (IV. 4); *spērō*, hope (I. 3); *statuō*, determine (I. 42); *suspīcor*, suspect (I. 44); *testibus ūtor*, take as witnesses that (VII. 77); *videō*, see (I. 33); *voveō*, vow (VI. 16).

b. The Verb of *Saying*, on which Indirect Discourse depends, is sometimes not expressed, but implied in the Context; as, *Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit . . . scire sē*, throwing his arms around Caesar began to beseech (him, saying) that he knew (I. 20).

## RULES FOR INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**214. a.** In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statements, corresponding with the Principal Clauses of Direct Discourse, are expressed by the Subject Accusative and the Infinitive; Subordinate Clauses have the Subjunctive. Thus, **Cōnsuēsse deōs immortālēs . . . quōs prō scelere eōrum ulōisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs, et diātūrnīōrem impūnitātem, concēdere,** *The immortal gods are wont to grant a more prosperous estate meanwhile, and longer freedom from punishment, to those whom they desire to punish for their wickedness*; in the Direct Form **cōnsuēsse deōs** would become **consuērunt dī, et velint** in the Subordinate Clause would be **volunt**, the other words remaining unchanged, and the sentence would read **Cōnsuērunt dī immortālēs . . . quōs prō scelere eōrum ulōisci volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diātūrnīōrem impūnitātem concēdere** (I. 14).

**b.** A Subordinate Clause containing an implied quotation may have the Subjunctive; as, **frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī,** *the grain which (as he said) they had promised* (I. 16).

**c.** In Indirect Discourse a Subordinate or Parenthetical Clause, presenting a Statement of Fact which is not necessarily a part of the Indirect Discourse, may have the Indicative; as, **Condriāsōs . . . Paemānōs, quī Germānī appellantur,** *that the Condrusi . . . and the Paemani, who are called Germans* (II. 4).

**215.** The Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse is sometimes omitted when it is easily understood from the Context, especially when it refers to the same person as the Subject of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends; as, **scīre,** for **sē scīre,** *that he knew* (I. 40, l. 41); **prohibitūrum ostendit,** for **sē prohibitūrum esse ostendit** (Historical Present), *he showed that he would prevent them* (I. 8).

**216.** Commands expressed in Direct Quotation by the Imperative, or by the Jussive Subjunctive, in Indirect Discourse have the Subjunctive, the Negative being **nē**. Thus, **reminiscerētur,** *let him remember*, which in the Direct Form would be Imperative, **reminiscere, remember** (I. 13); **nē . . . tribueret,** *that he should not presume*, the Direct Form being **nōllī tribuere** (I. 13).

**217. a.** Ordinary Questions in Indirect Discourse have the Subjunctive; as, **Cūr in suās possessiōēs venīret,** *Why did he (Caesar) come into his possessions?* in the Direct Form this would be,



**Cūr in meīs possessionēs venīs?** *Why do you come into my possessions* (I. 44)?

b. Deliberative Questions in Indirect Discourse retain the Subjunctive, but the Tense is governed by that of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends (177, a, b); thus, **Quid agāmus?** *What are we to do?* after a Past Tense in Indirect Discourse becomes **Quid agerent**; as, **neque satis . . . cōstābat, quid agerent**, and it was not quite clear . . . what they should do (III. 14).

c. Rhetorical Questions in Indirect Discourse have the Infinitive (179, b); as, **quid esse levius**, *what is more capricious*, implying that nothing could be more capricious (V. 28).

**218.** An Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence containing a Statement is expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Accusative and Infinitive, containing a Command, by the Subjunctive; the Protasis, containing the Condition, has the Subjunctive, as follows:

(1) a. In the First Type (Conditions of Fact), the Tense of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse corresponds with the Tense of the Apodosis in the Direct Form, while the Tense of the Protasis, introduced by **si** or **sin**, is governed by that of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends (177, a, b). Thus, **Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs [esse] atque ibi futūrōs [esse] Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset**, *He took up (the matter) with Caesar thus: If the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go wherever Caesar should have appointed and wished them to be, and would there remain*; in the Direct Form, **Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētī, ubi eōs tū cōstitueris** (Future Perfect Indicative) **atque esse volueris** (I. 13).

b. In the Protasis of the First Type a Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse may represent a Future Perfect Indicative in the Direct Form; as, **Quod si fēcerit** (Perfect Subjunctive), **Aeduōrum auctōritātem amplificātūrum [esse]**, *If he should do this, he would increase the prestige of the Aeduans*; in the Direct Form, **Quod si fēceris** (Future Perfect Indicative) **Aeduōrum auctōritātem amplificābis**, *If you will do (lit. shall have done) this, you will increase the prestige of the Aeduans* (II. 14).

- (2) In the Second Type (Conditions of Possible Realization) the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse represents the Subjunctive of the Direct Form; the Tense of the Present Subjunctive in the Protasis is Present after a Present Tense, but Imperfect in case the Indirect Discourse follows a Past Tense. Thus, after a Present Tense, **SI quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem . . . venire, if any (disaster) should befall the Romans, he would entertain the highest expectation, lit. would come into the highest hope**; in the Direct Form, **si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem veniat** (I. 18).
- (3) In the Third Type (Conditions Contrary to Fact) in Indirect Discourse the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation corresponds to the Active Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis of the Direct Form, while a Passive Pluperfect Subjunctive in the Apodosis is represented by **futūrum fuisse** (Impersonal) **ut . . .** with a Passive Imperfect Subjunctive, the Protasis being in the Subjunctive; as, **neque Eburonēs, si ille adesset, (fuisse) ventūrōs, nor would the Eburones have come if he (had been and) were at hand** (V. 29; cf. 208, c); **nisi nūntiī essent allātī, existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse, utī (oppidum) amitterētur, if news had not been brought, most people were of the opinion that the town would have been lost**, in the Direct Form, **nisi nūntiī essent allātī, oppidum amissum esset** (C. III. 101).

219. The Apodosis of a Conditional Sentence is sometimes incorporated in a Substantive Clause introduced by **ut, nē, or quīn**. Thus, **ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās non deesset, in order that, if Ariovistus wished to contend in battle, opportunity might not be lacking to him**, in the Direct Form, **SI . . . volet . . . nōn deerit** (I. 48); **neque dubitāre debēre quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint** (Perfect Subjunctive) **Rōmānī . . . Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī, and that they ought not to doubt that, if the Romans should have overpowered the Helvetians, they were going to take away liberty from the Aeduans**, in the Direct Form, **si Helvētiōs superāverint** (Future Perfect Indicative) **Rōmānī . . . ēreptūrī sunt** (I. 17).

220. The Verb of a clause subordinate to a clause having its Verb in the Subjunctive, or in the Infinitive, is ordinarily put in the Subjunctive (Subjunctive by Attraction); as, **utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī . . . supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet, that he might cut Caesar off from the grain and other supplies which were being brought up** (I. 48).

**227. a.** A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of *Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description*. Thus:

- (1) Expressing Cause: **sē, Biturigum perfidiam veritōs, revertisse**, *that they, fearing the treachery of the Bituriges, had come back, that is, that they had come back because they feared the treachery of the Bituriges* (VII. 5).
- (2) Expressing Condition: **hanc adepti victōriam, in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant**, *having won this victory, they were confident that they would be victorious for all time, adepti being equivalent to si adepti essent* (V. 39).
- (3) Expressing Opposition: **in colloquium venire invitātus**, *although invited to come to a conference* (I. 35).
- (4) Expressing Characterization or Description: **victi, venientēs**, *those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I. 25).
- (5) Expressing Time: **cōnantēs**, *when they were attempting* (I. 47).

**b.** A Participle may express Manner or Circumstance; as, **flēns peteret**, *with tears* (lit. *weeping*) *he was entreating* (I. 20); **pugnāns interficitur**, *is killed while fighting* (V. 37).

**228. a.** Caesar sometimes uses a Perfect Participle in agreement with the Subject or the Object of a Verb where English usage prefers a coördinate clause. Thus, **Persuādēt** (Historical Present) **Rauracis . . . uti, eōdem usq̄ cōnsiliō, . . . cum eis proficiscantur**, *Persuaded the Rauraci . . . to adopt the same plan, and set out with them*, lit. *that, having used the same plan, they should set out* (I. 5); **Boiōs . . . receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi associant**, *they received and associated with themselves the Boians*, lit. *the Boians, having been received . . . they associated* (I. 5).

**b.** Caesar sometimes uses a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with a Noun where the Participle has the main idea and is best translated by a Noun; as, **ante primam cōfectam vigiliam**, *before the end of the first watch*, lit. *before the first watch having been completed* (VII. 3).

**c.** Caesar sometimes uses a Participle in agreement with the Object of a Verb to depict an Action or a Situation more vividly. Thus, **aliquōs ex nāvi ēgradientēs cōspexerant**, *had seen some (soldiers) disembarking*, is more vivid than **aliquōs . . . ēgredi**, *that some (soldiers) were disembarking* (IV. 26).

229. *a.* **Habēō** with a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with its Object may have almost the force of a Perfect or Pluperfect tense; as, **quem . . . cōsēctum habēbat**, *which he had collected, lit. which, having been collected, he was having* (I. 15).

*b.* Caesar uses the Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) in agreement with the Object of Certain Verbs to express Purpose or Accomplishment; as, **pontem faciendum cūrat** (Historical Present), *he had a bridge built, he attended to the building of a bridge, lit. cared for a bridge to be built* (I. 13).

The verbs thus used are **cūrō**, *arrange, provide*; **dō**, *give* (IV. 22); and **trādō**, *deliver* (VI. 4).

*c.* The Future Passive Participle combined with the forms of **sum** in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (63) is often used to express Obligation, Necessity, or Propriety; as, **revocandī [erant] militēs**, *the soldiers had to be called back* (II. 20). Cf. 357, *a* and *b* (p. 643).

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

230. In place of the Gerund, Caesar more often uses the Gerundive Construction, with the Noun in the case in which the Gerund might have been put, and the Gerundive agreeing with it. His use of the Gerund and of the Gerundive Construction is as follows:

- (1) Genitive after Nouns and Adjectives, and with **causā** and **grātīā** expressing Purpose: **bellandī cupidī**, *desirous of waging war* (I. 2); **Galliae impugnandae causā**, *in order to attack Gaul* (I. 44). Cf. 355 (p. 643).
- (2) Dative after Verbs (Gerundive Construction only): **vix ut eis rēbus . . . collocandīs . . . tempus darētur**, *barely time (enough) was given for making those arrangements, lit. for those things to be arranged* (III. 4).
- (3) Accusative after **ad** to express Purpose: **ad dēliberandum**, *for consideration* (I. 7); **Ad eas res cōficiendās**, *To complete these preparations, lit. for these things to be accomplished* (I. 3). Cf. 355 (p. 643).
- (4) Ablative of Means without a Preposition, and Ablative with the Prepositions **in** or **dē**: **fallendō**, *by practising deception* (IV. 13); **in quaerendō**, *on making inquiry* (I. 18); **dē expugnandō oppidō**, *in regard to storming the stronghold* (II. 10).

## THE SUPINES

**231. a.** The Supine in **-um** is used, chiefly after Verbs of Motion, to express Purpose; as, **ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt**, *came to Caesar to offer congratulations* (I. 30). Cf. 355 (p. 643).

**b.** The Supine in **-um** may be followed by a Direct Object, or by a Clause; as, **lēgātōs mittunt** (Historical Present) **rogātum auxilium**, *sent envoys to ask for help* (I. 11); **questum, quod Harūdēs . . . finēs eōrum populārentur**, *to make complaint because the Harudes were laying waste their country* (I. 37).

**232.** Caesar uses the Supine in **-ū** after a few adjectives to denote in What Respect their Meaning is to be taken; as, **Perfacile factū**, *very easy of accomplishment*, lit. *very easy in respect to the doing* (I. 3).

The Adjectives thus used by Caesar are **horridus** (V. 14), **optimus** (IV. 30), and **perfacilis** (I. 3, VII. 64).

## CONJUNCTIONS

**233. a.** Of the Copulative Conjunctions Caesar uses **et**, *and*, **et . . . et**, *both . . . and, on the one hand . . . on the other*, to express simple connection; **-que**, *and*, **-que . . . -que**, *both . . . and*, to express a closer connection; **atque** or **ac**, *and also, and indeed, and*, to express a close connection and also make that which follows slightly more prominent; and **neque** or **nec**, *and . . . not*, **neque** (or **neo**) . . . **neque** (or **neo**), *neither . . . nor, not . . . and not*; **et . . . neque**, *both . . . and not*; **neque** or **neo** . . . **et**, *and not . . . and*, to express a connection with a negative idea.

**b.** The enclitic Conjunction **-que**, *and*, is attached to the word introduced by it, or to the first word of a Phrase or Clause which it introduces, excepting a Prepositional Phrase; **-que** introducing a Prepositional Phrase may be attached to the first word after the Preposition. Thus, **ob easque rēs**, *and on account of these things* (II. 35).

**c.** After words expressing Similarity, or the Opposite, **atque** or **ac** has the force of *than, as*; as, **in parem . . . condiōnem atque ipsi erant**, *into the same condition . . . as themselves*, lit. *as (and) they themselves were* (I. 28).

**d.** Caesar uses the conjunctions **et**, **-que**, **atque**, **ac**, and **neque** in various combinations, sometimes joining more than two members; as, **et . . . que** (III. 11), **-que . . . et** (II. 22), **et . . . atque** (I. 15), **atque . . . et** (II. 8), **atque . . . -que** (VI. 11), **neque . . . atque**

(II. 10), **neque** . . . **et** (II. 25), **-que** . . . **-que** . . . **-que** (I. 30), **ac** . . . **atque** . . . **-que** (III. 5), **et** . . . **atque** . . . **et** . . . **et** . . . **et** (IV. 33).

234. a. When more than two words stand in the same relation, the Copulative Conjunction may be expressed with **all**, or omitted with **all**, or the last two words may be joined by **-que**; in each case English usage generally prefers "and" between the last two words. Thus, **Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis**, the *Rauraci*, *Tulingi*, and *Latobrigi* (I. 5); **linguā, institūtis, lēgibus**, in respect to *language*, *institutions*, and *laws* (I. 1); **puerī, senēs mulierēque**, *children*, *old men*, and *women* (I. 29).

b. Sometimes, especially after a negative expression, Caesar uses **et**, **-que**, and **atque** or **ac**, where English usage prefers *but*; as, **portūs . . . capere nōn potuerunt, et paulō infrā dēlātæ sunt**, *could not make the harbors but were carried a short distance below* (IV. 36).

235. a. Of the Disjunctive Conjunctions Caesar uses **aut**, *or*, to connect alternatives that cannot, in most cases, both be true at the same time; **vel**, *or*, negative **nōve** or **neu**, *or not*, and *not*, to connect alternatives between which there might be a choice; and **sive** or **seu**, *or if*, to connect alternatives involving a condition. Thus, **quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum**, *five or six miles each day* (I. 15); **Brūtō . . . vel tribūnīs**, *to Brutus or the tribunes* (III. 14).

b. The Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used in pairs, as **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or* (I. 1), **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or* (I. 6), **sive . . . sive**, *whether . . . or*, *either . . . or* (I. 12).

236. a. Of the Adversative Conjunctions Caesar uses **at**, *but*, *at any rate*, to express Contrast or Restriction; **autem**, *however*, *on the other hand*, *moreover*, to express Contrast or Addition; **sed**, *but*, to correct or limit a Preceding Statement; **tamen**, *nevertheless*, *yet*, to emphasize the importance of something that follows in opposition to a Preceding Statement; and **vērō**, *in fact*, *but in truth*, to emphasize a contrast with a Preceding Statement.

b. The Adversative Conjunctions **autem** and **vērō** are regularly placed after the First Word of a Clause.

c. The Adversative Conjunction **tamen** sometimes stands after the First Word of a Clause.

d. Caesar uses correlatively **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*; **nōn modo . . . sed**, *not only . . . but*; **nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē** . . . **quidem**, *not only not . . . but not even*.

e. In *nōn modo . . . nē*—*quidem* Caesar uses *nōn modo* as equivalent to *nōn modo nōn*, when a verb appears only in the second member; as *nōn modo dēfessō . . . sed nē sauciō quidem*, *not only not to one (who was) exhausted . . . but even to a wounded man* (III. 4).

237. a. Of the Conjunctions denoting Logical Relations Caesar uses chiefly *itaque*, *accordingly* (lit. *and so*), to introduce a statement of a fact or situation naturally resulting from what preceded; *proinde*, *hence*, to introduce a Command; *nam* or *enim*, *for*, to introduce an Explanation of a Preceding Statement; and *quārē*, *wherefore*, and *therefore*, to introduce a Logical Consequence, or a Command.

b. In presenting a succession of points Caesar often uses *primum*, *first*, and *deinde*, *then*, in the second place; sometimes, also, *dēnique* in *fine*, to introduce the conclusion of an argument.

c. In the Adverbial Phrase *nē . . . quidem*, *not even*, the word or phrase emphasized is placed between the two words; as, *nē pabulī quidem*, *not even of fodder* (I. 16).

## FIGURES OF SPEECH

238. Caesar uses the following Grammatical Figures:

a. *Asyndeton* (a-sin'de-ton),<sup>1</sup> the omission of a Conjunction where a Connective might have been used; as, *loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset*, *should have become acquainted with the natural features, the harbors (and) the approaches* (IV. 20); *L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōnsulibus*, *in the Consulship of Lucius Piso (and) Aulus Gabinius* (I. 6).

b. *Brachylogy* (bra-kil'q-ji), a condensed form of expression; as, *cōnsimilis capris figurā*, *shape like (that of) goats*, that is, *figurā cōnsimilis figurāe* (Dative) *caprarum* (VI. 27).

c. *Ellipsis* (e-lip'sis), the omission of words essential to the meaning; as, *Duae filiae*, for *Duae filiae fuerunt*, *There were two daughters* (I. 53).

d. *Hendiadys* (hen-di'q-dis), the use of two Nouns with a Connective where a noun with a Modifying Genitive or Adjective might have been expected; as, *fidem et iūs iurandum*, *a pledge of good faith bound by an oath*, lit. *good faith and oath* (I. 3).

e. *Parenthesis* (pā-ren'the-sis), the insertion of an Independent Sentence or phrase, interrupting the Construction; as, *quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat* (*erat . . . legiō fīna*),

<sup>1</sup> The key to the Pronunciation is given at the beginning of the Vocabulary.

**pontem . . . iubet** (Historical Present), **rescindī**, *he levied as many soldiers as possible (there was only one legion, altogether, in further Gaul) and gave orders that the bridge be cut down* (I. 7).

*f. Polysyndeton* (pol-i-sin'de-ton), the use of more Conjunctions than the sense requires; as, **Centronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs**, *the Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges* (I. 10).

*g. Prolepsis* (prō-lep'sis), or *Anticipation*, the use of a Noun as Object in a clause preceding that in which it naturally belongs as Subject; as, **rem frumentāriam, ut supportārī posset, timēre**, *that they feared that the supply of grain could not be brought up, lit. they feared the supply of grain, that it . . .* (I. 39).

*h. Synesis* (sin'e-sis), construction according to the Sense, without regard to the Grammatical Form; as, **civitātī persuāsit, ut . . . exirent**, *persuaded the (people of his) state to go out, lit. persuaded his state that they should go out* (I. 2).

**239.** Caesar uses the following Rhetorical Figures:

*a. Anaphora* (an-af'ō-rā), the Repetition of the same word at the beginning of Successive Phrases or Clauses; as, **nōn aetāte cōnfectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercerunt**, *they spared not the aged, not the women, not the children* (VII. 28).

*b. Antithesis* (an-tith'e-sis), the juxtaposition of contrasted expressions in like order; as, **Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi, bellum intulisse**, *He did not make war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him* (I. 44).

*c. Chiasmus* (kī-as'mus), an arrangement of contrasted words in inverse order; as, **fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō**, *in reputation notable, and powerful in war* (VII. 77).

*d. Climax* (klī'max), an arrangement of words, phrases, or clauses with gradual increase of interest or vigor of expression to the end; as, **cōnferre, comportārī, adesse**, *that it was being collected, was on the way, was at hand* (I. 16).

*e. Euphemism* (ū'fē-mizm), the use of a mild expression in order to avoid a word of bad omen; as, **si quid accidat Rōmānis**, *if anything should happen to the Romans, meaning if any disaster should befall the Romans* (I. 18).

*f. Hyperbaton* (hī-per'ba-ton), the arrangement of words in unusual order, as the separation of words that belong together, such as the insertion of one or more words between the parts of an Ablative Absolute; thus, **simulātā Caesarem amicitīā**, *that Caesar under the pretense of friendship*, the usual order being **Caesarem, simulātā amicitīā** (I. 44, l. 37).





the *first* day of the month; the *Nones*, *Nōnae* (ninth before the Ides), the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, the *fifth* day of other months; and the *Ides* (*Īdūs*), the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, the *thirteenth* of other months.

b. In giving dates the days at the beginning and end of a given period were both included, and abbreviations were employed. Thus, a. d. v. **Kal. Apr.** (I. 6), in full would be **ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs**, which is translated as if it were (*diēs*) **quintus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs**, the *fifth (day) before the Calends of April*; since March had 31 days, we start from April 1 and count back :

DAY I	DAY II	DAY III	DAY IV	DAY V
April 1	March 31	March 30	March 29	March 28

and so we find the fifth day, which is March 28 according to our method of writing dates.

c. In 46 B.C. the Calendar was reformed by Julius Caesar by virtue of his authority as Supreme Pontiff (252), and since that year it has undergone slight change. As the dates of the Gallic War and of the Civil War are prior to 46 B.C., they fall in the period of the Unreformed Calendar, when there was much confusion. Thus, the twenty-eighth day of March of the Unreformed Calendar in 58 B.C. (I. 6) is considered by some to be the same as March 24 of our Calendar; by others, the same as March 25; by others still, as April 16 of our Calendar.

242. a. The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours, *hōrae*, which varied in length according to the season of the year, and were numbered 1-12; thus, *hōrā septimā*, the *seventh hour* (I. 26). Since the sixth hour ended at noon, the seventh hour at the equinoxes would correspond exactly with the hour between twelve and one o'clock according to our reckoning; at other times the seventh hour would end after, or before, one o'clock.

b. The method of reducing the Roman hours to our system of reckoning may be illustrated by the following problem :

**Question.** "What, approximately, is our equivalent of the fourth Roman hour in the last week of August in the region of Dover, England ?"

**Answer.** In the region of Dover in the last week in August the sun rises about 5 o'clock and sets about 7. The length of the day is therefore about 14 hours by our reckoning. Since the Romans divided the full day into 12 equal hours, we divide 14 by 12 and have  $1\frac{1}{3}$ , that is, the Roman hour in this problem =  $1\frac{1}{3}$  of our hours. At the beginning of the fourth Roman hour 3 Roman hours have passed;  $3 \times 1\frac{1}{3} = 3\frac{1}{2}$ , that is, at the beginning of the fourth Roman hour  $3\frac{1}{2}$  of our hours have passed since sunrise. As sunrise is

reckoned about 5 o'clock by our time, we add  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 5, making 8.30; that is, 8.30 A.M., by our reckoning from midnight, will approximately represent the beginning of the fourth hour of the day by Roman reckoning under the conditions of the problem.

c. In military usage the night was divided into four watches of three hours each: **prima vigilia**, *first watch* (VII. 3), commencing at sunset, 6 to 9 o'clock by Roman reckoning; **secunda vigilia** (II. 11), ending at midnight, 9 to 12 o'clock; **tertia vigilia** (II. 33), commencing at midnight, 12 to 3 o'clock A.M.; **quarta vigilia** (I. 21), ending at sunrise, 3 to 6 o'clock A.M., by Roman reckoning.

d. Caesar uses the Preposition **dē** in certain expressions of time with the meaning *just after, in the course of*; as **dē mediā nocte**, *just after midnight* (II. 7); **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *soon after the beginning of the third watch* (I. 12), which lasted from midnight to 3 A.M.

e. When the sun was not visible, recourse might be had to water clocks, **ex aquā mensuræ** (V. 13), for the measurement of time.

## EXPRESSIONS RELATING TO LENGTH AND DISTANCE

243. a. Of the terms denoting measurement Caesar uses **digitus**, *finger-breadth* (VII. 73); **pēs**, *foot* (I. 8), which measured approximately .97 of the English foot; **passus**, *pace* (I. 49); and **mille passūs**, *mile*, Plural **mīlia passuum**, *miles* (I. 2). The **passus** contained two ordinary steps (**gradus**), and measured the distance between the points where the same heel is lifted and touches the ground again.

b. The relations of the units of measurement, and their modern equivalents, are as follows:

		ENGLISH FEET	METERS
	1 digitus	= .728 inch	= .0185
16 digiti	= 1 pēs	= 11.65 inches	= .296
2½ pedēs	= 1 gradus	= 2 feet 5½ inches	= .74
2 gradūs	= 1 passus	= 4 feet 10½ inches	= 1.48
1000 passūs	= mille passūs	= 4854 feet	= 1480.00

Since the Roman foot was approximately .97 of the English foot in length, the Roman mile, 4854 English feet in length, was 426 feet shorter than the English mile of 5280 feet; 12 English miles are a little more than the equivalent of 13 Roman miles.

c. Long distances may be loosely expressed by **iter** (Accusative) with the Genitive; as, **novem diērum iter**, *a nine days' journey* (VI. 25).

## GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

### LIFE OF CAESAR

244. "My aunt Julia," said Julius Caesar in an address in 68 B.C. at the funeral of his aunt, wife of the famous Marius, "My aunt Julia on her mother's side traced her ancestry back to kings, on her father's side to the immortal gods. For those who bear the name Marcius Rex, her mother's family, are descended from Ancus Marcius;<sup>1</sup> from Venus the Julii are sprung, and to that clan our family belongs. In our stock therefore are blended the sacred authority of kings, whose power is greatest among men, and a right to the reverence due to the gods, under whose power kings themselves are."

Whatever the truth may be about the origin of the Julian clan (*gens*), in these proud words the man who was destined to become its most distinguished representative asserted, unmistakably, its aristocratic standing. Twenty years afterwards, when Caesar had the authority to strike coins, he gave a visible expression to the popular belief in the Trojan origin of the Julii, from Venus and Anchises; stamped upon a denarius (85) Aeneas appears, in the flight from burning Troy, carrying his aged father Anchises upon his left shoulder and in his right hand the sacred image, the Palladium, which, men said, had fallen from heaven (Fig. 153).



Figure 153. — Aeneas fleeing from Troy.

Silver coin, denarius, struck in the East soon after the battle of Pharsalus. Inscription, CAESAR.

<sup>1</sup> The fourth king of Rome, following Tullus Hostilius.

**245.** Toward the end of the Republic the Caesar family far outstripped the other families of the Julian gens in prominence. In the two centuries immediately preceding the Christian era it furnished a full score of names sufficiently distinguished to find mention in biographical dictionaries two thousand years afterwards. Of the father of Julius Caesar, however, nothing important is of record except his sudden death, at Pisa, when he was putting on his shoes.

**246.** Gaius Julius Caesar was born on July 12, in the year 100 B.C.; he was thus six years younger than Pompey and the orator Cicero. It is



Figure 154. — A Roman Boy

Portrait of a Roman boy, probably connected with the Caesar family. From a bronze statue of the first century B.C., in the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

assumed that his birth-place was Rome. His mother was Aurelia, a Roman matron of the highest type. She not only watched over the education of her son — and Julius was the only son — with great care, but followed his career with solicitude, and on one occasion at least rendered him a notable service. She was not spared, however, to see her son at the head of the State, or

to be harrowed by civil war; she died when Caesar was in Gaul.

We know nothing about the education of the young Julius, except that he had as private teacher, at his own home, Antonius Gniphio, a distinguished rhetorician, who had studied at Alexandria and was well versed in Greek. We may assume that the youth received the usual training of the time in Greek as well as in declamation, numbers, and music; for Greek was then the foundation of liberal studies.

At the age of twelve Caesar's face must remotely, at least, have resembled that of the Roman boy whose portrait is preserved in the lifelike bronze statue acquired in 1914 by the Metropolitan Museum in New York (Fig. 154).

**247.** The only career deemed suitable for a young patrician was in the service of the State, either through public office, or through service in the field, as occasion might require. We do not understand how high-born Caesars were first led to espouse the cause of the common people and champion the interests of the masses as opposed to the aristocracy, which believed in the government of the many by the few and had its stronghold in the Senate; but when Julius was old enough to take an active interest in public affairs, his uncle by marriage, Marius, was leader of the popular or democratic party, which was then dominant. Marius died in 86 B.C., and was succeeded by Cornelius Cinna as democratic leader.

**248.** The daughter of this Cinna, Cornelia, in 83 B.C. became Caesar's wife. To them was born a daughter Julia who, in 59 B.C., in her early twenties, became the fourth wife of Pompey.

**249.** In 82 B.C. Sulla returned from a series of victories in the East and restored the power of the Senate, wreaking vengeance upon political enemies. There was a reign of terror. Cinna had been killed, and Sulla ordered Caesar to divorce his wife, Cinna's daughter. This Caesar refused, at the risk of his life. In disguise he made his escape to the mountains. He was tracked by Sulla's emissaries, one of whom found him; he purchased his life with a large bribe. After a time, through influential friends, pardon was obtained from Sulla, who is said to have granted it with the warning that in young Caesar there were many Mariuses.

Advancement in Rome, however, was blocked so long as Sulla lived. Caesar went East and joined the army. At the siege of Mytilene, on the island of Lesbos, in 80 B.C., he was awarded the Civic Crown for conspicuous bravery. This crown, though made of oak leaves, represented a military dis-

tion rarely conferred, and most highly esteemed. It was given only to the soldier who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle, had killed his adversary, and held the position where the rescue was made, without retreating. There is



Figure 155.—Civic Crown, *corona civica*.

Silver coin of Augustus, denarius, struck in 16 or 15 B.C. The crown, of oak leaves, is tied with a fillet. Inscription, *OA CIVIS SERVATOS*, 'on account of the saving of citizens.'

a good representation of a Civic Crown on a coin of the Emperor Augustus (Fig. 155).

**250.** Returning to Rome, after Sulla's death (78 B.C.), Caesar brought charges of extortion in provincial management first against Gnaeus Dolabella, who had been proconsul in Macedonia, and afterwards against Gaius Antonius, who had plundered Greece; at that time the bringing of delinquent officials to justice was a common way of introducing one's self to public notice. Though both Dolabella and Antonius seem to have escaped punishment,

Caesar showed marked oratorical power, and in prosecuting them attracted favorable attention.

Wishing to perfect himself in oratory, in 76 Caesar started for Rhodes, to study under Apollonius Molo, the most eminent teacher of the art. In the Eastern Mediterranean the pirates were still active; near Miletus his ship was captured, and he was held a prisoner on an island for thirty-eight days, until his retinue could return and bring to the pirates a ransom of fifty talents, more than fifty thousand dollars. As a captive he showed himself merry and sociable; and he jokingly told his captors that some day he would come back and crucify them. Being released, he at once manned ships at Miletus, attacked the pirates suddenly, and captured most of them. True to his word, he crucified them, but ordered their throats cut first — Suetonius adds, as an example of Caesar's humanness — in order to spare needless suffering. The quickness of action, daring, and success of this adventure reveal in Caesar

at the age of twenty-four the qualities that characterized his entire career.

**251. a.** During the next sixteen years Caesar followed the usual course of political promotion, neglecting no means by which he might increase his popularity. He bestowed gifts with a free hand, assumed the debts of bankrupt young nobles who had squandered their inheritance, gave largesses to the people. When his own means were exhausted, he borrowed large sums at high rates of interest, with the design of obtaining reimbursement from the spoils of office. According to Plutarch his indebtedness, before he held a single office, had reached the enormous sum of thirteen hundred talents, about a million and a half of dollars.

**b.** In 68 B.C. Caesar was quaestor, and accompanied Antistius Vetus to Spain. Here his duties were chiefly financial; the provincial quaestor had charge of the military

stores and supervised the keeping of accounts for the provincial governor. This was doubtless a good business training



Figure 156. — Ancient trophy, of marble.

Now on the Capitoline hill in Rome, badly weatherworn; by some thought to be one of the very trophies set up by Marius and restored by Julius Caesar.

This is an imitation of the trophies which were made on battle-fields by fastening shields, helmets, and other weapons of the enemy to trunks of trees, or posts.



for Caesar, which he turned to excellent use later in his administration in Gaul.

c. In 65 B.C. Caesar was curule aedile, with Bibulus as colleague; the curule aediles had charge of the streets and public buildings, the markets, and the celebration of the public games. In this office, by extravagant expenditures on games and public improvements, he raised the enthusiasm of the populace to the highest pitch. He even dared by night to set up in the Capitol the statue of Marius, and trophies of victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars, which had been thrown down by Sulla seventeen years before; and the people wept for joy at the revival of old memories (Fig. 156). He secured so many gladiators for public shows that the

Senate became alarmed, on account of the presence of so great an armed force, and passed a law restricting the number; but he nevertheless exhibited three hundred and twenty pairs, all resplendent in silver armor. Caesar's political methods were not unlike those of his contemporaries, but he excelled them in daring and foresight—and succeeded.



Figure 157. — Symbols of Caesar's office, as Supreme Pontiff.

Middle, axe used in sacrifices, with wolf's head above.

Right, priest's cap, with point (apex), and bands for tying under the chin.

Left, sprinkler for holy water, and underneath, wine-ladle.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Gaul, probably in 50 B.C. Obverse in Fig. 164.

**252.** It has been believed by many that Caesar was connected with the Catilinarian conspiracy of 65 B.C., if not also with that of 63; but the evidence is meager. Much more important was his election, in 63 B.C., after a bitter contest, to the office of Supreme Pontiff, Pontifex Maximus. The tenure of this office was for life. As the head of the college of pontiffs, then

fifteen in number, the Supreme Pontiff was virtually the head of the Roman religious system. He decided questions relating to religious law and usage, and he had charge of the

Calendar; the priests of Jupiter and of other divinities, as well as the Vestal Virgins, were under his jurisdiction. The first coin struck by Caesar in Gaul on one side bears the symbols of his sacred office (Fig. 157), the ax for striking victims in offering sacrifice, the close-fitting cap, with point of olive wood, worn by certain priests, the brush-shaped sprinkler for holy water, and the ladle for dipping up wine, for use in pouring libations.

**253.** In 62 B.C. Caesar held the office of praetor, in the discharge of which, amid scenes of violence, he carried himself with firmness and dignity; the functions of the praetor were judicial, and in stormy times the administration of justice is doubly difficult. The next year he was propraetor in Further Spain, where he won distinction by subduing several tribes along the Atlantic in Gallaecia and Lusitania. Returning to Rome in the summer of 60, with abundant means of satisfying his creditors, he was decreed a public thanksgiving for his victories, and was soon elected consul for the year 59.

In the year of his consulship, 59, Caesar married Calpurnia, familiar to readers of Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar"; she was the daughter of Calpurnius Piso (I. 12), and was Caesar's fourth wife. For his first wife, Cossutia, was divorced before he married Cornelia, his second wife (248), who had died before his quaestorship; and Pompeia, whom Caesar married in 67 B.C., as his third wife, was divorced six years later.

**254.** For some years Pompey had been the most conspicuous Roman. His successes in the campaign against the pirates and the war with Mithridates, and his conquest of Syria and Palestine, had made him the national hero (Fig. 147). But in the qualities needful for a political leader he was quite lacking; so that even from his own party, the aristocratic, he was unable to win either the recognition he desired or the privileges to which he was entitled. More than once the Senate snubbed him outright. Here Caesar saw an opportunity. Relying on his own popularity, he proposed to Pompey that they work in harmony, and by uniting their influence accom-

plish what either might desire. Pompey agreed; and with these two, Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, was joined, making a political coalition really supreme, which is known as the First Triumvirate. It had no official existence; it was simply a political ring, of only three members but of unlimited power. It was to cement this union that Pompey, then a widower for the third time, married Caesar's daughter Julia (248), who was less than half his age.

**255.** During his consulship, in 59, among other measures Caesar caused a law to be passed regarding the division of the public lands, which, though bitterly opposed by the Senate, pleased the people greatly. With his aid, too, Pompey gained the favors previously denied. While consul he seems to have used his influence with the Senate to secure a recognition of Ariovistus, the German ruler, with whom he afterwards fought (I. 33, 35, 40).



Figure 158. — Goddess of Concord.

Silver coin, denarius, struck about 53 B.C. to symbolize the harmony between the members of the Triumvirate. Inscription, *CONCORDIAE* = *Concordiae*, 'To Concord.'

At the close of his consulship, as it was the custom to give to ex-consuls the charge of provinces, Caesar easily obtained for five years the government of both Cisalpine Gaul (284) and Illyricum (298), together with the part of Transalpine Gaul previously subdued, which in this book is called the Province (290).

**256.** Caesar was soon engaged in the conquest of Transalpine Gaul beyond the Province. The first summer (58 B.C.) he drove back to their homes the Helvetians, who had attempted to migrate from the country now called Switzerland, to the west of Gaul; and he annihilated the army of the German king, Ariovistus. The following year he subdued the Belgic States in the north.

The third campaign (56 B.C.) was against the peoples of north-west Gaul, that had leagued together to resist Caesar. In April

of this year at Luca, near the southern border of Cisalpine Gaul, Caesar had renewed his compact with Pompey and Crassus, who agreed to see to it that his command should be extended for five years longer (Fig. 158). A part of every winter except one (54–53), he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, so as to be near Rome and retain his influence in home politics; it was contrary to law that a provincial governor having an army should enter Italy while in office.

In 55 B.C. Caesar chastised several German tribes and bridged the Rhine; then he crossed over to Britain. The campaign of the next summer (54) was principally against the Britons, part of whom he reduced to nominal subjection. In the fall a division of his army in Belgium, under the command of Sabinus and Cotta, was cut off by a sudden uprising of the enemy.

In 53 Caesar had to face an extensive rebellion of the Gallic states, which, however, he speedily crushed. But the next year almost all Gaul rose against him, and under the leadership of Vercingetorix taxed his powers to the utmost. He finally prevailed; and after the fall of Alesia (52 B.C.), the strength of the Gauls was forever broken.

In the eighth campaign, summer of 51, the states that had not submitted were one by one reduced to complete subjection. The following spring, in 50 B.C., Caesar left his army and went into Cisalpine Gaul. Here he resolved to remain till the expiration of his command in 49, returning to Transalpine Gaul only for a short time during the summer to review the troops:

**257.** Caesar's Gallic victories are symbolically portrayed on several coins. On one (Fig. 159), we see in the middle a trophy,



Figure 159. — Symbols of victories over the Gauls.

Middle, trophy, draped; at the top, a Gallic helmet, horned. Hanging from the trophy at the left is an oval shield; at the right, a Gallic war-trumpet.

Behind the war-trumpet is a sacrificial axe, above which is the head of an animal.

Gold coin, aureus, struck by Caesar in Rome in 49 B.C.

draped; on the top is a Gallic helmet, with a bull's horns. Suspended on one side of the trophy is an oval shield; opposite is a Gallic war trumpet, with the mouth carved to represent the head of a serpent; then, nearer the edge of the coin, a sacrificial ax. The base of the trophy divides the victor's name, CAESAR. A trophy appears less distinctly on another coin of Caesar, but at the foot is Vercingetorix, sitting, with his hands tied behind him; his head is turned toward the left as he looks upward (cf. Fig. 161).

**258.** During Caesar's absence in Gaul, in 55 B.C., Crassus undertook a campaign of conquest against the Parthians, in the Far East; he was defeated and killed in 53 B.C. The triumvirate was thus brought to an end, and with it speedily ended the coöperation between Caesar and Pompey.



Figure 160. — Pompey the Great.

Silver coin struck by Pompey's admiral, Nasidius, some years after his death. The trident, the dolphin, and the inscription NEPTUNI, 'Of Neptune,' refer to the fleet of his son, Sextus Pompey. Cf. Fig. 146.

Pompey began to view Caesar's successes with distrust and alarm. He entered into alliance again with the aristocracy. In 50 B.C. the Senate in Pompey's interest passed a decree that he and Caesar should each give up a legion for service in the East. Since 53 Caesar had had one of Pompey's legions; this was now demanded back. Caesar let it go, and one of his own too, without a complaint, although the intent of the whole action was evidently to weaken his forces. As it was not lawful for him to proceed in person to Rome, he stationed himself in Ravenna, the town of Cisalpine Gaul nearest the boundary of Italy (283), on the east side; thence he sent agents and friends to the City to negotiate for him, to try to offset the influence now openly brought to bear against him, but the negotiations were fruitless.

Pompey (Fig. 160) and the Senate both hated and feared Caesar. A decree was passed that he should disband his army

by a certain date, or be considered an outlaw. In the state of public affairs at the time, this was simply to wrest from him the fruits of his hard-won successes, without leaving him even a guaranty of his personal safety. Caesar hesitated. The Senate voted further, that the consuls should "provide that the state receive no hurt," which is like a proclamation of martial law in our day.

**259.** This action of the Senate was virtually a declaration of war against Caesar, inspired by the jealousy of his opponent. With one legion he at once (in January, 49 B.C.) crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province (283), and marched south. Soon all Italy was in his power; Pompey, the Senate, and their followers had fled to Macedonia, on the east side of the Adriatic (299).

After arranging matters at Rome to suit himself, in April, 49 B.C., Caesar went to Spain, where lieutenants devoted to Pompey, Afranius and Petreius, had a strong army. They were soon crushed, the main force being captured near Ilerda in August of 49. On his return from Spain to Italy, Massilia (*Marseilles*), which had closed its gates to him on the way out, and had been besieged with great energy in his absence by Trebonius, gave itself into his hands; its fleet had been destroyed, in two engagements, by Decimus Brutus (p. 425).

**260.** Operations in Africa in 49 were not so fortunate; for the force dispatched under Curio to defeat the followers of Pompey in Africa, led by Varus, was utterly destroyed through the aid of the wily Numidian king, Juba.

**261.** At the end of 49 Caesar had control of all Roman territories west of the Adriatic; the provinces east of the Adriatic, however, were in the hands of Pompey, who was mobilizing forces in Macedonia obviously for a descent upon Italy from across the sea; in consequence Caesar also now gathered his forces on the east side of the Adriatic. For some months, in the earlier part of 48, the armies of Pompey and Caesar faced each other near Dyrrachium (*Durazzo*); but Caesar was obliged to withdraw into the interior. The decisive

battle was fought August 9, 48 B.C., near the city of Pharsalus, in Thessaly. Caesar's forces numbered about twenty-two thousand men, with one thousand cavalry; Pompey had forty-seven thousand infantry, seven thousand cavalry, and some light-armed troops. But superior generalship and the courage of desperation won the day against overwhelming odds. The Senatorial forces were entirely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

**262.** Caesar also went with a small force to Egypt, where, in Alexandria, he became involved in the Alexandrine War. For a time this war occasioned him great difficulty because of his inability to secure reinforcements; but finally Mithridates of Pergamum came to his assistance with an army, marching down through Cilicia and Syria to Egypt. By April of 47 B.C. Caesar had the country under complete control; but he himself is said to have fallen a victim to the charms of the young and beautiful Egyptian princess, Cleopatra.

**263.** Leaving Cleopatra and a younger brother on the Egyptian throne, Caesar in June proceeded through Syria north to Pontus, where at Zela he easily crushed the rebellious King Pharnaces, reporting the quick victory to a friend in the laconic message, *vēni, vidi, vici*. He soon afterwards returned to Rome.

**264.** Caesar had only three months in Rome before he was obliged to take the field against the Pompeian forces, now gathered in Africa under the leadership of Scipio and Labienus. In January, 46, he landed with a small army near Hadrumetum, southeast from Carthage, where he maintained his position until sufficient forces could be brought over. At the battle of Thapsus, April 6, 46 B.C., he won a complete victory over the Pompeians and Juba, who was still helping them.

**265.** Caesar was now everywhere master. In accordance with legal forms he promulgated several laws of great benefit to the people. He reformed the calendar also (241, c). In August of 46 in Rome Caesar celebrated his great triumph. On four different days triumphal processions wound along the

Sacred Way through the Forum and up the Capitoline Hill, displaying to the astonished multitudes the spoils of victories in Gaul, Egypt, and Pontus, and over Juba in Africa. Treasure amounting to 65,000 talents (more than \$70,000,000) was carried in the procession; and a conspicuous figure was the Gallic commander-in-chief, Vercingetorix, who had been kept in prison six years awaiting this event. In honor of the triumph twenty-two thousand tables were spread for the feasting of the populace, and games and gladiatorial shows were given with a magnificence previously unheard of.

**266.** In 45 B.C. a large army was collected against Caesar in Spain, commanded by the two sons of Pompey. Caesar marched against it, and at the battle of Munda (March 17) totally defeated it. On a coin struck in Spain in 45, and perhaps put into circulation in order to pay his soldiers, Caesar commemorates Spanish as well as Gallic victories (Fig. 161). A large trophy supports, in the middle, a coat of mail, above which is a helmet; on either side is a spear (disproportionately short), then a shield, and a war-trumpet. At the foot, on the right, is a seated captive, with his hands tied behind him and face turned backward, looking up, his hair streaming down; this we may safely identify as Vercingetorix. At the left sits a female figure, weeping, a personification of Hispania.

**267.** On Caesar's return to Rome the Senate, whose members were now mainly of his own choosing, loaded him with honors. By conferring upon him all the important offices, especially the dictatorship in life tenure, it centered the whole authority in his hands. Finally it ordered his portrait struck



Figure 161.—Commemoration of Gallic and Spanish victories.

Middle, trophy with Gallic and Spanish arms; cuirass, helmet, two spears, two oval shields, two trumpets.

Below, at right, Vercingetorix, seated, with hands bound behind him; at left, Hispania, personified, weeping.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Spain in 45 a.c.



on coins, from which previously faces of living men had been excluded (Fig. 162), and decreed that statues of him should be placed in the temples of the gods in Rome.



Figure 162. — Caesar.

Silver coin, denarius, struck in Rome in 44 B.C.

Obverse, head of Caesar with laurel wreath. Inscription: CAESAR, DICT[ATOR] PERPETUO, 'Dictator for Life.'

268. Caesar's use of absolute power was marked by unexpected clemency towards former opponents; in recognition of this the Senate shortly before his death ordered a temple built and dedicated to 'Caesar's Mercifulness,' personified as a divinity (Fig. 163). He contemplated large projects for the public weal; nevertheless his foresight and breadth of view counted for nothing in the bitter hatred of his political enemies. A conspiracy was formed to take his life. On March 15, 44 B.C., as Caesar had just entered the hall where the Senate met, near Pompey's Theater, he was set upon with daggers, and fell, pierced by twenty-three wounds, at the foot of a statue of his vanquished rival.

Though the assassination of Caesar was commemorated by a coin (Fig. 167), the plans of the murderers all miscarried. It is said that not one of them died a natural death; and before many years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus, was Emperor of the Roman world.

269. Caesar was tall and of commanding presence. His features were angular and prominent. He had a fair complexion, with keen black eyes.

In later years he was bald; at no time of life did he wear a beard. Suetonius says that among all the honors conferred

268. Caesar's use of absolute power was marked by unexpected clemency towards former opponents; in recognition of this the Senate shortly before his death ordered a temple built and dedicated to 'Caesar's Mercifulness,' personified as a divinity (Fig. 163). He contemplated large projects for the public weal; nevertheless his foresight and breadth of view counted for nothing in the bitter hatred of his political enemies. A conspiracy was formed to take his life. On March 15, 44 B.C.,



Figure 163. — Temple of Caesar's Mercifulness.

Front of the Temple, with four columns, and double doors closed. Inscription, CLEMENTIAE CAESARIS, 'To the Mercifulness of Caesar.'

Silver coin, denarius, struck in 44 B.C.

upon Caesar by the Senate and the People none was more acceptable to him than the privilege of wearing at all times a laurel crown, by which his baldness was concealed (Fig. 162). Though endowed with a constitution naturally by no means robust, he became inured to hardship, and exhibited astonishing powers of endurance. In matters of dress he was particular to the verge of effeminacy.

**270.** Of all the Romans Caesar was without doubt the greatest. In him the most varied talents were united with a restless ambition and tireless energy. While deliberate and far-seeing in forming his plans, in carrying them out he often acted with a haste that seemed like recklessness. He could occasion scenes of the most shocking cruelty; yet none could be more forgiving, or more gracious in granting pardon. Apparently believing, with the Epicurean philosophy, that death ends all and life is worth living only for the pleasure to be gotten out of it, he mingled freely with the dissolute society of Rome; yet when it was time for action he spurned indulgences, gave himself to the severest toil, and endured privations without a murmur.

In regard to all these things, however, we may say that Caesar's faults were those he shared in common with his age; his genius belongs to all ages. Chateaubriand declares that Caesar was the most complete man of all history; for his genius was transcendent in three directions—in politics, in war, and in literature.

## THE NAME CAESAR

**271.** Roman surnames, which in many cases became family names, were generally derived from some personal characteristic or association. For the name **Caesar** scholars in antiquity suggested four derivations, of which one was, that the first of the Julii to bear the name Caesar received it because he was born with a thick *head of hair*, *caesariēs*; another was, that it came from the color of the eyes, *bluish gray*, *caesius*.

There was also a tradition that the first Julius to be called Caesar had killed an elephant and received the name from the word for elephant in the language of the Mauri, in Africa, from whose country elephants came. This derivation seems to have commended itself to Julius Caesar; for on a coin struck by him in Gaul (Fig. 164), we see, over his name, an elephant trampling upon a Gallic war trumpet with a serpent's head, symbolizing his utter defeat of the Gauls and conquest of the country.



Figure 164. — Elephant trampling upon a serpent-headed Gallic war-trumpet.

Silver coin, denarius, struck by Caesar in Gaul, probably in 50 B.C.

The reverse of the same coin is shown in Fig. 157.

To the end of the Empire Roman emperors adopted the name Caesar as a title; and it survives in two imperial titles of modern times, "Kaiser," of Germany and Austria, and "Czar," of Russia. What an impress the life of Julius Caesar made upon the world — not merely to leave a heritage of influence in government and literature, but to transmit his very name across the ages as a designation of the highest authority recognized among men!

## THE PORTRAITS OF CAESAR

**272.** After Caesar became supreme, almost innumerable likenesses of him must have been made. Statues of him were ordered set up in all cities, as well as in the temples of Rome; his features were not only stamped on coins but engraved upon gems (Fig. 165).



Figure 165. — Caesar.

Gem. Behind is an augur's staff, symbolic of his priestly authority.

Of the numerous extant busts and statues bearing Caesar's name, however, only a few can be considered authentic.

Though two of the best of these, a colossal bust at Naples and a large statue in Rome, have been somewhat restored, the expression of face has not been materially affected; a bust in the British Museum, representing Caesar at a somewhat later period of life, is singularly well preserved.

In the statue in Rome (shown in the frontispiece of this book, Plate I) Caesar appears as a commander. To judge from the manner of treatment, both this statue and the bust at Naples (Plate X) were made near the end of the first century A.D., but copied from earlier works.

### CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

**273.** The Commentaries of Caesar were not designed to be a biographical work, nor yet, strictly speaking, a military history. They were rather, as the title *Commentaries of Deeds*, *Commentārii Rerum Gestarum*, implies, an informal record of events. For *commentārius* comes from *commentor*, a verb used by speakers with the meaning *make preparation* for a speech by gathering material and preparing outlines; whence *liber commentārius*, or *commentārius*, *commentary*, came to designate a collection of materials for future use.

Had Caesar intended that the Commentaries should be a formal history, the matter, in accordance with the universal custom of antiquity, would have been arranged in such a way that the books would be of about the same length; but he grouped his material by years, without regard to the length of the divisions, and we find that the first book, or Commentary, is as long as the second and third com-

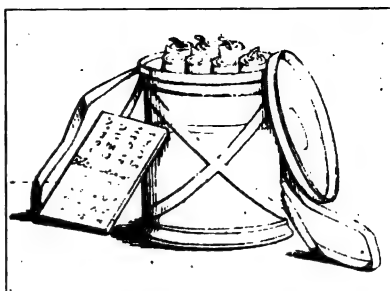


Figure 166. — A Case for Books.

With cover and straps for carrying. In the case are seven rolls, volumina, corresponding with the number of the Commentaries on the Gallic War. A writing tablet leans against the case.

bined, while the seventh is almost as long as the second, third, and fourth taken together. Approximate uniformity in the length of the books comprised in a literary work was usual on account of convenience in handling, since each book formed a separate roll; hence the name for the *roll* or *book*, *volūmen* (from *volvō*, *roll up*), which survives in our word "volume" (Fig. 166).

**274.** Nevertheless it is evident that the Commentaries were not prepared as a diary, for private use, but written at one time and intended for circulation. We are safe in believing that Caesar intended through them not only to give to the public an authoritative account of the important events treated, but also to supply to historians of the period a collection of authentic material on which they might draw; hence, perhaps, the peculiar restraint under which he refers to himself in the third person, a practice as rare in narratives of the kind in antiquity as it is to-day; hence, also, presumably, the frequent use of indirect discourse near the beginning, while in the later books the style is more often enlivened, as generally in Greek and Latin historical works, by direct quotation (211, b).

**275.** The Seven Commentaries of the Gallic War were probably composed soon after the fall of Alesia, in the winter of 52–51 B.C.; they were probably taken down from dictation and circulated through the multiplication of copies from the original copy or copies sent from Gaul to Rome in 51.

**276.** The Civil War was seemingly incomplete at the time of Caesar's death; only two Commentaries, narrating the events of 49 and 48 B.C., were finished. Later the first Commentary, dealing with the events of 49, was divided into two books, the other remaining undivided; consequently in manuscripts and editions the Civil War now appears in three books, the first and second being devoted to the events of 49, the third to those of 48 B.C.

**277.** A gap of two years was left between the Commentaries of the Gallic War, covering the period 58–52 B.C., and those of the Civil War, covering the years 49 and 48. This was filled

by Aulus Hirtius, who added to the Gallic War an eighth book narrating briefly the events of 51 and 50 B.C. in Gaul. Other writers afterwards extended the Civil War also by adding narratives of Caesar's military operations in Egypt, Africa, and Spain.

**278.** Notwithstanding Caesar's aim in composing the Commentaries as source books rather than finished works, the clearness, conciseness, and vigor of his style, and the importance of the matter, have given them a place in the first rank of historical writings. Of the Commentaries on the Gallic War Cicero wrote (*Brut.* lxxv. 262):

"They are worthy of all praise. They are unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, every embellishment being stripped off as a garment. Caesar desired, indeed, to furnish others, who might wish to write history, with material upon which they might draw; and perhaps men without good taste, who like to deck out facts in tawdry graces of expression, may think that he has rendered a service to historians by providing them with raw material, but he has deterred men of sound sense from trying to improve on the Commentaries in literary expression. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness of style is the highest attainable beauty."

**279.** The question has been much discussed whether or not in the Commentaries Caesar warped the truth in self-justification. No one will deny that he had a complete command of the facts, and that, when the Commentaries on the Gallic War were published, there were many officers and men who would instantly have detected untruths and condemned them. Caesar seems to have been too large a man to condescend to misrepresentation even in narrating his own defeats, as at Gergovia and Dyrrachium; while there may have been occasional lapses of memory in respect to details, we have no reason to question the substantial accuracy of the Commentaries as historical documents.



Figure 167.—Coin commemorating the assassination of Caesar.

Struck by an officer of Marcus Junius Brutus. A "cap of liberty" appears between two daggers. Inscription: EID · MAR, for EIDIBUS MARTIIS, 'On the Ides of March.'

The Commentaries themselves convey no impression of exaggeration. Plutarch, who had at hand other sources of information, no longer extant, thus summarizes the results of the Gallic war :

“Caesar was engaged in the Gallic war less than ten years. In that time he captured more than eight hundred towns, brought into submission three hundred peoples, fought against three million foes, killed a million, and took a million prisoners.”

Caesar took part in thirty battles.

#### CAESAR AS AN ORATOR

**280.** As an orator Caesar was rated second only to Cicero. His orations have perished ; but apart from other evidence a favorable judgment of Caesar's oratorical style might be formed from the speech which he puts into the mouth of Critognatus (VII. 77), and the outline of the argument by which he quelled an incipient mutiny (I. 40).

## THE GEOGRAPHY OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

### INTRODUCTORY

**281.** The Geography of the Commentaries on the Gallic War touches Italy, Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and Transalpine Gaul; that of the Civil War touches also Spain, Macedonia, Epirus and Thessaly, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt, and Africa.

**282.** Caesar frequently uses the name of a people for that of the country inhabited by them, where English usage expects the word "country" or "land" or an equivalent; as *qui agrum Helveticum à Germaniis dividit*, which separates the Helvetian territory from that of the Germans, lit. from the Germans (I. 2); *unum per Sequanos*, one (route) through the country of the Sequanians, lit. through the Sequanians (I. 6).

### ITALY AND CISALPINE GAUL

**283.** Caesar uses *Italia*, *Italy*, in two senses:

*a.* *Italy* in the narrower sense as a political unit (C. I. 6), Italy proper, having as its northern boundary on the east side the small river Rubicon, on the west the lower course of the river Auser, and between the two rivers a line running a short distance south of Luca (modern *Lucca*).

*b.* *Italy* in the geographical sense (I. 10), designating the entire peninsula as far as the Alps, and including Cisalpine Gaul in addition to Italy proper.

**284.** Cisalpine Gaul is designated by Caesar as *Cisalpinga Gallia* (VI. 1), *Gallia citerior*, *Hither Gaul* (I. 24), and *citerior prōvincia*, the nearer province (I. 10). It comprised the great drainage area of the *Padus*, *Po* (V. 24), extending from Italy proper to the Alps. The entire region was brought under



Roman domination in the second century B.C., but Cisalpine Gaul was not joined with Italy politically till the reign of Augustus.

**285.** Of the cities of Cisalpine Gaul Caesar mentions two, **Aquileia** (I. 10), at the head of the Adriatic Sea, chief city of the Cisalpine Veneti, who gave their name to modern "Venice"; and **Ocelum** (I. 10), in the extreme western part.

### TRANSALPINE GAUL

**286.** Transalpine Gaul is designated by Caesar as **Trānsalpina Gallia** (VII. 6), **Gallia Trānsalpina** (VII. 1); **Gallia ulterior** (I. 7), and **ulterior Gallia** (I. 10), *Further Gaul*; or simply **Gallia**, *Gaul* (I. 1). It extended from the Alps and the Rhine to the Atlantic Ocean, comprising the countries now known as France and Belgium, the German possessions west of the Rhine, and the greater part of Switzerland and Holland. In this book where "Gaul" stands alone, *Transalpine Gaul* is meant. (See Map inside back cover).



Figure 168. — Conquered Gaul, personified.

Behind the head is a Gallic war-trumpet. Denarius, 48 B.C.

After the conquest, **Gallia** as a subject country was personified as a female figure, sometimes with the characteristic Gallic war-trumpet, as on a coin struck in Rome in 48 B.C. (Fig. 168); here only the head is shown, with long hair, dishevelled, the war-trumpet being behind the head.

**287.** On account of differences in speech, and other characteristics, Caesar describes Transalpine Gaul as divided into three parts:

a. *The land of the Belgians, Belgium*, in the northeast, extending from the rivers **Sēquana**, *Seine*, and **Matrona**, *Marne*, to the river **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*. The Belgium described by Caesar was much larger than the modern country. The ancient Bel-

gian stock survives in the Walloons. The language was mostly Celtic.

*b. The land of the Galli, the Celtic country, Celtic Gaul, extending from the Seine and Marne to the river Garumna, Garonne. This part is often called Gallia (I. 1, l. 20; I. 30). The numerous dialects of Celtic Gaul belonged to the great Celtic family, which has modern representatives in Armorica, spoken in Brittany, and the Welsh language.*

*c. The land of the Aquitanians, Aquitania, extending from the Garonne River to the Pyrenees. The language of the Aquitanians seems to have been related to the Basque.*

**288. a.** The three divisions of Gaul were made up of many small *states, civitatēs*, each of which had its own political organization. A number of the states had their own coinage in gold and other metals; but the coins were mostly imitations of those struck by Greek states and Rome.

*b.* In Celtic Gaul the governing power was in the hands of two classes, the knights and the Druid priests; the condition of the common people was not much above slavery (VI. 13).

**289. a.** Government in Gaul was administered by *magistrates, magistrātūs*, chosen by the dominant classes, such as the Vergobrets (I. 16); a few of the more backward states had *kings, rēgēs*, as Galba, king of the Suessiones (II. 4), and Commius, king of the Atrebates (IV. 21).

*b.* In some states there was a *council of elders, senātus* (II. 5).

*c.* Politically Gaul in Caesar's time was in a condition of unrest. Usurpations of power and changes of rulers were frequent (II. 1). Not only in the different states but in the subdivisions of states, and even in powerful families, there were party divisions (VI. 11), from which strifes of great bitterness arose. A conspicuous example is the irreconcilable antagonism between the brothers Diviciacus and Dumnorix (I. 18), of whom the former did everything possible to advance Caesar's interests (II. 5, 10), while the latter, as leader of an anti-Roman party among the Aeduians, sought in all ways to

thwart Caesar, until finally he was killed, while resisting capture, by Caesar's cavalry (V. 7).

290. The southeastern part of Gaul, not specified in Caesar's threefold division, had been conquered by the Romans and organized into a province in 121 B.C. This was the only part of Transalpine Gaul that properly came under Caesar's jurisdiction when he went out as governor in 58 B.C. (255). It is designated by Caesar as *Gallia prōvincia* (I. 19) or *prōvincia Gallia* (I. 53), *the Gallic Province*; as *ulterior prōvincia*, *the Further Province* (I. 10), *prōvincia nostra*, *our Province* (I. 2), or simply *prōvincia*, *the Province* (I. 1).

291. Of the mountains of Gaul the most important are. *Alpēs*, *the Alps* (I. 10), of which the western and southern portion, the French and the Swiss Alps, were known to Caesar; *mōns Cebenna*, *the Cévennes* (VII. 8), in Southern Gaul; *mōns Iūra*, *the Jura Mountains* (I. 2), extending from the Rhone below Geneva northeast to the Rhine; *mōns Vosagus*, *the Vosges* (IV. 10), west of the Rhine and north of the Jura range; *Pyrēnaei montēs*, *the Pyrenees*, on the border toward Spain (I. 1).

292. The more important rivers of Gaul mentioned by Caesar are: *Rhodanus*, *the Rhone* (I. 2), which flows through *lacus Lemannus*, *Lake Geneva* (I. 2), and empties into the Mediterranean; *Arar*, *Saône* (I. 12), a tributary of the Rhone, which it enters from the north; *Sēquana*, *the Seine* (I. 1); *Matrona*, *Marne* (I. 1), a tributary of the *Seine*, which it enters from the east; *Axona*, *Aisne* (II. 5), a tributary of the *Oise*, which in turn flows into the *Seine* from the northeast, below the confluence with the *Marne*; *Rhēnus*, *Rhine* (I. 1); *Garumna*, *Garonne* (I. 1); *Liger*, *Loire* (III. 9), the largest river of Gaul, flowing into the Bay of Biscay; *Mosa*, *Meuse* (IV. 9), in northeastern Gaul; *Sabis*, *Sambre*, a tributary of the *Meuse*, which it enters from the west (II. 16).

293. The cities of Gaul in Caesar's time were situated on or near a coast, on a river, or on the top of a high mountain. The more noteworthy were:

a. In the Province: **Massilia**, *Marseilles* (C. II. 3), founded by Greeks from Phocaea about 600 B.C., a prosperous city, which retained its Greek character, carried on an extensive commerce, and became an important civilizing influence (Fig. 169); **Narbo**, *Narbonne* (III. 20), on the river Atax not far from the sea, colonized by the Romans in 118 B.C.; **Tolōsa**, *Toulouse* (III. 20), on the Garonne river; **Genava**, *Geneva* (I. 6), on **lacus Lemannus**, *Lake Geneva* (I. 2).



Figure 169. — Coin of Massilia.

Silver. Obverse, head of Artemis with earrings and necklace; reverse, lion, prowling, with abbreviation of the Greek name above, and crescent in front.

b. In Celtic Gaul: **Agedinoum**, *Sens* (VI. 44); **Alesia**, *Alise-Sainte-Reine* (VII. 68); **Avaricoum**, *Bourges* (VII. 13); **Bibracte**, on *Mt. Beuvray* (I. 23); **Cōnabum**, *Orléans* (VII. 3); **Decetia**, *Decize* (VII. 33); **Gergovia** (VII. 36); **Lutecia Parisiorum**, *Paris* (VI. 3); **Vesontio**, *Besançon* (I. 38).

c. In Belgium: **Bibrax** (II. 6) near the *Aisne*; **Dūrocororum**, *Reims* (VI. 44); **Noviodūnum** of the Suessiones, near *Soissons* (II. 12); **Samarobriva**, *Amiens* (V. 24).

## BRITAIN, GERMANY, AND SPAIN

294. Caesar uses **Britannia**, *Britain* (II. 4), to designate the island of Great Britain, including modern England, Scotland,



Figure 170. — Early British Coin.

Silver, of crude workmanship; probably in circulation in Caesar's time.

and Wales. He was the first Roman general to invade the island, whose inhabitants he found similar to those of Celtic Gaul in language and institutions, but not so far advanced in civilization (Fig. 170). His two expeditions, in 55 and 54 B.C., had slight apparent effect, but they stimulated commerce and prepared the way for the introduction of Roman wares and customs (Fig. 140). The subjugation of Britain by the Romans began in 43 A.D.

**295.** Caesar uses **Germānia**, *Germany* (IV. 4), to designate a country of indefinite extent east of the Rhine and north of the Danube. He came into contact only with the German peoples near the Rhine. His two expeditions across the Rhine, in 55 and 53 B.C., produced slight effect; the Romans never conquered more of Germany than a narrow strip along the Rhine and the Danube.

**296.** Ancient *Spain*, **Hispānia**, included modern Spain and Portugal. After the Roman Conquest, about 200 B.C., it was divided into two provinces, **citerior Hispānia**, *Hither Spain* (III. 23), including the northern and eastern part of the peninsula, and **ulterior Hispānia**, *Further Spain* (C. I. 38), on the south and west.

**297.** Caesar sometimes uses **Hispānia**, *Spain*, to designate the peninsula as a whole (V. 1); sometimes the plural, **Hispāniae**, *the Spains* (C. III. 73), referring to the two Spanish provinces.

#### ILLYRICUM, MACEDONIA, EPIRUS, AND THESSALY

**298.** **Illyricum** was a narrow province that bordered Cisalpine Gaul for a short distance at the head of the Adriatic Sea, and extended down the east side of the Adriatic as far as the river **Drilo**, *Drin*. It included parts of modern Albania, Montenegro, Herzegovina, Dalmatia, Croatia, and Istria. It came under Roman control about 167 B.C.

**299.** Belonging, in Caesar's time, to the province of **Macedonia**, was a strip of coast between Illyricum and Epirus with the important cities **Apollōnia** (C. III. 75), about five miles from the sea, and **Dyrrachium**, *Durazzo* (C. III. 53), on the coast (Map 19).

**300.** **Ēpirus** was the northernmost division of Greece on the west side; it occupied a part of modern Albania. It was conquered by the Romans in 168 B.C. (Map 19).

Towns of Epirus mentioned by Caesar are **Būthrōtum** (C. III. 16) and **Ōricum** (C. III. 90), both on the coast (Map 19).

**301.** **Thessalia**, *Thessaly*, in northeastern Greece, corresponded roughly with the division of modern Greece called

by the same name. Towns of Thessaly mentioned by Caesar are **Gomphi** (C. III. 80), **Lārisa**, *Larissa* (C. III. 96), and **Metropolis** (C. III. 80). Cf. Map 19.

## ASIA, SYRIA, EGYPT, AND AFRICA

**302.** The Romans used **Asia** in three senses, designating :

(a.) The continent Asia, as we use the name to-day.

(b.) The western projection of the continent, between the Mediterranean and the Black Sea ; called **Asia Minor** in order to distinguish it from the mass of the continent as a whole.

(c.) The Roman province **Asia**, which was organized in 129 B.C. The Roman province Asia included only the western part of Asia Minor, with the countries Caria, Lydia, Mysia, and Phrygia. Caesar uses Asia (C. III. 53) to designate the Roman province, not Asia Minor or the continent.

**303.** At the time of the Civil War **Bithŷnia**, including a part of Pontus (C. III. 3), and **Cilicia** in Asia Minor (C. III. 102) were already organized as separate provinces.

**304.** **Syria** (C. III. 103), including **Phoenicia** and **Palestine**, was conquered by Pompey and became a Roman province about 64 B.C. At Jerusalem Pompey profaned the Holy of Holies in the Temple by entering it, but he refrained from carrying off the treasure. The treasure, however, a few years later fell a prey to Crassus, who, on his way to attack the Parthians (258), delayed in Jerusalem in order to rob the Temple.

**305.** **Aegyptus**, *Egypt* (C. III. 104), at the time of the Civil War was an independent kingdom. It was not made subject to Rome till 29 B.C. Its principal city, **Alexandria**, *Alexandria* (C. III. 103), was founded by Alexander the Great, who gave to it his name.

**306.** Caesar uses **Africa** (C. II. 37) to designate, not the continent, but the comparatively small Roman province of *Africa*, which was organized after the destruction of Carthage in 146 B.C. After the battle of Thapsus and the death of Juba (262) Caesar

made another province out of the Kingdom of Numidia, which adjoined the province Africa on the south and west, and after his death was added to it.



Figure 171. — Africa, personified as a goddess.

As a headdress she wears the spoils of an elephant, with trunk and tusks projecting above and broad ears falling beside the neck; over the right shoulder we see, projecting, the bow of the hunting goddess, Artemis, and the club of Hercules; underneath is the rattle, *sistrum*, sacred to Isis.

On her right shoulder is a lion, while an asp rises threateningly above her right hand, facing a panther that stands on the fruits gathered in the fold of her robe; these creatures and the fruits symbolize the wild life and fertility of the Province. Relief on a silver plate.

**Africa** was personified as a female figure, wearing as a head-dress the spoils of an elephant (Fig. 171).

## THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME

### I. COMPOSITION OF THE ARMY

**307. The legion.** — *a.* The *legion*, *legiō* (I. 7), in Caesar's time was composed exclusively of Roman citizens. Probably Caesar's *legionary soldiers*, *legiōnārī* (C. III. 63) or simply *militēs* (I. 7), were mainly volunteers who were willing to enlist for the regular term of twenty years on account of the certainty of the pay, and of provision for their old age in case they lived beyond the period of service. However, citizens between the ages of seventeen and forty-six were liable to be called out by a *levy*, *dilectus* (C. I. 6), at any time. Romans of the upper classes who wished to serve in the army, or found themselves unable to evade conscription, were employed as officers, or attached to the bodyguard of the commander.

*b.* The normal strength of a legion at the end of the Republic was 6000 men; but the average number of men in Caesar's legions probably did not exceed 3600 in the Gallic War, and 3000 in the Civil War.

*c.* The legion was divided into ten *cohorts*, *cohortēs* (III. 1), averaging, in Caesar's army, about 360 men each; the cohort was divided into three *maniples*, *manipuli* (II. 25), of 120 men; the maniples into two *centuries* or *companies*, *ordinēs* (I. 40). In legions having a full complement of men each century would contain 100; in Caesar's army the number could hardly have averaged more than 60.

*d.* The legions that had seen long service, apparently not less than nine or ten years, were called *veteran*, *legiōnēs veterānae* (I. 24); the rest, *last levied*, or *raw*, *legiōnēs proximē cōnscriptae* (I. 24), or *legiōnēs tirōnum* (C. III. 28). The legions were designated by number.



e. In the first year of the Gallic War Caesar had four veteran legions, numbered VII., VIII., IX.,—these three apparently brought from the vicinity of Aquileia (I. 10),—and X.; the tenth legion was in the Province at the time of his arrival in Gaul (I. 7). After Caesar learned that the Helvetians proposed to go through the country of the Sequanians and Aeduanus he hastily raised in Cisalpine Gaul two legions (I. 10), which were numbered XI. and XII. With these six legions he gained two of his most brilliant victories, over the Helvetians and over Ariovistus.

f. In the second year of the war Caesar raised two new legions in Cisalpine Gaul (II. 2), numbered XIII. and XIV., so that he now had four veteran and four raw legions, eight in all.

g. In the fifth year (54 B.C.) the XIVth legion and half of another were annihilated in the ambush set by Ambiorix (V. 26–37). At the beginning of the next year Caesar raised two more legions in Cisalpine Gaul, one replacing the lost XIVth (VI. 32), the other numbered XV., and besides obtained a legion from Pompey, which was numbered VI. (VI. 1; VIII. 54). In the last two years of the war he had thus ten legions (VII. 34), numbered VI. to XV. inclusive. It appears probable that the whole force of legionary soldiers engaged in the siege of Alesia fell short of forty thousand.

**308. The infantry auxiliaries.**—In addition to the legions, a Roman army contained bodies of infantry and cavalry drawn from allied and subject peoples, or hired outright from independent nations, called *auxiliaries* or *auxiliary troops*, *auxilia* (I. 24). These in some cases retained their native dress, equipment, and mode of fighting, in others were armed and trained after the Roman fashion (Fig. 172). To the former class belong the *light-armed troops*, *levis armaturæ peditēs* (II. 24), including as special classes the slingers (Plate III. 1), and bowmen. In the Gallic War Caesar availed himself of the help of *slingers*, *funditōrēs*, from the Balearic Islands (II. 7), *bowmen*, *sagittārii*, from Crete and from Numidia (II. 7), and light-armed German troops (VII. 65). He utilized also

contingents from the Gallic States that he subdued (III. 18, VIII. 10). In 52 B.C. he had a force of ten thousand Aeduans (VII. 34). Caesar, as other Roman writers, is generally not careful to state the exact number of the auxiliary troops; they were regarded as relatively unimportant. The officers of the auxiliaries, both infantry and cavalry, were Romans. Auxiliary troops posted on the wing of an army might be called *wing-men*, *alarii* (I. 51).

**309. The cavalry.** — *a.*

A troop of cavalry usually accompanied each legion. While the evidence is not conclusive, it is probable that in the latter part of the Gallic War, if not from the beginning, Caesar had contingents of cavalry in connection with his legions, averaging 200 to 300 men each. These horsemen were foreigners, serving for pay; they were drawn from Spain, *Spanish horsemen*, *Hispani equites* (V. 26), from Germany, *German horsemen*, *Germani equites* (VII. 13), and from Gaul.

*b.* Apart from the legionary contingents, Caesar had a force of cavalry raised from the Gallic States subject or friendly to



Figure 172. — Light-armed soldier.

Rome, which was reckoned as a single body, numbering under ordinary circumstances about 4000 (I. 15; V. 5), or 5000 men (IV. 12).

c. The cavalry was divided into *squads* or *squadrons*, *turmae*, of about 30 horsemen; such a squad went with Commius to Britain (IV. 35). Probably the squad contained three *decuries*, *decuriae*, of 10 men each, under the command of *decurions*, *decuriōnēs* (I. 23). The higher officers were called *cavalry prefects*, *praefecti equitum* (III. 26). See Plate III, 5.

310. **The non-combatants.** — a. There were two classes of non-combatants, slaves employed for menial services, and free men, or freedmen. In the former class were included the officers' servants and *camp servants*, *cālōnēs* (II. 24), as well as the drivers and *muleteers* with the heavy baggage, *mūlōnēs* (VII. 45); in the latter class were citizens or others who were allowed to accompany the army but were obliged to find quarters outside of the camp, as the *traders*, *mercātōrēs* (VI. 37).

b. The *mechanics*, *fabri* (V. 11), were not enrolled as a separate corps, but were drawn from the ranks of the legionary soldiers whenever needed.

311. **The baggage train.** — Each legion had a separate baggage train. The heavy baggage, *impedimenta* (II. 19), comprised tents, hand-mills for grinding grain, artillery, extra weapons, and other military stores, as well as supplies of food. In the enemy's country for better defense the baggage trains of a number of legions might be formed into a single column (II. 19). From the baggage of the legion, or heavy baggage, the baggage of the soldiers, carried in individual *packs*, *sarcinae*, should be clearly distinguished (Fig. 6).

## II. THE OFFICERS

312. The general was properly called *leader*, *dux*, until he had won a victory; after the first victory he had a right to the title *imperātor*, *commander* or *general* (I. 40). Caesar used the title *Imperator* from the time that he defeated the Helvetians, in 58 B.C., until his death (I. 40, etc.).

**313. a.** Next in rank came the *lieutenant*, or *lieutenant-general*, *légātus* (I. 10), who was frequently placed by Caesar in command of separate legions, or of corps containing more than one legion. When acting in the absence of the general the lieutenant became *lieutenant in the general's place*, *légātus prō praetōre* (I. 21), and exercised unusual authority. The title "lieutenant general" would more accurately define the military position of Labienus, for example, than that of "lieutenant" as the word is used in the United States and England.

**b.** The *quaestor*, *quaestor* (I. 52), was charged with the care of the military chest and the supplies, but was sometimes clothed with purely military authority, and assumed the functions of a lieutenant. The quaestor and the lieutenants belonged to the staff of the general, and had with him the distinction of a *body-guard*, *cohort praetoria* (I. 40), composed of picked soldiers and of young men of rank who wished to acquire military experience.

**314.** The *military tribunes*, *tribūni militum* (I. 39), numbered six to a legion. In Caesar's army the tribunes appear to have received appointment for personal rather than military reasons; and they were intrusted with subordinate services, such as the leading of troops on the march, the command of detachments smaller than a legion (cf. VI. 39), the securing of supplies (III. 7), and the oversight of the watches. Only one military tribune, Gaius Volusenus (III. 5), is mentioned by Caesar in terms of praise.

**315. a.** In marked contrast with the higher officers, who were of good social position, were the captains, or *centurions*, *centuriōnēs*, *ordinēs* (V. 30). These were often of the humblest origin; they were promoted from the ranks simply on account of bravery and efficiency. At the drill, on the march, and in battle, they were at the same time the models and the leaders of the soldiers.

**b.** As each century had a centurion, there were 2 centurions in each maniple (distinguished as *first*, *prior*, and *second*, *pos-*

terior), 6 in each cohort, and 60 in the legion. The first in rank was the *first centurion* (of the first maniple) of the *first cohort*, *primipilus* (II. 25). The first centurion of the second maniple of a cohort was called *princeps prior* (C. III. 64).

316. Below the centurions, but ranking above the common soldiers, were the privileged soldiers, who were relieved from picket duty as well as work on fortifications and other manual labor. Such were the *veteran volunteers*, *evocātī* (C. III. 53), soldiers who had served their full time but had reenlisted at the general's request; the musicians, and the *standard-bearers*, *signiferi*.

### III. PROVISIONING AND PAY OF THE SOLDIERS

317. Caesar was careful to have ample supplies always at hand.

The care of the stores was in the hands of the quaestor, with his staff. Not bread or flour, but *grain*, *frumentum* (I. 16), usually wheat, was served out to the soldiers for rations. This they themselves ground with *hand-mills*, *molae manuales*, and prepared for food by boiling into a paste or by making into bread without yeast.

The grain was portioned out every fifteen days, and on the march each soldier carried his share in a sack. The amount furnished does not seem large when we reflect that the men lived almost exclusively on a vegetable diet. The allowance for the fifteen days was two Roman *pecks*, *modii*, about half a bushel by our measure. As the weight of this was not far from thirty pounds, the soldier had about two pounds per day. On difficult or forced marches extra rations were served out.

If the soldier desired to do so he could trade off his grain for bread, or buy other articles of food from the numerous *traders*, *mercatores* (I. 39), who accompanied the army and had a flourishing business. When wheat was scarce, *barley*, *hordeum* (C. III. 47), was substituted. Rations of barley were frequently served out also instead of wheat as a punishment for slight

offenses. In traversing an enemy's country fresh meat was often secured.

**318.** The wages of the Roman soldier were very small, but in successful campaigns the men had a share of the *booty*, *praeda* (C. III. 97), consisting largely of captives, who were sold as slaves (VII. 89). These were bought up on the spot by the traders, and thus readily turned into cash. Sometimes Caesar gave money realized from the sale of booty; thus after the conquest of the Bituriges in 51 B.C. the soldiers received 200 sesterces (about \$8.00) apiece, the centurions a much larger sum (VIII. 4). As other *rewards*, *praemia* (V. 58), the commander could make special *gifts*, *militaria dōna* (C. III. 53), such as disk-shaped *decorations* of metal for the breast, *phalerae* (Fig. 62), clothing, and double pay (C. III. 53).

When convicted of cowardly or disgraceful conduct the soldier was deprived of his weapons and driven from the camp, or in extreme cases put to death; officers and privileged soldiers might be reduced in rank, as were certain standard-bearers after an engagement before Dyrrachium (C. III. 74).

**319.** At the close of his period of service, twenty years, or on reaching his fiftieth year, the soldier who had served well was entitled to an *honorable discharge*, *missio honesta*, or *missio* (C. I. 86), together with an allotment of land, or a payment of money.

#### IV. THE DRESS AND EQUIPMENT

**320.** The legionary soldier wore a thick woolen undergarment, *tunic*, *tunica*, reaching nearly to the knees (cf. C. III. 44). His *cloak*, *sagum* (C. I. 75), which served also as a blanket, was likewise of undyed wool, and fastened by a *clasp*, *fibula*, on the right shoulder, so as not to impede the movement of the right arm. The soldier's *shoes*, *caligae* (Fig. 173), were like a sandal, but had heavy



Figure 173. — Soldier's shoe.



Figure 174.—Legionary's helmet, *galea*, without the crest.

soles which were fastened on by straps over the foot and instep.

**321.** The *cloak* of the commander, *palū-dāmentum*, differed from that of the soldier only in being more ample, of finer quality, and ornamented; it was ordinarily scarlet in color (VII. 88).

**322.** The weapons of the legionary were in part offensive, in part defensive.

As defensive *weapons*, *arma*, he had:

a. A *helmet*, *galea* (Fig. 174), ornamented with a *crest*, *crista* (Plate III, 3; Fig. 33). On the march the helmet was hung on a cord which passed through the ring at the top and around the soldier's neck. The crest was fastened on before going into action.

b. A *cuirass*, or *coat of mail*, *lōrica*, of leather, or of leather strengthened with strips of metal, or of metal (Figures 148, 150).

c. A *shield*, ordinarily rectangular, *scūtum* (II 25; Fig. 175; Plate IV, 3), but in some cases oval, *clipeus* (Plate IV, 1), made of two layers of boards fastened together, strengthened on the outside by layers of linen or of leather, and at the edges by a rim of metal. At the middle of the outside was an iron knob, *umbō*, used in striking.



Figure 175.—Roman oblong shield, *scutum*.

On the march the shield was protected from the wet by a leather covering, *tegimentum* (II. 21). In battle it was held on the left arm (Fig. 33).

The offensive weapons of the legionary were :

d. A pike, *pilum* (I. 25), a heavy and formidable javelin. It



Figure 176. — Roman pike, restored.

a. Wooden shaft.

b. Iron collar, strengthening the end of the wooden shaft where the iron is fitted in.

c. The "iron," *ferrum*; of soft iron, easily bent.

d. Hard barbed point, of iron.

e. Iron shoe, making it possible to stick the pike into the ground, so that it would stand upright, without frazzling the wood.

consisted of a shaft of wood about four feet long, into the end of which was fitted a small iron shaft, *ferrum* (I. 25), with a pointed head, which projected two feet beyond the end of the wood (see Figures 49, 50, 176, and Plate IV, 6). The weight of the whole was not far from ten or eleven pounds. Pikes could be thrown only about 75 feet; but they were hurled with such skill and force that the first hurling often decided the battle.

e. A sword, *gladius* (I. 25), called *Spanish sword*, *gladius Hispānus*, because made according to a pattern brought from Spain after the Second Punic War. The Spanish sword was short, broad, two-edged, and pointed, better adapted for stabbing than for slashing, though used for both purposes (Plate IV, 9). It was kept in a scabbard, *vagina* (V. 44), fastened to a belt, *baltus* (V. 44), which was passed over the left shoulder (Plate III, 3, and Fig. 177); this brought the sword on the right side, so that it was not in the way of the shield.

f. In the time of the Empire, and probably

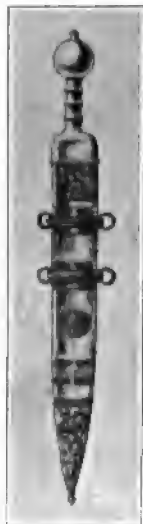


Figure 177. — Spanish sword, in the scabbard.



also in Caesar's day, officers carried a *dagger*, *pugio*, which was attached to a belt running around the waist (Fig. 178).

**323.** The dress and equipment of the light-armed soldiers varied greatly (Fig. 172, and Plate III, 1; Pl. IV, 7, 11).



Figure 178.  
—Roman dagger.

They, as well as the cavalry, seem generally to have had a light round or oval *shield*, *parma*, about three feet in diameter (Plate IV, 4). The cavalry had *helmets* of metal, *cassides* (VII. 45, Figure 179), light lances for hurling, and a longer sword than that used by the infantry (Figure 98, and Plate III, 5).

## V. THE STANDARDS

**324. a.** While the ancient battle lacked the noise and smoke of cannon and of other death-dealing devices of modern war, great clouds of dust were raised and obscured the movements of the combatants; the standards, or ensigns, were consequently more numerous, and had a relatively more important place, than flags have to-day.

**b.** The ensigns of Caesar's army were:

(1) The *eagle* of the legion, *aquila* (IV. 25), of silver, carried in battle on the end of a pole by the *eagle-bearer*, *aquilifer* (V. 37). In camp it was kept in a little *shrine*, *sacellum* (Plate IV, 8). It was the standard of the legion as a whole; the eagle with extended wings borne aloft seemed to signify that the bird sacred to Jupiter, god of victory, was ready to lead the legion to success; and the loss of the eagle was the deepest disgrace that could be incurred (IV. 25; V. 37; C. III. 64). See Fig. 180, and Plate IV, 2.

The ancient Persians had a golden eagle as the royal stand-



Figure 179. — Cavalryman's helmet, *cassis*.

ard; and to-day the eagle appears among the emblems of several European countries, and of the United States.

(2) The *standards*, *signa* (II. 21), one to each maniple, carried by *standard-bearers*, *signiferi* (II. 25; Fig. 187). These varied in appearance. One type, known from a coin struck in 49 B.C. (Fig. 180), had small streamers attached to the end of the pole, underneath which were two crescents (perhaps for good luck), one just above the other; below these were two disks of metal, *phalerae*, no doubt presented to the maniple for meritorious conduct, and last of all a square plate of metal, indicating by a letter the place of the maniple (**H** = *hastāti*, **P** = *principēs*). In some cases figures of animals appeared.



Figure 180. — Standards.

Denarius, struck in 49 B.C.; eagle between two standards. Inscription. L · LENT[ULUS], C · MARC[ELLUS] COS, 'Lucius Lentulus and' Gaius Marcellus, Consuls.'

There was no separate standard for the cohort.

(3) The *banners*, *vexilla*, rectangular flags of different sizes used for a variety of purposes (Fig. 149). A large red flag was the special ensign of the commander (II. 20). Smaller banners were used by special detachments not formed of regular maniples (VI. 36), or attached to the standards of the maniples.

**325.** On the march the standard was at the front, in battle some distance behind the front, of the maniple.

From the immediate association of the manipular standards with military movements arose several idiomatic expressions used by Caesar. Such are:

*signa ferre*, to go forward (I. 39).

*signa inferre*, to advance (II. 26).

*signa convertere*, to face about (I. 25).

*ad signa convenire*, to assemble (VI. 1).

*infestis signis*, in battle formation, lit. with hostile standards (VII. 51; C. III. 93).

## VI. THE MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

326. a. The musical instruments were:

(1) The *trumpet, tuba* (II. 20), about three feet long, with a funnel-shaped opening (Fig. 84, and Plate II, 7); it had a deep tone, and was sounded by the *trumpeters, tubicinēs* (VII. 47).



Figure 181. — Horn, with crosspiece by which it was carried.

(2) The *horn, cornū*, a large curved instrument, with a shriller note (Fig. 181, and Plate II. 8).

(3) The *shell trumpet, būcina*, perhaps resembling the large shells in use in modern times about Naples as dinner horns (Fig. 182); such at least is Triton's *būcina* described

by Ovid (Met. I, 333–338).

The shell trumpet was used especially in camp for giving the signals to change the watches (C. II. 35).

b. As the *maniple* was the unit of military movement, signals were addressed to the *standard-bearers, signiferi*.

c. The order "to advance" or "to fall back" was conveyed by the general to the *trumpeters, tubicinēs* (cf. VII. 47); their signal was taken up by the *horn-blowers, corni-*

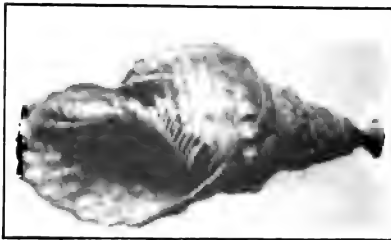


Figure 182. — Modern shell trumpet, with iron mouthpiece.

It has a deep tone which can be heard a long distance. From Boscoreale, near Pompeii.

*cinēs*, of whom there was one to each maniples. The notes of the instruments could be heard above the din of battle much more clearly than the spoken words of the officers.

## VII. THE ARMY ON THE MARCH

**327.** When in an enemy's country Caesar maintained an exceedingly efficient information service. Parties of mounted *patrols*, *explōrātōrēs* (I. 21), scoured the country; and their observation was supplemented by single *scouts* or *spies*, *speculātōrēs* (II. 11), who gathered information wherever they could (Fig. 183).

**328.** The army advanced ordinarily in three divisions. At the *front*, *primum agmen* (VII. 67), came the cavalry, with perhaps a division of light-armed troops, sent ahead to feel out the enemy (I. 15), and in case of attack, to hold him at bay until the rest of the army could prepare for action (II. 19).

Next came the main force, each legion being accompanied by its baggage train; but when there was danger of attack the legions marched in single column, with the baggage of the whole army united (II. 19).

The *rear*, *novissimum agmen*, might in case of danger be formed of part of the legionary force, the baggage being between the rear and the main body (II. 19).

**329.** The regular *day's march*, *iūstum iter*, was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise; but in emergencies the army got under way at midnight, or two or three o'clock in the morning. The distance ordinarily traversed was about 15 or 16 English miles; on a *forced march*, *iter magnum* (II. 12), a much greater distance might be made, as 25 or 30 English miles (VII. 41). Caesar's forced marches manifested astonishing powers of endurance on the part of



Figure 183.—  
Scout, *speculator*.

his soldiers. Rivers were often crossed by fording; in such operations the ancient army had the advantage over the modern, because it carried no ammunition that would be spoiled by the water (V. 18, VII. 56).

**330.** On the march the soldier carried his rations, his cooking utensils, his arms, blanket, and one or two *rampart stakes*, or *palisades*, *valli*; palisades for defense were carried by dragoons as late as the seventeenth century.

The luggage was done up in tight *bundles* or *packs*, *sarcinæ* (Plate III, 4), which were fastened to forked poles, and raised over the shoulder (Fig. 6). This arrangement was introduced by Marius, in memory of whom soldiers so equipped were called *Marius's mules*, *mūli Mariāni*. The helmet was hung by a cord from the neck, the other weapons disposed of in the most convenient way. When it rained, the oblong *shields*, *scūta* (§22, c), could be put over the head like a roof.

## VIII. THE ARMY IN CAMP

**331. a.** A camp was fortified at the close of every day's march. When the army was still on the march, men were sent forward to choose a suitable location for a camp and measure it off.



Figure 184. —  
Roman spade.

Of iron; such, with wooden handles, were used by Caesar's soldiers.

**b.** Whenever possible, a site for the camp was selected on a slight elevation, with abundance of water, and of wood for fuel, near at hand. The proximity of a dense forest or overhanging mountain was avoided, that a favorable opportunity of attack might not be given to the enemy. Sometimes the rear or one side was placed parallel with a river (II. 5).

**332.** The camp was usually rectangular (see Maps 3, 4, 6, 20); in a few cases there were camps of irregular shapes, adapted to the nature of the ground (Maps 5, 15). The size of the camp varied according to the size of the force.

**333.** In fortifying a camp, first an embankment was thrown up on all four sides; for digging the soldiers used spades, or trenching tools, like those in use to-day (Figures 3, 4, 184).

Outside of this embankment was a trench, usually triangular in section (V-shaped), from which the earth for the embankment was taken (Fig. 185, and Plate IV, 10). On the outer



Figure 185. — Bird's-eye view of a Roman Camp.

Plainly seen are the trench or moat, and the rampart, with its stockade, on which are battlements; gates, with towers at each side; the general's quarters, and the rows of tents.

edge of the embankment a row of strong *rampart stakes* or *palisades*, *valli*, was driven firmly in, forming a *stockade*. The *rampart*, *vallum* (II. 5), thus made, was several feet high and wide enough so that the soldiers could stand on it behind the palisades. The *trench*, or *moat*, *fossa* (II. 8), was from twelve to eighteen feet wide (II. 5) and from seven to ten feet deep. When the army expected to remain in the same place for a long time, as in *winter quarters*, *hiberna* (I. 54), or a *stationary camp*, *castra stativa* (C. III. 30), sometimes *towers*, *turrës* (V. 40), were added at brief intervals, and the intervening spaces further protected by a roof (Plate IX, 6).

The labor of fortifying a camp was prodigious.

**334. a.** The camp had four gates (Plate IV, 10). That in the direction of the advance, toward the enemy, was called the *general's gate*, **porta praetōria** (C. III. 94), the one opposite to this, at the rear, the *decuman gate*, **porta decumāna** (II, 24); the gates on the right and left side respectively, as one faced the front, *main right gate*, **porta principālis dextra**, and *main left gate*, **porta principālis sinistra**. The last two were connected by the *main street*, **via principālis**. The entrances were made more easily defensible by an approach so laid out that an enemy attempting to enter would expose the right, or unprotected side (Fig. 185).

**b.** Inside the rampart, between it and the tents, a vacant space two hundred feet wide was left on all sides. The remaining room in the enclosure was systematically divided, so that every maniple, decuria, and body of light-armed troops knew its place and could find its quarters at once. The *general's quarters*, **praetōrium** (C. III. 94), was near the middle of the camp; near it was an open space where he could address his troops from a *platform*, **suggestus** (VI. 3). Access to all parts of the camp was made by means of *passageways*, **viae** (V. 49).

**335. a.** The *tents*, **tabernācula** (I. 39), were of leather (Plate VII, 3); hence **sub pellibus**, lit. *under hides*, means *in tents* (III. 29). Each was calculated to hold ten men; but a centurion seems generally to have had more room to himself than the soldiers.

**b.** The *winter quarters*, **hiberna**, were made more comfortable by the substitution of straw-thatched *huts*, **casae** (V. 43), for tents.

**c.** In a hostile country a strong guard was kept before the gates of the camp (IV. 32). In the earlier times, and probably in Caesar's army, the password, admitting to the camp, was different each night; it was written on slips of wood, which were given by the commander to the military tribunes, and passed by these to the men on duty.

**336.** Many Roman camps became the nucleus of permanent

settlements, which survive in cities to-day. A marked instance is the city of *Chester*, England, the name of which is derived from *castra*; so *Rochester* comes from *Rodolphī castra*.

## IX. THE ARMY IN BATTLE ARRAY

337. *a.* When the Roman force was far outnumbered by the enemy, the legionary soldiers might be arranged in a *double line*, *duplex aciēs* (III. 24), or even in a *single line*, *aciēs simplex*,

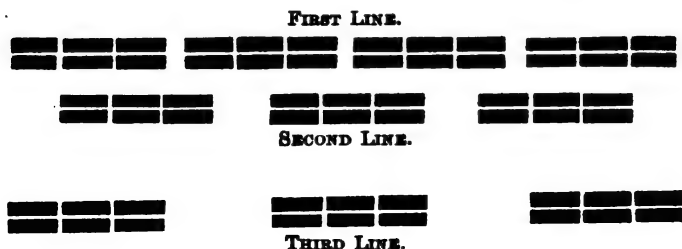


Figure 186. — *Acies triplex.*

One legion in triple line formation, showing the arrangement of the ten cohorts, and of the three maniples and six centuries in each cohort.

Four cohorts are shown in the first line, three in the second, and three in the third.

In each cohort the three maniples stand side by side. Each maniple is represented as divided into two centuries, one century being behind the other.

The men in each maniple probably stood 8 ranks deep, each century being formed in 4 ranks.

as at the battle of Ruspina, near Hadrumentum (264). But under ordinary circumstances Caesar drew up his legions in a *triple line*, *triplex aciēs*, as in the battles with the Helvetians, Ariovistus, and the Usipetes and Tencteri. This arrangement was probably as follows (Fig. 186):

(1) Four cohorts of each legion stood in the first line; about 160 feet behind them stood three cohorts; and ordinarily the remaining three cohorts of the legion were posted still farther back as a reserve. At the battle of Pharsalus there were only two cohorts in Caesar's third line (as indicated on Map 20), one cohort from each legion having been drawn off to form a



*sappers' huts, vineae* (II, 12; see Plate IX, 9), made of timber or of thick wickerwork, with rawhides stretched over the outside as a protection against fire. Rows of arbor-sheds were placed along the sides of the mole to afford passageways to the front (Plate IX, 2); a long arbor-shed was called a *mousie, mūsculus* (VII. 84; C. II. 10). A sappers' shed with a sloping roof of strong boards specially adapted for use in undermining a wall was called a *turtle-shell shed, testūdō* (Plate VII, 10).

b. *Movable towers, turrēs ambulātōriæ* (II. 12, 31), to be filled with soldiers, were built out of range of the enemy's missiles

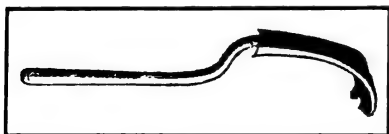


Figure 188. — Wall hook.

Iron head of a wall hook, found in the remains of the Gallic wall at Besançon, ancient Vesontio.

and brought up near the walls, usually on the siege embankment, which sloped gently from the rear up to the wall (Plate IX, 7; Plate XII).

c. In the lowest story of the movable tower, or under a separate roof, was the *battering ram, ariēs* (II. 32), an enormous beam with a metallic head which was swung against the walls with terrific force (Plate VII, 1). The attacking force tried also to pry stones out of the walls with *wall hooks, falcēs (mūrālēs)*, light poles with a strong iron hook at the end (VII. 22; Fig. 188), and clear the walls of defenders by means of *artillery* of the *torsioner* type, *tormenta*.

d. Walls and ramparts were mounted by means of *scaling ladders, scālæ* (V. 43).

343. For throwing heavy missiles the Romans had *torsioners, tormenta* (VII. 81), so named from the method of developing the force required for hurling; *tormentum* is derived from *torqueō, twist*. This was obtained by twisting with great tension strong ropes of hair (Fig. 189), which were suddenly released by means of a trigger; the force was utilized for the shooting of missiles by a mechanism of which there were three principal types:

a. The *catapult, catapulta* (Plate IX, 8), for shooting large

arrows or darts. A small catapult is called *scorpion*, *scorpiō*, by Caesar (VII. 25).

b. The *ballista*, *ballista* (Plate VII, 8), which cast stones; the trough was sharply inclined, while that of the catapult was nearly horizontal. The ballista is not mentioned by Caesar.

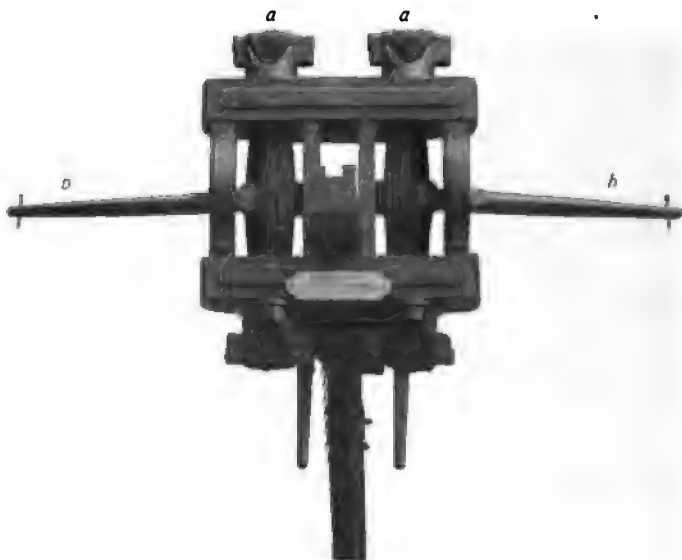


Figure 189. — Head of a catapult, restored. In the Museum of St. Germain, near Paris.

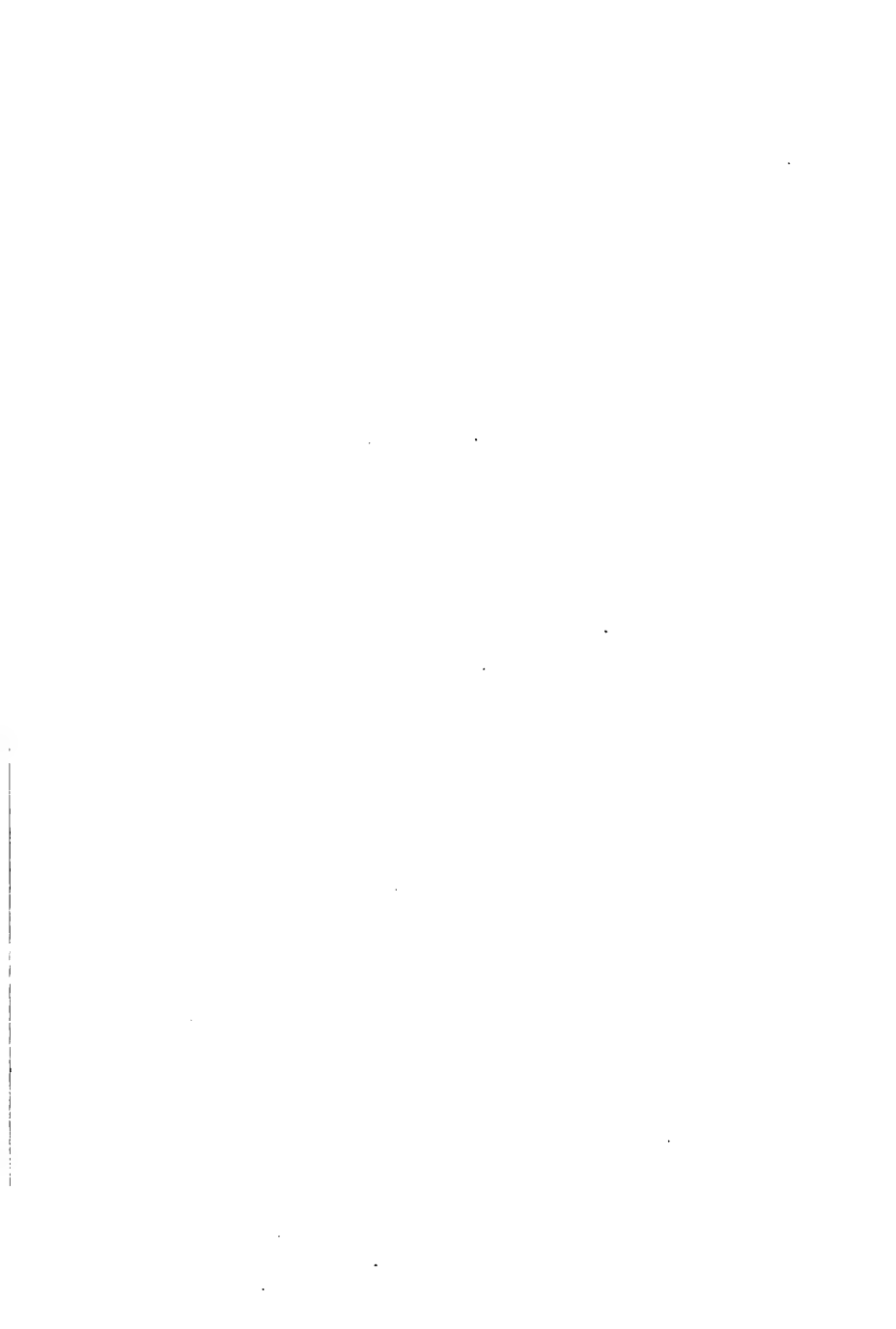
a. a. Tightly twisted ropes.

b. b. Arms, to which are attached the cords connected with the trigger. The methods of loading and discharging artillery of this kind are easily understood from the figures shown in Plate VII, 8, and Plate IX, 8.

c. The *wild ass*, *onager* (Plate VII, 7), which hurled stones, but was probably not used in Caesar's time.

Where the ground allowed, the walls were undermined and tunnels run under the town.

**344.** The besieged met mines by counter-mines. With great hooks they tried to catch the head of the battering ram and hold it, or let down masses of wood or wickerwork along the



pointed beams projecting in front, for use in ramming a hostile ship (Figures 24, 146). When the galleys were not in use they might be drawn up on the shore (IV. 29).

d. Before the galley went into action the sail was rolled up and the mast taken down; a *tower*, *turris* (III. 14), was raised on the front part of the ship, from which missiles could be hurled over into a vessel near at hand; *grappling-hooks*, *ferreæ manūs* (lit. *iron hands*; C. II. 6), were provided, by which the opposing ship might be seized, and a movable bridge that could be thrown across in boarding.

e. For the carrying of his troops Caesar used *transports*, *onerariæ nāvēs* (IV. 22), which were broader and slower than the galleys (Fig. 202, in the Vocabulary); these were accompanied by galleys as escort (V. 8).

f. The admiral's ship, or flag-ship, was distinguished by a red *banner*, *vexillum*, resembling that used by the general on land (324, b, 3).

347. The naval tactics of the Romans consisted mainly in either propelling a vessel with great force against a rival and crushing the side by ramming, or in catching hold of the hostile craft with grappling-hooks, pulling alongside, springing over on it, and settling the conflict with a hand-to-hand fight (Plate XI). In the sea-fight with the Venetans, who had only sailing vessels, the Roman sailors crippled the enemy's ships by cutting down the sail yards; the legionaries on the galleys then boarded the Venetan ships and despatched the crews (III. 13-15).

Galleys were used on the Mediterranean until the beginning of the nineteenth century.

## XII. DRESS AND EQUIPMENT OF THE GAULS AND GERMANS

348. The Gauls wore trousers, *bræcæ*, which the Romans considered barbaric. The Gallic military *cloak*, *sagulum* (V. 42), was apparently smaller than that of the Roman soldiers.



Figure 190. —  
Gallic sword and  
sheath.

Found at Alesia.  
The handle has  
rusted away.

349. The Gallic infantry were protected by large oblong or oval shields, of wood or metal (called by Caesar, *scūta*, I. 25; Figures 19, 48, and 131), and by helmets of metal on which sometimes horns, and even wheels, appeared (Figures 46 and 131).

The offensive weapons of the Gauls were a long sword (Figures 39 and 190), and several types of missile for throwing (Figures 40, 43), as *javelins*, *gaesa* (III. 4), *spears*, *matarae* (I. 26), and *darts*, *trāgulae* (I. 26), or *verūta* (V. 44).

350. The Gallic standard, in many cases at least, was an image of a boar mounted on a pole (Figures 30, 42).

Signals in Gallic armies were given on a curved *war-trumpet*, *carnyx*, which terminated in the head of an animal or serpent (Figures 19, 151).

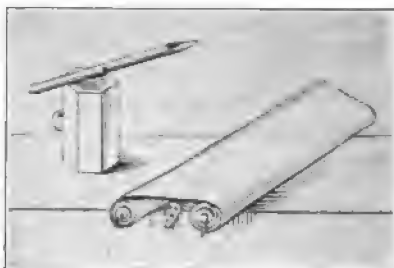
351. The clothing of the Germans was largely of skins (IV. 1), but the more advanced wore trousers, like the Gauls, and confined their long hair in a kind of knot (Fig. 66).

The principal weapons of the Germans were a shield and spear, and a long sword with a single edge (Fig. 67).

## EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

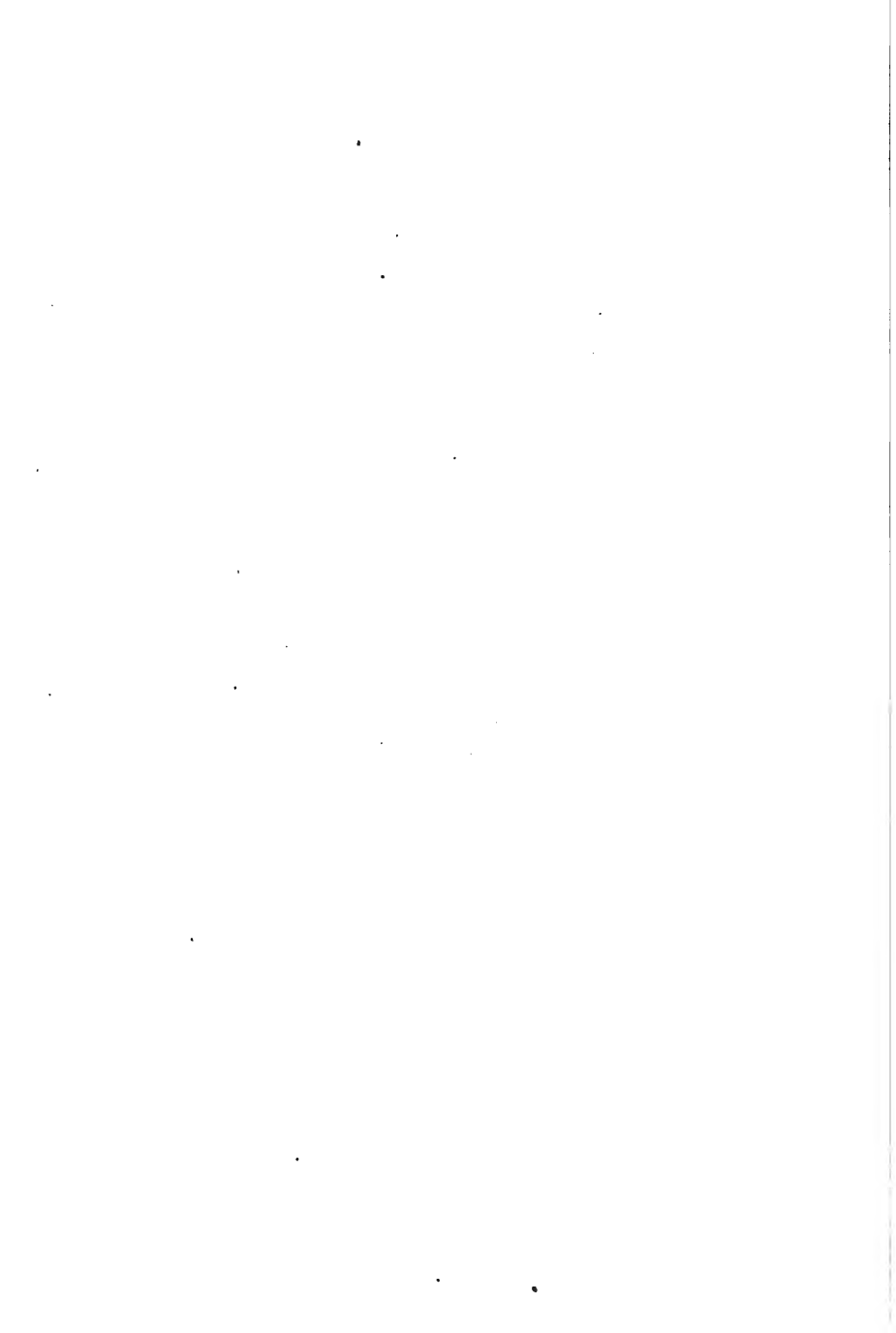
Forty Exercises reprinted, by permission, from  
*Latin Composition*, by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips,  
of Phillips Academy, Andover, Massachusetts.

---



**Figure 191.** — Roman inkstand, reed pen, and book partly  
unrolled, with title on a small tag attached at the end.  
From an ancient wall painting.

---



## POINTS TO BE NOTED IN WRITING LATIN

### ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN

**352. Normal Order.** *a.* When the emphasis is evenly distributed in a Latin sentence, the Subject comes first, the Predicate last, and the Modifiers of the Predicate precede the Verb in this order: Indirect Object, Direct Object, Adverb or Adverbial Phrase; as, **Is sibi lēgationem ad civitatē suscepit**, *he took upon himself the mission of envoy to the states* (I. 3).

*b.* Genitives, Adjectives, Possessive Pronouns, and Ordinal Numerals when unemphatic follow their Nouns; as **glōriā belli**, *reputation for war* (I. 2); **cupiditatē regnī**, *by desire of kingly power* (I. 9); **locis patentibus maximēque frumentariis**, *open and exceedingly productive country* (I. 10); **filiam suam**, *his daughter* (I. 3); **diē quartō**, *on the fourth day* (I. 26).

*c.* The Demonstrative Pronouns **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, **is**, the Intensive **ipse**, and Adjectives indicating quantity or position when unemphatic precede their Nouns; as, **His rebus**, *by these conditions* (I. 3); **ipse imperator**, *the general himself* (I. 40); **trēs populōs**, *three peoples* (I. 3); **magnum numerum**, *a great number* (I. 4); **extrēmum oppidum**, *the furthest town* (I. 6); **superiōre aciē**, *the upper line* (I. 24).

**353. Order according to Emphasis.** *a.* For the sake of emphasis the Normal Order of words in the sentence may be reversed, the Subject being placed last; as, **Apud Helvētiōs longē nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix**, *Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was far the highest in rank, and wealthiest* (I. 2).

*b.* Genitives, Adjectives, Possessive Pronouns, and Ordinal Numerals when emphatic precede their Nouns; as, **regnī cupiditatē**, *by desire of kingly power* (I. 2); **inimicō animō**, *of hostile disposition* (I. 7); **decima legiō**, *the tenth legion* (I. 41).

*c.* When emphatic, the Demonstratives **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, **is**, the Intensive **ipse** and Adjectives indicating quantity or position follow their nouns; as, **in Insulā ipsā**, *in the island itself* (V. 12); **Galliae tōtius**, *of entire Gaul* (I. 31); **partēs trēs**, *three parts* (I. 1); **locis superiōribus**, *the higher places* (I. 10).

*d.* For the sake of emphasis words belonging together in construction are often separated; as, **aliud iter habērent nūllum**, *they had*



no other way (I. 7); *magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, was a great hindrance* (I. 25).

e. An important word in a clause may be made emphatic by placing it before the conjunction introducing the clause; as *Diū cum esset pugnatum, When the fighting had continued a long time* (I. 26).

### THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. In writing Latin the Sequence of Tenses should be particularly noted when a Subjunctive is required in a Dependent Clause. For convenience of reference the statement of the grammar (177, a) is here supplemented by a tabular outline:

#### PRIMARY SEQUENCE

rogat	} quid faciam (incomplete action)	He asks, is asking	} what I am doing.
rogabit		He will ask	
rogaverit		He will have asked	
rogat	} quid fecerim (completed action)	He asks, is asking	} what I did, or have done.
rogabit		He will ask	
rogaverit		He will have asked	

#### SECONDARY SEQUENCE

rogabat	} quid facerem (incomplete action)	He asked, was asking	} what I was doing.
rogavit		He asked	
rogaverat		He had asked	
rogabat	} quid fecissem (completed action)	He asked, was asking	} what I had done.
rogavit		He asked	
rogaverat		He had asked	

TABLE ILLUSTRATING SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	MAIN VERB	FOLLOWED BY SUBJUNCTIVE	
		Referring to the Same or Later Time	Referring to Previous Time
PRIMARY TENSES	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
SECONDARY TENSES	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

# WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

**355.** Purpose in Latin may be expressed in five ways:

By the use of **ut** with the Subjunctive (196, a) ;

By the use of a Relative with the Subjunctive (193, a) ;

By **ad** with the Accusative of the Gerund or the Gerundive Construction (230, 3) ;

By **causa** with the Genitive of the Gerund or the Gerundive Construction (230, 1) ;

By the Supine in **-um** (231, a and b).

## "MAY," "MIGHT," AND "MUST," "OUGHT" IN LATIN

**356. a.** "May" and "might" often appear in clauses expressing Purpose, which are translated into Latin by **ut** with the Subjunctive; as, "in order that they might be more ready," **ut paratiorēs essent** (I. 5). 196, a.

b. "May" and "might" may also express Permission and be best translated by **licet** with the Dative of the Person and the Infinitive; as, "We may discuss with him," **nōbīs cum eō agere licet**, lit. 'it is permitted to us,' etc. 73, b, and 222, a.

**357. a.** "Must" implies Necessity, and is translated by the Passive Periphrastic conjugation (73, e, and 229, c), or by **necesse est** with the Infinitive, or Infinitive with Subject-Accusative, the Infinitive with **necesse est** being the Subject of **est**; as, 'as was bound to happen,' **quod necesse erat accidere**, lit. 'which was necessary to happen,' **quod accidere** being the subject of **erat** (IV. 29).

b. "Ought," implying Obligation or Propriety, is translated either by the Passive Periphrastic conjugation (73, e, and 229, c), by **oportet** and the Present Infinitive with Subject Accusative (73, a), or by **dēbeō** with a Present Infinitive; since "ought" is a defective verb, past time is expressed in English by the Past Infinitive with "ought," while in Latin past time is expressed by the Principal Verb and only the Present Infinitive is used. Thus:

### PRESENT TIME

"They ought to fight bravely"

{ **fortiter pugnāre dēbent**  
**eōs fortiter pugnāre oportet**  
**eīs fortiter pugnandum est**

### PAST TIME

"He ought to have sent  
hostages"

{ **obsidēs mittere dēbuit**  
**eum obsidēs mittere oportuit**  
**obsidēs ei mittendi erant**

## LESSON I

### PRONOUNS

**Personal.** 39, *a* and *b*; 87, *a* and *b*; 155, 156. B. 242; A. 296; H. 500.

**Demonstrative and Intensive.** 42-45, 46; 160-162; B. 246-249; A. 296-298; H. 505-507.

**Reflexive.** 40, *a* and *b*; 158, *a* and *b*; 159. B. 244; A. 299, and 300, 1, 2; H. 502-504.

---

**Book I. 1, 2.** 1. These often carry on war with them. 2. That river separates all these from the Belgians. 3. We call you Gauls. 4. They call themselves Celts. 5. The Helvetians carry on war with the Germans, and fight in their territory. 6. They all differ from one another. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul, and call themselves the bravest of all. 8. Their boundaries are narrow in proportion to the number of men.

## LESSON II

### PRONOUNS—*Continued*

**Relative.** 47; 163, *a* and *b*. B. 250, 251; A. 304-306, and 308, *a*; H. 510.

**Possessive.** 41; 157, *a-c*, 158, *c*. B. 243; A. 302, *a, c, d, e*; H. 501.

---

**Book I. 3, 4.** 1. Casticus had been called our friend. 2. He will seize the royal power in his own state. 3. Diviciacus, who held the leadership, was a brother of Dumnorix. 4. They will establish peace with those states which are nearest. 5. They were influenced by his speech, and gave a pledge to one another. 6. His father held the royal power for many years. 7. He will take all his clients with him to the trial. 8. Dumnorix, to whom he gave his daughter in marriage, was very powerful. 9. You attempted the same thing in your state.

## LESSON III

PRONOUNS — *Continued*

**Interrogative.** 48, *a* and *b*. B. 90; A. 148, 152; H. 511.

**Indefinite.** 49, *a* and *b*; 168. B. 252; A. 309-314; H. 512-515.

**Direct Questions.** 179, *a*. B. 162; A. 330-333; H. 375.

**Ablative of Agent and Means.** 126, *a*; 131, *a*, *b*, and *c*. B. 216; A. 405; H. 468, and 1.

**Book I. 5, 6.** 1. Were all the towns and villages burned by the Helvetians? 2. Certain<sup>1</sup> of the Rauraci adopted the same plan, and started out with them. 3. If there is any road by which we can<sup>2</sup> go from home, we will burn all our towns and villages. 4. What did they try to do when<sup>3</sup> they went out from home? 5. They cannot persuade their neighbor, can they, to attempt to do this? 6. They permitted them to go through their territory.

<sup>1</sup> *certain*; *quidam* and numerals take *ex* with the Ablative instead of the Partitive Genitive. 97, *d*.

<sup>2</sup> *can*; note mood in text. 194, *a*.

<sup>3</sup> *when*; use *ubi*. Note construction in text.

## LESSON IV

## REVIEW

**Book I. 7, 8.** Lake Geneva empties into the Rhone, which is a river in Gaul between the (country of the) Sequanians<sup>1</sup> and the (country of the) Allobroges. Caesar built a rampart ten feet high from this lake to the Jura mountains, which separate the (country of the) Helvetians from the (country of the) Sequanians. When this rampart was finished, he fortified redoubts; and after stationing<sup>2</sup> garrisons, he was able very easily to stop those who tried to cross over. The Helvetians were intending to march through the Province because they could not go by any other route; and so<sup>3</sup> they fastened many boats together, and made rafts by which they crossed the Rhone at its shallowest point.

<sup>1</sup> 232. <sup>2</sup> *after stationing*; use Ablative Absolute. 144, *a* and *b*.

<sup>3</sup> *and so, itaque*. 237, *a*.

## LESSON V

**Indirect Questions.** 204. B. 300; A. 573, 574; H. 649, II.

**Sequence of Tenses.** 177, a, and 354. B. 267, 268; A. 482-484; H. 543-545.

**Book I, 9, 10.** 1. He does not understand why they are sending envoys. 2. He announced what<sup>1</sup> the Helvetians were planning. 3. They found out why he had enrolled two legions. 4. Did Caesar know whether Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians or not? 5. Caesar knew what<sup>1</sup> was being done by the Helvetians. 6. He does not know whether they obtained their request. 7. Can he find out why they led their legions out from winter quarters? 8. I asked him whether Caesar was passing the winter there, or had gone into Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> *what*, plural.

## LESSON VI

**Subjunctive of Purpose.** 196, a, b, and 193, a, b. B. 282; A. 531; H. 568, 590.

**Constructions of Place.** 119, a, b, and 120, a; 130, a and b; 145, a, b, c; 146. B. 182, 228, 229, 232; A. 426, 427; H. 418, and 4, 419, 1, and 461, 462, 483, 484.

**Book I, 11, 12.** 1. The Aeduans, in order to defend themselves and their possessions, asked help of<sup>1</sup> Caesar. 2. They sent an army to keep off the attack of the enemy. 3. They had nothing left at home. 4. When the Tigurini had gone out from home, they sent Cassius's army under the yoke. 5. He will cross the river in order to be able to judge in which direction it flows. 6. Caesar inflicted a great disaster on this state, with the design of avenging<sup>2</sup> his personal wrongs. 7. He will send envoys to Rome to ask help.

<sup>1</sup> *ask of*, *petō*, with *ab* and Ablative. 116, b.

<sup>2</sup> *with the design of avenging*; in Latin, *with this design that he might avenge*.

## LESSON VII

## REVIEW

**Book I. 13.** Caesar led his army across the Arar, so that he might follow up the forces of the Helvetians. His sudden arrival alarmed them, and they sent envoys to him to make peace, for<sup>1</sup> they could not understand how<sup>2</sup> he had crossed the river so quickly.<sup>3</sup> Divico was the leader of this embassy, and he asked Caesar where he wished the Helvetians to go. He inquired if Caesar remembered the former valor<sup>4</sup> of the Helvetians, and the destruction of the army which had crossed from the Roman Province<sup>5</sup> into their territory.

<sup>1</sup> *for, nam*<sup>2</sup> *how, quem ad modum.*<sup>3</sup> *quickly, celeriter.*<sup>4</sup> *valor; note case after reminiscor in text.*<sup>5</sup> *province, prōvincia.*

## LESSON VIII

**Subjunctive of Result.** 197, *a* and *b*. B. 284; A. 537; H. 570.

**Ablative of Means.** 131, *a*. B. 218; A. 409; H. 476.

**Dative of Possession.** 111. B. 190; A. 373; H. 430.

---

**Book I. 14, 15.** 1. They boasted so insolently that Caesar could not put aside the memory of the injuries. 2. Caesar had less doubt because he remembered what the envoys had mentioned. 3. They will march in such a way that we cannot attack them. 4. By this battle he kept the enemy from foraging. 5. The gods had granted prosperity to them for so long that they were grieved at the change of circumstances. 6. The number of the enemy is so large that they cannot drive them back. 7. He stationed men to see in what direction the enemy were marching.

## LESSON IX

**Indirect Discourse: Simple Declarative Sentences.** 212, *d*; 213, *a* and *b*; 214, *a*; 178. B. 313, 314, 1, 2, and 317; A. 579-582, 584; H. 642, 644.

**Partitive Genitive.** 97, *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*. B. 201, 1, 2; A. 346, *a*, *c*; H. 440, 5, and 441-443.

**Book I. 16, 17.** 1. Caesar said that the grain in the fields was not ripe. 2. He knew that many of their chiefs had been called together to complain about the leadership of the Aeduians. 3. For this reason he thought Caesar would take away liberty from the Gauls.<sup>1</sup> 4. Day after day he declared that the Aeduians were not collecting the grain. 5. They have a large supply of grain, which they can use if Caesar undertakes<sup>2</sup> the war. 6. He said that he thought we knew with how great danger he had reported our plans.

<sup>1</sup> *Gauls*; note case in text.

<sup>2</sup> *undertakes*; what time is referred to?

## LESSON X

## REVIEW

**Book I. 18.** Caesar realized that Liscus referred to Dumnorix, and that these matters had been discussed very freely and boldly; but because Dumnorix was in charge of the cavalry and was utterly reckless,<sup>1</sup> he wished him to favor the Romans. After dismissing<sup>2</sup> the council he asked many questions,<sup>3</sup> and discovered that for several years Dumnorix had been enlarging his private property and had very great power both at home and among the Helvetians. Caesar knew that Dumnorix, by means of this power, could restore himself to his former position of influence, and that he had amassed so much<sup>4</sup> wealth that he entertained hopes of getting the royal power. He learned also that Dumnorix and his horsemen had started the flight of the cavalry a few days before.

<sup>1</sup> *utterly reckless*; in Latin, *of supreme recklessness*.

<sup>2</sup> *after dismissing*; use Ablative Absolute. 144, *a* and *b*.

<sup>3</sup> *questions*; omit, and use neuter adjective as a noun.

<sup>4</sup> *so much*, *tantus*.

## LESSON XI

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**Complex Sentences.** 214, a; 218; 158, a; 354. B. 314, 1 and 318; A. 580, and 585, a; H. 643.

**Prepositions.** 122, a; 124, a; 125, a. B. 141, 142, 143; A. 220, a, b, c; H. 420, 2 and 3, and 490, 2.

---

**Book I. 19, 20.** 1. He knew that everything<sup>1</sup> which was said to him was true. 2. Caesar hoped not to hurt (that he should not hurt) the feelings of Diviciacus, if he should punish his brother. 3. We all know that Procillus was a man in whom<sup>2</sup> he had great confidence. 4. Diviciacus thought that Caesar would punish Dumnorix because he had led an army through the territory of the Sequanians. 5. He will order Diviciacus to be called to him, in order that he may tell him what he knows. 6. Caesar replied that he would tell what had been said in the council.

<sup>1</sup> *everything*; in Latin, *all things*.

<sup>2</sup> *in whom*; use the Dative.

## LESSON XII

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

**Ablative Absolute.** 144, a and b. B. 227; A. 419, 420; H. 480. .

---

**Book I. 21, 22.** 1. Caesar, having sent ahead all his cavalry, ordered Labienus to climb to the summit of the mountain. 2. While our men were seizing this mountain, the Helvetians moved camp. 3. After seizing the mountain, Labienus did not begin battle, but waited for Caesar. 4. Caesar led his forces to the nearest hill, but did not make an attack on the enemy. 5. When they had pitched camp three miles from Caesar's camp, the enemy refrained from battle.



## LESSON XXV

## REVIEW

**Book I. 40 (latter half).** Caesar urged the Roman soldiers not to despair in regard to grain, which was then already ripe in the fields. He told them that they ought not to be disturbed by the narrow roads, and that they were not permitted to dictate to the commander concerning his duties. He desired to know as soon as possible whether the soldiers were going to be <sup>1</sup> obedient to his command or not, and so he ordered them to move camp on the next night. He had the greatest confidence in the tenth legion, and did not <sup>2</sup> doubt that they would follow <sup>3</sup> him, <sup>4</sup> and do what <sup>5</sup> had to be done.

<sup>1</sup> were going to be, etc., 63, and 204, (1).

<sup>2</sup> and . . . not, *neque*.

<sup>3</sup> follow, 201, b.

<sup>4</sup> him, 188, a.

<sup>5</sup> what; in Latin, = *those things which*.

## LESSON XXVI

**Temporal Clauses with *Ubi, Ut, Postquam, Simul atque*.** 188, a. B. 287, 1; A. 543; H. 602.

**Temporal Clauses with *Cum, Cum primum*.** 185, a, b, c. B. 288, 1, and 289; A. 545-547; H. 600, 601.

**Ablative with Certain Deponents.** 131, c. B. 218, 1; A. 410; H. 477.

**Book I. 41, 42.** 1. When Caesar had delivered this speech, the military tribunes thanked him. 2. As soon as Ariovistus learned of Caesar's arrival, he promised many things of his own accord. 3. After getting possession of the horses, he put on them his bravest soldiers. 4. When he saw that Ariovistus wished a conference, he decided not to use the Gallic horsemen. 5. As soon as they came, they said that the enemy's forces were twenty miles away.

## LESSON XXVII

**Temporal Clauses with *Prius quam*.** 189, *a* and *b*. B. 291, 292; A. 551; H. 605.

**Temporal Clauses with *Dum* and *Quoad*.** 190, *a*, *b*, and *c*. B. 298; A. 553-556; H. 603, 604, 1.

**Ablative of Specification.** 142, *a* and *b*. B. 226; A. 418; H. 490.

**Ablative of Cause.** 135, *a* and *b*. B. 219; A. 404; H. 475.

**Book I 43.** 1. Caesar stationed the legion two hundred paces from the mound, before he came to the conference. 2. While he was making war on their allies, a part of the Germans crossed the Rhine. 3. The Aeduians had held the leadership before Ariovistus came into Gaul. 4. They had been able to secure these gifts through his kindness. 5. They did not send back the hostages until<sup>1</sup> he demanded them. 6. They were his allies, and for this reason he made these demands. 7. He waited<sup>2</sup> until they should seek our friendship.

<sup>1</sup> until, *usque*, *b*.

<sup>2</sup> wait, *expecto*.

## LESSON XXVIII

## REVIEW

**Book I 44 (first half).** After Ariovistus was summoned by the Gauls, he crossed the Rhine, and took possession of the settlements which the Gauls had granted him. When they made war upon him, they were routed in one battle, and after being defeated, paid tribute and enjoyed peace. While this was going on, Caesar was marching to attack Ariovistus, and wished to come into Gaul before he<sup>1</sup> should impose tribute on all the states. As soon as he came there, he pitched camp, and waited<sup>2</sup> until Ariovistus should reply to his demands. The latter<sup>3</sup> was ready to fight if Caesar wished to, but Caesar made objections about the tribute, which up to this time had been paid willingly by the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> he, *ille*.

<sup>2</sup> wait, *expecto*.

<sup>3</sup> the latter, here *ille*.

## LESSON XVII

**Ablative of Separation or Source.** 127, a, b, and c. B. 214, 215; A. 400-402, and 403, 1; H. 461-465, 467.

**Ablative of Comparison.** 129, a and b. B. 217; A. 406 and 407, a; H. 471.

**Ablative of Degree of Difference.** 140. B. 223; A. 414; H. 479.

---

**Book I. 31 (first half).** 1. They asked back their hostages from the Sequanians, and sought aid of the Roman people. 2. The Germans are much fiercer than the Gauls,<sup>1</sup> and covet their lands. 3. Diviciacus fled from his state, and came to Rome many years before. 4. The Aeduians are less powerful in Gaul than the Sequanians, being weakened by great disasters. 5. We are working to induce<sup>2</sup> Diviciacus to give his children as hostages to the Germans. 6. About a thousand of the Germans crossed the Rhine, and contended in arms with the Aeduians and their dependents.

<sup>1</sup> *than the Gauls*; express in two ways.

<sup>2</sup> *to induce*, 196, a.

## LESSON XVIII

**Substantive Clauses of Result.** 203. B. 297; A. 568, 569; H. 571.

**Ablative of Manner.** 136, a and b. B. 220; A. 412; H. 473, 3.

**Ablative of Accordance.** 136, c. B. 220, 3; A. 418, a; H. 473, 3.

---

**Book I. 31 (latter half).** 1. The result was that they could not longer endure his cruelty. 2. He will cause a place to be prepared for the Harudes. 3. He saw that the best part of entire Gaul would be occupied by Ariovistus. 4. All these things were done with the greatest injustice. 5. He says that they will not be able to drive the Germans from the Gallic territory. 6. The cruelty of Ariovistus caused them to seek another home. 7. It happened that a larger number of Germans crossed the Rhine.

## LESSON XIX

## REVIEW

**Book I. 32, 33.** The lot of the Sequanians was much more unhappy than (that) of the others, because the cruelty of Ariovistus had caused them to fear him in his absence, and they did not dare to seek aid from Caesar.

Therefore<sup>1</sup> when Caesar asked why they did not do what the others did, it happened that they made no answer,<sup>2</sup> but remained silent. Diviciacus finally told what the reason was. Caesar promised to put an end to the outrages of Ariovistus, and dismissed the council. The Roman Province was separated by the Rhone from the territory of the Sequanians, and Caesar thought it would be dangerous to the Roman people (for) the Germans to cross from their own boundaries into Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> *therefore, itaque.*

<sup>2</sup> *made no answer; in Latin, answered nothing.*

## LESSON XX

**Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, Doubting.** 201, a, b, and c. B. 296, 3, and 298; A. 558; H. 568, 8, and 595, 1, 2, and 596, 2.

**Ablative of Time.** 147, a and b. B. 230, 231; A. 423; H. 486, 487.

**Accusative of Extent.** 118, a. B. 181; A. 423, 425; H. 417.

**Book I. 34, 35.** 1. They could not be restrained from sending envoys to Caesar. 2. In three days he will advance many miles. 3. There was no doubt that these replies had been brought back to Caesar. 4. He talked<sup>1</sup> with him a large part of the day about very important matters. 5. Caesar demanded of him that he prevent a large number from being led across the Rhine. 6. This river was half a mile (five hundred paces) wide.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *talked, agō.*

<sup>2</sup> 36, and 243, a and b.

## LESSON XXXIII

**Exhortations, and Jussive Subjunctive.** 180, *a* and *b*. B. 273-275; A. 439; H. 559, 1, 2.

**Commands and Prohibitions.** 181, *a* and *b*. B. 276, *b*; A. 450; H. 561, 1.

**Wishes.** 180, *c* and *d*. B. 279; A. 441; H. 558.

**Dative of Purpose; Two Datives.** 112, *a* and *b*. B. 191, 1, 2; A. 382; H. 425, 3, and 433.

---

**Book I. 50, 51.** 1. Let us lead out the troops from camp, and draw up our line of battle. 2. Would that we had not given them an opportunity for fighting! 3. Caesar left the auxiliaries as a protection for the smaller camp. 4. O that they would not deliver us into slavery! 5. Do not fight before the new moon, if you wish to conquer. 6. Let him not use the auxiliaries for a show. 7. Would that it were not ordained that the Germans should conquer!

## LESSON XXXIV

**Conditions.** 205-209. B. 301-304, 1; A. 515-517; H. 574-579.

---

**Book I. 52.** 1. If the enemy should suddenly make an attack on our men, they would not be able to hurl their javelins. 2. They would have sent the lieutenant to our assistance, if they had noticed this. 3. If Caesar were in command of the troops, they would not be in difficulty. 4. I shall not begin battle on the left wing, unless I see that that part of the line is the strongest. 5. They said that if they leaped upon the enemy from above, they would put them to flight. 6. Do not throw your javelins against the enemy, unless they make an attack upon you. 7. Had he not put a lieutenant in charge of our men, they would have been routed.

## LESSON XXXV

## REVIEW

**Book I. 53, 54.** When the battle had been renewed, the enemy were put to flight, and fled to the river. A few, who trusted in their strength, swam across. There were some who crossed over in boats which they found, but the rest were put to death by our cavalry. Ariovistus himself would have been killed, if he had not found a skiff fastened to the shore, and sought safety in it.

While he was following the enemy, Caesar fell in with Valerius Procillus, whom the guards were dragging along. Having rescued him, Caesar said: "I should have little pleasure in this victory, if you were now in the hands of the enemy. Would that the other envoys, whom I sent to Ariovistus, had also been restored to me! Let us hope that they may be found and brought back."

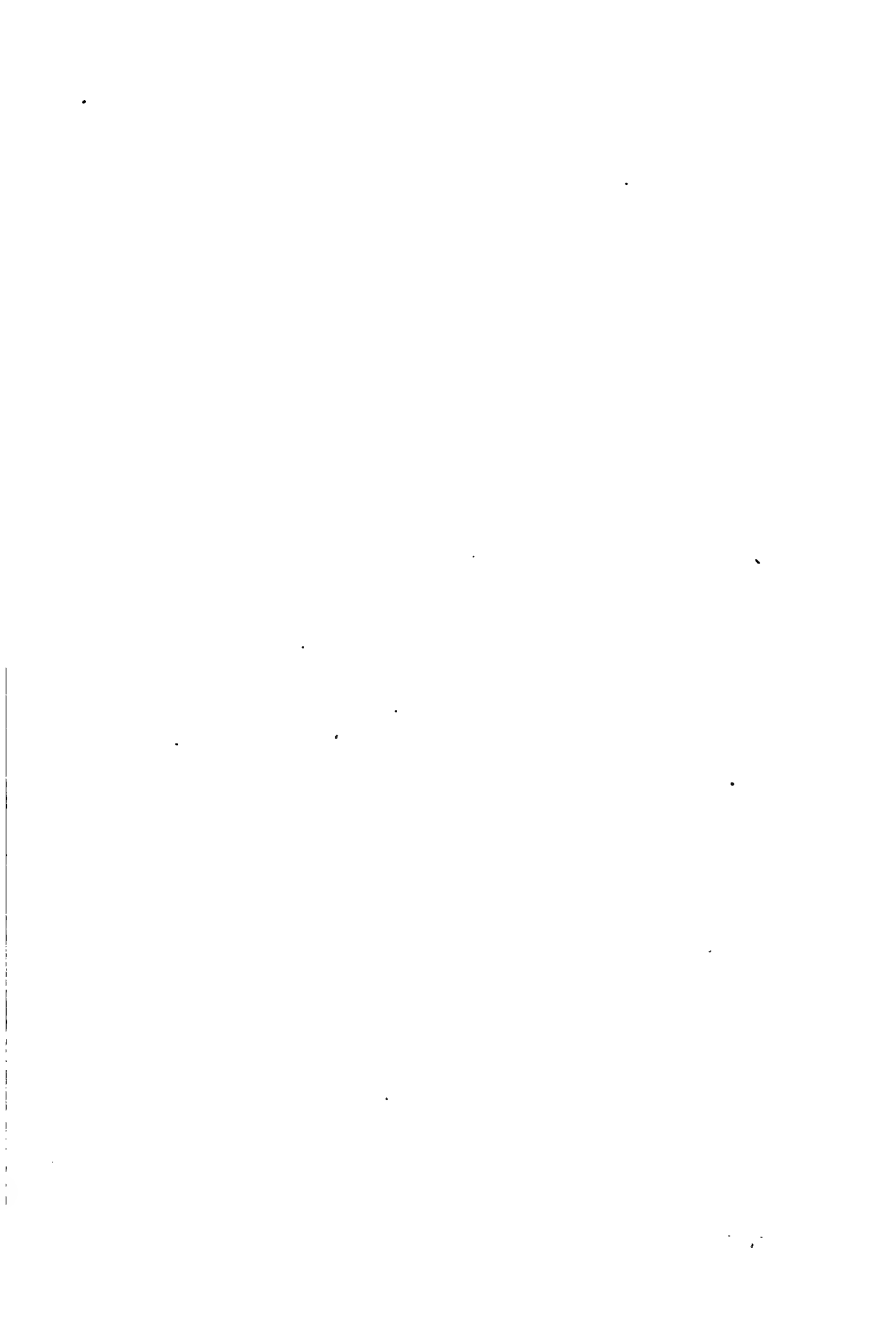
## LESSON XXXVI

## REVIEW

**Causal and Concessive Clauses (Lessons XXIX and XXX).**

---

**Book IV. 27, 28.** As soon as the hostages, whom the enemy sent to Caesar, did what he had ordered, he pardoned them, and begged them not to make war on him without good cause. Although he pardoned their ignorance, he complained because they had thrown Commius the Atrebatian into chains, and had not sent him back. Since part of the hostages which they promised were at a distance, he ordered them to be sent to the continent in a few days. The ships in which the cavalry were carried approached Britain, but could not hold their course because a great storm suddenly came up and carried them back to the continent.



## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS<sup>1</sup>

	PAGE
1. Wolf-holes along Caesar's lines before Alesia, in 52 B.C. L. Gurlitt, <i>Anschauungstafeln zu Caesar</i> , <sup>2</sup> II . . . . .	ix
2. Wolf-holes along the German lines near Ypres, Belgium, in 1914. Photograph, Press Illustrating Company, New York . . . . .	x
3. Roman soldier's trenching tool, spade, found in the remains of the Roman camp at the Saalburg, near Homburg. R. Forrer, <i>Reallexikon der prähistorischen, klassischen und frühchristlichen Altertümer</i> , Taf. 182 . . . . .	xi
4. Trenching tool, spade, supplied with the marching equipment of the U. S. army and navy . . . . .	xii
5. "One-man tank," used "somewhere in France." Photograph . . . . .	xiii
6. Roman soldier in heavy marching order, impeditus. <sup>3</sup> S. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , <sup>2</sup> VI . . . . .	xiv
7. United States sailor in heavy marching-order equipment . . . . .	xv
8. French soldier hurling a hand grenade. Photograph, Underwood and Underwood, New York . . . . .	xvi
9. French bayonet, with scabbard. Type of 1915. Photograph, G. R. S. <sup>4</sup> . . . . .	xvii
10. French helmet, type of 1915. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	xvii
11. Gallic bronze helmets, perhaps of the second century B.C. British Museum. Photograph, kindly furnished by Sir Hercules Read . . . . .	xviii

<sup>1</sup> Stereopticon slides of all illustrations and maps in this book can be supplied to teachers and schools at cost; inquiry should be addressed to the *Latin Department, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.*

<sup>2</sup> The three series of wall plates, L. Gurlitt's *Anschauungstafeln zu Caesar*, S. Cybulski's *Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur*, and Ad. Lehmann's *Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder* (cf. Fig. 117), are imported by G. E. Stechert and Company, New York, and A. J. Nystrom and Company, Chicago.

<sup>3</sup> The designs reproduced in the illustrations from Cybulski's *Tabulae* were prepared by Dr. Martin Fickelscherer. They are based chiefly upon evidence drawn from monuments later than Caesar's time, yet in most respects the designs are correct for the military equipment of Caesar's army.

<sup>4</sup> The photographs designated "G. R. S." were made by Mr. George R. Swain.



	PAGE
12. Roman legionary's helmet, galea. S. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V .	xix
13. Italian barb-wire cutter. Photograph, Medem Photo Service .	xxi
14. Leaden slingshot, inscribed. <i>Ephemeris Epigraphica</i> , vol. 6 (1885), pl. 3, no. 16 . . . . .	xxiii
15. Highlanders holding to stirrups of Scots Greys charging at St. Quentin. From a colored plate, published in 1915. Courtesy of <i>Collier's Weekly</i> . . . . .	xxv
16. Gold coin, ascribed to the Ambarri. H. de la Tour, <i>Atlas de monnaies gauloises</i> (Paris, 1895), pl. 16, no. 5315 . . . . .	xxix
17. Gold coin of the Mediomatrici. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 36, no. 8933 . . . . .	xxix
18. Arvernian gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 12, no. 3775 . . . . .	xxx
19. Altar, of marble, discovered at Nîmes. Espérandieu, <i>Bas-reliefs de la Gaule romaine</i> , vol. 1, no. 431 . . . . .	xxx
20. Bronze coin attributed to the Leuci or Treverans. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 37, no. 9248 . . . . .	xxxi
21. Gold coin of Tasciovanus. J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , pl. 8, no. 11; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 43 . . . . .	xxxi
22. Silver coin of Tasciovanus. J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , pl. 6, no. 6; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 43 . . . . .	xxxii
23. Bronze coin of Cunobelinus. J. Evans, <i>Coins</i> , pl. 12, no. 1; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 44 . . . . .	xxxii
24. Bronze coin of Lugdunum. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 7, no. 4669 . . . . .	xxxii
25. Gold coin, aureus, of Julius Caesar: Pietas and trophy. Engraved from a cast of the original in the British Museum <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	xxxvi
26. Bronze ball believed to contain the ashes of Julius Caesar; on the Vatican obelisk, Rome, before it was moved to the front of St. Peter's, in 1586. From an engraving published by Gamucci, <i>Antichità di Roma</i> (1569) . . . . .	xxxix
27. Modern road in the Jura Mountains. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	3
28. Long summit of the Jura range. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	6
29. Helvetian yoke, of wood, found in 1910. J. Déchelette, <i>Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine</i> , II. 3 (1914), fig. 509 (p. 1194) . . . . .	8
30. Gallic standard-bearer. From a plate of H. Rheinhard . . . . .	12
31. Ancient Gallic mill. G. and A. de Mortillet, <i>Musée préhistorique</i> , 2d edit. (1903), pl. 66, no. 717 . . . . .	14

<sup>1</sup> Casts of Roman coins engraved for this book were kindly furnished by the British Museum, through the courtesy of Mr. G. F. Hill.

	PAGE
32. Mill-race Gorge, Pas de l'Écluse, looking down the Rhone. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	17
33. Roman legionary soldier. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VI . . . . .	19
34. Section of the fortifications along the Rhone. Napoleon III, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 3 . . . . .	22
35. Lake Geneva. Photograph . . . . .	23
36. A road through the Alps. Photograph . . . . .	26
37. The Saône at Trévoux, looking upstream. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	30
38. The Rhone below Geneva. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	33
39. Gallic swords, now in the Museum of St. Germain, near Paris. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	36
40. Gallic spear heads and dart heads, of iron. Déchelette, <i>Manuel</i> , II. 3, fig. 478 (p. 1145) . . . . .	40
41. Mount Beuvray. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	42
42. Silver coin, of Dumnorix. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 15, no. 5026 . . . . .	47
43. Helvetian spear. Déchelette, <i>Manuel</i> , II. 3, fig. 494 (p. 1171) . . . . .	49
44. Lance heads found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	50
45. Typical ridge in France, like that seized by Labienus. Photo- graph, G. R. S. . . . .	54
46. Gallic helmets. Déchelette, <i>Manuel</i> , II. 3, fig. 484 (p. 1156) . . . . .	56
47. Site of the battle with the Helvetians. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	59
48. Gallic shield, of wickerwork. Drawing by R. Suarez after Dé- chelette, <i>Manuel</i> , II. 3, fig. 493 (p. 1169) . . . . .	60
49. Pike iron. Drawing by R. Suarez, from a cast in the collection of the University of Michigan; original in the Museum of St. Germain . . . . .	61
50. Roman pike irons, found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	63
51. Carts about a corral. Drawing by R. Suarez . . . . .	64
52. Care of Roman wounded, relief on the column of Trajan, in Rome. From a plate of H. Rheinhard . . . . .	65
53. Writing tablets. Ancient wall painting. <i>Museo Borbonico</i> , vol. 1, pl. 12 . . . . .	69
54. Helvetian silver coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 38, no. 9355 . . . . .	71
55. Sequanian silver coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 16, no. 5351 . . . . .	73
56. View across the Rhine valley, from the site of Ariovistus's camp. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	76
57. Pottery found at Bibracte, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	83

	PAGE
58. Aeduan gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 15, no. 4837 . . .	86
59. The Doubs (Dubis) below Besançon (Vesontio). Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	89
60. The loop of the Dubis (Doubs) at Vesontio. C. Stoffel, <i>Guerre de César et d'Arioviste</i> , p. 48 . . . . .	91
61. The Doubs River twenty-two miles above Besançon (Vesontio). Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	94
62. Centurion, with his decorations. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VII . . .	96
63. Gold coin of the Leuci. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 37, no. 9018 . .	100
64. Modern canal in the plain of Alsace, near Strassburg. Photo- graph, G. R. S. . . . .	103
65. Hill of Plettig. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	106
66. The Conference between Caesar and Ariovistus. Gurlitt, <i>An- schauungstafeln</i> , III . . . . .	113
67. Ancient German sword with its wooden scabbard. Déchelette, <i>Manuel</i> , II. 3, fig. 469 (p. 1133). . . . .	124
68. Scene in Belgium: the Meuse, below Namur. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	131
69. Bronze coin of the Remi. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 32, no. 8040 . .	132
70. Gold coin of the Bellovaci. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 32, no. 7878 .	135
71. Bronze coin of the Ambiani. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 33, no. 8472 .	137
72. View across the Aisne near where Caesar's camp was. Photo- graph, G. R. S. . . . .	139
73. Slinger, supplied with pebbles. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VI . . . .	142
74. View toward the Miette from the site of Caesar's camp. Photo- graph, G. R. S. . . . .	145
75. View across the Aisne toward Pontavert. Photograph, G. R. S. .	147
76. Leaden slingshot, inscribed. <i>Ephemeris Epigraphica</i> , vol. 6, pl. 8, no. 6 . . . . .	148
77. Bronze coin of the Suessiones. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 41, no. 7704 .	152
78. Hill town in France, having a situation similar to that of Novio- dunum. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	153
79. A Nervian gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 35, no. 8755 . . .	156
80. A characteristic bit of the country through which Caesar made his three-day march. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	157
81. A Viromanduan bronze coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 34, no. 8570 .	158
82. Hedges near the river Sambre. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	161
83. View across the fields in the direction from which Caesar's bag- gage was coming. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	164
84. Roman trumpet, tuba. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	165

	PAGE
85. Roman helmet, with crest. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	168
86. Open ground along the Sambre over which the Nervians advanced; looking toward the site of Caesar's camp, which is now in part covered by woods. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	171
87. Typical hedges near the site of the battle at the Sambre. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	175
88. View on the Sambre, near the site of the battle. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	179
89. Bronze coin of the Atuatuaci. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 36, no. 8885 . . . . .	182
90. Site of the stronghold at Namur. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	183
91. Coin of the Coriosolites. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 22, no. 6654 . . . . .	188
92. The great St. Bernard Pass and the famous hospice. Photograph . . . . .	191
93. Valley of the Dranse. Photograph, Earle M. Parker . . . . .	193
94. View of the Loire River with the town of Decize. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	201
95. A tongue of land on the Venetan coast. Photograph, E. M. P. . . . .	206
96. A denarius struck by Decimus Brutus. Original, British Museum . . . . .	211
97. Venellan gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 24, no. 6925 . . . . .	215
98. Roman cavalryman. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VII . . . . .	220
99. Bronze coin struck by Adiatunnus. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 11, no. 3605 . . . . .	222
100. Gold coin of the Morini. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 35, no. 8704 . . . . .	229
101. A typical landscape on the lower Rhine. Photograph, <i>Neue Photographische Gesellschaft</i> , Berlin . . . . .	233
102. A Treveran gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 35, no. 8799 . . . . .	235
103. Falls of the Rhine at Schaffhausen. Photograph, <i>Neue Photographische Gesellschaft</i> . . . . .	239
104. Along the Meuse below Namur. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	243
105. The slopes of the Rhine valley. Photograph, <i>Neue Photographische Gesellschaft</i> . . . . .	247
106. The Moselle at Beilstein; ruins of the castle at the right. Photograph, <i>Neue Photographische Gesellschaft</i> . . . . .	251
107. Foot of chalk cliffs north of Dover, at low tide. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	261
108. St. Margaret's Bay, between Dover and the open shore to the northeast where Caesar landed. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	267
109. Ancient British shield, of bronze, enameled. <i>British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age</i> (1905), pl. 1 . . . . .	269
110. Cliffs on the English coast, north of Dover. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	273

	PAGE
111. Gold coin of Cunobelinus. J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , pl. 9, no. 3; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 44 . . . . .	277
112. British war chariot. From a plate of H. Rheinhard . . . . .	280
113. Gold coin of the Menapii. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 35, no. 8743 . . . . .	285
114. View across Belgium's fertile fields. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	287
115. British gold coin. J. Evans, <i>Coins</i> , pl. D. 6; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 41 . . . . .	298
116. British bronze helmet, found in the Thames at Waterloo Bridge, London. <i>British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age</i> , fig. 67 . . . . .	298
117. Scene in a Roman camp. Ad. Lehmann, <i>Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder</i> . . . . .	303
118. Gold coin of the Eburones. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 36, no. 8859 . . . . .	314
119. Looking down into a depression in Belgium thought by some to be the valley where the ambushade took place. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	317
120. Statue of Ambiorix, at Tongres. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	322
121. Gold coin of the Atrebatians. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 34, no. 8588 . . . . .	332
122. Bronze coin of the Carnutes. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 38, no. 7064 . . . . .	346
123. Sacred stones called Menhirs. Photograph, Earle M. Parker . . . . .	349
124. Gallic bracelets, of bronze. Déchelette, <i>Manuel</i> , fig. 517 (p. 1220) . . . . .	352
125. Bronze-trimmed burial bucket, imported into Britain from Gaul. <i>British Museum Guide to the Antiquities of the Early Iron Age</i> , fig. 25 . . . . .	353
126. Coin of the Boians, struck east of the Rhine. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 39, no. 9419 . . . . .	357
127. Caribou with one horn. Provincial Museum at Victoria, B. C. Photograph, kindly loaned by Charles Shelden . . . . .	360
128. Horns of a Moose. E. Thompson Seton, <i>Life Histories of Northern Animals</i> , vol. I . . . . .	361
129. Low ground northeast of Bourges, ancient Avaricum. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	373
130. Section of Caesar's works at Avaricum. Napoleon III, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 20 . . . . .	374
131. Vercingetorix viewing the burning of Avaricum. Gurlitt, <i>Anschauungstafeln</i> , IV . . . . .	380
132. Gergovia, slope down toward White Rock. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	383
133. Gold coin of the Parisii. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 31, no. 7816 . . . . .	390
134. Coin of the Senones, bronze. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 30, no. 7467 . . . . .	391

	PAGE
135 The hill of Alesia, seen from the southeast. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	397
136. A Roman soldier cutting timber. Daremberg et Saglio, <i>Dictionnaire des antiquités grecques et romaines</i> , fig. 6277, after an ancient relief . . . . .	402
137. A "goad," stimulus. Daremberg et Saglio, <i>Dictionnaire</i> , fig. 6639 . . . . .	404
138. Barbed hooks found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	404
139. Gold coin of the Aulerci Cenomani. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 23, no. 6829 . . . . .	405
140. Coin of Verica, or Virica, son of Commius. J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , pl. 2, no. 10; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 42 . . . . .	407
141. Alise-Ste-Reine, on the site of Alesia, seen from the south. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	409
142. Statue of Vercingetorix, at Alesia. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	415
143. A characteristic bit of the slope at Alesia. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	417
144. Heads and butts of lances found at Alesia, now in the Museum of St. Germain. Photograph, G. R. S. . . . .	420
145. Denarius with portrait of Vercingetorix. Original coin in the British Museum . . . . .	424
146. Denarius, with a galley: Q. Nasidius. British Museum . . . . .	427
147. Pompey, marble bust in the Jacobsen Museum, Copenhagen. Photograph, kindly furnished by the Director . . . . .	444
148. Cuirass of a legionary soldier. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	447
149. Banner, vexillum. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	449
150. Symbols of Victory. From an ancient relief. <i>Museo Borbonico</i> , vol. 3, pl. 58 . . . . .	461
151. Goddess of Victory bearing a Gallic war trumpet. Relief. Mazois, <i>Les ruines de Pompéi</i> , I, pl. 26 . . . . .	477
152. Ancient Roman calendar, of marble. Naples Museum. <i>Museo Borbonico</i> , vol. 2, pl. 44 . . . . .	584
153. Denarius, Aeneas fleeing from Troy; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	587
154. Roman boy, head of bronze statue in the Metropolitan Museum, New York. Photograph, kindly furnished by Miss Gisela M. A. Richter . . . . .	588
155. Silver coin of Augustus, with civic crown. British Museum . . . . .	590
156. Marble trophy on the Capitoline hill, Rome. Photograph . . . . .	591

	PAGE
157. Denarius with symbols of office of Pontifex Maximus; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	592
158. Denarius with Concordia; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	594
159. Aureus with symbols of victories over the Gauls; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	595
160. Denarius with portrait of Pompey. British Museum . . . . .	596
161. Denarius, commemorating Gallic and Spanish victories; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	599
162. Denarius with portrait of Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	600
163. Denarius with temple of Clementia. British Museum . . . . .	600
164. Denarius with elephant; Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	602
165. Gem with portrait of Caesar. From a photograph kindly furnished by the Imperial German Archaeological Institute in Rome . . . . .	602
166. A case for books. Ancient wall painting. <i>Museo Borbonico</i> , vol. 1, pl. 12 . . . . .	603
167. Denarius commemorating the assassination of Caesar. British Museum . . . . .	605
168. Denarius, Gallia conquered, personified. British Museum . . . . .	608
169. Silver coin of Massilia. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 3, no 791 . . . . .	611
170. Early British silver coin. J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , pl. E, no. 1; De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 41 . . . . .	611
171. Africa, personified. Silver plate in the Louvre. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, <i>Pompeii: Its Life and Art</i> , 2d edit., fig. 187 . . . . .	614
172. Light-armed soldier in the Roman army. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VI . . . . .	617
173. Soldier's shoe. H. Lindenschmit, <i>Tracht und Bewaffnung des roemischen Heeres</i> , Taf. 10 . . . . .	621
174. Legionary's helmet, galea, without the crest. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	622
175. Roman oblong shield, scutum. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	622
176. Roman pike, restored. Vjesnik, vol. 12 (1912), p. 93 . . . . .	623
177. Spanish sword, gladius, in scabbard, vagina. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	623
178. Roman dagger, pugio. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	624
179. Cavalryman's helmet, cassis. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	624
180. Denarius, with standards. British Museum . . . . .	625
181. Horn, cornu. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , V . . . . .	626
182. Modern shell trumpet with iron mouthpiece. From Boscoreale, near Pompeii. Collection of the University of Michigan . . . . .	626

	PAGE
183. Scout, speculator. Daremberg et Saglio, <i>Dictionnaire</i> , fig. 5790, after an ancient relief . . . . .	627
184. Roman trenching tool, spade, found in the remains of the Ro- man camp at the Saalburg. Forrer, <i>Reallexikon</i> , Taf. 182 . . . . .	628
185. View of a Roman camp. Gurlitt, <i>Anschauungstafeln</i> , 1 . . . . .	629
186. Acies triplex. E. Kalinka, <i>Das roemische Kriegswesen in</i> <i>Cäsars gallischen Kämpfen</i> (1906), fig. 27 . . . . .	631
187. Roman standard-bearer. Cybulski, <i>Tabulae</i> , VII . . . . .	632
188. Wall hook, falx muralis, found in the remains of a Gallic wall at Besançon (Vesontio). Daremberg et Saglio, <i>Diction-</i> <i>naire</i> , fig. 2873 . . . . .	634
189. Head of a catapult, restored. Museum of St. Germain. Pho- tograph, kindly furnished by M. S. Reinach . . . . .	635
190. Gallic sword and scabbard, found at Alesia; the handle has rusted away. <i>Revue archéologique</i> , vol. 10 (1864), pl. 22 . . . . .	638
191. Roman inkstand, reed pen, and book. Ancient wall painting. <i>Museo Borbonico</i> , vol. 1, pl. 12 . . . . .	639
	VOCABULARY PAGE
192. Silver coin of the Allobroges. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 7, no. 2879 . . . . .	9
193. Gold coin of the Ambiani. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 33, no. 8380 . . . . .	9
194. Arvernian gold coin. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 11, no. 3614 . . . . .	13
195. Electrum coin of the Bituriges. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 13, no. 4072 . . . . .	16
196. Silver coin of the Boians, struck in northern Italy. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 51, no. 9910 . . . . .	16
197. Bronze coin of the Carnutes. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 20, no. 6391 . . . . .	18
198. Fortuna, marble statue in Rome. Photograph . . . . .	49
199. Silver coin, "Three Gauls." De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 7, no. 4798 . . . . .	50
200. Bust of Jupiter, discovered at Pompeii. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, <i>Pompeii: Its Life and Art</i> , 2d edit., fig. 22 . . . . .	64
201. Bronze coin of the Lexovii. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 28, no. 7156 . . . . .	66
202. Ancient transport. Relief at Pompeii. Photograph . . . . .	74
203. Roman document, with seals, restored. A. Mau and F. W. Kelsey, <i>Pompeii: Its Life and Art</i> , 2d edit., fig. 275 . . . . .	78
204. Gold coin of the Parisii. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 31, no. 7782 . . . . .	82
205. Silver coin of the Pictones. De la Tour, <i>Atlas</i> , pl. 13, no. 4446 . . . . .	87



*missis equis, with their horses at top speed, lit. let go* (C. II. 34).  
[admit.

**admodum**, [ad + acc. of *modus*], adv., lit. *up to the measure; quite, very; with numbers, fully, at least*.  
**admoneō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, [ad + moneō], 2, *warn*. [admonish.  
**admonitus**, -ūs, [admoneō], m., *suggestion, advice*. C. III. 92.

**adnō**, -nāre, [ad + nō, *swim*], 1, *swim to*. C. II. 44.

**adolēscō**, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultus, [ad + olēscō, *grow*], 3, *grow up, reach maturity*. vi. 18. [adolescent.

**adorior**, -oriri, -ortus, [ad + orior], 4, dep., *fall upon, attack, assail*.

**adortus**, pf. part. of *adorior*, *having attacked, attacking*.

**adsum**, -esse, *afful*, [ad + sum], irr., *be at hand, be present; assist, help* (vii. 62).

**adolēscēns**, -entis, [adolēscō], adj., *young*. As noun, m., *young man, youth*.

**adolēscēntia**, -ae, [adolēscēns], f., *youth*. i. 20; C. II. 38. [adolescence.

**adolēscēntulus**, -i, [dim. of *adolēscēns*], m., *very young man, strippling*. iii. 21.

**adventus**, -ūs, [adveniō], m., *coming, approach, arrival*. [advent.

**adversarius**, -a, -um, [adversor], adj., *opposed*. As noun, *adversarius*, -i, m., *opponent, enemy*. [adversary.

**adversus**, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [part. of *advertō*], adj., *turned towards, fronting, in front, facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse, unsuccessful*. *adversō flumine, up the stream* (vii. 60). *in adversum ōs, full in the face* (v. 35). *rēs adversae, misfortune, disasters* (vii. 30). [adverse.

**adversus**, [advertō], prep. with acc. only, *opposite to; against* (iv. 14).

**advertō**, -tere, -ti, -sus, [ad + vertō], 3, *turn to, direct*. **animum advertō**, *notice, observe*. [advert.

**advocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + vocō], 1, *call*. vii. 52. [advocate.  
**advolō**, -āre, -āvi, [ad + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly to; hasten to, rush upon*.

**aedificium**, -i, [aedificō], n., *building*. [edifice.

**aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aedēs, *building*, + FAC, in *faciō*], 1, *build, construct*.

**Aedui**, -a, -um, adj., *Aeduan*. As noun, **Aedui**, -i, m., *an Aeduan*; pl., *Aeduians, the Aedui*, (ed'ū-i or ej' u-i), a Gallic people, between the upper waters of the Sequana (Seine) and the Liger (Loire), in alliance with the Romans before Caesar's arrival in Gaul and prominent throughout the Gallic War.

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick*. As noun, **aegri**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the sick* (v. 40, C. III. 75).

**aegerrimō**, see *aegri*.

**aegrō**, comp. *aegrius*, sup. *aegerrimō*, [aeger], adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly*. *aegerrimō, with the greatest difficulty* (i. 13).

**Aegyptus**, -i, [Αἴγυπτος], f., *Egypt*. C. III. 104.

**Aemilius**, -i, m., *Lucius Aemilius* (ē-mil' i-ūs), a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry. i. 23.

**aequaliter**, [aequalis, *equal*], adv., *evenly, uniformly*. ii. 18.

**aequinoctium**, -i, [aequus + nox], n., *equinox*. iv. 36; v. 23. [equinox.

**aequitās**, -tātis, [aequus], f., *evenness; justness, fairness*. **animi aequitās**, *contentment* (vi. 22). [equity.

**aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aequus], 1, *equalize, make equal*. [equate.

**aequus**, -a, -um, comp. **aequalor**, sup. **aequissimus**, adj., *level, even, flat; fair, just, equitable; like, equal; favorable, advantageous*. **aequō animō**, with tranquil mind, without anxiety.

**aerāria**, -ae, [**aerārius**, of copper], f., copper mine. iii. 21.

**aerārium**, -ī, [**aerārius**, of copper], n., the public treasury in Rome, the treasury. C. i. 6.

**aerātus**, -a, -um, [**aes**, through \***aerō**, -āre], adj., sheathed with copper or bronze. C. ii. 3.

**aes**, **aeris**, n., copper; bronze, an alloy of copper and tin; money. **aes allōnum**, (lit., another's money), debt (vi. 13).

**aestās**, -tātis, f., warm season, summer.

**aestimātiō**, -ōnis, [**aestimō**], f., valuation, appraisal. [estimation.

**aestimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**aes**], i, value, appraise, estimate; regard, consider. [estimate.

**aestivus**, -a, -um, [**aestās**], adj., of summer.

**aestuārium**, -ī, [**aestus**], n., place overflowed at high tide, (salt) marsh. ii. 28; iii. 9. [estuary.

**aestus**, -ūs, m., heat; tide.

**aetās**, -tātis, f., age, time of life; old age. **aetate cōfectus**, advanced in years. **puerilis aetās**, age of childhood. **per aetatem**, by reason of age.

**aeternus**, -a, -um, [for \***aeviter** -nus, from **aevum**], adj., everlasting, perpetual. vii. 77. [eternal.

**Aetōlia**, -ae, [**Αἰτωλία**], f., (ē-tō'li-ā), a province of Greece, south of Epirus. C. iii. 61.

**afferō**, -ferre, **attull**, **allātus**, [**ad** + **ferō**], irr., bring, convey, deliver; bring forward, allege; produce, cause, occasion. [afferent.

**afficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [**ad** + **faciō**], 3, do something to, treat, use; visit with, afflict, trouble, weaken, impair; treat with kindness, place under obligation (i. 35; vii. 37); visit with punishment (i. 27); fill with joy (v. 48). [affect.

**affigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [**ad** + **figō**], 3, fasten to. iii. 14. [affix.

**affingō**, -ingere, -finxi, -fictus, [**ad** + **figō**], 3, fashion; of a report, embellish (vii. 1).

**affinitās**, -tātis, [**affinis**, from **ad** + **finis**], f., relationship by marriage, kinship, connection. [affinity.

**affirmātiō**, -ōnis, [**affirmō**], f., assurance. vii. 30. [affirmation.

**affixus**, see **affigō**.

**afflictō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of **affligō**], 1, shatter, damage (iv. 29); strand, wreck (iii. 12).

**affligō**, -ligere, -fixī, -fictus, [**ad** + **figō**, strike], 3, dash against; throw down, knock down; shatter, damage. [afflict.

**affore** (= **affutūrus esse**), future infinitive of **aedum**.

**Āfrānius**, -ī, m., Lucius Afranius, (ā-frā' nī-ūs), a lieutenant of Pompey defeated by Caesar in Spain in 49 B.C. C. iii. 83, 88.

**Āfrica**, -ae, f., (af' rī-kā), the Roman province of Africa. C. ii. 37.

**Āfricus**, -a, -um, [**Āfrica**], adj., of Africa. As noun, **Āfricus**, -ī, m. (originally sc. **ventus**), southwest wind (v. 8).

**āfuisse**, **āfutūrus**, see **absum**.

**Agedincum**, -ī, n., (aj-ē-ding' kum), chief city of the Senones, now Sens.

**ager**, **agri**, m., land under cultivation, field, territory, domain; pl. lands, territory, country, the country.

**agger**, -geris, [**aggerō**, **ad** + **gerō**], m., that which is brought to a place, material for an embankment, filling

of earth and timber; *earth; embankment, mound, dike; rampart. aggerem extruere, to build a rampart* (vii. 72). *multo aggere, with much earth* (vii. 23).

**aggre- di
or**, -gre- di
, -gressus, [ad + gradior, walk, go], 3, dep., *approach; go against, attack, fall upon. [aggressive.*

**aggre- di
o**, -gre, -gre, -atus, [ad + gregō, from grex, flock], 1, *bring together, join. eo aggregare, to place one's self with* (iv. 26), *to join one's self to* (vi. 12). [aggre-gate.

**aggre- di
o**, -gre, -gre, -atus, [freq. of agō], 1, *drive onward, impel; stir up, discuss* (vii. 2). [agitate.

**agmen**, -minis, [agō], n., *army on the march, marching column; line of march. agmen claudere, to bring up the rear* (i. 25, ii. 19). *novissimum agmen, the rear. primum agmen, the van. in agmine, on the march* (iii. 24, vii. 66).

**aggre- di
o**, -gre, aggre- di
o, [ad + gno- di
o], 3, *recognize. C. ii. 6.*

**aggre- di
o**, agere, gre, actus, 3, *set in motion, drive, move forward; direct, conduct, guide; incite, urge; press forward, chase, pursue; drive off as plunder, rob; do, act, transact, perform; manage, carry on, accomplish; treat, discuss, confer, plead with; of time, spend, pass, live; of court, hold; of sheds and towers, bring up. gratias agere, to thank. [act.*

**alacer**, -cris, -cre, comp. **alacrior**, adj., *lively; eager, in high spirits.*

**alacritas**, -tatis, [alacer], f., *liveliness; enthusiasm. [alacrity.*

**alarius**, -a, -um, [ala, wing], adj., *of the wing. As noun, alarii, -orum, m., pl., auxiliary troops posted on the wings, wing-men.*

**Albici**, -orum, m., pl, (al' bi-si), a

small warlike people living north of Massilia. C. ii. 6.

**albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white. plum-bum album, tin* (v. 12). [album. **alces**, -is, f., *moose, European elk. vi. 27.*

**Alesia**, -ae, f., (a-lē' sh[y]a or a-lē' zh [y]a), chief city of the Mandubians, now *Alise-Sainte-Reine. vii. 68-90.*

**Alexandria**, -ae, [Ἀλεξάνδρεια], f., (al-eg-zan' dri-a), capital of Egypt. C. iii. 103, 104.

**ali**-, the form of **allus** in composition.

**alias**, [allus], adv., *at another time. alias . . . alias, at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now. [alias.*

**alieno**, -gre, -gre, -atus, [alienus], 1, *alienate, estrange. alienata mente, deprived of reason* (vi. 41) [alienate.

**alienus**, -a, -um, [allus], adj., *belonging to another, another's; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable, disadvantageous. As noun, alienissimi, -orum, sup., m., pl., entire strangers* (vi. 31). [alien.

**alio**, [allus], adv., *to another place, elsewhere. vi. 22.*

**aliquando**, [aliqui, diu], adv., *for some time, for a while.*

**aliquando**, [ali- + quando], adv., *at some time or other, sometime; at length* (vii. 27, 77).

**aliquantus**, -a, -um, [ali- + quantus], adj., *some, considerable. Neut., aliquantum, as noun, a little, somewhat. aliquantum itineris, some distance* (v. 10).

**aliqui**, aliqua, aliquod, [ali- + qui], indefinite pronominal adj., *some, any, some other.*

**aliquis** (rarely aliqui), aliqua, aliquid, nom. and acc. pl., n., aliqua, [ali- + quis], indefinite pron., *some one, any one, anybody; pl., some, any*

Neut., *aliquid*, something, somewhat, anything. *aliquid calamitātis*, some disaster (v. 29).

**aliquot** [ali- + quot], num. adj., indecl., some, several.

**alter**, [alis, alius], adv., otherwise, differently. *alter ac*, otherwise than, different from what.

**alius**, -a, -ud, dat. *alii*, adj., another, some other, other, different, else, *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another, the one . . . the other; pl., *alii* . . . *alii*, some . . . other; often as noun, *alii*, another, *alii*, others. *longē alius atque*, very different from.

**allātus**, see *afferō*.

**alliciō**, -licere, -lexi, [ad + la-ciō entice], 3, attract, allure.



Figure 192. — Coin of the Allobroges.

Silver. Reverse, horned animal galloping; underneath, a wheel.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, (acc. *Allobrogas*, i. 14, vii. 64), m., pl., (a-lob' rō-jēs), a Gallic people in the north-eastern part of the Province. Acc. sing., *Allobrogem*, an *Allobrogian* (C. iii. 84). Fig. 192.

**alō**, *alere*, *alui*, *altus*, 3, nourish, increase; maintain, keep; rear, foster, raise.

**Alpēs**, -ium, 3, f., pl., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany.

**alter**, -era, -erum, gen. *alterius* or *alterius*, adj., often with the force of a noun, one of two, the other, another; second. *alter . . . alter*,

the one . . . the other. *alteri . . . alteri*, the one division, the one party . . . the other. [alter.

**alternus**, -a, -um, [alter], adj., in turn, alternate. vii. 23. [alternate. *alteruter*, -tra, -trum, pronominal adj., either of two. C. iii. 90.

**altitūdō**, -inis, [altus], f., height, depth; of a beam, thickness (iii. 13). [altitude.

**altus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of alō], adj., high, deep. As noun, *altum*, -i, n., the deep, the open sea.

**alūta**, -ae, f., soft leather. iii. 13.

**am-**, see *ambi-*.

**ambactus**, -i, m., vassal, dependant. vi. 15.

**Ambarri**, -ōrum, m., pl., (am-bar' ri), a people east of the Arar (*Saône*), near its junction with the Rhone. i. 11, 14.

**ambi**, *amb*, *am*-, *an*-, prep. found only in composition, round about, around.

**Ambiani**, -ōrum, m., pl., (am-bi-ā'ni), a small state in Belgic Gaul. Fig. 193.



Figure 193. — Coin of the Ambiani.

Gold. Crude imitation of a Greek coin with a head of Hercules and a four-horse chariot. Underneath the chariot, imitation of the Greek name, "Of Philip."

**Ambibarii**, -ōrum, m., pl. (am-bi-bā' ri-i), a small state on the northwest coast of Gaul. vii. 75.

**Ambiliati**, -ōrum, m., pl., (am'bi-li' a-ti), a small state in Central Gaul. iii. 9.

**Ambiorix**, -igis, m., (am-bi' q-rjks), a leader of the Eburones, who destroyed the Roman force under Sabinus and Cotta, and inspired the attack on Cicero's camp.

**Ambivareti**, -ōrum, m., pl., (am-bi-var' ē-tī), a people in Central Gaul, clients of the Aeduians.

**Ambivariti**, -ōrum, m., pl. (am-bi-var' i-tī), a small state in Belgic Gaul. IV. 9.

**ambō**, -ae, -ō, [cf. ambī-], adj., often used as noun, *both*. v. 44, C. II. 6.

**amentia**, -ae, [āmēns, from ā + mēns], f., *madness, folly*.

**amentum**, -i, n., *thong, strap*, for hurling a dart. v. 48.

**amicitia**, -ae, [amicus], f., *friendship*; of a state, *friendship, alliance*.

**amicus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [amō], adj., *friendly, faithful, well-disposed*. [amicable.

**amicus**, -i, [amō], m., *friend, ally*.

**amittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ā + mittō], 3, *send away; let go, let slip, lose*.

**amor**, -ōris, [amō], m., *affection, love*.

**amplificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [amplus + faciō], 1, *make large, increase, extend*. [amplify.

**amplitūdō**, -inis, [amplus], f., *breadth, size; greatness, dignity*. [amplitude.

**amplius**, [comp. of amplē, from amplus], sup. **amplissimē**, adv., *more, further*.

**amplus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *large in extent, great, extensive; distinguished, splendid, noble, prominent*. As noun, **amplius**, comp., n., *more*. **amplius obsidum**, *more hostages* (vi. 9). [ample.

**an**, inter. conj., *or, or rather, or indeed*. -ne . . . **an**, or **utrum** . . . **an**, *whether . . . or*.

**an**, see **ambi**.

**Anartōs**, -ium, m., pl., (an-ār' tēz), a tribe on the Tibiscus (*Theiss*), in Dacia (*Hungary*).

**Anacalitōs**, -um, m., pl., (an-cal' i-tēz), a British tribe. v. 21.

**anceps**, -cipitis, [an- + CAP in caput], adj., *two-headed, twofold, double*. **anceps proelium**, *battle on two fronts*.

**ancora**, -ae, [ἀγκυρα], f., *anchor*. in **ancoris**, *at anchor*. [anchor.

**Andecumborius**, -i, m., (an' d- cōm-bō' ri-ūs), a leader among the Remi.

**Andēs**, -ium, or **Andī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (an' dēz, or an' dī), a Gallic people north of the Liger (*Loire*).

**anfractus**, -ūs, [an-, cf. frangō], m., *curve in a path or road, bend, turn*. vii. 46.

**angulus**, -i, m., *corner*. v. 13. [angle.

**angustō**, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [angustus], adv., *closely, in close quarters; scantily, sparingly*.

**angustiae**, -arum, [angustus], f., pl., *narrow place, narrow part, defile, narrowness; straits, difficulties, perplexity; scarcity*.

**angustus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. angō, squeeze], adj., *contracted, narrow, close*. Neut. as noun, **angustum**, -i, *crisis* (ii. 25).

**anima**, -ae, f., *breath; soul, life* (vi. 14). [animate.

**animadvertō**, -ōnis, [animad-vertō], f., *consideration; punishment* (C. III. 60). [animadversion.

**animadvertō**, -tere, -ti, -sus, [animus + advertō], 3, *turn the mind to, attend to; notice, observe, perceive*. in eum **animadvertō**, *inflict punishment upon him, as we say "attend to him."* I. 19. [animadvert.

**animal**, -ālis, [anima], n., *living being, animal*. vi. 17, 19. [animal.

**animus**, -i, m., *soul, mind, consciousness; disposition, feelings; courage, spirit, temper, resolution*. *esse in animō*, to intend. [animus

**annōtinus**, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *of the year before, last year's*. v. 8.

**annus**, -i, m., *year*. [annual.

**annuus**, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *of a year, yearly, annual*. i. 16. [annuity.

**anser**, -eris, m., *goose*. v. 12.

**ante**, adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *in front; before, previously*. *ante quam*, before. *paulō ante*, a little while before, a short time previously. *paulis ante diēbus*, a few days before.

(2) As prep. with acc., *before, in front of, in advance of*.

**antēā**, [ante + eā], adv., *previously, before, formerly*.

**antecēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, [ante + cēdō], 3, *go in advance, outstrip; anticipate* (C. III. 6); *surpass, excel*. [antecedent.

**antecursor**, -ōris, [antecurrō], m., lit., *fore-runner*; pl., *advance guard, vanguard* (v. 47).

**anteferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ante + ferō], irr., *carry in front; place before, prefer* (v. 44).

**antemna**, -ae, f., *sail-yard*. [antennae.

**antepōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [ante + pōnō], 3, *place before; prefer, value above* (iv. 22).

**antesignānus**, -i, [ante signum], m., *one in front of a standard*; pl., *antesignāni*, -ōrum, *soldiers before the standards* (C. III. 84).

**antevertō**, -tere, -tli, [ante + vertō], 3, *place before, take precedence*.

**antiquitus** [antiquus], adv., *in former times, long ago, anciently*.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ante], adj., *old, former, old-time, ancient*. [antique.

**Antistius**, -i, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus* (an-tis' tī-ŭs rē jī' nŭs), a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Antōnius**, -i, m., *Marcus Antonius*, (mār' kŭs an-to' nī-ŭs), *Mark Antony* (born 83, died 30 B.C.), a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul in 52 and 51 B.C., and afterwards in the Civil War; member of the Second Triumvirate, and rival of Octavianus. vii. 81; C. III. 89.

**aperiō**, -perire, -periui, -pertus, 4, *open, uncover*. vii. 22. [aperient.

**apertō**, -lus, -lissimē, [apertus], adv., *openly, clearly, manifestly*.

**apertus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of aperiō], adj., *open, uncovered; exposed, unprotected*. *loca aperta*, open country. *latus apertum*, open flank, exposed flank.

**Apollō**, -inis, m., (ā-pol' ō), a divinity worshiped by the Greeks and Romans, identified by Caesar with a Gallic deity. vi. 17.

**Apollōnia**, -ae, [Ἀπολλωνία], f., (ap-o-lō' nī-ā), a city in the Roman province of Macedonia, near the Adriatic Sea, about fifty miles south of Dyrrachium. C. III. 75.

**apparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get ready*. [apparatus.

**appellō**, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsus, [ad + pellō], 3, *drive to, bring in; of ships, make for, put in, land*.

**appellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ī, *address, accost, call to, appeal to; call by name, name*. [appellate.

**appetō**, -petere, -petivi, or -li, -petitus, [ad + petō], 3, *strive after, seek; approach, draw near*. [appetite.

**Appius**, -i, m., (ap' i-ŭs), a Roman first name.

**applicō**, -plicāre, -plicāvi or -plicui, -plicātus, [ad + plicō], *fold, join*.  
**sē applicāre** ad, *to lean against* (vi. 27). [applicant.]

**apportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + portō], *I, carry to, bring*. v. 1.

**approbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + probō], *I, approve, favor*. [approve.]

**appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum est, [ad + propinquō], *I, approach, come near, draw near*.

**appulsus**, see **appellō**.

**Apr.**, = **Aprilis**. i. 6.

**Aprilis**, -e, adj., of *April*.

**aptus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *fitted, adapted, suited; suitable, appropriate, ready*. [apt.]

**apud**, prep. with acc. only, *at, with, near, close to, by; among, in the presence of*.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water*. [aqueous.]

**aquatiō**, -ōnis, [aquor], f., *obtaining water*. iv. 11.

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle*; as an eagle of silver or gold on the end of a pole formed the chief ensign of the legion, *eagle, standard*. [aquiline.]

**Aquileia**, -ae, f., (ak-wi-lē' yā), a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. i. 10.

**aquilifer**, -eri, [aquila + ferō], m., *bearer of the eagle, eagle-bearer*.

**Aquitania**, -ae, f., (ak-wi-tā' ni-ā), one of the three main divisions of Gaul.

**Aquitānus**, -a, -um, adj., of *Aquitania*. As noun, **Aquitānus**, -i, m., *Aquitanian* (iv. 12); pl., *Aquitanians, Aquitani*, (ak-wi-tā' nī), inhabitants of Aquitania. i. 1; iii. 21.

**aquor**, -āri, -ātus, [aqua], *I, dep., obtain water, get water*. C. III. 97.

**Arar**, -aris, acc. -im, m., *Arar* (ā' rar) River, now *Saône* (sōn). It rises in

the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone.

**arbiter**, -tri, m., *witness; referee, commissioner* (v. 1). [arbiter.]

**arbitrium**, -i, [arbiter], n., *decision, arbitrament; authority*.

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus, [arbiter], *I, dep., think, consider, believe*. [arbitrate.]

**arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*. [arbor-vitae.]

**arcessō**, -sere, -sivi, -situs, *3, cause to come, fetch; send for, summon, call in, invite*.

**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārāi, ārsūrus, *2, be on fire; be ablaze, be aroused; be eager, desire ardently*. [ardent.]

**Arduenna**, -ae, f., (ār-dū-en' nā), the *Ardennes*, a forest-covered range of hills in the northeastern part of France, extending also into Belgium.

**ardua**, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high; hard, difficult*. [arduous.]

**Arecomiō**, -ōrum, m., pl., (ar-ē-kom' i-sī), a division of the Volcae, in the Province.

**Arelās**, -ētis, f., (ār' ē-lās), a town in Southern Gaul, on the Rhone, north of Massilia; now *Arles*. C. II. 5.

**Aremoricus**, -a, -um, [Celtic, a rē = ad, + mori, = mare, 'by the sea'], adj., *Aremoric*, name applied to a group of small states along the northwest coast of Gaul (*Aremoricæ civitatēs*).

**argentum**, -i, n., *silver* (vi. 28); *silver-ware* (vii. 47; C. III. 96). [argent.]

**argilla**, -ae, f., *clay*. v. 43. [argillaceous.]

**āridus**, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [ārdeō, *be dry*], adj., *dry*. As noun, **āridum**, -i, n., *dry land, shore*. [arid.]

**ariēs**, -letis, m., *ram; battering-ram; prop, buttress* (iv. 17). [Aries.]

**Ariminum**, -i, n., (ā-rim' i-nūm), a town in Italy on the Adriatic, the

northernmost city in Italy proper; now *Rimini*. C. 1. 8.

**Ariovistus**, -I, m., (ā' rj-ō-vis' tūs), a German king, defeated by Caesar, 58 B.C.

**Aristius**, -I, m., *Marcus Aristius*, (ā-ris' tī-yūs), a military tribune. vii. 42, 43.

**arma**, -ōrum, n., pl., *implements; implements of war, arms, armor, weapons; of a ship, equipment, tackle* (iii. 14). *ad arma concurrere*, to rush to arms. [arms.]

**armāmenta**, -ōrum, [armō], n., pl., *implements; equipment; of a ship, rigging*. [armament.]

**armātūra**, -ae, [armō], f., *armor, equipment*. *levis armātūrae peditēs*, light infantry. *levis armātūrae Numidae*, light-armed Numidians (ii. 10). [armature.]

**armātus**, -a, -um, sup. *armātissimus*, [part. of armō], adj., *armed, in arms, equipped*. As noun, *armātī*, -ōrum, m., pl., *armed men, warriors, soldiers*.

**armō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [arma], 1, *provide with weapons, arm; of a ship, equip, fit out*. [arm.]

**Arpineius**, -I, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, (ār-pī- nē' yūs), a Roman knight, envoy of Caesar to Ambiorix. v. 27, 28.

**arripō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [ad + rapiō], 3, *lay hold of, snatch*. v. 33.

**arroganter**, comp. -ius, [arrogāns], adv., *presumptuously, arrogantly*.

**arrogantia**, -ae, [arrogāns], f., *presumption, insolence*. [arrogance.]

**ars**, artis, f., *skill; art, science* (vi. 17). [art.]

**artē**, comp. *artius*, sup. *artissimē*, [artus], adv., *closely, tightly*.

**articulus**, -I, [dim. of *artus*, joint], m., *joint, knuckle*. vi. 27. [article.]

**artificium**, -I, [artifex, artis], n., *an art, trade; skill; craft, cunning*. [artifice.]

**artus**, -a, um, comp. -lor, sup. *artissimus*, adj., *close; of woods, dense* (vii. 18).

**Arvernus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni, Arvernian*. As noun, *Arverni*, -ōrum, m., pl., *Arvernians, the Averni*, (ār-vēr' nī), a powerful people about the upper part of the Elaver (*Allier*); their chief city, Gergovia, was unsuccessfully besieged by Caesar. Fig. 194.



Figure 194. — Arvernian coin.

Gold. Obverse, Apollo. Reverse, two-horse chariot, copied from a coin of Philip, father of Alexander the Great; Greek name, "Of Philip," misspelled.

**arx**, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold*.

**ascendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [ad + scandō, climb], 3, *ascend, climb up; mount*. [ascend.]

**ascēnsus**, -ūs, [ascendō], m., *ascent, climbing; approach*.

**asciscō**, -asciscere, -ascivi, -ascitus, [ad + sciscō, approve], 3, *admit to association with one's self, accept*.

**Asia**, -ae, ['Aṣia], f., the Roman province *Asia*, (ā' sh[y]ā, or ā' zh[y]ā), including Phrygia, Lydia, Caria, and Mysia in Asia Minor. C. III. 53.

**aspectus**, -ūs, [aspiciō, look at], m., *appearance, sight, look*. [aspect.]

**asper**, -era, -erum, comp. -lor, sup. -rimus, adj., *rough, uneven; fierce, violent* (v. 45).



**assiduus**, -a, -um, [ad + SED, SID, in sedeō, sit], adj., *continuous, constant, incessant*. [assiduus.]

**assistō**, -ere, astitī, [ad + sistō], 3, *stand near, stand by; appear* (vi. 18). [assist.]

**assuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [assuētus + faciō], 3, *accustom, habituate, familiarize, train*.

**assuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [ad + suēscō, become accustomed], 3, *become accustomed to*. **assuēscere ad hominē**, to become domesticated (vi. 28).

**at**, conj., *but, yet, but yet, at least*.

**atque**, ac, [ad + -que], conj. :

(1) Copulative, *and, and also, and even, and in particular*.

(2) Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than*. **idem atque, par atque**, the same as.

**Atrebās**, -ās, m., *an Atrebatian; pl., Atrebatians, the Atrebatians*, (at-ṛē-bā' tēz), a Belgic people.

**Ātrius**, -ī, m., *Quintus Atrius* (ā'tri-ŷ), an officer in Caesar's army. v. 9, 10.

**attenuō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + tenuō from tenuis], 1, *make thin; weaken, reduce in strength* (C. III. 89). [attenuate.]

**attexō**, -ere, -texui, attextus, [ad + texō], 3, *weave to, join on*. v. 40.

**Attianus**, -a, -um, [Attius], adj., *of Attius, referring to P. Attius Varus*. C. II. 34.

**attingō**, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctus, [ad + tangō], 3, *touch upon, touch; reach; of territorial divisions, border on, extend to, adjoin*.

**Attius**, -ī, m., *P. Attius Varus* (at' i-ŷ vā' rus), a lieutenant of Pompey in Africa. C. II. 34.

**attribuō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, [ad + tribuō], 3, *assign, allot*. [attribute.]

**attuli**, see **afferō**.

**Atuatuca**, -ae, f., (at-ū-at' ū-kā), a stronghold in the territory of the Eburones.

**Atuatucl**, -ōrum, m., pl., (at-ū-at' ū-sī), a warlike people on the left bank of the Meuse, descended from the Cimbrians and Teutons.

**auctor**, -ōris, [augeō], m., *originator, instigator; adviser, promoter, favorer*. [author.]

**auctoritās**, -tātis, [auctor], f., *influence, weight; prestige, authority, power*. [authority.]

**auotus**, -a, -um, comp. **auctior**, [augeō], adj., *increased; rich*. i. 43.

**audācia**, -ae, [audāx], f., *boldness, daring, recklessness*. [audacity.]

**audācter**, comp. **audācius**, sup. **audācissimē**, [audāx], adv., *boldly, courageously, fearlessly*.

**audēō**, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, 2, semi-dep., *venture, dare, risk; attempt*.

**audiō**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, 4, *hear, listen to; hear of*. Present participle as Adj. in **diotō audiēns esse**, to be obedient to the word of command, to obey. [audience.]

**audītīō**, -ōnis, [audiō], f., *report, rumor, hearsay*. [audition.]

**augeō**, **augēre**, **auxi**, **auotus**, 2, semi-dep., *increase, enlarge, augment, add to*.

**Aulercus**, -ī, m., *an Aulercan* (vii. 57); pl., *the Aulerci* (ā-lēr' sī), a people of Central Gaul, of which Caesar mentions three branches, **Brannovioēs** (vii. 75), **Oñomani** (vii. 75), and **Eburovicioēs** (iii. 17, vii. 75).

**Aulus**, -ī, m., (ā' lŷs), a Roman first name.

**aureus**, -a, -um, [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden*. v. 12. [orlole.]

**auriga**, -ae, [aurea, *bridle*, + agō], m., *charioteer, driver*. iv. 33.

**auris**, -is, f., *ear*. [aural]

**Aurunculeius**, -i, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, (â' rûng-kû-lê' yûs kot' a), a lieutenant of Caesar, killed by the Eburones.

**Ausci**, -orum, m., pl., (â' sî), a people in the eastern part of Aquitania. iii. 27.

**ausus**, see **audeo**.

**aut**, conj., or. **aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or. **aut** . . . **aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or . . . or.

**autem**, conj., but, however, on the contrary; and now, moreover.

**autumnus**, -i, m., *autumn*. [autumn.

**auxiliâria**, -e, [auxillum], adj., auxiliary. As noun, **auxiliârês**, -lum, m., pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries* (iii. 25). [auxiliar.

**auxilior**, -ârî, -âtus, [auxillum], i, dep., *render aid, assist, help*.

**auxilium**, -i, [cf. **augeo**], n., *help, aid, assistance; relief, remedy, resource*. Pl., **auxilia**, *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries, allied forces*.

**Avaricônsis**, -e, adj., of *Avaricum*, at *Avaricum*. VII. 47.

**Avaricum**, -i, n., (a-var' i-kum), largest and most strongly fortified city of the Bituriges, now *Bourges*; besieged and taken by Caesar, the inhabitants put to the sword.

**avâritia**, -ae, [avârus, *greedy*], f., *greed, covetousness*. [avarice.

**âvehô**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, [â + vehô], 3, *carry off, carry away*.

**âversus**, -a, -um, sup. **âversissimus**, [part of **âvertô**], adj., *turned away; behind, in the rear*. [averse.

**âvertô**, -tere, -ti, -sus, [â + vertô], 3, *turn away, turn aside, avert; divert, alienate, estrange*. [avert.

**avis**, -is, f., *bird*. iv. 10. [aviation.

**avus**, -i, m., *grandfather*.

**Axona**, -ae, f., (aks' o-na), a river in

the southern part of Belgic Gaul, now *Aisne*.

## B

**Bacônis**, -is, (sc. *silva*), f., (ba-sê' nîs), a forest in Germany. vi. 10.

**Baculus**, -i, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, (bac' ū-lûs), one of the bravest of Caesar's centurions. He distinguished himself in the battle with the Nervians (ii. 25); his advice saved the day when Galba was attacked in the Alps (iii. 5); and his heroic resistance checked a surprise attack on Cicero's camp (vi. 38).

**Bagradâs**, or **Bagrada**, -ae, m., (bag' ra-das), an important river of Roman Africa, now *Medjerda*. C. ii. 38.

**Baleârês**, -lum, [= βαλαιοῖς, *slingers*], m., pl., (bal-ê-â' rês), natives of the Balearic Islands, off the east coast of Spain; famous as slingers. ii. 7.

**baltus**, -i, m., *belt, sword-belt*.

**Balventius**, -i, m., *Titus Balventius*, (bal-ven' sh[y]-ûs), a brave centurion. v. 35.

**barbarus**, -a, -um, [= βάρβαρος], adj., *foreign, strange; rude, savage, uncivilized*. As noun, **barbari**, -orum, m., pl., *strangers, foreigners; natives, barbarians*. [barbarous.

**Basilus**, -i, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, (mj-nû' sh[y]ûs bas' i-lûs), an officer of Caesar, afterwards one of the conspirators against him; murdered in 43 B.C. on account of cruelty to his slaves.

**Batâvi**, -orum, m., pl., *the Batavians, Batavi*, (ba-tâ' vî), a people dwelling near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 10.

**Belgae**, -arum, m., pl., *the Belgians, Belgae*, (bel' jê), inhabitants of one of the three main divisions of Gaul, divided into many small states.

**Belgium**, -I, n., (bel'j[y]um), *the land of the Belgians, Belgic Gaul, Belgium*. v. 12, 25. [Belgium.

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [bellicus], adj., *warlike, fond of war*. i. 10. [bellicose.

**bellicus**, -a, -um, [bellum], adj., *of war, martial, military*. vi. 24.

**bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [bellum], I, *wage war, carry on war, fight*.

**Bellovacl**, -ōrum, m., pl., (bē-lov'-a-sī), a powerful Belgic people.

**bellum**, -I, n., *war, warfare*. **bellum gerere**, *to wage war*. **bellum inferre**, *to make war*. **bellum parare**, *to prepare for war*.

**bene**, comp. **melius**, sup. **optimē**, [bonus], adv., *well, ably, successfully*.

**beneficiārius**, -I, [beneficiārius, -a, -um, from **beneficium**], m., *privileged soldier, who, by order of the commander, was exempt from ordinary tasks and detailed for special duties* (C. III. 88). [beneficiary.

**beneficium**, -I, [bene + faciō], n., *kindness, favor, service*. [benefice.

**benevolentia**, -ae, [benevolus], f., *good will, friendly disposition, kindly feeling, friendship*. [benevolence.

**Bibracte**, -is, n., [bi-brak' tē], capital of the Aeduan, situated on a mountain now called *Mont Beuvray* (height, 2,690 ft.).

**Bibrax**, -actis, f., (bi' braks), a town of the Remi, north of the Axona (*Aisne*). ii. 6.

**Bibrocī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (bib' rō-sī), a people in the southern part of Britain. v. 21.

**bīdnum**, -I, [bi-, = bis, cf. diēs], n., *space of two days, two days*.

**biennium**, -I, [bi-, = bis, cf. annus], n., *period of two years, two years' time*. i. 3. [biennial.

**Bigerriōnēs**, -ōnum, m., pl., (bi'' jer-

ri-ō' nēz), a people in Aquitania iii. 27.

**bīnī**, -ae, -a, [bis], distributive adj., *two by two, two each, by twos, two*.

**bipedālis**, -e, [bi-, = bis, + pedālis, from pēs], adj., *two feet in width, length, or height; two feet thick* (iv. 17).

**bipertitō**, [bipartitus, bi-, = bis, + partitus], adv., *in two divisions*. i. 25; v. 32. [cf. bipertite.

**bis**, [for duis, cf. duo], num. adv., *twice*.

**Biturigēs**, -um, m., pl., (bit-ū-rī' jēz), a people in Central Gaul (Fig. 195).



Figure 195. — A coin of the Bituriges.

Electrum, gold alloyed with silver.

Obverse, head of crude but bold design.

Reverse, above the horse, a bird; underneath, a three-leaf ornament. This coin may possibly belong to the Pictones.

**Boduognātus**, -I, m., (bod'' ū-og-nā' tūz), a leader of the Nervians. ii. 23.

**Boii**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Boians; Boii* (bō' j-i), a Celtic people once widely dif-



Figure 196. — Coin of the Boians.

Silver, struck in Cisalpine Gaul.

Obverse, a laurel wreath encircles the head. Reverse, the horseman wears a crown.

fused over Central Europe (Fig. 196).

**bonitās**, -tātis, [bonus], f., *goodness, excellence*; of land, *fertility* (i. 28).

**bonus**, -a, -um, comp. *mellor*, sup. *optimus*, adj., *good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly*. As noun, *bonum*, n., *profit, advantage*; pl., *bona*, -orum, *goods, property, possessions*. [bonus; optimist.

**bōs**, *bovis*, gen. pl. *boum*, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow*. [bovine.

**brachium**, -i, [= βραχίον], n., *arm, forearm*.

**Brannovicēs**, -um, (bran-q-vī' sēz), m., pl., see *Aulerci*.

**Brātuspantium**, -i, n., (brat-ūs-pan' sh[y]ūm), a stronghold of the Bellovacii. ii. 13.

**brevia**, -e, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, adj., *short, brief*. [brief.

**brevitās**, -tātis, [brevis], f., *shortness* (ii. 20); *smallness, small stature* (ii. 30). [brevity.

**breviter**, comp. -ius, sup. -lissimē, [brevis], adv., *briefly, with few words, concisely*. vii. 54.

**Britanni**, -ōrum, m., pl., *natives of Britain, Britons*.

**Britannia**, -ae, f., (brj-tan' i-ā), *Britain*.

**Britannicus**, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain, British*. v. 4.

**brūma**, -ae, [for \*brevuma, sup. of *brevis*, sc. *dies*], f., *winter solstice, shortest day*; *winter* (v. 13).

**Brundisium**, -i, [βρενδίσιον], n., (brun-dizh' i-ūm), a city of Italy on the Adriatic, the principal port of embarkation for Greece; now *Brindisi*. C. III. 87.

**Brūtus**, -i, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, (jūn' yūs brū'tus al-bī' nus), an officer of Caesar, both in the Gallic and in the Civil War; afterwards a conspirator against him.

**būcinātor**, -ōris, [būcina, *trumpet*], m., *trumpeter*. C. II. 35.

## C

**C**, in expressions of number, = 100.

**C**, see *Gālus*.

**Cabūrus**, -i, m, *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, (vā-lē' rj-ūs kə-bū' rus), a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship.

**caedūmen**, -inis, n., *end, point* (vii. 73); *peak, summit*. [cacuminous.

**cadāver**, -eris, [cf. *cadō*], n., *corpse, dead body*. [cadaver.

**cadō**, *cadere*, *cecidī*, *cāstūrus*, 3, *fall*; *be slain, die*. [chance.

**Cadūroī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (kə-dēr' sī), a people in Aquitania. Sing.

**Cadūrcus**, -i, m., a *cadurcan* (vii. 5).

**caedēs**, -is, [caedō], f., *killing; slaughter, murder, massacre*.

**caedō**, *caedere*, *cecidī*, *caesus*, 3, *cut, cut down*; *cut to pieces, slay*.

**caelestis**, -e, [caelum], adj., *heavenly*. As noun, *caelestēs*, -um, m., pl., *the gods* (vi. 17). [celestial.

**caelum**, -i, n., *heaven, the heavens, the sky*. C. II. 5.

**caerimōnia**, -ae, f., *religious ceremony, sacred rite*. vii. 2. [ceremony.

**Caerōsī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (sē-rō' sī), a people in Belgic Gaul. ii. 4.

**caeruleus**, -a, -um, adj., *deep blue, dark blue*. v. 14. [cerulean.

**Caesar**, -aris, m.:

(1) *Gaius Julius Caesar* (gā'yūs jūl' yūs sē' zār).

(2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, consul in 64 B.C., a distant relative of the great Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant, in 52 B.C. vii. 65.

**caespes**, -itis, m., *sod, turf*.

**calamitās**, -tātis, f., *loss, damage; disaster, defeat*. [calamity.

**Caletī**, -ōrum, also **Caletēs**, -um, m., pl., (kal' ē-ti, kal' ē-tēz), a people near the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).

**callidus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [callēō, *be skillful*], adj., *skillful*; *tactful, crafty* (iii. 18).

**cālō**, -ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp servant*.

**campester**, -tris, -tre, [campus], adj., *of level ground, flat, level*.

**campus**, -i, m., *plain*. [campus.

**Camulogenus**, -i, m., (kam-ū-loj' ē-nus), an Aulercan, commander of the Parisii against Labienus.

**Canīnius**, -i, m., *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, (ka-nin' i-ūs reb' i-lus), a lieutenant of Caesar's in the latter part of the Gallic War, and in the Civil War; made consul by Caesar for a few hours to fill a vacancy on the last day of December, B.C. 45. vii. 83, 90; C. II. 34.

**canō**, *canere, cecini*, 3, *sing*; of a musical instrument, *sound, play*.

**Cantabri**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Cantabrians, Cantabri* (kan' ta-bri), a war-like people in northern Spain.

**Cantium**, -i, n., *Kent, Cantium*, (kan-sh[y] ūm), a district in the southeast part of England.

**capillus**, -i, [cf. caput], m., *hair of the head, hair*. [capillary.

**caplō**, *capere, cēplī, captus*, 3, *take, get; seize, capture; occupy, take possession of; select, win over, charm, captivate; receive; of vessels, reach, make; deceive* (i. 40). *initium capere, to begin. cōnsilium capere, to form a plan. dolōrem capere, to be grieved*. [capture.

**Capitōlium**, -i, n., *the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva on the Capitoline hill in Rome; sometimes referring to the hill as a whole, the Capitoline hill*. C. I. 6. [Capitol.

**capra**, -ae, [caper], f., *she-goat*.

**captivus**, -a, -um, [cf. caplō], adj., *taken prisoner, captured* (C. II. 5).

As noun, **captivus**, -i, m., *captive, prisoner* (vi. 43). [captive.

**captus**, -a, -um, see caplō.

**captus**, -ūs, [caplō], m., *capacity; understanding, notion* (iv. 3).

**Capua**, -ae, f., (kap' ū-a), a city in Italy, in Campania. C. III. 71.

**caput**, -itis, n., *head*; by metonymy, *person, man, life, safety*; of a river, *mouth* (iv. 10). *capitis poena, capital punishment* (vii. 71). *duo milla caput, two thousand souls*. [capital.

**Caracasō**, -ōnis, f., (kār' ka-sō), a town in southern Gaul, now *Car-cassonne* (III. 20).

**careō**, -ēre, -ul, -itūrus, 2, *be without, lack, want*. vi. 38; vii. 17.

**carīna**, -ae, f., *keel of a ship*.

**Carnutēs**, -um, m., pl., (kār' nū-tēz), a people in Central Gaul, north of the Liger (*Loire*); chief city, *Cenabum* (Fig. 197).



Figure 197. — Coin of the Carnutes.

Bronze. Obverse, head of Hercules; inscription [A]CUSSROS.

Reverse, boar.

Copied from a Roman coin, except the name.

**carō**, *carnis*, f., *flesh, meat*. [carnage.

**carpō**, -ere, -si, -tus, 3, *pluck; censure, criticise* (iii. 17). [carp.

**carrus**, -i, m., *cart, wagon*. [car.

**cārus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -rissimus, adj., *dear, precious*.

**Carvilius**, -I, m., (kar-vil' i-ŭs), one of four British rulers in Kent. v. 22.

**casa**, -ae, f., *hut, cottage, barrack*.

**cāseus**, -I, m., *cheese*. vi. 22.

**Cassī**, -ŏrum, m., pl., (kas' i), a tribe in Britain. v. 21.

**Cassianus**, -a, -um, [Cassius], adj., of Cassius. i. 13.

**cassia**, -idis, f., *helmet of metal*.

**Cassius**, -I, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, (kash' [y]us lon-jī' nŭs), praetor III B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain. i. 7, 12.

**Cassivellaunus**, -I, m., *Cassivellaunus* (kas' i-ve-lā' nŭs), *Caerwallon*, leader of the British army against Caesar in 54 B.C.

**castellum**, -I, [dim. of castrum], n., *redoubt, fortress, stronghold*. [castle.

**Castious**, -I, m., (kas' ti-kŭs), a prominent Sequanian. i. 3.

**castigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i, *reprove*. C. III. 60. [castigate.

**castra**, -ŏrum, n., [pl. of castrum, *fortress*], *camp, encampment*; *military service* (i. 39); *day's march* (vii. 36). **castra movēre**, *to break camp*. **castra pōnere**, *to encamp, camp*. [-chester in Ro-chester, etc.

**cāsus**, -ūs, [cadō], m., *fall*; *chance, occurrence, happening, fortune*; *opportunity, event*; *accident, mishap, evil plight, death*. cāsū, *by chance*. [case.

**Catamantaloedis**, -is, m., (kat-a-man-tā-lē' dīs), a leader among the Sequanians before Caesar's time. i. 3.

**catēnae**, -ārum, f., pl., *chains*; *fetters*.

**Caturigēs**, -um, m., pl., (kat-ū-ri' jēs), a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

**Catuvolous**, -I, m., (kat-ū-vol' kŭs), a ruler of the Eburones; despairing of success in the war against Caesar, he took poison. v. 24, 26; vi. 31.

**causa**, -ae, f., *cause, ground, reason*; *pretext, excuse*; *condition, state, case, suit*. causā, with gen., *for the sake of, on account of*. [cause.

**cautō**, comp. -lus, sup. -issimō, [cautus, from caveō], adv., *cautiously, carefully*. v. 49.

**cāutōs**, -is, f., *jagged rock, cliff*. iii. 13.

**Cavarillus**, -I, m., (kav-a-ril' ŭs), an Aeduan of high rank. vii. 67.

**Cavarinus**, -I, m., (kav-a-ri' nŭs), a ruler among the Senones. v. 54; vi. 5.

**caveō**, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautŭrus**, 2, *be on one's guard, beware of, take precaution*; *give security*. [cautious.

**Cavillonum**, -I, n., (kav-i-lō' nŭm), an Aeduan city on the Arar, now Chalon-sur-Saône. vii. 42, 90.

**Cebenna**, -ae, f., *Cebenna* (se-ben' a), the Cévennes, a mountain range in southern Gaul, about 250 miles long.

**cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessi**, **cessŭrus**, 3, *go away, depart, withdraw, retreat*; *yield, give up to*; *abandon*. [cede.

**celer**, -eris, -ere, comp. -lor, sup. **celerrimus**, adj., *quick, speedy*.

**celertās**, -tātis, [celer], f., *speed, quickness, swiftness, rapidity, despatch*. [celerity.

**celeriter**, comp. **celerius**, sup. **celerrimō**, [celer], adv., *quickly, speedily, at once, immediately*.

**cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, i, *conceal, hide, keep secret*. ii. 32; vii. 80.

**Celtae**, -ārum, m., pl., *Celts, Celtae* (sel' tē), inhabitants of central Gaul, divided into many states.

**Celtillus**, -I, m., (sel-til' ŭs), an Arvernian ruler, father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.

**Cēnabēnsēs**, -um, [Cēnabum], m., pl., *the inhabitants of Cenabum*.

**Cēnabum**, -i, n., (sen' a-bum), chief city of the Carnutes, later called *Aurelianensis Urbs*, whence comes *Orlians*, name of the city on the site of Cenabum.

**Cēnimagnī**, -orum, m., pl., (sen-i-mag' nī), a British people. v. 21.

**Cēnomani**, -orum, (se-nom' a-nī), see *Aulerci*.

**cēnsēō**, -ēre, -ui, -us, 2, *estimate; think, hold, judge; decree, resolve upon, determine; vote for, favor*.

**cēnsus**, -us, [cēnsēō], m., *count, enumeration*. i. 29. [census.

**centum**, or c, indeclinable num. adj., *hundred*. [cent. in per cent.

**centuriō**, -ōnis, [centuria], m., *centurion*. [centurion.

**cernō**, cernere, crēvi, 3, *separate; distinguish, discern, see, perceive*.

**certāmen**, -inis, [certō], n., *contest, rivalry* (v. 44); *struggle, battle, engagement* (iii. 14).

**certō**, comp. certius, [certus], adv., *affirmative, certainly, surely* (vi. 31); *restrictive, at least, at any rate* (iv. 25, v. 29, vii. 50).

**certus**, -a, -um, comp. fort., sup. fortissimus, [part. of cernō], adj., *certain, fixed, definite; positive, undoubted, trustworthy, true*. certiorērem facere, *to inform*. certior fieri, *to be informed*. Neut. as noun, certi quid esset, *what was really going on* (vii. 45); prō certō, *as a certainty, as certain* (vii. 5). [certain.

**cervus**, -i, m., *stag* (vi. 26); in military language, *stag's horns*, a device for hindering the approach of an enemy (vii. 72). [cervine.

**cēterus**, -a, -um, nom. sing. m. not in use, adj., *other, the other, the rest, remainder*; pl., *the rest, all the others, the other*. As noun, cēteri,

-orum, m., pl., *the others, all the rest, every one else*; cētera, -orum, n., pl., *the rest, all else, everything else*.

**Centronēs**, -um, m., pl. (sū' trō-nēz):

(1) A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians. v. 39.

(2) A people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

**chara**, -ae, f., *chara*, a plant the tuberous roots of which were used by Caesar's soldiers for food. C. iii. 48.

**Cherusci**, -orum, m., pl., (kē-rus' i), a German people north of the Suebi. vi. 10.

**cibāria**, -orum, [cibārius, from cib-], n., pl., *provisions, rations*.

**cibus**, -i, m., *food, nourishment*.

**Cicerō**, -ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero* (tul' i-us sis' ē-rō), brother of Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, born about 102 B.C. He became a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul in 55, and made a heroic defence of his camp in 54; he held aloof from Caesar in the Civil War, but was reconciled with him in 47; he was put to death by order of the triumvirs in 43 B.C.

**Ciliciēnsis**, -ae, [Ollicta], adj., *Cilician, of Cilicia*, a province in the southern part of Asia Minor.

**Climberius**, -i, m., (sjm-bē' rj-us), a leader of the Suebi. i. 37.

**Cimbri**, -orum, m., pl., *Cimbrians, Cimbrī* (sim' bri), a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul.

**Cingetorix**, -igis, m., (sjn-jet' q-rjks):

(1) Rival of Indutiomarus for the headship of the Treverans, and loyal to Caesar. v. 3, 4, 56, 57; vi. 8.

(2) A British ruler. v. 22.

**cingō**, cingere, cinxī, cinctus, 3, *surround, encircle; invest*. [cincture.

**cippus**, -i, m., *stake, post.* vii. 73.

**circinus**, -i, [= κίρκινος], m., *pair of compasses.* i. 38.

**circiter**, [circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *about, not far from, near.*

(2) As prep., with acc. only, *about* (i. 50).

**circuitus**, -ūs, [circumeō], m., *a going around; detour, circuit, winding path, way around.* [circuit.

**circum**, [acc. of circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *about, around.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *around, about; in the neighborhood of, near, near by.*

**circumcidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus, [circum + caedō], 3, *cut around, cut.* v. 42.

**circumcisus**, -a, -um, [part. of circumcidō], adj., *cut off; steep, precipitous.* vii. 36.

**circumclūdō**, -dare, -si, -sus, [circum + claudō], 3, *encircle.* vi. 28.

**circumdō**, -dare, -dedi, -datus, [circum + dō, *place*], 1, *place around, encompass, surround, encircle.*

**circumdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [circum + dūcō], 3, *lead around; trace* (i. 38). [circumduct.

**circumeō**, -ire, -ii, -itus, [circum + eō], irr., *go around, pass around; surround, encircle; go about, visit for inspection* (v. 2).

**circumfundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, [circum + fundō], 3, *pour around; surround, hem in; pass.* often used reflexively, *spread (themselves) around, crowd around.*

**circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum + iaciō], 3, *throw around, place around.* ii. 6.

**circummittō**, -mittere, -misi, -mis-

**sus**, [circum + mittō], 3, *send around.* v. 51; vii. 63.

**circummūnō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [circum + mūnō], 4, *surround with walls, fortify; hem in* (ii. 30).

**circumplector**, -plecti, 3, dep., *embrace, encompass, surround.* vii. 83.

**circumsistō**, -sistere, -steti or -stiti, [circum + sistō], 3, *stand around, surround, take a position around.*

**circumspiciō**, -icere, -exi, -ectus, [circum + speciō, *look*], 3, *look about, survey; ponder, consider; look about for, look over* (v. 31). [circumspect.

**circumvallō**, -āre, -avi, -atus, [circum + vallō], 1, *surround with a rampart, blockade, invest.*

**circumvehor**, -vehi, -vectus, [circum + vehō], 3, pass. as dep., *ride around* (vii. 45); *sail around.*

**circumveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, [circum + veniō], 4, *come around, go around; surround, encompass; ensnare, overreach, deceive.* [circumvent.

**cis**, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

**Cisalpīnus**, -a, -um, [cis + Alpi-nus], adj., *Cisalpine, on this* (the Italian) *side of the Alps.* [Cisalpine.

**Cisrhēnānus**, -a, -um, [cis + Rhēnānus], adj., *on this side* (the west side) *of the Rhine.* vi. 2.

**Cita**, (sī' ta), see **Fūsius**.

**citātus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [citō], adj., *rapid.* iv. 10.

**citerior**, -us, [citer, from cis], comp. adj., *on this side, hither, nearer.*

**citō**, -āre, -avi, -atus, [freq. of ciōō, *set in motion*], 1, *urge on.* C. III. 96. [cite.

**cito**, comp. citius, sup. citissimē, [citus], adv., *speedily.* citissimē, *with the utmost rapidity* (iv. 33).



**citrā**, [citer, from cis], prep. with acc. only, *on this side of*.

**citrō**, [citer, from cis], adv., *hither*.  
**ultrō citrōque**, *to and fro, back and forth* (i. 42).

**civis**, -is, m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen*. [civil.

**civitas**, -tatis, [civis], f., *body of citizens, state, nation; citizenship* (i. 47). [city.

**clam**, [cf. cēlō], adv., *secretly*.

**clāmitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of clāmō], i, *cry out loudly, shout*.

**clāmor**, -ōris, [cf. clāmō, cry out], m., *outcry, shout, din*. [clamor.

**clandestinus**, -a, -um, [clam], adj., *secret, hidden*. vii. i, 64. [clandestine.

**clārō**, [clārus], adv., *loudly, distinctly*. C. iii. 94.

**clārus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, adj., *clear, distinct; of the voice, loud* (v. 30); *famous*. [clear.

**classicum**, -i, [classicus, -a, -um, from classis], n., *trumpet signal*. C. iii. 82.

**classis**, -is, f., *a class; a fleet*. [class.

**Claudius**, -i, m., *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, (klā' dī-ūs pul' kēr), brother of Clodius (see below); praetor in 57 B.C., and consul in 54. v. i.

**claudō**, *claudere*, **clausi**, **clausus**, 3, *shut, close*. [close.

**clāvus**, -i, m., *nail, spike*. iii. 13.

**clēmēntia**, -ae, [clēmōns], f., *forbearance, mercifulness*. [clemency.

**Cleopātra**, -ae, f., (klē-ō-pā' tra), sister of the young Egyptian king, Ptolemy, and afterwards queen of Egypt. C. iii. 103.

**cliēns**, -entis, m., *retainer, dependent, client, adherent*. [client.

**cliēntēla**, -ae, [cliēns], f., *relation of client to patron, clientship, vassalage; pl., following of clients* (vii. 32), *dependencies* (vi. 12). [clientele.

**clivus**, -i, m., *slope*. vii. 46.

**Clōdīus**, -i, m., (klō' dī-ūs):

(1) *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, the enemy of Cicero, who as tribune in 58 B.C. drove the orator into exile; he was killed in 52 B.C. vii. i.

(2) *Aulus Clodius*, a mutual friend of Caesar and of Scipio. C. iii. 90.

**Cn.**, = *Gnaeus* (nē' ūs), a Roman first name.

**co-**, see *com-*.

**coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [co- + acervō], i, *heap up, pile up*. ii. 27.

**coāctus**, pf. pass. part. of cōgō.

**coāctus**, -ūs, [cōgō], m., only abl. sing. in use, *compulsion*. v. 27.

**coagmentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [coagmentum, cf. cōgō], i, *fasten together*. vii. 23. [coagment.

**coartō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [co- + artō, *make close*], i, *press together, crowd together*. vii. 70.

**Cocōsātēs**, -um, m, pl., (kok-ō-sā' tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

**coēmō**, -emere, -ēmi, -ēptus, [co- + emō], 3, *buy up, purchase*.

**coōō**, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum est, [co- + eō], irr., *come together, join together*. vi. 22.

**coepi**, -isse, **coeptus**, def., (present supplied by incipiō), *have begun, began*.

**coērcēō**, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus, [co- + arceō, *shut up*], 2, *confine; restrain, check* (i. 17; v. 7). [coerce.

**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [co- + agitō], i, *think about, think; intend, purpose, plan*. [cogitate.

**cognātiō**, -ōnis, [cognātus], f., *blood-relationship; blood-relations, kindred*. [cognition.

**cognōscō**, -gnōscere, -gnōvi, **cognitus**, [co- + (g)nōscō], 3, *become acquainted with, learn, learn of, ascertain; be familiar with, know*,

*recognize; spy out, examine; take cognizance of.* [cognizance.]

**cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactus**, [co- + agō], 3, *drive together, bring together, collect, gather, assemble; compel, force, oblige.* [cogent.]

**cōhō, -hortis, f., cohort, battalion**, the tenth part of a legion. [cohort.]  
**cōhortātiō, -ōnis**, [cohortor], f., *encouraging, exhortation.* ii. 25.

**cōhortor, -ārī, -ātus**, [co- + hortor], 1, dep., *encourage; urge, exhort; address with encouraging words.* [cohortative.]

**collabefō, -fieri, -factus**, [com- + labefō, *be shaken loose*], pass., *be shattered.* C. II. 6.

**collātus**, see cōnferō.

**collaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + laudō], 1, *praise warmly, commend.*

**colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind together, fasten together.* i. 25.

**colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus**, [com- + legō, *gather*], 3, *gather together, collect, assemble; obtain, get.* sē colligere, *to gather themselves together; to form in battle order* (III. 19); *to recover themselves, rally.* [collect.]

**collis, -is, m., hill, height, elevation.**  
**collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + locō, *place*], 1, *place, set, post, station; set in order, arrange; with or without nūptum, give in marriage* (i. 18). [collocate.]

**colloquium, -ī**, [colloquor], n., *conference, interview.* [colloquy.]

**colloquor, -loqui, -loquutus**, [com- + loquor], 3, dep., *talk with, hold a conference, hold a parley.*

**colō, colere, colui, cultus**, 3, *cultivate, till* (iv. 1; v. 12); *honor, worship* (vi. 17).

**colōnia, -ae**, [colōnus], f., *colony, settlement.* vi. 24. [colony.]

**color, -ōris, m., color.** [color.]

**com-, co-, prep., old form of cum, with, found only in composition; see cum.**

**combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus**, [com- + \*būrō, = ūrō, *burn*], 3, *burn up, consume by fire.* i. 5. [combustion.]

**comes, -itis**, [co- + eō], m. and f., *companion, comrade.* [count (title).]

**comitātus, -ūs**, [comes], m., *retinue, company.* C. III. 61, 96. [county.]

**comitia, -ōrum**, [sing. comitium, *meeting-place for elections*], n., pl., *elections* (vii. 67; C. III. 82).

**comitor, -ārī, -ātus**, [comes], 1, dep., *accompany, attend.* vi. 8.

**commēātus, -ūs**, [commēō], m., *passing to and fro, trip, voyage* (v. 23); *supplies, provisions, often including grain, frumentum.*

**commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + memorō], 1, *call to mind, recount, relate.* [commemorate.]

**commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + mandō], 1, *commit to one for protection, entrust; ask favor for, commend.* [commend.]

**commentārius, -ī**, [commentor], m., *note-book, source-book.* [commentary.]

**commēō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, [com- + meō, *go*], 1, *go to and fro, visit, resort to.* i. 1; vii. 36.

**commilitō, -ōnis**, [com- + militō, *from miles*], m., *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

**comminus, [com- + manus]**, adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

**commissūra, -ae**, [committō], f., *joint, seam, juncture.* vii. 72.

**committō, -mittere, -misi, -missus**, [com- + mittō], 3, *join, bring together, connect; entrust, commit; cause, do, perpetrate.* **committere proelium**, *to join battle, begin the engagement.* [commit.]

**Commīus**, -ī, m., *Comm*, *Commīus*, (kom' i-us), an Atrebatian, loyal and useful to Caesar (especially in the British campaigns) till the uprising in 52, when he became a commander in the Gallic army raised for the relief of Alesia.

**commodō**, comp. -lus, sup. -issimō, [commodus], adv., conveniently, opportunely, to advantage; readily, easily; fitly, suitably, properly.

**commodus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [com- + modus, i.e. having full measure], adj., convenient, advantageous, easy; good, favorable; suitable, fit. As noun, commodum, -ī, n., convenience, advantage, profit. [commodious.

**commonefaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [commoneō + faciō], 3, remind; impress upon one (i. 19).

**commoror**, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + moror], 1, dep., delay, linger.

**commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, commōtus, [com- + moveō], 2, disturb, disquiet, alarm; move, stir. [commotion.

**commūnicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [commūnis], 1, share together, share with, divide with; communicate, impart; consult with (v. 36). [communicate.

**commūniō**, -īre, -īvi or -īlī, -ītus, [com- + mūniō], 4, fortify on all sides, strongly fortify, intrench.

**commūnis**, -e, [com- + mūnus], adj., common, in common, general, public; indiscriminate (vi. 9).

**commūni cōncillō**, in accordance with the general plan, by common consent. in commūni cōncillō, at a general council (ii. 4; vii. 15). [common.

**commūtātiō**, -ōnis, [commūtō], f., complete change, alteration.

**commūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + mūtō], 1, change, wholly change,

alter; exchange (vi. 22). [commute.

**comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + parō], 1, prepare, make ready, get together; acquire, secure; amass, (i. 18).

**comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [compar, like], 1, match, compare. [compare.

**compellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [com- + pellō], 3, drive together, collect; drive, force. [compel.

**compendium**, -ī, [com- + pendō], n., profit, gain. vii. 43. [compend.

**comperiō**, -perire, -peri, -pertus, [com- + PER in experior], 4, ascertain, learn, discover, find out.

**complector**, -plecti, -plexus, [com- + plectō, braid], 3, dep., embrace, (i. 20); surround, include, encompass (vii. 72, 74). [complex.

**compleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, [com- + plēō, fill], 2, fill up, fill; complete, cover; of troops, fully occupy, fill full. [complete.

**complexus**, see complector.

**complūrēs**, -a, [com- + plūrēs, from plūs], adj., pl., several, a number of; many. As noun, complūrēs, -lum, m., pl., a great many, quite a number, many.

**comportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + portō], 1, bring in, carry, convey, bring over. [comport.

**comprehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [com- +prehendō], 3, grasp; seize; arrest, capture; of fire, catch (v. 43). [comprehend.

**comprobō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + probō], 1, approve fully, justify.

**cōnātum**, -ī, [n. of cōnātus, part. of cōnor], n., attempt, undertaking.

**cōnātus**, -ūs, [cōnor], m., attempt.

**cōnātus**, pf. part. of cōnor.

**concedō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [com- + cēdō], 3, withdraw, de-

Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as a commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

**lābor**, **lābi**, **lāpeus**, 3, dep., *slip*; go astray (v. 3); *fail*, *be deceived*, *be disappointed* (v. 55). [*lapse*].

**labor**, **-ōris**, m., *toil*, *work*, *exertion*, *labor*; *endurance* (iv. 2). [*labor*].

**labōrō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [*labor*], 1, *make effort*, *labor*, *strive* (i. 31; vii. 31); *be hard pressed*, *be in distress*, *be in danger*. [*labor* (verb)].

**labrum**, **-ī**, [*lab*, cf. **lambō**, *lick*], n., *lip* (v. 14); *edge* (vii. 72); *rim*, *brim* (vi. 28).

**lac**, **lactis**, n., *milk*. [*lacteal*].

**laceasō**, **-ere**, **-ivi**, **-itus**, [*obsolete laciō*, *entice*], 3, *arouse*, *provoke*; *harass*, *assail*, *attack*.

**lacrima**, **-ae**, f., *tear*. [*lachrymal*].

**lacrimō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [*lacrima*], 1, *shed tears*, *weep*. vii. 38.

**lacus**, **-ūs**, m., *lake*. [*lake*].

**laedō**, **laedere**, **laesi**, **laesus**, 3, *injure*; *break*, *violate* (vi. 9).

**laetitia**, **-ae**, [*laetus*], f., *rejoicing*, *joy*, *delight*. v. 48, 52; vii. 79.

**laetus**, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-lor**, sup. **-lissimus**, adj., *joyful*, *glad*. iii. 18.

**languidō**, comp. **languidius**, [*languidus*], adv., *feebly*, *laxly*. vii. 27.

**languidus**, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-lor**, [cf. *languor*], adj., *weak*, *faint*, *exhausted*. iii. 5. [*languid*].

**languor**, **-ōris**, [*langued*, *be faint*], m., *faintness*; *exhaustion*, *weariness* (v. 31). [*languor*].

**lapis**, **-idis**, m., *stone*. [*lapidary*].

**lāpeus**, see **lābor**.

**laqueus**, **-ī**, m., *noose*. vii. 22.

**largior**, **largiri**, **largitus**, [*largus*, *abundant*], 4, dep., *give freely*, *supply*, *bestow* (vi. 24); *bribe* (i. 18).

**largitor**, [*largus*, *abundant*], adv., *abundantly*, *much*.

**largitiō**, **-ōnis**, [*largior*], f., *lavish giving*, *bribery*. i. 9. [*largition*].

**Lārissa**, **-ae**, [*Ἀρρῶσα*], f. (*lā-ris' a*), a city in Thessaly, now *Larissa*. C. iii. 96, 97, 98.

**lassitūdō**, **-inis**, [*lassus*, *weak*], f., *faintness*, *weariness*. [*lassitude*].

**lātō**, comp. **lātius**, sup. **lātissimō**, [*lātus*], adv., *widely*, *broadly*, *extensively*. *quam lātissimō*, *as far as possible*.

**latebra**, **-ae**, [cf. **lateō**], f., *hiding place*. vi. 43. [*latebricole*].

**lateō**, **latēre**, **latul**, 2, *lie hid* (ii. 19); *be unnoticed* (iii. 14). [*latent*].

**lātissimō**, see **lātō**.

**lātitudō**, **-inis**, [*lātus*], f., *width*, *breadth*, *extent*. [*latitude*].

**lātius**, see **lātō**.

**Latobrigi**, **-ōrum**, m., pl., (*lat-q-bri'ji*), a people near the Helvetians.

**latrō**, **-ōnis**, m., *freebooter*, *robber*.

**latrōcinium**, **-ī**, [*latrōcinor*, *plunder*], n., *freebooting*, *brigandage*, *robbery*. vi. 16, 23, 35.

**lātūrus**, see **ferō**.

**lātus**, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-lor**, sup. **-lissimus**, adj., *broad*, *wide*; of territory, *extensive* (ii. 4; vi. 22).

**latus**, **-eris**, n., *side*; of an army, *flank*. *latus apertum*, *exposed flank*. *ab latere*, *on the flank*. [*lateral*].

**laudō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [*laus*], 1, *praise*, *commend*, *compliment*. [*laud* (verb)].

**laurea**, **-ae**, [*laurus*, *laurel*], f., *laurel tree*; *laurel* (C. iii. 71). [*laureate*].

**laus**, **laudis**, f., *praise*, *glory*, *commendation*, *distinction*. [*laud*].

**lavō**, **-āre**, **lāvi**, **lautus** and **lōtus**, 1, *wash*; pass. **lavāri**, used reflexively, *bathe* (iv. 1). [*lave*].

**cōnfīō**, -fieri, [com- + fīō], irr., sometimes used instead of cōnfīclor, pass. of cōnfīclō, *be accomplished, be done*. vii. 58.

**cōnfirmātiō**, -ōnis, [cōnfirmō], f., *assurance*. iii. 18. [confirmation.

**cōnfirmātus**, -a, -um, [cōnfirmō], adj., comp. cōnfirmātor, *encouraged, confident*. C. III. 84.

**cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com-, cf. firmus], 1, *strengthen, confirm; arrange for, establish; reassure, encourage; assert, declare; assure*. [confirm.

**cōnfissus**, -a, -um, see cōnfīdō.

**cōnfiteor**, -fiteri, -fessus, [com- + fateor, confess], 2, dep., *confess, acknowledge*. v. 27. [confess.

**cōnfīxus**, -a, -um, see cōnfīgō.

**cōnflagrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + flagrō, blaze], 1, *be in flames, be on fire*. v. 43. [conflagration.

**cōnflictō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of cōnfīgō], 1, dep., *harass, assail*. v. 35. [conflict.

**cōnfīgō**, -fīgere, -fīxi, -fīctus, [com- + fīgō, strike], 3, *dash together; contend, fight*.

**cōnfluēs**, -entis, [cōnfluō], m., *flowing together of two streams, confluence*. iv. 15.

**cōnfluō**, -fluere, -fluxi, [com- + fluō], 3, *flow together; flock* (vii. 44). [confluent.

**cōnfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, [com- + fugiō], 3, *flee for refuge*. vi. 5.

**cōnfundō**, -fundere, -fūdi, -fusus, [com- + fundō], 3, *pour together; mass together* (vii. 75). [confound.

**congerō**, -gerere, -gessi, -gestus, [com- + gerō], 3, *bring together, collect*. C. II. 37.

**congregior**, -gredi, -gressus, [com- + gradior, step], 3, dep., *come together, meet, unite with; join battle, engage, contend*.

**congressus**, -a, -um, see congregior.

**congressus**, -ūs, [congregior], m., *meeting; encounter, engagement* (iii. 13). [congress.

**conicio**, -icere, -icēci, -lectus, [com- + iaciō], 3, *throw together, hurl, cast; throw up, throw; place, put*. in fugam conicere, *to put to flight*.

**coniectūra**, -ae, [coniciō], f., *inference*. [conjecture.

**coniunctim**, [coniungō], adv., *jointly, in common*.

**coniunctus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part of coniungō], adj., *connected; closely allied* (vii. 33). [conjunct.

**coniungō**, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctus, [com- + iungō], 3, *join together, unite, join*. [conjoin.

**coniūnx**, coniugis, [coniungō], m. and f., *husband; wife, spouse* (vii. 14). [conjugal.

**coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, [coniūrō], f., *union bound by oath, league; conspiracy, plot*.

**coniūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + iūrō], 1, *take oath together* (vii. 1); *form a league, conspire, plot*. [conjure.

**cōnor**, -āri, -ātus, 1, dep., *endeavor, attempt, undertake, try*. [conative.

**conquiescō**, -ere, -quiesvi, -quiescētus, [com- + quiescō, rest], 3, *take complete rest, repose*. vii. 46.

**conquirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus, [com- + quaerō], 3, *seek out, hunt up; bring together, collect*.

**conquisitus**, see conquirō.

**cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, [com- + sanguineus, from sanguis], adj., *of the same blood*. As noun, m., and f., *relative, kinsman*; pl., *kinsfolk, blood-relations*. [consanguineous.

**cōnscendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [com- + scandō, climb],

3, *mount, ascend*. *nāvēs cōnscendere, to embark*.  
**cōnscientia**, -ae, [cōnsciō], f., *knowledge* (v. 56); with *animi*, *moral sense, conscience* (C. III. 60). [*conscience*.]  
**cōnsciscō**, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, [com- + sciscō, *approve*], 3, *decree, appoint; inflict, bring upon*. *sibi mortem cōnsciscere, to commit suicide* (i. 4; iii. 22).  
**cōnscius**, -a, -um, [com-, cf. sciō], adj., *conscious, aware (of)*. [*conscious*.]  
**cōnscrībō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [com- + scribō], 3, *write* (v. 48); *enrol, levy, enlist*. [*conscript*.]  
**cōnscriptus**, see **cōnscrībō**.  
**cōnsecrātus**, -a, -um, [part. of cōnsecrō], adj., *holy, sacred*. [*consecrate*.]  
**cōnsector**, -ārī, -ātus, [cōnsequor], 1, dep., *follow up, pursue*.  
**cōnsecūtus**, see **cōnsequor**.  
**cōnsēnsiō**, -ōnis, [cōnsentiō], f., *common feeling, agreement*. vii. 76.  
**cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, [cōnsentiō], m., *common feeling, agreement, understanding*. [*consensus*.]  
**cōnsentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus, [com- + sentiō], 4; *agree; plot together, conspire*. [*consent*.]  
**cōnsequor**, -sequi, -secūtus, [com- + sequor], 3, dep., *follow after, follow; pursue, overtake; obtain, secure, gain*. [*consequence*.]  
**cōnservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + servō], 1, *save, spare; of laws or rights, observe, maintain*. [*conserve*.]  
**cōnsiderātē**, [cōnsiderātus, from cōnsiderō], adv., *circumspectly*. Comp. **cōnsiderātius**, *with unusual caution* (C. III. 82).

**Cōnsidius**, -ī, m., *Publius Considius*, (kōn-sid' i-ūs), an officer in Caesar's army.  
**cōnsidō**, -sistere, -sēdi, -sessum, [com- + sidō, sit], 3, *sit down, seat one's self; halt, encamp; take up an abode, establish one's self, settle*.  
**cōnsilium**, -ī, [cf. cōnsulō], n., *consultation, deliberation, counsel; gathering for deliberation, council; advice; decision, plan, design, scheme; project, proposal; good judgment, prudence, discretion*. **cōnsilium inire** or **habēre**, *to form a plan*. [*counsel*.]  
**cōnsimilis**, -e, [com- + similis], adj., *very like, quite like*.  
**cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, [com- + sistō, set, place], 3, *stand, stop, halt; take a position, be posted, make a stand; stay, remain; sojourn, settle; consist (in), depend (on)*. **in orbem cōnsistere**, *to form a circle* (v. 33). [*consist*.]  
**cōnsobrinus**, -ī, [com-, cf. soror], m., *cousin*. vii. 76. [*cousin*.]  
**cōnsōlor**, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + sōlor, comfort], 1, dep., *comfort, cheer, encourage*. [*console*.]  
**cōnspectus**, -ūs, [cōnspicō], m., *sight, view, presence*. [*conspectus*.]  
**cōnspicō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [com- + specō, look], 3, *observe, behold, see, perceive*.  
**cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *catch sight of, see, observe*.  
**cōnspirō**, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + spirō, breathe], 1, *agree; combine, form a league, conspire* (iii. 10). [*conspire*.]  
**cōnstanter**, comp. -lus, sup. -issimē, [cōnstāns], adv., *resolutely* (iii. 25); *uniformly, unanimously* (ii. 2).  
**cōnstantia**, -ae, [cōnstāns], f., *firmness, resolution*. [*constancy*.]  
**cōnsternō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1,

*alarm, terrify.* vii. 30. [consternation.

**cōnsternō**, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātus, [com- + sternō], 3, *strew over, cover* (IV. 17); *strew, carpet* (C. III. 96).

**cōnstipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + stipō, press], 1, *crowd together, crowd closely.* v. 43.

**cōnstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus, [com- + statuō], 3, *station, place, draw up; bring to a halt, stop* (vii. 47); of ships, *moor; appoint, establish; resolve upon, determine, decide, fix, settle.* [constitute.

**cōnstō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, [com- + stō], 1, *stand firm; remain the same* (vii. 35); *remain, lie* (vii. 21); *depend on* (vii. 84); *cost* (vii. 19); *be made up of* (C. II. 36). **cōnstat**, impers., *it is certain, well-known, evident, it is clear.*

**cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, [com- + suēscō, become used], 3, *form a habit, become accustomed, be accustomed, be wont.*

**cōnsuētūdō**, -nis, [cōnsuēscō], f., *habit, practice, custom, usage; mode of life* (v. 14, vi. 21); *practice in speaking a language* (i. 47). **cōnsuētūdō victūs**, *standard of living* (i. 31). [custom.

**cōnsuētus**, see cōnsuēscō.

**cōnsul**, -ulis, m., *consul*, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually. [consul.

**cōnsulāris**, -e, [cōnsul], adj., *consular.* C. i. 6. [consular.

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.* i. 35. [consulate.

**cōnsulō**, -sulere, -sulul, -sultus, 3, *consult, deliberate, take counsel of; with dat., have regard for, look out for.*

**cōnsultō**, [cōnsulō], adv., *on purpose, designedly, purposely.*

**cōnsultō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of cōnsulō], 1, *deliberate, take counsel.* v. 53; vii. 77. [consult.

**cōnsultum**, -i, [cōnsultus, from cōnsulō], n., *deliberation; resolution, decree, decision.*

**cōnsūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūptus, [com- + sūmō], 3, *use up, devour, eat up; waste, exhaust, destroy; of time, spend, pass.* [consume.

**cōnsūmptus**, see cōnsūmō.

**cōnsurgō**, -surgere, -surrexi, -con-surrectum est, [com- + surgō, rise], 3, *rise together, arise, stand up.*

**contabulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com-, cf. tabula, board], 1, *construct of boards; build up in stories.* vii. 22.

**contāgiō**, -ōnis, [cf. contingō], f., *contact.* vi. 13. [contagion.

**contāminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [contāmen, = contāgiō], 1, *taint, pollute.* vii. 43. [contaminate.

**contegō**, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [com- + tegō], 3, *cover, cover up* (vii. 85).

**contemnō**, -temnere, -tempai, -temptus, [com- + temnō, despise], 1, *despise, hold in contempt.* [contemn.

**contemptiō**, -ōnis, [cf. contemnō], f., *a despising, contempt, scorn.*

**contemptus**, -ūs, [contemnō], m., *scorn.* [contempt.

**contendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [com- + tendō], 3, *put forth effort, strive for, make effort, strive; demand* (vii. 63, C. III. 97); *hasten, make haste, push forward; struggle, contend, vie; maintain, insist, protest* (vi. 37, 41, 43). [contend.

**contentiō**, -ōnis, [contendō], f., *effort; struggle, fight, contest; dispute, controversy.* [contention.

**contentus**, -a, -um, [part. of contineō], adj., *satisfied.* [content.

**contextō**, -texere, -texui, -textus, [com- + texō, weave], 3, weave together, weave; bind together, join, construct. [context.

**continēns**, -entis, [part. of continēō], adj., adjoining; continuous, unbroken, consecutive. **continenti impetū**, without pausing (vii. 28). As noun, (originally sc. terra), f., mainland. [continent.

**continenter**, [continēns], adv., constantly, incessantly, without interruption, continually.

**continentia**, -ae, [continēns], f., self-restraint, moderation. vii. 52.

**continēō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [com- + teneō], 2, hold together; hold; hold back, keep in hand; keep, retain, detain, shut in; of places and regions, hem in, bound, border; of space, fill (i. 38); of a rite, pass, consist of (vii. 2). [contain.

**contingō**, -tingere, -tigi, -tactus, [com- + tangō], 3, touch, extend to, border on, reach; happen, fall to the lot of (i. 43). [contact.

**continuātiō**, -ōnis, [verb continui], f., succession. iii. 29. [continuation.

**continuō**, [continuus], adv., forthwith, immediately, at once.

**continuus**, -a, -um, [com-, cf. teneō], adj., successive, uninterrupted. [continuous.

**cōntiō**, -ōnis, [for \*coventiō, co-, cf. veniō], f., assembly, meeting (v. 52, vii. 52); address, harangue. **hāc habitā cōntiōne**, having delivered this address (vii. 53).

**cōntiōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, [cōntiō], 1, dep., address an assembly, make an address. C. 1. 7.

**contrā**, [related to com-], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., opposite, in opposition, on the other side; on the other

hand, on the contrary (v. 31). **contrā atque**, otherwise than, contrary to what (iv. 13).

(2) As prep., with acc. only, opposite to, facing, over against, contrary to; against, in hostility to, to the disadvantage of, in spite of; in reply to (v. 29).

**contrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, [com- + trahō], 3, bring together, collect; draw in, contract, make smaller (v. 49; vii. 40). [contract.

**contrārius**, -a, -um, [contrā], adj., opposite, contrary. **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary (vii. 30). [contrary.

**contrōversia**, -ae, [contrōversus], f., dispute, debate, controversy, quarrel. **minuere contrōversias**, to settle the questions at issue (v. 26; vi. 23). [controversy.

**contumēlia**, -ae, f., insult, indignity; of waves, buffeting (iii. 13). [contumely.

**convalescō**, -valēscere, -valui, [com- + valēscō, inch. from valeō], 3, grow strong, get well, recover. vi. 36. [convalesce.

**convallis**, -is, [com- + vallis], f., valley, ravine, defile.

**convehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, [com- + vehō], 3, bring together, collect, store. vii. 74.

**conveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum est, [com- + veniō], 4, come together, gather, assemble, meet, come in a body; come to an assembly (v. 56); be agreed upon (i. 36, ii. 19); impers., be fitting (vii. 85); fall in with, meet (i. 27). [convene.

**conventus**, -ūs, [cf. conveniō], m., assembly, meeting; court. [convent.

**conversus**, see convertō.

**convertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [com- + vertō], 3, turn, direct, turn about, wheel around; change (i. 41). **conversa signa inferre**, to face



about and advance (i. 25; ii. 26).  
[convert.

**Convictolitāvis**, -is, acc. -im, (vii. 55), m., (kon'' vjk-tq-lj-tā' vis), an Aeduan whose claims to the office of Vergobret were sustained by Caesar.

**convictus**, see **convincō**.

**convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victus, [com- + vincō], 3, *prove clearly, establish, prove* (i. 40). [convict.

**convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com- + vocō], 1, *call together, summon, assemble*. [convoke.

**coōrior**, -oriri, -ortus, [co- + orior], 4, dep., *arise*; of storm and wind, *arise, rise, spring up*; of war, *break out* (iii. 7).

**coōrtus**, see **coōrior**.

**cōpia**, -ae, [= co-opia, from co- + ops], f., *quantity, abundance, supply, plenty*. Pl., **cōplae**, -ārum, means, *resources, wealth*; *forces, troops*.

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [cōpia], adj., *well-supplied, wealthy, rich*. i. 23. [copious.

**cōpula**, -ae, [co- + ap in aptus], f., *band*; pl., *grappling-hooks* (iii. 13). [copula.

**cor**, cordis, n., *heart*. cordi esse, *to be dear* (vi. 19). [cordial.

**cōram**, [co-, cf. ōs, *face*], adv., *face to face, in person*. cōram perspicit (v. 11) or cernit (vi. 8), *he sees with his own eyes*. As prep., with the ablative, *in the presence of*.

**Coriosolitā**, -um, m., pl., (kō'' rj-q-sol' j-tēz), a people along the north-western coast of Gaul.

**corium**, -i, n., *hide*. vii. 22.

**Cornēlius**, -a, -um, adj., of *Cornelius*, *Cornelian*. castra Cornēlla, *Cornelian camp*, near Utica (C. II. 37).

**cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn*; of a deer, *antler* (vi. 26); of an army, *wing*.

**corōna**, -ae, [= κορώνη], f., *crown*,

*wreath* (III. 16); of soldiers, *continuous cordon, cordon* (vii. 72). [crown.

**corpus**, -oris, n., *body*. [corporal. **corripō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [com- + rapiō], 3, *snatch up; seize, carry away* (C. III. 64).

**corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [com- + rumpō, *break*], 3, *spoil, destroy*. vii. 55, 64. [corrupt. **cortex**, corticis, m. and f., *bark of a tree*. ii. 33, C. III. 49.

**Cōrus**, -i, m., *northwest wind*. v. 7.

**coss.**, = cōnsulibus, from cōnsul.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, [cotidiō], adj., *daily*; *ordinary, usual*.

**cotidiō**, [quot + diēs], adv., *daily, every day*.

**Cotta**, -ae, m.:

(1) *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, see *Aurunculeius*.

(2) *L. Aurelius Cotta* (ā-rē' lī-ūs kot' a), consul in 65 B.C. C. I. 6.

**Cotnātus**, -i, m., (kot-ū-ā'tus), a leader of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

**Cotus**, -i, m., (kō' tūs), an Aeduan, rival of Convictolitavis for the office of Vergobret. vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.

**crassitūdō**, -inis, [crassus, *thick*], f., *thickness*. iii. 13; vii. 73.

**Crassus**, -i, m., (kras' ūs):

(1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, member of the triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C.; perished in the disastrous Parthian expedition, 53 B.C. i. 21; iv. 1.

(2) *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, B.C. 58-56; returning to Rome in 55, he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C. i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 9, 11, 20-27.

(3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, elder son of the triumvir, quaestor in Caesar's army after his brother

- Publius left Gaul. v. 24, 46, 47; vi. 6.
- Crāstinus**, -i, [orās], m., (kras' tī-nus), a brave soldier in Caesar's army. C. III. 91, 99.
- crātēs**, -is, f., *wicker-work, wattle; hurdle, fascine*. [crate, grate.
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, comp. **crēbrior**, sup. **crēberrimus**, adj., *thick, numerous, frequent, a great many*.
- crēbrō**, comp. **crēbrius**, sup. **crēberrimē**, [crēber], adv., *frequently, in quick succession*. vii. 41.
- crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, 3, *trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign* (vi. 31). [creed, credit.
- cremō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *burn; burn to death* (i. 4.) [cremate.
- creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *create, make; choose, elect, appoint*. [create.
- crēcō**, **crēcere**, **crēvi**, **crētus**, 3, *inch., grow; become great, become powerful* (i. 20); of a river, *become swollen* (vii. 55). [crescent.
- Crētēs**, -um, accusative **Crētas**, [Κρήτες], m., pl., *Cretans, inhabitants of Crete*.
- Critognātus**, -i, m., (krit-og-nā' tus), a prominent Arvernian. vii. 77, 78.
- cruciātus**, -ūs, [cruciō, *torture*], m., *torture, cruelty, torment, suffering*.
- crūdēlītās**, -tātis, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, barbarity*. [cruelty.
- crūdēlīter**, comp. **crūdēlius**, sup. **crūdēlissimē**, [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty*. i. 31; vii. 38.
- crūs**, **crūris**, n., *leg*. vi. 27.
- cubile**, -is, [cf. cubō, *lie down*], n., *bed, resting-place*. vi. 27.
- culmen**, -inis, n., *height, summit, top*. iii. 2. [culminate.
- culpa**, -ae, f., *blame, fault, error*. iv. 27; v. 52. [culpable.
- cultūra**, -ae, [cf. colō], f., *tilling, cultivation*. [culture.
- cultus**, -ūs, [colō], m., *cultivation, care; mode of life, civilization*. [cult.
- cum**, prep. with ablative only, *with, along with, together with*.
- In composition the earlier form **oom-** is used, which remains unchanged before **b**, **p**, **m**, but is changed to **col-** or **con-** before **l**, **cor-** or **con-** before **r**, **con-** before other consonants, and **co-** before vowels and **h**; implies doing anything in concert with others, or thoroughly and completely.
- cum**, conj., temporal, *when, while, as often as, as; causal, since; adversative, although*. **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also*. **cum primum**, *as soon as*.
- cunctātiō**, -ōnis, [cunctor], f., *delay, hesitation*. iii. 18, 24.
- cunctor**, -āri, -ātus, 1, dep., *delay, hesitate*. iii. 23; iv. 25.
- cūctus**, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all*. As noun, **cūctī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *all in a body* (vii. 11).
- cuneātīm**, [cuneātus, *cuneus*], adv., *in the form of a wedge; in wedge-shaped masses* (vii. 28).
- cuneus**, -i, m., *wedge; of troops, wedge-shaped mass* (vi. 40).
- cuniculus**, -i, m., *rabbit; in military language, underground passage, mine*. iii. 21; vii. 22, 24.
- cupidō**, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, ardently*.
- cupiditās**, -tātis, [cupidus], f., *ardent desire, eagerness*. [cupidity.
- cupīdus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. cupiō], adj., *desirous, eager for, fond of*.
- cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivi**, **cupītus**, 3, *desire; wish well to* (i. 18).
- cūr**, adv., *why? wherefore?*
- cūra**, -ae, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble*. [cure (noun).

**Cūriō**, -ōnis, m., *Gaius Scribonius Curio*, (scri-bō' nī-ūs kū' rī-ō), a lieutenant of Caesar's army. C. II. 3, 34 et seq.

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cūra], 1, *take care, provide for, superintend, arrange*. **nāvēs aedificandās cūrāre**, to have ships built (v. 1). [cure (verb)].

**currus**, -ūs, [cf. currō], m., *chariot*. **cursus**, -ūs, [cf. currō], m., *running; speed; course*. [course].

**cūstōdiā**, -ae, [cūstōs], f., *a watching; guard, watch*; pl., *watch stations* (C. II. 5). [custody].

**cūstōdiō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [cūstōs], 4, *guard, keep*. vi. 4.

**cūstōs**, -tōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper, watch*.

## D

**D.**, with proper names, = *Decimus*. **D = quingenti**, 500.

**d.**, see **a. d.**

**Dāci**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Dacians, Daci* (dā' ai), a people living north of the lower course of the Danube River, in the countries now called *Hungary and Rumania*. vi. 25.

**Damasippus**, -i, see *Licinius*.

**damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [damnum], 1, *condemn, sentence*. **capitis damnāre**, to condemn to death (C. III. 83). Part. as noun, **damnāti**, -ōrum, m., pl., *those condemned, criminals* (v. 55).

**damnum**, -i, n., *loss*. vi. 44.

**Dānuvius**, -i, m., *the Danube*. vi. 25.

**dē**, prep. with abl., denoting separation, *from, down from, away from; out of, of; from among; on account of, for, through, by; concerning, about, in respect to; after, during, in the course of, in*.

**dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbui**, **dēbitus**, [dē + habēō], 2, *owe; pass., be due;*

*followed by infin., ought, must, should*. [debit].

**dēcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [dē + cēdō], 3, *go away, retire, withdraw; avoid, shun; die* (vi. 19). **decem**, or **x**, indeclinable num., *ten*.

**dēceptus**, see **dēcipiō**.

**dēcernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus, [dē + cernō], 3, *pass judgment, decide; resolve upon, resolve, determine; assign by vote* (C. I. 6).

**dēcērtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + cērtō, contend], 1, *fight to a finish, fight a decisive battle*.

**dēcēssus**, -ūs, [dēcēdō], m., *departure, withdrawal*. [decease].

**Decetia**, -ae, f., (dē-ae' sh[y]ē), a town of the Aeduan, on the Liger (*Loire*). vii. 33.

**dēcīdō**, -cidere, -cidi, [dē + cadō], 3, *fall down, fall off*. [deciduous].

**decimus**, -a, -um, or **x**, [decem], num. a.ij., *tenth*. [decimal].

**Decimus**, -i, m., (des' i-mus), a Roman first name.

**dēcipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [dē + capiō], 3, *catch; deceive* (i. 14). [deceive].

**dēclārō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + clārō, from clārus], 1, *make clear, announce*. i. 50. [declare].

**dēclivis**, -e, [dē + clivus], adj., *sloping, descending*. As noun, **dēclivis**, n., pl., *slopes, declivities* (vii. 88).

**dēclivitās**, -tātis, [dēclivis], f., *descent*. [declivity].

**dēcrētum**, -i, [dēcernō], n., *decree, decision*. [decree].

**decumānus**, -a, -um, [decimus], adj., *of a tenth part, decuman*. **decumāna porta**, *rear gate of the Roman camp, opposite the porta praetoria*.

**decuriō**, -ōnis, [decuria], m., *decursion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, consisting of 10 horsemen*.

**dēcurrō**, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursurus, [dē + currō], 3, *run down, rush down, hasten*.

**dēdecus**, -oris, [dē + decus, honor], n, *disgrace, dishonor*. iv. 25.

**dēditicius**, -ī, [dēditus, from dēdō], adj., *that has surrendered, subject*. As noun, **dēditicīi**, -ōrum, m., pl., *prisoners of war, captives*.

**dēditio**, -ōnis, [dēdō], f., *surrender*. accipere or recipere in dēditionem, *to receive by capitulation*. In dēditionem venire, *to surrender* (vi. 3, 9).

**dēditus**, -a, -um, [part. of dēdō], adj., *devoted* (vi. 16).

**dēdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [dē + dō], 3, *give up, surrender; devote* (iii. 22).

**dēducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [dē + dūcō], 3, *lead down; lead away, lead off, withdraw; lead, induce; conduct, bring; of ships, draw down, launch* (v. 2, 23); *bring home as a bride, marry* (v. 14). [deduce.

**dēfatigātiō**, -ōnis, [dēfatigō], f., *weariness, exhaustion*. iii. 19.

**dēfatigō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + fatigō, weary], 1, *tire out, exhaust*.

**dēfectiō**, -ōnis, [dēficiō], f., *a failing; desertion, revolt*. [defection.

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, 3, *ward off, repel; defend, guard, protect*. [defend.

**dēfēnsiō**, -ōnis, [dēfendō], f., *defence*. ii. 7; vii. 23.

**dēfēnsor**, -ōris, [dēfendō], m., *defender, protector; of piles protecting a bridge, guards* (iv. 17).

**dēfēnsus**, see dēfendō.

**dēferō**, -ferre, -tullī, -lātus, [dē + ferō], irr., *bring down; carry away, bear away; bring (to), carry (to); refer (to), confer upon, lay before; report, announce*. [defer.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, [part. of dēfetiscor], adj., *worn out, exhausted*. As noun, **dēfessus**, -ī, m., *one exhausted* (iii. 4), pl., *the exhausted* (vii. 25, 41, C. III. 94).

**dēfetiscor**, -ī, dēfessus, [dē + fatiscor], 3, dep., *become exhausted* (vii. 88).

**dēficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [dē + faciō], 3, *fail, be lacking; fall away, revolt, rebel*. dēficere animō, *to lose heart* (vii. 30). [deficit.

**dēfigō**, -figere, -fixī, fixus, [dē + figō, fasten], 3, *make fast, fix, fasten; stick fast* (v. 44).

**dēfiniō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [dē + finiō], 4, *set bounds to; define, fix, set* (vii. 83); *apportion* (C. III. 82). [define.

**dēfore**, see dēsum.

**dēfōrmis**, -e, comp. -ior, [dē + fōrma], adj., *ill-shaped* (iv. 2); *unsightly* (vii. 23). [deform.

**dēfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, [dē + fugiō], 3, *flee from, shun, avoid*.

**dēficiō**, -icere, -īcī, -iectus, [dē + iaciō], 3, *throw down, cast down, throw; dislodge, drive from, rout; of a ship, pass., be carried* (iv. 28); *of lots, cast* (C. III. 6); *kill, destroy; disappoint*. [dejection.

**dēiectus**, see dēficiō.

**dēiectus**, -us, [dēiciō], m., *descent, slope, declivity*. ii. 8, 22, 29.

**dēinceps**, [dein, = deinde, + CAP in capiō], adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn; without interruption* (III. 29).

**dēinde**, [dē + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next*.

**dēlātus**, see dēferō.

**dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of dēliciō], 1, *please; in pass., have pleasure in* (iv. 2). [delectation.

**dēlectus**, see dēligō.

ēmissus, see ēmittō.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ex + mittō], 3, send out; hurl, cast, shoot, discharge (ii. 23); throw away, let go (i. 25). [emit.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptus, 3, buy, purchase. i. 16; ii. 33.

ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus, [ex + nāscor], 3, dep., grow out; of branches, shoot out (ii. 17).

enim [nam], conj., postpositive, for, for in fact. neque enim, and (with good reason) for . . . not, for in fact . . . not.

ēnitor, -ī, ēnisus, [ex + nitor], 3, dep., make effort (C. ii. 6); force one's way out (C. ii. 34).

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex + nūntiō], 1, report, reveal, disclose; [enounce.

eo, abl. of is (44).

eo, [cf. is], adv., thither, to that place, there.

eo, ire, īl, itūrus, Itum est, irr., go, pass, march, advance.

ēōdem [Idem], adv., to the same place; to the same thing (i. 14), to the same end (iv. 11).

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., riding with saddle-cloths. iv. 2.

ephippium, -ī, [ἐπιππιον, from ἐπι + ππος], n., saddle-cloth. iv. 2.

Ēpirus, -ī, [Ἐπειρος], f., (e-pī' rūs), a province in the northern part of Greece, east of the Adriatic. C. iii. 47, 61.

epistula, -ae, [ἐπιστολή], f., letter, despatch. v. 48. [epistle.

Eporōdorix, -īgis, m., (ep-o-red' o-riks):

(1) A leader of the Aeduans, captured by Caesar. vii. 67.

(2) A young Aeduan of rank, for a time friendly to Caesar, afterwards one of the commanders of the Gallic army raised for the relief of

Alesia. vii. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 64, 76.

epulae, -arum, f., pl., feast. vi. 28.

eques, -itis, [equus], m., horseman, cavalryman, trooper; as a member of a social order, knight.

equester, -tris, -tre, [eques], adj., of cavalry, cavalry-. [equestrian.

equitātus, -tis, [equitō, ride], m., cavalry; knighthood, collectively knights (i. 31).

equus, -ī, m., horse. [equine.

Eratothenēs, -is, [Ἐρατοθένης], m., (er-a-tos' the-nēs), a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; died about B.C. 196; librarian of the great library at Alexandria in Egypt, and famous as a geographer, mathematician, historian, and grammarian. vi. 24.

erōctus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [part. of erigō], adj., high, elevated. iii. 13. [erect (adj.).

ēreptus, see ēripiō.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards. v. 54.

ergō, adv., therefore, then. vii. 77.

erigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [ex + regō], 3, raise to a standing position, (vi. 27); erect. [erect (verb).

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [ex + rapiō, seize], 3, take away, snatch away; rescue, save (i. 53). ēē ēripere, to rescue one's self, make one's escape.

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, wander; be mistaken, delude one's self. [err.

error, -ōris, [errō], m., wandering; mistake (C. iii. 73). [error.

erumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [ex + rumpō, break], 3, burst forth, sally forth. iii. 5. [erupt.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [ērumpō], f., a bursting forth; sally, sortie. [eruption.

essedarius, -ī, [essedum], m., fighter from a chariot, chariot-fighter.

**essedum**, -ī, n., two-wheeled war-chariot. iv. 32, 33; v. 9, 16, 17.

**Esuviī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (ē-sū' vī-ī), a people in northwestern Gaul.

**et**, conj., and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

**etiam** [et + iam], conj., also; even. **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

**etiam** [et + ai], conj., although, though, even if.

**evādō**, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus, [ex + vādō], 3, escape. iii. 19. [evade.

**evellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, [ex + vellō, pluck], 3, pull out. i. 25.

**eveniō**, -venire, -veni, -ventūrus, [ex + veniō], 4, turn out, happen. iv. 25.

**eventus**, -ūs, [cf. eveniō], m., outcome, result; chance, fortune (vi. 42); fate, accident (iv. 31). [event.

**evocātus**, -ī, [part. of evocō], m., veteran volunteer, a soldier serving voluntarily after the completion of his time of service. vii. 65.

**evocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + vocō], 1, call out, call forth, call, summon; invite (v. 58). [evoke.

**evolō**, -āre, -āvi, [ex + volō, fly], 1, fly forth, rush out, dash out.

**ex**, often before consonants ē, prep. with abl., from, out of, down from; since, after; of; by reason of, by, because of, in consequence of; according to, with, in, on. **ex unā parte**, on one side.

In composition **ex** becomes **ef** before f, ē before b, d, g, i consonant, l, m, n, and v.

**exāctus**, see **exigō**.

**exagitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + agitō, freq. of agō], 1, disturb, harass. ii. 29; iv. 1.

**exāminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-

**āmen**, tongue of a balance], 1, weigh, v. 12. [examine.

**exanimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exanimus], 1, deprive of life, kill; pass., be out of breath, weakened, exhausted (ii. 23, iii. 19; C. iii. 92).

**exārdēscō**, -ārdēscere, -ārsi, -ārsūrus, [ex + ārdēscō], 3, take fire; be incensed (v. 4).

**exaudiō**, -dīre, -dīvi, -dītus, [ex + audiō], 4, hear distinctly, hear plainly.

**excōdō**, -cōdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, [ex + cōdō], 3, go out, leave, withdraw, depart. [exceed.

**excellēns**, -entis, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [excellō], adj., surpassing, excellent. C. iii. 99. [excellent.

**excellō**, -cellere, participial adj. **excelsus**, 3, be eminent, surpass. vi. 13. [excel.

**excelsus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [part. of excellō], adj., high (vi. 26). [excelsior.

**exceptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of excipio], 1, catch up with the hands, take hold of (vii. 47).

**exceptus**, see **excipio**.

**excōdō**, -cōdere, -cōdi, -cōsus, [ex + caedō], 3, cut out; cut down (vii. 50). [excise.

**excipio**, -cipere, -cōpi, -ceptus, [ex + capio], 3, take out; take up (vii. 3); take in (vii. 28); cut off, catch (vi. 28, 35; vii. 20); receive, withstand (i. 52, iii. 5, iv. 17, C. iii. 92); cope with, encounter (iii. 13); take the place of, relieve, succeed, follow (v. 16; vii. 51, 88, C. ii, 7, iii. 87). [except.

**excitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex + citō, move], 1, erect, raise rapidly (iii. 14; v. 40); stir up, rouse, spur on; kindle (vii. 24). [excite.

**excludō**, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [ex + claudō], 3, shut out, shut

**extorqueō**, -torquēre, -torsī, -torsus, [ex + torquēō, *twist*], 2, *force from; wrest from* (vii. 54). [extort.  
**extrā** [exter], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond without*. [extra.  
**extrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [ex + trahō, *draw*], 3, *draw out; draw out to no purpose, waste* (v. 22). [extract.  
**extrūdō**, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, [ex + trūdō], 3, *thrust out; shut out* (iii. 12). [extrude.  
**exuō**, -uere, -ul, -ūtus, 3, *strip, strip off, despoil, deprive*.  
**exūrō**, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [ex + ūrō, *burn*], 3, *burn up*. i. 5.

## F.

**faber**, fabri, m., *skilled workman, mechanic, artisan*. v. 11. [fabric.

**Fabius**, -ī, m., (fā' bi-ūs):

(1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus* (mak' si-mūs), called *Allobrogicus* (al-q-broij' i-kūs), in honor of his victory over the Allobroges, Arvernians, and Ruteni in the year of his consulship, B.C. 121. i. 45.

(2) *Gaius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic War, and in the first year of the Civil War.

(3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion, killed at Gergovia. vii. 47, 50.

(4) *Fabius, the Paelignian*, a soldier in Curio's army. C. II. 35.

**facile**, comp. **facilius**, sup. **facillimē**, [facilis], adv., *easily, readily*.

**facilis**, -e, comp. **facillor**, sup. **facillimus**, [cf. faciō], adj., *easy, not difficult, not hard*. [facile.

**facinus**, -oris, [faciō], n., *action; wicked action, misdeed, crime*.

**faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, 3, *do, make; act, perform, accomplish, form; bring about, cause; furnish, give*. For pass., **fiō**, **fiēri**, **factus sum**, see **fiō**. **certiōrem facere**,

*to inform. imperāta facere, to obey commands. iter facere, to march. vim facere, to use violence* (i. 8, v. 7). [factor.

**factiō**, -ōnis, [faciō], f., *party, political party; league*. [faction.

**factū**, pass. supine of **faciō**.

**factum**, -ī, [faciō], n., *deed, action, achievement*. [fact.

**facultās**, -ātis, [facilis], f., *ability, capability; opportunity, chance; abundance; supply* (iii. 9). Pl., *resources, wealth*. [faculty.

**fāgus**, -ī, f., *beech-tree*. v. 12.

**fallō**, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsus**, 3, *deceive, cheat; disappoint*.

**falsus**, -a, -um, [part. of fallō], adj., *false, ungrounded*. [false.

**falx**, **falcis**, f., *sickle; sickle-shaped hook*.

**fāma**, -ae, [cf. fāri, *to speak*], f., *report, rumor, common talk; reputation, fame* (vii. 77). [fame.

**famēs**, -is, f., *hunger, starvation*. [famine.

**famīlia**, -ae, [famulus, *servant*], f., *body of slaves in one household, household; family* (vii. 33); including the whole body of serfs and retainers under the authority of a nobleman, *retinue* (i. 4). **pater famīliae**, *head of a family, household* (vi. 19); **patrēs famīliae**, *heads of families* (C. II. 44). **mātrēs famīliae**, *matrons* (i. 50; vii. 26, 47, 48). **antiquissimā famīliā**, *of a very old family* (vii. 32). **amplissimā famīliā**, *of a very distinguished family* (vii. 37). [family.

**familiāris**, -e, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [famīlia], adj., *belonging to a family, private. rēs familiāris, private property, estate, private fortune* (i. 18; vii. 14, 64). As noun, **familiāris**, -is, m., *intimate friend, companion*. [familiar.

**familiaritās, -ātis**, [familiaris], f., intimacy, close friendship. [familiarity].

**fānum, -ī, n.**, shrine. C. I. 6. [fane. fās, only nom. and acc. sing. in use, [cf. fārī, to speak], indecl., n., right according to the laws of God and nature. fās est, it is right, allowable, lawful; of an event, it is predestined (I. 50).

**fascia, -īs, m.**, bundle of reeds or twigs; especially pl., fascēs, -ium, the fasces, a bundle of rods with an axe, carried before the highest magistrates as an emblem of authority (C. III. 71).

**fastigātō** [fastigātus], adv., sloping; slanting (iv. 17).

**fastigātus, -a, -um**, [cf. fastigium], adj., sloping, sloping down. ii. 8.

**fastigium, -ī, n.**, of a roof, top; of a hill, summit, peak (vii. 69); sloping side, slope, descent, declivity.

**fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ī**, weary. C. III. 95. [fatigue].

**fātum, -ī**, [cf. fārī, to speak], n., fate, destiny. i. 39. [fate].

**Faustus, -ī**, see Sulla.

**faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, 2**, be favorable, be inclined toward, favor, countenance. [favor].

**fax, facis, f.**, torch, firebrand. vii. 24.

**fēlicitās, -ātis**, [fēlix, happy], f., good fortune (i. 40, C. III. 73); success (vi. 43). [felicity].

**fēliciter**, comp. fēlicius, sup. fēlicissimē, [fēlix], adv., with good fortune, luckily, happily (iv. 25; C. I. 7).

**fēmina, -ae, f.**, woman; female. vi. 21, 26. [feminine].

**femur, -oris and -inis, n.**, thigh. v. 35; vii. 73. [femoral].

**fera, -ae**, [ferus, wild], f., wild beast, wild animal. vi. 25, 28.

**ferāx, -ācis**, comp. ferāciōr, sup.

ferācissimus, [ferō], adj., fertile, productive. ii. 4. [feracious].

**ferō, adv.**, almost, nearly; with words denoting time, about; for the most part, as a rule, usually, generally.

**ferō, ferre, tull, lātus, irr.**, bear, carry, bring; endure, support, suffer, hold out against; bear away; obtain, receive; assert, report, say (vi. 17). signa ferre, to advance.

**ferramentum, -ī**, [ferrum], n., iron tool. v. 42.

**ferrāria, -ae**, [ferrum], f., iron mine. vii. 22.

**ferreus, -a, -um**, [ferrum], adj., of iron, iron. ferreae manūs, grappling-hooks (C. II. 6). [ferreous].

**ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron (v. 12); figuratively, the iron, with a barbed point, at the end of a pike (i. 25), sword (v. 30).

**fertilis, -e**, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ferō], adj., fertile, fruitful, productive. vi. 24; vii. 13. [fertile].

**fertilitās, -ātis**, [fertilis], f., productivity. ii. 4. [fertility].

**ferus, -a, -um**, adj., wild; rude, savage, fierce. [fierce].

**fervefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factus**, [ferveō + faciō], 3, make hot, heat, heat red-hot. v. 43; vii. 22.

**ferveō, -ēre, 2**, be boiling hot, be heated, glow. Present Participle as Adj., fervēns, -tis, red-hot (v. 43). [fervent].

**fibula, -ae**, [cf. figō, fasten], f., clasp; brace, bolt (iv. 17).

**fidēlis, -e**, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [fidēs], adj., faithful, trustworthy (vii. 76); true, loyal (iv. 21).

**fidēs, -ei, f.**, good faith, fidelity, loyalty; pledge of good faith, promise; confidence, trust; protection, alliance. [faith].

**fiducia, -ae**, [fidus], f., reliance, confidence, assurance. [fiduciary].



oblātus, see offerō.

obliquē, [obliquus], adv., *obliquely*,  
with a slant. iv. 17.

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., *slanting*,  
*crosswise*. vii. 73. [oblique.

oblīvīscor, -līvīsci, -lītus, 3, dep.,  
*forget*. [oblivion.

obses, -idia, [cf. obsideō], m. and  
f., *hostage*.

obsessiō, -ōnis, [cf. obsideō], f.,  
*siege* (vii. 36); *blockade* (vi. 36).  
[obsession.

obsessus, see obsideō.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus, [ob



Figure 203. — A Roman document, tied and sealed.

The writing is on the two inside faces of the two tablets, which were securely tied together. The seals of the 8 witnesses were stamped in wax over the ends of the cord, a groove of suitable width being cut in the wood of the tablets for the purpose.

The names of those who stamped their seals were written with ink on the wood at the right, in the genitive case. The number of witnesses was often 7 (cf. p. 467), sometimes 8, as here, sometimes 9 or more.

The illustration is from a charred tablet found at Pompeii, restored; it was sealed about 100 years after Caesar's death.

The names of the first three and last three witnesses are: L. LAELIUS FUSCUS, SEPTIMUS NONIUS SCAMANDER, P. AEPULANUS CRYSANTUS; L. MELISSAEUS COERASUS, L. CORNELIUS DEXTER, and L. NAEVOLEIUS NYMPHUS. The fourth and fifth names are uncertain.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob +  
sacrō, from sacer], 1, *beseek* in  
the name of that which is sacred,  
*implore*, *beg*. [obsecrate.

obsequētia, -ae, [obsequēns], f.,  
*compliance*, *compliance*. vii. 29.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob +  
servō], 1, *watch*, *observe* (vii. 16);  
*keep track of* (vi. 18); *heed*, *comply*  
with (i. 45; v. 35). [observe.

+ sedeō], 2, *besiege*, *blockade*; of  
roads, *seize upon*, *block* (iii. 23, 24;  
v. 40). [obsess.

obsidiō, -ōnis, [cf. obsideō], f., *siege*,  
*blockade*; *oppression* (iv. 19).

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob +  
signō], 1, *seal up*, *seal* (Fig. 203).

obstō, -istere, -stitī, [ob +  
stō], 3, *withstand*. vii. 29.

obstinātē [obstinātus, part. of ob-

**stinō**, *persist*, adv., *firmly, steadfastly, persistently*. v. 6.

**obstrictus**, -a, -um, see **obstringō**.

**obstringō**, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, [ob + stringō, tie], 3, bind, place under obligation. i. 9, 31.

**obstruō**, -struere, -struxī, -structus, [ob + struō, pile], 3, block up, stop up. v. 50, 51; vii. 41. [obstruct.

**obtemperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + temperō], 1, submit to, obey.

**obtentūrus**, fut. act. part. of **obtinēō**.

**obtestor**, -ārī, -ātus, [ob + testor], 1, dep., call as witness, appeal to; implore, adjure.

**obtinēō**, -tinēre, -tinul, -tentus, [ob + teneō], 2, hold fast, maintain, keep, retain, hold (i. 3); get possession of, obtain (i. 18; vi. 12); possess, occupy, inhabit (i. 1). [obtain.

**obtrectātiō**, -ōnis, [obtrectō], f., disparagement. C. i. 7.

**obveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob + veniō], 4, fall in with, encounter (ii. 23); fall to the lot of, fall to (vii. 28, 81, C. i. 6).

**obviam**, [ob + acc. of *via*], adv., in the way, against. **obviam Caesari proficiscitur**, goes to meet Caesar (vii. 12).

**occāsiō**, -ōnis, [cf. **occidō**], f., opportunity, favorable moment; surprise (vii. 45). [occasion.

**occāsus**, -ūs, [cf. **occidō**], m., going down, setting. **sōlis occāsus**, sunset, the west (i. 1; iv. 28).

**occidēns**, -entis, [part. of **occidō**], adj., of the sun, setting. **occidēns sōl**, the west (v. 13). [occident.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, [ob + cadō], 3, fall (vi. 37).

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [ob + caedō], 3, kill, slay.

**occlusus**, -a, -um, see **occludō**.

**occultātiō**, -ōnis, [occultō], f., concealment. vi. 21.

**occultē**, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [occultus], adv., secretly, in secret.

**occultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **occulō**, cover], 1, hide, conceal; keep secret.

**occultus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [part. of **occulō**, cover], adj., hidden, secret, concealed. As noun, **ex occultō**, from ambush, in ambush (vi. 34); **sē in occultum abdere**, to go into hiding (vii. 30); in **occultō**, in hiding, in concealment (ii. 18; vi. 35; vii. 27, 35), in a secret place (i. 31, 32). [occult.

**occupātiō**, -ōnis, [occupō], f., employment, engagement. [occupation.

**occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob, cf. **capō**], 1, seize upon, seize, take possession of; fill, occupy (ii. 8); of the attention, engage, occupy. **occupātus**, -a, -um, as adj., engaged; busied (ii. 19). [occupy.

**occurō**, -currere, -currī, rarely -currī, -currus, [ob + currō], 3, run to meet, come to meet, meet; meet with, fall in with, encounter; match, offset (vii. 22); come into mind, occur (vii. 85). [occur.

**Oceanus**, -ī, [Ὠκεανός], m., Ocean, considered by Caesar as one body of water, including the Atlantic Ocean, the English Channel, and the North Sea; the sea. [ocean.

**Ocelum**, -ī, n., (ōs' e-lum), a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin. i. 10.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, [octō], numeral ord. adj., eighth. [octave.

**octingenti**, -aē, -a, or **DCCC**, [octō + centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

**octō**, or **VIII**, indeclinable num. adj., eight. [October.

**octōdecim**, or XVIII, [octō + de-  
cem], indeclinable num. adj.,  
*eighteen*.

**Ocotōfirus**, -ī, m., (ok-to-dū' rūs),  
chief town of the Veragri, in the  
Rhône valley southeast of Geneva.  
iii. 1.

**octōgēni**, -ae, -a, or LXXX, [octō],  
distrib. num. adj., *eighty in each  
case*.

**octōgintā**, or LXXX, [octō], inde-  
clinable num. adj., *eighty*.

**octōni**, -ae, -a, [octō], distrib. num.  
adj., *eight each, eight at a time*.

**oculus**, -ī, m., *eye*. [oculist.

**ōdi**, **ōdiase**, **ōsūrus**, def., *hate*.

**odium**, -ī, [ōdi], n., *hatred*. [odium.

**offendō**, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsus,  
3, *hit against; hurt, wound* (i. 19).

Impersonal, **offendi posset**, *injury  
could be inflicted, a disaster might  
occur* (vi. 36); **esset offēsum**,  
*a reverse had been experienced* (C.  
III. 72). [offend.

**offēnsiō**, -ōnis, [offendō], f., *hurt-  
ing, wounding; reverse*.

**offerō**, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus, [ob  
+ ferō], irr., *bring before; offer,  
present; put in one's way, afford*.  
**sē offerre**, *to offer one's self* (vii.  
89), *expose one's self* (vii. 77), *rush  
against* (iv. 12). [offer.

**officium**, -ī, [for \*opificium, ope  
+ fac in factō], n., *service, duty;  
allegiance; sense of duty* (i. 40).  
[office.

**Ollovicō**, -ōnis, m., (o-lov' i-kō), a  
king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31.

**omittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus,  
[ob + mittō], 3, *lay aside, throw  
away* (vii. 88); *neglect, disregard* (ii.  
17). **omnibus omisela rēbus**,  
*laying aside everything else* (vii. 34).  
[omit.

**omnino**, [omnis], adv., *altogether;  
after negatives, at all; with numer-*

*als, in all, altogether, only*. **nihil**  
**omnino**, *nothing at all*.

**omnis**, -e, adj., *every, all; as a whole*.  
As noun, pl., **omnēs**, -ium, m., *all  
men, all; omnia, -ium, n., *all  
things, everything*. [omnibus.*

**onerārius**, -a, -um, [onus], adj., *of  
burden; see nāvīs*. [onerary.

**onerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [onus], 1,  
*load*. v. 1. [onerate.

**onus**, -eris, n., *load, burden, weight;  
cargo* (v. 1). [onus.

**opera**, -ae, [opus], f., *effort, work,  
pains; service, aid, assistance*. **dare  
operam**, *to take pains*. [opera.

**opiniō**, -ōnis, [opinor, think], f.,  
*idea, notion; good opinion, reputa-  
tion; expectation*. **opiniō timō-  
ris**, *impression of fear*. **iustitiāe  
opiniō**, *reputation for fair dealing*  
(vi. 24). [opinion.

**oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, 2, im-  
pers., *it is necessary, it is needful; it  
behooves; ought; is proper* (vii. 33).

**oppidānus**, -a, -um, [oppidum],  
adj., *of the town*. As noun, **oppi-  
dāni**, -ōrum, m., pl., *townspeople,  
inhabitants of the town*.

**oppidum**, -ī, n., *fortified town, city;  
fortified enclosure, stronghold* (v. 21).

**oppleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, [ob +  
pleō], 2, *fill completely*. C. III. 73.

**oppōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus,  
[ob + pōnō], 3, *place over against,  
set against, oppose*. [oppose.

**opportūnē**, sup. -issimē, [opportū-  
nus], adv., *conveniently, seasonably,  
opportunately*.

**opportūnitās**, -ātis, [opportūnus],  
f., *fitness, favorableness, seasonable-  
ness; favorable situation, advan-  
tage*. [opportunity.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior,  
sup. -issimus, adj., *fit, suitable, fa-  
vorable, advantageous*. [opportune.

**oppositus**, -a, -um, [part. of op-

**pōnō**, adj., *placed opposite; lying in the way* (vii. 56). [opposite].  
**opprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus, [ob + premō], 3, *weigh down; overwhelm, crush; take by surprise, surprise, fall upon*. [oppress].  
**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, [oppugnō], f., *storming of a city or camp, assault, attack, besieging*.  
**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob + pugnō], 1, *attack, assault; storm, besiege; take by storming*.  
**ops**, **opis**, nom. and dat. sing. not in use, f., *help, power, might*. Pl., **opēs**, -um, *help* (vi. 21); *resources, means, wealth; influence; strength* (vii. 76). [opulent].  
**optātus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [part. of optō], adj., *desired; welcome* (vi. 42).  
**optimō**, see bene.  
**optimus**, see bonus.  
**opus**, n., used only in nom. and acc., *necessity, need*. **opus est**, *there is need, it is necessary*.  
**opus**, **operis**, n., *work, labor; that produced by labor, structure, works; line of works, fortification*. Cf. **quantus**. [opus].  
**ōra**, -ae, f., *coast, shore*. **ōra maritima**, *sea-coast* (iv. 20); *place put for people, inhabitants of the coast, people along the sea* (iii. 8, 16).  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, [ōrō], f., *speech, words, remarks, plea*. [oration].  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, [ōrō], m., *speaker; envoy* (iv. 27). [orator].  
**orbis**, -is, m., *circle*. **in orbem consistere**, *to form a circle* (v. 33).  
**orbis terrarum**, *the world* (vii. 29). [orb].  
**Orcynia**, -ae, f., (or-sin' i-ə), with **silva**, *the Hercynian forest*. vi. 24.  
**ōrdō**, -inis, m., *row, series; layer* (vii. 23); *rank, order; century* (half a maniple), *company* (i. 40,

v. 35); *officer commanding a century, centurion*. [order].  
**Orgetorix**, -igis, m., (or-jet' o-rīks), a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize the supreme power.  
**Ōricum**, -i, [Ōrikón], n., (or' i-cum), a seaport on the east coast of the Adriatic, now *Palaeocastro*, on the bay of Valona. C. III. 90.  
**oriēns**, -entis, [part. of orior], adj., *rising*. **oriēns sōl**, *rising sun; the east* (i. 1; v. 13; vii. 69). [orient].  
**orior**, **oriri**, **ortus**, 4, dep., *rise, arise; begin, spring from; start from* (i. 39). **oriēte sōle**, *at sunrise* (vii. 3). **ortū luce**, *at daybreak* (v. 8).  
**ōrnāmentum**, -i, [ōrnō], n., *decoration; distinction, honor* (i. 44; vii. 15). [ornament].  
**ōrnātus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [part. of ōrnō], adj., *equipped*. [ornate].  
**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *furnish, equip; provide* (vii. 33).  
**ōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ōs, mouth], 1, *plead, beg, entreat*. [orate].  
**ortus**, -ūs, [orior], m., *rising*. **ortus sōlis**, *sunrise* (vii. 41).  
**ortus**, see orior.  
**ōs**, **ōris**, n., *mouth; face* (v. 35; vi. 39; C. III. 99). [oral].  
**Osismī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (o-sis' mī), a small state in the northwest corner of Gaul.  
**ostendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [obs. for ob, + tendō], 3, *show, display; point out, set forth, declare*.  
**ostentātiō**, -ōnis, [ostentō], f., *display, show; ostentation* (vii. 53).  
**ostentātiōnis causā**, *in order to attract attention* (vii. 45). [ostentation].  
**ostentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of ostendō], 1, *display, show; with sō, show off* (vii. 19).

**ōtium**, -ī, n., *rest, quiet, peace*.  
**ōvum**, -ī, n., *egg*. iv. 10. [oval.]

P.

**P.** with proper names = **Pāblius**.  
**pābulātiō**, -ōnis, [pābulor], f., *foraging, getting fodder*. [pabulation].  
**pābulātor**, -ōris, [pābulor], m., *forager*. v. 17.

**pābulor**, -āri, -ātus, [pābulum], i, dep., *forage, obtain fodder*.

**pābulum**, -ī, n., *fodder, forage*. [pabulum].

**pācātus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [part. of pācō], adj., *peaceful, quiet*. [pacate].

**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pāx], i, *pacify, tranquillize*. [pacable].

**pactum**, -ī, [pactiscor], n., *agreement; manner, way* (vii. 83). [pact].

**Padua**, -ī, m., (pā' dya), *Po*, the great river of Northern Italy. v. 24.

**Paelignus**, -a, -um, *Paelignian, of the Paeligni* (pē-lig' nī), a people of Central Italy, whose chief city was Corfinium. C. II. 35.

**Paemāni**, -ōrum, m., pl., (pē-mā' nī), a people in Belgic Gaul. II. 4.

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.

**paenitet**, -ēre, -uit, 2, impers., *it makes sorry, it causes regret*. [penitent].

**pāgus**, -ī, m., *district, canton*, generally referring to the inhabitants rather than to the country; *clan*. [pagan].

**palam**, adv., *openly, publicly*.

**palma**, -ae, f., *palm of the hand; hand* (vi. 26, C. III. 98). [palm].

**palūdātus**, -a, -um, *wearing a general's cloak (palūdāmentum)*; as we say, *in uniform*. C. I. 6.

**palūs**, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, bog*.

**palūster**, -tris, -tre, [palūs], adj., *marshy, swampy* (vii. 20).

**pandō**, **pandere**, **pandi**, **passus**, 3, *spread out*; of hair, *dishevel* (vii. 48). **passis manibus**, *with hands outstretched*.

**pānis**, -is, m., *bread*; pl., *loaves of bread* (C. III. 48). [pantry].

**pār**, **paris**, adj., *like, similar, same; equal; corresponding* (vii. 74).

**pār atque**, *same as*. [par].

**parātus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [part. of parō], adj., *ready, prepared; provided*.

**parcō**, comp. -lus, [parcus], adv., *sparingly*. vii. 71.

**parcō**, **parcere**, **peperci** and **parsi**, **parsurus**, 3, *use sparingly* (vii. 71); with dat., *spare, give quarter to*.

**parēna**, -entis, [pariō], m. and f., *parent*. [parent].

**parentō**, -āre, -ātus, [parēns], i, *offer a sacrifice in honor of deceased parents or relatives; take vengeance for the death of any one, avenge* (vii. 17).

**pāreō**, **pārere**, **pāruī**, 2, *obey; submit to, be subject to*.

**pariō**, **parere**, **peperi**, **partus**, 3, *bring forth; obtain, get, acquire*.

**Parisii**, -ōrum, m., pl., (pā-rish' [y]i), a Gallic people on the Sequana (*Seine*); the name survives in *Paris*.



Figure 204. — A coin of the Parisii.

Gold. Obverse, head with decorative treatment of the hair.

Reverse, chariot design conventionalized, the outline of the horse alone being distinctive.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, i, *prepare, make ready, make ready for; obtain, secure*. [pare].

**pars**, **partis**, f., *part, portion, share, number; region, district, division; side, direction; party, faction* (vi. 11, l. 15). **pars maior**, *the majority*. **unā ex parte**, *on one side*. **in omnēs partēs**, *in every direction*. [**part**].

**Parthi**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Parthians*, a Scythian people in the region of the Caspian Sea. C. III. 82.

**particeps**, -cipis, [**pars**, cf. **capio**], adj., *sharing in*. C. III. 60. [**participle**].

**partim**, [acc. of **pars**], adv., *partly, in part*.

**partior**, **partiri**, **partitus**, [**pars**], 4, dep., *divide, divide up, share*. **Partitus** in a passive sense, *divided, shared*. [**partite**].

**partus**, see **pario**.

**parum**, comp. **minus**, sup. **minimū**. adv., *too little, not enough*. Comp., *less*. Sup., *least, very little; not at all, by no means*. [**minus**].

**parvulus**, -a, -um, [dim. of **parvus**], adj., *very small; very young; slight, trifling*.

**parvus**, -a, -um, comp. **minor**, sup. **minimus**, adj., *small, trifling, insignificant*. Comp., *smaller, less*. As noun, **minus**, n., *less*; **minimum**, n., *the least*. [**minimum**].

**passim**, [**passus**, from **pando**], adv., *in all directions* (iv. 14); *here and there* (C. II. 38).

**passus**, -us, m., *step, pace*; as a measure of length, *pace* (reckoned as a double step, from the place where either foot is raised to the place where the same foot rests on ground again), = 5 Roman feet, or 4 feet, 10½ inches by English measurement. **mille passus**, *mile*; pl., **milla passuum**, *miles*. [**pace**].

**passus**, see **pario**.

**passus**, see **patior**.

**patefaciō**, -facere, -fēci, -factus, pass., **patefiō**, -fieri, -factus, [**pateō** + **faciō**], 3, *lay open, open*.

**pateō**, -entis, comp. **patentior**, [part. of **pateō**], adj., *open*. [**patent**]. **pateō**, **patēre**, **patui**, 2, *be open, lie open, stand open; extend*.

**pater**, -tris, m., *father*. Pl., **patrēs**, -um, *fathers, forefathers*. [**paternal**]. **patiens**, -entis, [**patior**], adj., comp. **patientior**, sup. **patientissimus**, *long-suffering, patient*. C. III. 96. [**patient**].

**patienter**, comp. **patientius**, [**patiens**], adv., *patiently*. vii. 77.

**patientia**, -ae, [**patiens**], f., *endurance* (vi. 24); *forbearance* (vi. 36). [**patience**].

**patior**, **pati**, **passus**, 3, dep., *suffer, bear, endure; permit, allow*. [**passive**].

**patrius**, -a, -um, [**pater**], adj., *of a father; ancestral, of (their) forefathers* (ii. 15).

**patronus**, -i, [**pater**], m., *protector, patron*. vii. 40. [**patron**].

**patria**, -ae, [**patrius**, sc. *terra*], f., *native land, fatherland* (C. II. 7).

**patruus**, -i, [**pater**], m., *father's brother, uncle on the father's side*.

**paucitas**, -ātis, [**paucus**], f., *fewness, small number*. [**paucity**].

**paucus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *little*; pl., *few*. As noun, **pauci**, -ōrum, m., pl., *few, only a few*; n., pl., **pauca**, -ōrum, *a few words* (i. 44).

**paulatim**, [**paulum**], adv., *little by little, by degrees; gradually; one by one* (iv. 30).

**paulisper**, [**paulum**, **per**], adv., *for a short time, a little while*.

**paulō**, [abl. of **paulus**], adv., *by a little, just a little*.

**paululum** [**paulus**], adv., *a very little, only a little*. ii. 8.

**paulum**, [neut. acc. of **paulus**], adv., a little, somewhat.

**pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace*. [peace.]

**peccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *do wrong*.

**pectus**, -oris, n., *breast*. [pectoral.]

**pecūnia**, -ae, [cf. **pecus**, *cattle*], f., *property; money*. Pl., **pecūniae**, *contributions of money* (C. 1. 6).

**pecuniārius**, -a, -um, [**pecūnia**], adj., *of money, pecuniary*. [pecuniary.]

**pecus**, -oris, n., *cattle*, general term for domestic animals; *flesh of cattle, meat* (IV. 1).

**pedālīs**, -e, [**pēs**], adj., *measuring a foot, a foot thick*. iii. 13. [pedal.]

**pedes**, -itis, [**pēs**], m., *foot-soldier*. Pl., **peditēs**, -um, *infantry*.

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, [**pēs**], adj., *on foot*. **pedestrēs cōplae**, *infantry*. [pedestrian.]

**peditātus**, -ūs, [**pedes**], m., *infantry*.

**Pedius**, -i, m., *Quintus Pedius* (pē'di-us), nephew of Julius Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant in the Gallic and Civil Wars. He was consul in 43 B.C. ii. 2, 11.

**peior**, see **malus**.

**pellis**, -is, f., *skin, hide*. [pellisse.]

**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepull**, **pulsus**, 3, *drive out, drive off; rout, defeat*.

**Pēlūsium**, -i, [Πηλούσιον], n., (pē-lū'sh-i-um), a city and fortress in Egypt, at the easternmost mouth of the Nile. C. III. 103.

**pendō**, **pendere**, **pependi**, **pēnsus**, 3, *weigh out; pay*. [pendent.]

**pōnes**, prep. with acc., *in the power of, in the possession of*.

**penitus**, adv., *far within*. vi. 10.

**per**, prep. with acc., *through; across, along, over, among; during, in the course of; by, by the hands of, by means of, under pretence of; by reason of*. In oaths, *in the name of, by*.

**per agrōs**, *over the country* (vi. 31; vii. 3).

In composition, **per** adds the force of *through, thoroughly, very much, very*.

**peragō**, -agere, -āgi, -āctus, [per + agō], 3, *finish, complete, bring to an end*.

**perangustus**, -a, -um, [per + angustus], adj., *very narrow*. vii. 15.

**percollō**, -ere, **percoll**, **perculus**, 3, *beat down; cast down, demoralize* (C. III. 47).

**perceptus**, see **percipiō**.

**percipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [per + capiō], 3, *get, secure, gain; hear* (v. 1); *learn* (vi. 8). [perceive.]

**percontātiō**, -ōnis, [percontor, *inquire*], f., *questioning, inquiry*.

**percurrō**, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursurus, [per + currō], 3, *run through; run along* (iv. 33).

**percussus**, see **percutiō**.

**peroutiō**, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus, [per + quatīō, *shake*], 3, *thrust through*. v. 44. [percuss.]

**perdiscō**, -discere, -didici, [per + discō], 3, *learn thoroughly, learn by heart*. vi. 14.

**perditus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of **perdō**, *ruin*], adj., *abandoned, desperate* (iii. 17). As noun, **perditī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *desperate men, the desperate* (vii. 4).

**perducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [per + dūcō], 3, *lead through, bring, conduct, convey; bring over, win over* (vi. 12); *draw out, prolong* (v. 31, C. III. 95); *extend, construct, make*.

**perendinus**, -a, -um, [perendiō, *day after to-morrow*], adj., *after to-morrow*. **perendiō diē**, *day after to-morrow* (v. 30).

**pereō**, -ire, -ī, -itūrus, [per + eō], irr., *perish, be lost*. [perish.

**perequitō**, -āre, -āvi, [per + equitō, *ride*], 1, *ride through* (vii. 66); *ride about* (iv. 33).

**perexiguus**, -a, -um, [per + exiguus], adj., *very small*.

**perfacilis**, -e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy*.

**perfectus**, see **perficiō**.

**perferō**, -ferre, -tull, -lātus, [per + ferō], irr., lit. *carry through*; *carry, convey, bring, report*; *endure, suffer*; *bear, submit to*.

**perficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [per + faciō], 3, *finish, complete*; *perform, accomplish, carry out*; *cause, effect*; *bring about, arrange*. [perfect.

**perfidia**, -ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, bad faith, treachery*. [perfidy.

**perfringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus, [per + frangō], 3, *break through*.

**perfuga**, -ae, [perfugiō], m., *deserter*.

**perfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, [per + fugiō], 3, *flee for refuge, flee*.

**perfugium**, -ī, [cf. perfugiō], n., *place of refuge, refuge*. iv. 38.

**pergō**, -pergere, -perxī, -perrectus, [per + regō], 3, *proceed, advance*.

**periclitor**, -ārī, -ātus, [periculum], 1, dep., *try, prove, make trial of, test*; *be in danger, incur danger* (vi. 34; vii. 56).

**periculōsus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [periculum], adj., *full of danger, dangerous*. i. 33, vii. 8. [perilous.

**periculum**, -ī, n., *trial, test* (i. 40); *attempt* (iv. 21); *risk, danger, hazard*. [peril.

**peritus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup.

-issimus, adj., *skilled, practised*; *familiar with*.

**perlātus**, see **perferō**.

**perlōctus**, see **perlegō**.

**perlegō**, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctus, [per + legō], 3, *read through, peruse*. v. 48. [perlection.

**perluō**, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [per + luō, *wash*], 3, *wash*. Pass. used reflexively, *bathe* (vi. 21).

**permagnus**, -a, -um, [per + magnus], adj., *very large, very great*.

**permaneo**, -manēre, -mānāī, mānsūrus, [per + maneo], 2, *continue, stay, remain*. [permanent.

**permisceō**, -miscere, -miscui, -mixtus, [per + misceō, *mix*], 2, *mix, mingle*. vii. 62.

**permittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [per + mittō], 3, *give over, entrust, commit*; *grant, allow*. [permit.

**permixtus**, see **permisceō**.

**permōtus**, see **permoveō**.

**permoveō**, -movere, -mōvi, -mōtus, [per + moveō], 2, *deeply move, disturb, alarm*; *arouse, stir*; *influence, induce*.

**permulceō**, -āre, -āī, -sus, [per + mulceō, *soothe*], 2, *calm, soothe*. iv. 6.

**permulsus**, see **permulceō**.

**perniciēs**, -āī, [per, cf. nex], f., *ruin, destruction*. i. 20, 36.

**perniciōsus**, -a, -um, [perniciēs], adj., *ruinous*. C. i. 7. [pernicious.

**pernitās**, -tātis, [pernix, *nimble*], f., *quickness of movement, nimbleness*. C. iii. 84.

**perpauci**, -ae, -a, [per + paucus], adj., *very few*. As noun, **perpauci**. -ōrum, m., pl., *a very few*.

**perpendiculum**, -ī, [cf. **perpendō**], n., *plumb-line*. [perpendicular.

**perpetior**, -peti, -passus, [per + patior], 3, dep., *bear patiently, endure*. vii. 10; C. iii. 47.



**perpetuō** [perpetuus], adv., *continually, constantly* (vii. 41); *always, forever* (i. 31).

**perpetuus**, -a, -um, [per, cf. petō], adj., *continuous, unbroken, unceasing, entire, perpetual*. As noun, in *perpetuum*, *for ever, ever after*. [perpetual].

**perquirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus, [per + quaerō], 3, *make careful inquiry about, inquire about*. vi. 9.

**perrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [per + rumpō, break], 3, *break through, burst through, force a passage*.

**perruptus**, see **perrumpō**.

**perscribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [per + scribō], 3, *write fully, report in writing*.

**persequor**, -sequi, -secutus, [per + sequor], 3, dep., *follow up, pursue; assail, attack* (i. 13; v. 1); *avenge* (vii. 38). [persecute].

**perseverō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [perseverus, *very strict*], 1, *continue steadfastly, persist*. [persevere].

**persolvō**, -solvere, -solvi, -solutus, [per + solvō], 3, *pay in full, pay*.

**perspectus**, see **perspicio**.

**perspicio**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [per + specio, look], 3, *see, look; inspect, survey; perceive, observe, ascertain*. [perspective].

**perstō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, [per + stō], 1, *stand firmly, persist*.

**persuādeō**, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum est, [per + suādeō, persuade], 2, *convince, persuade, prevail upon, induce*. mihi persuādētur, *I am convinced*. [persuade].

**perterro**, -terrere, -terruī, -territus, [per + terro], 2, *greatly alarm, frighten, terrify, dismay*. Part., **perterritus**, -a, -um, often *panic-stricken*.

**pertinācia**, -ae, [pertināx, per + tenāx, from teneō], f., *obstinacy, stubbornness*. [pertinacity].

**pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, [per + teneō], 2, *reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to*. [pertain].

**perturbatio**, -ōnis, [perturbō], f., *disturbance, confusion*. [perturbation].

**perturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [per + turbō, disturb], 1, *disturb greatly, disorder, confuse*. [perturb].

**pervagor**, -ari, -atus, [per + vagor], 1, dep., *roam about*.

**pervehō**, -ere, pervexi, [per + vehō], 3, *carry through; pass with middle sense, sail along* (C. II. 3).

**pervenio**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum est, [per + venio], 4, *come (to), arrive (at), reach; of an inheritance, fall to* (vi. 19).

**pēs**, pedis, m., *foot*; as a measure of length, = .9708 of the English foot, or 296 millimetres. **pedem referre**, *to retreat*. [pedestrian].

**pestilentia**, -ae, [pestilēns], f., *plague, pestilence*. C. III. 87. [pestilence].

**petitus**, see **petō**.

**petō**, petere, petivi and petii, petitus, 3, *make for, try to reach, seek; get, secure; beg, ask, request*. petere ut liceat, *to ask permission*.

**Petrocorii**, -orum, m., pl., (pet-rō-ko' rī-i), a Gallic people north of the Garumna (*Garonne*) river. vii. 75.

**Petrōnius**, -i, m., *Marcus Petronius* (pe-trō' nī-ūs), a centurion of the eighth legion (vii. 50).

**Petrodidius**, -i, m., *Lucius Petrosidius* (pet-rō-sid' i-ūs), a brave standard-bearer. v. 37.

**phalanx**, -angis, Greek acc. sing., (i. 52) **phalanga**, [φάλαγξ], f., *compact host, mass, phalanx*. [phalanx].

**Philippus**, -i, m., *Lucius Marcus Philippus* (fī-lip' ūs), consul in 56 B.C. C. i. 6.

**Pictonēs**, -um, m., pl., (pik' tō-nēz), a Gallic people bordering on the Atlantic south of the Liger (*Loire*). Fig. 205.



Figure 205. — A coin of the Pictones.

Silver. Reverse, cavalryman with a shield. The object underneath has not been explained.

The hair of the head on the obverse is shown in thick masses.

**pietās**, -ātis, [pius, dutiful], f., dutiful conduct, devotion, to the gods, one's country, or one's kindred; loyalty (v. 27), [piety].

**pīlum**, -i, n., javelin, pike. [pile].

**pīlus**, -i, [pīlum], m., with **primus**, maniple of the **triarii**, a division in the army containing the most experienced soldiers. **primi pīli centuriō**, first centurion of the first maniple of the **triarii**, first centurion of the legion in rank (iii. 5). **primum pīlum dūcere**, to lead the first maniple of the **triarii**, to hold the rank of first centurion (v. 35; vi. 38; C. iii. 91).

**pinna**, -ae, f., feather; in military language, battlement. [pen].

**Pirustae**, -arum, m., pl., (pī-rus'tē), a people in Illyricum. v. i.

**piscātorius**, -a, -um, [piscātor, fisherman], adj., of a fisherman. **nāvēs piscātoriae**, fishing-smacks (C. ii. 4). [piscatory].

**piscis**, -is, m., fish. iv. 10. [Pisces].

**Pisō**, -ōnis, m., (pī' sō):

(1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul 112 B.C. i. 12.

(2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul with *Aulus Gabinius*, 58 B.C.; father-in-law of Caesar. i. 6, 12.

(3) *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messala*, 61 B.C. i. 2, 35.

(4) *Piso*, a brave Aquitanian. iv. 12.

**pix**, **pictis**, f., pitch. [pitch].

**Placentia**, -ae, f., (plā-sen' sh[y]ā), a city in northern Italy, on the Po River; now *Piacenza*. C. iii. 71.

**placeō**, **placeōre**, **placui**, **placitum** est, 2, please, be agreeable, be welcome to. Used impersonally, **placet**, it pleases, it seems good; it is agreed, it is settled; it is resolved, it is decided. **ei placuit**, he resolved (i. 34). [please].

**placidē**, comp. -ius, [placidus], adv., quietly, calmly. vi. 8.

**plācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, appease, conciliate. vi. 16. [placate].

**Plancus**, -i, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus* (mū-nā' sh[y]us plang'kūs), a lieutenant in Caesar's army. v. 24, 25.

**plānē**, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [plānus], adv., clearly, distinctly (iii. 26); entirely, quite (vi. 43).

**plāntiā**, -āi, [plānus], f., level ground, plain.

**plānus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., level, even (iv. 23); flat (iii. 13). [plain].

**plēbs**, **plēbis**, or **plēbēs**, -ei, f., the common folk, the common people, the masses. **apud plēbem**, among the masses. [plebeian].

**plēnē**, comp. -ius, [plēnus], adv., fully, completely. iii. 3.

**plēnus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., full.

**plērumque**, [n. acc. of *plērusque*], adv., *commonly, generally, usually, for the most part*.

**plērusque**, -aque, -umque, [*plērus*, *very many*], adj., *very many, most*. As noun, *plērique*, -ōrumque, m., pl., *the most, the greater part, the majority, most*.

**Pleumoxii**, -ōrum, m., pl., (*plū-mok'-sj-i*), a Belgic people, subject to the Nervians. v. 39.

**plumbum**, -i, n., *lead*. **plumbum album**, *tin* (v. 12.) [*plumber*].

**plūrēa**, **plūrimus**, see *multus*.

**plūs**, **plūrimum**, see *multum*.

**plutea**, -i, m., *breastwork of planks or wickerwork, placed on ramparts* (vii. 41), or on the stories of a tower (vii. 25); *wood construction* (vii. 72); *movable mantelet, to protect besiegers*.

**pōculum**, -i, n., *cup, beaker*. vi. 28.

**poena**, -ae, f., *compensation, fine* (v. 1); *punishment, penalty*. **poenās**

**pendere** (vi. 9) or **persolvere**, (i. 12), *to pay the penalty*. [*penal*].

**pollex**, **pollicis**, m., *thumb, great toe*.

**polliceor**, -licēri, -licitus, [*por- + liceor*], 2, dep., *promise, offer*.

**pollicitatidō**, -ōnis, [*pollicitor*, freq. of *polliceor*], f., *promise, offer*.

**pollicitus**, see *polliceor*.

**Pompeianus**, -a, -um, [*Pompeius*], adj., *of Pompey*. As noun, **Pompeiani**, -ōrum, m., pl., *soldiers of Pompey, Pompey's men*. (C. III. 48. 72).

**Pompeius**, -i, m., (*pom-pē' yūs*):

(1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, *Pompey*, Caesar's father-in-law and rival, born B.C. 106; conquered by Caesar at the battle of Pharsalus, and afterwards murdered in Egypt.

(2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter serving under Titurius Sabinus. v. 36.

**pondus**, **ponderis**, [cf. *pendō*], n., *heaviness, weight* (ii. 29; vi. 27; vii. 22); *a weight as a standard of value* (v. 12); *quantity* (C. III. 96). [*ponderous*].

**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positus**, 3, *place, put; lay down* (iv. 37); *set aside* (vi. 17); *station; pitch*. Pass. *often be situated, be dependent, depend on*. **castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp, encamp*. [*positive*].

**pōns**, **pontis**, m., *bridge*. [*pontoon*].

**populatiō**, -ōnis, [*populor*], f., *a laying waste, ravaging*. i. 15.

**populor**, -ārī, -ātus, 1, dep., *lay waste, devastate*. i. 11.

**populus**, -i, m., *people as a political whole, nation*. [*people*].

**por-**, in composition, *forth, forward*.

**porrigō**, -rigere, -rēxi, -rētus, [*por- + regō*], 3, *reach out, extend*.

**porrō**, adv., *moreover, furthermore*. v. 27.

**porta**, -ae, f., *gate of a city, gateway; of a camp, gate, entrance, passage*. [*porter* (door-keeper)].

**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *carry, bring, convey, take*. [*portage*].

**portōrium**, -i, n., *toll, tax, customs duties*. i. 18; iii. 1.

**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, haven*. [*port*].

**poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, 3, *demand, ask for urgently; of things, require, make necessary* (vii. 1).

**positus**, -a, -um, see *pōnō*.

**possessiō**, -ōnis, [cf. *possidō*], f., *possession*. [*possession*].

**possidēō**, -sidēre, -sēdī, [*por- + sedēō*], 2, *hold, occupy, possess*. i. 34; ii. 4; vi. 12. [*possess*].

**possidō**, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [*por- + sidō*], 3, *gain possession of, possess one's self of*. iv. 7.

**possum**, **posse**, **potui**, [*potis*, *able, + sum*], irr., *be able, can; have power, have influence*. **multum**

**posse**, to have great influence;  
**plurimum posse**, to have very great power, influence. [posse.]

**post**, adv., afterwards, later, after; with abl. of degree of difference, **annō post**, a year later, the following year. **paucis post diēbus**, a few days later.

**post**, prep. with acc. only:

(1) Of place, behind. **post tergum**, in the rear.

(2) Of time, after. **post mediam noctem**, after midnight.

**postea** [post eā], adv., afterwards.  
**postea quam**, with the force of a conjunction, after that, after.

**posterus**, -a, -um, nom. sing. m. not in use, comp. posterior, sup. **posterimus**, [post], adj., the following, next. As noun, **posterī**, -ōrum, m., pl., posterity (vii. 77). [postern.

**postpōnō**, -pōnere, -posul-, -positus, [post + pōnō], 3, put after, lay aside. **omnia postpōnere**, to disregard everything else (vi. 3). **omnibus rēbus postpositis**, laying everything else aside (v. 7). [postpone.]

**postpositus**, see **postpōnō**.

**postquam** [post + quam], conj., after that, after, when; post and quam are often separated by intervening words.

**postremō** [abl. of **postremus**, sc. tempore], adv., at last, finally.

**postridiē**, [locative from **posterus diēs**], adv., the next day. **postridiē eius diēi**, the next day, the following day.

**postulātum**, -ī, [part. of **postulō**], n., demand, claim, request.

**postulō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, 1, claim, demand, ask, request; of things, require, make necessary, demand; accuse of (C. III. 83). [postulate.]

**potēns**, -entis, comp. **potentior**, sup.

**-lassimus**, [part. of **possum**], adj., powerful. As noun, **potentior**, -ōris, m., one more powerful (vi. 11); pl., the more powerful (ii. 1; vi. 13, 22). **potentissimī**, -ōrum, m., pl., the most powerful (vi. 22). [potent.]

**potentātus**, -ūs, [potēns], m., power, headship, supremacy. 1. 31. [potentate.]

**potentia**, -ae, [potēns], f., might, power, influence. [potency.]

**potestās**, -ātis, [potis], f., might, power, authority, lordship; possibility, opportunity. **potestātem facere**, to give opportunity; to grant permission (iv. 15; v. 41).

**potior**, **potiri**, **potitus**, [potis, able], 4, dep., obtain possession of, become master of, acquire, obtain.

**potius**, adv. in comp. degree, sup. **potissimum**, [potis], adv., rather, more, preferably. **potius quam**, rather than.

**prae**, prep. with abl., in comparison with (ii. 30), on account of (vii. 44). **praeacuō**, -cuere, -cul-, -cūtus, 3, sharpen at the end.

**praeacūtus**, -a, -um, [part. of **praeacuō**], adj., sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed; very sharp.

**praebēō**, -ēre, **praebul**, **praebitus**. [prae + habēō], 2, hold forth; exhibit, manifest; furnish, provide (ii. 17); produce (iii. 17). [prebendary.]

**praecaveō**, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, [prae + caveō], 2, take precautions. 1. 38. [precaution.]

**praecēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [prae + cēdō], 3, go before; surpass, excel (i. 1). [precede.]

**praeceps**, -cipitis, [prae + CAP in caput], adj., headlong, with great speed, head over heels (ii. 24; v. 17); steep, precipitous (iv. 33). [precipitous.]

**praecceptum**, -i, [part. of **praecipitō**], n., *order, command, instruction, injunction; precept.* v. 35; vi. 36. [precept.]

**praecipitō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [prae + capiō], 3, *anticipate* (vii. 9; C. III. 87); *order, direct, instruct.*

**praecipitō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, [praecēps], 1, *hurl headlong, fling down.* [precipitate.]

**praecipuū**, [praecipuus], adv., *especially, specially, particularly.*

**praecipuus**, -a, -um, [prae + cap in capiō], adj., *especial, particular.*

**praeccludō**, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [prae + claudō], 3, *close up, block.* v. 9. [preclude.]

**praecō**, -ōnis, m., *herald, crier.*

**Praecōninus** (prē-qō-ni' nūs), see **Valerius** (1).

**praecurrō**, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, [prae + currō], 3, *run forward, hasten forward* (vi. 39, C. II. 34); *hasten in advance* (vii. 37); *anticipate* (vii. 9). [precursor.]

**praeda**, -ae, [cf. **praehendō**], f., *booty, spoil, plunder.* [prey.]

**praedicō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, [prae + dicō], 1, *make known, declare, announce; boast* (i. 44, C. II. 39). [preach.]

**praedico**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, [prae + dicō], 3, *say beforehand; order, give orders, in advance* (C. III. 92). [predict.]

**praedō**, -ōnis, [praeda], m., *robber, pirate.* C. III. 104.

**praedor**, -āri, -ātus, [praeda], 1, dep., *obtain booty, pillage, plunder.*

**praedūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [prae + dūcō], 3, *extend, make in front.* vii. 46, 69.

**praefectus**, see **praeficiō**

**praefectus**, -i, [praeficiō], m., *commander, prefect; subsidiary official* (i. 39). [prefect.]

**praeferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [prae + ferō], irr., *carry before; put before, prefer to* (v. 54). **sē praeferre**, to show one's self superior to (ii. 27). [prefer.]

**praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prae + faciō], 3, *place in command of, appoint to command.*

**praefigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [prae + figō, fasten], 3, *fix in front.* **sudibus praefixis**, by driving stakes in front (v. 18). [prefix.]

**praefringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus, [prae + frangō], 3, *break off, shatter.* C. II. 6.

**praemetuō**, -ere, [prae + metuō, fear], 3, *be anxious.* vii. 49.

**praemittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [prae + mittō], 3, *send forward, send ahead, send in advance.* [promise.]

**praemium**, -i, [prae, cf. **emō**], n., *reward, distinction.* [premium.]

**praecoccupō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, [prae + occupō], 1, *take possession of beforehand, seize first* (vii. 26). [pre-occupy.]

**praecoptō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, [prae + optō], 1, *choose rather, prefer.* i. 25.

**praeparō**, -āre, -avi, -ātus, [prae + parō], 1, *make ready beforehand, make ready, prepare.* [prepare.]

**praepōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [prae + pōnō], 3, *set over, place in command of.*

**praerumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [prae + rumpō, break], 3, *break off in front, break off.* iii. 14.

**praeruptus**, -a, -um, [part. of **praerumpō**], adj., *steep, precipitous.*

**praesaepiō**, -saepire, -saepsi, -saeptus, [prae + saepiō], 4, *fence in; block, bar* (vii. 77).

**praesaepius**, see **praesaepiō**.  
**praescribō**, -scribere, -scripsi,

-scriptus, [prae + scribō], 3, *give directions, direct* (i. 30, 40); *determine* (ii. 20). [prescribe.  
**praescriptum**, -i, [part. of praescribō], n., *direction, order, instructions*. i. 36. [prescript.  
**praesēns**, -entis, comp. -ior, [part. of praesum], adj., *at hand, present*. [present.  
**praesentia**, -ae, [praesēns], f., *presence* (v. 43); *present time*. in **praesentiā**, *for the present*. [presence.  
**praesentiō**, -sentire, -sēns, -sēnsus, [prae + sentiō], 4, *perceive beforehand*. v. 54; vii. 30.  
**praesertim** [prae, cf. serō, join], adv., *especially, particularly*.  
**praesidium**, -i, [praesee, guard], n., *guard, detachment, garrison, protection; post, redoubt; safety* (ii. 11).  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stitus, [prae + stō], 1, *surpass, excel; exhibit, display, manifest; discharge, perform, do*. Impers. **praestat**, *it is preferable, it is better*.  
**praestō**, adv., *at hand*. **praestō esse**, *to meet* (v. 26).  
**praesum**, -esse, -ful, [prae + sum], irr., *preside over; be at the head of, have command of, have charge of*.  
**praeter**, prep. with acc. only, *beyond* (i. 48); *except, besides; contrary to*.  
**praeterea** [praeter + eā], adv., *besides, further*.  
**praetereō**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītus, [praeter + eō], irr., *pass over* (vii. 25, 77); *pass, go by* (vii. 77). [preterit.  
**praeteritus**, see **praetereō**.  
**praeternitō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [praeter + mittō], 3, *pass over, let pass, allow to go by*.  
**praeterquam** [praeter + quam], adv. with comparative force, *other than, besides*. vii. 77.

**praetor**, -ōris, [\*praetor, from praetō], m., *general, commander* (i. 21); *praetor*, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to the consul.  
**praetōrium**, -i, [praetōrius], n., *general's tent*. C. iii. 82.  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, [praetor], adj., *of the commander, general's* (i. 40, 42); *praetorian*. As noun, **praetōrius**, -i, m., *ex-praetor, man of praetorian rank* (C. iii. 82). [praetorian.  
**praetūra**, -ae, [praetor], f., *the office of praetor, praetorship* (C. iii. 82).  
**praefustus**, -a, -um, [part. of praefurō], adj., *burnt at the end, hardened at the end by burning*.  
**praevertō**, -vertere, -verti, [prae + vertō], 3, *oustrip; attend to first* (vii. 33).  
**prāvus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *bad, wicked*. vii. 39.  
**precēs**, see **prex**.  
**pressō**, -ere, pressi, pressus, 3, *press, harass, oppress; pass., be hard pressed, be beset, be burdened, be in need*. [press.  
**prēndō** (for **prehendō**), **prēndere**, **prēndi**, **prēnsus**, 3, *take, grasp*. i. 20.  
**pretium**, -i, n., *price, value*. [price.  
**prex**, **precis**, f., generally pl., nom. and gen. sing. not in use, *prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse, imprecation* (vi. 31).  
**prīdiē**, adv., *the day before, the previous day*. **prīdiē eius diēi**, *the day before that day, on the previous day* (i. 47).  
**primipilus**, -i, [primus + pilus], m., = **primus pilus**, *first centurion*; see **pilus**. ii. 25, C. iii. 53.  
**primō** [abl. of **primus**], adv., *at first, in the first place*.  
**primum** [acc. of **primus**], adv., *first, before everything else, in the first*

*place.* quam primum, as soon as possible. cum primum, as soon as.

**primus**, see **prior**.

**princeps**, -ipis, [primus + CAP in capiō], adj., first, chief, at the front. As noun, m., leading man, leader, pl. often leading men. [prince.

**principatus**, -ūs, [princeps], m., chief authority, headship. [principate.

**prior**, -us, gen. priōris, adj. in comp. degree, sup. primus, [cf. prō], former, previous, first. As noun,

priōrēs, -um, m., pl., those in advance (ii. 11). Sup. primus, first, the first. As noun, primī, -ōrum, m., pl., the foremost men, the first.

**prima**, -ōrum, n., pl., in the phrase in primis, especially. [prior, prime.

**pristinus**, -a, -um, [\*prīs = prius, + -tinus], adj., former, previous, earlier, old-time. [pristine.

**prius** [prior], adv., before, sooner, earlier.

**priusquam**, prius quam, conj., before, sooner than; prius and quam are often separated by intervening words.

**privātim** [privātus], adv., privately, as individuals, opposed in meaning to publicē. i. 17; v. 55.

**privātus**, -a, -um, [part. of privō], adj., private, personal. As noun, privātus, -ī, m., private individual (vi. 13). [private.

**privō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, rob, deprive. C. III. 90.

**prō**, prep. with abl. only, in front of, before; for, in behalf of; instead of, us; on account of, in return for; in accordance with (ii. 31); in proportion to, considering (i. 2, 51; vi. 19; vii. 56, 74).

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [probus], 1, approve; show to be worthy, display (v. 44); prove (v. 27); show, demonstrate (i. 3). [probe.

**prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, [prō + cēdō], 3, advance, go forward. [proceed.

**Procellus**, (pro-sil' us), see **Valerius** (4).

**prōclīnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + clīnō, bend], 1, bend forward, lean forward; pass., become desperate (vii. 42).

**prōcōnsul**, -ulis, [prō + cōnsul], m., proconsul, an ex-consul appointed as governor of a province.

**procul**, adv., at a distance, from afar, far off.

**prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, [prō + cumbō, for cubō, lie down], 3, fall prostrate (vii. 15); sink down (ii. 27); be beaten down (vi. 43); lie down (vi. 27); lean forward (iv. 17).

**prōcūrātiō**, -ōnis, [prōcūrō], f., charge, management. C. III. 104.

**prōcūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + cūrō], 1, look after, have charge of, regulate. vi. 13. [procure.

**prōcūrrō**, -currere, -pucurri or -curri, [prō + currō], 3, run forward, hasten forward, rush forward.

**prōdeō**, -īre, -īi, -itum est, [prōd-, for prō, + eō], irr., come out, come forth, advance.

**prōdesse**, see **prōsum**.

**prōditiō**, -ōnis, [prōdō], f., treachery.

**prōditor**, -ōris, [prodō], m., traitor.

**prōditus**, see **prōdō**.

**prōdō**, -dare, -didī, -dītus, [prō + dō], 3, give forth, make known; transmit, hand down; surrender, betray; give up, abandon (iv. 25).

**prōdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [prō + dūcō], 3, bring out, lead forth; prolong (iv. 30). [product.

**prōductus**, see **prodūcō**.

**proellor**, -ārī, -ātus, [proellum], 1, dep., fight.

**proellum**, -ī, n., battle, combat, engagement.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, [profectiscor], f., *departure, setting out.*

**profectus**, see **profectiō**.

**profectus**, see **profectiscor**.

**proferō**, -ferre, -tull, -lātus, [prō + ferō], irr., *bring out, bring forth.*

**profectiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prō + faciō], 3, *effect, gain, accomplish.* [profit].

**profectiscor**, -fiscī, -fectus, [prō-ficiō], 3, dep., *set out, depart; set out (for), proceed.*

**profiteor**, -fiteri, -fessus, [pro, = prō, + fateor, confess], 2, dep., *declare openly, avow* (vii. 2, 37); *offer, promise.*

**profligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + fligō, strike], 1, *put to flight, rout.* ii. 23; vii. 13. [profligate].

**profluō**, -fluere, -flūxi, [prō + fluō], 3, *flow forth.* iv. 10.

**profugio**, -fugere, -fūgi, [pro, = prō, + fugiō], 3, *flee, escape.*

**profui**, see **prosum**.

**profundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, [prō + fundō], 3, *pour forth.* sē **profūdīt**, *rushed forward* (C. iii. 93).

**prognātus**, -a, -um, [prō + (g)nā-tus, from (g)nāscor], adj., *sprung, descended.* ii. 29; vi. 18.

**progređior**, -gređi, -gressus, [prō + gradior, step], 3, dep., *advance, go forward, proceed.* [progress].

**progređus**, see **progređior**.

**prohibeō**, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitus, [prō + habeō], 2, *hold, restrain; keep off, prevent, hinder; cut off, shut off; protect, defend.* [prohibit].

**proiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [prō + iaciō], 3, *throw forward, throw, fling, cast; of arms, throw down; abandon, lose* (ii. 15). sē **proicere**, *to leap down* (iv. 25), *to prostrate one's self* (i. 27, 31). **proiectae**,

*pass. as middle, casting themselves* (vii. 26). [project].

**proinde** [prō + inde], adv., *hence, therefore, and so.* **proinde ac si**, *just as if* (C. iii. 60).

**promineō**, -minere, -minui, 2, *bend forward, lean forward.* [prominent].

**promiscuō** [promiscuus], adv., *in common, promiscuously.* vi. 21.

**promissus**, -a, -um, [part. of prō-mittō], adj., *of hair, hanging down, flowing.* v. 14.

**promōtus**, see **promoveō**.

**promoveō**, -movere, -mōvi, -mōtus, [prō + moveō], 2, *move forward, push forward.* [promote].

**promptus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of prōmō, bring forward], adj., *ready, quick.* [prompt].

**promuntarium**, -i, [cf. promineō], n., *headland.* iii. 12. [promontory].

**prōnē** [prōnus], adv., *bending forward, leaning forward.* iv. 17.

**prōnūtiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + nūtiō], 1, *tell openly, declare; announce, give notice.* Impers., **prōnūtiātur**, *notice is given.* [pronounce].

**prope**, comp. **propius**, sup. **proximē**, adv., *near, nearly, almost; followed by the acc., near.* **proximē**, *nearest, next, very near; last, most recently.*

**propellō**, -pellere, -pull, -pulsus, [prō + pellō], 3, *drive away, put to flight, rout; force back* (v. 44). [propel].

**properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [properus, quick], 1, *hurry, make haste, hasten.*

**propinquitās**, -ātis, [propinquus], f., *nearness, vicinity; relationship* (ii. 4). [propinquity].

**propinquus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [prope], adj., *near, neighboring.* As noun, **propinquus**, -i, m., *rela-*



- tive*; pl., *propinqui*, -ōrum, m., *relatives, kinsfolk*; *propinquaē*, -ārum, f., *female relatives* (i. 18).
- propior*, -us, gen. *propioris*, adj. in comp. degree, sup. *proximus*, [cf. *prope*], positive wanting, *nearer*. *proximus*, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last*, of space or time. *proximā nocte*, *on the following night*. [proximate.
- propius*, see *prope*.
- prōpōnō*, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [prō + pōnō], 3, *set forth, put forward, present; declare, explain; propose, intend; raise, display* (ii. 20). [propose.
- prōpositum*, -i, [prōpositus], n., *intention, purpose*. C. iii. 84.
- prōpositus*, see *prōpōnō*.
- proprius*, -a, -um, adj., *one's own, particular, peculiar, characteristic*. vi. 22, 23. [proper.
- propter*, prep. with acc. only, *on account of, in consequence of*.
- propterea* [propter + eā], adv., *for this reason, therefore*. *propterea quod*, *because*.
- prōpugnātor*, -ōris, [prōpugnō], m., *defender*. vii. 25.
- prōpugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + pugnō], 1, *come forth to fight* (v. 9); *fight on the defensive* (ii. 7; vii. 86).
- prōpulsō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of *prōpellō*], 1, *drive off, drive back* (i. 49); *ward off, repel* (vi. 15).
- prōra*, -ae, [πρῶρα], f., *proa*. [prow.
- prōruō*, -ere, -ui, -utus, 3, *throw down; tear down* (iii. 26).
- prōsequor*, -sequi, -secutus, [prō + sequor], 3, dep., *follow after; follow up, pursue; address* (ii. 5). [prosecute.
- prōspectus*, -ūs, [cf. *prōspiciō*], m., *view, sight*. in *prōspectū*, *in sight, visible* (v. 10). [prospect.
- prōspiciō*, -spicere, *spexi*, -spec-tus, [prō + specio, look], 3, *look out, see to it* (v. 7); *provide for, look out for* (i. 23; vii. 50).
- prōsternō*, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātus, [prō + sternō, scatter], 3, *overthrow, utterly cast down, destroy*. vii. 77. [prostrate.
- prōsum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfui*, [prō, prōd-, + sum], irr., *be of advantage to*. vi. 40.
- prōtegō*, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [prō + tegō], 3, *cover, protect*. [protect.
- prōterō*, -terere, -trivi, -tritrus, [prō + terō], 3, *wear away, destroy*. C. ii. 41.
- prōterreō*, -āre, -ui, -itus, [prō + terreō], 2, *frighten away, drive off by means of fright*. v. 58; vii. 81.
- prōtinus* [prō + tenus], adv., *forthwith, at once, immediately*.
- prōturbō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prō + turbō, disturb], 1, *drive away, repulse*. ii. 19; vii. 81.
- prōvectus*, see *prōvehō*.
- prōvehō*, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, [prō + vehō], 3, *carry forward* (v. 8); *pass in a middle sense, put out to sea*.
- prōveniō*, -venire, -vēni, -ventum est, [prō + veniō], 4, *come forth; grow* (v. 24).
- prōventus*, -ūs, [cf. *prōveniō*], m., *issue, result, outcome*. vii. 29, 80.
- prōvideō*, -vidēre, -vidi, -visus, [prō + videō], 2, *foresee, perceive in advance; provide for, look out for*. [provide.
- prōvincia*, -ae, f., *province*; often the *Province*, the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the Romans before 58 B.C. [province.
- prōvinciālis*, -e, [prōvincia], adj., *of the province*. vii. 7. [provincial.
- prōvisus*, see *prōvideō*.

**prōvolō**, -āre, -āvi, [prō + volō, fly], 1, fly forward, dash forth. ii. 19.

**proximō**, see **prope**.

**proximus**, -a, -um, see **proplor**.

**prudentia**, -ae, [prūdēns, for prōvidēns, far-seeing], f., foresight, good judgment. ii. 4. [prudence.

**Ptiānī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (ti-ā' nī-i), a small state in Aquitania. iii. 27.

**Ptolomaeus**, -ī, [Πτολεμαῖος], m., Ptolemy, king of Egypt in 49 B.C., brother of Cleopatra. C. III. 103.

**pūberēs**, -um, [adj. pūbēs used as a noun], m., pl., adults. v. 56.

**pūblicō** [pūblicus], adv., in the name of the state, as a state, publicly.

**pūblicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pūblicus], 1, make public; confiscate (v. 56; vii. 43). [publish.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., of the state, public, common. **litterae pūblīcae**, state documents (v. 47).

**pūblica**, the state, public business, public interest. As noun, **pūblicum**, -ī, n., a public place (vi. 28; vii. 26).

In **pūblicō**, in a public place (vi. 18). [public.

**Pūblius**, -ī, m., (pub' li-ūs), a Roman first name.

**pudet**, **pudēre**, **puduit** or **puditum** est, 2, impers. form of **pudeō**, it shames; it makes ashamed (vii. 42).

**pudor**, -ōris, [cf. **pudeō**], m., shame, sense of shame.

**puer**, **puerī**, m., child, boy.

**puerilia**, -e, comp. -lor, [puer], adj., of a child. [puerile.

**pugna**, -ae, f., fight, combat, battle.

**pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pugna], 1, fight, engage in battle. **pugnātum** est, the battle waged.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, comp. -lor, sup. **pulcherrimus**, adj., beautiful (vii. 15); noble (vii. 77).

**Pullō**, -ōnis, m., (pul' ō), a brave centurion. v. 44.

**pulsus**, see **pellō**.

**pulsus**, -us, [pellō], m., stroke; of oars, movement (III. 13). [pulse.

**pulvis**, **pulveris**, m., dust. [pulverize.

**puppis**, -is, f., stern of a ship. [poop.

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [for \*pūrigō; pūrus + agō], 1, make clean; free from blame, excuse, clear. **sui pūrgandi causā**, in order to excuse themselves. [purge.

**Puteoli**, -ōrum, m., pl., (pū-tē' ō-lī), a city on the coast of Campania, now Pozzuoli. C. III. 71.

**putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, think, consider, believe, judge. [putative.

**Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, [Πυρηναιός], adj., of Pyrene. **Pyrēnaei montēs**, the Pyrenees Mountains. i. 1.

## Q

**Q.** = **Quintus**.

**quā** [abl. fem. of **quī**, originally sc. **viā** or **parte**], adv., where.

**qua**, nom. sing. fem., and neut. pl., of the indefinite pron. **quis**, or **quī**.

**quadrāgēni**, -ae, -a, [quadrāgintā], num. distributive adj., forty each, forty in each case. iv. 17; vii. 23.

**quadrāgintā**, or **XL**, [quattuor], indeclinable num. adj., forty.

**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, or **CCCC**, [quattuor + centum], numeral adj., four hundred.

**quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, 3, look for, seek (ii. 21; vii. 37); ask, inquire, make inquiry. [query.

**quaestīō**, -ōnis, [cf. **quaerō**], f., inquiry; examination, investigation. [question.

**quaestor**, -ōris, [cf. **quaerō**], m.:

(1) **quaestor**, state treasurer, the lowest in rank of the great officers of state.

(2) **quarter-master**, **quaestor**, an officer accompanying the army on

campaigns, having charge of money and supplies, sometimes detailed for military service in charge of troops.  
**quaestus**, -us, [cf. *quaerō*], m., *getting of money, gain*. vi. 17, C. III. 60.

**quālis**, -e, [cf. *quis*], inter. adj., *of what sort? what sort of?* i. 21.

**quam** [quā], adv. and conj., *how much, how*; with superlatives (with or without *possum*), *as possible*; after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as*; with expressions of time, *after*. *quam vetus*, *how old*. *quam diū*, *as long as*. *nāvēs quam plurimās*, *as many ships as possible*. *quam celerimē*, *as quickly as possible*. *post diem quartum quam*, *the fourth day after*.

**quamvis** [quam + vis, from *volō*], adv., *however much; however* (iv. 2).

**quandō**, adv., *ever, at any time*.

**quantō opere**, see *quantus*.

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how great, how much, how large*; after *tantus*, *as*; *tantum . . . quantum*, *so much, so far . . . as*. As noun, with gen. of the whole, *quantum boni*, *how much advantage*, *how great advantage* (i. 40); *quantum agri*, *as much land as* (vi. 22). *quantō opere*, *how much, how deeply* (ii. 5). *quantō opere . . . tantō opere*, *as much as . . . so much* (vii. 52).

**quantusvis**, *quantavis*, *quantumvis*, [quantus + vis, from *volō*], adj., *however great, no matter how great*.

**quārē** [quā + rē], adv., *wherefore, and for this reason*.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, [quattuor], adj., *fourth*. *quartus decimus*, or *XIII*, *fourteen*<sup>4</sup>. [quart.

**quam** [quam + si], conj., *as if*.

**quattuor**, or *III*, indeclinable num. adj., *four*.

**quattuordecim**, or *XIII*, [quattuor + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *fourteen*.

**-que**, enclitic conj., *and*, appended to a word which in construction belongs after it.

**quem ad modum**, see *modus*.

**queror**, *queri*, *questus*, 3, dep., *complain, lament; complain of, make complaint of*. [querulous.

**questus**, see *queror*.

**quī**, *quae*, *quod*, gen. *cuius*, rel. and inter. pron.:

(1) As rel. pron., *who, which*; at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pron., with or without *and*. *Idem quī*, *the same as*.

(2) As inter. adj. pron., *what? what kind of?*

**quī**, *quae* or *qua*, *quod*, indef. pron., *any, any one, or anything*, used both as subst. and as adj. *si quī*, *if any one*.

**quiloquam**, see *quisquam*.

**quicumque**, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever*.

**quid**, see *quis*.

**quidam**, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, indef. pron., *a certain one, a certain thing*. As adj., *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *a certain, some, certain*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, at least*. *nō . . . quidem*, *not even*.

**quidnam**, see *quisnam*.

**quies**, -ētis, f., *rest, repose*. [quiet (noun).]

**quiescētus**, -a, -um, [part. of *quiescō*, from *quies*], adj., *at rest, calm, quiet; peaceful, at peace*. [quiet (adj.).]

**quin**, [old abl. *quī* + *nē*], conj., *that not, but that, without; after words*

expressing doubt or suspicion, *that*; after *dēterreō*, *retineō*, etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. *quin etiam*, *moreover*.

**quincūx**, -ūncis, [quinque + ūncia], f., *quīncūx*, an arrangement of trees or other objects like the five spots on the dice (*quīncūx*), thus:

. . . . . vii. 73.

**quīndecim**, or **XV**, [quinque + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *fifteen*.

**quingenti**, -ae, -a, or **D**, [quinque + centum], num. adj., *five hundred*.

**quīni**, -ae, -a, [quinque], distrib. num. adj., *five each, five at a time*.

**quīnquāginti**, or **L**, [quinque], indeclinable num. adj., *fifty*.

**quīnque**, or **V**, indeclinable num. adj., *five*.

**quīntus**, -a, -um, [quinque], adj., *fifth*. [quint.]

**Quīntus**, -i, m., (kwīn' tūs), a Roman first name.

**quis**, —, **quid**, inter. pron., *who? what?* Neut. **quid**, with gen. of the whole, **quid cōnsilii**, *what plan?* neut. **quid**, as adverbial acc., *why?* **quid vōs sectāmini**, *why do ye pursue?* (vi. 35).

**quis**, —, **quid**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. As adj., **qui**, **quae** or **qua**, **quod**, *any*. **si quis**, *if any one*. **nō quis**, *that not any one, that no one*. Neut. **quid**, with partitive gen., *any*; as, **si quid cōnsilii**, *if any plan*.

**quisnam**, —, **quidnam**, inter. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* As adj., **quīnam**, **quāenam**, **quodnam**, *of what kind, pray* (ii. 30).

**quīspiam**, —, **quīdpiam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything* (vi. 17). As adj., **quīspiam**, **quāspiam**, **quodpiam**, *any* (v. 35).

**quisquam**, —, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. As adj., *any* (acc. **quemquam**, vi. 36).

**quisque**, —, **quidque**, indef. pron., *each one, each thing*. As adj., **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each*.

**quisquis**, —, **quicquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

**quīvis**, **quāvis**, **quīdvis**, [qui + vis, from **volo**], indef. pron., *any one, anything you please*. As adj., **quīvis**, **quāvis**, **quodvis**, *any whatever*.

**quō**, see **quī**.

**quō**, adv. and conj.:

(1) **quō** [dat. or abl. of **quī**], adv., relative and interrogative, *whither, where*; indefinite, after **si** and **nō**, *to any place, at any point, anywhere*.

(2) **quō** [abl. of **quī**], conj., used especially with comparatives, followed by subj., *in order that, that, that thereby*. **quō minus**, *that not, often best translated by from with a participle*.

**quoad** [**quō** + **ad**], conj., *as long as* (iv. 12); *until, till* (iv. 11; v. 17, 24).

**quod** [acc. of **quī**], conj., *because, inasmuch as, since; as to the fact that, so far as*.

**quō minus**, see **quō** (2).

**quoniam** [quom, old form of **cum**, + **iam**], conj., *since, seeing that, because, inasmuch as*.

**quoque**, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too*.

**quōque**, abl. of **quisque**, which see.

**quōque** = **et quō**.

**quōque versus**, see **versus**.

**quot**, indeclinable adj., *how many, as many as*. iv. 22, vii. 19.

**quotannis** [quot + abl. pl. of **annus**], adv., *yearly, every year*.

**quotiēns** [quot], adv., *as often as*

(v. 34); *how often* (i. 43, C. III. 72).  
[quotient.

quotiēscumque, [quotiēns +  
-cumque], adv., *just as often as*.  
C. I. 7.

# R.

rādix, -icis, f., *root* (vi. 27); of an  
elevation, *foot, base*. rādīcēs col-  
lis, *the foot of the hill* (vii. 51, 69).  
rādīcēs montis, *the base of the*  
*height, the foot of the mountain*.  
[radish.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, 3, *shave*.  
[razor.

raeda, -ae, f., *wagon with four wheels*.  
i. 51; vi. 30.

rāmūs, -ī, m., *branch, bough, limb*.  
rapiditās, -ātis, [rapidus, swift],  
f., *swiftness*. iv. 17. [rapidity.

rapīna, -ae, [cf. rapīō, seize], f., *pil-  
laging, plundering*. i. 15. [rapine.

rārus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. rā-  
rissimus, adj., *not thick*; pl., *few*,  
*scattered, in small parties*. [rare.

rāsus, see rādō.

ratīō, -ōnis, [reor, reckon], f., *reckon-  
ing, enumeration; account; method*,  
*means, way; plan, theory, system*,  
*science; reason, ground; condition*,  
*situation*. ratiōnem habēre, *to*  
*keep an account* (vi. 19), *take account*  
*of* (v. 27, vii. 71; C. III. 82). ra-  
tiōne initā, *having made calculation*  
(vii. 71). abs tō ratiōnem re-  
poscent, *they will call you to ac-  
count, will hold you responsible* (v.  
30). [ratio, ration, reason.

ratīs, -is, f., *raft*.

Rauracī, -ōrum, m., pl., (rā' rā-sī), a  
people along the upper Rhine, north  
of the Helvetians.

re-, red-, used only in composition,  
*again, back*.

rebelliō, -ōnis, [rebellis, from re- +  
bellum], f., *renewal of fighting, up-*

*rising*. rebellīōnem facere, *to*  
*enter into rebellion, rebel, revolt*.  
[rebellion.

Rebīlus, (reb' i-lus), see Caninius.  
recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus,  
[re- + cēdō], 3, *withdraw*. [re-  
cede.

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh; recent*,  
*late*. As noun, recentēs, -ium,  
m., pl., *those who were fresh, the un-  
wearied* (v. 16; vii. 48; C. III. 94).  
[recent.

recēnsēdō, -ēre, recēnsul, [re- +  
cēnsēdō], 2, *review, mobilize*. vii. 76.

receptāculum, -ī, [receptō], n.,  
*place of shelter, retreat*. [receptacle.

receptus, see recipiō.

receptus, -ūs, [recipiō], m., *retreat*;  
*avenue of retreat* (vi. 9); *recall*, a  
signal given with a musical instru-  
ment to call soldiers back (vii. 47).

recessus, -ūs, [recēdō], m., *a reced-  
ing; opportunity to draw back* (v.  
43). [recess.

recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsurus, [re-  
+ cadō], 3, *fall back; come upon*,  
*fall to the lot of* (vii. 1).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus,  
[re- + capiō], 3, *take back, get back*,  
*recover, win; receive, admit; take*  
*upon one's self* (C. III. 82). sē

recipere, *to retreat, withdraw; to*  
*recover one's self* (ii. 12; iv. 27, 34).  
recipere in dēditiōnem, *receive*  
*into submission*. [receive.

recitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + citō,  
quote], 1, *read aloud, recite*. v. 48.  
[recite.

reclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- +  
clinō, bend], 1, *bend back*. sē  
reclināre, *to lean back* (vi. 27);  
part. reclinātus, *leaning back* (vi.  
27). [recline.

recorder, -āri, -ātus, [re-, cor], 1,  
dep., *remember, call to mind*. C. III.  
47, 72, 73. [record.

**recreō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + creō], 1, *restore, renew*. C. III. 74. [recreate.]

**rēctē**, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [rēc-tus], adv., *rightly, properly; nobly* (vii. 80); *safely* (vii. 6).

**rēctus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -tissimus, [part. of regō], adj., *straight, direct*.

**recuperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-, cf. capiō], 3, *get back, recover*. [recuperate.]

**recūsātiō**, -ōnis, [recūsō], f., *refusal, objection, protest*. C. III. 98.

**recūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-, cf. causa], 1, *refuse, make refusal, decline; raise objections* (v. 6).

**redāctus**, see redigō.

**redditus**, see reddō.

**reddō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [red- + dō], 3, *give back, restore, return; render, make* (ii. 5). *iūs reddere*, to dispense justice (vi. 13). *supplicātiōnem reddere*, to proclaim a thanksgiving (vii. 90). *vitam prō vitā reddere*, to give life for life (vi. 16). [rendition.]

**redēptus**, see redimō.

**redeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum est, [red- + eō], irr., *go back, come back, return; slope down* (ii. 8); *be reduced* (v. 48); *be referred* (vi. 11). *ad gladiōs redire*, to resort to swords, draw swords (C. III. 93).

**redigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -actus, [red- + agō], 3, *force back; reduce; render, make* (ii. 27; iv. 3). [redact.]

**redimō**, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptus, [red- + emō], 3, *buy back, purchase; of revenues, buy up, farm* (i. 18). [redeem.]

**redintegrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [red- + integrō, make whole], 1, *commence again, renew; revive*. [redintegrate.]

**reditiō**, -ōnis, [cf. redeō], f., *a going back, returning*. i. 5.

**reditus**, -ūs, [cf. redeō], m., *returning, return*. iv. 30; vi. 29, 36.

**Redonēa**, -um, m., pl., (red' o-nēz), a people in northwestern Gaul (Fig. 206).



Figure 206. — Coin of the Redones.

Gold. Obverse, head with chaplet of laurel.

Reverse, horseman brandishing a spear and shield; in front of the horse, a head of wheat.

**redūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [re- + dūcō], 3, *lead back, bring or conduct back; draw back* (vii. 22, 24); *carry back, put back*, (vii. 72). [reduce.]

**refectus**, see reficiō.

**referō**, -ferre, -rettulī, -lātus, [re- + ferō], 3, *bring back, carry back* (iv. 28); *bring, carry, convey to a place or person; report, announce*. *pedem referre*, to retreat. *grātiām referre*, to make return, requite. [refer.]

**reficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [re- + faciō], 3, *repair, refit, restore; of troops, refresh* (iii. 5; vii. 32, 83); *recruit* (C. III. 87). [refectory.]

**refractus**, see refringō.

**refringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus, [re- + frangō], 3, *break* (vii. 56); *burst in, break down* (ii. 33). [refract.]

**refugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, [re- + fugiō], 3, *flee back* (v. 35); *flee away, escape*. [refuge.]

**Rēginus**, (rē-jī' nus), see Antistius.

**regiō**, -ōnis, [cf. *regō*, *keep straight*], f., *direction, line; boundary; region, tract, territory*. **rēctā regiōne**, in a direct line (vii. 46); *along the line* (vi. 25). **ē regiōne**, directly opposite. [region.]

**rēgia**, -a, -um, [rēx], adj., *kingly, royal*. vii. 32, C. III. 104.

**rēgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [rēgnum], 1, *be king, reign*. v. 25. [reign.]

**rēgnum**, -i, [cf. *regō*], n., *kingship, sovereignty, royal power; absolute authority; territory subject to a king or ruler, kingdom*. [reign (noun.)]

**regō**, -ere, **rēxi**, **rēctus**, 3, *keep straight; regulate; control, manage* (iii. 13); *conduct, carry on* (vi. 17).

**reiciō**, -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [re + iaciō], 3, *throw back, hurl back* (i. 46); *of ships, cast back, carry back* (v. 5, 23); *drive back, repulse* (i. 24; ii. 33); *cast away* (v. 30); *throw away* (i. 52). [reject.]

**relectus**, see **reiciō**.

**relanguēscō**, -ere, -ui, [re + languēscō], 3, *become enfeebled, become enervated*. ii. 15.

**relātus**, see **referō**.

**relegō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re + lēgō, *depute*], 1, *banish, remove, treat as an outlaw*. [relegate.]

**relictus**, see **relinquō**.

**religiō**, -ōnis, f., *religious scruple, religious obligation, religious observance, superstition*. [religion.]

**religō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind back; bind fast* (C. II. 6).

**relinquō**, -linquere, -liqui, -lictus, [re + linquō, *quit*], 3, *leave, leave behind; desert, abandon; of a siege or attack, leave off, give up*. [relinquish.]

**reliquus**, -a, -um, [cf. **relinquō**], adj., *remaining, left, the rest*. As noun, **reliqui**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the*

*rest; reliqui*, gen. sing. neut., in **nihil reliqui**, *nothing left* (i. 11).

**remaneō**, -manēre, -mānui, [re + manēō], 2, *remain, stay behind*. [remain.]

**rēmex**, -igis, [rēmus, cf. *agō*], m., *rower*. iii. 9.

**Rēmī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (rē' mī), a Belgic people, about the headwaters of the Axona (*Aisne*); chief city, Duorocorum, now *Reims*.

**rēmigō**, -āre, [rēmex], 1, *row*. v. 8.

**remigrō**, -āre, -āvi, [re + migrō, *remove*], 1, *move back, return*. iv. 4, 27. [remigrate.]

**reminiscor**, -minisci, [re + MEN in mēns], 3, dep., *remember, recollect*. i. 13. [reminiscent.]

**remissus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, [part. of **remittō**], adj., *relaxed; mild*. **remissior**, *less severe* (v. 12). [remiss.]

**remittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [re + mittō], 3, *send back; give back, restore* (vii. 20); *relax, diminish* (ii. 15; v. 49); *impair, lose* (vi. 14); *of a tax, remit* (i. 44). [remit.]

**remollēscō**, -lēcere, [re + mollēscō, *grow soft*], 3, *become weak*. iv. 2.

**remōtus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, [removed], adj., *far off, remote*. i. 31; vii. 1. [remote.]

**removeō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [re + moveō], 2, *move back, remove; dismiss* (i. 19). [remove.]

**remūneror**, -ārī, -ātus, [re-, cf. **mūnus**], 1, dep., *recompense, repay*. i. 44. [remunerate.]

**rēmus**, -i, m., *oar*.

**Rēmus**, -i, m., *one of the Remi, a Roman*.

**rēnō**, -ōnis, m., *reindeer skin, deer skin*. vi. 21.

**renovō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + novō, from novus], 1, *renew, again commence*. [renovate.]

**renūtiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + nūtiō], 1, *bring back word, announce; declare elected* (vii. 33). [renounce.]

**repellō**, -pellere, reppuli, repulsus, [re- + pellō], 3, *drive back, force back, repulse*. [repel.]

**repente**, [abl. of repēns, sudden], adv.; *suddenly*.

**repentinus**, -a, -um, [repēns, sudden], adj., *sudden, unexpected*.

**reperiō**, -perire, repperi, repertus, 4, *find, find out; discover, ascertain, learn*.

**repetō**, -petere, -petivi or -petil, -petitus, [re- + petō], 3, *seek again, again try to obtain* (v. 49); *demand* (i. 31); *exact* (i. 30). [repeat.]

**repleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, [re- + pleō, fill], 2, *fill up; supply amply* (vii. 56). [replete.]

**reponō**, -ponere, -posui, -positus, [re- + ponō], 3, *replace; place, rest* (C. II. 41). [repository.]

**reportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + portō], 1, *carry back, convey back*. [report.]

**reposcō**, -poscere, [re- + poscō], 3, *demand, require*. v. 30.

**repraesentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + praesentō, from praesēns], 1, *do at once, do forthwith*. i. 40. [represent.]

**reprehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [re- +prehendō], 3, *hold back; criticise, blame*. [reprehend.]

**repressus**, see reprimō.

**reprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressus, [re- + premō], 3, *restrain, check; repress*. [repress.]

**repudiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *reject, scorn*. i. 40. [repudiate.]

**repugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + pugnō], 1, *fight back, resist*. [repugnant.]

**repulsus**, see repellō. [repulse.]

**requiescō**, -ere, requievi, requies-tus, [re- + quiescō], 3, *take rest, rest*. C. III. 98.

**requirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus, [re- + quaerō], 3, *require, demand* (vi. 34); *wish back again, miss* (vii. 63); *seek* (C. II. 35). [require.]

**rēs**, rei, f., *matter, affair; circumstance, fact, transaction; object, project, business*. **rēs militāria**, *warfare, military science*. **rēs novae**, *a revolution*. **praemia rei pecuniariae**, *rewards in money* (C. III. 59). [real.]

**rescindō**, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, [re- + scindō], 3, *cut down, break up, destroy*. [rescind.]

**resciscō**, -resciscere, -solvi, or -scil, -scitus, [re- + resciscō, inquire], 3, *discover, find out*. i. 28.

**rescribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [re- + scribō], 3, *write again; enroll anew, transfer from one branch of the service to another* (i. 42). [rescribe.]

**reservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re- + servō], 1, *keep back, keep*. [reserve.]

**resideō**, -sistere, -sēdi, [re- + sedeō, sit], *linger, remain*. [reside.]

**residō**, -sistere, -sēdi, [re- + sidō, sit down], 3, *settle down, subside*. vii. 64.

**resistō**, -sistere, -stiti, [re- + sistō, set], 3, *remain, stay; stand still* (C. II. 35); *oppose, withstand, offer resistance*. [resist.]

**respiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [re- + specio, look], 3, *look back* (ii. 24; v. 43, C. II. 35); *look at; consider* (vii. 77). [respect.]

**respondeō**, -spondere, -spondi,



-spōsus, [re- + spondeō, *promise*], 2, *answer, reply*. [respond.  
**respōsum**, -ī, [part. of respondeō],  
 n., *answer, reply*. [response.  
**res pūblica**, see **pūblicus**.  
**respuō**, -spuere, -spui, [re- +  
 spuō], 3, *spit out; reject* (i. 42).  
**restinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi,  
 -stinctus, [re- + stinguō, *quench*],  
 3, *put out, extinguish*. vii. 24, 25.  
**restituō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, [re- +  
 statuō], 3, *replace, restore; renew,*  
*revive; rebuild* (i. 28). [restitution.  
**retentus**, see **retineō**.  
**retineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [re- +  
 teneō], 2, *restrain, detain, keep*  
*back; hold* (vii. 21). [retain.  
**retrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus,  
 [re- + trahō], 3, *bring back by*  
*force*. v. 7. [retract.  
**revellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, [re- +  
 vellō, *pull*], 3, *pull back* (i. 52);  
*tear away* (vii. 73).  
**reversus**, see **revertor**.  
**revertō**, reverti, [re- + vertō], 3,  
 only in tenses from pf. stem, and  
 revertor, -verti, -versurus, 3,  
 dep., *return, go back*. [revert.  
**revinciō**, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinctus,  
 [re- + vinciō], 4, *bind back, bind*  
*securely, fasten*.  
**revocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- +  
 vocō], 1, *call back, recall*. [re-  
 voke.  
**rēx**, rēgis, [cf. regō, *rule*], m., *king,*  
*ruler, chieftain*.  
**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., *the Rhine*.  
**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, which  
 rises in the Alps near the sources of  
 the Rhine, and passing through Lake  
 Geneva, follows at first a south-  
 westerly direction, then flows south,  
 reaching the Mediterranean after a  
 course of about 500 miles.  
**rīpa**, -ae, f., *bank of a stream*. [river.  
**rīvus**, -ī, m., *stream, brook*. [rival.

**rōbur**, -oris, n., *oak* (ii. 13); *strength*  
 (C. iii. 87). [robust.  
**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, *ask, request*.  
 [rogation.  
**Rōma**, -ae, f., *Rome*.  
**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, [Rōma], adj.,  
*Roman*. As noun, **Rōmānus**, -ī,  
 m., *a Roman*; usually pl., *the Ro-*  
*mans, Romans*. [Roman.  
**Rōscius**, -ī, m., *Lucius Roscius* (rosh'-  
 [y]us), a lieutenant in Caesar's army.  
**rōstrum**, -ī, [cf. rōdō, *gnaw*], n.,  
*beak; of a ship, beak*. [rostrum.  
**rota**, -ae, f., *wheel*. [rotary.  
**Roucellus**, -ī, m., (ru-sil' us), *an Allo-*  
*brogian*, brother of Egus. C. iii. 59.  
**rubus**, -ī, m., *brier, bramble*. ii. 17.  
**Rūfus**, -ī, [Rūfus, *reddish*], m., (rū'-  
 fūs), a Roman cognomen.  
**rūmor**, -ōris, m., *rumor, report, gossip*.  
 [rumor.  
**rūpēs**, -is, [cf. rumpō], f., *cliff*. ii. 29.  
**rūrsus**, [for revorsus, from re-  
 vertō], adv., *again, anew; in turn,*  
*on the contrary*.  
**Rutēni**, -ōrum, m., pl., (ru-tē' nī), a  
 Gallic people, west of the Cebenna  
 (Cévennes) Mountains; part of them  
 were in the Province, and were called  
 Rutēni prōvinciālēs.  
**Rutilus** (ru' tī-lūs), see **Semprō-**  
**nus**.

## S.

**Sabinus**, see **Titūrius**.  
**Sabis**, -is, m., *Sabis* (sā' bīs), *the*  
*Sambre*, a river in the central part  
 of Belgic Gaul flowing northeast into  
 the Mosa (*Meuse*). ii. 16, 18.  
**Saburra**, -ae, m., (sa-bū' rā), a gen-  
 eral in Juha's army. C. ii. 38-42.  
**sacerdōs**, -dōtis, [sacer, cf. dō],  
 m. and f., *priest*. vii. 33. [sacer-  
 dotal.  
**sacerdōtium**, -ī, [sacerdōs], n.,  
*priesthood*. C. iii. 82, 83.

**sacramentum**, -i, [sacrō, *set apart as sacred*], n., *oath*. [sacrament.

**Sacrativir**, -i, m., *Marcus Sacrativir*, (sə-krat' i-vir), a Roman knight. C. III. 71.

**sacrificium**, -i, [sacrificus, from **sacrum** + **FAC** in **faciō**], n., *sacrifice*. vi. 13, 16, 21. [sacrifice.

**saepe**, comp. -lus, sup. -issimō, adv., *often, frequently*. Comp., *too often* (iii. 6). **saepe numerō**, *often-times, repeatedly*.

**saepea**, -is, f., *hedge*. ii. 17, 22.

**saevio**, -ire, -ii, -itus, [saevus, *ferce*], 4, *rage; be violent* (iii. 13).

**sagitta**, -ae, f., *arrow*.

**sagittarius**, -i, [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman*. [Sagittarius.

**sagulum**, -i, [dim. of **sagum**, *mantle*], n., *small cloak, cloak*. v. 42.

**sāl**, **sallis**, m., *salt*. C. II. 37. [salad. **salinae**, -arum, f., pl., [sāl], *salt-works*. C. II. 37.

**saltem**, adv., *at any rate*. C. I. 6.

**saltus**, -us, m., *wooded valley, defile, glen, thicket*. vi. 43; vii. 19.

**salus**, -utis, [cf. **salvus**, *well*], f., *health, welfare; safety*. [salutary.

**salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [salūs], 1, *greet, address*. C. III. 71. [salute.

**Samarobriva**, -ae, f., (sam'' a-rō-brī' va), a city of the Ambiani on the Samara (*Somme*); now *Amiens*.

**sancio**, **sancire**, **sāxi**, **sāctus**, 4, *make sacred; make binding, ratify*. [sanction.

**sāctus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -issimus, [sancio], adj., *hallowed, sacred*. [saint.

**sanguis**, -inis, m., *blood*. [sanguine.

**sānitās**, -tātis, [sānus], f., *soundness of mind, good sense*. [sanity.

**sānō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. **sānus**], 1, *make sound; make good, remedy* (vii. 29).

**Santonēs**, -um, or **Santonī**, -ōrum,

m., pl., (san' tō-nēz, san' tō-nī), a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garumna (*Garonne*). Fig. 207.



Figure 207. — Coin of the Santones.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; inscription, SANTONOS.

Reverse, a galloping horse.

**sānus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. **sānissimus**, adj., *sound, healthy, rational*. As noun, **prō sānō**, *as a prudent man* (v. 7). [sane.

**sapiō**, -ere, -ivi, 3, *taste; be sensible, understand* (v. 30). [sapient.

**sarcinae**, -arum, [sarcio], f., pl., *packs, carried by the soldiers on their backs*.

**sarcio**, -ire, **sarsi**, **sartus**, 4, *mend; make good* (vi. 1; C. III. 73); *wipe out* (C. III. 74). [sartorial.

**sarmentum**, -i, [sarpō, *prune*], n., *a branch; pl., brushwood* (iii. 18).

**satis**, adv., *enough, sufficiently, tolerably, rather*; often used as a noun, especially with a gen. of the whole, as **satis causae**, *sufficient reason*.

**satisfaciō** [satis + faciō], -facere, -feci, -factus, irr., *satisfy, give satisfaction; make restitution* (i. 14, v. 1); *appease, placate* (vii. 89); *make apology, apologise* (i. 41, v. 54). [satisfy.

**satisfactiō**, -ōnis, [satisfaciō], f., *apology, excuse*. [satisfaction.

**Sāturninus**, -i, m., *L. Appuleius Saturninus* (sat-ur-nī' nūs), a tribune in 100 B.C. C. I. 7.

**satus**, see **serō**.

**saucius**, -a, -um, adj., *wounded* (v. 36). As noun, **saucius**, -i, m., *a wounded man* (iii. 4).

**saxum**, -i, n., *stone, rock*.

**Scaeva**, -ae, m., *Cassius Scaeva* (sē'va), a brave centurion in Caesar's army. C. III. 53.

**scālae**, -ārum, [cf. scandō, *climb*], f., pl., *ladder, scaling-ladder*. [scale.]

**Scaldia**, -is, m., *the Schelde*, which rises in France near the headwaters of the *Somme* (Samara), and flows northeast to the sea. vi. 33.

**scapha**, -ae, [σκάφη], f., *skiff, small boat*.

**scelerātus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of scelerō, from scelus], adj., *wicked, infamous* (vi. 34). As noun, **scelerātus**, -i, m., *a crime-polluted man* (vi. 13).

**scelus**, **sceleris**, n., *crime, wickedness*. i. 14.

**scienter**, comp. **scientius**, sup. **scientissimō**, [sciōns], adv., *cleverly, skilfully*. vii. 22.

**scientia**, -ae, [sciōns], f., *knowledge, skill*. [science.]

**scindō**, -ere, **scidi**, **scissus**, 3, *tear, cut, split; tear down, break down* (iii. 5; v. 51).

**scio**, **scire**, **scivi**, **scitus**, 4, *know, understand*.

**Scipio**, -ōnis, m., *Q. Caecilius Metellus Scipio* (sip' i-ō), a prominent partisan of Pompey, who married his daughter Cornelia as fifth wife. C. III. 82, 83, 88, 90.

**scorpiō**, -ōnis, [σκόρπιον], m., *a scorpion; scorpion, a military engine* (vii. 25). [scorpion.]

**scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptus**, 3, *write, write down*. [scribe.]

**scrobia**, -is, m. and f., *hole, pit; wolf-hole, wolf-pit*. [scrobiculae.]

**scutum**, -i, n., oblong *shield*.

**sa. sāsā. see sul.**

**sē**, **sēd**, in composition, *apart from, without*.

**sēbum**, -i, n., *fat, tallow*. [sebaceous.]

**sēcensio**, -ōnis, [sēcōdō], f., *withdrawal*. C. I. 7. [secession.]

**sēcūdō**, -ere, -ei, -sus, [sē + claudō], 3, *shut off*. C. III. 97. [seclude.]

**secō**, -āre, -ui, -tus, 1, *cut*. [sector.]

**sēcrētō** [sēcrētus], adv., *secretly, privately*. i. 18, 31.

**sectio**, -ōnis, [secō], f., *booty*. [section.]

**sector**, -āri, -ātus, [freq. of sequor], 1, dep., *pursue, chase*. vi. 35.

**sectūra**, -ae, [secō], f., *a cutting through earth, digging, excavation*. iii. 21.

**secundum**, [sequor], prep. with acc. only, *along, next to, by the side of* (ii. 18; vii. 34); *according to* (iv. 17); *besides* (i. 33).

**secundus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [sequor], adj., *second, next; propitious, fortunate, favorable*. [second.]

**secūria**, -is, [cf. secō], f., *axe*; pl. referring to the axes of the lictors, *the lictor's axe* (vii. 77).

**sēd**, conj., *but; yet, but yet*.

**sēd**, see **sē**.

**sēdecim**, or **XVI**, [sex + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *sixteen*.

**sēdōa**, -is, [cf. sedeo, *sit*], f., *seat; habitation, abode, settlement, home*.

**sēditio**, -ōnis, [sēd + itio, from ire], f., *mutiny, revolt*. vii. 28. [sedition.]

**sēditiosus**, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [sēditio], adj., *mutinous*. [seditionous.]

**Sedulus**, -i, m., (sē-dū' li-ys), a leader of the Lemovices. vii. 88.

**Sedūni**, -orum, m., pl., (sē-dū' ni), a people in the Alps southeast of Lacus Lemannus (*Lake Geneva*).

**Sedusii**, -ōrum, m., pl., (sēdū'-sh[y]-i), a German tribe. i. 51.

**seges**, -etis, f., *grain-field*. vi. 36.

**Segni**, -ōrum, m., pl., (seg' nī), a German tribe settled in Belgic Gaul. vi. 32.

**Segontiaci**, -ōrum, m., pl., (seg''-on-shi-ā' sī), a people in the southern part of Britain. v. 21.

**Segovax**, -actis, m., (seg' q-vaks), a British chieftain. v. 22.

**Segusii**, -ōrum, m., pl., (seg'' ū-shi-ā' vī), a Gallic people, subject to the Aeduan. Fig. 208.



Figure 208. — A Coin of the Segusii.

Silver. Obverse, helmeted head; Inscription, SEGUSIAVS, perhaps a man's name.

Reverse, Hercules with his club and lion's skin.

**semel**, adv., *once*.

**sēmentis**, -is, [sēmen, *seed*], f., *sowing, seeding* (i. 3).

**sēmita**, -ae, f., *path, by-way*.

**semper**, adv., *always, ever, constantly*.

**Sempronius**, -i, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus* (sem-prō' nī-ŭs rū' tī-lŭs), a Roman cavalry officer. vii. 90.

**senātor**, -ōris, [cf. *senex*], m., member of the Roman Senate, *senator*; member of a Gallic state-council, *councillor, senator* (ii. 28). [senator.

**senātorius**, -a, -um, [senator], adj., *senatorial*. ōrdō senātorius, *senatorial rank* (C. iii. 83, 97). [senatorial.

**senātus**, -ūs, [cf. *senex*], m., *council of elders, senate*. [senate.

**senex**, -is, comp. *senior*, adj., *old, aged*. As noun, m., *old man* (i.

29); *seniōrēs*, -um, m., pl., *older men* (C. ii. 4). [senile.

**sēni**, -ae, -a, [sex], distrib. num. adj., *six each, six*. i. 15.

**Senonēs**, -um, m., pl., (sen' q-nēz), a Gallic people south of the Matrona (*Marne*); chief city Agedincum, now Sens.

**sententia**, -ae, [cf. *sentio*], f., *opinion, view, notion, conviction; decision, judgment*. *sententiam dicere*, to express an opinion. *sententiās ferre*, to vote (C. iii. 83). [sentence.

**sentio**, sentire, sēnai, sēnsus, 4, *perceive through the senses, become aware, learn; feel, think; know*. [sense.

**sentia**, -is, m, *thorn-bush*. ii. 17.

**sēparātim** [sēparātus], adv., *separately, apart*.

**sēparātus**, -a, -um, [part. of *sēparō*], adj., *separate, marked off*. [separate.

**sēparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sē + parō], 1, *part, separate*. vii. 63. [separate (verb).

**septem**, or VII, indeclinable num. adj., *seven*. [September.

**septentriō**, -ōnis, [septem + triō, *plough-ox*], m., generally pl., *septentriōnēs*, -um, the seven plough-oxen, the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear; the North. [septentrional.

**Septimius**, -i, m., *Lucius Septimius* (sep-tim' i-ŭs), a military tribune. C. iii. 104.

**septimus**, -a, -um, [septem], num. adj., *the seventh*. [septimal.

**septingenti**, -ae, -a, or DCC, [septem + centum], num. adj., *seven hundred*. v. 13; vii. 51.

**septaagintā**, or LXX, indeclinable num. adj., *seventy*. [Septuagint.

**sepultura**, -ae, [cf. *sepeliō*, *bury*], f., *burial*. i. 26. [sepulture.

**suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, [cf. suspīciō],  
1, dep., *suspect, mistrust, surmise.*

**sustentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of  
sustineō], 1, *sustain, endure, bear,  
hold out.*

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus,  
[subs. for sub, + teneō], 2, *hold  
up* (vii. 56); *check, pull up* (iv. 33);  
*hold out, bear, endure; hold out  
against, withstand.* [sustain.

**sustuli**, see tollō.

**sus**, -a, -um, [cf. sul], possessive  
pronominal adj., *his, her, its, their;*  
*his own, her own, their own, etc.;*  
with locō, locis, *favorable to him-  
self, to themselves.* As noun, sul,  
m., pl., *his, their friends, people,  
party, side; suum*, -ī, n., *their own*  
(i. 43); *sua*, n., pl., *his, her, their  
property, possessions. sē suaque,*  
*themselves and their possessions* (i. 11,  
ii. 31).

**Syria**, -ae, [Συρία], f., (sir' i-a), a  
country lying east of the Mediterra-  
nean Sea, between Cilicia and Pales-  
tine; organized into a Roman prov-  
ince in 64 B.C. C. I. 6, III. 103.

**Syriacus**, -a, -um, [Syria], adj.,  
*Syrian.* C. III. 88.

## T.

**T.** = Titus (ti'tus), a Roman first  
name.

**tabella**, -ae, [dim. of tabula], f.,  
*tablet; voting-tablet, ballot* (C. III. 83).

**tabernāculum**, -ī, [taberna, hut],  
n., *tent, hut.* [tabernacle.

**tabula**, -ae, f., *board; writing-tablet;*  
*list written on a tablet* (i. 29).  
[table.

**tabulātum**, -ī, [cf. tabula], n., *floor,  
story.* vi. 29. [tabulate.

**taceō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 2, *be silent, re-  
main silent* (i. 17); *say nothing of,  
pass over in silence* (i. 17).

**tacitus**, -a, -um, [part. of taceō],  
adj., *silent.* i. 32. [tacit.

**tālea**, -ae, f., *stick, block* (vii. 73);  
*bar* (v. 12). [tally.

**tālia**, -e, adj., *such.*

**tam**, adv., *so, so very.*

**tamen**, adv., *yet, still, for all that,  
nevertheless, however.*

**Tamesia**, -is, m., *the Thames.*

**tametsi** [tam, = tamen, + etsi],  
conj., *although, though.*

**tandem** [tam], adv., *at length, finally;*  
*in questions, pray* (i. 40).

**tangō**, tangere, tetigi, tāctus, 3,  
*touch, border on.* v. 3. [tact.

**tantopere** [tantō opere], adv., *so  
earnestly, with so great effort.* i. 31.

**tantulus**, -a, -um, [dim. of tantus],  
adj., *so small, so slight, so trifling.*

**tantum** [acc. of tantus], adv., *only  
so much, so far, merely.* tantum  
modo, *only* (iii. 5).

**tantundem** [acc. neut. of tantus-  
dem], adv., *just so much.* vii. 72.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large,  
so much, so extensive, so important.*

**tantus** . . . **quantus**, *so great, so  
much, only so much* . . . as.

**Tarbelli**, -ōrum, m., pl., (tar-bel' ī),  
a people in Aquitania, near the  
Ocean. iii. 27.

**tardō**, comp. -lus, sup. -issimō, [tar-  
dus], adv., *slowly; comp., rather  
slowly* (iv. 23, C. III. 82).

**tardō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tardus], 1,  
*check, delay, impede, hinder.*

**tardus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup.  
-issimus, adj., *slow.* Comp., *less  
active* (ii. 25). [tardy.

**Tarusātēs**, -ium, m., pl., (tär-ū-sā'-  
tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 23,  
27.

**Tasgetius**, -ī, m., (tas-jē' sh[y]us), a  
ruler of the Carnutes. v. 25, 29.

**Taurols**, -entis, acc. **Tauroenta**,  
[Ταυρόεις], (tā' rō-is), a fortified place

on the seacoast near Massilia. C.  
II. 4.

**taurus**, -I, m., *bull.* vi. 28. [Taurus.

**Taximagulus**, -I, m., (tak-sj-mag' ū-  
lus), a British chieftain. v. 22.

**taxus**, -I, f., *yew.* vi. 31.

**Tectosagēs**, -um, m., pl., (tĕk-tos'-  
a-jĕz), a division of the Volcae, in  
the Province; represented also by a  
branch settled near the Hercynian  
forest (vi. 24).

**temere**, adv., *blindly, recklessly, rashly*  
(I. 40, v. 28; vii. 37, C. III. 87);  
*without good reason* (iv. 20).

**temeritās**, -tātis, [cf. **temere**], f.,  
*rashness, recklessness.* [temerity.

**tēmō**, -ōnis, m., *pole, tongue*, of a  
wagon or chariot. iv. 33.

**Tempē** [Τέμπε], n., indeclinable pl.,  
*Tempe*, a narrow valley, famed for  
its beauty, in the northern part of  
Thessaly, through which the river



Figure 209. — A view in the Vale of Tempe.

Through this beautiful valley Pompey rode in mad haste after the battle of Pharsalus.

**tĕctum**, -I, [tĕgō], n., *roof* (i. 36);  
*house* (vii. 66).

**tegimentum**, -I, [tĕgō], n., *covering*.  
ii. 21; vi. 21. [tegument.

**tĕgō**, **tegere**, **tĕxi**, **tĕctus**, 3, *cover*  
(v. 43); *hide, conceal, protect.*

**tĕlum**, -I, n., general word for *missile*;  
*dart, spear.*

**temerārius**, -a, -um, [temere], adj.,  
*rash, headstrong.* I. 31; VI. 20.

Xerias (ancient *Peneius*) flows east-  
ward to the sea; it lies between Mt.  
Olympus and Mt. Ossa (Map 19, and  
Fig. 209).

**temperantia**, -ae, [temperāns, tem-  
perate], f., *moderation, sound judg-  
ment.* i. 19. [temperance.

**temperātus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior,  
[temperō], adj., *moderate, temper-  
ate, mild* (v. 12). [temperate.

**temperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. *tempus*], 1, control one's self, refrain (i. 7, 33). [temper.]

**tempestās**, -tātis, [tempus], f., weather; stormy weather, bad weather, storm. [tempest.]

**templum**, -i, n., temple. C. I. 7, II. 5. [temple.]

**temptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of *tendō*], 1, try, attempt; make an attack on, attack, assail (vii. 73, 86); try to win over (vi. 2). [tempt.]

**tempus**, -oris, n., period of time; time, period; season; occasion, circumstances. *prō tempore*, according to the emergency (v. 8). *in reliquum tempus*, for the future, for all time to come. [temporal.]

**Tencteri**, -ōrum, m., pl., (tengk'-tę-rī), a German people, driven from their territories by the Suebi.

**tendō**, *tendere*, *tetendi*, *tentus*, 3, stretch, extend; put up (C. III. 82); have one's tent (vi. 37). [tend.]

**tenebrae**, -arum, f., pl., darkness.

**teneō**, *tenēre*, *tenui*, 2, hold, keep, occupy; hold in, keep in, hold back, restrain, hem in; bind (i. 31). *sē tenēre*, to keep one's self, to remain. [tenet.]

**tener**, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. -enerrimus, adj., tender, young. ii. 17. [tender (adj.).]

**tenuis**, -e, comp. *tenuior*, sup. *tenuissimus*, adj., thin; poor, trifling (vi. 35); feeble, delicate (v. 40).

**tenuitās**, -ātis, [tenuis], f., thinness; weakness; poverty, destitution (vii. 17). [tenuity.]

**tenuiter**, comp. *tenuius*, sup. -issimō, [tenuis], adv., thinly. iii. 13.

**ter**, num. adv., three times, thrice.

**teres**, -etis, [cf. *terō*, rub], adj., smooth (vii. 73).

**tergum**, -i, n., back. *ā tergō*, post

*tergum*, in the rear, on the rear.

*terga vertere*, to flee. [tergant.]

**terni**, -ae, -a, [ter], distrib. num. adj., by threes, three each. [ternary.]

**terra**, -ae, f., earth; land, ground; territory, country, region. [terrace.]

**Terrasidius**, -i, m., (ter-ā-sid' i-us), an officer under Publius Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

**terrēnus**, -a, -um, [terra], adj., of earth, earthy. i. 43. [terrain.]

**terreō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 2, frighten, terrify, alarm; followed by *quō minus*, deter, frighten from an action (vii. 49).

**territō**, -āre, [freq. of *terreō*], 1, frighten greatly, terrify. *metū territāre*, to fill with apprehension (v. 6).

**terror**, -ōris, [cf. *terreō*], m., fear, fright, alarm. *inferre terrōrem*, to strike terror (vii. 8). [terror.]

**tertius**, -a, -um, [ter], num. ord. adj., third. *tertius decimus*, or *XIII*, thirteenth. [tertiary.]

**testāmentum**, -i, [cf. *testor*], n., will. i. 39. [testament.]

**testimōnium**, -i, [cf. *testis*], n., proof, evidence. [testimony.]

**testis**, -is, m. and f., witness.

**testūdō**, -inis, [cf. *testa*, potsherd], f., turtle; turtle-shell roof, *testudo*, a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping (ii. 6; v. 9; vii. 85); turtle-shell shed, a movable shed to protect soldiers near the enemy's wall (v. 42, 43, 52). [testudinate.]

**Teutomatus**, -i, m., (tū-tom' a-tus), a king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31, 46.

**Teutonī**, gen. -um, m., pl., *Teutons*, *Teutoni* (tū-tō-nī); see *Cimbri*.

**Thessalia**, -ae, [Θεσσαλία], f., Thessaly, the northeastern part of Greece. C. III. 82.

**Thracēs**, -um, m., pl., *Thracians*, natives of Thrace, east of Macedonia. C. III. 95.

**ignum**, -i, n., *log, pile*. iv. 17.

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, adj., *Tigurian*. As noun, **Tigurini**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Tigurians*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians. i. 12.

**timeō**, -ēre, -ui, 2, *fear, be afraid of; be afraid, be apprehensive* (i. 14, 41). Pres. part. as noun, **timentēs**, m., pl., *the fearful* (vii. 7).

**timidō**, comp. -ius, [**timidus**], adv., *timidly*. iii. 25; v. 33.

**timidus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. **timeō**], adj., *timid, cowardly*. i. 39; vi. 40. [**timid**].

**timor**, -ōris, [cf. **timeō**], m., *fear, apprehension, alarm*. [timorous].

**Titūrius**, -i, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus* (tī-tū' rj-ūs sabin' nūs), a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Titus**, -i, m., (tī' tūs), a Roman first name; abbreviation, T.

**tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *bear, support, endure; sustain* (vii. 77); *hold out* (vii. 71). [*tolerate*].

**tollō**, tollere, sustull, sublātus, 3, *lift, raise; of an anchor, weigh* (iv. 23); *take on board* (iv. 28); *puff up, elate* (i. 15; v. 38, C. II. 37); *take away, remove* (vi. 17; vii. 14); *do away with* (i. 42).

**Tolōsa**, -ae, f., (tō-lō' sà), a city in the Province, now *Toulouse*. iii. 20.

**Tolōsātēs**, -ium, [**Tolōsa**], m., pl., (tōl-ō-sā' tēz), a people in the territory of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province, about Tolosa.

**tormentum**, -i, [cf. **torqueō**, *twist*], n., *windlass* (vii. 22); as a military term, pl., *torsioners, engines, artillery* (vii. 41, 81); *missile, thrown by the torsioners* (iv. 25); *means of torture, rack, torture* (vi. 19; vii. 4). [*torment*].

**torreō**, torrēre, torruī, tostus, 2, *roast; burn, scorch* (v. 43). [*torrid*].

**tot**, indeclinable num. adj., *so many*. **totidem** [tot], indeclinable num. adj., *just as many, just so many*.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, adj., *the whole, all, all the, entire*. [total].

**traba**, trabis, f., *beam, timber*.

**tractus**, see **trahō**.

**trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [trāns + dō], 3, *hand over, give up, deliver, surrender; intrust, commit, confide; commend, recommend* (vii. 39); *hand down* (iv. 7); *teach, impart* (vi. 14, 17; vii. 22).

**trādūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trāns + dūcō], 3, *lead across, bring over; lead, transport, transfer; win over* (vi. 12, vii. 37). [*traduce*].

**trāgula**, -ae, f., *dart, javelin*, perhaps having a barbed point, and hurled by means of a leather thong.

**trahō**, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, 3, *drag along* (i. 53); *draw along, drag* (vi. 38). [*tract*].

**trāciō**, -icere, -lēcī, -lectus, [trāns + iaciō], 3, *throw across; strike through, pierce, transfix* (v. 35, 44; vii. 25, 82). [*trajectory*].

**trālectus**, see **trāciō**.

**trālectus**, -ūs, [cf. **trāciō**], m., *passage*. iv. 21; v. 2.

**trānō**, -āre, -āvi, [trāns + nō, *swim*], 1, *swim across*. i. 53.

**tranquillitās**, -ātis, [**tranquillus**, *still*], f., *stillness, calm* (iii. 15). **summa tranquillitās**, a profound calm (v. 23). [*tranquillity*].

**trāns**, prep. with acc. only, *across, over; on the further side of, beyond*.

**Trānsalpīnus**, -a, -um, [trāns + Alpīnus, from Alpēs], adj., *beyond the Alps, Transalpine*. vii. 1, 6.

**trāscendō**, -scendere, -scendī, [trāns + scandō, *climb*], 3, *climb*



**ubique** [ubi + -que], adv., *anywhere, everywhere*. iii. 16. [ubiquity.]

**Ubicus, -a, -um**, adj., *Ubian, of the Ubians* (vi. 29).

**ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus**, 3, dep., *take vengeance on* (i. 14; iv. 19; v. 38); *avenge* (i. 12); *to take vengeance* (vi. 34).

**ullus, -a, -um**, gen. **ullius**, adj., *any*. As noun, *anyone, anybody* (i. 8).

**ulterior, -ius**, [ultrā], adj. in comp. degree, *farther, beyond, more remote, more distant*. Sup. **ultimus**, *farthest, most distant, most remote; last*. As noun, **ulteriorēs, -um**, m., pl., *those who were further off* (vi. 2); **ultimī, -ōrum**, m., pl., *the last* (v. 43). [ulterior, ultimate.]

**ultrā**, prep. with acc. only, *on the farther side of; beyond* (i. 48, 49).

**ultrō**, adv., *to the farther side; besides, moreover, also* (v. 28, vi. 35); *actually* (v. 40); *of one's own accord, voluntarily*.

**ultus**, see **ulciscor**.

**ululātus, -ūs**, [ululō, yell], m., only in acc. and abl., *shouting, yell*.

**umerus, -ī**, m., *shoulder*. vii. 50, 56.

**umquam**, adv., *at any time, ever*.

**unā** [unus], adv., *into one place* (vii. 87); *in the same place* (ii. 29; vii. 38); *at the same time; together, in company*. **unā cum**, *along with, together with*.

**unde**, adv., *whence, from which*.

**undecim, or XI**, [unus + decem], indeclinable num. adj., *eleven*.

**undecimus, -a, -um**, [undecim], num. ord. adj., *eleventh*.

**undēquadrāgintā, or XXXIX**, [unus + dē + quadrāgintā], indeclinable num. adj., *thirty-nine*.

**undēvigintī, or XVIII**, [unus + dē + vigintī], indeclinable num. adj., *nineteen*. i. 8.

**undique** [unde + -que], adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere*.

**universus, -a, -um**, [unus + versus, from vertō], adj., *all together, all, in a body; the whole of, entire*. As noun, **universal, -ōrum**, m., pl., *all the men together, the whole body, all together*. [universe.]

**unus, -a, -um**, gen. **unius**, num. adj., *one; one alone, only one, only, sole; one and the same*. Pl., **unī**, *alone, only*. **unō tempore**, *at one and the same time*. **ad unum omnēs**, *all to a man* (v. 37). [unite.]

**urbānus, -a, -um**, [urbe], adj., *of the city, referring to Rome*. [urban.]

**urbs, urbis, f.**, *city; often the city, referring to Rome*.

**urgeo, urgere, urai, 2, press; pass., be hard pressed** (ii. 25, 26). [urge.]

**urus, -ī**, m., *wild ox*. vi. 28.

**Uspetēs, -um, m., pl.**, (ū-sip' ē-tēs), *a German people*.

**usitātus, -a, -um**, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of usitor], adj., *usual; common, familiar* (vii. 22).

**usque**, adv., *as far as, even*. **usque ad**, *as far as; of time, up to, until* (i. 50; iii. 15). **usque eo**, *even so far as this, even to this degree* (vi. 37; vii. 17).

**usus**, see **utor**.

**usus, -us**, [cf. utor], m., *use, practice, exercise, employment; experience, familiarity (with), skill; control; advantage, benefit; need, necessity*. **ex usu**, *of advantage*. [use (noun).]

**ut, utī**, adv. and conj. :

(1) As adv., *interrogative, how* (i. 43, 46); *relative, as, just as*.

(2) As conj., with indic., *as* (i. 4); *when, as soon as* (i. 31); with subj., *that, so that; in order that; though, although* (iii. 9).

**uter**, *utra*, *utrum*, gen. *utrius*, pronominal adj., often used as subst., *which* of two, *whichever*, *which*.

**uterque**, *-traque*, *-trumque*, gen. *utriusque*, [*uter* + *-que*], adj., *each*, *both*. As subst., *uterque*, *utriusque*, m., *both*, *each*. Pl., *utrique*, *both sides*, *both forces* (iv. 26; v. 50; vii. 70, 80, 85); *both peoples* (ii. 16; vii. 7).

**utī**, see *ut*.

**Utica**, *-ae*, f., (*ū* tī-çā), a city in northern Africa, on the sea-coast.

**Uticensēs**, *-lum*, m., pl., *Uticans*, the inhabitants of *Utica*. C. II. 36.

**ūtīlis**, *-e*, comp. *-ior*, sup. *-issimus*, [*utor*], adj., *useful*, *serviceable* (iv. 7; vii. 20); *helpful* (vii. 76).

**ūtīlītās**, *-ātis*, [*ūtīlis*], f., *usefulness*, *advantage*, *benefit*. [utility.]

**ūtōr**, *ūtī*, *ūsus*, 3, dep., *use*, *employ*, *adopt*; *avail one's self of*, *have*, *enjoy*, *find*; *observe*, *maintain*; *exercise*, *display*, *show*. [use (verb).]

**utrimque** [*uterque*], adv., *on both sides*.

**utrum**, [*uter*], conj., *whether*.

**uxor**, *-ōris*, f., *wife*. [uxorious.]

## V.

**Vacalus**, *-ī*, m., *Waal*, *Vacalus* (*vak' a-lus*), an arm of the Rhine, which flows west into the Meuse. iv. 10.

**vacātiō**, *-ōnis*, [cf. *vacō*], f., *exemption*. vi. 14. [vacation.]

**vacō**, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, 1, *be unoccupied*, *lie waste*. [vacate.]

**vacuus**, *-a*, *-um*, sup. *vacuissimus*, [*vacō*], adj., *empty*, *clear*, *vacant*, *unoccupied*; *destitute* (ii. 12). [vacuum.]

**vadum**, *-ī*, n., *shoal*, *shallow* (iii. 9, 12, 13; iv. 26); *ford*, *shallow place*.

**vāgīna**, *-ae*, f., *scabbard*, *sheath*. v. 44.

**vagor**, *-ārī*, *-ātus*, 1, dep., *wander*, *wander about*, *roam about*.

**valeō**, *-āre*, *-ul*, *-itūrus*, 2, *be powerful*, *be strong*; *have power*, *have influence*; *prevail*. [value.]

**Valerius**, *-ī*, m., (*va-lē' rī-us*):

(1) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a lieutenant defeated and killed in Aquitania a few years before 56 B.C. iii. 20.

(2) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, a Roman governor in Gaul. i. 47.

(3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received the Roman franchise, B.C. 83. i. 47; vii. 65.

(4) *Gaius Valerius Proculus*, son of (3); sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus. i. 47, 53.

(5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Gaul, son of (3). vii. 65.

(6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, see *Troucillus*. i. 19.

(7) *Valerius Flaccus*, an officer in Pompey's army. C. III. 53.

**Valetiācus**, *-ī*, m., (*val' ē-shj-ā' kus*), vergobret of the Aeduans in 53 B.C. vii. 32.

**valētūdō**, *-inis*, [cf. *valeō*], f., *health*. v. 40; vii. 78. [valetudinarian.]

**vallēs** or **vallis**, *-is*, f., *valley*. [valley.]

**vāllum**, *-ī*, [*vāllus*], n., *rampart* set with palisades, *wall*, *intrenchment*. [wall.]

**vāllus**, *-ī*, m., *stake*, *pole*; *rampart stake*, *palisade*; *rampart stakes* in position, *stockade*, *palisade*; *sharpened point* (vii. 73).

**Vanglonēs**, *-um*, m., pl., (*van-jī' ō-nēz*), a German tribe. i. 51.

**varietās**, *-ātis*, [*varius*], f., *variety*, *diversity* (vii. 23); *mottled appearance* (vi. 27). [variety.]

**varius**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *different*, *diverse*. [various.]

**Vārus**, *-ī*, a Roman name: see *Attius*

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vāstus], 1, lay waste, devastate.

**vastus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, adj., vast, immense. [vast.

**vaticinātiō**, -ōnis, [vāticinor, *predict*], f., prophecy. i. 50. [vaticination.

**Vatīnius**, -i, m., *Publius Vatinius* (vatin' i-us), a partizan of Caesar. C. III. 90.

-ve, enclitic conj., or.

**vectigal**, -ālis, [cf. vehō], n., tax, tribute (v. 22); revenue (i. 18, 36).

**vectigālis**, -e, [vectigal], adj., paying tribute, tributary. iii. 8; iv. 3.

**vectorius**, -a, -um, [vector, cf. vehō], adj., for carrying. **vectorium nāvigium**, transport ship (v. 8). [vectorial.

**vehementer**, comp. **vehementius**, sup. -lissimē, [vehemēns, eager, violent], adv., vigorously, violently; exceedingly, greatly.

**vehō**, -ere, vexi, **vectus**, 3, carry. **equō vectus**, riding on horseback (C. II. 44). [vehicle.

**vel**, [volō], conj., or. **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or. As adv., even (vii. 37).

**Velānius**, -i, m., *Quintus Velanius* (vē-lā' ni-us), an officer under Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

**Vellocassēs**, -ium, and **Vellocassi**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vel' i-q-kas' ēz, vel' i-q-kas' i), a small state north of the Sequana (*Seine*).

**Vellaunodūnum**, -i, n., (vel' ā-nō-dū' num), a town of the Senones. vii. 11, 14.

**Vellavi**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vē-lā' vī-i), a small state in the Cebenna (*Cévennes*) Mountains. vii. 75.

**vēlōcitās**, -ātis, [vēlōx], f., swift-ness, speed. vi. 28. [velocity.

**vēlōciter**, comp. **vēlōcius**, sup. **vēlōcissimē**, [vēlōx], adv., swiftly, quickly. v. 35.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, comp. -lor, sup. -lissimus, adj., swift, fast. i. 48. [velox.

**vēlum**, -i, n., sail. iii. 13, 14.

**velut** [vel + ut], adv., just as. **velut si**, just as if (i. 32).

**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, [cf. vēnor, hunt], f., hunting, hunting expedition.

**vēnātor**, -ōris, [vēnor, hunt], m., hunter. vi. 27.

**vēndō**, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [vēnum, sale, + dō], 3, sell. [vend.

**Venellī**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vē-nel' i), a Gallic people, on the northwest coast (Fig. 210).



Figure 210. — A Venellian coin.

Gold. Reverse, two-horse chariot; the charioteer holds aloft the model of a ship. In front of the horses is a head of wheat, on a sinuous stalk.

The head on the obverse wears a laurel wreath.

**Venetī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *Venetans*, *Vēneti* (ven' ē-tī), a sea-faring Gallic people, on the west coast.

**Venetia**, -ae, f., (vē-nē' sh[y]ā), the country of the Venetans. iii. 9.

**Veneticius**, -a, -um, [Venetia], adj., of the Venetans, Venetan. **Venetium bellum**, the war with the Venetans (iii. 18; iv. 21).

**venia**, -ae, f., pardon, forgiveness (vi. 4); permission (vii. 15). [venial.

**veniō**, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum est**, 4, come.

**ventitō**, -āre, -āvi, [freq. of veniō], 1, come often, go often, keep coming.

**ventus**, 1, m., wind. [ventilate.

**vēr**, **vēris**, n., spring. **primō vēre**,

at the commencement of spring (vi. 3).  
[vernal.

**Veragri**, -ōrum, m., pl., (ver' a-grī), an Alpine tribe.

**Verbigenus**, -ī, m., *Verbigen*, *Verbigenus* (ver-bij' ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetians. i. 27.

**verbum**, -ī, n., *word*. *verba facere*, to speak (ii. 14). [verb.

**Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, m., (ver-kas'-i-ve-lā' nūs), one of the four generals in command of the Gallic army raised for the relief of Alesia.

**Vercingetorix**, -īgis, m., (ver-sin-jet' ē-riks), an Arvernian, commander-in-chief of the Gallic forces in 52 B.C.

**vereor**, -ēri, -ītus, 2, dep., *fear*, *be afraid*; *be afraid of*, *dread*.

**vergō**, -ere, 3, *lie*, *slope*; *be situated*. [verge.

**vergobretus**, -ī, m., [Celtic word, 'He that renders judgment'; as a title, 'Dispenser of Justice'], *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduians. i. 16.

**veritus**, see *vereor*.

**vērō** [abl. neuter of *vērus*], adv., *in truth*, *in fact*, *truly*, *certainly*; *but*, *but in fact*, *however*.

**versō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of *vertō*], 1, *turn often*; *shift*, *change the position of* (v. 44). Pass.

**versor**, -āri, -ātus, as dep., lit., *turn one's self about*, *move about in any place*; *dwelt*, *live*, *be*; *be occupied*, *be engaged*, *be busy*. in bellō **versārī**, to engage in war (vi. 15). [versatile.

**versus**, -ūs, [vertō], m., *line*, *verse* (vi. 14). [verse.

**versus**, [part. of *vertō*], prep. and adv.:

(1) As prep., with acc. only, sometimes following a word governed by *ad* or *in*, *towards*, *in the direction*

of. *ad . . . versus*, *in . . . versus*, *towards*.

(2) As adv., *turned*, *facing*. *quōque versus*, *in all directions* (iii. 23; vii. 4, 14).

**Verticō**, -ōnis, m., (vēr'tij-kō), a Nervian of rank. v. 45, 49.

**vertō**, *vertere*, *verti*, *versus*, 3, *turn*, *turn about*; *change*. *tērga vertere*, to turn and flee, to flee.

**Verucloetius**, -ī, m., (ver-ū-klē'-sh[y]ūs), a Helvetian who went as envoy to Caesar. i. 7.

**vērus**, -a, -um, comp. -lor, sup. **vērissimus**, adj., *true* (i. 18, 20); *right*, *proper*, *fitting* (iv. 8). As noun, **vērum**, -ī, n., *the truth*. **vērī simillīs**, *probable* (iii. 13).

**verūtum**, -ī, [verū, spit for roasting meat], n., *dart*. v. 44.

**Vesontio**, -ōnis, m., (vē-son' sh[y]ō), chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (*Doubs*) river; now *Besançon*. i. 38, 39.

**vesper**, -eri, m., *evening*. [vespers. **vester**, -tra, -trum, [vōs], possessive pronominal adj., *your*, *yours*.

**vēstīgium**, -ī, n., *footprint*, *track* (vi. 27); *spot*, *place* (iv. 2); of time, *moment*, *instant*. [vestige.

**vestiō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [vestis], 4, *clothe* (v. 14; vii. 31); *cover* (vii. 23). [vestment.

**vestis**, -is, f, *clothing*. vii. 47. [vest. **vestitus**, -ūs, [cf. vestiō], m., *clothing*, *garb*. iv. 1; vii. 88.

**veterānus**, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., *old*, *veteran*. i. 24. [veteran.

**vetō**, -āre, -uī, -ītus, 1, *forbid* (ii. 20); *not allow* (vii. 33). [veto.

**vetus**, -oris, sup. **veterrimus**, adj., *old*, *former*; *ancient*, *long-standing*.

**vetustās**, -ātis, [vetustus, vetus], f., *antiquity*, *ancient times*. C. i. 6.

**vēxillum**, -ī, [cf. vēlum], n., *banner*, *flag*.

**vexō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [freq. of vehō], 1, harass, assail (i. 14; vi. 43); lay waste, overrun (ii. 4; iv. 15). [vex.

**via**, -ae, f., way, road; journey, march. *bidui via*, a two days' march (vi. 7). [via.

**viātor**, -ōris, [cf. via], m., traveller, wayfarer. iv. 5.

**vicōnī**, -ae, -a, [viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty each, twenty.

**vicēsīmus**, -a, -um, [viginti], num. adj., twentieth. vi. 21.

**vicēs** [viginti], num. adv., twenty times. *vicēs centum milia passuum*, two thousand miles (v. 13).

**vicinītas**, -ātis, [vicinus, near], f., neighborhood; neighbors (vi. 34). [vicinity.

**vicis**, -is, f., nom., dat. and voc. sing. and gen. and voc. pl. not in use, change, succession. *in vicem*, in turn (iv. 1, C. III. 98). [vicar.

**victima**, -ae, f., victim. vi. 16. [victim.

**victor**, -ōris, [vincō], m., conqueror, victor. As adj., victorious (i. 31; vii. 20, 62). [victor.

**victōria**, -ae, [victor], f., victory. [victory.

**victus**, see **vincō**.

**victus**, -ūs, [vivō], m., living (i. 31); mode of life (vi. 24); food, provisions (vi. 22, 23). [victuals.

**vicus**, -i, m., village, hamlet.

**vidēō**, vidēre, vidi, visus, 2, see, perceive, observe; understand. Pass., generally as dep., videor, vidēri, visus sum, be seen, seem, appear; seem proper, seem good, seem best. [vision.

**Vienna**, -ae, f., (vi-en' a), a city of the Allobroges; now Vienne. vii. 9.

**vigilia**, -ae, [vigil, watchman], f., watching, sleeplessness (v. 31, 32); watch, a division of the night; sentry

duty (C. III. 49). [vigil.

**viginti**, or **XX**, indeclinable num. adj., twenty.

**vimen**, -inis, n., pliant shoot, twig, withe. ii. 33; vii. 73. [Viminal.

**vinciō**, vincire, vinxi, victus, 4, bind. i. 53.

**vincō**, vincere, vici, victus, 3, conquer, overcome, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass (vi. 43); carry one's point, have one's own way (v. 30). **victi**, -ōrum, part., used as noun, m., pl., the conquered. [vincible.

**vinculum**, -i, [vinciō], n., chain, bond, fetters. [vinculum.

**vindicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. vindex], 1, claim, demand (vii. 76); restore to liberty (vii. 1); inflict punishment (iii. 16). [vindicate.

**vineā**, -ae, f., arbor-shed, sappers' hut.

**vinum**, -i, n., wine. [wine.

**violō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vis], 1, do violence to, maltreat (vi. 23); invade, lay waste (vi. 32). [violate.

**vir**, viri, m., man; husband (vi. 19). [virile.

**virēs**, see **vis**.

**virgō**, -inis, f., maiden. [virgin.

**virgultum**, -i, [virga, a shoot], n., small brush; fascine. iii. 18; vii. 73.

**Viridomārus**, -i, m., (vir' i-dō-mā' rūs), a prominent Aeduan.

**Viridovix**, -iols, m., (vi-rid'-o-viks), a leader of the Venelli. iii. 17-18.

**viritim**, [vir], adv., man by man, to each individually. vii. 71.

**Viromandui**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vir-o-man' dū-i), a Belgic people about the headwaters of the Samara (Somme) and the Sceldis (Schelde). Fig. 211.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, [vir], f., manliness; courage, bravery, prowess; vigor, energy, initiative (vii. 6, 59); efficiency, effort (v. 8; vii. 22); worth (i. 47). Pl., remarkable qualities, virtues (i. 44). [virtue.

**vis**, acc. **vim**, abl. **vi**, pl. **virēs**, -lum, f., *strength* (vi. 28); *force, violence; influence, control* (vi. 14, 17); *number* (vi. 36). Pl., *physical powers, strength*. [vim.]



Figure 211. — A Viromanduan coin.

Bronze; crude fanciful designs.

**visus**, see **videō**.

**vita**, -ae, [cf. **vivō**], f., *life*. [vital.]

**vitium**, -i, n., *defect, failing, fault*.

C. II. 4, III. 72. [vice.]

**vītō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1, *shun, avoid, try to escape*.

**vitrum**, -i, n., *wood*, a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

**vivō**, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victūrus**, 3, *live*; with abl., *sustain life, live on* (iv. 1, 10; v. 14). [vivacious.]

**vivus**, -a, -um, [cf. **vivō**], adj., *living, alive*. As noun, **vivi**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the living* (vi. 19). [vivi-section.]

**vix**, adv., *scarcely, barely; with difficulty, hardly* (i. 6; vi. 37; vii. 46).

**Vocātēs**, -ium, m., pl., (vō-kā' tēz), a people in Aquitania. iii. 23, 27.

**Vocciō**, -ōnis, m., (vok' sh[y]ō), a king of the Norici. i. 53.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cf. **vōx**], 1, *call, summon; call for, demand; name, call* (v. 21). [vocative.]

**Vocontii**, -ōrum, m., pl., (vō-kon'-sh[y]i), a Gallic people in the Province. i. 10.

**Volcācius**, -i, m., *Gaius Volcaci* *Tullus* (vol-kā' sh[y]us tul' us), an officer in Caesar's army.

**Volcae**, -ārum, m., pl., (vol' sē), a

Gallic people in the Province having two branches, **Arecomici** and **Tectosagēs**.

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, irr., *be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend, purpose*.

**voluntārius**, -a, -um, [volō], adj., *willing; serving as a volunteer* (C. III. 91). As noun, **voluntārius**, -i, m., *volunteer* (v. 56). [voluntary.]

**voluntās**, -ātis, [volō], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; good-will, loyalty* (i. 19; v. 4; vii. 10); *consent, approval* (i. 7, 20, 30, 39).

**voluptās**, -ātis, [volō], f., *pleasure, indulgence, enjoyment; amusement* (v. 12). [voluptuous.]

**Volusēnus**, -i, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus* (vol-ū-sē' nys kwā-drā'-tus), a military tribune.

**Vorēnus**, -i, m., *Lucius Vorenus* (vō-rē' nys), a centurion. v. 44.

**Vosagus**, -i, m., (vos' ē-gus), a range of mountains in eastern Gaul, now *Vosges* (vōzh).

**vōtum**, -i, [voveō], n., *vow*. C. I. 6. [vote.]

**voveō**, **vovēre**, **vōvi**, **vōtus**, 2, *vow*. vi. 16. [vow.]

**vōx**, **vōcis**, f., *voice* (ii. 13; v. 30; iv. 25); *utterance* (vii. 17); *word, reply* (i. 32). Pl. **vōcēs**, *words, sayings, language, speeches, statements*. [voice.]

**Vulcānus**, -i, m., *Vulcan*, son of Jupiter and Juno, god of fire and of work in metals. vi. 21. [volcano.]

**vulgō** [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere*. i. 39; ii. 1; v. 33.

**vulgus**, -i, n., *common people; multitude, crowd; of soldiers, rank and file* (i. 46). [vulgar.]

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vulnus], 1, *wound, hurt*. [vulnerable.]

**vulnus**, -eris, n., *wound*.

**vultus**, -ūs, m., *countenance, features, expression of face*. i. 39.



## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the figure 1.

abandon, relinquo, -ere, -liquo, -lictus.

ability, virtus, -tutis, f.

natural ability, ingenium, -ii, n.

have ability, possum, posse, potui.

able, be able, possum, posse, potui.

about, concerning, de, prep. with abl.

about, around, circum, prep. with acc.

about (with numerals), circiter.

accept, accipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptus.

accident, casus, -us, m.

accomplish, perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus; consequor, -i, -secutus.

account, on account of, propter, prep. with acc.

accuse, accuso, 1.

accustomed, be accustomed, soleo, -ere, solitus.

across, trans, prep. with acc.

act (noun), factum, -i, n.

act (verb), facio, -ere, feci, factus.

actively, acriter.

admit, confiteor, -eri, -fessus.

adopt, of a plan, utro.

advance, progredior, -gredi, -gressus.

advantage, bonum, -i, n.; commodum, -i, n.

advise, moneo, -ere, -ui, -itus.

affair, res, rei, f.

public affairs, res publica.

afraid, be afraid, timeo, -ere, -ui.

after, post, prep. with acc.; postquam, conj.

afterward, post, postea.

again, iterum.

against, in, ad, contra, prepositions with acc.

ago, ante.

agriculture, agri cultura, -ae, f.

aid (noun), auxilium, -ii, n.

aid (verb), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtus, with acc.

alarm, permovēo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus.

all, omnis, -e; totus, -a, -um.

allow, patior, pati, passus.

ally, socius, -ii, m.

almost, ferē, paene.

alone, solus, -a, -um.

already, iam.

also, quoque (postpositive).

not only . . . but also, nōn modo . . . sed etiam.

although, cum, quamquam.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.

ambuscade, insidiae, -arum, f., pl.

among, apud, prep. with acc.

ancestors, maiōres, -um, m.

anchor, ancora, -ae, f.

at anchor, ad ancoram.

and, et, atque, -que.

and . . . not, neque.

and so, itaque.

announce, nūntiō, 1.

another, alius, -a, -ud.

answer, respondeo, -ēre, -di, respōsus.

any, any one, anything, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (quod); after si, nisi or nē, quis, qua, quid (quod); with negatives, quisquam quidquam (pron.); ullus, -a, -um (adj.).

appeal to, implorō, 1.

approach, appropinquo, 1.

approve, probō, 1.

<sup>1</sup> Reproduced, with the consent of the authors, from *Latin Composition*, by Bernard M. Allen and John L. Phillips.



arise, coōrior, -īri, -ortus.  
 arm, armō, *i*.  
 arms, arma, -ōrum, *n*.  
 army, exercitus, -ūs, *m*.  
 arouse, incitō, *i*.  
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m*.  
 arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum  
 est.  
 as, just as, ut, sicut, *with indic.*  
 as if, quasi, velut *si*.  
 as soon as, simul atque.  
 ask, request, rogō, *i*.  
 ask, seek, petō, -ere, -īvi or -īi, -ītus.  
 ask, inquire, quaerō, -ere, -sīvi or  
 -sīi, -sītus.  
 assistance, auxilium, -iī, *n*.  
 at, in *with abl.*; *ad with acc.*; *sign of*  
*locative case.*  
 Atrebatian, Atrebās, -ātis, *m*.  
 attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m*.  
 attack (*verb*), oppugnō, *i*; adgredior,  
 -ī, -gressus; laccessō, -ere, -īvi or  
 -īi, -ītus.  
 make an attack on, impetum faciō  
 in *with acc.*  
 attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, -ūs, *m*.  
 attempt (*verb*), cōnor, *i*.  
 authority, auctoritās, -tātis, *f*.  
 avenge, ulciscor, -ī, ultus.  
 avoid, vitō, *i*.  
 await, exspectō, *i*.  
 away, be away, absum, abesse, āfui,  
 āfutūrus.  
 baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n.*, *pl.*  
 band (*of men*), manus, -ūs, *f*.  
 barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m*.  
 battle, pugna, -ae, *f*; proelium, -iī, *n*.  
 be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.  
 be at hand, adsum, adesse, affui.  
 bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.  
 because, quod.  
 because of, propter, *prep. with acc.*  
 befall, accidit, -ere, accidit.  
 before (*adv.*), ante, antea.  
 before (*conj.*), prius quam, ante quam.  
 before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*  
 before (*adj.*), prior, superior.  
 on the day before, pridie.  
 beg, ōrō, *i*; petō, -ere, -īvi or -īi, -ītus.  
 began, coepi, coepisse, coeptus. *Use*  
*the pass. when the inf. is pass.*

begin, incipiō, -e e (*sez began*).  
 behalf, in behalf of, prō, *prep. with*  
*abl.*  
 behind, post, *prep. with acc.*  
 behind him, them, etc., post tergum.  
 Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, *pl.*  
 believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus;  
 putō, *i*.  
 belittle, minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.  
 betray, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.  
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*  
 bitterly, ācriter.  
 board, go on board, nāvem (nāvēs)  
 ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.  
 body, corpus, -oris, *n*.  
 both, each, uterque, utraque, utrum-  
 que.  
 both . . . and, et . . . et.  
 boundaries, finēs, -ium, *m*.  
 brave, fortis, -e.  
 bravely, fortiter.  
 break down, perfringō, -ere, -frēgi,  
 -fractus.  
 bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.  
 bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus; dūcō,  
 -ere, dūxi, -ductus.  
 bring about, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectus.  
 bring on, upon, Inferō.  
 bring to, afferō, afferre, attuli, allātus;  
 adducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
 bring together, comportō, *i*.  
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f*.  
 Britons, Britanni, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*  
 brother, frāter, -tris, *m*.  
 build,  
 (*of a bridge*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, -factus.  
 (*of a road*), mūniō, -īre, -īvi, or  
 -īi, -ītus.  
 (*of a rampart*), perdūcō, -ducere,  
 -dūxi, -ductus.  
 building, aedificium, -iī, *n*.  
 burn, set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendī,  
 -cēnsus.  
 burning, incendium, -iī, *n*.  
 but, sed.  
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus.  
 by, *abl. case*; ab, *with abl. of agent*.  
 call (*by name*), appellō, *i*.  
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*, *pl.*  
 can, possum, posse, potui.

capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, cap.us.  
 (by storming), expugnō, i.  
 care, cūra, -ae, f.  
 carefully, diligenter.  
 carriage with four wheels, wagon,  
 raeda, f.  
 carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.  
 carry back, referō, referre, rettulī,  
 relātus.  
 carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.  
 carry out, accomplish, perficiō,  
 -ere, -fēci, -fectus.  
 case, causa, -ae, f.  
 in the case of, in, *prep. with abl.*  
 cast off, cast out, abiciō, -ere, -iēci,  
 -iectus; ēiciō.  
 cause (*noun*), causa, -ae, f.  
 cause (*verb*), efficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus;  
 faciō, -ere, fēci, factus.  
 cavalry (*adj.*), equester, -tris, -tre.  
 cavalry (*noun*), equitātus, -ūs, m.;  
 equitēs, -um, m., pl.  
 Celts, Celtæ, -arum, m., pl.  
 centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.  
 certain (*indef. pron.*), quidam,  
 quaedam, quiddam.  
 certainly, certē.  
 chain, vinculum, -i, n.  
 chance, occāsiō, -ōnis, f.  
 by chance, forte.  
 charge,  
 be in charge, praesum, -esse, -fuī.  
 put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēci,  
 -fectus.  
 chariot, currus, -ūs, m.  
 chief, chief man, princeps, -cipis, m.  
 children, pueri, -orum, m., pl.  
 (free born), liberi, -orum, m., pl.  
 choose, legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus; deligō,  
 -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus.  
 citizen, civis, -is, m.  
 city, urbs, urbis, f.  
 clear, make clear, dēclārō, i.  
 it is clear, cōstat.  
 client, cliēs, -entis, m.  
 close, be close at hand, subsum, -esse.  
 cohort, cohors, cohortis, f.  
 come, veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum  
 est.  
 come back, redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum est.  
 come together, conveniō, -ire, -vēnī,  
 -ventum est.

come to pass, fiō, fieri, factum est.  
 come up, arise, coōrior, -iri, -ortus.  
 comfort, cōsōlor, i.  
 command, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus;  
 imperō, i.  
 be in command, praesum, -esse,  
 -fuī, *with dat.*  
 commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.  
 commence battle, proelium committō,  
 -ere, -misi, -missus.  
 commit, do, faciō, -ere, fēci, factus.  
 common, cōmūnis, -e.  
 common people, plēbs, plēbis, f.  
 companion, socius, -ii, m.  
 compare, comparō, i.  
 compel, cōgō, -ere, cōēgi, cōactus.  
 complain, queror, -i, questus.  
 concern, it concerns, interest, -esse,  
 -fuit.  
 concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*  
 confer, colloquor, -i, locūtus.  
 conference, colloquium, -ii, n.  
 confess, cōnfiteor, -ēri, -fessus.  
 confidence, fidēs, -ei, f.  
 have confidence in, cōfidō, -ere,  
 -sisus.  
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victus;  
 superō, i.  
 consider, believe, putō, i; existimō,  
 i.  
 consider, regard, habeō, -ēre, habuī,  
 habitus.  
 conspiracy, cōniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.  
 conspire, cōniūrō, i.  
 consul, cōsul, -is, m.  
 consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, m.  
 in the consulship of, *abl. absol.*  
*with cōsul.*  
 consult, cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultus.  
 contention, contentiō, -ōnis, f.  
 continent, continēs, -entis, f.  
 contrary to, contrā, *prep. with acc.*  
 convict, damnō, i.  
 council, concilium, -ii, n.  
 council of war, cōncilium, -ii, n.  
 counsel, advice, cōnsilium, -ii, n.  
 take counsel, cōsulō, -ere, -uī,  
 -sultus.  
 courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.  
 have courage, audeō, -ēre, ausus.  
 courageously, fortiter.  
 course, cursus, -ūs, m.

court of law, *iudicium*, -i, *n.*  
 covet, *adamō*, *i.*  
 crime, *facinus*, -oris, *n.*; *scelus*, -eris, *n.*  
 cross, *trānsēō*, -ire, -i, -itum *est*.  
 crowd, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*  
 crush, *frangō*, -ere, *frēgi*, *fractus*.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, *m.*; *cōnsuetūdō*,  
 -dinis, *f.*  
 cut down (*of grain*), *succidō*, -ere,  
 -cidi, -citus; (*of a bridge*), *rescindō*,  
 -ere, -scidi, -scissus.  
 cut off, *intercludō*, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus.

daily, *cotidianus*, -a, -um.  
 damage, *affigō*, -ere, -fixi, -flictus.  
 danger, *periculum*, -i, *n.*  
 dangerous, *periculōsus*, -a, -um.  
 dare, *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus*.  
 daughter, *filia*, -ae, *f.*  
 day (*noun*), *diēs*, -ei, *m.*  
     on the next day, *postridiē*.  
     on the day before, *prīdiē*.  
 day (*adj.*), *diurnus*, -a, -um.  
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, *f.*  
 decide, *cōstituō*, -ere, -ui, -ūtus.  
 decision, *iudicium*, -i, *n.*  
 declare, *declārō*, *i.*; *cōfirmō*, *i.*  
 decree, *dēcernō*, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus.  
 deed, *factum*, -i, *n.*  
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um.  
 defeat, *superō*, *i.*  
 defend, *dēfendō*, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus.  
 delay, wait, *moror*, *i.*  
 deliver (*of a speech*), *habeō*, -ēre, -ui,  
 -itus.  
 demand (*noun*), *postulātum*, -i, *n.*  
 demand (*verb*), *imperō*, *i.*, *with dat.*  
     *of person from whom*; *postulō*, *i.*,  
     *with ab and abl.*  
 deny, *negō*, *i.*  
 depart, *discēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum  
*est*.  
 descendants, *posterī*, -ōrum, *m.*  
 deserve, *mereor*, -ēri, *meritus*.  
 design (*noun*), *cōsiliū*, -i, *n.*  
 desire, *cupiō*, -ere, -ivi or -i, -itus.  
 desirous, *cupidus*, -a, -um.  
 despoil, *spoliō*, *i.*  
 destroy, *dēlēō*, -ere, -ēvi, -ētus.  
 detain, *teneō*, -ēre, -ui; *dētineō*, -ēre,  
 -ui, -tentus.  
 determine, *cōstituō*, -ere, -ui, -ūtus.

devise, *cōgitō*, *i.*  
 devote, *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*; *dēdō*,  
 -ere, *dēdidi*, *dēditus*.  
 devoted, *dēditus*, -a, -um.  
 devotion, *studium*, -i, *n.*  
 die, *moriōr*, *mori*, *mortuus*.  
 die, be put to death, *pass. of*  
*interficiō*, -ere, -fēci, -fectus.  
 die, perish, *perēō*, -ire, -i, -itūrus.  
 differ, *differō*, -ferre, *distuli*, *chātus*.  
 difference, there is a difference,  
 interest, -esse, -fuit.  
 difficult, *difficilis*, -e.  
 difficulty, *difficultās*, -tātis, *f.*  
 diminish, *dēminuō*, -ere, -ui, -ūtus.  
 direction, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*  
     in that direction, *in eam partem*.  
 disaster, *calamitās*, -tātis, *f.*  
 discover, *reperiō*, -ire, *repperi*,  
*reptus*.  
 disembark (*trans.*), *ex nāvi* (*nāvibus*)  
*expōnō*, -ere, -posui, -positus;  
*(intrans.)*, *ex nāvi* (*nāvibus*)  
*ēgredior*, -i, -gressus.  
 disgraceful, *turpis*, -e.  
 dislodge, *summōvō*, -ēre, -mōvi,  
 -mōtus.  
 dismiss, *dimitto*, -ere, -misi, -missus.  
 dismount, *ex equō* (*equis*) *dēsiliō*,  
 -ire, -ui, -sultus.  
 disorder, *tumultus*, -ūs, *m.*  
 disregard, *neglēgō*, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.  
 distance, at a distance, *procul*, *in*  
*locis longinquis*.  
 disturb, *commōvō*, -ēre, -mōvi,  
 -mōtus; *perturbō*, *i.*  
 divide, *dividō*, -ere, -visi, -visus.  
 do, *faciō*, -ere, *fēci*, *factus*.  
     be done, happen, *fiō*, *feri*, *factum est*.  
     be done, go on, *pass. of gerō*, -ere,  
     *gessi*, *gestus*.  
     do not (*in prohibitions*), *nōli*, *nōlite*,  
     *with inf.*  
 doubt, *dubitō*, *i.*  
     there is no doubt, *nōn est dubium*.  
 doubtful, *dubius*, -a, -um.  
 draw up (*of soldiers*), *instruō*, -ere,  
 -struxi, -strūctus; (*of ships*), *sub*  
*dūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
 drive, *pellō*, -ere, *pepuli*, *pulsus*.  
 drive back, *repellō*, -ere, *repuli*,  
*repulsus*.

dry, *āridus*, -a, -um.

dry land, *āridum*, -i, *n*.

Dumnorix, *Dumnorix*, -rigis, *m*.

dust, *pulvis*, -veris, *m*.

duty, *officium*, -ii, *n*.

do one's duty, *officium praestō*,  
-āre, -stiti, -stitus.

each (of any number), *quisque*,  
*quaeque*, *quidque* and *quodque*.

eager, *cupidus*, -a, -um.

eagle, *aquila*, -ae, *f*.

eagle-bearer, *aquilifer*, -eri, *m*.

easily, *facile*.

easy, *facilis*, -e.

effort, labor, *ōris*, *m*.

eight, *octō*.

either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*.

elect, *faciō*, -ere, *fēci*, *factus*; *creō*, *i*.

else (*adj.*), *reliquus*, -a, -um.

nothing else, *nihil aliud*.

eminent, *clārus*, -a, -um.

empty (of a river), *inflūō*, *inflūere*,  
-flūi.

encounter, *occurrō*, -ere, -curri, -cur-  
sūrus, *with dat.*; *subeō*, -ire,  
-if, -itus, *with acc.*

encourage, *hortor*, *i*.

end, *finis*, -is, *m*.

each end, *utraque pars*, *utriusque*  
*partis*, *f*.

endure, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātus*.

enemy (in war), *hostis*, -is, *m*., *hostēs*,  
-ium, *pl.*; (*personal*), *inimicus*,  
-i, *m*.

enjoy, *fruor*, -i, *fructus*.

enlist, *enroll*, *cōscribō*, -ere, -scripsi,  
-scriptus.

enough (*adv. and indecl. noun*), *satis*.

entreat, *orō*, *i*.

envoy, *lēgātus*, -i, *m*.

equal, *pār*, *paris*; *Idem*, *eadem*,  
*idem*.

equinox, *aequinoctiū diēs*.

escape, *effugiō*, -ere, -fūgi.

establish, *cōstituō*, -ere, -ui, -ūtus.

become established, *inveterāscō*,  
-ere, -rāvī.

even, *etiam*.

not even, *nē . . . quidem*.

even if, *etsi*, *etiam si*.

ever, *umquam*.

every, all, *omnis*, -e.

every, each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quid-*  
*que* and *quodque*.

everybody, *omnēs*, -ium, *m*., *pl*.

everything, *omnia*, *omnēs rēs*.

every part of, *tōtus*, -a, -um;  
*omnis*, -e.

every sort of, *omnis*, -e.

in every way, *omni modō*.

evidence, *indiciū*, -ii, *n*.

evident, it is evident, *cōstat*.

except, *praeter*, *prep. with acc.*; *nisi*  
(*conj.*).

exchange, *inter se dō*, *dare*, *dedi*,  
*datus*.

excuse, *pūrgō*, *i*.

exercise, *exercitātiō*, -ōnis, *f*.

exist, *sum*, *esse*, *ful*, *futūrus*.

exposed, *apertus*, -a, -um.

extend, *pertineō*, -ēre, -ui.

face to face, *adversus*, -a, -um.

fact, *rēs*, *rel*, *f*.

fall, *cadō*, -ere, *cecidī*, *cāsūrus*.

fall on, fall in with, *incidō*, -ere,  
-cidi, -cāsūrus.

fall upon, overwhelm, *opprimō*,  
-ere, -pressi, -pressus.

far, *longē*.

far and near, *longē latēque*.

farther, *ulterior*, -ius.

father, *pater*, -tris, *m*.

favorable, *secundus*, -a, -um.

fear (*noun*), *timor*, -ōris, *m*.; *metus*,  
-ūs, *m*.

fear (*verb*), *timeō*, -ēre, *timui*.

feel, *sentiō*, -ire, *sēnsi*, *sēsus*.

feeling, *sēsus*, -ūs, *m*.

feelings, *animus*, -i, *m*.

fellow soldier, *commilitō*, -ōnis, *m*.

few, *pauci*, -ae, -a.

not a few, *complūrēs*, -ia or -a.

fickleness, *levitās*, -ātis, *f*.

field, *ager*, *agri*, *m*.

fiercely, *ācriter*.

fifteen, *quindecim*, *XV*.

fight (*noun*), *pugna*, -ae, *f*.; *proelium*,  
-ii, *n*.

fight (*verb*), *pugnō*, *i*; *contendō*, -ere,  
-tendi, -tentus; *congridior*, -i,  
-gressus.

fill, *compleō*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus.

finally, dēnique, postrēmō.

find, invenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventus;  
nanciscor, -i, nactus or nactus.

find out, reperio, -ire, repperi,  
reperitus.

finish, end, cōficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus.

finish, make perfect, perficiō,  
-ere, -fēci, -fectus.

fire, set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendi,  
-cēnsus.

first, primus, -a, -um.

at first, primō.

in the first place, primum.

fit, idoneus, -a, -um.

five, quinque, V.

flank, latus, -eris, n.

flee, fugiō, -ere, fugi.

flight, fuga, -ae, f.

put to flight, in fugam dō, dare,  
dedi, datus.

foe, see enemy.

follow, sequor, -i, secūtus; Insequor.

foot, pēs, pedis, m.

on foot, pedibus.

for (conj.), nam, enim (postpositive).

for, in behalf of, prō, prep. with abl.

for, toward, in, prep. with acc.; often  
expressed by dat. case.

force, vis, f.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f., pl.

forest, silva, -ae, f.

forget, obliviscor, -i, oblitus.

form, make, faciō, -ere, fēci, factus;  
(of plans), capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus.

former, early, pristinus, -a, -um.

fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itus.

fortune, good fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.

four, quattuor, IIII.

free, liber, -era, -erum.

free, unencumbered, expeditus, -a,  
-um.

free, set free, liberō, i.

freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.

friend, amicus, -i, m.

friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.

frighten, terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus.

from, sign of abl case; ā or ab, ē or ex,  
dē, prepositions with abl.

front, frōns, frontis, f.

in front of, prō, prep. with abl.;  
ante, prep. with acc.

full, plēnus, -a, -um.

gain, cōsequor, -i, -secūtus.

gain possession of, potior, -iri, -itus,  
with abl.

gather, bring together, cōgō, -ere,  
cōēgi, cōactus.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.

Gauls, Galli, -ōrum, m., pl.

general, dux, ducis, m.; imperātor,  
-ōris, m.

Germans, Germāni, -ōrum, m., pl.

get to, arrive, perveniō, -ire, -vēni,  
-ventum est.

get possession of, potior, -iri,  
-itus, with abl.

give, dō, dare, dedi, datus.

give up, see surrender.

give opportunity, potestātem faciō,  
-ere, fēci, factus.

glad, be glad, gaudeō, -ēre, gavisus.

glory, glōria, -ae, f.

go, eō, ire, ivi, or ii, itum est.

go back, redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum est.

go out, exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum est.

go on, be done, pass. of gerō, -ere,  
gessi, gestus.

god, deus, dei, m.

good, bonus, -a, -um.

grain (threshed), frumentum, -i, n.;  
(growing or unthreshed), frumenta,  
-ōrum, n., pl.

grain supply, rēs frumentāria, rel  
frumentāriae, f.

gratitude, grātia, -ae, f.

great, magnus, -a, -um.

greatly, magnopere.

grief, dolor, -ōris, m.

guard (noun), praesidium, -ii, n.

off one's guard, inopināns, -antis.

on guard, in statiōe (statiōibus).

habit, cōsuētūdō, -inis, f.

hand, manus, -ūs, f.

on the other hand, contrā.

be at hand, adsum, -esse, affui.

happen, accidit, -ere, accidit; fit,  
fiēri, factum est.

harbor, portus, -ūs, m.

harm, dētrimentum, -i, n.

hasten, contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus.

hastily, repente.

hate, ōdi, ōdisse, ōsūrus.

have, habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itus.

**have in mind**, propōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *with reflex.*

**he**, is, hic, ille. *Usually not expressed.*  
**hear**, hear of, audiō, -ire, -īvi or -īi, -itus.

**height**, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*

**held**, cf. hold.

**help** (*noun*), auxilium, -ii, *n.*

**help** (*verb*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtus.

**helpful**, ūsui, *dat. of ūsus.*

**Helvetians**, Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m., pl.*

**here**, hic (*adv.*).

**hesitate**, dubitō, *i., with inf.*

**hide**, abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.

**high** (*of position*), superus, -a, -um.

(*of extent*), altus, -a, -um.

(*of wind or tide*), magnus, -a, -um.

**himself**, ipse (*intensive*); sui (*reflexive*).

**hinder**, impediō, -ire, -īvi or -īi, -itus.

**hire**, conducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.

**his**, eius; suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*).

**hold**, teneō, -ēre, -uī.

(*of an office*), gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus.

(*of a council*), habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

**home**, house, domus, -ūs, *f.*

**at home**, domī.

**from home**, domō.

(*to one's*) home, domum.

**honor**, honor, -ōris, *m.*

**honorable**, honestus, -a, -um.

**hope** (*noun*), spēs, -ei, *f.*

**hope** (*verb*), spēro, *i.*

**horse**, equus, -i, *m.*

**horseman**, eques, -itis, *m.*

**hostage**, obses, -idis, *m.*

**hostile**, infestus, -a, -um.

**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*

**house**, domus, -ūs, *f.*

**how**, in what degree, quam; in what way, quō modō, quem ad modum.

**how many**, quot, quam multi, -ae, -a.

**how much**, quantus, -a, -um; *as subst.*, quantum, -i, *n.*

**how often**, quotiens.

**however** (*adv.*), quamvis.

**however** (*conj.*), autem (*postpositive*).

**human**, humanus, -a, -um.

**hundred**, centum, *C.*

**hurl**, coniciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectus.

**hurry** (*intrans.*), contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus.

**hurry off** (*trans.*), rapiō, -ere, -ui, raptus.

**I**, ego, mei. *Usually not expressed.*  
*if*, si.

*if not*, nisi.

*if only*, dum modo.

*if* (*in indirect questions*), num, -ne.

*but if*, quod si; *after another condition*, sīn.

**immortal**, immortalis, -e.

**import**, importō, *i.*

**importance**, it is of importance, refert.

**impunity**, impunitās, -ātis, *f.*

*with impunity*, impūne.

**in**, in, *prep. with abl.*

**increase** (*trans.*), augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctus.

(*intrans.*), crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus.

**incredible**, incredibilis, -e.

**incur**, subeō, -ire, -īi.

**induce**, adducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.

**infantry**, peditēs, -um, *m., pl.*; peditātus, -ūs, *m.*

**inflict**, inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātus.

**influence**, auctoritās, -ātis, *f.*

**influence** (*verb*), adducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.

**inform**, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, -ere, feci, factus.

**inhabit**, incolō, -ere, -uī.

**injury**, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

**inquire**, quaerō, -ere, -sivi or -ii, -sītus.

**inspire**, iniciō, -ere, -ieci, -iectus, *with dat. of person and acc. of thing.*

**intention**, cōcilium, -ii, *n.*

**interests of state**, res publica, rei publicae, *f.*

**highest interests of state**, summa res publica.

**it is to the interest**, interest, interesse, interfuit.

**intimate friend**, familiāris, -is, *m.*

**into**, in, *prep. with acc.*

**investigate**, search into, quaerō, -ere, -sivi or -sīi, -sītus.

**investigate**, inspect, perspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectus.

**invincible**, invictus, -a, -um.

**island**, *Insula*, -ae, *f.*  
**it**, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.  
**Italy**, *Italia*, -ae, *f.*  
**its**, *eius*; *suus*, -a, -um (*reflex.*).  
**itself**, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*.  
**javelin**, *pilum*, -i, *n.*  
**journey**, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*  
**judge**, *pass judgment*, *iudicō*, *i.*  
**jump down**, *dēsiliō*, -ire, -ui, -sultus.  
**Jupiter**, *Juppiter*, *Jovis*, *m.*  
**just as**, *sicut*.  
**justly**, *iūre*.  
**keep**, *teneō*, -ēre, -ui.  
**keep**, *hold*, *contineō*, -ēre, -ui, -tentus.  
**keep**, *prevent*, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -ui, -itus.  
**kill**, *interficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;  
*occidō*, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus.  
**knight**, *eques*, -itis, *m.*  
**know**, *sciō*, *scire*, *scīvi*, *scītus*.  
**know**, *have learned*, *cognōvi*.  
**not know**, *ignōrō*, *i.*; *nesciō*, -ire, -ivi.  
**known**, *nōtus*, -a, -um.  
**lack**, *be lacking*, *be wanting*, *dēsum*, -esse, -ful.  
**lake**, *lacus*. **Lake Geneva**, *lacus Lemannus*.  
**land**, *ager*, *agri*, *m.*  
**large**, *magnus*, -a, -um.  
**large number**, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*  
**last** (*adv.*), *proximē*.  
**at last**, *tandem*.  
**later** (*adv.*), *postea*.  
**latter**, *the latter*, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.  
**law**, *lēx*, *lēgis*, *f.*  
**lay aside**, *dēponō*, -ere, -posui, -positus.  
**lay down** (*of arms*), *pōnō*, -ere, -posui, *positus*.  
**lead**, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*.  
**lead across**, *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
**lead back**, *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
**lead out**, *ēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
**leader**, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*  
**leading man**, *prīnceps*, -cipis, *m.*

**leadership**, *principātus*, -ūs, *m.*  
**learn**, *cognōscō*, -ere, -dvi, -itus;  
*reperiō*, -ire, *repperi*, *repertus*.  
**leave**, *relinquō*, -ere, -liqui, -lictus;  
*discēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus,  
*followed by ab with abl.*  
**legion**, *legiō*, -ōnis, *f.*  
**less**, *minor*, *minus*, *gen. minōris*.  
**liberty**, *libertās*, -ātis, *f.*  
**lieutenant**, *lēgātus*, -i, *m.*  
**life**, *vita*, -ae, *f.*  
**line of battle**, *aciēs*, -ei, *f.*  
**listen to**, *audiō*, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itus.  
**little**, *parvus*, -a, -um.  
**a little while**, *breve tempus*, -oris, *n.*  
**live**, *vivō*, -ere, *vixi*, *victus*.  
**live in**, *inhabit*, *incoō*, -ere, -ui  
*(with accusative)*.  
**long**, *longus*, -a, -um.  
**for a long time**, *diū*.  
**look at**, *spectō*, *i.*  
**lose**, *amittō*, -ere, -misi, -missus.  
**loud**, *magnus*, -a, -um.  
**low**, *Inferus*, -a, -um.  
**madness**, *furor*, -ōris, *m.*; *āmentia*, -ae, *f.*  
**make**, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.  
**make** (*of a plan*), *capiō*, -ere, *cēpi*, *captus*; *ineō*, *infre*, *inīi*, *initus*.  
**make war**, *bellum faciō*, *or bellum Inferō*, *inferre*, *intuli*, *illātus*, *both with dat.*  
**make use of**, *ūtōr*, -i, *ūsus*.  
**man**, *homō*, *hominis*, *m.*; *vir*, *virī*, *m.*  
**men**, *soldiers*, *militēs*, -um, *m.*  
**a man who**, *is qui*.  
**many**, *multi*, -ae, -a; *complūrēs*, -a or -ia.  
**march**, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*  
**march**, *make a march*, *iter faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.  
**Mark**, *Mārcus*, -i, *m.*  
**marriage**, *mātrimōnium*, -ii, *n.*  
**material**, *māteria*, -ae, *f.*  
**matter**, *rēs*, *rei*, *f.*  
**meet** (*trans.*), *conveniō*, -ire, -vēni, -ventum est, *with acc.*; *occurrō*, -ere, -curri, -cursurus, *with dat.*  
**mercy**, *misericordia*, -ae, *f.*  
**mere**, *ipse*, -a, -um.  
**message**, *nūntius*, -ii, *m.*

**messenger**, nūntius, -ī, *m.*  
**miles**, milia passuum.  
**military matters**, rēs militāris, rei militāris, *f.*  
**mind**, mēns, mentis, *f.*; animus, -ī, *m.*  
**misdeed**, facinus, -oris, *n.*  
**misfortune**, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**month**, mēnsis, -is, *f.*  
**moon**, lūna, -ae, *f.*  
**more** (*adj.*), plūs, plūris; (*adv.*), magis.  
**moreover**, autem (*postpositive*).  
**motive**, causa, -ae, *f.*  
**move**, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.  
**moved**, disturbed, commōtus, -a, -um.  
**much** (*adj.*), multus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), multum; *in comparisons*, multō.  
**multitude**, multitudō, -inis, *f.*

**name**, nōmen, -inis, *n.*  
**narrow**, angustus, -a, -um.  
**nation**, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**nature**, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
**near at hand**, be near at hand, adsum, -esse, affui.  
**nearer** (*adj.*), propior, -ius; (*adv.*), propius.  
**nearly**, ferē.  
**necessary**, necessārius, -a, -um.  
**it is necessary**, opus est; necesse est.  
**neglect**, neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.  
**neighbor**, finitimus, -ī, *m.*  
**neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque; nec . . . nec.  
**never**, numquam.  
**nevertheless**, tamen.  
**new**, novus, -a, -um.  
**news**, nūntius, -ī, *m.*  
**next**, proximus, -a, -um.  
**on the next day**, posterō diē.  
**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*  
**by night**, noctū.  
**no**, nullus, -a, -um.  
**no one**, nobody, nēmō, *m. and f.*, gen. nullius, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem, abl. nullō.  
**noise**, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*  
**not**, nōn; *in negative purpose, wish, or command*, nē.  
**and not**, neque.  
**not only . . . but also**, nōn solum . . . sed etiam.

**not yet**, nōndum.  
**notable**, insignis, -e.  
**nothing**, nihil (*indecl.*).  
**notice**, animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus.  
**now**, at the present time, nunc; by this time, iam.  
**number**, numerus, -ī, *m.*  
**obtain a request**, impetrō, *i.*  
**occur**, occurro, -ere, -curri, -cursurus.  
**of, concerning**, de, *prep. with abl.*  
**offer**, offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus; *of terms*, ferō.  
**office**, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*; honor, -ōris, *m.*  
**often**, saepe.  
**on**, in, *prep. with abl.*  
**once**, at once, statim.  
**one**, ūnus, -a, -um.  
**one . . . another**, alius . . . alius.  
**one who**, is qui.  
**only** (*adv.*), moxō.  
**only one**, sōlus, -a, -um.  
**opinion**, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**opportunity**, facultās, -ātis, *f.*  
**oppose**, resistō, -ere, -stifi.  
**oppress**, premō, -ere, pressi, pressus.  
**or**, aut; *in questions*, an.  
**order**, iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus, *with acc. and inf.*; imperō, *i, with dat., ut and subj.*  
**in order that**, ut, *with subj.*  
**other**, another, alius, -a, -ud.  
**on the other hand**, autem (*postpositive*).  
**others**, the remaining, ceteri, -ae, -a.  
**ought**, debēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus; oportet, -ēre, oportuit.  
**our**, noster, -tra, -trum.  
**our men**, nostri, -ōrum, *m., pl.*  
**outcry**, clamor, -ōris, *m.*  
**overwhelm**, opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus.  
**own**, reflex. poss. *adj., or gen. of ipse.*  
**pack-animal**, iumentum, -ī, *n.*  
**pain**, dolor, -ōris, *m.*  
**pardon**, ignoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus.  
**part**, pars, partis, *f.*  
**party**, pars, partis, *f.*  
**pass judgment**, iudicō, *i.*



peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*  
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*  
     their people (*reflex.*), suī, suōrum,  
     *m., pl.*  
 perceive, perspicō, -ere, -apexī,  
     -spectus.  
 peril, periculum, -ī, *n.*  
 periah, pereō, -īre, -ī, -itūrus.  
 permission, it is permitted, licet,  
     licere, licuit, *with dat. and inf.*  
 permit, patior, pati, passus, *with acc.*  
     *and inf.*; permittō, -ere, -misi,  
     -missus, *with dat., ut, and subj.*  
 personal enemy, inimicus, -ī, *m.*  
 persuade, persuadēō, -ēre, -suāsi,  
     -suāsum est, *with dat., ut, and*  
     *subj.*  
 picked, dēlēctus, -a, -um.  
 pick out, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.  
 pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posui,  
     positus.  
 place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca,  
     -ōrum, *n.*  
 place (*verb*), collocō, *i*; pōnō, -ere,  
     posui, positus.  
 place (*in different positions*), dis-  
     pōnō.  
 plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*  
 plan, arrange, cōstituō, -ere, -ui,  
     -ūtus.  
 plan, think (*of*), cōgitō, *i*.  
 pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*  
 plot, ambushade, insidiae, -ārum, *f.*,  
     *pl.*  
 plot against, insidiar, *i*, *with dat.*  
 point, at this point, hic.  
 possession, gain possession of, potior,  
     -īrī, -ītus.  
 power, ability, facultas, -ātis, *f.*;  
     power, might, potentia, -ae, *f.*;  
     military power, imperium, -ī, *n.*  
 powerful, to be very, plurimum posse.  
 practice, exercitatio, -ōnis, *f.*  
 praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*  
 praise, laus, laudis, *f.*  
 pray (*verb*), vōtum faciō, -ere, fēcī,  
     factum.  
 pray (*in commands and questions*),  
     tandem.  
 prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui.  
 prepare, comparō, *i*; parō, *i*.  
 prepared, parātus, -a, -um.

preserve, cōservō, *i*.  
 press hard, premō, -ere, pressī, pressus  
 pretend, simulō, *i*.  
 prevail, valeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus.  
 prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus,  
     *with inf.*  
     not prevent, nōn dēterreō, -ēre, -ui,  
     -itus, *with quin and subj.*  
 previous, superior, -ius; prior, -us.  
 private, privātus, -a, -um.  
 privilege, give the privilege, potes-  
     tātem faciō.  
 prolong, prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus.  
 proof, indicium, -ī, *n.*  
 property, rēs, rei, *f.*  
 proportion, in proportion to, prō.  
 prosperous, flōrēns, -entis.  
 protect, dēfendō, -ere, -di, -fēnsus.  
 protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*  
 prove, probō, *i*.  
 provided, provided that, dum.  
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*  
 provision, make provision, prōvideō,  
     -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus.  
 public, publicus, -a, -um.  
 public welfare, rēs publica, rei  
     publicae, *f.*  
 punish, ulciscor, -ī, ultus.  
 punishment, supplicium, -ī, *n.*;  
     poena, -ae, *f.*  
 purpose, mēns, mentis, *f.*  
 put down, conquer, superō, *i*.  
     put in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
     -fectus.  
 put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
     -fectus.  
 put to flight, fugō, *i*.  
 put under the power, permittō, -ere,  
     -misi, -missus.

quickly, celeriter.

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*  
 rank, ōrdō, -inis, *f.*  
 rather, potius.  
 reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum  
     est, *with ad and acc.*  
 reach (*of land*), attingō, -ere, -tigī,  
     -tāctus.  
 ready, parātus, -a, -um.  
     get ready, comparō, *i*.

**realize**, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.

**reason**, causa, -ae, *f.*

for this reason, quā dē causā.

**reasonable**, iūstus, -a, -um.

**reasonableness**, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**recall**, revocō, *i.*

**receive**, accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus.

receive under protection, in fidem recipiō.

**recently**, nūper.

**recklessness**, audācia, -ae, *f.*

**regard**, in regard to, dē with *abl.*

**region**, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**reject**, repudiō, *i.*

**rejoice**, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.

**relief**, subsidium, -ii, *n.*

**remain**, maneo, -ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus.

**remove**, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus;

removeō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus.

**renown**, glōria, -ae, *f.*

**repair**, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

**repeatedly**, saepe.

**repent**, paenitet, -ēre, -uit.

**reply**, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.

**report**, nūtiō, *i.*

**report back**, renūtiō, *i.*

**republic**, rēs publica, rei publicae, *f.*

**reputation**, opiniō, -ōnis, *f.*

**request**, obtain a request, impetrō, *i.*

**reserve**, reservō, *i.*

**resist**, resistō, -ere, -stiti, with *dat.*

**rest of**, remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.

**restore**, restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus;

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.

**restrain**, retineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus;

prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus; re-

primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.

**retreat** (*noun*), receptus, -ūs, *m.*

**retreat** (*verb*), recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, with *reflexive*.

**return** (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, *m.*

**return**, give back, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.

**return**, go back, redeō, -ire, -ii, -tum est; revertor, -i.

in return for, prō with *abl.*

**revolt**, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*

**reward**, praemium, -ii, *n.*

**Rhine**, Rhēnus, -i, *m.*

**Rhone**, Rhodanus, -i, *m.*

**right**, fair (*adj.*), aequus, -a, -um.

**right** (in the sight of the gods), fās, *n.*, indecl. *noun*.

**rightly**, iūre.

**risk**, periculum, -i, *n.*

**river**, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

**road**, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*

**Roman**, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

**Rome**, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

**royal power**, regnum.

**rule**, regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus.

**rumor**, rŭmor, -ōris, *m.*

**safe**, incolumis, -e; tŭtus, -a, -um.

**safely**, tŭtō; translate when possible by *adj.*, safe.

**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**sail** (*verb*), nāvigō, *i.*

**sake**, for the sake of, causā, following its *gen.*

**same**, idem, eadem, idem.

**savage**, ferus, -a, -um.

**save**, cōservō, *i.*

**say**, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus.

**sea**, mare, -is, *n.*

**secure**, (*adj.*), tŭtus, -a, -um.

**secure** (*verb*), cōsequor, -i, -secŭtus; conciliō, *i.*; nanciscor, -i, nactus.

**see**, see to it, videō, -ēre, vidi, visus.

**seek**, petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itus.

**seem**, videor, -ēri, visus.

**seize**, occupō, *i.*; comprehendō, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsus.

**self**, myself, etc. If *emphatic*, ipse, -a, -um; if *reflexive*, mei, tui, sui, etc.

**senate**, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

**senator**, senātor, -ōris, *m.*

**send**, mittō, -ere, misi, missus.

**send ahead**, praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus.

**send back**, remittō, -ere, -misi, -missus.

**send out or away** (in different directions), dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus.

**separate**, dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsus.

**serious**, gravis, -e.

**servant**, servus, -i, *m.*

**service**, officium, -ii, *n.*; meritum, -i, *n.*

**service**, be of service, prōsum, prōdesse, prōful.

set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēsus.

set out, proficiscor, -i, -fectus.

set sail, solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, *with or without navem or nāvēs.*

settle (down), cōsidō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessurus.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

several, complūrēs, -a or -ia.

shield, scūtum, -i, n.

ship, nāvis, -is, f.

war ship, nāvis longa.

short, brevis, -e.

shout, shouting, clāmor, -ōris, m.

show, ostendō, -ere, -di, -tus; indicō, i; doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctus.

shrewdness, cōsiliū, -i, n.

sight, cōspectus, -ūs, m.

since, cum, *with subj.*; quoniam, *with indic.*

sister, soror, -ōris, f.

situation, locus, -i, m.; pl. loca, -ōrum, n.

skilful, skilled, peritus, -a, -um, *with gen.*

slave, servus, -i, m.

slay, occidō, -ere, -cidi, -ctus.

slight, parvus, -a, -um.

so (*with adjectives and adverbs*), tam; (*with verbs*), ita, sic.

and so, itaque.

so great, tantus, -a, -um.

so long, tam diū.

so long as, dum, *with indic.*

so much (*as noun*), tantum, -i, n.

so often, totiens.

soldier, miles, -litis, m.

some (*adj.*), aliqui, -qua, -quod; nōn nullus, -a, -um; *pl. as subst.*

some one, something (*subst.*), aliquis, aliquid.

some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.

some in one direction, others in another, aliī aliam in partem.

there are some who, sunt qui.

sometimes, nōn numquam.

soon, brevi tempore.

as soon as, simul atque.

sort, genus, -eris, n.

of this sort, eius modi.

spare, parcō, -ere, peperci or parsi, parsurus.

speak, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus.

speech, orātiō, -ōnis, f.

speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.

at full speed (*of horse*), incitātus, -a, -um.

spot, locus, -i, m.; pl. loca, -ōrum, n.

spy, spy out, specular, i.

stab, percutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussus.

stand, stō, stāre, steti, stātus.

stand, get a footing, consistō, -ere, -stiti.

stand in the way of, obsistō, -ere, -stiti, *with dat.*

standard, signum, -i, n.

start, proficiscor, -i, profectus.

state, civitās, -ātis, f.

stay, maneō, -ere, mānsi, mānsurus.

still, now, nunc; still, nevertheless, tamen.

stir up, concitō, i.

storm, tempestās, -ātis, f.

strange, novus, -a, -um.

strangeness, novitās, -tātis, f.

strong, firmus, -a, -um.

such, of such a sort, tālis, -e; so great, tantus, -a, -um.

suddenly, subito.

sufficient, satis (*indecl.*), n.

sufficiently, satis.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um, *with dat. or ad with acc.*

summon, vocō, i.

sun, sōl, sōlis, m.

supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.

support, alō, -ere, -ui, altus or alitus.

suppose, crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus; existimō, i.

sure, certus, -a, -um.

surpass, superō, i, *with acc.*; praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stitus, *with dat.*

surrender (oneself), dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditus, *with reflex.*

surround, get around, circumveniō -īre, -vēni, -ventus.

suspect, suspicor, i.

suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, f.

Swabians, Suēbi, -ōrum, m., pl.

sword, gladius, -i, m.

take, bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.

take, lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus.

- take, take up, capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus.  
 take away, ēripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus.  
 take by storm, expugnō, i.  
 take place, fiō, fieri, factum est.  
 take possession of, potior, -iri, -itus.  
 tear, lacrima, -ae, f.  
 tear up, ēripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus.  
 tell, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus; prō-nūntiō, i.  
 tell, show, doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctus.  
 tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f.  
 ten, decem.  
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um.  
 terms, condiciō, -ōnis, f., sing. or pl.  
 terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus.  
 territory, territories, ager, agrī, m.; finēs, -ium, m.  
 than, quam, or abl. after a comparative.  
 that (dem. pron.), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.  
 that, so that, in order that, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē; after negative expressions of doubt, quin.  
 that . . . not, introducing a negative clause of purpose, nē.  
 would that, utinam.  
 their, suus, -a, -um (reflex.); eōrum.  
 them, cf. he.  
 then, at that time, tum.  
 then, therefore, igitur (usually postpositive).  
 there, in that place, ibi.  
 therefore, itaque.  
 these, cf. this.  
 thing, rēs, rei, f.  
 think, putō, i; existimō, i; arbitror, i.  
 think, feel, sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus.  
 this, hic, haec, hoc.  
 though, cum.  
 thousand, mille (indecl. adj.).  
 thousands, milia, -ium, n., pl. (followed by partitive gen.).  
 threaten, impendeō, -ēre.  
 three, trēs, tria.  
 a period of three days, triduum, -i, n.  
 three hundred, trecenti, -ae, -a.  
 through, per, prep. with acc.  
 throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.  
 throw back, rēciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.  
 throw down, away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.  
 tide, aestus, -ūs, m..  
 tilling the land, agri cultūra, -ae, f.  
 time, tempus, -oris, n.  
 on time, ad tempus.  
 time and again, semel atque iterum.  
 timid, timidus, -a, -um.  
 to, ad, prep. with acc.; often translated by dat.  
 to-day, hodiē.  
 together with, unā cum, with abl.  
 toward (in space), ad with acc.  
 town, oppidum, -i, n.  
 trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.  
 transport, adj., onerārius, -a, -um.  
 travel, eō, ire, ii or ivi, itum est.  
 treachery, insidiae, -ārum, f., pl.  
 trial, iudicium, -ii, n.  
 tribe, gens, gentis, f.  
 tribune, tribunus, -i, m.  
 tribune of the people, tribunus plēbis.  
 tributary, vectigālis, -e.  
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f., pl.  
 true, vērus, -a, -um.  
 truth, vērum, -i, n.  
 try, cōnor, i.  
 turn and flee, tergum vertō, -ere, verti, versum.  
 twelve, duodecim; XII.  
 two, duo, -ae, -o.  
 unacquainted, imperitus, -a, -um, with gen.  
 unbelievable, incredibilis, -e.  
 uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.  
 uncovered, nūdus, -a, -um.  
 understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus.  
 undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus.  
 ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um.  
 unharmed, incolumis, -e.  
 unjust, inīquus, -a, -um.  
 unjustly, inīuriā.  
 unless, nisi.  
 unprepared, imparātus, -a, -um.

unskilful, imperitus, -a, -um.

until, ad, *prep. with acc.*

until, dum; quoad, *conj.*; *when equivalent to before*, prius quam.

urge, hortor, i; cohortor, i.

use (*noun*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

of use, ūsul (*dativē*).

use, make use of, ūtor, -i, ūsus.

vacant, lie vacant, vacō, i.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

vengeance, take vengeance on, ulciscor, -i, ultus.

verdict, iudicium, -iī, *n.*

very (*adj.*), ipse, -a, -um.

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

village, vicus, -i, *m.*

violence, vis, *f.*

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wait, delay, moror, i.

wait for, exspectō, i.

wander about, vagor, i.

war, bellum, -i, *n.*

warn, admonēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

way, manner, modus, -i, *m.*

way, road, via, -ae, *f.*

we, nōs, *gen.*, nostrum or nostrī.

weapon, tēlum, -i, *n.*

weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

weigh (*of anchor*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.

welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

public welfare, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae.

what (*inter. pron.*), quid; (*inter. adj.*), quī, quae, quod.

what (*rel. pron.*), (id) quod, (ea) quae.

what great, how great, quantus, -a, -um.

whatever, quidquid.

what sort of, quālis, -e.

when, cum; ubi.

where (*place in which*), ubi; (*place to which*), quō.

wherever, whithersoever, quōcumque.

whether, num, -ne, sī, utrum.

which, *see who*.

which (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum.

while, dum.

who, what (*inter. pron.*), quis, quid.

who, which, what (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod.

whoever, whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

wholly, omninō.

why, cūr.

wicked, improbus, -a, -um.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

width, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

willing, be willing, volō, velle, volui.

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

pass the winter, hiemō, i.

winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n., pl.*

wisdom, cōsiliū, -iī, *n.*

wish, volō, velle, volui.

not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

with, near, apud, *prep. with acc.*

withdraw, go away, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus.

without, sine, *prep. with abl.*

withstand, sustinēdō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*

word, verbum, -i, *n.*

work (*noun*), opus, operis, *n.*

work (*verb*), labōrō, i.

worth, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

would that, utinam.

wound, volnus, -eris, *n.*

wrong, do wrong, peccō, i.

year, annus, -i, *m.*

every year, quotannis.

yet, tamen.

yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus.

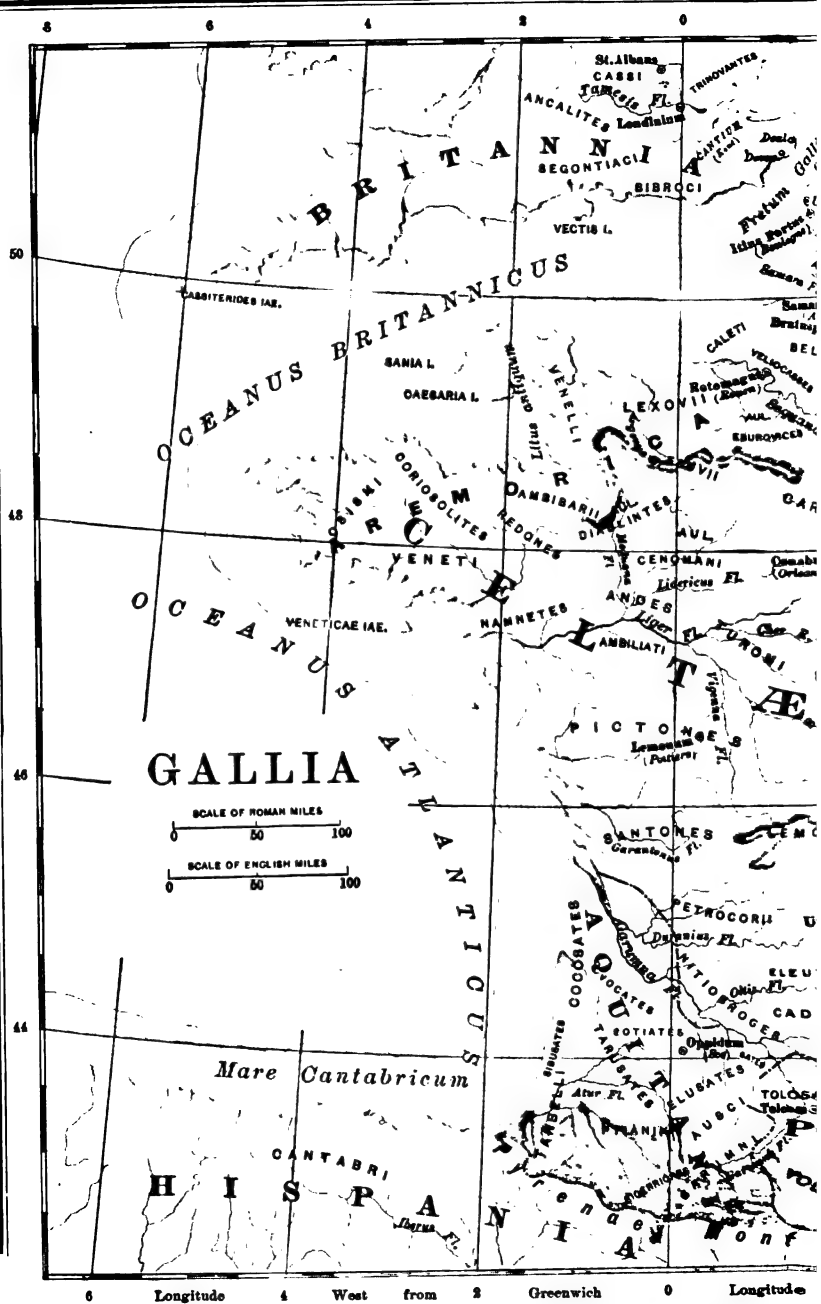
you, tū, tuī.

young man, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m.*

your (*sing.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*plu.*) vester, -tra, -trum.

zeal, studium, -iī, *n.*

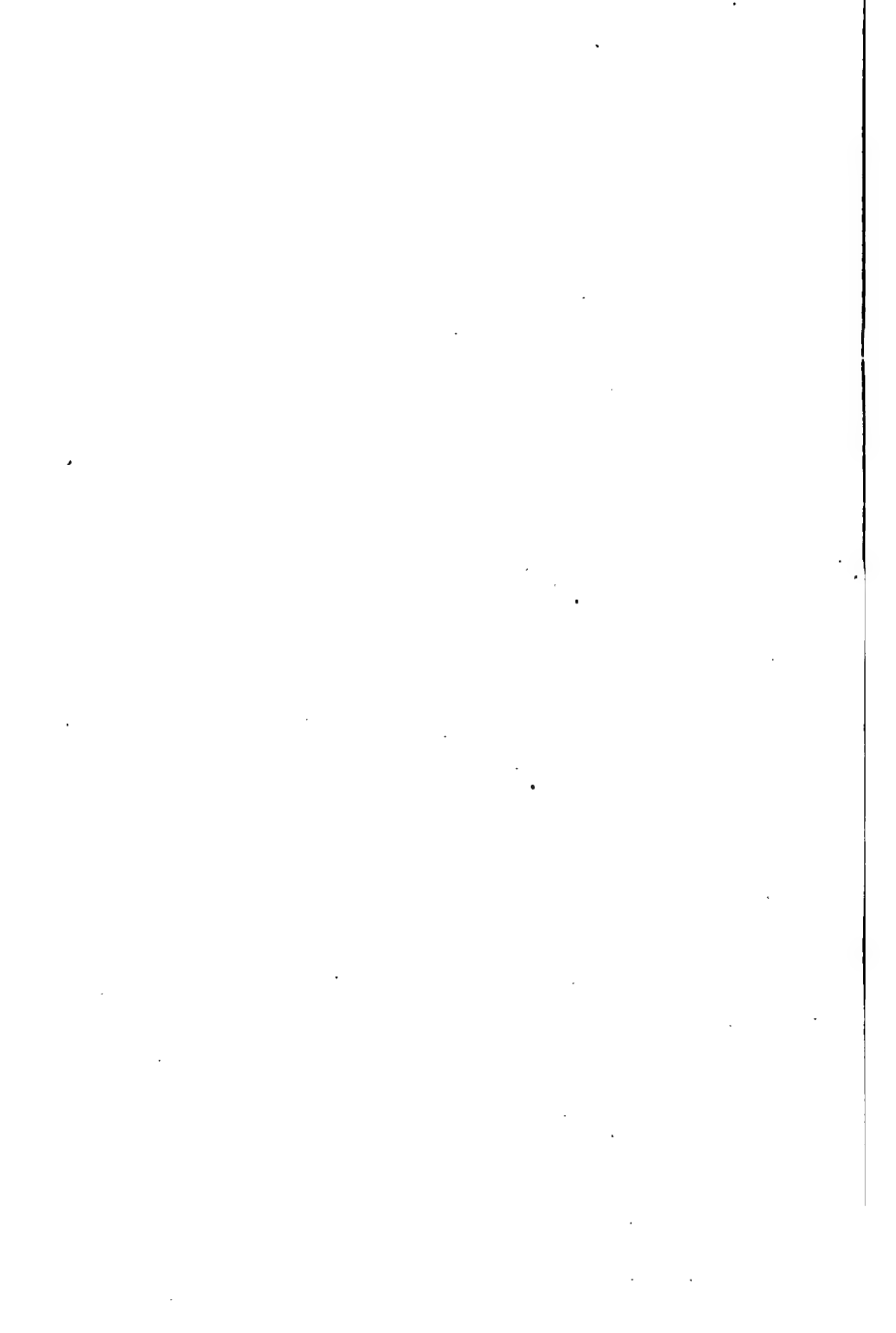






2 East from 4 Greenwich







**RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED**

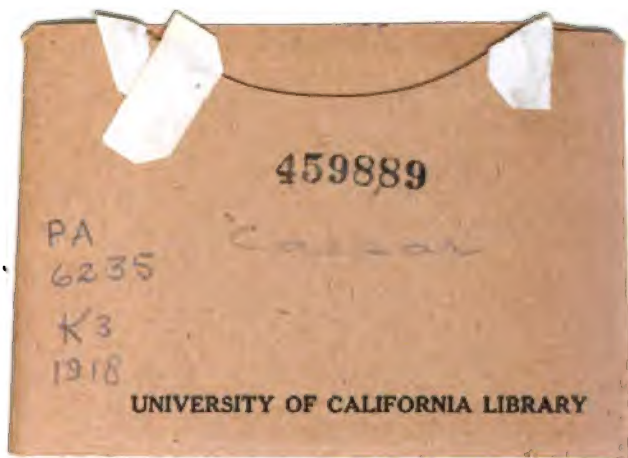
**This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.**

**Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.**

LD 21-50m-8,'57  
(C8481s10)476

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

YB 35670



60

